



**NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11**

## **Administrator Manual**

Revision: 896fa6ece

Date: Tue Aug 19 2025

©2025 NVIDIA Corporation & affiliates. All Rights Reserved. This manual or parts thereof may not be reproduced in any form unless permitted by contract or by written permission of NVIDIA Corporation.

## Trademarks

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds. PathScale is a registered trademark of Cray, Inc. Red Hat and all Red Hat-based trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. SUSE is a registered trademark of SUSE LLC. NVIDIA, CUDA, GPUDirect, HPC SDK, NVIDIA DGX, NVIDIA Nsight, and NVLink are registered trademarks of NVIDIA Corporation. FLEXlm is a registered trademark of Flexera Software, Inc. PBS Professional, and Green Provisioning are trademarks of Altair Engineering, Inc. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

## Rights and Restrictions

All statements, specifications, recommendations, and technical information contained herein are current or planned as of the date of publication of this document. They are reliable as of the time of this writing and are presented without warranty of any kind, expressed or implied. NVIDIA Corporation shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions which may occur in this document. NVIDIA Corporation shall not be liable for any damages resulting from the use of this document.

## Limitation of Liability and Damages Pertaining to NVIDIA Corporation

The NVIDIA Base Command Manager product principally consists of free software that is licensed by the Linux authors free of charge. NVIDIA Corporation shall have no liability nor will NVIDIA Corporation provide any warranty for the NVIDIA Base Command Manager to the extent that is permitted by law. Unless confirmed in writing, the Linux authors and/or third parties provide the program as is without any warranty, either expressed or implied, including, but not limited to, marketability or suitability for a specific purpose. The user of the NVIDIA Base Command Manager product shall accept the full risk for the quality or performance of the product. Should the product malfunction, the costs for repair, service, or correction will be borne by the user of the NVIDIA Base Command Manager product. No copyright owner or third party who has modified or distributed the program as permitted in this license shall be held liable for damages, including general or specific damages, damages caused by side effects or consequential damages, resulting from the use of the program or the un-usability of the program (including, but not limited to, loss of data, incorrect processing of data, losses that must be borne by you or others, or the inability of the program to work together with any other program), even if a copyright owner or third party had been advised about the possibility of such damages unless such copyright owner or third party has signed a writing to the contrary.

# Table of Contents

Table of Contents . . . . .	3
0.1 Quickstart . . . . .	19
0.2 About This Manual . . . . .	19
0.3 About The Manuals In General . . . . .	19
0.4 Getting Administrator-Level Support . . . . .	20
0.5 Getting Professional Services . . . . .	20
<b>1 Introduction</b> . . . . .	<b>21</b>
1.1 NVIDIA Base Command Manager Functions And Aims . . . . .	21
1.2 The Scope Of The Administrator Manual (This Manual) . . . . .	21
1.2.1 Installation . . . . .	21
1.2.2 Configuration, Management, And Monitoring Via BCM Tools And Applications . . . . .	22
1.3 Outside The Direct Scope Of The Administrator Manual . . . . .	23
<b>2 Cluster Management With NVIDIA Base Command Manager</b> . . . . .	<b>25</b>
2.1 Concepts . . . . .	25
2.1.1 Devices . . . . .	25
2.1.2 Software Images . . . . .	26
2.1.3 Node Categories . . . . .	27
2.1.4 Node Groups . . . . .	27
2.1.5 Roles . . . . .	28
2.1.6 Configuration Overlay . . . . .	28
2.2 Modules Environment . . . . .	29
2.2.1 Adding And Removing Modules . . . . .	29
2.2.2 Using Local And Shared Modules . . . . .	30
2.2.3 Setting Up A Default Environment For All Users . . . . .	30
2.2.4 Creating A Modules Environment Module . . . . .	31
2.2.5 Lua Modules Environment (LMod) . . . . .	31
2.3 Authentication . . . . .	32
2.3.1 Changing Administrative Passwords On The Cluster . . . . .	32
2.3.2 Logins Using ssh . . . . .	33
2.3.3 Certificates . . . . .	34
2.3.4 Profiles . . . . .	35
2.4 Base View GUI . . . . .	35
2.4.1 Installing The Cluster Management GUI Service . . . . .	36
2.4.2 Navigating The Cluster With Base View . . . . .	38
2.5 Cluster Management Shell . . . . .	41
2.5.1 Invoking <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	41
2.5.2 Levels, Modes, Help, And Commands Syntax In <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	45
2.5.3 Working With Objects . . . . .	49
2.5.4 Accessing Cluster Settings . . . . .	60

2.5.5	Advanced cmsh Features . . . . .	61
2.6	Cluster Management Daemon . . . . .	73
2.6.1	Managing And Inspecting The Cluster Management Daemon . . . . .	74
2.6.2	Configuring The Cluster Management Daemon . . . . .	75
2.6.3	CMDaemon Versions . . . . .	75
2.6.4	Configuring The Cluster Management Daemon Logging Facilities . . . . .	76
2.6.5	Configuration File Modification, And The FrozenFile Directive . . . . .	77
2.6.6	Configuration File Conflicts Between The Standard Distribution And BCM For Generated And Non-Generated Files . . . . .	78
2.6.7	CMDaemon Lite . . . . .	78
<b>3</b>	<b>Configuring The Cluster</b>	<b>83</b>
3.1	Main Cluster Configuration Settings . . . . .	83
3.1.1	Cluster Configuration: Various Name-Related Settings . . . . .	84
3.1.2	Cluster Configuration: Some Network-Related Settings . . . . .	85
3.1.3	Miscellaneous Settings . . . . .	87
3.1.4	Limiting The Maximum Number Of Open Files . . . . .	90
3.2	Network Settings . . . . .	91
3.2.1	Configuring Networks . . . . .	92
3.2.2	Adding Networks . . . . .	96
3.2.3	Changing Network Parameters . . . . .	97
3.2.4	Tools For Viewing Cluster Connections And Connectivity . . . . .	110
3.3	Configuring Bridge Interfaces . . . . .	113
3.4	Configuring VLAN interfaces . . . . .	114
3.4.1	Configuring A VLAN Interface Using cmsh . . . . .	114
3.4.2	Configuring A VLAN Interface Using Base View . . . . .	115
3.5	Configuring Bonded Interfaces . . . . .	115
3.5.1	Adding A Bonded Interface . . . . .	115
3.5.2	Single Bonded Interface On A Regular Node . . . . .	116
3.5.3	Multiple Bonded Interface On A Regular Node . . . . .	116
3.5.4	Bonded Interfaces On Head Nodes And HA Head Nodes . . . . .	117
3.5.5	Tagged VLAN On Top Of a Bonded Interface . . . . .	117
3.5.6	Association Of MAC Address With A Bonded Interface . . . . .	118
3.5.7	Further Notes On Bonding . . . . .	118
3.6	Configuring InfiniBand Interfaces . . . . .	119
3.6.1	Installing Software Packages . . . . .	119
3.6.2	Subnet Managers . . . . .	119
3.6.3	InfiniBand Network Settings . . . . .	120
3.6.4	Verifying Connectivity . . . . .	121
3.7	Configuring BMC (IPMI/iLO/DRAC/CIMC/Redfish) Interfaces . . . . .	123
3.7.1	BMC Network Settings . . . . .	123
3.7.2	BMC Authentication . . . . .	125
3.7.3	Interfaces Settings . . . . .	126
3.7.4	Identification With A BMC . . . . .	127
3.8	Configuring BlueField DPUs . . . . .	127
3.8.1	Assumptions And Limitations . . . . .	127
3.8.2	Preparation . . . . .	127

3.8.3	Installation . . . . .	128
3.8.4	Managing DPU Settings . . . . .	132
3.9	Configuring Switches And PDUs . . . . .	135
3.9.1	Configuring With The Manufacturer’s Configuration Interface . . . . .	135
3.9.2	Configuring SNMP . . . . .	137
3.10	Configuring Cumulus Switches . . . . .	139
3.10.1	Cumulus Switches Access Configuration, Initialization And Network Device Discovery . . . . .	140
3.10.2	Custom Service Setups For Cumulus Linux . . . . .	141
3.10.3	Uplink Ports . . . . .	147
3.10.4	The <code>showport</code> MAC Address to Port Matching Tool . . . . .	148
3.10.5	Disabling Port Detection . . . . .	148
3.10.6	The <code>switchoverview</code> Command . . . . .	149
3.11	Configuring NetQ Network Management System . . . . .	150
3.12	Disk Layouts: Disked, Semi-Diskless, And Diskless Node Configuration . . . . .	150
3.12.1	Disk Layouts . . . . .	150
3.12.2	Disk Layout Assertions . . . . .	150
3.12.3	Changing Disk Layouts . . . . .	151
3.12.4	Changing A Disk Layout From Disked To Diskless . . . . .	151
3.13	Configuring NFS Volume Exports And Mounts . . . . .	153
3.13.1	Exporting A Filesystem Using Base View And <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	156
3.13.2	Mounting A Filesystem Using Base View And <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	159
3.13.3	Mounting A Filesystem Subtree For A Diskless Node Over NFS . . . . .	162
3.13.4	Configuring NFS Volume Exports And Mounts Over RDMA With OFED Drivers .	164
3.14	Managing And Configuring Services . . . . .	165
3.14.1	Why Use The Cluster Manager For Services? . . . . .	165
3.14.2	Managing And Configuring Services—Examples . . . . .	166
3.15	Managing And Configuring A Rack . . . . .	171
3.15.1	Racks . . . . .	171
3.15.2	Assigning Devices To A Rack . . . . .	175
3.15.3	Assigning Devices To A Chassis . . . . .	177
3.16	Configuring GPU Settings . . . . .	180
3.16.1	GPUs And GPU Units . . . . .	180
3.16.2	Configuring GPU Settings . . . . .	180
3.16.3	MIG Configuration . . . . .	187
3.17	Configuring Sampling From A Prometheus Exporter . . . . .	196
3.18	Configuring Custom Scripts . . . . .	196
3.18.1	<code>custompowerscript</code> . . . . .	197
3.18.2	<code>custompingscript</code> . . . . .	197
3.18.3	<code>customremoteconsolescript</code> . . . . .	197
3.18.4	<code>sysinfo</code> Custom Scripts . . . . .	198
3.19	Cluster Configuration Without Execution By CMDaemon . . . . .	201
3.19.1	Cluster Configuration: The Bigger Picture . . . . .	201
3.19.2	Making Nodes Function Differently By Image . . . . .	202
3.19.3	Making All Nodes Function Differently From Normal Cluster Behavior With <code>FrozenFile</code> . . . . .	205

3.19.4 Adding Functionality To Nodes Via An <code>initialize</code> Or <code>finalize</code> Script . . . . .	205
3.19.5 Examples Of Configuring Nodes With Or Without CMDaemon . . . . .	206
3.20 Saving A Backup Of Configuration Files With <code>versionconfigfiles</code> . . . . .	207
<b>4 Power Management</b>	<b>209</b>
4.1 Configuring Power Parameters . . . . .	209
4.1.1 PDU-based Power Control . . . . .	210
4.1.2 IPMI-Based Power Control . . . . .	212
4.1.3 Combining PDU- and IPMI-Based Power Control . . . . .	213
4.1.4 Custom Power Control . . . . .	213
4.1.5 Hewlett Packard iLO-Based Power Control . . . . .	215
4.1.6 Dell <code>drac</code> -based Power Control . . . . .	215
4.1.7 Redfish-Based and CIMC-Based Power Control . . . . .	215
4.2 Power Operations . . . . .	215
4.2.1 Power Operations Overview . . . . .	215
4.2.2 Power Operations With Base View . . . . .	216
4.2.3 Power Operations Through <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	217
4.3 Monitoring Power . . . . .	221
4.4 Switch Configuration To Survive Power Downs . . . . .	221
<b>5 Node Provisioning</b>	<b>223</b>
5.1 Before The Kernel Loads . . . . .	223
5.1.1 PXE Booting . . . . .	223
5.1.2 iPXE Booting From A Disk Drive . . . . .	226
5.1.3 iPXE Booting Using InfiniBand . . . . .	226
5.1.4 Using PXE To Boot From The Drive . . . . .	227
5.1.5 Network Booting Without PXE On The ARMv8 Architecture . . . . .	227
5.1.6 Network Booting Protocol . . . . .	227
5.1.7 The Boot Role . . . . .	228
5.2 Provisioning Nodes . . . . .	228
5.2.1 Provisioning Nodes: Configuration Settings . . . . .	228
5.2.2 Provisioning Nodes: Role Setup With <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	229
5.2.3 Provisioning Nodes: Role Setup With Base View . . . . .	231
5.2.4 Provisioning Nodes: Housekeeping . . . . .	232
5.3 The Kernel Image, Ramdisk And Kernel Modules . . . . .	237
5.3.1 Booting To A “Good State” Software Image . . . . .	237
5.3.2 Selecting Kernel Driver Modules To Load Onto Nodes . . . . .	237
5.3.3 InfiniBand Provisioning . . . . .	239
5.3.4 VLAN Provisioning . . . . .	241
5.4 Node-Installer . . . . .	242
5.4.1 Requesting A Node Certificate . . . . .	243
5.4.2 Deciding Or Selecting Node Configuration . . . . .	245
5.4.3 Starting Up All Network Interfaces . . . . .	256
5.4.4 Determining Install-mode Type And Execution Mode . . . . .	258
5.4.5 Running Initialize Scripts . . . . .	263
5.4.6 Checking Partitions, RAID Configuration, Mounting Filesystems . . . . .	263
5.4.7 Synchronizing The Local Drive With The Software Image . . . . .	264

5.4.8	Writing Network Configuration Files . . . . .	268
5.4.9	Creating A Local /etc/fstab File . . . . .	268
5.4.10	Booting From The Local Hard Drive . . . . .	269
5.4.11	Running Finalize Scripts . . . . .	271
5.4.12	Unloading Specific Drivers . . . . .	272
5.4.13	Switching To The Local init Process . . . . .	272
5.5	Node States . . . . .	272
5.5.1	Node States Icons In Base View . . . . .	272
5.5.2	Node States Shown In cmsh . . . . .	272
5.5.3	Node States Indicating Regular Start Up . . . . .	273
5.5.4	Node States That May Indicate Problems . . . . .	274
5.6	Updating Running Nodes . . . . .	276
5.6.1	Updating Running Nodes: Configuration With exclude=listupdate . . . . .	276
5.6.2	Updating Running Nodes: With cmsh Using imageupdate . . . . .	284
5.6.3	Updating Running Nodes: With Base View Using the Update node Option . . . . .	284
5.6.4	Updating Running Nodes: Considerations . . . . .	284
5.7	Adding New Nodes . . . . .	285
5.7.1	Adding New Nodes With cmsh And Base View Add Functions . . . . .	285
5.7.2	Adding New Nodes With The Node Creation Wizard . . . . .	285
5.8	Troubleshooting The Node Boot Process . . . . .	287
5.8.1	Node Fails To PXE Boot . . . . .	287
5.8.2	Node-installer Logging . . . . .	291
5.8.3	Provisioning Logging . . . . .	292
5.8.4	Ramdisk Fails During Loading Or Sometime Later . . . . .	292
5.8.5	Ramdisk Cannot Start Network . . . . .	292
5.8.6	Node-Installer Cannot Create Disk Layout . . . . .	293
5.8.7	Node-Installer Cannot Start BMC (IPMI/iLO) Interface . . . . .	296
<b>6</b>	<b>User Management</b> . . . . .	<b>301</b>
6.1	Managing Users And Groups With Base View . . . . .	301
6.2	Managing Users And Groups With cmsh . . . . .	303
6.2.1	Adding A User . . . . .	303
6.2.2	Saving The Modified State . . . . .	304
6.2.3	Editing Properties Of Users And Groups . . . . .	305
6.2.4	Reverting To The Unmodified State . . . . .	308
6.2.5	Removing A User . . . . .	308
6.3	Using An External LDAP Server . . . . .	309
6.3.1	External LDAP Server Replication . . . . .	311
6.3.2	High Availability . . . . .	313
6.4	Tokens And Profiles . . . . .	314
6.4.1	Modifying Profiles . . . . .	315
6.4.2	Creation Of Custom Certificates With Profiles, For Users Managed By BCM's Internal LDAP . . . . .	316
6.4.3	Creation Of Custom Certificates With Profiles, For Users Managed By An External LDAP . . . . .	319
6.4.4	Logging The Actions Of CMDDaemon Users . . . . .	320
6.4.5	Creation Of Certificates For Nodes With cm-component-certificate . . . . .	321

<b>7 Workload Management</b>	<b>323</b>
7.1 Workload Managers Choices . . . . .	323
7.2 Forcing Jobs To Run In A Workload Management System . . . . .	324
7.2.1 Disallowing User Logins To Regular Nodes Via cmsh . . . . .	324
7.2.2 Disallowing User Logins To Regular Nodes Via Base View . . . . .	325
7.2.3 Disallowing Other User Processes Outside Of Workload Manager User Processes .	326
7.2.4 High Availability By Workload Managers . . . . .	326
7.3 Installation Of Workload Managers . . . . .	329
7.3.1 Running cm-wlm-setup In CLI Mode . . . . .	329
7.3.2 Running cm-wlm-setup As A TUI . . . . .	332
7.3.3 Installation And Configuration Of Enroot And Pyxis With Slurm To Run Containerized Jobs . . . . .	336
7.3.4 Prolog And Epilog Scripts . . . . .	342
7.4 Enabling, Disabling, And Monitoring Workload Managers . . . . .	346
7.4.1 Enabling And Disabling A WLM With Base View . . . . .	347
7.4.2 Enabling And Disabling A Workload Manager With cmsh . . . . .	349
7.4.3 Monitoring The State Of Workload Manager Services . . . . .	354
7.5 Configuring And Running Individual Workload Managers . . . . .	358
7.5.1 Configuring And Running Slurm . . . . .	359
7.5.2 Configuring And Running PBS . . . . .	399
7.5.3 Installing, Configuring, And Running LSF . . . . .	408
7.6 Using Base View With Workload Management . . . . .	416
7.6.1 Jobs Display And Handling In Base View . . . . .	416
7.6.2 Queues Display And Handling In Base View . . . . .	417
7.7 Using cmsh With Workload Management . . . . .	418
7.7.1 The jobs Submode In cmsh . . . . .	420
7.7.2 Job Queue Display And Handling In cmsh: jobqueue Mode . . . . .	425
7.7.3 Nodes Drainage Status And Handling In cmsh . . . . .	427
7.8 Examples Of Workload Management Assignment . . . . .	429
7.8.1 Setting Up A New Category And A New Queue For It . . . . .	429
7.8.2 Setting Up A Prejob Or Postjob Check . . . . .	432
7.9 Power Saving With cm-scale . . . . .	434
7.10 Cgroups . . . . .	435
7.10.1 Cgroups Settings For Workload Managers . . . . .	435
7.11 Custom Node Parameters . . . . .	440
7.11.1 Other PBS Professional Customizations Examples . . . . .	442
<b>8 NVIDIA Base Command Manager Auto Scaler</b>	<b>443</b>
8.1 Introduction . . . . .	443
8.1.1 Use Cases . . . . .	443
8.1.2 Resource Constraints . . . . .	444
8.1.3 Setup . . . . .	448
8.1.4 Workload Roles Assignment Limitations Per Node With cm-scale . . . . .	457
8.2 Configuration . . . . .	457
8.2.1 The ScaleServer Role . . . . .	457
8.2.2 Resource Providers . . . . .	459
8.2.3 Time Quanta Optimization . . . . .	462

8.2.4	Fairsharing Priority Calculation And Node Management . . . . .	464
8.2.5	Engines . . . . .	465
8.2.6	Trackers . . . . .	466
8.3	Examples Of <code>cm-scale</code> Use . . . . .	473
8.3.1	Simple Static Node Provider Usage Example . . . . .	473
8.3.2	Simple Dynamic Node Provider Usage Example . . . . .	476
8.4	Further <code>cm-scale</code> Configuration And Examples . . . . .	482
8.4.1	Dynamic Nodes Re-purposing . . . . .	482
8.4.2	Pending Reasons . . . . .	483
8.4.3	Locations . . . . .	484
8.4.4	Azure Storage Accounts Assignment . . . . .	486
8.4.5	Uptake of HPC Jobs By Particular Types Of Nodes . . . . .	486
8.4.6	How To Exclude Unused Nodes From Being Stopped . . . . .	488
8.4.7	Prolog And Epilog Scripts With Auto Scaler . . . . .	488
8.4.8	Queue Node Placeholders . . . . .	489
8.4.9	Auto Scaling A Job On-premises To A Workload Manager And Kubernetes . . . . .	490
8.4.10	AWS Spot Instances And Availability Zones . . . . .	492
8.4.11	Auto Scaler Statistics . . . . .	493
<b>9</b>	<b>Post-installation Software Management</b> . . . . .	<b>495</b>
9.1	NVIDIA Base Command Manager Packages, Their Naming Convention And Version . . . . .	497
9.1.1	The <code>packages</code> Command . . . . .	499
9.1.2	BCM Package Point Release Versions And The <code>cm-package-release-info</code> Command . . . . .	499
9.2	Managing Packages On The Head Node . . . . .	501
9.2.1	Managing RPM Or <code>.deb</code> Packages On The Head Node . . . . .	501
9.2.2	Installation Of Packages On The Head Node That Are Not <code>.deb</code> And Not <code>.rpm</code> Packages . . . . .	503
9.3	Kernel Management On A Head Node Or Image . . . . .	503
9.3.1	Installing A Standard Distribution Kernel Into An Image Or On A Head Node . . . . .	504
9.3.2	Excluding Kernels And Other Packages From Updates . . . . .	505
9.3.3	Updating A Kernel In A Software Image . . . . .	506
9.3.4	Setting Kernel Options For Software Images . . . . .	507
9.3.5	Kernel Driver Modules . . . . .	507
9.4	Managing A Package In A Software Image And Running It On Nodes . . . . .	509
9.4.1	Installing From Head Into The Image: Changing The Root Directory Into Which The Packages Are Deployed . . . . .	509
9.4.2	Installing From Head Into The Image: Updating The Node . . . . .	511
9.4.3	Installing From Head Into The Image: Possible Issues When Using <code>rpm --root</code> , <code>yum --installroot</code> Or <code>chroot</code> . . . . .	512
9.4.4	Managing A Package In The Node-Installer Image . . . . .	513
9.5	Managing Non-RPM Software In A Software Image And Running It On Nodes . . . . .	513
9.5.1	Managing The Software Directly On An Image . . . . .	513
9.5.2	Managing The Software Directly On A Node, Then Syncing Node-To-Image . . . . .	514
9.6	Creating A Custom Software Image . . . . .	517
9.6.1	Creating A Base Distribution Archive From A Base Host . . . . .	517
9.6.2	Creating The Software Image With <code>cm-create-image</code> . . . . .	519

9.6.3	Configuring Local Repositories For Linux Distributions, And For The BCM Package Repository, For A Software Image . . . . .	523
9.6.4	Creating A Custom Image From The Local Repository . . . . .	525
9.7	Creating Images For Other Distributions And Architectures (Multidistro And Multiarch) . . . . .	525
9.7.1	The <code>cm-image</code> Tool . . . . .	526
9.7.2	Multidistro Examples: Provisioning From Rocky 8 Head Node To Ubuntu 24.04 Regular Nodes . . . . .	529
9.7.3	Multiarch Example: Creating An Image From A Centos 8 Head Node For ARMv8 Architecture Regular Nodes . . . . .	530
<b>10</b>	<b>Monitoring: Monitoring Cluster Devices</b> . . . . .	<b>535</b>
10.1	A Basic Monitoring Example And Action . . . . .	535
10.1.1	Synopsis Of Basic Monitoring Example . . . . .	535
10.1.2	Before Using The Basic Monitoring Example—Setting Up The Pieces . . . . .	536
10.1.3	Using The Basic Monitoring Example . . . . .	537
10.2	Monitoring Concepts And Definitions . . . . .	540
10.2.1	Measurables . . . . .	540
10.2.2	Enummetrics . . . . .	543
10.2.3	Metrics . . . . .	544
10.2.4	Health Check . . . . .	545
10.2.5	Trigger . . . . .	547
10.2.6	Action . . . . .	547
10.2.7	Severity . . . . .	548
10.2.8	AlertLevel . . . . .	548
10.2.9	Flapping . . . . .	548
10.2.10	Data Producer . . . . .	548
10.2.11	Conceptual Overview: The Main Monitoring Interfaces Of Base View . . . . .	552
10.3	Monitoring Visualization With Base View . . . . .	553
10.3.1	The Monitoring Window . . . . .	553
10.4	Monitoring Configuration With Base View . . . . .	555
10.4.1	Monitoring Configuration: Data Producers . . . . .	556
10.4.2	Monitoring Configuration: Measurables . . . . .	558
10.4.3	Monitoring Configuration: Consolidators . . . . .	560
10.4.4	Monitoring Configuration: Actions . . . . .	564
10.4.5	Monitoring Configuration: Triggers . . . . .	567
10.4.6	Monitoring Configuration: Health status . . . . .	570
10.4.7	Monitoring Configuration: All Health Checks . . . . .	571
10.4.8	Monitoring Configuration: Standalone Monitored Entities . . . . .	572
10.4.9	Monitoring Configuration: PromQL Queries . . . . .	572
10.4.10	Monitoring Configuration: Resources . . . . .	572
10.4.11	Monitoring Configuration: Types . . . . .	573
10.5	The monitoring Mode Of <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	574
10.5.1	The <code>action</code> Submode . . . . .	575
10.5.2	The <code>consolidator</code> Submode . . . . .	577
10.5.3	The <code>measurable</code> Submode . . . . .	579
10.5.4	The <code>setup</code> Submode . . . . .	583
10.5.5	The <code>standalone</code> Submode . . . . .	589

10.5.6 The trigger Submode . . . . .	589
10.6 Obtaining Monitoring Data Values . . . . .	592
10.6.1 Getting The List Of Measurables For An Entity: The <code>measurables</code> , <code>metrics</code> , <code>healthchecks</code> And <code>enummetrics</code> Commands . . . . .	592
10.6.2 On-Demand Metric Sampling And Health Checks . . . . .	593
10.6.3 The Latest Data And Counter Values—The <code>latest*data</code> And <code>latestmetriccounters</code> Commands . . . . .	596
10.6.4 Data Values Over A Period—The <code>dumpmonitoringdata</code> Command . . . . .	599
10.6.5 Monitoring Data Health Overview—The <code>healthoverview</code> Command . . . . .	608
10.6.6 Monitoring Data About The Monitoring System—The <code>monitoringinfo</code> Command	609
10.6.7 Dropping Monitoring Data With The <code>monitoringdrop</code> Command . . . . .	610
10.6.8 Monitoring Suspension And Resumption—The <code>monitoringsuspend</code> And <code>monitoringresume</code> Commands . . . . .	611
10.6.9 Monitoring Pickup Intervals . . . . .	612
10.7 Offloaded Monitoring . . . . .	614
10.7.1 Why Offloaded Monitoring? . . . . .	614
10.7.2 Implementing Offloaded Monitoring . . . . .	615
10.7.3 Background Details . . . . .	615
10.7.4 Examining Offloaded Monitoring With <code>monitoringoffloadinformation</code> . . . . .	619
10.8 The User Portal . . . . .	619
10.8.1 Accessing The User Portal . . . . .	620
10.8.2 Setting A Common Username/Password For The User Portal . . . . .	620
10.8.3 User Portal Access . . . . .	621
10.8.4 User Portal Home Page . . . . .	621
10.9 Cloud Job Tagging . . . . .	622
10.10 Event Viewer . . . . .	623
10.10.1 Viewing Events In Base View . . . . .	623
10.10.2 Viewing Events In <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	624
10.10.3 Using The Event Bucket From The Shell For Events And For Tagging Device States	625
10.10.4 InfoMessages . . . . .	626
10.11 Monitoring Location With GNSS . . . . .	628
10.12 Monitoring Report Queries . . . . .	628
10.12.1 Monitoring Report Queries In <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	628
10.13 Monitoring With <code>nvsm</code> . . . . .	630
<b>11 Monitoring: Job Monitoring</b>	<b>635</b>
11.1 Job Metrics Introduction . . . . .	635
11.2 Job Metrics With Cgroups . . . . .	635
11.3 Job Information Retention . . . . .	636
11.4 Job Metrics Sampling Configuration . . . . .	637
11.4.1 The Job Metrics Collection Processing Mechanism . . . . .	638
11.5 Job Monitoring In <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	639
<b>12 Monitoring: Job Accounting</b>	<b>643</b>
12.1 Introduction . . . . .	643
12.2 Labeled Entities . . . . .	643
12.2.1 Dataproducers For Labeled Entities . . . . .	644

12.2.2 PromQL And Labeled Entities . . . . .	644
12.2.3 Job IDs And Labeled Entities . . . . .	644
12.2.4 Measurables And Labeled Entities . . . . .	644
12.3 PromQL Queries . . . . .	645
12.3.1 The Default PromQL Queries... . . . . .	645
12.3.2 ...And A Short Description Of Them . . . . .	646
12.3.3 Modifying The Default PromQL Query Properties . . . . .	650
12.3.4 An Example PromQL Query, Properties, And Disassembly . . . . .	651
12.3.5 Aside: Getting Raw Values For A Prometheus Class Metric . . . . .	652
12.3.6 ...An Example PromQL Query, Properties, And Disassembly (Continued) . . . . .	653
12.4 Parameterized PromQL Queries . . . . .	654
12.4.1 Two Job GPU Metrics Used In PromQL Queries . . . . .	656
12.5 Job Accounting In Base View . . . . .	657
12.5.1 Management And Use Of The Accounting Panel . . . . .	658
12.6 PromQL Query Modes And Specification In Base View . . . . .	660
12.7 Access Control For Workload Accounting And Reporting . . . . .	663
12.7.1 Defining Project Managers Using Internal User Management . . . . .	663
12.7.2 Defining Project Managers Using External User Management . . . . .	664
12.8 Drilldown Queries For Workload Accounting And Reporting . . . . .	665
12.8.1 The <code>drilldownoverview</code> Command . . . . .	666
12.9 The <code>grid</code> Command For Job Accounting . . . . .	668
12.9.1 The <code>grid</code> Command Help Text . . . . .	668
12.9.2 Some <code>grid</code> Command Examples . . . . .	668
12.9.3 The <code>grid</code> Command Time Specification . . . . .	670
<b>13 Monitoring: Job Chargeback</b>	<b>673</b>
13.1 Introduction . . . . .	673
13.1.1 The Word “Chargeback” . . . . .	673
13.1.2 Comparison Of Job Chargeback Monitoring Measurement With Other Monitoring Measurements . . . . .	673
13.2 Job Chargeback Measurement . . . . .	674
13.2.1 Predefined Job Chargebacks . . . . .	674
13.2.2 Setting A Custom Job Chargeback . . . . .	675
13.2.3 The <code>report</code> And <code>request</code> Commands . . . . .	676
13.3 Job Chargeback Background Information . . . . .	680
<b>14 Day-to-day Administration</b>	<b>681</b>
14.1 Parallel Shells: <code>pdsh</code> And <code>pexec</code> . . . . .	681
14.1.1 <code>pdsh</code> In The OS Shell . . . . .	682
14.1.2 <code>pexec</code> In <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	685
14.1.3 <code>pexec</code> In Base View . . . . .	686
14.1.4 Using The <code>-j   --join</code> Option Of <code>pexec</code> In <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	686
14.1.5 Other Parallel Commands . . . . .	687
14.2 Getting Support With BCM Issues, And Notifications For Release Updates . . . . .	687
14.2.1 The Support Portal For BCM . . . . .	688
14.2.2 Reporting Cluster Manager Diagnostics With <code>cm-diagnose</code> . . . . .	689
14.2.3 Requesting Remote Support With <code>request-remote-assistance</code> . . . . .	690

14.2.4 Getting Notified About Updates . . . . .	692
14.3 Backups . . . . .	692
14.3.1 Cluster Installation Backup . . . . .	692
14.3.2 Local Database And Data Backups And Restoration . . . . .	693
14.4 Revision Control For Images . . . . .	695
14.4.1 Btrfs: The Concept And Why It Works Well In Revision Control For Images . . . . .	695
14.4.2 Btrfs Availability And Distribution Support . . . . .	696
14.4.3 Installing Btrfs To Work With Revision Control Of Images In BCM . . . . .	696
14.4.4 Using <code>cmsh</code> For Revision Control Of Images . . . . .	698
14.5 BIOS And Firmware Management . . . . .	700
14.5.1 Introduction . . . . .	700
14.5.2 BIOS Management With BCM JSON Configuration Templates In Redfish . . . . .	701
14.5.3 Updating BIOS And Firmware Versions . . . . .	707
14.6 Hardware Match Check With The <code>hardware-profile</code> Data Producer . . . . .	716
14.7 Serial Over LAN Console Access . . . . .	717
14.7.1 Background Notes On Serial Console And SOL . . . . .	717
14.7.2 SOL Console Configuration With Base View . . . . .	719
14.7.3 SOL Console Configuration And Access With <code>cmsh</code> . . . . .	719
14.7.4 The <code>conman</code> Serial Console Logger And Viewer . . . . .	720
14.8 Managing Raw Monitoring Data . . . . .	724
14.8.1 Monitoring Subsystem Disk Usage With The <code>monitoringinfo --storage</code> Option . . . . .	724
14.8.2 Estimating The Required Size Of The Storage Device . . . . .	724
14.8.3 Moving Monitoring Data Elsewhere . . . . .	725
14.8.4 Reducing Monitoring Data By Reducing Samples . . . . .	725
14.8.5 Deleting All Monitoring Data . . . . .	725
14.9 Node Replacement . . . . .	727
14.10 Ansible And NVIDIA Base Command Manager . . . . .	727
14.10.1 An Overview Of Ansible . . . . .	727
14.10.2 A Simple Playbook Example . . . . .	728
14.10.3 An Intermediate Playbook Example: Setting Up A Cluster For Demonstration Pur- poses . . . . .	730
14.10.4 A More Complicated Playbook Example: Creating An Edge Site And Related Properties . . . . .	731
<b>15 High Availability</b> . . . . .	<b>739</b>
15.0 Introduction . . . . .	739
15.0.1 Why Have High Availability? . . . . .	739
15.0.2 High Availability—For What Nodes? . . . . .	739
15.0.3 High Availability Usually Uses Shared Storage . . . . .	740
15.0.4 Organization Of This Chapter . . . . .	740
15.1 HA Concepts . . . . .	740
15.1.1 Primary, Secondary, Active, Passive . . . . .	740
15.1.2 Monitoring The Active Head Node, Initiating Failover . . . . .	740
15.1.3 Services In BCM HA Setups . . . . .	741
15.1.4 Failover Network Topology . . . . .	742
15.1.5 Shared Storage . . . . .	743
15.1.6 Guaranteeing One Active Head At All Times . . . . .	744

15.1.7 Automatic Vs Manual Failover . . . . .	745
15.1.8 HA And Cloud Nodes . . . . .	746
15.1.9 HA Using Virtual Head Nodes . . . . .	746
15.2 HA Setup Procedure Using <code>cmha-setup</code> . . . . .	746
15.2.1 Preparation . . . . .	747
15.2.2 Failover Cloning (Replacing A Passive Head) . . . . .	749
15.2.3 Shared Storage Setup . . . . .	752
15.2.4 Automated Failover And Relevant Testing . . . . .	753
15.3 Running <code>cmha-setup</code> Without ncurses, Using An XML Specification . . . . .	754
15.3.1 Why Run It Without ncurses? . . . . .	754
15.3.2 The Syntax Of <code>cmha-setup</code> Without ncurses . . . . .	754
15.3.3 Example <code>cmha-setup</code> Run Without ncurses . . . . .	755
15.4 Managing HA . . . . .	756
15.4.1 Changing An Existing Failover Configuration . . . . .	756
15.4.2 <code>cmha</code> Utility . . . . .	756
15.4.3 States . . . . .	760
15.4.4 Failover Action Decisions . . . . .	760
15.4.5 Keeping Head Nodes In Sync . . . . .	761
15.4.6 High Availability Parameters . . . . .	763
15.4.7 Viewing Failover Via Base View . . . . .	765
15.4.8 Re-cloning A Head Node . . . . .	765
15.5 HA For Regular Nodes And Edge Director Nodes . . . . .	766
15.5.1 Why Have HA On Non-Head Nodes? . . . . .	766
15.5.2 Comparing HA For Head Nodes, Regular Nodes And Edge Director Nodes . . . . .	766
15.5.3 Setting Up A Regular Node HA Service . . . . .	767
15.5.4 The Sequence Of Events When Making Another HA Regular Node Active . . . . .	771
15.6 HA And Workload Manager Jobs . . . . .	772
<b>16 The Jupyter Notebook Environment Integration</b>	<b>773</b>
16.1 Introduction . . . . .	773
16.2 Jupyter Environment Installation . . . . .	774
16.2.1 Jupyter Setup . . . . .	775
16.2.2 Jupyter Architecture . . . . .	775
16.2.3 Verifying Jupyter Installation . . . . .	777
16.2.4 Login Configuration . . . . .	777
16.2.5 JupyterHub Screen After Login . . . . .	779
16.3 Jupyter Notebook Examples . . . . .	780
16.4 Jupyter Kernels . . . . .	781
16.4.1 Jupyter Kernel Provisioning Kernels . . . . .	782
16.4.2 Tunables For Kernel Provisioners . . . . .	784
16.5 Jupyter Kernel Creator Extension . . . . .	786
16.5.1 BCM Predefined Kernel Templates . . . . .	787
16.5.2 Jupyter Kernel Starter . . . . .	792
16.5.3 Running Jupyter Kernels With Two Factor Authentication . . . . .	793
16.5.4 Running Jupyter Kernels With Kubernetes . . . . .	794
16.5.5 Running Jupyter Kernels Based On NGC Containers . . . . .	794
16.5.6 Running Jupyter Kernels With Workload Managers . . . . .	797

16.6 Jupyter Kernel Creator Extension Customization . . . . .	798
16.6.1 Kernel Template Parameters Definition . . . . .	798
16.6.2 Kernel Template Parameters Usage . . . . .	801
16.6.3 Filtering Out Irrelevant Templates From The Interface For Users . . . . .	802
16.7 Jupyter VNC Extension . . . . .	803
16.7.1 What Is Jupyter VNC Extension About? . . . . .	803
16.7.2 Enabling User Lingering . . . . .	804
16.7.3 Starting A VNC Session With The Jupyter VNC Extension . . . . .	804
16.7.4 Running Examples And Applications In The VNC Session With The Jupyter VNC Extension . . . . .	806
16.8 Jupyter WLM Magic Extension . . . . .	807
16.9 Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager . . . . .	809
16.9.1 Overview Tab . . . . .	810
16.9.2 Jupyter Kernel Overview Tab . . . . .	811
16.9.3 Jobs Tab . . . . .	812
16.9.4 Pods Tab . . . . .	813
16.9.5 PVCs Tab . . . . .	815
16.9.6 PSQL Tab . . . . .	817
16.9.7 Spark Tab . . . . .	819
16.9.8 Events Tab . . . . .	827
16.10 Jupyter Environment Removal . . . . .	828
<b>A Generated Files</b>	<b>829</b>
A.1 System Configuration Files Created Or Modified By CMDeamon On Head Nodes . . . . .	829
A.2 System Configuration Files Created Or Modified Directly On The Node . . . . .	832
A.2.1 Options To <code>filewriteinfo</code> . . . . .	833
A.2.2 Files Created On Regular Nodes By CMDaemon . . . . .	834
A.2.3 Files Created On Regular Nodes By The Node-Installer . . . . .	835
A.3 Files Not Generated, But Installed In RHEL And Derivatives . . . . .	836
<b>B Bright Computing Public Key</b>	<b>841</b>
<b>C CMDaemon Configuration File Directives</b>	<b>843</b>
<b>D Disk Partitioning And RAID Configuration</b>	<b>875</b>
D.1 Structure Of Partitioning Definition—The Global Partitioning XML Schema Definition File	875
D.2 Structure Of Hardware RAID Definition—The Hardware RAID XML Schema Definition File . . . . .	883
D.3 Example: Default Node Partitioning . . . . .	886
D.4 Example: Hardware RAID Configuration . . . . .	888
D.4.1 RAID level 0 And RAID 10 Example . . . . .	888
D.5 Example: Software RAID . . . . .	890
D.6 Example: Software RAID With Swap . . . . .	891
D.7 Example: Logical Volume Manager . . . . .	891
D.8 Example: Logical Volume Manager With RAID 1 . . . . .	893
D.9 Example: Diskless . . . . .	894
D.10 Example: Semi-diskless . . . . .	895

D.11 Example: Preventing Accidental Data Loss . . . . .	895
D.12 Example: Using Custom Assertions . . . . .	896
D.13 Example: Software RAID1 With One Big Partition . . . . .	897
D.14 Example: Software RAID5 With One Big Partition . . . . .	899
D.15 Example: Software RAID1 With Standard Partitioning . . . . .	901
D.16 Example: Software RAID5 With Standard Partitioning . . . . .	904
D.17 Example: LUKS Disk Encryption With Standard Partitioning . . . . .	906
D.17.1 Introduction . . . . .	907
D.17.2 Node Provisioned Over The Network: Encrypted Partition XML Example . . . . .	907
D.17.3 Standalone Node: Encrypted Partition XML Example . . . . .	910
D.17.4 Changing A Passphrase On An Encrypted Node . . . . .	911
<b>E Example initialize And finalize Scripts</b>	<b>913</b>
E.1 When Are They Used? . . . . .	913
E.2 Accessing From Base View And cmsh . . . . .	913
E.3 Environment Variables Available To initialize And finalize Scripts . . . . .	914
E.4 Using Environment Variables Stored In Multiple Variables . . . . .	917
E.5 Storing A Configuration To A Filesystem . . . . .	918
E.5.1 Storing With Initialize Scripts . . . . .	918
E.5.2 Ways Of Writing A Finalize Script To Configure The Destination Nodes . . . . .	918
E.5.3 Restricting The Script To Nodes Or Node Categories . . . . .	921
<b>F Workload Managers Quick Reference</b>	<b>923</b>
F.1 Slurm . . . . .	923
F.2 PBS Professional . . . . .	925
<b>G Metrics, Health Checks, Enummetrics, And Actions</b>	<b>927</b>
G.1 Metrics And Their Parameters . . . . .	927
G.1.1 Regular Metrics . . . . .	928
G.1.2 NFS Metrics . . . . .	935
G.1.3 InfiniBand Metrics . . . . .	937
G.1.4 Monitoring System Metrics . . . . .	939
G.1.5 CPU Metrics Sampled By The CPUSampler And GPUSampler . . . . .	941
G.1.6 GPU Metrics . . . . .	941
G.1.7 GPU Profiling Metrics . . . . .	943
G.1.8 Job Metrics . . . . .	944
G.1.9 IPMI Metrics . . . . .	951
G.1.10 Redfish Metrics . . . . .	952
G.1.11 SMART Metrics . . . . .	953
G.1.12 Prometheus Metrics . . . . .	954
G.1.13 NetQ Metrics . . . . .	956
G.1.14 Kubernetes Metrics . . . . .	957
G.1.15 Parameters For Metrics . . . . .	967
G.2 Health Checks And Their Parameters . . . . .	970
G.2.1 Regular Health Checks . . . . .	971
G.2.2 GPU Health Checks . . . . .	977
G.2.3 Redfish Health Checks . . . . .	978

G.2.4	NetQ Health Checks . . . . .	978
G.2.5	Parameters For Health Checks . . . . .	979
G.3	Enummetrics . . . . .	980
G.4	Actions And Their Parameters . . . . .	982
G.4.1	Actions . . . . .	982
G.4.2	Parameters For A Monitoring Action . . . . .	982
<b>H</b>	<b>Workload Manager Configuration Files Updated By CMDaemon</b>	<b>985</b>
H.1	Slurm . . . . .	985
H.2	PBS Professional/OpenPBS . . . . .	985
H.3	LSF . . . . .	985
<b>I</b>	<b>Changing The LDAP Password</b>	<b>987</b>
I.1	Setting A New Password For The LDAP Server . . . . .	987
I.2	Setting The New Password In <code>cmd.conf</code> . . . . .	987
I.3	Checking LDAP Access . . . . .	988
<b>J</b>	<b>Tokens</b>	<b>989</b>
<b>K</b>	<b>Understanding Consolidation</b>	<b>1005</b>
K.1	Introduction . . . . .	1005
K.2	What Is Consolidation? . . . . .	1005
K.3	Raw Data And Consolidation . . . . .	1005
K.4	A Demonstration Of The Output . . . . .	1006
<b>L</b>	<b>Node Execution Filters And Execution Multiplexers</b>	<b>1009</b>
L.1	Data Producers: Default Configuration For Running And Sampling . . . . .	1010
L.1.1	Nodes That Data Producers Are Running On By Default—The <code>nodes</code> Command .	1010
L.1.2	Nodes That Data Producers Target By Default—The <code>samplenow</code> Command . .	1010
L.2	Data Producers: Configuration For Running And Targeting . . . . .	1011
L.2.1	Custom Metrics From The <code>fm.sh</code> Custom Script . . . . .	1011
L.3	Replacing A Resource With An Explicit Node Specification . . . . .	1013
L.4	Excessive Sampling . . . . .	1014
L.5	Not Just For Nodes . . . . .	1015
L.6	Lua Node Execution Filters . . . . .	1015
<b>M</b>	<b>A Tree View Of <code>cmsh</code></b>	<b>1019</b>
M.1	Modes . . . . .	1019
<b>N</b>	<b>BCM And NVIDIA AI Enterprise</b>	<b>1025</b>
N.0.1	Certified Features Of BCM For NVIDIA AI Enterprise . . . . .	1025
N.0.2	NVIDIA AI Enterprise Compatible Servers . . . . .	1025
N.0.3	NVIDIA Software Versions Supported . . . . .	1025
N.0.4	NVIDIA AI Enterprise Product Support Matrix . . . . .	1025



# Preface

Welcome to the *Administrator Manual* for the NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11 (BCM) environment.

## 0.1 Quickstart

For readers who want to get a cluster up and running as quickly as possible with NVIDIA Base Command Manager, there is a quickstart installation guide in Chapter 1 of the *Installation Manual*.

## 0.2 About This Manual

The rest of this manual is aimed at helping system administrators configure, understand, and manage a cluster running BCM so as to get the best out of it.

The *Administrator Manual* covers administration topics which are specific to the BCM environment. Readers should already be familiar with basic Linux system administration, which the manual does not generally cover. Aspects of system administration that require a more advanced understanding of Linux concepts for clusters are explained appropriately.

This manual is not intended for users interested only in interacting with the cluster to run compute jobs. The *User Manual* is intended to get such users up to speed with the user environment and workload management system.

## 0.3 About The Manuals In General

Regularly updated versions of the NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11 manuals are available on updated clusters by default at `/cm/shared/docs/cm`. The latest updates are always online at <https://docs.nvidia.com/base-command-manager>.

- The *Administrator Manual* describes the general administration of the cluster.
- The *Installation Manual* describes installation procedures.
- The *User Manual* describes the user environment and how to submit jobs for the end user.
- The *Cloudbursting Manual* describes how to deploy the cloud capabilities of the cluster.
- The *Developer Manual* has useful information for developers who would like to carry out programming tasks with BCM.
- The *Edge Manual* describes how to install and configure machine learning capabilities with BCM.
- The *Containerization Manual* describes how to manage containers with BCM.
- The *NVIDIA Mission Control Manual* describes NVIDIA Mission Control capabilities and integration with BCM.

If the manuals are downloaded and kept in one local directory, then in most pdf viewers, clicking on a cross-reference in one manual that refers to a section in another manual opens and displays that section in the second manual. Navigating back and forth between documents is usually possible with keystrokes or mouse clicks.

For example: <Alt>-<Backarrow> in Acrobat Reader, or clicking on the bottom leftmost navigation button of xpdf, both navigate back to the previous document.

The manuals constantly evolve to keep up with the development of the BCM environment and the addition of new hardware and/or applications. The manuals also regularly incorporate feedback from administrators and users, who can submit comments, suggestions or corrections via the website

<https://enterprise-support.nvidia.com/s/create-case>

Section 14.2 of the *Administration Manual* has more details on submitting an issue.

## 0.4 Getting Administrator-Level Support

Support for BCM subscriptions from version 10 onwards is available via the NVIDIA Enterprise Support page at:

<https://www.nvidia.com/en-us/support/enterprise/>

Section 14.2 has more details on working with support.

## 0.5 Getting Professional Services

The BCM support team normally differentiates between

- regular support (customer has a question or problem that requires an answer or resolution), and
- professional services (customer asks for the team to do something or asks the team to provide some service).

Professional services can be provided via the NVIDIA Enterprise Services page at:

<https://www.nvidia.com/en-us/support/enterprise/services/>

# 1

# Introduction

## 1.1 NVIDIA Base Command Manager Functions And Aims

NVIDIA Base Command Manager (often shortened to BCM) contains tools and applications to facilitate the installation, administration, and monitoring of a cluster. In addition, BCM aims to provide users with an optimal environment for developing and running applications that require extensive computational resources.

## 1.2 The Scope Of The Administrator Manual (This Manual)

The *Administrator Manual* covers installation, configuration, management, and monitoring of BCM, along with relevant background information to help understand the topics covered.

### 1.2.1 Installation

Installation can generally be divided into parts as follows, with some parts covered by the *Administrator Manual*, some by the *Installation Manual*, and some by other manuals:

- **Initial installation of BCM:** This is covered in the *Installation Manual*, which gives a short introduction to the concept of a cluster along with details on installing BCM onto the head node. The *Installation Manual* is therefore the first manual an administrator should usually turn to when getting to work with BCM for the first time. The *Administrator Manual* can be referred to as the main reference resource once the head node has had BCM installed on it.
- **Provisioning installation:** This is covered in the *Administrator Manual*. After the head node has had BCM installed on it, the other, regular, nodes can (network) boot off it and provision themselves from it with a default image, without requiring a Linux distribution DVD themselves. The network boot and provisioning process for the regular nodes is described in detail in Chapter 5.  
In brief, provisioning installs an operating system and files on a node. This kind of installation to a regular node differs from a normal Linux installation in several ways. An important difference is that content that is put on the filesystem of the regular node is normally overwritten by provisioning when the regular node reboots.
- **Post-installation software installation:** The installation of software to a cluster that is already configured and running BCM is described in detail in Chapter 9 of this manual.
- **Third-party software installation:** The installation of software that is not developed as part of BCM, but is supported as a part of BCM. This is described in detail in the *Installation Manual*.
- **Cloudbursting, and Edge:** these are integrated as part of BCM in various ways. These have their own deployment procedures and have separate manuals.

### 1.2.2 Configuration, Management, And Monitoring Via BCM Tools And Applications

The administrator normally deals with the cluster software configuration via a front end to BCM. This can be GUI-based (Base View, section 2.4) or shell-based (cmsh, section 2.5). Other tasks can be handled via special tools provided with BCM, or the usual Linux tools. The use of BCM tools is usually recommended over standard Linux tools because cluster administration often has special issues, including that of scale.

The following topics are among those covered in this manual:

Chapter	Title	Description
2	Cluster Management With NVIDIA Base Command Manager	Introduction to main concepts and tools of BCM. Lays down groundwork for the remaining chapters
3	Configuring The Cluster	Further configuration and set up of the cluster after software installation of BCM on the head node.
4	Power Management	How power management within the cluster works
5	Node Provisioning	Node provisioning in detail
6	User Management	Account management for users and groups
7	Workload Management	Workload management implementation and use
8	The cm-scale Service	A BCM service to dynamically scale the cluster according to need
9	Post-Installation Software Management	Managing, updating, modifying BCM software and images
10	Monitoring: Monitoring Cluster Devices	Device monitoring and conditional action triggers
11	Monitoring: Job Monitoring	Jobs resource consumption monitoring by the jobs
12	Monitoring: Job Accounting	Jobs resource consumption monitoring aggregated by user or similar groupings
13	Monitoring: Job Chargeback	Resource request monitoring, so that groups of users can be charged for their use
14	Day-To-Day Administration	Miscellaneous administration
15	High Availability	Background details and setup instructions to build a cluster with redundant head nodes
16	The Jupyter Notebook Environment Integration	Installing and using the Jupyter notebook environment

The appendices to this manual generally give supplementary details to the main text.

The following topics are also logically a part of BCM administration, but they have their own separate manuals. This is because they have, or are eventually expected to have, many features or cover a special set of topics:

- Cloudbursting (*Cloudbursting Manual*)
- Edge deployment (*Edge Manual*)
- Developer topics (*Developer Manual*)
- Containerization topics (*Containerization Manual*)
- NVIDIA Mission Control topics (*NVIDIA Mission Control Manual*)

## 1.3 Outside The Direct Scope Of The Administrator Manual

The following supplementary resources can deal with issues related to this manual, but are outside its direct scope:

- **Use by the end user.** This is covered very peripherally in this manual. The user normally interacts with the cluster by logging into a custom Linux user environment to run jobs. Details on running jobs from the perspective of the user are given in the *User Manual*.
- **The knowledge base** at <http://kb.brightcomputing.com> often supplements the *Administrator Manual* with discussion of the following:
  - Obscure, or complicated, configuration cases
  - Procedures that are not really within the scope of BCM itself, but that may come up as part of related general Linux configuration.
- **Further support options.** If the issue is not described adequately in the manuals, then section 14.2 describes how to get further support.



# 2

# Cluster Management With NVIDIA Base Command Manager

This chapter introduces cluster management with NVIDIA Base Command Manager. A cluster running BCM exports a cluster management interface to the outside world, which can be used by any application designed to communicate with the cluster.

Section 2.1 introduces a number of concepts which are key to cluster management using BCM.

Section 2.2 gives a short introduction on how the modules environment can be used by administrators. The modules environment provides facilities to control aspects of a users' interactive sessions and also the environment used by compute jobs.

Section 2.3 introduces how authentication to the cluster management infrastructure works and how it is used. Section 2.4 and section 2.5 introduce the cluster management GUI (Base View) and cluster management shell (cmsh) respectively. These are the primary applications that interact with the cluster management daemon.

Section 2.6 describes the basics of the cluster management daemon, CMDaemon, running on all nodes of the cluster.

## 2.1 Concepts

In this section some concepts central to cluster management with BCM are introduced.

### 2.1.1 Devices

A *device* in BCM infrastructure represents components of a cluster. A device can be any of the following types:

- Head Node
- Physical Node
- Virtual Node
- Cloud Node
- GPU Unit
- Chassis
- Switch (ethernet, InfiniBand, Myrinet)
- Lite Node

- Power Distribution Unit
- Rack Sensor Kit
- Generic Device

A device can have a number of properties (e.g. rack position, hostname, switch port) which can be set in order to configure the device. Using BCM, operations (e.g. power on) may be performed on a device. The property changes and operations that can be performed on a device depend on the type of device. For example, it is possible to mount a new filesystem to a node, but not to an Ethernet switch.

Every device that is managed by BCM has a device state associated with it. The table below describes the most important states for devices:

device statuses	device is	monitored by BCM?	state tracking?
[ UP ]	UP	monitored	tracked
[ DOWN ]	DOWN	monitored	tracked
[ CLOSED ] (UP)	UP	mostly ignored	tracked
[ CLOSED ] (DOWN)	DOWN	mostly ignored	tracked

These, and other states are described in more detail in section 5.5.

[ DOWN ] and [ CLOSED ] (DOWN) states have an important difference. In the case of [ DOWN ], the device is down, but is typically intended to be available, and thus typically indicates a failure. In the case of [ CLOSED ] (DOWN), the device is down, but is intended to be unavailable, and typically indicates that the administrator deliberately brought the device down, and would like the device to be ignored.

### 2.1.2 Software Images

A *software image* is a blueprint for the contents of the local filesystems on a regular node. In practice, a software image is a directory on the head node containing a full Linux filesystem.

The software image in a standard BCM installation is based on the same parent distribution that the head node uses. A different distribution can also be chosen after installation, from the distributions listed in section 2.1 of the *Installation Manual* for the software image. That is, the head node and the regular nodes can run different parent distributions. However, such a “mixed” cluster can be harder to manage and it is easier for problems to arise in such mixtures. Such mixtures, while supported, are therefore not recommended, and should only be administered by system administrators that understand the differences between Linux distributions.

RHEL 8 and Rocky Linux 8 mixtures are completely compatible with each other on the head and regular nodes. The same applies to RHEL9 and Rocky Linux 9. That is because Rocky Linux is designed to be a binary-compatible derivative of its RHEL parents. On the other hand, SLES and Ubuntu need quite some effort to work in a mixture.

When a regular node boots, the node provisioning system (Chapter 5) sets up the node with a copy of the software image, which by default is called `default-image`.

Once the node is fully booted, it is possible to instruct the node to re-synchronize its local filesystems with the software image. This procedure can be used to distribute changes to the software image without rebooting nodes (section 5.6.2).

It is also possible to “lock” a software image so that no node is able to pick up the image until the software image is unlocked. (section 5.4.7).

Software images can be changed using regular Linux tools and commands (such as `rpm` and `chroot`). More details on making changes to software images and doing image package management can be found in Chapter 9.

### 2.1.3 Node Categories

#### Reasons For Categories

The collection of settings in BCM that can apply to a node is called the configuration of the node. The administrator usually configures nodes using the Base View (section 2.4) or cmsh (section 2.5) front end tools, and the configurations are managed internally with a database.

A *node category* is a group of regular nodes that share the same configuration. Node categories allow efficiency, allowing an administrator to:

- configure a large group of nodes at once. For example, to set up a group of nodes with a particular disk layout.
- operate on a large group of nodes at once. For example, to carry out a reboot on an entire category.

A regular node is in exactly one category at all times, which is `default` by default. The default category can be changed by accessing the `base` object of partition mode (page 101), and setting the value of `defaultcategory` to another, existing, category.

Nodes are typically divided into node categories based on the hardware specifications of a node or based on the task that a node is to perform. Whether or not a number of nodes should be placed in a separate category depends mainly on whether the configuration—for example: monitoring setup, disk layout, role assignment—for these nodes differs from the rest of the nodes.

#### Corresponding Category Values And Node Values

- For non-boolean values, a node inherits values from the category it is in. Each value is treated as the `default` property value for a node, and can be overruled by specifying the `node` property value for a particular node.
- For boolean values, such as `datanode` (page 261) and `installbootrecord` (page 269), a node does not inherit the value from the category it is in. Instead the category boolean value has the `boolean or` operation applied to the node boolean value, and the result is the boolean value that is used for the node. This is reasonably similar to the non-boolean values behavior.

#### Category And Software Image Do Not Necessarily Map One-To-One

One configuration property value of a node category is its software image (section 2.1.2). However, there is no requirement for a one-to-one correspondence between node categories and software images. Therefore multiple node categories may use the same software image, and conversely, one variable image—it is variable because it can be changed by the node setting—may be used in the same node category.

Software images can have their parameters overruled by the category settings. By default, however, the category settings that can overrule the software image parameters are unset.

By default, all nodes are placed in the `default` category. Alternative categories can be created and used at will, such as:

#### Example

Node Category	Description
<code>nodes-ib</code>	nodes with InfiniBand capabilities
<code>nodes-highmem</code>	nodes with extra memory
<code>login</code>	login nodes
<code>storage</code>	storage nodes

### 2.1.4 Node Groups

A *node group* consists of nodes that have been grouped together for convenience. The group can consist of any mix of all kinds of nodes, irrespective of whether they are head nodes or regular nodes, and

irrespective of what category they are in. A node may be in 0 or more node groups at one time. I.e.: a node may belong to many node groups.

Node groups are used mainly for carrying out operations on an entire group of nodes at a time. Since the nodes inside a node group do not necessarily share the same configuration, configuration changes cannot be carried out using node groups.

### Example

Node Group	Members
brokenhardware	node087, node783, node917
headnodes	mycluster-m1, mycluster-m2
rack5	node212..node254
top	node084, node126, node168, node210

One important use for node groups is in the `nodegroups` property of the provisioning role configuration (section 5.2.1), where a list of node groups that provisioning nodes provision is specified.

### 2.1.5 Roles

A *role* is a task that can be performed by a node. By assigning a certain role to a node, an administrator activates the functionality that the role represents on this node. For example, a node can be turned into provisioning node, or can be turned into a storage node, by assigning the corresponding roles to the node.

Roles can be assigned to individual nodes or to node categories. When a role has been assigned to a node category, it is implicitly assigned to all nodes inside the category.

A *configuration overlay* (section 2.1.6) is a group of roles that can be assigned to designated groups of nodes within a cluster. This allows configuration of a large number of configuration parameters in various combinations of nodes.

Some roles allow parameters to be set that influence the behavior of the role. For example, the `Slurm Client Role` (which turns a node into a Slurm client) uses parameters to control how the node is configured within Slurm in terms of queues and the number of GPUs.

When a role has been assigned to a node category with a certain set of parameters, it is possible to override the parameters for a node inside the category. This can be done by assigning the role again to the individual node with a different set of parameters. Roles that have been assigned to nodes override roles that have been assigned to a node category.

Roles have a priority setting associated with them. Roles assigned at category level have a fixed priority of 250, while roles assigned at node level have a fixed priority of 750. The configuration overlay priority is variable, but is set to 500 by default. Thus, for example, roles assigned at the node level override roles assigned at the category level. Roles assigned at the node level also override roles assigned by the default configuration overlay.

A role can be imported from another entity, such as a role, a category, or a configuration overlay.

Examples of role assignment are given in sections 5.2.2 and 5.2.3.

### 2.1.6 Configuration Overlay

A configuration overlay assigns roles (section 2.1.5) for groups of nodes. The number of roles can be quite large, and priorities can be set for these.

Multiple configuration overlays can be set for a node. A priority can be set for each configuration overlay, so that a configuration overlay with a higher priority is applied to its associated node instead of a configuration overlay with a lower priority. The configuration overlay with the highest priority then determines the actual assigned role.

A configuration overlay assigns a group of roles to an instance. This means that roles are assigned to nodes according to the instance configuration, along with a priority. Whether the configuration over-

lay assignment is used, or whether the original role assignment is used, depends upon the configured priorities.

Configuration overlays can take on priorities in the range 0-1000, except for 250 and 750, which are forbidden. Setting a priority of -1 means that the configuration overlay is ignored.

The priorities of 250, 500, and 750 are also special, as indicated by the following table:

priority	assigned to node from
-1	<i>configuration overlay not assigned</i>
250	category
500	configuration overlay with default priority
750	node

## 2.2 Modules Environment

The *modules environment* is the shell environment that is set up by a third-party software (section 7.1 of the *Installation Manual*) called Environment Modules. The software allows users to modify their shell environment using pre-defined *modules*. A module may, for example, configure the user's shell to run a certain version of an application.

Details of the modules environment from a user perspective are discussed in section 2.3 of the *User Manual*. However some aspects of it are relevant for administrators and are therefore discussed here.

### 2.2.1 Adding And Removing Modules

Modules may be loaded and unloaded, and also be combined for greater flexibility.

Modules currently installed are listed with:

```
module list
```

The modules available for loading are listed with:

```
module avail
```

Loading and removing specific modules is done with `module load` and `module remove`, using this format:

```
module load <module name 1> [<module name 2> ...]
```

For example, loading the shared module (section 2.2.2), the `gcc` compiler, the `openmpi` parallel library, and the `openblas` library, allows an MPI application `myapp.c` to be compiled with OpenBLAS optimizations:

#### Example

```
module add shared
module add gcc/13.1.0
module add openmpi/gcc/64/4.1.5
module add openblas
module add openblas/dynamic/0.3.18
mpicc -o myapp myapp.c
```

The exact versions used can be selected using tab-completion. In most cases, specifying version numbers explicitly is typically only necessary when multiple versions of an application are installed and available. When there is no ambiguity, module names without a further path specification may be used.

## 2.2.2 Using Local And Shared Modules

Applications and their associated modules are divided into *local* and *shared* groups. Local applications are installed on the local filesystem, whereas shared applications reside on a shared (i.e. imported) filesystem.

It is recommended that the shared module be loaded by default for ordinary users. Loading it gives access to the modules belonging to shared applications, and allows the `module avail` command to show these extra modules.

Loading the shared module automatically for root is not recommended on a cluster where shared storage is not on the head node itself. This is because root logins could be obstructed if this storage is not available, and if the root user relies on files in the shared storage.

On clusters without external shared storage, root can safely load the shared module automatically at login. This can be done by running the following command as root:

```
module initadd shared
```

Other modules can also be set to load automatically by the user at login by using “`module initadd`” with the full path specification. With the `initadd` option, individual users can customize their own default modules environment.

Modules can be combined in *meta-modules*. By default, the `default-environment` meta-module exists, which allows the loading of several modules at once by a user. Cluster administrators are encouraged to customize the `default-environment` meta-module to set up a recommended environment for their users. The `default-environment` meta-module is empty by default.

The administrator and users have the flexibility of deciding the modules that should be loaded in undecided cases via module *dependencies*. Dependencies can be defined using the `prereq` and `conflict` commands. The man page for `modulefile` gives details on configuring the loading of modules with these commands.

## 2.2.3 Setting Up A Default Environment For All Users

How users can set up particular modules to load automatically for their own use with the `module initadd` command is discussed in section 2.2.2.

How the administrator can set up particular modules to load automatically for all users by default is discussed in this section (section 2.2.3). In this example it is assumed that all users have just the following modules as a default:

### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ module list
Currently Loaded Modulefiles:
1) shared
```

The `slurm` and `gdb` modules can then be set up by the administrator as a default for all users in the following 2 ways:

1. Creating and defining part of a `.profile` to be executed for login shells. For example, a file `userdefaultmodules.sh` created by the administrator:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /etc/profile.d/userdefaultmodules.sh
module load shared
module load slurm
module load gdb
```

Whenever users now carry out a bash login, these modules are loaded.

2. Instead of placing the modules directly in a script under `profile.d` like in the preceding item, a slightly more sophisticated way is to set the modules in the meta-module `/cm/shared/modulefiles/default-environment`. For example:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /cm/shared/modulefiles/default-environment
#!/bin/tcsh -f
## default modulefile
##
proc ModulesHelp { } {
    puts stderr "\tLoads default environment modules for this cluster"
}
module-whatis "adds default environment modules"

# Add any modules here that should be added by when a user loads the 'default-environment' module
module add shared slurm gdb
```

The script `userdefaultmodules.sh` script under `profile.d` then only needs to have the `default-environment` module loaded in it:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /etc/profile.d/userdefaultmodules.sh
module load -s default-environment
```

The `-s` option is used to load it silently, because otherwise a message is displayed on the terminal informing the person logging in that the `default-environment` module has been loaded.

Now, whenever the administrator changes the `default-environment` module, users get these changes too during login.

The lexicographical order of the scripts in the `/etc/profile` directory is important. For example, naming the file `defaultusermodules.sh` instead of `userdefaultmodules.sh` means that the `modules.sh` script is run after the file is run, instead of before, which would cause an error.

#### 2.2.4 Creating A Modules Environment Module

All module files are located in the `/cm/local/modulefiles` and `/cm/shared/modulefiles` directories. A module file is a Tcl or Lua script in which special commands are used to define functionality. The `modulefile(1)` man page has more on this.

Cluster administrators can use the existing modules files as a guide to creating and installing their own modules for module environments, and can copy and modify a file for their own software if there is no environment provided for it already by BCM.

#### 2.2.5 Lua Modules Environment (LMod)

By default, BCM uses traditional Tcl scripts for its module files, or *TMod*. Lua modules, or *LMod*, provide an alternative modules environment, where the files are typically written in Lua. LMod can be used as a replacement for TMod.

Conceptually LMod works in the same way as TMod, but provides some extra features and commands.

For LMod, the module files are typically written in Lua, but LMod is also capable of reading Tcl module files. It is therefore not necessary to convert all existing Tcl modules manually to the Lua language.

On a BCM cluster, both LMod and TMod are installed by default. However only one of them is active, depending on which one is enabled. Switching between LMod and TMod for a node can be done by setting an environment variable, `$ENABLE_LMOD` in the `cm-lmod-init.sh` shell script.

#### Switching For The Head Node

For example, for the head node:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /etc/sysconfig/modules/lmod/cm-lmod-init.sh
export ENABLE_LMOD=1
```

In the preceding example, LMod is enabled, and TMod is disabled because \$ENABLE\_LMOD is set to 1.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /etc/sysconfig/modules/lmod/cm-lmod-init.sh
export ENABLE_LMOD=0
```

In the preceding example, LMod is disabled, and TMod is enabled because \$ENABLE\_LMOD is set to 0.

A change in the file on the node is effective after having logged out, then logged into the shell again.

### Switching For The Regular Nodes

A *node image* is a directory and contents of that directory. It is used as the template for a regular node when the node is provisioned (Chapter 5). For a node image with the name <image name>, the cm-lmod-init.sh file is located at /cm/images/<image name>/etc/sysconfig/modules/lmod/cm-lmod-init.sh. For switching between LMod and TMod on a regular node, the file is changed on the image, and the file on the image is then updated to the node. The update from the image to the node is typically carried out with the imageupdate command in cmsh (section 5.6.2) or the Update node command in Base View (section 5.6.3).

## 2.3 Authentication

### 2.3.1 Changing Administrative Passwords On The Cluster

How to set up or change regular user passwords is not discussed here, but in Chapter 6 on user management.

Amongst the administrative passwords associated with the cluster are:

1. **The root password of the head node:** This allows a root login to the head node.
2. **The root passwords of the software images:** These allow a root login to a regular node running with that image, and is stored in the image file.
3. **The root password of the node-installer:** This allows a root login to the node when the node-installer, a stripped-down operating system, is running. The node-installer stage prepares the node for the final operating system when the node is booting up. Section 5.4 discusses the node-installer in more detail.
4. **The root password of MySQL:** This allows a root login to the MySQL server.

To avoid having to remember the disparate ways in which to change these 4 kinds of passwords, the cm-change-passwd command runs a dialog prompting the administrator on which of them, if any, should be changed, as in the following example:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-change-passwd
With this utility you can easily change the following passwords:
* root password of head node
* root password of slave images
* root password of node-installer
* root password of mysql
```

Note: if this cluster has a high-availability setup with 2 head nodes, be sure to run this script on both head nodes.

```
Change password for root on head node? [y/N]: y
Changing password for root on head node.
Changing password for user root.
New password:
Retype new password:
passwd: all authentication tokens updated successfully.

Change password for root in default-image [y/N]: y
Changing password for root in default-image.
Changing password for user root.
New password:
Retype new password:
passwd: all authentication tokens updated successfully.

Change password for root in node-installer? [y/N]: y
Changing password for root in node-installer.
Changing password for user root.
New password:
Retype new password:
passwd: all authentication tokens updated successfully.

Change password for MYSQL root user? [y/N]: y
Changing password for MYSQL root user.
Old password:
New password:
Re-enter new password:
```

For a high-availability—also called a failover—configuration, the passwords are copied over automatically to the other head node when a change is made in the software image root password (case 2 on page 32).

For the remaining password cases (head root password, MySQL root password, and node-installer root password), the passwords are best “copied” over to the other head node by simply rerunning the script on the other head node.

Also, in the case of the password for software images used by the regular nodes: the new password that is set for a regular node only works on the node after the image on the node itself has been updated, with, for example, the `imageupdate` command (section 5.6.2). Alternatively, the new password can be made to work on the node by simply rebooting the node to pick up the new image.

The LDAP root password is a random string set during installation. Changing this is not done using `cm-change-password`. It can be changed as explained in Appendix I.

If the administrator has stored the password to the cluster in the Base View front-end, then the password should be modified there too (figure 2.2).

### 2.3.2 Logins Using ssh

The standard system login root password of the head node, the software image, and the node-installer, can be set using the `cm-change-passwd` command (section 2.3.1).

In contrast, ssh logins from the head node to the regular nodes are set by default to be passwordless:

- For non-root users, an ssh passwordless login works if the `/home` directory that contains the authorized keys for these users is mounted. The `/home` directory is mounted by default on the head node as well as on the regular node, so that by default a passwordless login works from the head node to the regular nodes, as well as from the regular nodes to the head node.

- For the root user, an ssh passwordless login should always work from the head node to the regular nodes since the authorized keys are stored in /root. Logins from the regular node to the head node are configured by default to request a password, as a security consideration.

Users can be restricted from ssh logins

- on regular nodes using the cmsh usernodelogin option (section 7.2.1) or the Base View User node login (section 7.2.2) settings
- on the head node by modifying the sshd configuration on the head node. For example, to allow only root logins, the value of AllowUsers can be set in /etc/ssh/sshd\_config to root. The man page for sshd\_config has details on this.

### 2.3.3 Certificates

#### PEM Certificates And CMDaemon Front-end Authentication

While nodes in the cluster accept ordinary ssh-based logins, the cluster manager accepts public key authentication using X509v3 certificates. Public key authentication using X509v3 certificates means in practice that the person authenticating to the cluster manager must present their public certificate, and in addition must have access to the private key that corresponds to the certificate.

BCM uses the PEM format for certificates. In this format, the certificate and private key are stored as plain text in two separate PEM-encoded files, ending in .pem and .key.

**Using cmsh and authenticating to BCM:** By default, one administrator certificate is created for root for the cmsh front end to interact with the cluster manager. The certificate and corresponding private key are thus found on a newly-installed BCM cluster on the head node at:

```
/root/.cm/admin.pem  
/root/.cm/admin.key
```

The cmsh front end, when accessing the certificate and key pair as user root, uses this pair by default, so that prompting for authentication is then not a security requirement. The logic that is followed to access the certificate and key by default is explained in detail in item 2 on page 319.

**Using Base View and authenticating to BCM:** When an administrator uses the Base View front end, a login to the cluster is carried out with username password authentication (figure 2.2), unless the authentication has already been stored in the browser, or unless certificate-based authentication is used.

- Certificate-based authentication can be carried out using a PKCS#12 certificate file. This can be generated from the PEM format certificates. For example, for the root user, an openssl command that can be used to generate the admin.pfx file is:

```
openssl pkcs12 -export -in ~/cm/admin.pem -inkey ~/cm/admin.key -out ~/cm/admin.pfx
```

- In Chrome, the IMPORT wizard at chrome://settings/certificates can be used to save the file into the browser.
- For Firefox, the equivalent navigation path is:  
 about:preferences#privacy > Certificates > View Certificates > Your Certificates  
 > Import

The browser can then access the Base View front end without a username/password combination.

If the administrator certificate and key are replaced, then any other certificates signed by the original administrator certificate must be generated again using the replacement, because otherwise they will no longer function.

Certificate generation in general, including the generation and use of non-administrator certificates, is described in greater detail in section 6.4.

### Replacing A Temporary Or Evaluation License

In the preceding section, if a license is replaced, then regular user certificates need to be generated again. Similarly, if a temporary or evaluation license is replaced, regular user certificates need to be generated again. This is because the old user certificates are signed by a key that is no longer valid. The generation of non-administrator certificates and how they function is described in section 6.4.

### Checking Certificates Validity With `cm-check-certificates.sh`

A BCM script that checks whether certificates are current or expired is `/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/cm-check-certificates.sh`:

#### Example

```
root@basecm11:~# /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/cm-check-certificates.sh
/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cluster.pem: OK
/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cert.pem: OK

/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cluster.key : matches

All /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cluster.pem files are up to date (82070dedb489df6c19ffa3ace1bf354e)

/root/.cm/admin.pem: OK
... output truncated ...
root@basecm11:~#
```

### 2.3.4 Profiles

Certificates that authenticate to CMDaemon contain a *profile*.

A profile determines which cluster management operations the certificate holder may perform. The administrator certificate is created with the `admin` profile, which is a built-in profile that allows all cluster management operations to be performed. In this sense it is similar to the `root` account on unix systems. Other certificates may be created with different profiles giving certificate owners access to a pre-defined subset of the cluster management functionality (section 6.4).

## 2.4 Base View GUI

This section introduces the basics of the cluster management GUI (Base View). Base View is the web application front end to cluster management in BCM.

Base View is supported to run on the last 2 versions of Firefox, Google Chrome, Edge, and Safari. “Last 2 versions” means the last two publicly released versions at the time of release of NVIDIA Base Command Manager. For example, at the time of writing of this section, June 2025, the last 2 versions were:

Browser	Versions
Chrome	136, 137
Edge	136, 137
Firefox	138, 139
Safari	18.4, 18.5

Base View should run on more up-to-date versions of the browsers in the table without issues.

Base View should run on other recent browsers without issues too, but this is not supported. Browsers that run on mobile devices are also not supported.

#### 2.4.1 Installing The Cluster Management GUI Service

In a default installation, accessing the head node hostname or IP address with a browser leads to the landing page (figure 2.1).

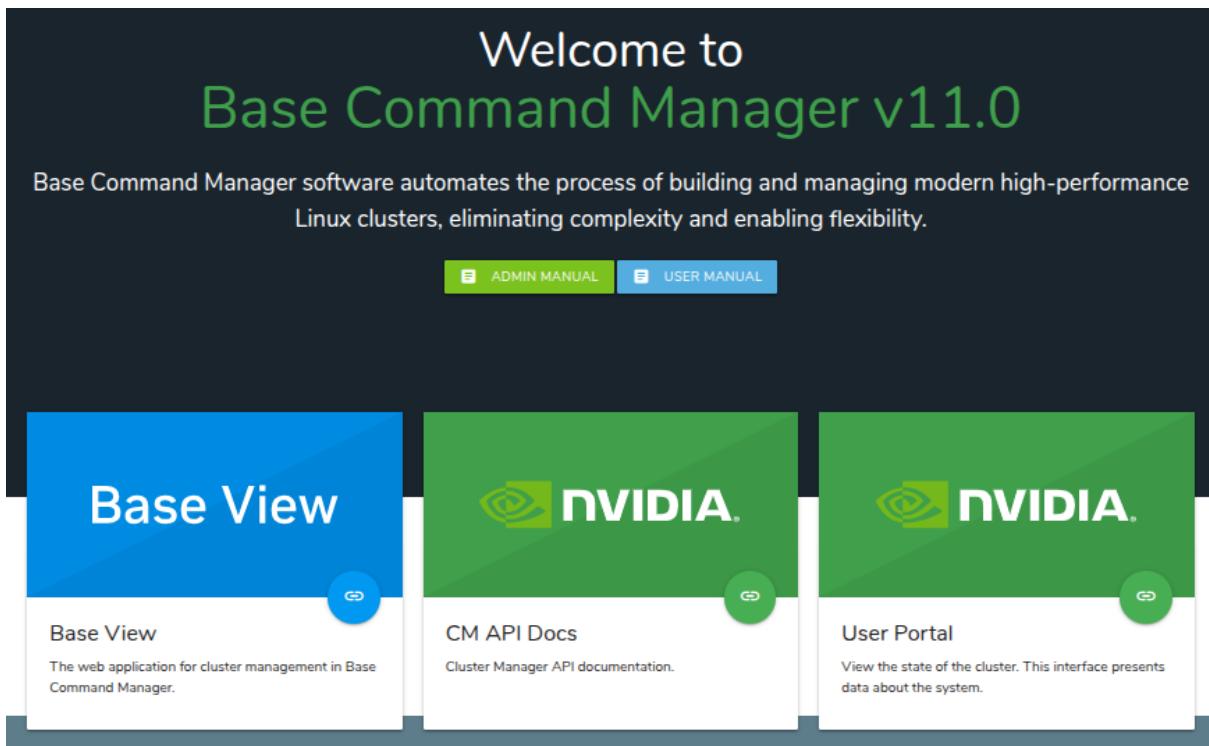


Figure 2.1: Head node hostname or IP address landing page at <https://<host name or IP address>>

The landing page is served by the Apache web server from the distribution, and can be served over the HTTP (unencrypted) or HTTPS (encrypted) protocols.

The certificates used to ensure an encrypted connection are set within:

- `/etc/httpd/conf.d/ssl.conf` for the RHEL family of distributions. The PEM-encoded certificate at `/etc/pki/tls/certs/localhost.crt` is set by default.
- `/etc/apache2/sites-available/default-ssl.conf` for Ubuntu. The PEM-encoded certificate at `/etc/ssl/certs/ssl-cert-snakeoil.pem` is set by default.

The system administrator may wish to consider the security aspects of using the default distribution certificates, and may wish to replace them.

Within the landing page are several blocks, one of which is the Base View block. Base View is the BCM GUI. Within the Base View block is a clickable link, which is a circle with a chain-link symbol inside it.

Base View connects by default to the encrypted web service on port 8081. This is served from the head node cluster manager, rather than from Apache, to the browser. The direct URL for this is of the form:

`https://<host name or IP address>:8081/base-view`

The BCM package that provides the service is `base-view` and it is installed by default with BCM. The service can be disabled by removing the package with, for example, `yum remove base-view`.

### NVIDIA Base Command Manager Base View Login Window

Figure 2.2 shows the login dialog window for Base View.

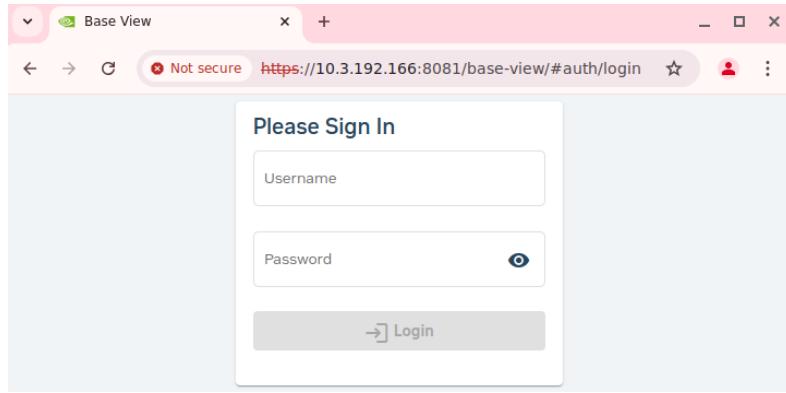


Figure 2.2: Base View Login via `https://<host name or IP address>:8081/base-view`

### NVIDIA Base Command Manager Base View Default Display On Connection

Clicking on the Login button logs the administrator into the Base View service on the cluster. By default an overview window is displayed, corresponding to the navigation path Cluster > Partition base (figure 2.3).

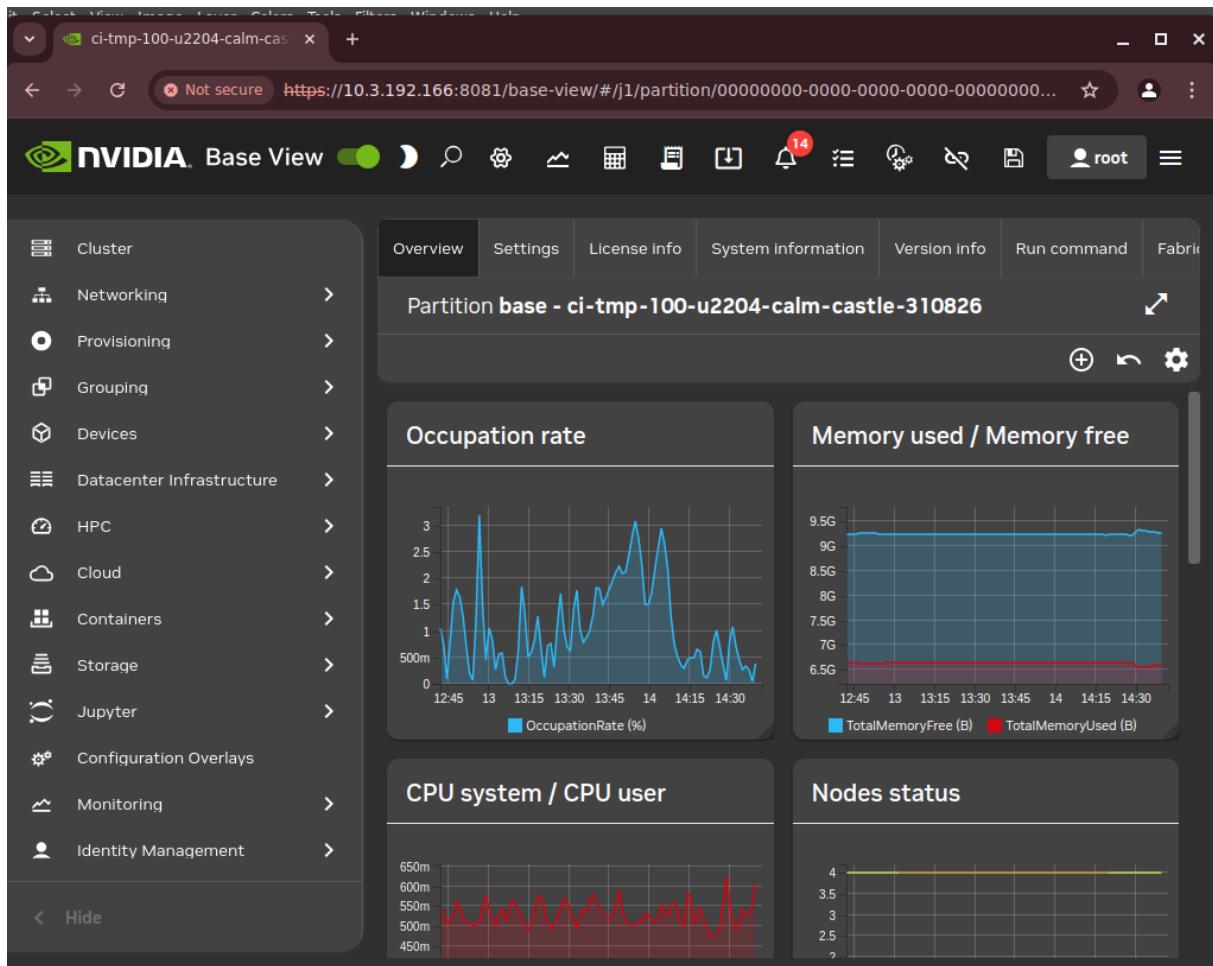


Figure 2.3: Cluster Overview

## 2.4.2 Navigating The Cluster With Base View

Aspects of the cluster can be managed by administrators using Base View (figure 2.3).

The resource tree, displayed on the left side of the window, consists of available cluster usage concepts such as Provisioning, Grouping, HPC, Cloud, and Containers. It also has a cluster-centric approach to miscellaneous system concepts such as hardware devices Devices, non-hardware resources such as Identity Management, and Networking.

Selecting a resource opens a window that allows parameters related to the resource to be viewed and managed.

As an example, the Cluster resource can be selected. This opens up the so-called Partition base window, which is essentially a representation of the cluster instance.<sup>1</sup>

The tabs within the Partition base window are mapped out in figure 2.4 and summarily described next.

---

<sup>1</sup>The name Partition base is literally a footnote in BCM history. It derives from the time that BCM clusters were planned to run in separate partitions within the cluster hardware. The primary cluster was then to be the base cluster, running in the base partition. The advent of BCM cloud computing options in the form of the Cluster-On-Demand option (Chapter 2 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*), and the Cluster Extension option (Chapter 3 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*) means developing cluster partitions is no longer a priority.

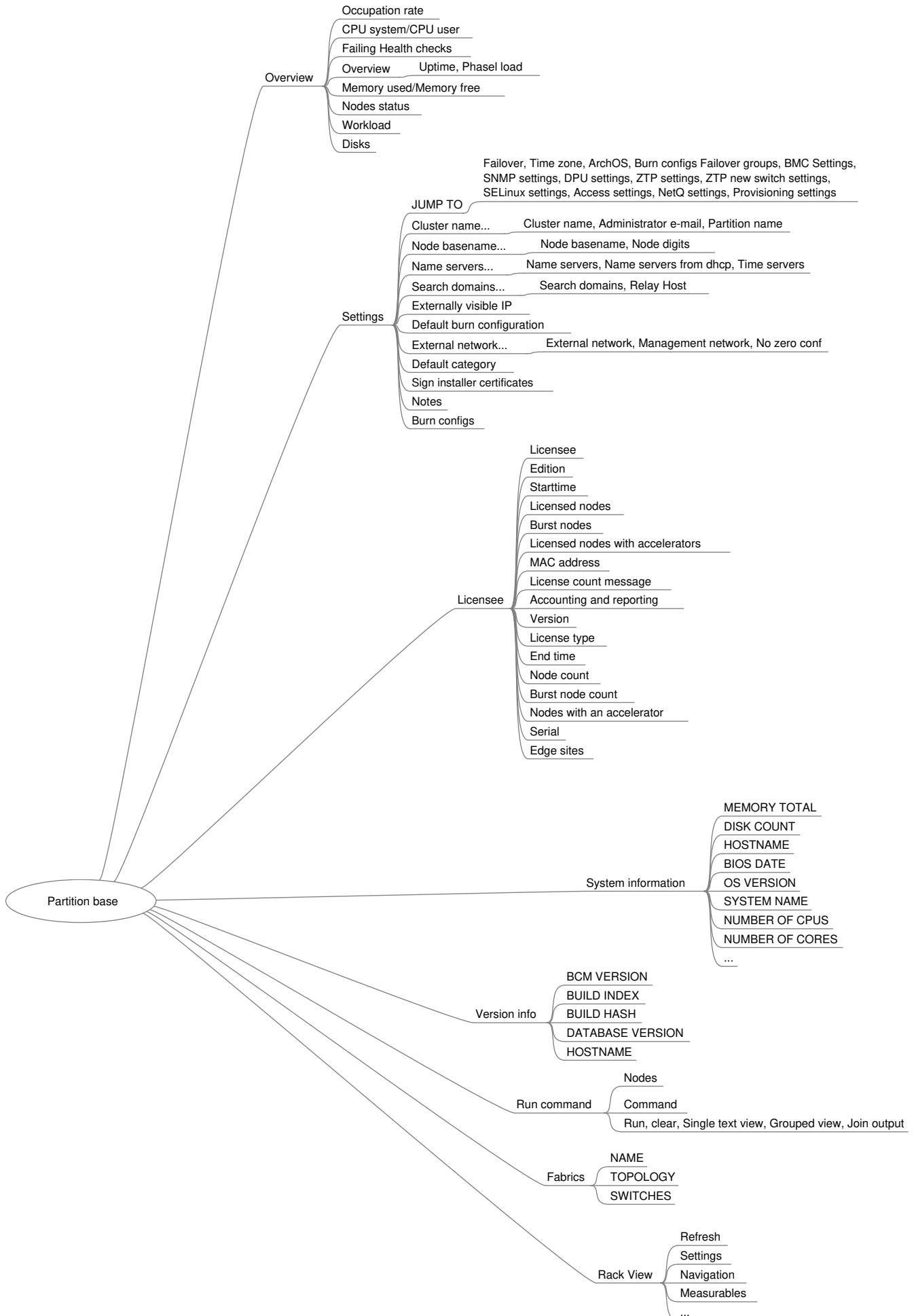


Figure 2.4: Cluster Navigation Within The Partition Base Window

## Overview

The Overview tab (figure 2.3, page 37) shows the Occupation rate (page 931), memory used, CPU cycles used, node statuses, and other helpful cluster overview details.

## Settings

The Settings tab has a number of global cluster properties and property groups. These are loosely grouped as follows:

- Buttons for jumping to settings for: Failover, time zone, ArchOS, burn configuration, failover groups, BMC settings, SNMP settings, DPU settings, ZTP settings, ZTP new switch settings, SELinux settings, provisioning settings, access settings, NetQ settings, provisioning settings.
- Cluster name, Administrator e-mail, partition name
- Node basename, Node digits
- Name servers, Time servers
- Search domains, Relay Host
- Externally visible IP, Provisioning Node Auto Update Timeout
- Default burn configuration
- External network, Management network
- Default category: Sets the default category
- Sign installer certificates
- Notes

## License info

The License info tab shows information to do with cluster licensing. A slightly obscure property within this window is Version, which refers to the version type of the license. The license for NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 7.0 and above is of a type that is compatible with versions all the way up to the current version. NVIDIA Base Command Manager license versions from before 7.0 are not compatible. In practice it means that an upgrade from before 7.0, to 7.0 or beyond, requires a license upgrade. The BCM support team must be contacted to arrange the license upgrade.

## System information

The System information tab shows the main hardware specifications of the node (CPU, memory, BIOS), along with the operating system version that it runs.

## Version info

The Version info tab shows version information for important cluster software components, such as the CMDaemon database version, and BCM version and builds.

## Run command

The Run command tab allows a specified command to be run on a selected node of the cluster.

## Fabrics

The Fabrics tab displays the topology and switches for the fabrics used.

## Rack View

The Rack View tab displays a view of the rack as defined by node allocations made by the administrator to racks and chassis.

## 2.5 Cluster Management Shell

This section introduces the basics of the cluster management shell, cmsh. This is the command-line interface to cluster management in BCM. Since cmsh and Base View give access to the same cluster management functionality, an administrator need not become familiar with both interfaces. Administrators intending to manage a cluster with only Base View may therefore safely skip this section.

The cmsh front end allows commands to be run with it, and can be used in batch mode. Although cmsh commands often use constructs familiar to programmers, it is designed mainly for managing the cluster efficiently rather than for trying to be a good or complete programming language. For programming cluster management, the use of Python bindings (Chapter 1 of the *Developer Manual*) is generally recommended instead of using cmsh in batch mode.

Usually cmsh is invoked from an interactive session (e.g. through ssh) on the head node, but it can also be used to manage the cluster from outside.

### 2.5.1 Invoking cmsh

From the head node, cmsh can be invoked as follows:

#### Example

```
[root@mycluster ~]# cmsh
[mycluster]%
```

By default it connects to the IP address of the local management network interface, using the default BCM port. If it fails to connect as in the preceding example, but a connection takes place using cmsh localhost, then the management interface is most probably not up. In that case, bringing the management interface up allows cmsh to connect to CMDaemon.

Running cmsh without arguments starts an interactive cluster management session. To go back to the unix shell, a user enters quit or ctrl-d:

```
[mycluster]% quit
[root@mycluster ~]#
```

#### Batch Mode And Piping In cmsh

The -c flag allows cmsh to be used in batch mode. Commands may be separated using semi-colons:

```
[root@mycluster ~]# cmsh -c "main showprofile; device status apc01"
admin
apc01 ..... [ UP ]
[root@mycluster ~]#
```

Alternatively, commands can be piped to cmsh:

```
[root@mycluster ~]# echo device status | cmsh
device status
apc01 ..... [ UP ]
mycluster ..... [ UP ]
node001 ..... [ UP ]
node002 ..... [ UP ]
switch01 ..... [ UP ]
[root@mycluster ~]#
```

#### Dotfiles And /etc/cmshrc File For cmsh

In a similar way to unix shells, cmsh sources an rc file from the /etc directory, and also dotfiles, if they exist. The sourcing is done upon start-up in both batch and interactive mode.

If /etc/cmshrc exists, then its settings are used, but the values can be overridden by user dotfiles. This is standard Unix behavior, analogous to how bash works with /etc/bashrc and .bashrc files.

In the following list of cmsh dotfiles, a setting in the file that is in the shorter path overrides a setting in the file with the longer path (i.e.: “shortest path overrides”):

- `~/.cm/cmsh/.cmshrc`
- `~/.cm/.cmshrc`
- `~/.cmshrc`

### Defining Command Aliases In cmsh

Sourcing settings is convenient when defining command aliases. Command aliases can be used to abbreviate longer commands. For example, putting the following in `.cmshrc` would allow `lv` to be used as an alias for `device list virtualnode`:

#### Example

```
alias lv device list virtualnode
```

Besides defining aliases in dotfiles, aliases in `cmsh` can also be created with the `alias` command. The preceding example can be run within `cmsh` to create the `lv` alias. Running the `alias` command within `cmsh` lists the existing aliases.

Aliases can be exported from within `cmsh` together with other `cmsh` dot settings with the help of the `export` command:

#### Example

```
[mycluster]% export > /root/mydotsettings
```

The dot settings can be taken into `cmsh` by running the `run` command from within `cmsh`:

#### Example

```
[mycluster]% run /root/mydotsettings
```

### Built-in Aliases In cmsh

The following aliases are built-ins, and are not defined in any `.cmshrc` or `cmshrc` files:

```
[basecm11]% alias
alias - goto -
alias .. exit
alias / home
alias ? help
alias ds device status
alias ls list
```

The meanings are:

- `goto -`: go to previous directory level of `cmsh`
- `exit`: go up a directory level, or leave `cmsh` if already at top level.
- `home`: go to the top level directory
- `help`: show help text for current level
- `device status`: show status of devices that can be accessed in device mode

### Automatic Aliases In cmsh

A cmsh script is a file that has a sequence of cmsh commands that run within a cmsh session.

The directory .cm/cmsh/ can have placed in it a cmsh script with a .cmsh suffix and an arbitrary prefix. The prefix then automatically becomes an alias in cmsh.

In the following example

- the file tablelist.cmsh provides the alias tablelist, to list devices using the | symbol as a delimiter, and
- the file dfh.cmsh provides the alias dfh to carry out the Linux shell command df -h

### Example

```
[root@mycluster ~]# cat /root/.cm/cmsh/tablelist.cmsh
list -d "|"
[root@mycluster ~]# cat /root/.cm/cmsh/dfh.cmsh
!df -h
[root@mycluster ~]# cmsh
[mycluster]% device
[mycluster->device]% alias | egrep '(tablelist|dfh)'
alias dfh run /root/.cm/cmsh/dfh.cmsh
alias tablelist run /root/.cm/cmsh/tablelist.cmsh
[mycluster->device]% list
-----  

Type           Hostname (key)   MAC          Category      Ip
-----  

HeadNode       mycluster      FA:16:3E:B4:39:DB    10.141.255.254
PhysicalNode   node001        FA:16:3E:D5:87:71  default     10.141.0.1
PhysicalNode   node002        FA:16:3E:BE:05:FE  default     10.141.0.2
[mycluster->device]% tablelist
-----  

Type           |Hostname (key) |MAC          |Category      |Ip
-----  

HeadNode       |mycluster      |FA:16:3E:B4:39:DB | 10.141.255.254
PhysicalNode   |node001        |FA:16:3E:D5:87:71 | default     | 10.141.0.1
PhysicalNode   |node002        |FA:16:3E:BE:05:FE | default     | 10.141.0.2
[mycluster->device]% dfh
-----  

Filesystem     Size  Used Avail Use% Mounted on
devtmpfs       1.8G   0   1.8G  0% /dev
tmpfs          1.9G   0   1.9G  0% /dev/shm
tmpfs          1.9G  33M  1.8G  2% /run
tmpfs          1.9G   0   1.9G  0% /sys/fs/cgroup
/dev/vdb1      25G  17G  8.7G  66% /
tmpfs         374M   0  374M  0% /run/user/0
```

The cmsh session in NVIDIA Base Command Manager does not need restarting for the alias to become active.

### Default Arguments In cmsh Scripts

In a cmsh script, the parameters \$1, \$2 and so on can be used to pass arguments. If the argument being passed is blank, then the values the parameters take also remain blank. However, if the parameter format has a suffix of the form -<value>, then <value> is the default value that the parameter takes if the argument being passed is blank.

### Example

```
[root@mycluster ~]# cat .cm/cmsh/encrypt-node-disk.cmsh
home
```

```
device use ${1-node001}
set disksetup /root/my-encrypted-node-disk.xml
set revision ${2-test}
commit
```

The script can be run without an argument (a blank value for the argument), in which case it takes on the default value of node001 for the parameter:

```
[root@mycluster ~]# cmsh
[mycluster]% encrypt-node-disk
[mycluster->device[node001]]%
```

The script can be run with an argument (node002 here), in which case it takes on the passed value of node002 for the parameter:

```
[root@mycluster ~]# cmsh
[mycluster]% encrypt-node-disk node002
[mycluster->device[node002]]%
```

### Options Usage For cmsh

The options usage information for cmsh is obtainable with cmsh -h:

Usage:

```
cmsh [options] [hostname[:port]]
cmsh [options] -c <command>
cmsh [options] -f <filename>
```

Options:

```
--help|-h
    Display this help

--noconnect|-u
    Start unconnected

--controlflag|-z
    ETX in non-interactive mode

--color <yes/no>
    Define usage of colors

--spool <directory>
    Alternative /var/spool/cmd

--tty|-t
    Pretend a TTY is available

--noredirect|-r
    Do not follow redirects

--norc|-n
    Do not load cmshrc file on start-up

--noquitconfirmation|-Q
    Do not ask for quit confirmation

--echo|-x
```

```

Echo all commands

--quit|-q
    Exit immediately after error

--disablemultiline|-m
    Disable multiline support

--hide-events
    Hide all events by default

--disable-events
    Disable all events by default

--certificate|-i
    Specify alternative certificate

--key|-k
    Specify alternative private key

```

**Arguments:**

```

hostname
    The hostname or IP to connect to

command
    A list of cmsh commands to execute

filename
    A file which contains a list of cmsh commands to execute

```

**Examples:**

cmsh	run in interactive mode
cmsh -c 'device status'	run the device status command and exit
cmsh --hide-events -c 'device status'	run the device status command and exit, without showing any events that arrive during this time
cmsh -f some.file -q -x	run and echo the commands from some.file, exit

**Man Page For cmsh**

There is also a man page for cmsh(8), which is a bit more extensive than the help text. It does not however cover the modes and interactive behavior.

**2.5.2 Levels, Modes, Help, And Commands Syntax In cmsh**

The *top-level* of cmsh is the level that cmsh is in when entered without any options.

To avoid overloading a user with commands, cluster management functionality has been grouped and placed in separate cmsh *mode* levels. Mode levels and associated *objects* for a level make up a hierarchy available below the top-level.

There is an object-oriented terminology associated with managing via this hierarchy. To perform cluster management functions, the administrator descends via cmsh into the appropriate mode and object, and carries out actions relevant to the mode or object.

For example, within user mode, an object representing a user instance, fred, might be added or removed. Within the object fred, the administrator can manage its properties. The properties can be data such as a password fred123, or a home directory /home/fred.

Figure 2.5 shows the top-level commands available in cmsh. These commands are displayed when help is typed in at the top-level of cmsh:

```

alias ..... Set aliases
category ..... Enter category mode
cert ..... Enter cert mode
cloud ..... Enter cloud mode
color ..... Manage console text color settings
configurationoverlay ..... Enter configurationoverlay mode
connect ..... Connect to cluster
delimiter ..... Display/set delimiter
device ..... Enter device mode
disconnect ..... Disconnect from cluster
edgesite ..... Enter edgesite mode
etcd ..... Enter etcd mode
events ..... Manage events
exit ..... Exit from current object or mode
export ..... Display list of aliases current list formats
fspart ..... Enter fspart mode
group ..... Enter group mode
groupingsyntax ..... Manage the default grouping syntax
help ..... Display this help
hierarchy ..... Enter hierarchy mode
history ..... Display command history
kubernetes ..... Enter kubernetes mode
list ..... List state for all modes
main ..... Enter main mode
modified ..... List modified objects
monitoring ..... Enter monitoring mode
network ..... Enter network mode
nodegroup ..... Enter nodegroup mode
partition ..... Enter partition mode
powercircuit ..... Enter powercircuit mode
process ..... Enter process mode
profile ..... Enter profile mode
quit ..... Quit shell
quitconfirmation ..... Manage the status of quit confirmation
rack ..... Enter rack mode
refresh ..... Refresh all modes
run ..... Execute cmsh commands from specified file
session ..... Enter session mode
softwareimage ..... Enter softwareimage mode
task ..... Enter task mode
time ..... Measure time of executing command
unalias ..... Unset aliases
user ..... Enter user mode
watch ..... Execute a command periodically, showing output
wlm ..... Enter wlm mode

```

Figure 2.5: Top level commands in cmsh

All levels inside cmsh provide these top-level commands.

Passing a command as an argument to help gets details for it:

### Example

```
[myheadnode]% help run
Name:    run - Execute all commands in the given file(s)
```

```
Usage: run [OPTIONS] <filename> [<filename2> ...]
```

```
Options: -x, --echo
          Echo all commands

          -q, --quit
          Exit immediately after error
```

```
[myheadnode]%
```

In the general case, invoking `help` at any mode level or within an object, without an argument, provides two lists:

- Firstly, under the title of Top: a list of top-level commands.
- Secondly, under the title of the level it was invoked at: a list of commands that may be used at that level.

For example, entering session mode and then typing in `help` displays, firstly, output with a title of Top, and secondly, output with a title of session (some output ellipsized):

### Example

```
[myheadnode]% session
[myheadnode->session]% help
=====
==== Top =====
alias ..... Set aliases
category ..... Enter category mode
cert ..... Enter cert mode
cloud ..... Enter cloud mode
...
=====
===== session =====
id ..... Display current session id
killsession ..... Kill a session
list ..... Provide overview of active sessions
[myheadnode->session]%
```

### Navigation Through Modes And Objects In cmsh

The major modes tree is shown in Appendix M.1.

The following notes can help the cluster administrator in navigating the `cmsh` shell:

- To enter a mode, a user enters the mode name at the `cmsh` prompt. The prompt changes to indicate that `cmsh` is in the requested mode, and commands for that mode can then be run.
- To use an object within a mode, the `use` command is used with the object name. In other words, a mode is entered, and an object within that mode is used. When an object is used, the prompt changes to indicate that that object within the mode is now being used, and that commands are applied for that particular object.
- To leave a mode, and go back up a level, the `exit` command is used. Similarly, if an object is in use, the `exit` command exits the object. At the top level, `exit` has the same effect as the `quit` command, that is, the user leaves `cmsh` and returns to the unix shell. The string `...` is an alias for `exit`.
- The `home` command, which is aliased to `/`, takes the user from any mode depth to the top level.

- The path command at any mode depth displays a string that can be used as a path to the current mode and object, in a form that is convenient for copying and pasting into cmsh. The string can be used in various ways. For example, it can be useful to define an alias in .cmshrc (page 42).

In the following example, the path command is used to print out a string. This string makes it easy to construct a bash shell command to run a list from the correct place within cmsh:

### Example

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles[slurmclient]]% list
Name (key)
-----
slurmclient
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles[slurmclient]]% path
home;configurationoverlay;use "slurm-client";roles;use slurmclient;
```

Pasting the string into a bash shell, using the cmsh command with the -c option, and appending the list command to the string, replicates the session output of the list command:

```
[basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c 'configurationoverlay;use "slurm-client";roles;use slurmclient; list'
Name (key)
-----
slurmclient
```

The following example shows the path command can also be used inside the cmsh session itself for convenience:

### Example

```
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% list


| Type           | Hostname (key) | MAC               | Category | Ip             | Network     | Status |
|----------------|----------------|-------------------|----------|----------------|-------------|--------|
| EthernetSwitch | switch01       | 00:00:00:00:00:00 |          | 10.141.0.50    | internalnet | [ UP ] |
| HeadNode       | basecm11       | 00:0C:29:5D:55:46 |          | 10.141.255.254 | internalnet | [ UP ] |
| PhysicalNode   | node001        | 00:0C:29:7A:41:78 | default  | 10.141.0.1     | internalnet | [ UP ] |
| PhysicalNode   | node002        | 00:0C:29:CC:4F:79 | default  | 10.141.0.2     | internalnet | [ UP ] |


[basecm11->device]%
[basecm11]%
[basecm11]% exit
[basecm11]%
[basecm11->device]
[basecm11->device]%
[basecm11->device]% use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% path
home;device;use node001;
[basecm11->device[node001]]% home
[basecm11]% home;device;use node001      #copy-pasted from path output earlier
[basecm11->device[node001]]%
```

A command can also be executed in a mode without staying within that mode. This is done by specifying the mode before the command that is to be executed within that node. Most commands also accept arguments after the command. Multiple commands can be executed in one line by separating commands with semi-colons.

A cmsh input line has the following syntax:

`<mode> <cmd> <arg> ... <arg>; ...; <mode> <cmd> <arg> ... <arg>`

where `<mode>` and `<arg>` are optional.<sup>2</sup>

### Example

```
[basecm11->network]% device status basecm11; list
basecm11 ..... [ UP ]
Name (key) Type Netmask bits Base address Domain name Ipv6
-----
externalnet External 16 192.168.1.0 brightcomputing.com no
globalnet Global 0 0.0.0.0 cm.cluster
internalnet Internal 16 10.141.0.0 eth.cluster
[basecm11->network]%
```

In the preceding example, while in `network` mode, the `status` command is executed in `device` mode on the host name of the head node, making it display the status of the head node. The `list` command on the same line after the semi-colon still runs in `network` mode, as expected, and not in `device` mode, and so displays a list of networks.

Inserting a semi-colon makes a difference, in that the `mode` is actually entered, so that the `list` displays a list of nodes (some output truncated here for convenience):

### Example

```
[basecm11->network]% device; status basecm11; list
basecm11 ..... [ UP ]
Type Hostname (key) MAC Category Ip Network Status
-----
HeadNode basecm11 FA:16:3E:C8:06:D1 10.141.255.254 internalnet [ UP ]
PhysicalNode node001 FA:16:3E:A2:9C:87 default 10.141.0.1 internalnet [ UP ]
[basecm11->device]%
```

### 2.5.3 Working With Objects

Modes in `cmsh` work with associated groupings of data called *objects*. For instance, `device` mode works with `device` objects, and `network` mode works with `network` objects.

The commands used to deal with objects have similar behavior in all modes. Not all of the commands exist in every mode, and not all of the commands function with an explicit object:

Command	Description
use	Use the specified object. I.e.: Make the specified object the <i>current object</i>
add	Create the object and use it
assign	Assign a new object
unassign	Unassign an object
clear	Clear the values of the object
clone	Clone the object and use it
remove	Remove the object
commit	Commit local changes, done to an object, to CMDaemon

*...continues*

---

<sup>2</sup>A more precise synopsis is:  
`[<mode>] <cmd> [<arg> ...] [; ... ; [<mode>] <cmd> [<arg> ...]]`

...continued

Command	Description
refresh	Undo local changes done to the object
list	List all objects at current level
sort	Sort the order of display for the list command
format	Set formatting preferences for list output
foreach	Execute a set of commands on several objects
show	Display all properties of the object
swap	Swap (exchange) the names of two objects
get	Display specified property of the object
set	Set a specified property of the object
clear	Set default value for a specified property of the object.
append	Append a value to a property of the object, for a multi-valued property
removefrom	Remove a value from a specific property of the object, for a multi-valued property
modified	List objects with uncommitted local changes
usedby	List objects that depend on the object
validate	Do a validation check on the properties of the object
exit	Exit from the current object or mode level

Working with objects with these commands is demonstrated with several examples in this section.

#### Working With Objects: use, exit

##### Example

```
[mycluster->device]% use node001
[mycluster->device[node001]]% status
node001 ..... [ UP ]
[mycluster->device[node001]]% exit
[mycluster->device]%
```

In the preceding example, `use node001` issued from within `device` mode makes `node001` the *current object*. The prompt changes accordingly. The `status` command, without an argument, then returns status information just for `node001`, because making an object the current object makes subsequent commands within that mode level apply only to that object. Finally, the `exit` command exits the current object level.

#### Working With Objects: add, commit, remove

The commands introduced in this section have many implicit concepts associated with them. So an illustrative session is first presented as an example. What happens in the session is then explained in order to familiarize the reader with the commands and associated concepts.

##### Example

```
[mycluster->device]% add physicalnode node100 10.141.0.100
[mycluster->device*[node100*]]% commit
[mycluster->device[node100]]% category add test-category
[mycluster->category*[test-category*]]% commit
[mycluster->category[test-category]]% remove test-category
[mycluster->category*]%
Successfully removed 1 Categories
Successfully committed 0 Categories
```

```
[mycluster->category]% device remove node100
[mycluster->category]% device
[mycluster->device*]% commit
Successfully removed 1 Devices
Successfully committed 0 Devices
[mycluster->device]%
```

**add:** The add command creates an object within its associated mode, and in cmsh the prompt drops into the object level just created. Thus, at the start in the preceding example, within device mode, a new object, named node100, is added. For this particular object properties can also be set, such as the type (physicalnode), and IP address (10.141.0.100). The node object level ([node100\*]) is automatically dropped into from device mode when the add command is executed. After execution, the state achieved is that the object has been created with some properties. However, it is still in a temporary, modified state, and not yet persistent.

Asterisk tags in the prompt are a useful reminder of a modified state, with each asterisk indicating a tagged object that has an unsaved, modified property. In this case, the unsaved properties are the IP address setting, the node name, and the node type.

The add command—syntax notes:

In most modes the add command takes only one argument, namely the name of the object that is to be created. However, in device mode an extra object-type, in this case physicalnode, is also required as argument, and an optional extra IP argument may also be specified. The response to “help add” while in device mode gives details:

```
[myheadnode->device]% help add
Name:
    add - Create a new device of the given type with specified hostname

Usage:
    add <type> <hostname>
    add cloudnode <hostname> [provider]
    add physicalnode <hostname> [ip] [interface]

Arguments:
    type      chassis, fabricresourcebox, fabricswitch, genericdevice, litenode,
              cloudnode, dpu, physicalnode, headnode, powerdistributionunit,
              racksensor, switch, unmanagednode

    interface  eg. ens3, bond0=ens3+ens4
```

**commit:** The commit command is a further step that actually saves any changes made after executing a command. In this case, in the second line, it saves the node100 object with its properties. The asterisk tag disappears for the prompt if settings for that mode level and below have been saved.

Conveniently, the top level modes, such as the category mode, can be accessed directly from within this level if the mode is stated before the command. So, stating the mode category before running the add command allows the specified category test-category to be added. Again, the test-category object level within category mode is automatically dropped into when the add command is executed.

The -w | --wait option to commit:

The commit command by default does not wait for a state change to complete. This means that the prompt becomes available right away. This means that it is not obvious that the change has taken place, which could be awkward if scripting with cmsh for cloning (discussed shortly) a software

image (section 2.1.2). The `-w|--wait` option to the `commit` command works around this issue by waiting for any associated background task, such as the cloning of a software image, to be completed before making the prompt available.

**remove:** The `remove` command removes a specified object within its associated mode. On successful execution, if the prompt is at the object level, then the prompt moves one level up. The removal is not actually carried out fully yet; it is only a proposed removal. This is indicated by the asterisk tag, which remains visible, until the `commit` command is executed, and the test-category removal is saved. The `remove` command can also remove a object in a non-local mode, if the non-local mode is associated with the command. This is illustrated in the example where, from within category mode, the device mode is declared before running the `remove` command for node100. The proposed removal is configured without being made permanent, but in this case no asterisk tag shows up in the category mode, because the change is in device mode. To drop into device mode, the mode command “device” is executed. An asterisk tag then does appear, to remind the administrator that there is still an uncommitted change (the node that is to be removed) for the mode. The `commit` command would remove the object whichever mode it is in—the non-existence of the asterisk tag does not change the effectiveness of `commit`.

The `-d|--data` option to remove:

The `remove` command by default removes an object, and not the represented data. An example is if, in softwareimage mode, a software image is removed with the `remove` (without options) command. As far as the cluster manager is concerned, the image is removed after running `commit`. However the data in the directory for that software image is not removed. The `-d|--data` option to the `remove` command arranges removal of the data in the directory for the specified image, as well as removal of its associated object.

The `-a|--all` option to remove:

The `remove` command by default does not remove software image revisions. The `-a|--all` option to the `remove` command also removes all software image revisions.

#### Working With Objects: clone, modified, swap

Continuing on with the node object node100 that was created in the previous example, it can be cloned to node101 as follows:

#### Example

```
[mycluster->device]% clone node100 node101
Warning: The Ethernet switch settings were not cloned, and have to be set manually
[mycluster->device*[node101*]]% exit
[mycluster->device*]% modified
State  Type          Name
-----
+     Device        node101
[mycluster->device*]% commit
[mycluster->device]%
[mycluster->device]% remove node100
[mycluster->device*]% commit
[mycluster->device]%
```

The `modified` command is used to check what objects have uncommitted changes, and the new object node101 that is seen to be modified, is saved with a `commit`. The device node100 is then removed by using the `remove` command. A `commit` executes the removal.

The `modified` command corresponds roughly to the functionality of the `Unsaved entities` icon in figure 10.5.

The "+" entry in the State column in the output of the `modified` command in the preceding example indicates the object is a newly added one, but not yet committed. Similarly, a "~~" entry indicates an object that is to be removed on committing, while a blank entry indicates that the object has been modified without an addition or removal involved.

Cloning an object is a convenient method of duplicating a fully configured object. When duplicating a device object, cmsh will attempt to automatically assign a new IP address using a number of heuristics. In the preceding example, `node101` is assigned IP address `10.141.0.101`.

The attempt is a best-effort, and does not guarantee a sensibly-configured object. The cluster administrator should therefore inspect the result.

Sometimes an object may have been misnamed, or physically swapped. For example, `node001` exchanged physically with `node002` in the rack, or the hardware device `eth0` is misnamed by the kernel and should be `eth1`. In that case it can be convenient to simply swap their names via the cluster manager front end rather than change the physical device or adjust kernel configurations. This is equivalent to exchanging all the attributes from one name to the other.

For example, if the two interfaces on the head node need to have their names exchanged, it can be done as follows:

```
[mycluster->device]# use mycluster
[mycluster->device[mycluster]]% interfaces
[mycluster->device[mycluster]->interfaces]# list
Type      Network device name   IP          Network
-----
physical    eth0 [dhcp]        10.150.4.46   externalnet
physical    eth1 [prov]        10.141.255.254 internalnet
[basecm11->device[mycluster]->interfaces]# swap eth0 eth1; commit
[basecm11->device[mycluster]->interfaces]# list
Type      Network device name   IP          Network
-----
physical    eth0 [prov]        10.141.255.254 internalnet
physical    eth1 [dhcp]        10.150.4.46   externalnet
[mycluster->device[mycluster]->interfaces]# exit; exit
```

### **Working With Objects: get, set, refresh**

The `get` command is used to retrieve a specified property from an object, and `set` is used to set it:

#### **Example**

```
[mycluster->device]# use node101
[mycluster->device[node101]]% get category
test-category
[mycluster->device[node101]]% set category default
[mycluster->device*[node101*]]% get category
default
[mycluster->device*[node101*]]% modified
State  Type           Name
-----
Device           node101
[mycluster->device*[node101*]]% refresh
[mycluster->device[node101]]% modified
No modified objects of type device
[mycluster->device[node101]]% get category
test-category
[mycluster->device[node101]]%
```

Here, the `category` property of the `node101` object is retrieved by using the `get` command. The

property is then changed using the `set` command. Using `get` confirms that the value of the property has changed, and the `modified` command reconfirms that `node101` has local uncommitted changes.

The `refresh` command undoes the changes made, and corresponds roughly to the `Revert` button in Base View when viewing `Unsaved entities` (figure 10.5). The `modified` command then confirms that no local changes exist. Finally the `get` command reconfirms that no local change took place.

Among the possible values a property can take on are strings and booleans:

- A string can be set as a revision label for any object:

#### Example

```
[mycluster->device[node101]]% set revision "changed on 10th May"
[mycluster->device*[node101*]]% get revision
[mycluster->device*[node101*]]% changed on 10th May 2011
```

This can be useful when using shell scripts with an input text to label and track revisions when sending commands to `cmsh`. How to send commands from the shell to `cmsh` is introduced in section 2.5.1.

- For booleans, the values “yes”, “1”, “on” and “true” are equivalent to each other, as are their opposites “no”, “0”, “off” and “false”. These values are case-insensitive.

#### Working With Objects: clear

##### Example

```
[mycluster->device]% set node101 mac 00:11:22:33:44:55
[mycluster->device*]% get node101 mac
00:11:22:33:44:55
[mycluster->device*]% clear node101 mac
[mycluster->device*]% get node101 mac
00:00:00:00:00:00
[mycluster->device*]%
```

The `get` and `set` commands are used to view and set the MAC address of `node101` without running the `use` command to make `node101` the *current object*. The `clear` command then unsets the value of the property. The result of `clear` depends on the type of the property it acts on. In the case of string properties, the empty string is assigned, whereas for MAC addresses the special value `00:00:00:00:00:00` is assigned.

#### Working With Objects: list, format, sort

The `list` command is used to list objects in a mode. The command has many options. The ones that are valid for the current mode can be viewed by running `help list`. The `-f | --format` option is available in all modes, and takes a format string as argument. The string specifies what properties are printed for each object, and how many characters are used to display each property in the output line. In following example a list of objects is requested for `device` mode, displaying the `hostname`, `switchports` and `ip` properties for each device object.

##### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% list -f hostname:14,switchports:15,ip
hostname (key) switchports      ip
-----
apc01          10.142.254.1
basecm11       switch01:46    10.142.255.254
node001        switch01:47    10.142.0.1
node002        switch01:45    10.142.0.2
switch01          10.142.253.1
[basecm11->device]%
```

Running the `list` command with no argument uses the current format string for the mode.

Running the `format` command without arguments displays the current format string, and also displays all available properties including a description of each property. For example (output truncated):

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% format
Current list printing format:
-----
type:22, hostname:[16-32], mac:18, category:[16-32], ip:15, network:[14-32], status:[16-32]

Valid fields:
-----
activation           : Date on which node was defined
additionalhostnames : List of additional hostnames that should resolve to the interfaces IP address
allownetworkingrestart : Allow node to update ifcfg files and restart networking
banks               : Number of banks
...
...
```

The print specification of the `format` command uses the delimiter ":" to separate the parameter and the value for the width of the parameter column. For example, a width of 10 can be set with:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% format hostname:10
[basecm11->device]% list
hostname (
-----
apc01
basecm11
node001
node002
switch01
```

A range of widths can be set, from a minimum to a maximum, using square brackets. A single minimum width possible is chosen from the range that fits all the characters of the column. If the number of characters in the column exceeds the maximum, then the maximum value is chosen. For example:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% format hostname:[10-14]
[basecm11->device]% list
hostname (key)
-----
apc01
basecm11
node001
node002
switch01
```

The parameters to be viewed can be chosen from a list of valid fields by running the `format` command without any options, as shown earlier.

The `format` command can take as an argument a string that is made up of multiple parameters in a comma-separated list. Each parameter takes a colon-delimited width specification.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% format hostname:[10-14],switchports:14,ip:20
[basecm11->device]% list
hostname (key) switchports      ip
-----
apc01                  10.142.254.1
basecm11      switch01:46    10.142.255.254
node001      switch01:47    10.142.0.1
node002      switch01:45    10.142.0.2
switch01                  10.142.253.1
```

The output of the `format` command without arguments shows the current list printing format string, with spaces. This can be used with enclosing quotes ("").

In general, the string used in the `format` command can be set with enclosing quotes (""), or alternatively, with the spaces removed:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% format "hostname:[16-32], network:[14-32], status:[16-32]"
```

*or*

```
[basecm11->device]% format hostname:[16-32],network:[14-32],status:[16-32]
```

The default parameter settings can be restored with the `-r|--reset` option:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% format -r
[basecm11->device]% format | head -3
Current list printing format:
-----
type:22, hostname:[16-32], mac:18, category:[16-32], ip:15, network:[14-32], status:[16-32]
[basecm11->device]%
```

The `sort` command sorts output in alphabetical order for specified parameters when the `list` command is run. The sort is done according to the precedence of the parameters passed to the `sort` command:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% sort type mac
[basecm11->device]% list -f type:15,hostname:15,mac
type          hostname (key)  mac
-----
HeadNode      basecm11      08:0A:27:BA:B9:43
PhysicalNode   node002      00:00:00:00:00:00
PhysicalNode   log001       52:54:00:DE:E3:6B
[basecm11->device]% sort type hostname
[basecm11->device]% list -f type:15,hostname:15,mac
type          hostname (key)  mac
-----
HeadNode      basecm11      08:0A:27:BA:B9:43
PhysicalNode   log001       52:54:00:DE:E3:6B
PhysicalNode   node002      00:00:00:00:00:00

[basecm11->device]% sort mac hostname
[basecm11->device]% list -f type:15,hostname:15,mac
```

```

type          hostname (key)  mac
-----
PhysicalNode  node002        00:00:00:00:00:00
HeadNode      basecm11       08:0A:27:BA:B9:43
PhysicalNode  log001         52:54:00:DE:E3:6B

```

The preceding sort commands can alternatively be specified with the `-s | --sort` option to the list command:

```
[basecm11->device]# list -f type:15,hostname:15,mac --sort type,mac
[basecm11->device]# list -f type:15,hostname:15,mac --sort type,hostname
[basecm11->device]# list -f type:15,hostname:15,mac --sort mac,hostname
```

#### **Working With Objects:** append, removefrom

When dealing with a property of an object that can take more than one value at a time—a list of values—the append and removefrom commands can be used to respectively append to and remove elements from the list. If more than one element is appended, they should be space-separated. The set command may also be used to assign a new list at once, overwriting the existing list. In the following example values are appended and removed from the powerdistributionunits properties of device node001. The powerdistributionunits properties represent the list of ports on power distribution units that a particular device is connected to. This information is relevant when power operations are performed on a node. Chapter 4 has more information on power settings and operations.

#### **Example**

```
[mycluster->device]# use node001
[mycluster->device[node001]]# get powerdistributionunits
apc01:1
[...device[node001]]% append powerdistributionunits apc01:5
[...device*[node001*]]% get powerdistributionunits
apc01:1 apc01:5
[...device*[node001*]]% append powerdistributionunits apc01:6
[...device*[node001*]]% get powerdistributionunits
apc01:1 apc01:5 apc01:6
[...device*[node001*]]% removefrom powerdistributionunits apc01:5
[...device*[node001*]]% get powerdistributionunits
apc01:1 apc01:6
[...device*[node001*]]% set powerdistributionunits apc01:1 apc01:02
[...device*[node001*]]% get powerdistributionunits
apc01:1 apc01:2
```

#### **Working With Objects:** usedby

Removing a specific object is only possible if other objects do not have references to it. To help the administrator discover a list of objects that depend on (“use”) the specified object, the usedby command may be used. In the following example, objects depending on device apc01 are requested. The usedby property of powerdistributionunits indicates that device objects node001 and node002 contain references to (“use”) the object apc01. In addition, the apc01 device is itself displayed as being in the up state, indicating a dependency of apc01 on itself. If the device is to be removed, then the 2 references to it first need to be removed, and the device also first has to be brought to the CLOSED state (page 274) by using the close command.

#### **Example**

```
[mycluster->device]# usedby apc01
Device used by the following:
Type          Name      Parameter
```

```
-----  
Device      apc01    Device is up  
Device      node001   powerDistributionUnits  
Device      node002   powerDistributionUnits  
[mycluster->device]%
```

#### **Working With Objects:** validate

Whenever committing changes to an object, the cluster management infrastructure checks the object to be committed for consistency. If one or more consistency requirements are not met, then cmsh reports the violations that must be resolved before the changes are committed. The validate command allows an object to be checked for consistency without committing local changes.

#### **Example**

```
[mycluster->device]% use node001  
[mycluster->device[node001]]% clear category  
[mycluster->device*[node001*]]% commit  
Code  Field          Message  
-----  
1    category        The category should be set  
[mycluster->device*[node001*]]% set category default  
[mycluster->device*[node001*]]% validate  
All good  
[mycluster->device*[node001*]]% commit  
[mycluster->device[node001]]%
```

#### **Working With Objects:** show

The show command is used to show the parameters and values of a specific object. For example for the object node001, the attributes displayed are (some output ellipsized):

```
[mycluster->device[node001]]% show  
Parameter          Value  
-----  
Activation          Thu, 03 Aug 2017 15:57:42 CEST  
BMC Settings       <submode>  
Block devices cleared on next boot  
Category           default  
...  
Data node           no  
Default gateway    10.141.255.254 (network: internalnet)  
...  
Software image     default-image  
Static routes       <0 in submode>  
...
```

#### **Working With Objects:** assign, unassign

The assign and unassign commands are analogous to add and remove. The difference between assign and add from the system administrator point of view is that assign sets an object with settable properties from a choice of existing names, whereas add sets an object with settable properties that include the name that is to be given. This makes assign suited for cases where multiple versions of a specific object choice cannot be used.

For example,

- If a node is to be configured to be run with particular Slurm settings, then the node can be assigned an `slurmclient` role (section 2.1.5) with the `assign` command. The node cannot be assigned another `slurmclient` role with other Slurm settings at the same time. Only the settings within the assigned Slurm client role can be changed.

- If a node is to be configured to run with added interfaces eth3 and eth4, then the node can have both physical interfaces added to it with the add command.

The only place where the assign command is currently used within cmsh is within the roles sub-mode, available under category mode, configurationoverlay mode, or device mode. Within roles, assign is used for assigning roles objects to give properties associated with that role to the category, configuration overlay, or device.

### Working With Objects: import For Roles

The import command is an advanced command that works within a role. It is used to clone roles between entities.

A node inherits all roles from the category and configuration overlay it is a part of.

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device roles node001
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles]% list
Name (key)
-----
[category:default] cgroupsupervisor
[category:default] slurmclient
```

If there is a small change to the default roles to be made, only for node001, in slurmclient, then the role can be imported from a category or overlay. Importing the role duplicates the object and assigns the duplicated value to node001.

This differs from simply assigning a slurmclient role to node001, because importing provides the values from the category or overlay, whereas assigning provides unset values.

After running import, just as for assign, changes to the role made at node001 level stay at that node level, and changes made to the category-level or overlay-level slurmclient role are not automatically inherited by the node001 slurmclient role.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles]% import <TAB><TAB>
backup           etcd::host          pbsproclient
boot            failover           pbsproserver
...
...and other available roles including slurmclient...
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles]% import --overlay slurm-client slurmclient
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->roles*]% list
Name (key)
-----
[category:default] cgroupsupervisor
slurmclient
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->roles*]% set slurmclient queues node1q
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->roles*]% commit
```

The preceding shows that a list of possible roles is prompted for via tab-completion after having typed import, and that the settings from the configuration overlay level are brought into node001 for the slurmclient role. The slurmclient values at node level then override any of the overlay level or category level settings, as suggested by the new list output. The Slurm client settings are then the same for node001 as the settings at the overlay level. The only change made is that a special queue, node1q, is configured just for node001.

The import command in roles mode can duplicate any role between any two entities. Options can be used to import from a category (-c|--category), or a node (-n|--node), or an overlay (-o|--overlay), as indicated by its help text (help import).

### 2.5.4 Accessing Cluster Settings

The management infrastructure of BCM is designed to allow cluster partitioning in the future. A cluster partition can be viewed as a virtual cluster inside a real cluster. The cluster partition behaves as a separate cluster while making use of the resources of the real cluster in which it is contained. Although cluster partitioning is not yet possible in the current version of BCM, its design implications do decide how some global cluster properties are accessed through cmsh.

In cmsh there is a partition mode which will, in a future version, allow an administrator to create and configure cluster partitions. Currently, there is only one fixed partition, called `base`. The `base` partition represents the physical cluster as a whole and cannot be removed. A number of properties global to the cluster exist inside the `base` partition. These properties are referenced and explained in remaining parts of this manual.

#### Example

```
[root@myheadnode ~]# cmsh
[myheadnode]% partition use base
[myheadnode->partition[base]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Cluster name      mycluster
Revision
Cluster reference architecture
Administrator e-mail    gandalf@example.com
Name                base
Headnode            myheadnode
Node basename       node
Node digits         3
Name servers
Name servers from dhcp   10.3.100.100
Time servers        0.pool.ntp.org,1.pool.ntp.org,2.pool.ntp.org
Search domains      example.com
Relay Host
Externally visible IP    0.0.0.0
Time zone           Europe/Amsterdam
BMC Settings        <submode>
SNMP Settings       <submode>
DPU Settings        <submode>
SELinux Settings    <submode>
Access Settings     <submode>
Provisioning Settings <submode>
ZTP settings        <submode>
ZTP new switch settings <submode>
NetQ settings       <submode>
Default burn configuration default-destructive
External network     externalnet
Management network   internalnet
No zero conf         no
Default category     default
ArchOS               <0 in submode>
Fabrics               <0 in submode>
Sign installer certificates AUTO
Failover              not defined
Failover groups      <0 in submode>
Burn configs         <3 in submode>
Notes                 <0B>
```

### 2.5.5 Advanced cmsh Features

This section describes some advanced features of cmsh and may be skipped on first reading.

#### Command Line Editing

Command line editing and history features from the readline library are available. <http://tiswww.case.edu/php/chet/readline/rluserman.html> provides a full list of key-bindings.

For users who are reasonably familiar with the bash shell running with readline, probably the most useful and familiar features provided by readline within cmsh are:

- tab-completion of commands and arguments
- being able to select earlier commands from the command history using <ctrl>-r, or using the up- and down-arrow keys

#### History And Timestamps

The history command within cmsh explicitly displays the cmsh command history as a list.

The --timestamps|-t option to the history command displays the command history with timestamps.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% history | tail -3
162 use node001
163 history
164 history | tail -3
[basecm11->device[node001]]% history -t | tail -3
163 Thu Dec  3 15:15:18 2015 history
164 Thu Dec  3 15:15:43 2015 history | tail -3
165 Thu Dec  3 15:15:49 2015 history -t | tail -3
```

This history is saved in the file .cm/.cmshhistory in the cmsh user's directory. The timestamps in the file are in unix epoch time format, and can be converted to human-friendly format with the standard date utility.

#### Example

```
[root@mycluster ~]# tail -2 .cm/.cmshhistory
1615412046
device list
[root@mycluster ~]# date -d @1615412046
Wed Mar 10 22:34:06 CET 2021
```

#### Mixing cmsh And Unix Shell Commands

It is often useful for an administrator to be able to execute unix shell commands while carrying out cluster management tasks. The cluster manager shell, cmsh, therefore allows users to execute commands in a subshell if the command is prefixed with a “!” character:

#### Example

```
[mycluster]% !hostname -f
mycluster.cm.cluster
[mycluster]%
```

Executing the ! command by itself will start an interactive login sub-shell. By exiting the sub-shell, the user will return to the cmsh prompt.

Besides simply executing commands from within cmsh, the output of operating system shell commands can also be used within cmsh. This is done by using the legacy-style “backtick syntax” available in most unix shells.

### Example

```
[mycluster]% device use `hostname`
[mycluster->device[mycluster]]% status
mycluster ..... [ UP ]
[mycluster->device[mycluster]]%
```

### Output Redirection

Similar to unix shells, cmsh also supports output redirection to the shell through common operators such as >, >>, and |.

### Example

```
[mycluster]% device list > devices
[mycluster]% device status >> devices
[mycluster]% device list | grep node001
Type          Hostname (key)      MAC (key)        Category
-----
PhysicalNode   node001           00:E0:81:2E:F7:96  default
```

### Input Redirection

Input redirection with cmsh is possible. As is usual, the input can be a string or a file. For example, for a file runthis with some commands stored in it:

### Example

```
[root@mycluster ~]# cat runthis
device
get node001 ip
```

the commands can be run with the redirection operator as:

### Example

```
[root@mycluster ~]# cmsh < runthis
device
get node001 ip
10.141.0.1
```

Running the file with the -f option avoids echoing the commands

### Example

```
[root@mycluster ~]# cmsh -f runthis
10.141.0.1
```

### The ssh Command

The ssh command is run from within the device mode of cmsh. If an ssh session is launched from within cmsh, then it clears the screen and is connected to the specified node. Exiting from the ssh session returns the user back to the cmsh launch point.

### Example

```
[basecm11]% device ssh node001
<screen is cleared>
<some MOTD text and login information is displayed>
[root@node001 ~]# exit
Connection to node001 closed.
```

```
[basecm11]% device use basecm11
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% #now let us connect to the head node from the head node object
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% ssh
<screen is cleared>
<some MOTD text and login information is displayed>
[root@basecm11 ~]# exit
logout
Connection to basecm11 closed.
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]%
```

An alternative to running ssh within cmsh is to launch it in a subshell anywhere from within cmsh, by using !ssh.

### The time Command

The time command within cmsh is a simplified version of the standard unix time command.

The time command takes as its argument a second command that is to be executed within cmsh. On execution of the time command, the second command is executed. After execution of the time command is complete, the time the second command took to execute is displayed.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]]% time ds node001
node001 ..... [ UP ]
time: 0.108s
```

### The watch Command

The watch command within cmsh is a simplified version of the standard unix watch command.

The watch command takes as its argument a second command that is to be executed within cmsh. On execution of the watch command, the second command is executed every 2 seconds by default, and the output of that second command is displayed.

The repeat interval of the watch command can be set with the --interval|-n option. A running watch command can be interrupted with a <Ctrl>-c.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]]% watch newnodes
screen clears
Every 2.0s: newnodes                                         Thu Dec  3 13:01:45 2015
No new nodes currently available.
```

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]]% watch -n 3 status -n node001,node002
screen clears
Every 3.0s: status -n node001,node002                         Thu Jun 30 17:53:21 2016
node001 ..... [ UP ]
node002 ..... [ UP ]
```

### Looping Over Objects With foreach

It is frequently convenient to be able to execute a cmsh command on several objects at once. The foreach command is available in a number of cmsh modes for this purpose. A foreach command takes a list of space-separated object names (the keys of the object) and a list of commands that must be enclosed by parentheses, i.e.: "(" and ")". The foreach command will then iterate through the objects, executing the list of commands on the iterated object each iteration.

**Basic syntax for the foreach command:** The basic foreach syntax is:

```
foreach <object1> <object2> ... ( <command1>; <command2> ... )
```

### Example

```
[mycluster->device]% foreach node001 node002 (get hostname; status)
node001
node001 ..... [ UP ]
node002
node002 ..... [ UP ]
[mycluster->device]%
```

With the foreach command it is possible to perform set commands on groups of objects simultaneously, or to perform an operation on a group of objects. The range command (page 68) provides an alternative to it in many cases.

**Advanced options for the foreach command:** The foreach command advanced options can be viewed from the help page:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device help foreach"
```

The options can be classed as: grouping options (list, type), adding options, conditional options, and looping options.

- **Grouping options:**

```
- -n|--nodes, -g|--group, -c|--category, -r|--rack, -h|--chassis, -e|--overlay,
- l|--role, -m|--image, -u|--union, -i|--intersection
- -t|--type chassis|fabricresourcebox|fabricswitch|genericdevice|litenebone|cloudnode|
dpu|physicalnode|headnode|powerdistributionunit|racksensor|switch|unmanagednode
```

There are two forms of grouping options shown in the preceding text. The first form uses a list of the objects being grouped, while the second form uses the type of the objects being grouped. These options become available according to the cmsh mode used.

In the device mode of cmsh, for example, the foreach command has many grouping options available. If objects are specified with a grouping option, then the specified objects can be looped over.

For example, with the list form, the --category (-c) option takes a node category argument (or several categories), while the --node (-n) option takes a node-list argument. Node-lists (specification on page 67) can also use the following, more elaborate, syntax:

<node>, ..., <node>, <node> .. <node>

### Example

```
[demo->device]% foreach -c default (status)
node001 ..... [ DOWN ]
node002 ..... [ DOWN ]
[demo->device]% foreach -g rack8 (status)
...
[demo->device]% foreach -n node001,node008..node016,node032 (status)
...
[demo->device]%
```

With the type form, using the `-t|--type` option, the literal value to this option must be one of `node`, `cloudnode`, `virtualnode`, and so on.

If multiple grouping options are used, then the union operation takes place by default.

Both grouping option forms are often used in commands other than `foreach` for node selection.

- **Adding options:** `-o|--clone`, `-a|--add`

The `--clone (-o)` option allows the cloning (section 2.5.3) of objects in a loop. In the following example, from device mode, `node001` is used as the base object from which other nodes from `node022` up to `node024` are cloned:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% foreach --clone node001 -n node022..node024 ()
[basecm11->device*]% list | grep node
Type      Hostname (key)  Ip
-----
PhysicalNode  node001      10.141.0.1
PhysicalNode  node022      10.141.0.22
PhysicalNode  node023      10.141.0.23
PhysicalNode  node024      10.141.0.24
[basecm11->device*]% commit
```

To avoid possible confusion: the cloned objects are merely objects (placeholder schematics and settings, with some different values for some of the settings, such as IP addresses, decided by heuristics). So it is explicitly not the software disk image of `node001` that is duplicated by object cloning to the other nodes by this action at this time.

- **Overriding the default heuristics for IP address allocation:** The default heuristics for IP address allocation choose the next free IP address if, among other conditions, the same base name is used for the clone. Thus, if the base name used differs from the original, then by default the next free IP address is not chosen. To override the heuristic, so that the next free IP address is chosen anyway, the `--next-ip` option can be used.

For example, when creating nodes starting with `node02` instead of the default `node002`:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% foreach -o node001 -n node[02-04] ()
Base name mismatch, IP settings will not be modified!
Base name mismatch, IP settings will not be modified!
Base name mismatch, IP settings will not be modified!
[basecm11->device*]% network ips internalnet
Hostname      IP          State
-----
basecm11      10.141.255.254  ok
node001       10.141.0.1    duplicate
node02        10.141.0.1    duplicate
node03        10.141.0.1    duplicate
node04        10.141.0.1    ok

[basecm11->device]% foreach -o node001 -n node[02-04] --next-ip ()
[basecm11->device*]% network ips internalnet
Hostname      IP          State
-----
basecm11      10.141.255.254  ok
```

```

node001      10.141.0.1    ok
node02      10.141.0.2    ok
node03      10.141.0.3    ok
node04      10.141.0.4    ok

```

Conversely, IP addresses can be incremented by a specific amount when using the `addinterface` command (section 3.7.1), by using its `--increment` option.

**The --add (-a) option** creates the device for a specified device type, if it does not exist. Valid types are shown in the help output, and include `physicalnode`, `headnode`, `switch`.

- **Conditional options:** `-s|--status`, `-q|--quitonunknown`

**The --status (-s) option** allows nodes to be filtered by the device status (section 2.1.1).

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]%
foreach -n node001..node004 --status UP (get IP)
10.141.0.1
10.141.0.3
```

Since the `--status` option is also a grouping option, the union operation applies to it by default too, when more than one grouping option is being run.

**The --quitonunknown (-q) option** allows the `foreach` loop to be exited when an unknown command is detected.

- **Looping options:** `*`, `-v|--verbose`

**The wildcard character \*** with `foreach` implies all the objects that the `list` command lists for that mode. It is used without grouping options:

### Example

```
[myheadnode->device]%
foreach * (get ip; status)
10.141.253.1
switch01 ..... [ DOWN ]
10.141.255.254
myheadnode ..... [ UP ]
10.141.0.1
node001 ..... [ CLOSED ]
10.141.0.2
node002 ..... [ CLOSED ]
[myheadnode->device]%
```

Another example that lists all the nodes per category, by running the `listnodes` command within category mode:

### Example

```
[basecm11->category]%
foreach * (get name; listnodes)
default
Type      Hostname   MAC           Category   Ip          Network     Status
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
PhysicalNode node001  FA:16:3E:79:4B:77  default   10.141.0.1 internalnet [ UP ]
PhysicalNode node002  FA:16:3E:41:9E:A8  default   10.141.0.2 internalnet [ UP ]
PhysicalNode node003  FA:16:3E:C0:1F:E1  default   10.141.0.3 internalnet [ UP ]
```

**bf** The `--verbose (-v)` option displays the loop headers during a running loop with time stamps, which can help in debugging.

### Node List Syntax

Node list specifications, as used in the foreach specification and elsewhere, can be of several types. These types are best explained with node list specification examples:

- **adhoc (with a comma, or a space):**  
example: node001 ,node003 ,node005 ,node006
- **sequential (with two dots or square brackets):**

example: node001 .. node004  
or, equivalently: node00[1-4]  
which is: node001 ,node002 ,node003 ,node004

- **sequential extended expansion (only for square brackets):**

example: node[001-002]s[001-005]  
which is:  
node001s001 ,node001s002 ,node001s003 ,node001s004 ,node001s005 ,\nnode002s001 ,node002s002 ,node002s003 ,node002s004 ,node002s005

- **rack-based:**

This is intended to hint which rack a node is located in. Thus:

- example: r[1-2]n[01-03]  
which is: r1n01 ,r1n02 ,r1n03 ,r2n01 ,r2n02 ,r2n03  
This might hint at two racks, r1 and r2, with 3 nodes each.
- example: rack[1-2]node0[1-3]  
which is: rack1node01 ,rack1node02 ,rack1node03 ,rack2node01 ,\nrack2node02 ,rack2node03  
Essentially the same as the previous one, but for nodes that were named more verbosely.

- **sequential exclusion (negation):**

example: node001 .. node005 ,-node002 .. node003  
which is: node001 ,node004 ,node005

- **sequential stride (every <stride> steps):**

example: node00[1..7:2]  
which is: node001 ,node003 ,node005 ,node007

- **mixed list:**

The square brackets and the two dots input specification cannot be used at the same time in one argument. Other than this, specifications can be mixed:

- example: r1n001 .. r1n003 ,r2n003  
which is: r1n001 ,r1n002 ,r1n003 ,r2n003
- example: r2n003 ,r[3-5]n0[01-03]  
which is: r2n003 ,r3n001 ,r3n002 ,r3n003 ,r4n001 ,r4n002 ,r4n003 ,r5n001 ,r5n002 ,r5n003
- example: node[001-100] ,-node[004-100:4]  
which is: every node in the 100 nodes, except for every fourth node.

- **path to file that contains a list of nodes:**

example: ^/some/filepath/<file with list of nodes>

The caret sign is a special character in cmsh for node list specifications. It indicates the string that follows is a file path that is to be read.

Node list syntax is a customized subset of device list syntax. As such, when using devices other than nodes, some of the syntax from node list syntax may not work as expected.

**Setting grouping syntax with the groupingsyntax command:** “Grouping syntax” here refers to usage of dots and square brackets. In other words, it is syntax of how a grouping is marked so that it is accepted as a list. The list that is specified in this manner can be for input or output purposes.

The groupingsyntax command sets the grouping syntax using the following options:

- **bracket:** the square brackets specification.
- **dot:** the two dots specification.
- **auto:** the default. Setting auto means that:
  - either the dot or the bracket specification are accepted as input,
  - the dot specification is used for output.

The chosen groupingsyntax option can be made persistent by adding it to the .cmshrc dotfiles, or to /etc/cmshrc (section 2.5.1).

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat .cm/cmsh/.cmshrc
groupingsyntax auto
```

### The range Command

The range command provides an interactive option to carry out basic foreach commands over a grouping of nodes. When the grouping option has been chosen, the cmsh prompt indicates the chosen range within braces ({}).

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% range -n node0[01-24]
[basecm11->device{-n node001..024}]%
```

In the preceding example, commands applied at device level will be applied to the range of 24 node objects.

Continuing the preceding session—if a category can be selected with the -c option. If the default category just has three nodes, then output displayed could look like:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device{-n node001..024}]% range -c default
[basecm11->device{-c default}]% ds
node001 ..... [ UP ] state flapping
node002 ..... [ UP ]
node003 ..... [ UP ]
```

Values can be set at device mode level for the selected grouping.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device{-c default}]% get revision
```

```
[basecm11->device{-c default}]% set revision test
[basecm11->device{-c default}]% get revision
test
test
test
```

Values can also be set within a submode. However, staying in the submode for a full interaction is not possible. The settings must be done by entering the submode via a semi-colon (new command statement continuation on same line) syntax, as follows:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device{-c default}]% roles; assign pbsproclient; commit
```

The range command can be regarded as a modal way to carry out an implicit `foreach` on the grouping object. Many administrators should find it easier than a `foreach`:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device{-c default}]% get ip
10.141.0.1
10.141.0.2
10.141.0.3
[basecm11->device{-c default}]% ..
[basecm11->device]% foreach -c default (get ip)
10.141.0.1
10.141.0.2
10.141.0.3
```

Commands can be run inside a range. However, running a `pexec` command inside a range is typically not the intention of the cluster administrator, even though it can be done:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% range -n node[001-100]
[basecm11->device{-n node[001-100]}]% pexec -n node[001-100] hostname
```

The preceding starts 100 `pexec` commands, each running on each of the 100 nodes.

Further options to the `range` command can be seen with the help text for the command (output truncated):

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device help range"
Name:      range - Set a range of several devices to execute future commands on

Usage:    range [OPTIONS] * (command)
          range [OPTIONS] <device> [<device> ...] (command)

Options:   --show      Show the current range
          --clear     Clear the range
          -v, --verbose Show header before each element
...
```

## The bookmark And goto Commands

**Bookmarks:** A *bookmark* in `cmsh` is a location in the `cmsh` hierarchy.

A bookmark can be

- set with the `bookmark` command
- reached using the `goto` command

A bookmark is set with arguments to the `bookmark` command within `cmsh` as follows:

- The user can set the current location as a bookmark:

- by using no argument. This is the same as setting no name for it
- by using an arbitrary argument. This is the same as setting an arbitrary name for it
- Apart from any user-defined bookmark names, cmsh automatically sets the special name: “-”. This is always the previous location in the cmsh hierarchy that the user has just come from.

All bookmarks that have been set can be listed with the `-l | --list` option.

**Reaching a bookmark:** A bookmark can be reached with the `goto` command. The `goto` command can take the following as arguments: a blank (no argument), any arbitrary bookmark name, or “-”. The bookmark corresponding to the chosen argument is then reached.

The “-” bookmark does not need to be preceded by a `goto`.

### Example

```
[mycluster]% device use node001
[mycluster->device[node001]]% bookmark
[mycluster->device[node001]]% bookmark -l
Name           Bookmark
-----
-              home;device;use node001;
[mycluster->device[node001]]% home
[mycluster]% goto
[mycluster->device[node001]]% goto -
[mycluster]% goto
[mycluster->device[node001]]% bookmark dn1
[mycluster->device[node001]]% goto -
[mycluster]% goto dn1
[mycluster->device[node001]]%
```

**Saving bookmarks, and making them persistent:** Bookmarks can be saved to a file, such as `mysaved`, with the `-s | --save` option, as follows:

### Example

```
[mycluster]% bookmark -s mysaved
```

Bookmarks can be made persistent by setting `(.)cmshrc` files (page 41) to load a previously-saved bookmarks file whenever a new cmsh session is started. The `bookmark` command loads a saved bookmark file using the `-x | --load` option.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat .cm/cmsh/.cmshrc
bookmark -x mysaved
```

### Renaming Nodes With The `rename` Command

Nodes can be renamed globally from within partition mode, in the `Node basename` field associated with the prefix of the node in Base View (section 3.1.1) or in cmsh (section 2.5.4, and also page 103).

However, a more fine-grained batch renaming is also possible with the `rename` command, and typically avoids having to resort to scripting mechanisms. Using `rename` is best illustrated by examples:

The examples begin with using the default basename of `node` and default node digits (padded suffix number length) of 3.

A simple rename that is a prefix change, can then be carried out as:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% rename node001..node003 test
Renamed: node001 to test1
Renamed: node002 to test2
Renamed: node003 to test3
```

The rename starts up its own numbering from 1, independent of the original numbering. The change is committed using the `commit` command.

Zero-padding occurs if the number of nodes is sufficiently large to need it. For example, if 10 nodes are renamed (some output elided):

**Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% rename node[001-010] test
Renamed: node001 to test01
Renamed: node002 to test02
...
Renamed: node009 to test09
Renamed: node010 to test10
```

then 2 digits are used for each number suffix, in order to match the size of the last number.

String formatting can be used to specify the number of digits in the padded number field:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% rename node[001-003] test%04d
Renamed: node001 to test0001
Renamed: node002 to test0002
Renamed: node003 to test0003
```

The target names can conveniently be specified exactly. It requires an exact name mapping. That is, it assumes the source list size and target list size match:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% rename node[001-005] test0[1,2,5-7]
Renamed: node001 to test01
Renamed: node002 to test02
Renamed: node003 to test05
Renamed: node004 to test06
Renamed: node005 to test07
```

The hostnames are sorted alphabetically before they are applied, with some exceptions based on the listing method used.

A `--dry-run` option can be used to show how the devices will be renamed. Alternatively, the `refresh` command can clear a proposed set of changes before a `commit` command commits the change, although the refresh would also remove other pending changes.

Exact name mapping could be used to allocate individual servers to several people:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% rename node[001-004] alice,bob,charlie,dave
Renamed: node001 to alice
Renamed: node002 to bob
Renamed: node003 to charlie
Renamed: node004 to dave
[basecm11->device]% commit
```

Skipping by a number of nodes is possible using a colon (:). An example might be to skip by two so that twin servers can be segregated into left/right.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% rename node[001-100:2] left[001-050]
Renamed: node001 to left001
Renamed: node003 to left002
...
Renamed: node097 to left049
Renamed: node099 to left050
[basecm11->device]% rename node[002-100:2] right[001-050]
Renamed: node002 to right001
Renamed: node004 to right002
...
Renamed: node098 to right049
Renamed: node100 to right050
[basecm11->device]% commit
```

### Using CMDaemon Environment Variables In Scripts

Within device mode, the environment command shows the CMDaemon environment variables (section 3.3.2 of the *Developer Manual*) that can be passed to scripts for particular device.

### Example

Key	Value
CMD_ACTIVE_MASTER_IP	10.141.255.254
CMD_CATEGORY	default
CMD_CLUSTERNAME	mycluster
CMD_DEVICE_TYPE	ComputeNode
CMD_ENVIRONMENT_CACHE_EPOCH_MILLISECONDS	1615465821582
CMD_ENVIRONMENT_CACHE_UPDATES	4
...	

The environment variables can be prepared for use in Bash scripts with the -e | --export option:

### Example

```
[mycluster->device]% environment -e node001
export CMD_ENVIRONMENT_CACHE_UPDATES=4
export CMD_CATEGORY=default
export CMD_SOFTWAREIMAGE=default-image
export CMD_DEVICE_TYPE=ComputeNode
export CMD_ROLES=
export CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_home_FILESYSTEM=nfs
export CMD_NODEGROUPS=
...
```

### Creating JSON Format Output From A Table Format Output In cmsh

A list of table entries can be converted to a JSON representation by using the delimiter specification option: -d {}

By default, the indentation value used is 2. Other values can be set by putting the value inside the braces.

**Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% list -f hostname,ip,mac,status
hostname (key)      ip                  mac                  status
-----
node001            10.141.0.1          FA:16:3E:95:80:9F  [    UP    ]
basecm11           10.141.255.254     FA:16:3E:D3:56:E0  [    UP    ]

[basecm11->device]% color off; list -f hostname,ip,mac,status -d {}
[
{
  "hostname (key)": "basecm11",
  "ip": "10.141.255.254",
  "mac": "FA:16:3E:D3:56:E0",
  "status": "[    UP    ]"
},
{
  "hostname (key)": "node001",
  "ip": "10.141.0.1",
  "mac": "FA:16:3E:95:80:9F",
  "status": "[    UP    ]"
}
]
[basecm11->device]%
```

The `color off` setting is needed to remove the default console coloring. If the command is to run from the bash shell, the same output can be achieved with:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh --color=no -c "device; list -f hostname,ip,mac,status -d {}"
```

## 2.6 Cluster Management Daemon

The *cluster management daemon* or *CMDaemon* is a server process that runs on all nodes of the cluster (including the head node). The cluster management daemons work together to make the cluster manageable. When applications such as `cmsh` and `Base View` communicate with the cluster, they are actually interacting with the cluster management daemon running on the head node. Cluster management applications never communicate directly with cluster management daemons running on non-head nodes.

The `CMDaemon` application starts running on any node automatically when it boots, and the application continues running until the node shuts down. Should `CMDaemon` be stopped manually for whatever reason, its cluster management functionality becomes unavailable, making it hard for administrators to manage the cluster. However, even with the daemon stopped, the cluster remains fully usable for running computational jobs using a workload manager.

The only route of communication with the cluster management daemon is through TCP port 8081. The cluster management daemon accepts only SSL connections, thereby ensuring all communications are encrypted. Authentication is also handled in the SSL layer using client-side X509v3 certificates (section 2.3).

On the head node, the cluster management daemon uses a MySQL database server to store all of its internal data. Raw monitoring data, on the other hand, is stored as binary data outside of the MySQL database (section 14.8).

## 2.6.1 Managing And Inspecting The Cluster Management Daemon

### Using systemctl To Manage The Cluster Management Daemon

It may be useful to shut down or restart the cluster management daemon. For instance, a restart may be necessary to activate changes when the cluster management daemon configuration file is modified.

The cluster management daemon operation can be controlled through the `systemctl` unit command options:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 etc]# systemctl stop cmd.service
[root@basecm11 etc]# systemctl is-enabled cmd.service
enabled
[root@basecm11 etc]# systemctl status cmd.service
* cmd.service - BCM daemon
  Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/cmd.service; enabled; preset: enabled)
    Active: inactive (dead) since Tue 2025-04-08 15:44:00 CEST; 48s ago
...
[root@basecm11 etc]# systemctl start cmd.service
[root@basecm11 etc]# systemctl status cmd.service
* cmd.service - BCM daemon
  Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/cmd.service; enabled; preset: enabled)
    Active: active (running) since Tue 2025-04-08 09:18:18 CEST; 6h ago
...
...
```

The cluster management daemon can be restarted on all regular nodes that are up:

#### Example

```
[root@mycluster ~]# pdsh -a "systemctl restart cmd; systemctl is-active cmd"
node001: active
node002: active
node003: active
[root@mycluster ~]#
```

This uses `pdsh`, the parallel shell command (section 14.1).

### Using cmdaemonctl To Inspect The Cluster Management Daemon

The `cmdaemonctl` command is a way to run some CMDaemon-specific service-related commands:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 etc]# cmdaemonctl -h
cmdaemonctl [OPTIONS...] COMMAND ...

Query or send control commands to the cluster manager daemon.

-h --help          Show this help

Commands:
debugon           Turn on CMDaemon debug
debugoff          Turn off CMDaemon debug
full-status       Display CMDaemon status
upgrade           Upgrade CMDaemon database
logconf           Reload log configuration
[root@basecm11 etc]# cmdaemonctl full-status
```

```
CMDaemon version 3.0 is running (active)
Running locally
Debug logging is disabled

Current Time: Tue, 08 Apr 2025 16:15:41 CEST
Startup Time: Tue, 08 Apr 2025 15:55:39 CEST
Uptime: 20m 1s

CPU Usage: 5.55887u 1.93049s (0.6%)
Memory Usage: 176MB

Sessions Since Startup: 5
Active Sessions: 5

Number of occupied worker-threads: 1
Number of free worker-threads: 14

Connections handled: 323
Requests processed: 323
Total read: 93KB
Total written: 317KB

Average request rate: 16.1 requests/m
Average bandwidth usage: 264.35B/s
```

For performance reasons, CMDaemon should not normally be run in debug mode.

## 2.6.2 Configuring The Cluster Management Daemon

Many cluster configuration changes can be done by modifying the cluster management daemon configuration file. For the head node, the file is located at:

```
/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf
```

For regular nodes, it is located inside of the software image that the node uses.

Appendix C describes the supported configuration file directives and how they can be used. Normally there is no need to modify the default settings.

After modifying the configuration file, the cluster management daemon must be restarted to activate the changes.

## 2.6.3 CMDaemon Versions

### Updating CMDaemon

CMDaemon can be updated on the head node with a package manager command such as:

```
yum update cmdaemon
```

and on a regular node image with a command such as:

```
yum update --installroot=/cm/images/<software image> cmdaemon
```

Updating software on the cluster is covered in greater detail in Chapter9.

### CMDaemon Version Extraction

For debugging an issue, knowing the version of CMDaemon that is in use on the cluster can be helpful. The `cmdaemonversions` command runs within the device mode of `cmsh`. It lists the CMDaemon version running on the nodes of the cluster

## Example

```
[basecm11->device]% cmdaemonversions
Hostname      Version index Version hash
-----
basecm11      146,965       e6f593b676
node001        146,965       e6f593b676
node002        146,965       e6f593b676
```

A higher version index value indicates a more recent CMDaemon version.

The --join option is a formatting option which gathers together versions with the same option:

```
[basecm11->device]% cmdaemonversions --join
Version index Version hash Count      Hostnames
-----
146,965       e6f593b676   3          basecm11, node001..node002
```

## 2.6.4 Configuring The Cluster Management Daemon Logging Facilities

CMDaemon generates log messages in /var/log/cmdaemon from specific internal subsystems, such as Workload Management, Service Management, Monitoring, Certs, and so on. By default, none of those subsystems generate detailed (debug-level) messages, as that would make the log file grow rapidly.

### CMDaemon Logging Configuration Global Debug Mode

A global debug mode can be enabled in CMDaemon using cmdaemonctl:

## Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmdaemonctl -h
cmdaemonctl [OPTIONS...] COMMAND ...

Query or send control commands to the cluster manager daemon.

-h --help           Show this help

Commands:
debugon            Turn on CMDaemon debug
debugoff           Turn off CMDaemon debug
...
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmdaemonctl debugon
CMDaemon debug level on
```

Stopping debug level logs from running for too long by executing cmdaemonctl debugoff is a good idea, especially for production clusters. This is important in order to prevent swamping the cluster with unfeasibly large logs.

### CMDaemon Subsystem Logging Configuration Debug Mode

CMDaemon subsystems can generate debug logs separately per subsystem, including by severity level. This can be done by modifying the logging configuration file at:

```
/cm/local/apps/cm/etc/logging.cmd.conf
```

Within this file, a section with a title of #Available Subsystems lists the available subsystems that can be monitored. These subsystems include MON (for monitoring), DB (for database), HA (for high availability), CERTS (for certificates), and so on.

### CMDaemon Subsystem Logging Configuration Severity Levels

The debug setting is one of several severity levels. Other severity levels are info, warning, error, and all.

Further details on setting subsystem options are given within the `logging.cmd.conf` file.

For example, to set CMDaemon log output for Monitoring, at a severity level of warning, the file contents for the section `severity` might look like:

#### Example

```
Severity {  
    warning: MON  
}
```

### CMDaemon Subsystem Logging Configuration Deployment

The new logging configuration can be reloaded from the file by restarting CMDaemon:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 etc]# systemctl restart cmd
```

or by triggering it using the event bucket (page 627)

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 etc]# echo LOGGING.RELOAD.CONFIG > /var/spool/cmd/eventbucket
```

## 2.6.5 Configuration File Modification, And The `FrozenFile` Directive

As part of its tasks, the cluster management daemon modifies a number of system configuration files. Some configuration files are completely replaced, while other configuration files only have some sections modified. Appendix A lists all system configuration files that are modified.

- A file that has been generated entirely by the cluster management daemon contains a header:

```
# This file was automatically generated by cmd. Do not edit manually!
```

Such a file will be entirely overwritten, unless the `FrozenFile` configuration file directive (Appendix C, page 857) is used to keep it frozen.

- A file that has had only a section of it generated by the cluster management daemon contains a header and ending sections in the following format:

```
# This section of this file was automatically generated by cmd. Do not edit manually!  
# BEGIN AUTOGENERATED SECTION -- DO NOT REMOVE  
...  
# END AUTOGENERATED SECTION -- DO NOT REMOVE
```

Such a file has only the auto-generated sections entirely overwritten, unless the `FrozenFile` configuration file directive is used to keep these sections frozen.

The `FrozenFile` configuration file directive in `cmd.conf` is set as suggested by this example:

#### Example

```
FrozenFile = { "/etc/dhcpd.conf", "/etc/postfix/main.cf" }
```

If the generated full file or generated section of a file has a manually modified part, and `FrozenFile` is not in use, then during overwriting an event is generated, and the original manually modified configuration file is backed up to:

```
/var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files
```

Using `FrozenFile` can be regarded as a configuration technique (section 3.19.3), and one of various possible configuration techniques (section 3.19.1).

## 2.6.6 Configuration File Conflicts Between The Standard Distribution And BCM For Generated And Non-Generated Files

While BCM changes as little as possible of the standard distributions that it manages, there can sometimes be unavoidable issues. In particular, sometimes a standard distribution utility or service generates a configuration file that conflicts with what the configuration file generated by BCM carries out (Appendix A).

For example, the Red Hat security configuration tool `system-config-securitylevel` can conflict with what `shorewall` (section 7.2 of the *Installation Manual*) does, while the Red Hat Authentication Configuration Tool `authconfig` (used to modify the `/etc/pam.d/system-auth` file) can conflict with the configuration settings set by BCM for LDAP and PAM.

In such a case the configuration file generated by BCM must be given precedence, and the generation of a configuration file from the standard distribution should be avoided. Sometimes using a fully or partially frozen configuration file (section 2.6.5) allows a workaround. Otherwise, the functionality of the BCM version usually allows the required configuration function to be implemented.

Details on the configuration files installed and updated by the package management system, for files that are “non-generated” (that is, not of the kind in section 2.6.5 or in the lists in Appendixes A.1 and A.2.3), are given in Appendix A.3.

## 2.6.7 CMDaemon Lite

### Introduction

As an alternative to the regular CMDaemon, BCM provides a lightweight CMDaemon, called CMDaemon Lite. This is intended as a minimal alternative to the regular CMDaemon for nodes that are not managed by CMDaemon. CMDaemon Lite is contained in the package `cm-lite-daemon`.

It can be installed on a device where the administrator considers the option of installing a regular, full-featured, CMDaemon to be overkill, but still wants an alternative that allows some basic monitoring, and (if available) GNSS measurements, to be carried out on the device.

CMDaemon Lite is a Python service, and can be run on a device such as a standalone desktop, running Windows, Linux, or MacOS. It uses up one node license per node that it is run on. It requires Python 3.6 or higher.

CMDaemon Lite with the standard number of metrics is about 25% lighter on memory resources, and 50% lighter on CPU resources, than the regular CMDaemon.

### Deployment

A zipped package can be picked up on the head node from BCM repositories with:

### Example

```
yum install cm-lite-daemon
```

This places a zip file at `/cm/shared/apps/cm-lite-daemon-dist/cm-lite-daemon.zip`. This file should be moved to and unzipped on the *lite node*. The lite node is the machine that is to run `cm-lite-daemon`.

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# scp /cm/shared/apps/cm-lite-daemon-dist/cm-lite-daemon.zip \
root@lite01:/opt/cm-lite-daemon.zip
[root@basecm11 ~]# ssh root@lite01
[root@lite01 ~]# cd /opt
[root@lite01 opt]# unzip cm-lite-daemon.zip
[root@lite01 opt]# cd cm-lite-daemon
[root@lite01 cm-lite-daemon]# ls -ll --group-directories-first
total 44
drwxr-xr-x 7 root root 4096 Nov 11 13:22 cm_lite_daemon
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 104 Nov 11 13:23 etc
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 76 Oct 19 16:43 examples
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 6 Oct 19 16:43 log
```

```
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root 78 Oct 19 16:43 service
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 4986 Oct 19 16:43 cm-lite-daemon
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 740 Oct 19 16:43 cm-lite-daemon_ctl
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 2469 Oct 19 16:43 connection_test
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 445 Oct 19 16:43 install-required-pip-packages
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 245 Oct 19 16:43 install-required-pip-packages.bat
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 5401 Oct 19 16:43 register_node
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 2808 Oct 19 16:43 request_certificate
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 3907 Oct 19 16:43 unregister_node
```

The lite node needs a certificate, and to be registered before `cm-lite-daemon` can run on it. The easiest way to do this is to use the `register_node` utility which is one of the unzipped files in the preceding list. Running it:

- installs required Python packages
- requests a new certificate
- registers the lite node with the head node
- installs `cm-lite-daemon` as a service.

After `register_node` is run, CMDaemon running on the head node is able to see the certificate request. Depending on the network that the CMDaemon Lite on the lite node is connected to, the certificate will be automatically issued, just like it is for regular BCM nodes being installed. However if CMDaemon Lite is connected via different network, then the certificate must be issued manually, which can be done as follows:

Using `cmsh` the certificate request ID can be found:

### Example

```
[basecm11->cert]% listrequests
Request ID Client type Session ID Name
----- -----
1          Lite node    ....      ....
```

After finding the correct value for the Request ID, the certificate can then be issued. For a certificate with a Request ID value of 1, it can be issued with, for example:

```
basecm11->cert]% issuecertificate --days 10000 1
```

The days field can be used to set how long `cm-lite-daemon` is allowed to connect. Regular BCM node certificates have a lifetime of about 10,000 days (about 27 years).

On a Linux machine `register_node` starts `cm-lite-daemon` as a service, so that the following commands work as expected:

```
[root@lite01 ~]# service cm-lite-daemon status
...
[root@lite01 ~]# service cm-lite-daemon start
...
[root@lite01 ~]# service cm-lite-daemon stop
...
```

On non-Linux operating systems, `cm-lite-daemon` must be started manually. CMDaemon Lite can be tested by first running it in a foreground shell environment:

### Example

```
[root@lite01 cm-lite-daemon]# ./cm-lite-daemon
```

The lite node should then show up as being in the UP state in Base View or cmsh.

Afterwards the cm-lite-daemon Python script can be registered to be autostarted. The administrator should ensure that the running directory for this is set correctly.

The cm-lite-daemon service can alternatively simply be run as a foreground process when needed.

### CMDaemon Lite On Cumulus Switches

From NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 10 onwards, Cumulus switches (section 3.10) also support running CMDaemon Lite. In that case, the property hasclientdaemon must be set for the switch.

#### Example

```
[head]# device add switch cumulus01
[head->device*[cumulus01*]]% # hasclientdaemon: set if CMDaemon Lite should run on switch
[head->device*[cumulus01*]]% set hasclientdaemon yes
[head->device*[cumulus01*]]% interfaces
[head->device*[cumulus01*]->interfaces]% add physical eth0
[head->device[cumulus01*]->interfaces*[eth0*]]% set mac 12:34:56:78:90:AB
[head->device[cumulus01*]->interfaces*[eth0*]]% set ip 1.2.3.4
[head->device[cumulus01*]->interfaces*[eth0*]]% commit
[head->device[cumulus01]->interfaces[eth0]]% ...;..
[head->device[cumulus01]]% status
cumulus01 ..... [ UP ]
```

The ZTP settings should be configured from ztpsettings mode, and a username and password must be set within the accesssettings mode for the Cumulus switch. Further details on configuring Cumulus switches are given in section 3.10.

### Even Lighter Than CMDaemon Lite: Configuring A Device As A Generic Node

To put things in perspective: so far the options described have been:

1. CMDaemon running on the device
2. CMDaemon Lite running on the device

A third option that can be considered, is to have

3. no CMDaemon at all running on the device and to register the device as a generic node with the regular CMDaemon on the head node. A generic node is a generic network device (page 105) that happens to be a node.

This third option—the generic node option—then monitors the device for a basic state of UP/DOWN, but nothing else. In contrast to the first two cases, a node license is not used up.

**Even lighter than generic nodes: configuring a device as unmonitored:** Devices can alternatively be added to the BIND DNS entries of the zone file via the /var/named/\*.include files (Appendix A.1). This is a feature of the Linux operating system rather than a feature of BCM, and so—perhaps rather obviously—a BCM node license is also not used up in this case.

After restarting the named service, the nodes are not seen on the head node, and the device is not monitored in any way. The cluster does however know how to reach it, which in some cases may be all that a cluster administrator wants.

For example, if a host 10.141.1.20 with hostname myotherhost01, is added to the internalnet network within the domain name eth.cluster, then the session may be run as follows:

#### Example

```
[root@head ~]# vi /var/named/eth.cluster.zone.include
(appropriate DNS forward entry is added)
[root@head ~]# cat /var/named/eth.cluster.zone.include
```

```
myotherhost01 IN A 10.141.1.20
[root@head ~]# vi /var/named/141.10.in-addr.arpa.zone.include
(appropriate DNS reverse entry is added)
[root@head ~]# cat /var/named/141.10.in-addr.arpa.zone.include
20.1 IN PTR myotherhost01.eth.cluster.
[root@head ~]# systemctl restart named
```



# 3

# Configuring The Cluster

After the NVIDIA Base Command Manager software has been installed on the head node, the cluster must be configured. For convenience, the regular nodes on the cluster use a default software image stored on the head node. The image is supplied to the regular nodes during a process called provisioning (Chapter 5), and both the head node and the regular nodes can have their software modified to suit exact requirements (Chapter 9). This chapter however goes through a number of basic cluster configuration aspects that are required to get all the hardware up and running on the head and regular nodes.

Section 3.1 explains how some of the main cluster configuration settings can be changed.

Section 3.2 details how the internal and external network parameters of the cluster can be changed.

Section 3.3 describes the setting up of network bridge interfaces.

Section 3.4 describes VLAN configuration.

Section 3.5 describes the setting up of network bond interfaces.

Section 3.6 covers how InfiniBand is set up.

Section 3.7 describes how Baseboard Management Controllers such as IPMI, iLO, DRAC, CIMC, and Redfish are set up.

Section 3.8 describes how BlueField DPUs are set up.

Section 3.9 describes how switches are set up.

Section 3.10 describes how Cumulus switches are configured.

Section 3.11 describes how NetQ can be integrated with BCM.

Section 3.12 explains how disk layouts are configured, as well as how diskless nodes are set up.

Section 3.13 describes how NFS volumes are exported from an NFS server and mounted to nodes using the integrated approach of BCM.

Section 3.14 describes how services can be run from BCM.

Section 3.15 describes how a rack can be configured and managed with BCM.

Section 3.16 describes how GPUs can be configured with BCM.

Section 3.18 describes how custom scripts can replace some of the default scripts in use.

Section 3.19 discusses configuration alternatives that are not based on CMDaemon.

Section 3.20 describes how the configuration files prior to a configuration change can be saved.

More elaborate aspects of cluster configuration such as power management, user management, package management, and workload management are covered in later chapters.

## 3.1 Main Cluster Configuration Settings

While both front ends—cmsh and Base View—can be used to carry out cluster management (Chapter 2), the BCM Manuals often describe configuration with an arbitrary front end rather than for both front ends.

This is because the front ends are usually analogous enough to each other when carrying out a configuration procedure, so that describing the procedure for the other front end in detail as well is mostly wasteful. If the procedures differ significantly, then guidance is typically given on the differences.

Thus, for example, both cmsh and Base View can be used for the global configuration of cluster settings. For the cmsh front end, the configuration is done using partition mode. The analog to global configuration in the Base View front end relies on the navigation path: Cluster > Settings.

This section now continues with the Base View description.

The navigation path: Cluster > Settings brings up Base View's cluster Settings window (figure 3.1):

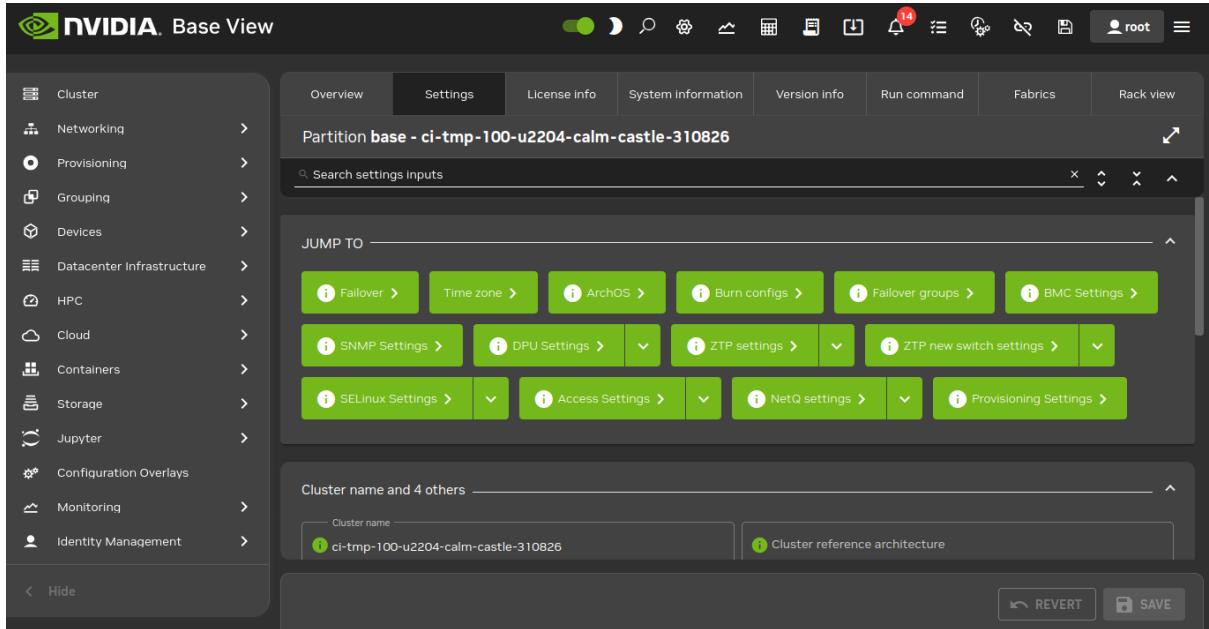


Figure 3.1: Cluster Settings

The navigational overview (figure 2.4) indicates how the main cluster **Settings** window fits into the organizational layout of BCM.

The cluster **Settings** window allows changes to be made to many of the global cluster settings. Its values can in some cases be overridden by more specific configuration levels, such as category-level or node-level configuration. The main cluster settings in figure 3.1 are related to the cluster name-related settings, cluster networking, and some miscellaneous global cluster settings.

### 3.1.1 Cluster Configuration: Various Name-Related Settings

In the Base View **Settings** window, the following defaults can be viewed and modified for names throughout the cluster.

- Cluster name: (default name: BCM HEAD Cluster)
- External network: (default name: externalnet)
- Internal network: (default name: internalnet)
- Default category: (default name: default)
- How the nodes of the cluster are named:
  - Node name: the base prefix, also called *basename* (default prefix name: node)
  - Node digits size: number of digits in suffix of node name (default size: 3)

The global node naming structure can be managed in Base View via the navigation path Cluster > Settings > NODE BASENAME. It can also be managed in cmsh via the parameters `nodebasename` and `nodedigits`, under the partition mode (page 103) of cmsh.

Changing the naming and digit size only affects nodes created after the setting.

Renaming of existing node names is possible using the `rename` command from `device` mode of `cmsh`, (section 2.5.5, page 70).

Cloning of nodes is also possible, and can save some work for the cluster administrator, due to some heuristics used to get the cloned node configured correctly (page 65).

### 3.1.2 Cluster Configuration: Some Network-Related Settings

These following network-related settings are also described in the context of external network settings for the cluster object, in section 3.2.3, as well as in the quickstart in Chapter 1 of the *Installation Manual*.

#### Nameserver And Search Domains Used By Cluster

- If Base View is used, then the settings window can be used to set the IP address of the nameserver and the names of the search domains for the cluster.

By default, the nameserver is the internal (regular-nodes-facing) IP address of the head node. Multiple nameservers can be added. If the value is set to `0.0.0.0`, then the address supplied via DHCP to the head node is used. Alternatively, a static value can be set. Static IP addresses must be used for external addresses in the case of the cluster being configured with high availability.

- If `cmsh` is used instead of Base View, then the changes to the `nameserver` and `searchdomain` values can instead be carried out via `partition` mode (page 101).

**Limit to the number of search domains:** In older versions of the Linux operating system, the number of names that can be set as search domains used by the cluster has a maximum limit of 6 by default, with a total of 256 characters.

More recent versions of glibc—from glibc 2.26 onward—no longer set a limit.

Because using more than 6 search domains is unsupported by older glibcs, some administrators take the risk of forcefully installing a newer glibc, overriding the official repository dependency restrictions. This results in a system that is unsupported by the distribution, and is also unsupported by BCM.

Instead of trying to set more than the officially supported number of search domains, the use of FQDNs is advised as a workaround.

#### Changing The Order In `resolv.conf`

For clusters, CMDaemon by default automatically writes the `/etc/resolv.conf` by using the following sources, and in the following order:

1. Global network
2. Other networks
3. Category search domains
4. Partition search domains

Because older glibc versions only support 6 entries in `/etc/resolv.conf`, it is sometimes useful to exclude or reorder the preceding sources.

For a network object, there are two fields that control the position of the domain name in the file `/etc/resolv.conf`:

#### Example

```
[basecm11]# network use ibnet
[basecm11->network[ibnet]]% show
...
Exclude from search domain      no
Search domain index            0
```

If the `Exclude from search domain` field is set to `yes`, then the domain name for the network is not used.

The `Search domain index` field specifies the position of the domain name. A value of 0 means CMDaemon automatically determines its location.

The index of the category and partition search domains can also be changed by appending a number, in the suffix format :`<index>`, to the domain name:

### Example

```
[basecm11]% partition
[basecm11->partition[base]]% get searchdomains
example.com:1
domain.test:6
```

If an index is set for one search domain, then setting indices for all search domains is recommended. Search domains without indices are handled automatically by CMDaemon.

CMDaemon sorts all search domains according to index, and writes `/etc/resolv.conf` with the 6 that have the lowest index, with the lowest index first.

### Setting The Stub Resolver For Ubuntu Hosts

For Ubuntu, CMDaemon generates a `/etc/resolv.conf` file (Appendix A), and symlinks it to the `resolv.conf` managed by `systemd` at `/etc/run/systemd/resolve/resolve.conf`.

However, a default Ubuntu without BCM uses a `systemd` stub resolver service (`man systemd-resolved.8`) that listens on the IP address 127.0.0.53. Sometimes a stub resolver is also useful in BCM for containers such as enroot containers (section 7.3.3) that mount and use `/etc/resolv.conf`.

To enable resolution for such containers on a node via the stub resolver instead of the uplink resolver, the resolver can be set using the extra `resolver` parameter, using the `-e | --extra` setting:

### Example

```
basecm11->device[node001]]% # to set it to the stub resolver:
basecm11->device[node001]]% set -e resolv stub
basecm11->device*[node001*]]% commit          # wait a bit
basecm11->device[node001]]% # to set it back to the BCM value:
basecm11->device[node001]]% set -e resolv uplink
basecm11->device*[node001*]]% commit          # wait a bit
```

### Externally Visible IP Address

The externally visible IP address are public (non-RFC 1918) IP addresses to the cluster. These can be set to be visible on the external network.

- If using Base View, the navigation path is:  
`Cluster > Settings > EXTERNALLY VISIBLE IP`.
- For `cmsh`, the parameter `externallyvisibleip` can be set via partition mode.

### Time server(s)

Time server hostnames can be specified for the NTP client on the head node.

- If using Base View, the navigation path is via `Cluster > Settings > NAME SERVERS`.
- For `cmsh`, the parameter `timeservers` can be set via partition mode.

### Time Zone

The time zone setting can be set at various grouping levels:

If applied to the entire cluster, and if it is applied in partition mode, then:

- In Base View, the time zone parameters can be jumped to via the navigation path:  
Cluster > Settings > JUMP TO > Time zone
- In cmsh, the time zone can be selected in partition mode, using the base object. Tab-completion prompting after entering “set timezone” displays a list of several hundred possible time zones, from which one can be chosen:

#### Example

```
[base@cm11] % partition use base
[base@cm11->partition[base]] % set timezone america/los_angeles
[base@cm11->partition*[base*]] % commit
```

A time zone setting can also be applied at the level of a node, category, edge site, and cloud region. As is usual in the BCM hierarchy, the value set for the larger grouping is the default value used by the members of that group, while a value set specifically for the individual members of that group overrides such a default.

### 3.1.3 Miscellaneous Settings

#### BMC (IPMI/iLO, DRAC, CIMC, Redfish) Settings

The BMC (Baseboard Management Controller) access settings can be configured in Base View via the navigation path:

Cluster > Settings > JUMP TO > BMC Settings

This opens up a window so that the BMC settings can be managed:

- User name: (default: bright)
- Password: (default: random string generated during head node installation)
- User ID: (default: 4)
- Power reset delay: During a reset, this is the time, in seconds, that the machine is off, before it starts powering up again (default: 0)
- Extra arguments: (default: none)
- privilege: (default: administrator)

The defaults in the preceding are set when the BMC interfaces are configured during head node installation. If the BMC interfaces are not set then, then the defaults are also unset.

BMC configuration is discussed in more detail in section 3.7.

#### Administrator E-mail Setting

By default, the distribution which BCM runs on sends e-mails for the administrator to the root e-mail address. The administrator e-mail address can be changed within BCM so that these e-mails are received elsewhere.

- In Base View, an e-mail address (or space-separated addresses) can be set in the Administrator e-mail field via the navigation path Cluster > Settings > CLUSTER NAME (figure 3.1).
- In cmsh, the e-mail address (or space-separated addresses) can be set in partition mode, using the base object as follows:

### Example

```
[basecm11]# partition use base
[basecm11->partition[base]]% set administratore-mail alf@example.com beth@example.com
[basecm11->partition*[base*]]% commit
```

The following critical states or errors cause e-mails to be sent to the e-mail address:

- By default, a month before the cluster license expires, a reminder e-mail is sent to the administrator account by CMDaemon. A daily reminder is sent if the expiry is due within a week.
- A service on the head node that fails on its first ever boot.
- When an automatic failover fails on the head or regular node.

### SMTP Relay Host Mailserver Setting

The head node uses Postfix as its SMTP server. The default base distribution configuration is a minimal Postfix installation, and so has no value set for the SMTP relay host. To set its value:

- in Base View: the `Relay Host` field sets the SMTP relay host for the cluster resource
- in cmsh: the `relayhost` property can be set for the `base` object within `partition` mode:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]# partition use base
[basecm11-> partition[base]]% set relayhost mail.example.com
[basecm11-> partition[base*]]% commit
```

Postfix on the regular nodes is configured to use the head node as a relay host and is normally left untouched by the administrator.

If the regular node configuration for Postfix is changed in `partition` mode, then a node reboot deploys the change for the node. Setting the [AdvancedConfig \(page 862\)](#) `SmtpPartitionRelayHostInImages` to 0 disables the changing of the relay host on the regular node.

Further Postfix changes can be done directly to the configuration files as is done in the standard distribution. The changes must be done after the marked auto-generated sections, and should not conflict with the auto-generated sections.

A convenient way to check mail is functioning is to run BCM's `testemail` command. The command is run from within the `main` mode of cmsh. It sends a test e-mail out using CMDaemon:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# mailq; ls -al /var/spool/mail/root
Mail queue is empty
-rw----- 1 root mail 0 Sep  8 11:11 /var/spool/mail/root
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "main; testemail"
Mail delivered to postfix
You have new mail in /var/spool/mail/root
[root@basecm11 ~]# mailq; ls -al /var/spool/mail/root
Mail queue is empty
-rw----- 1 root mail 749 Sep  8 11:12 /var/spool/mail/root
```

The test e-mail destination is the administrator e-mail address discussed in the preceding section.

### Failover Settings

To access the high availability (HA) feature of the cluster for head nodes, the administrator can click on the `Failover` option in Base View. This opens up a subwindow that can be used to configure HA-related parameters (section 15.4.6).

### **Failover Groups Settings**

To access the high availability feature of the cluster for groups of regular nodes, the administrator can click on the Failover groups option in Base View. This opens up a subwindow that can be used to configure failover-groups-related parameters (section 15.5).

### **Burn Configs**

Burning nodes is covered in Chapter 11 of the *Installation Manual*. Burn configuration settings for the cluster can be accessed in Base View via the following navigation paths:

- Cluster[Partition base] > Settings > Default burn configuration

This allows the Default burn configuration for a node burn run to be modified.

- Cluster[Partition base] > Settings > Burn configs

This lists the possible burn configuration settings in a subwindow, and allows changes to some of their properties of each item of the list.

### **FIPS Mode**

To be compliant with the Federal Information Processing Standards of the USA, Linux-based systems are required to stick to some security standards. This is known as FIPS compliance.

FIPS compliance on regular nodes can be set per node or per category.

The existing FIPS status can be checked with the sysinfo command at node level:

#### **Example**

```
[head->device]% sysinfo node002
Name          Value
-----
...
FIPS          No
```

Or even just with a get:

#### **Example**

```
[head->device]% get node002 fips
no
```

FIPS can be enabled by node:

#### **Example**

```
[head->device]% set node002 fips yes
[head->device*1% commit
[head->device]*% reboot node002
  [time passes]
  [node002 finishes reboot]
[head->device]*% sysinfo node002 | grep FIPS
FIPS          Yes
```

FIPS can be enabled by category:

#### **Example**

```
[head->device]*% sysinfo node002
[head->device]*% category
[head->category]*% set default fips yes
[head->category*]*% commit
```

```
Successfully committed 1 Categories
[head->category]%
... [notice] head: node001 [    UP    ], restart required (fips)
... [notice] head: node002 [    UP    ], restart required (fips)
[head->category]% device reboot -n node001..node002
[head->category]% device
[head->device]% get node001 fips; get node002 fips
yes
yes
```

As is usual in BCM, the node level setting overwrites the category level setting.

Setting FIPS compliance on the head node itself via CMDaemon is not allowed. This is because FIPS GRUB configuration could, in some unusual cases, result in an unbootable head node. The cluster administrator must consider the existing state of the head node with due care before manually re-configuring it for FIPS.

### 3.1.4 Limiting The Maximum Number Of Open Files

#### Configuring The System Limit On Open Files: The /proc/sys/fs/file-max Setting

The maximum number of open files allowed on a running Linux operating system is determined by /proc/sys/fs/file-max. To configure this setting so that it is persistent, the Linux operating system uses a /etc/sysctl.conf file and \*.conf files under /etc/sysctl.d/. Further information on these files can be found via the man page, `man sysctl.conf.5`. BCM adheres to this standard method, and places a settings file 90-cm-sysctl.conf in the directory /etc/sysctl.d/.

By default, the value set for `file-max` by NVIDIA Base Command Manager is 131072. An on-premises head node typically is not used to run applications that exceed this value, and the settings file 90-cm-sysctl.conf is therefore not available for modification by the CMDaemon front ends (cmsh and Base View). For edge and cloud director installations, the installation scripts take care of modifying `file-max` since such installations can have many more open files. Cluster administrators are thus not expected to have a need to modify the value of `file-max` in most use cases.

However, if there is a need to modify the value of `file-max`, then a subsequent, extra, configuration file, such as /etc/sysctl.d/91-site-sysctl-file-max-tweak.conf can be added under /etc/sysctl.d/, so that the BCM version is not interfered with directly.

#### Configuring The User Limit On Open Files: The nofile Setting

The maximum number of open files allowed for a user can be seen on running `ulimit -n`. The value is defined by the `nofile` parameter of `ulimit`.

By default the value set by BCM is 131072.

`Ulimit` limits are limits to restrict the resources used by users. If the `pam_limits.so` module is used to apply `ulimit` limits, then the resource limits can be set via the /etc/security/limits.conf file and \*.conf files in the /etc/security/limits.d directory. Further information on these files can be found via the man page, `man limits.conf.5`.

Resource limits that can be set for user login sessions include the number of simultaneous login sessions, the number of open files, and memory limits.

The maximum number of open files for a user is unlimited by default in an operating system that is not managed by BCM. However, it is set to 131072 by default for a system managed by BCM. The `nofile` value is defined by BCM in:

- in /etc/security/limits.d/91-cm-limits.conf on the head node
- in /cm/images/<software image name>/etc/security/limits.d/91-cm-limits.conf in the software image that the regular node picks up.

The values set in 91-cm-limits.conf are typically sufficient for a user session, unless the user runs applications that are resource hungry and consume a lot of open files.

### Deciding On Appropriate Ulimit, Limit, And System Limit Values

Decreasing the `nofile` value in `/etc/security/limits.d/91-cm-limits.conf` (but leaving the `/proc/sys/fs/file-max` untouched), or increasing `/proc/sys/fs/file-max` (but leaving the `nofile` value of 131072 per session as is), may help the system stay under the maximum number of open files allowed.

In general, users should not be allowed to use the head node as a compilation server, or as a test bed, before running their applications. This is because user errors can unintentionally cause the head node to run out of resources and crash it.

Depending what is running on the server, and the load on it, the administrator may wish to increase the resource limit values.

A very rough rule-of-thumb that may be useful as a first approximation to set `file-max` optimally is suggested in the kernel source code. The suggestion is to simply multiply the system memory (in MB) by 10 per MB, and make the resulting number the `file-max` value. For example, if the node has 128 GB of memory, then 1280000 can be set as the `file-max` value.

Fine-tuning to try and ensure that the operating system no longer runs out of file handles, and to try and ensure the memory limits for handling the load are not exceeded, is best achieved via an empirical trial-and-error approach.

## 3.2 Network Settings

A simplified quickstart guide to setting up the external head node network configuration on a vendor-prepared cluster is given in Chapter 6 of the *Installation Manual*. This section (3.2) covers network configuration more thoroughly.

After the cluster is set up with the correct license as explained in Chapter 4 of the *Installation Manual*, the next configuration step is to define the networks that are present (sections 3.2.1 and 3.2.2).

During BCM installation at least three default network objects were created:

`internalnet`: the primary internal cluster network, and the default management network. This is used for booting non-head nodes and for all cluster management communication. In the absence of other internal networks, `internalnet` is also used for storage and communication between compute jobs. Changing the configuration of this network is described on page 102 under the subheading “Changing Internal Network Parameters For The Cluster”.

`externalnet`: the network connecting the cluster to the outside world (typically a corporate or campus network). Changing the configuration of this network is described on page 98 under the subheading “Changing External Network Parameters For The Cluster”. This is the only network for which BCM also supports IPv6.

`globalnet`: the special network used to set the domain name for nodes so that they can be resolved whether they are cloud nodes or not. This network is described further on page 105 under the subheading “Changing The Global Network Parameters For The Cluster”.

For a Type 1 cluster (section 3.3.9 of the *Installation Manual*) the internal and external networks are illustrated conceptually by figure 3.2.

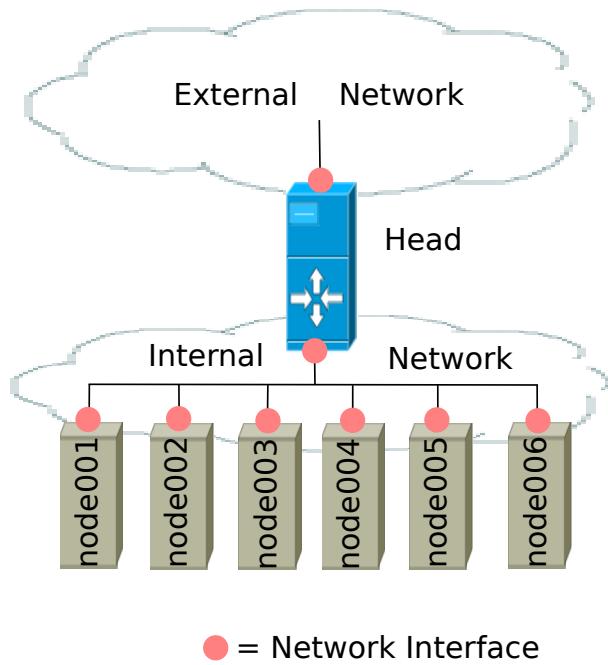


Figure 3.2: Network Settings Concepts

The configuration of network settings is completed when, after having configured the general network settings, specific IP addresses are then also assigned to the interfaces of devices connected to the networks.

- Changing the configuration of the head node external interface is described on page 99 under the subheading “The IP address of the cluster”.
- Changing the configuration of the internal network interfaces is described on page 104 under the subheading “The IP addresses and other interface values of the internal network”.
  - How to set a persistent identity for an interface—for example, to ensure that a particular interface that has been assigned the name `eth3` by the kernel keeps this name across reboots—is covered in section 5.8.1, page 289.
- Changing the configuration of `globalnet` is described on page 105 under the subheading “Changing The Global Network Parameters For The Cluster”. IP addresses are not configured at the `globalnet` network level itself.

### 3.2.1 Configuring Networks

The network mode in `cmsh` gives access to all network-related operations using the standard object commands. Section 2.5.3 introduces `cmsh` modes and working with objects.

In Base View, a network can be configured via the navigation path `Networking > Networks`, which opens up the `Network` list subwindow (figure 3.3):

NAME ↑	IPV6	NETMASK BITS	BASE ADDRESS	TYPE	DOMAIN NAME	
externalnet	false	24	192.168.200.0	External	openstacklocal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
globalnet	false	0	0.0.0.0	Global	cm.cluster	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
internalnet	false	16	10.141.0.0	Internal	eth.cluster	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
kube-default-pod	false	16	172.29.0.0	Internal	pod.cluster.local	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
kube-default-service	false	16	10.150.0.0	Internal	service.cluster.local	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾

**+ ADD**

Figure 3.3: Networks

In the context of the OSI Reference Model, each network object represents a layer 3 (i.e. Network Layer) IP network, and several layer 3 networks can be layered on a single layer 2 network (e.g. routes on an Ethernet segment).

Selecting a network such as `internalnet` or `externalnet` in the list of networks, for example by double-clicking the row, opens up a new `Overview` window for that network. Some resizing of the windows is usually needed to view the new window properly on a standard screen.

The `Overview` window by default lists the device names and device properties that are in the network. For example the `internal` network typically has some nodes, switches, and other devices attached to it, each with their IP addresses and interface (figure 3.4).

TYPE	HOSTNAME ↑	INTERFACE	IP
Node	bright92	eth0	10.141.255.254
Node	node001	BOOTIF	10.141.0.1
Node	node002	BOOTIF	10.141.0.2

**← BACK**

Figure 3.4: Network Overview

Selecting the `Settings` option opens a scrollable pane that allows a number of network properties to be changed (figure 3.5).

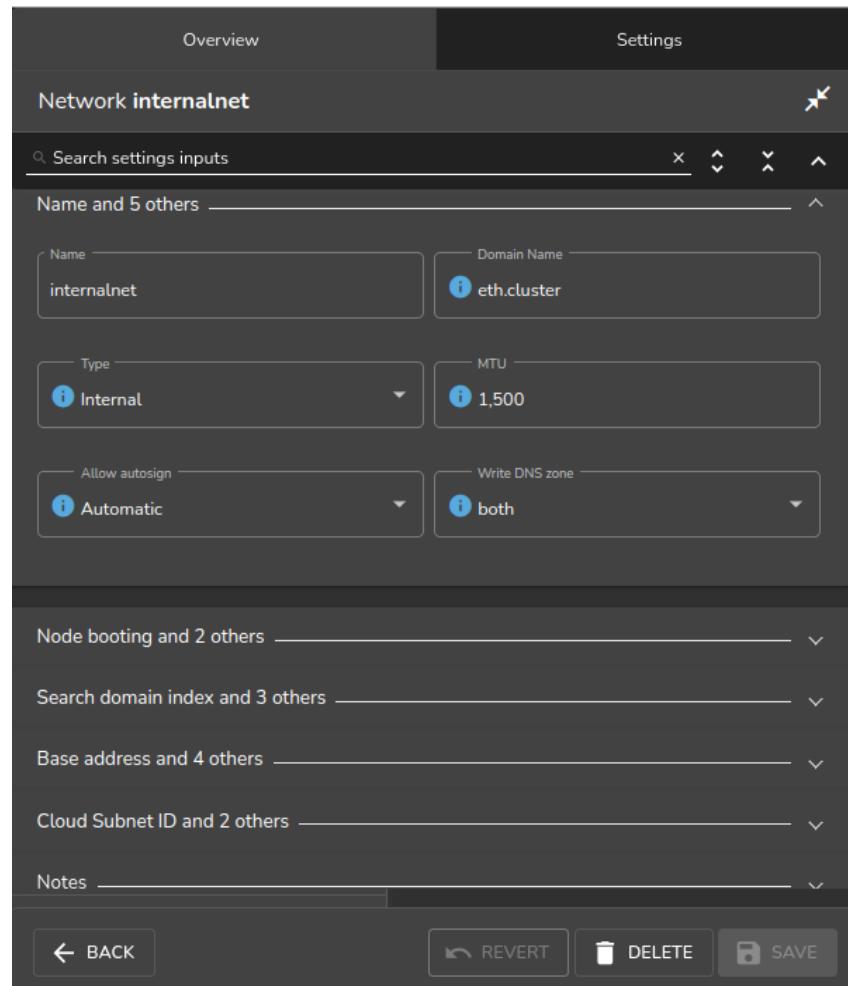


Figure 3.5: Network Settings

The properties of figure 3.5 are introduced in table 3.1.

Property	Description
name	Name of this network.
Domain Name	DNS domain associated with the network.
Type	Menu options to set the network type. Options are Internal, External, Tunnel, Global, Cloud, or NetMap network.
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit. The maximum size of an IP packet transmitted without fragmenting.
Node booting	Enabling means nodes are set to boot from this network (useful in the case of nodes on multiple networks). For an internal subnet called <subnet>, when node booting is set, CMDaemon adds a subnet configuration /etc/dhcpd.<subnet>.conf on the head node, which is accessed from /etc/dhcpd.conf. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It can be set in Base View via the Networking resource, selecting a network, and then setting Node booting from within the network settings.</li> <li>• It can be set in cmsh via the network mode, selecting a network, and then setting nodebooting.</li> </ul>
Lock down dhcpd	Enabling means new nodes are not offered a PXE DHCP IP address from this network, i.e. DHCPD is “locked down”. A DHCP “deny unknown-clients” option is set by this action, so no new DHCP leases are granted to unknown clients for the network. Unknown clients are nodes for which BCM has no MAC addresses associated with the node. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It can be set in Base View via the Networking resource, selecting a network, and then setting Lock down dhcpd from within the network settings.</li> <li>• It can be set in cmsh via the network mode, selecting a network, and then setting lockdowndhcpd.</li> </ul>
Management allowed	Enabling means that the network has nodes managed by the head node.
Search domain index	The position of the network domain in the resolv.conf file. A value of 0 means the position is determined automatically.
Exclude from search domain	Enabling means the domain name for the network is not used.
Disable automatic exports	Enabling means that exports of built-in filesystems are not done automatically for the network.
Base address	Base address of the network (also known as the <i>network address</i> ).
Broadcast address	Broadcast address of the network.
Dynamic range start/end	Start/end IP addresses of the DHCP range temporarily used by nodes during PXE boot on the internal network. These are addresses that do not conflict with the addresses assigned and used by nodes during normal use.
Netmask bits	Prefix-length, or number of bits in netmask. The part after the “/” in CIDR notation.
Gateway	Default route IP address

Table 3.1: Network Configuration Settings

In basic networking concepts, a network is a range of IP addresses. The first address in the range is the *base address*. The length of the range, i.e. the *subnet*, is determined by the *netmask*, which uses CIDR notation. CIDR notation is the so-called / (“slash”) representation, in which, for example, a CIDR notation of 192.168.0.1/28 implies an IP address of 192.168.0.1 with a traditional netmask of 255.255.255.240 applied to the 192.168.0.0 network. The netmask 255.255.255.240 implies that bits 28–32 of the 32-bit dotted-quad number 255.255.255.255 are unmasked, thereby implying a 4-bit-sized host range of 16 (i.e.  $2^4$ ) addresses.

The `sipcalc` utility installed on the head node is a useful tool for calculating or checking such IP subnet values (`man sipcalc.1` in the RHEL family of distributions or `sipcalc -h` for help on this utility):

### Example

```
user@basecm11:~$ sipcalc 192.168.0.1/28
-[ipv4 : 192.168.0.1/28] - 0

[CIDR]
Host address          - 192.168.0.1
Host address (decimal) - 3232235521
Host address (hex)    - COA80001
Network address        - 192.168.0.0
Network mask           - 255.255.255.240
Network mask (bits)    - 28
Network mask (hex)    - FFFFFFF0
Broadcast address      - 192.168.0.15
Cisco wildcard         - 0.0.0.15
Addresses in network   - 16
Network range          - 192.168.0.0 - 192.168.0.15
Usable range           - 192.168.0.1 - 192.168.0.14
```

Every network has an associated DNS domain which can be used to access a device through a particular network. For `internalnet`, the default DNS domain is set to `eth.cluster`, which means that the hostname `node001.eth.cluster` can be used to access device `node001` through the primary internal network. If a dedicated storage network has been added with DNS domain `storage.cluster`, then `node001.storage.cluster` can be used to reach `node001` through the storage network. Internal DNS zones are generated automatically based on the network definitions and the defined nodes on these networks. For networks marked as external, no DNS zones are generated.

### 3.2.2 Adding Networks

Once a network has been added, it can be used in the configuration of network interfaces for devices.

In Base View the Add button in the Networks subwindow (figure 3.3) can be used to add a new network. After the new network has been added, the Settings pane (figure 3.5) can be used to further configure the newly-added network.

In `cmsh`, a new network can be added from within network mode using the `add` or `clone` commands.

The default assignment of networks (`internalnet` to Management network and `externalnet` to External network) can be changed using Base View, via the Settings window of the cluster object (figure 3.1).

In `cmsh` the assignment to Management network and External network can be set or modified from the `base` object in partition mode:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
```

```
[basebcm11] % partition use base
[basebcm11->partition[base]] % set managementnetwork internalnet; commit
[basebcm11->partition[base]] % set externalnetwork externalnet; commit
```

### 3.2.3 Changing Network Parameters

After both internal and external networks are defined, it may be necessary to change network-related parameters from their original or default installation settings.

#### Changing The Head Or Regular Node Hostname

To reach the head node from inside the cluster, the alias `master` may be used at all times. Setting the hostname of the head node itself to `master` is not recommended.

The name of a cluster is sometimes used as the hostname of the head node. The cluster name, the head node hostname, and the regular node hostnames, all have their own separate names as a property of their corresponding objects. The name can be changed in a similar manner for each.

For example, to change the hostname of the head node, the device object corresponding to the head node must be modified.

- In Base View, the navigation path for modifying the host name is `Devices > All Devices > Head Node > [ ] > Settings > Hostname > Commit HeadNode`. That is, under the `Devices` resource, the `All Devices` option is selected. The head node is selected from the devices displayed, and its subwindow-opening box in the `Actions` column is then clicked. This opens the device overview pane. The `Settings` option can then be selected. The `Hostname` record can then be modified (figure 3.6), and saved by clicking on the `Commit HeadNode` icon. When setting a hostname, a domain is not included.

After the change, as suggested by Base View, the head node must be rebooted.

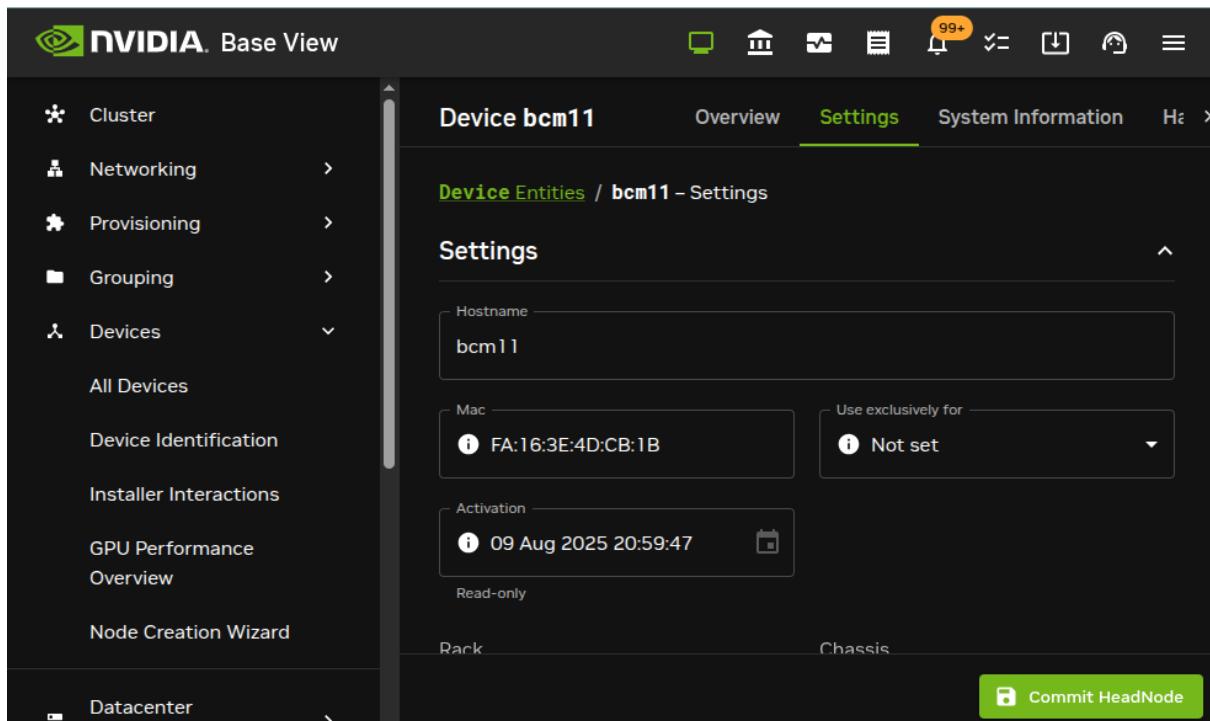


Figure 3.6: Head Node Settings

- In `cmsh`, the hostname of the head node can also be changed, via device mode:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use basecm11
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% set hostname foobar
[foobar->device*[foobar*]]% commit
[foobar->device[foobar]]%
Tue Jan 22 17:35:29 2013 [warning] foobar: Reboot required: Hostname changed
[foobar->device[foobar]]% quit
[root@basecm11 ~]# sleep 30; hostname -f foobar.cm.cluster
[root@basecm11 ~]#
```

The prompt string shows the new hostname after a short time, when a new shell is started.

After the hostname has been set, as suggested by cmsh, the head node must be rebooted.

### **Adding Hostnames To The Internal Network**

Additional hostnames, whether they belong to the cluster nodes or not, can be added as name/value pairs to the /etc/hosts file(s) within the cluster. This should be done only outside the specially-marked CMDaemon-managed section. It can be done to the file on the head node, or to the file on the software image for the regular nodes, or to both, depending on where the resolution is required.

However, for hosts that are on the internal network of the cluster, such as regular nodes, it is easier and wiser to avoid adding additional hostnames via /etc/hosts.

Instead, it is recommended to let BCM manage host name resolution for devices on the `internalnet` through its DNS server on the `internalnet` interface. The host names can be added to the `additionalhostnames` object, from within `interfaces` submode for the head node. The `interfaces` submode is accessible from the `device` mode. Thus, for the head node, with `eth1` as the interface for `internalnet`:

### **Example**

```
[basecm11]% device use basecm11
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% interfaces
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces]% use eth1
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces[eth1]]% set additionalhostnames test
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->interfaces*[eth1*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces[eth1]]%
Fri Oct 12 16:48:47 2012 [notice] basecm11: Service named was restarted
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces[eth1]]% !ping test
PING test.cm.cluster (10.141.255.254) 56(84) bytes of data.
...
...
```

Multiple hostnames can be added as space-separated entries.

The `named` service automatically restarts within about 20 seconds after committal, implementing the configuration changes. This kind of restart is a feature (section 3.14.1) of changes made to service configurations by Base View or cmsh.

### **Changing External Network Parameters For The Cluster**

**The external network parameters of the cluster:** When a cluster interacts with an external network, such as a company or a university network, its connection behavior is determined by the settings of two objects: firstly, the external network settings of the `Networks` resource, and secondly, by the cluster network settings.

1. **The external network object** contains the network settings for all objects configured to connect to the external network, for example, a head node. Network settings are configured in Base View under the `Networking` resource, then under the `Networks` subwindow, then within the `Settings` option for a selected network. Figure 3.5 shows a settings window for when the `internalnet` item

has been selected, but in the current case the `externalnet` item must be selected instead. The following parameters can then be configured:

- the IP network parameters of the cluster (but not the IP address of the cluster):
  - `Base address`: the network address of the external network (the “IP address of the external network”). This is not to be confused with the IP address of the cluster, which is described shortly after this.
  - `Broadcast address`: the broadcast address of the external network. This is not to be confused with the IP address of the internal network (page 95).
  - `Dynamic range start` and `Dynamic range end`: Not used by the external network configuration.
  - `Netmask bits`: the netmask size, or prefix-length, of the external network, in bits.
  - `Gateway`: the default route for the external network.
- the `network name` (what the external network itself is called), by default this is defined as `externalnet` in the base partition on a newly installed Type 1 cluster,
- the `Domain Name`: the network domain (LAN domain, i.e. what domain machines on the external network use as their domain),
- the `External network` checkbox: this is checked for a Type 1 cluster,
- and `MTU size` (the maximum value for a TCP/IP packet before it fragments on the external network—the default value is 1500).

2. The **cluster object** contains other network settings used to connect to the outside. These are configured in the `Settings` options of the cluster object resource in Base View (figure 3.1):

- e-mail address(es) for the cluster administrator,
- any additional external name servers used by the cluster to resolve external host names. As an aside: by default, only the head node name server is configured, and by default it only serves hosts on the internal network via the internal interface. Enabling the `PublicDNS` directive (Appendix C) allows the head node name server to resolve queries about internal hosts from external hosts via any interface, including the external interface.
- the `DNS search domain` (what the cluster uses as its domain),
- and `NTP time servers` (used to synchronize the time on the cluster with standard time) and time zone settings.

These settings can also be adjusted in `cmsh` in the `base` object under `partition mode`.

Changing the networking parameters of a cluster (apart from the IP address of the cluster) therefore requires making changes in the settings of the two preceding objects.

**The IP address of the cluster:** The cluster object itself does not contain an IP address value. This is because it is the cluster network topology type that determines whether a direct interface exists from the cluster to the outside world. Thus, the IP address of the cluster in the Type 1, Type 2, and Type 3 configurations (section 3.3.9 of the *Installation Manual*) is defined by the cluster interface that faces the outside world. For Type 1, this is the interface of the head node to the external network (figure 3.2). For Type 2 and Type 3 interfaces the cluster IP address is effectively that of an upstream router, and thus not a part of BCM configuration. Thus, logically, the IP address of the cluster is not a part of the cluster object or external network object configuration.

For a Type 1 cluster, the head node IP address can be set in BCM, separately from the cluster object settings. This is then the IP address of the cluster according to the outside world.

**Setting the network parameters of the cluster and the head node IP address:** These values can be set using Base View or cmsh:

**With Base View:** The cluster network object and associated settings are accessed as follows:

#### The external network object:

The external network object is accessed via the navigation path

Networking > Networks > externalnet > Edit > Settings

which reaches the window shown in figure 3.7:

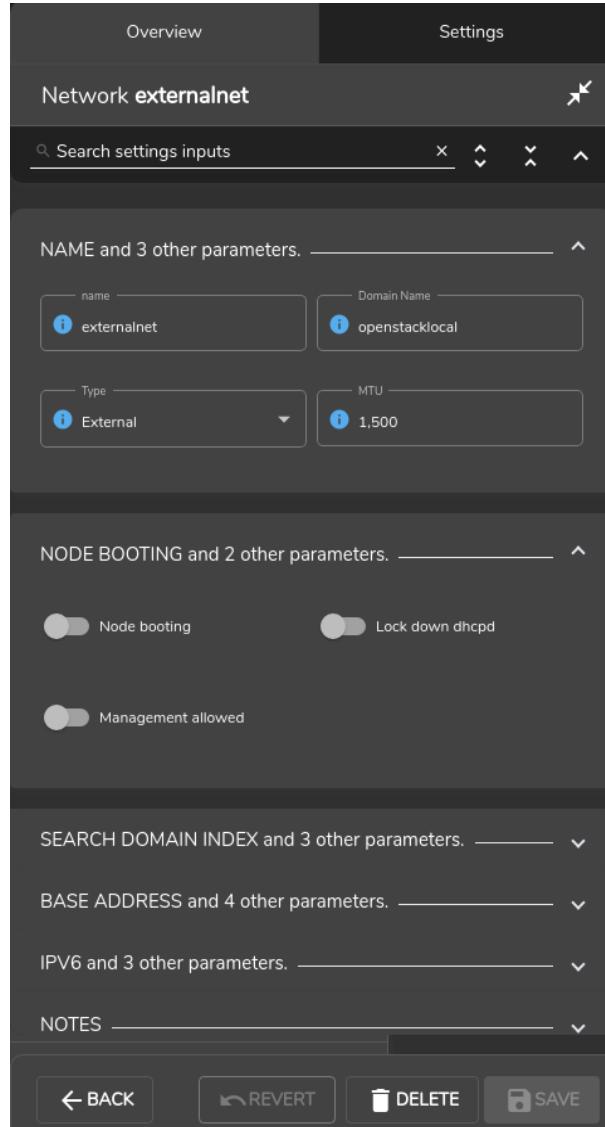


Figure 3.7: Network Settings For External Network

#### The cluster object:

The cluster object and associated settings are accessed as shown in figure 3.1

#### The head node IP address:

For a head node basecm11, where the IP address is used by the interface eth0, the static IP address can be set via the navigation path:

Devices > All Devices > Head Node > > Settings > Interfaces > > eth0 > > IP

as seen in figure 3.8.

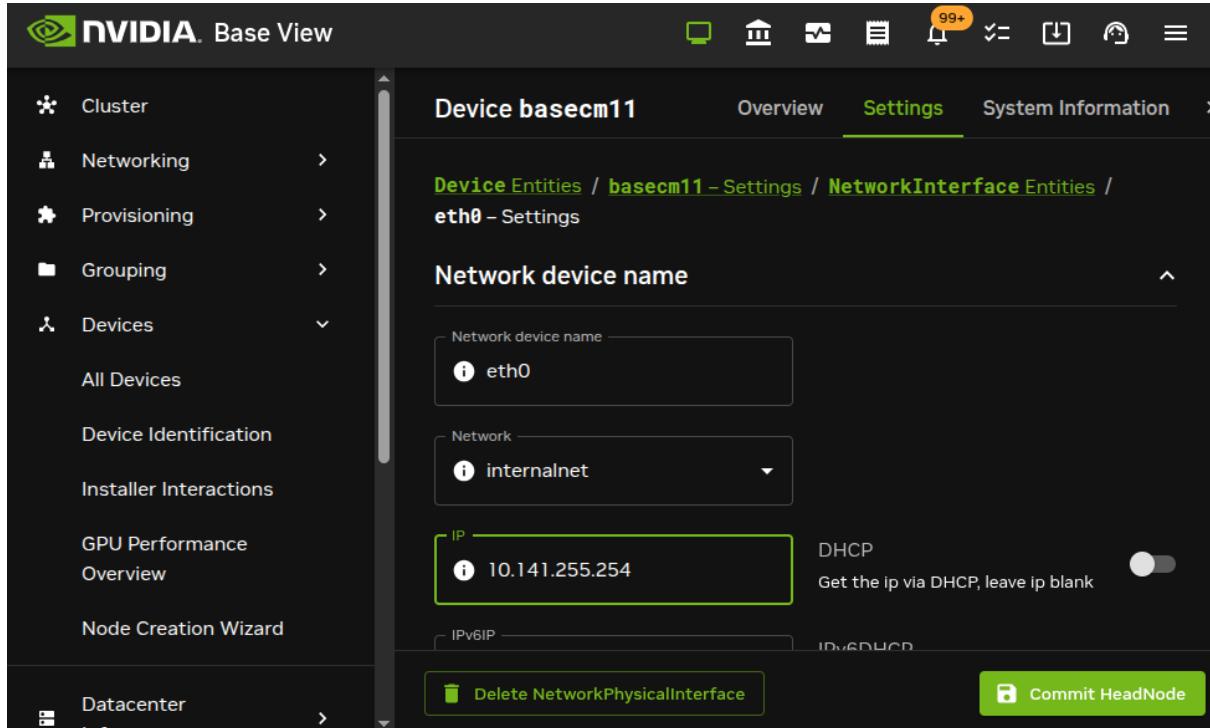


Figure 3.8: Setting The IP Address On A Head Node In Base View

**With cmsh:** The preceding Base View configuration can also be done in cmsh, using the network, partition and device modes, as in the following example:

### Example

```
[basecm11]% network use externalnet
[basecm11->network[externalnet]]% set baseaddress 192.168.1.0
[basecm11->network*[externalnet*]]% set netmaskbits 24
[basecm11->network*[externalnet*]]% set gateway 192.168.1.1
[basecm11->network*[externalnet*]]% commit
[basecm11->network[externalnet]]% partition use base
[basecm11->partition[base]]% set nameservers 192.168.1.1
[basecm11->partition*[base*]]% set searchdomains x.com y.com
[basecm11->partition*[base*]]% append timeservers ntp.x.com
[basecm11->partition*[base*]]% commit
[basecm11->partition[base]]% device use basecm11
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% interfaces
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces]% use eth1
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces[eth1]]% set ip 192.168.1.176
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces*[eth1*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces[eth1]]%
```

After changing the external network configurations, a reboot of the head node is necessary to activate the changes.

**Using DHCP to supply network values for the external interface:** Connecting the cluster via DHCP on the external network is not generally recommended for production clusters. This is because DHCP-related issues can complicate networking troubleshooting compared with using static assignments.

For a Type 1 network, the cluster and head node can be made to use some of the DHCP-supplied external network values as follows:

- In Base View, the DHCP setting of figure 3.8 can be set to Enabled
- Alternatively, in cmsh, within interfaces mode for the head node interface, the value of the parameter DHCP can be set:

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces[eth0]]% set dhcp yes
```

The gateway address, the name server(s), and the external IP address of the head node are then obtained via a DHCP lease. Time server configuration for externalnet is not picked up from the DHCP server, having been set during installation (figure 3.8 in Chapter 3 of the *Installation Manual*). The time servers can be changed using Base View as in figure 3.1, or using cmsh in partition mode as in the preceding example. The time zone can be changed similarly.

It is usually sensible to reboot after implementing these changes in order to test the changes are working as expected.

### Changing Internal Network Parameters For The Cluster

When a cluster interacts with the internal network that the regular nodes and other devices are on, its connection behavior with the devices on that network is determined by settings in:

1. the internal network of the Networks resource (page 102)
2. the cluster network for the internal network (page 103)
3. the individual device network interface (page 104)
4. the node categories network-related items for the device (page 105), in the case of the device being a regular node.

In more detail:

**1. The internal network object:** has the network settings for all devices connecting to the internal network, for example, a login node, a head node via its internalnet interface, or a managed switch on the internal network. In Base View, the settings can be configured under the Networking resource, then under the Networks subwindow, then within the Settings option for the internalnet item (figure 3.5). In cmsh the settings can be configured by changing the values in the internalnet object within cmsh's network mode. Parameters that can be changed include:

- the IP network parameters of the internal network (but not the internal IP address):
  - “Base address”: the internal network address of the cluster (the “IP address of the internal network”). This is not to be confused with the IP address of the internal network interface of the head node. The default value is 10.141.0.0.
  - “Netmask bits”: the netmask size, or prefix-length, of the internal network, in bits. The default value is 16.
  - Gateway: the default gateway route for the internal network. If unset, or 0.0.0.0 (the default), then its value is decided by the DHCP server on the head node, and nodes are assigned a default gateway route of 10.141.255.254, which corresponds to using the head node as a default gateway route for the interface of the regular node. The effect of this parameter is overridden by any default gateway route value set by the value of Default gateway in the node category.

- “Dynamic range start” and “Dynamic range end”: These are the DHCP ranges for nodes. DHCP is unset by default. When set, unidentified nodes can use the dynamic IP address values assigned to the node by the node-installer. These values range by default from 10.141.128.0 to 10.141.143.255. Using this feature is not generally recommended, in order to avoid the possibility of conflict with the static IP addresses of identified nodes.
  - Node booting: This allows nodes to boot from the provisioning system controlled by CM-Daemon. The parameter is normally set for the management network (that is the network over which CM-Daemon communicates to manage nodes) but booting can instead be carried out over a separate physical non-management network. Booting over InfiniBand is possible (section 5.1.3).
  - Lock down dhcpcd, if set to yes, stops *new nodes* from booting via the network. New nodes are those nodes which are detected but the cluster cannot identify based on CM-Daemon records. Details are given in Chapter 5 about booting, provisioning, and how a node is detected as new.
- the “domain name” of the network. This is the LAN domain, which is the domain machines on this network use as their domain. By default, set to a name based on the network interface type used on the internal network, for example `eth.cluster`. In any case, the FQDN must be unique for every node in the cluster.
  - the network name, or what the internal network is called. By default, set to `internalnet`.
  - The MTU size, or the maximum value for a TCP/IP packet before it fragments on this network. By default, set to 1500.

**2. The cluster object:** has other network settings that the internal network in the cluster uses. These particulars are configured in the `Settings` option of the cluster object resource in Base View (figure 3.1). The cmsh equivalents can be configured from the `base` object in partition mode. Values that can be set include:

- the “Management network”. This is the network over which CM-Daemon manages the nodes. Management means that CM-Daemon on the head node communicates with CM-Daemons on the other nodes. The communication includes CM-Daemon calls and monitoring data. By default, the management network is set to `internalnet` for Type 1 and Type 2 networks, and `managementnet` in Type 3 networks. It is a partition-level cluster-wide setting by default. Partition-level settings can be overridden by the category level setting, and node-level settings can override category level or partition level settings.
- the “Node name” can be set to decide the prefix part of the node name. By default, set to `node`.
- the “Node digits” can be set to decide the possible size of numbers used for suffix part of the node name. By default, set to 3.
- the “Default category”. This sets the category the nodes are in by default. By default, it is set to `default`.
- the “Default software image”. This sets the image the nodes use by default, for new nodes that are not in a category yet. By default, it is set to `default-image`.
- the “Name server”. This sets the name server used by the cluster. By default, it is set to the head node. The default configuration uses the internal network interface and serves only internal hosts. Internal hosts can override using this value at category level (page 105). By default external hosts cannot use this service. To allow external hosts to use the service for resolving internal hosts, the `PublicDNS` directive (Appendix C) must be set to True.

**3. The internal IP addresses and other internal interface values:** In Base View, the network for a node, such as a physical node node001, can be configured via a navigation path

Devices > All Devices > Physical Node >  > Settings > Interfaces > BOOTIF > 

The subwindow that opens up then allows network configuration to be done for such nodes in a similar way to figure 3.8.

In cmsh the configuration can be done by changing properties from the interfaces submode that is within the device mode for the node.

The items that can be set include:

- the Network device name: By default, this is set to BOOTIF for a node that boots from the same interface as the one from which it is provisioned.
- the Network: By default, this is set to a value of internalnet.
- the IP address: By default, this is automatically assigned a static value, in the range 10.141.0.1 to 10.141.255.255, with the first node being given the first address. Using a static IP address is recommended for reliability, since it allows nodes that lose connectivity to the head node to continue operating. The static address can be changed manually, in case there is an IP address or node ID conflict due to an earlier inappropriate manual intervention.

Administrators who want DHCP addressing on the internal network, despite the consequences, can set it via a checkbox.

- onnetworkpriority: This sets the priority of DNS resolution queries for the interface on the network. The range of values that it can take is from 0 to 4294967295. Resolution takes place via the interface with the higher value.

The default priority value for a network interface is set according to its type. These defaults are:

Type	Value
Bridge	80
Bond	70
Physical	60
VLAN	50
Alias	40
Tunnel	30
Netmap	20
BMC	10

- Additional Hostname: In the case of nodes this is in addition to the default node name set during provisioning. The node name set during provisioning takes a default form of node<3 digit number>, as explained earlier on page 103 in the section describing the cluster object settings.

For example, a regular node that has an extra interface, eth1, can have its values set as follows:

### Example

```
[basecm11] device interfaces node001
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces]% add physical eth1
[basecm11->...->interfaces*[eth1*]]% set network externalnet
[basecm11->...->interfaces*[eth1*]]% set additionalhostnames extra01
```

```
[basecm11->....>interfaces*[eth1*] % set ip 10.141.1.1
[basecm11->....>interfaces*[eth1*]] % commit
[basecm11->....>interfaces[eth1]] % ..
[basecm11->....>interfaces] % ..
[basecm11->device[node001]] % reboot
```

**4. Node category network values:** are settings for the internal network that can be configured for node categories. For example, for the default category called `default` this can be carried out:

- via Base View, using the `Settings` option for `Node categories`. This is in the navigation path `Grouping > Node categories[default-image] > Settings`
- or via the category mode in `cmsh`, for the `default` node category.

If there are individual node settings that have been configured in Base View or `cmsh`, then the node settings override the corresponding category settings for those particular nodes.

The category properties involved in internal networking that can be set include:

- `Default gateway`: The default gateway route for nodes in the node category. If unset, or `0.0.0.0` (the default), then the node default gateway route is decided by the internal network object `Gateway` value. If the default gateway is set as a node category value, then nodes use the node category value as their default gateway route instead.
- `Management network`: The management network is the network used by CMDaemon to manage devices. The default setting is a property of the node object. It can be set as a category property.
- `Name server`, `Time server`, `Search domain`: The default setting for these on all nodes is set by the node-installer to refer to the head node, and is not configurable at the node level using Base View or `cmsh`. The setting can however be set as a category property, either as a space-separated list of entries or as a single entry, to override the default value.

**Application To Generic Network Devices:** The preceding details for the internal network parameters of the cluster, starting from page 102, are applicable to regular nodes, but they are often also applicable to generic network devices (section 2.1.1). Benefits of adding a generic device to be managed by BCM include that:

- the name given to the device during addition is automatically placed in the internal DNS zone, so that the device is accessible by name
- the device status is automatically monitored via an ICMP ping (Appendix G.2.1).
- the device can be made to work with the health check and metric framework. The scripts used in the framework will however almost certainly have to be customized to work with the device

After changing network configurations, a reboot of the device is necessary to activate the changes.

### Changing The Global Network Parameters For The Cluster

The global network `globalnet` is a unique network used to set up a common name space for all nodes in a cluster in BCM. It is required in BCM because of the added cloud extension functionality, described in the *Cloudbursting Manual*. Regular nodes and regular cloud nodes are thus both named under the `globalnet` domain name, which is `cm.cluster` by default. So, for example, if default host names for regular nodes (`node001`, `node002`, ...) and regular cloud nodes (`cnode001`, `cnode002`, ...) are used, node addresses with the domain are:

- `node001.cm.cluster` for `node001`

- cnode001.cm.cluster for cnode001

The only parameter that can be sensibly changed on globalnet is the domain name, which is cm.cluster by default.

Removing globalnet should not be done because it will cause various networking failures, even for clusters deploying no cloud nodes.

Details on how resolution is carried out with the help of globalnet are given in section 6.6.1 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*.

### Setting Static Routes In The staticroutes Submode Of cmsh

To route via a specific gateway, the staticroutes submode can be used. This can be set for regular nodes and head nodes via the device mode, and for node categories via the category mode.

On a newly-installed cluster with a type 1 network (section 3.3.9 of the *Installation Manual*), a node by default routes packets using the head node as the default gateway.

If the administrator would like to configure a regular node to use another gateway to reach a printer on another subnet, as illustrated by figure 3.9:

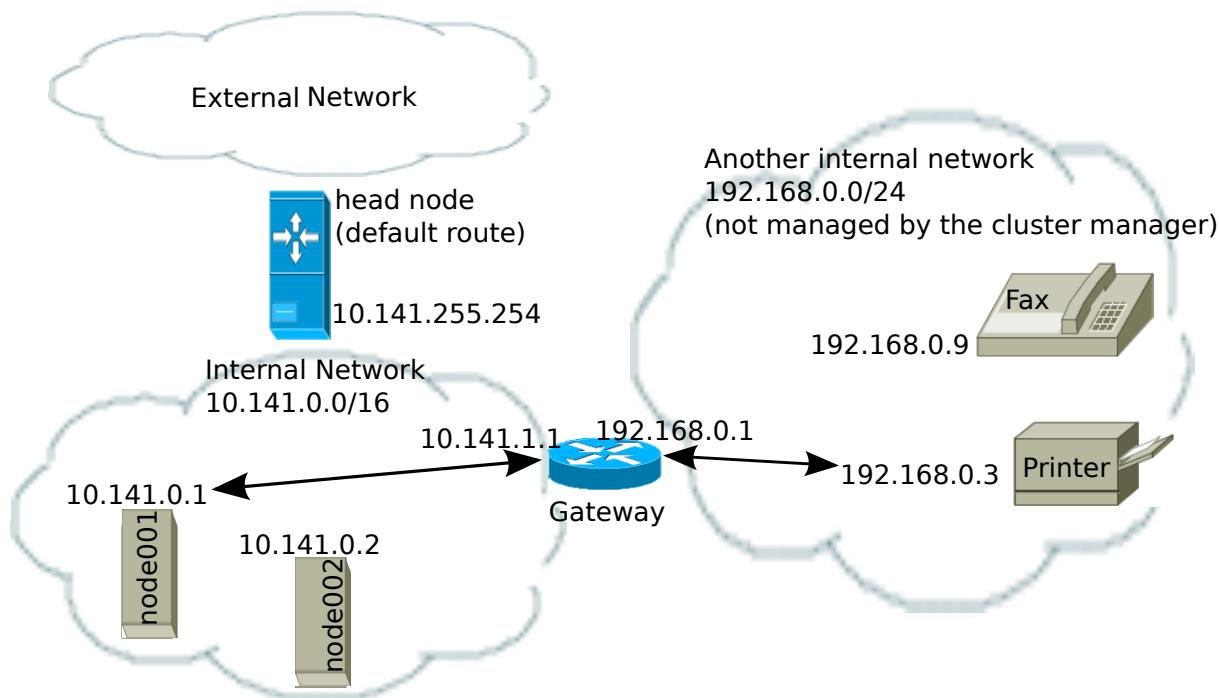


Figure 3.9: Example Of A Static Route To A Printer On Another Subnet

then an example session for setting the static route is as follows:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11 ]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]%
[basecm11->device[node001]]% staticroutes
[basecm11->device[node001]->staticroutes]% list
Name (key)          Gateway      Destination
-----
[basecm11->device[node001]->staticroutes]% add printeroute
[basecm11->...*[printeroute*]]% set gateway 10.141.1.1
[basecm11->...*[printeroute*]]% set destination 192.168.0.3
```

```
[basecm11->...*[printerroute*]]% set networkdevicename bootif
[basecm11->...*[printerroute*]]% commit
[basecm11->... [printerroute]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Destination        192.168.0.3/32
Gateway           10.141.1.1
Name              printerroute
Network Device Name   bootif
Revision
[basecm11->device[node001]->staticroutes[printerroute]]% exit
[basecm11->device[node001]->staticroutes]%
Name (key)          Gateway          Destination
-----
printerroute        10.141.1.1      192.168.0.3/32
[basecm11->device[node001]->staticroutes]%
[basecm11->device]%
[basecm11->device]% reboot node001
```

In the preceding example, the regular node node001, with IP address 10.141.0.1 can connect to a host 192.168.0.3 outside the regular node subnet using a gateway with the IP addresses 10.141.1.1 and 192.168.0.1. The route is given the arbitrary name printerroute for administrator and CMdaemon convenience, because the host to be reached in this case is a print server. The networkdevicename is given the interface name bootif. If another device interface name is defined in CMdaemon, then that can be used instead. If there is only one interface, then networkdevicename need not be set.

After a reboot of the node, the route that packets from the node follow can be seen with a traceroute or similar. The ping utility with the -R option can often track up to 9 hops, and can be used to track the route:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ssh node001 ping -c1 -R 192.168.0.3
PING 192.168.0.3 (192.168.0.3) 56(124) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 192.168.0.3: icmp_seq=1 ttl=62 time=1.41 ms
RR:    10.141.0.1
       10.141.1.1
       192.168.0.1
       192.168.0.3
       192.168.0.3
       192.168.0.1
       10.141.1.1
       10.141.0.1

--- 192.168.0.3 ping statistics ---
1 packets transmitted, 1 received, 0% packet loss, time 1ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 1.416/1.416/1.416/0.000 ms
[root@basecm11->device[node001]->staticroutes]%
```

The routing is achieved by CMdaemon making sure that whenever the network interface is brought up, the OS of the regular node runs a routing command to configure the routing tables. The command executed for the given example is either:

```
route add -host 192.168.0.3 gw 10.141.1.1
```

or its modern iproute2 equivalent:

```
ip route add 192.168.0.3 via 10.141.1.1
```

If the device bootif is eth0—which is often the case—then the command is run from the network interface configuration file: /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0 (or /etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0 in SUSE).

### Port Forwarding With portforward

**Why port forwarding is useful:** In a typical type 1 network setup (section 3.3.9 of the *Installation Manual*), only the head nodes are accessible from the external network. So, the compute nodes cannot be accessed directly from the external network.

Accessing a compute node port may however be needed for some workflows. For example, a user on a laptop on the external network may wish to access a compute node port directly.

To allow this direct access to a compute node port, port forwarding rules can be set up from within the device mode of cmsh. Configuring port forwarding with BCM is designed to be easier than doing port forwarding directly in the operating system.

**The port forwarding help text:** The help text for the portforward command summarizes how to use it:

```
[basecm11->device]% help portforward
Name:
```

```
portforward - Forward a port on the active head node to IP
```

Usage:

```
portforward create <IP> <port> <active-head-node-port>
portforward destroy [IP] [port] [active-head-node-port]
portforward bmc [device] [https-interface-port] [console-port]
portforward list
```

Examples:

portforward create 10.148.0.1 443 8443	Create a mapping from head:8443 to 10.148.0.1:443
portforward create node001 8081 8181	Create a mapping from head:8181 to the management IP of node001:8081
portforward create node001:rf0 443 8443	Create a mapping from head:8443 to the redfish IP of node001:443
portforward destroy 10.148.0.1	Destroy all port forwarding to 10.148.0.1
portforward destroy	Destroy all port forwarding
portforward bmc	Create a mapping to the BMC of the current device
portforward bmc node001	Create a mapping to the BMC of node001
portforward list	List all active mappings

**An illustration of port forwarding working:** The following example indicates how BCM port forwarding works. A laptop user on the external network may wish to connect to port 1234 on compute node node001 by connecting to the head node port 4321. There is no port 4321 open on the head node to start with, until a portforward command is run:

### Example

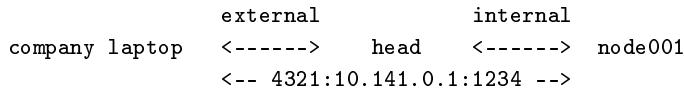
```
[basecm11->device]% connections master | grep 4321
[basecm11->device]% portforward create node001 1234 4321
[basecm11->device]% connections master | grep 4321
basecm11  TCP6      0.0.0.0          4321      0.0.0.0          0      Listening
```

The connections command is described on page 110.

In the background on the active head there is a new socat process that is created for each port forward:

```
[basecm11->device]% !ps x | grep [s]ocat
159559 ? S 0:00 /usr/bin/socat tcp-listen:4321,reuseaddr,fork tcp:10.141.0.1:1234
```

The socat process forwards any packets from external network interface of the head node to the internal network interface of the compute node, as illustrated by the following ASCII diagram:



The forwarding can be tested by setting up a netcat listening process on port 1234 of node001:

```
[basecm11->device]% ssh node001 "nc -l 1234"
```

and then typing something to port 4321 on the head node:

```
root@basecm11:~# nc basecm11 4321
Hello, World!
^C
```

The Ctrl-C interrupts the session on the head node.

The Hello, World! text entered on the head node shows up on the netcat listener on node001. The session on the compute node ends with the Ctrl-C interrupt on the head node:

```
[basecm11->device]% ssh node001 "nc -l 1234"
Hello, World!
[basecm11->device]%
```

A successful session as just illustrated means that port forwarding is working as expected.

If the session is unsuccessful, then it may be because the port is blocked by a firewall. By default, the head node runs a firewall, Shorewall, (page 73 of the *Installation Manual*), which may need to have its rules adjusted.

**Listing active port forwarding rules:** All are listed with the list command:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% portforward list
Device      IP      Port      Head port      Sessions
-----
node001    10.141.0.1    8081    8181    1
node002    10.141.0.2    8081    8281    1
node003    10.141.0.3    8081    8381    1
node004    10.141.0.4    8081    8481    1
```

Sessions denotes the number of cmsh instances that started the exact same rule. This is normally 1. Each request is tracked via a cmsh session unique identifier to prevent killing a port forward rule placed by someone else.

**Destroying (removing) every rule:** A specific rule can be removed by specifying its compute node IP address and compute node port. All rules are removed with the destroy option used on its own:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% portforward destroy
Destroyed: 4 port forward
```

**BMC port forwarding:** For BMC port forwarding 2 rules are created.

- A rule for the BMC management interface on 443
- A rule for the BMC console port (5900 or 17900 depending on the type of interface)

### 3.2.4 Tools For Viewing Cluster Connections And Connectivity

#### Viewing Node Routes With routes In cmsh

The cmsh routes command is a wrapper around the Linux route command, and is designed to run in parallel over nodes. It is intended to get a fast route overview for one or more nodes, and display it for easy comparison.

To get a full overview of the routes for all nodes, the command is run without any options:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% routes
Node      Destination      Gateway      Netmask      Interface
-----  -----
basecm11  0.0.0.0        192.168.200.254 0.0.0.0      eth1
basecm11  10.141.0.0     0.0.0.0      255.255.0.0  eth0
basecm11  169.254.0.0     0.0.0.0      255.255.0.0  eth1
basecm11  169.254.169.254 192.168.200.254 255.255.255.255 eth1
basecm11  192.168.200.0    0.0.0.0      255.255.255.0 eth1
node001   0.0.0.0        10.141.255.254 0.0.0.0      eth0
node001   10.141.0.0     0.0.0.0      255.255.0.0  eth0
node001   169.254.0.0     0.0.0.0      255.255.0.0  eth0
```

To select or filter the output, the grouping options of routes, or the text processing utility awk can be used. Grouping options are options to select nodes, groups, categories, and so on, and are described in the cluster management chapter, on page 64, while a handy link for awk one-liners is <http://tuxgraphics.org/~guido/scripts/awk-one-liner.html>.

Selection or filtering makes it very easy to detect badly configured nodes. For example, for unexpected gateways, when the expected gateway is <expected-gateway>, the following command may be used:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% routes --category default | awk 'if ($3 != "<expected-gateway>") print $0'
...
```

#### Viewing Connections In cmsh

The connections command can be run from within the device mode of cmsh. It is a parallel wrapper to view active TCP and UDP connections. That is, it runs as a simple command over multiple devices at the same time.

Running connections without options displays a full overview of the currently active TCP and UDP ports on all devices (output truncated):

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% connections
Node      Type      Source      Port      Destination      Port      State
-----  -----

```

```
basecm11 TCP 0.0.0.0 22 0.0.0.0 0 Listening
basecm11 TCP 0.0.0.0 25 0.0.0.0 0 Listening
basecm11 TCP 0.0.0.0 111 0.0.0.0 0 Listening
basecm11 TCP 0.0.0.0 636 0.0.0.0 0 Listening
...
...
```

Filtering with grep can then show which nodes are listening on which ports. For example, nodes listening for DNS queries (port 53) can be found with:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% connections | head -2; connections | grep Listen | grep " 53"
Node Type Source Port Destination Port State
-----
basecm11 TCP 10.141.255.254 53 0.0.0.0 0 Listening
basecm11 TCP 127.0.0.1 53 0.0.0.0 0 Listening
basecm11 TCP 192.168.200.162 53 0.0.0.0 0 Listening
```

and shows that only the head node is listening on that port, providing DNS.

Some third party tools require a free port on all nodes for a service to listen on. Filtering and sorting the output of the connections command allows the administrator to find all the existing used ports across all nodes:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% connections | awk 'print $4' | sort -un
Port
22
25
53
67
68
69
...
...
```

Options to the connections command can be seen by running `help connections`. Options include node grouping options (such as `-n|--nodes`, `-c|--category`, and `-t|--type`), and filtering out TCP6 and UDP6 connections (`--no-tcp6`, `--no-udp6`).

### Viewing Connectivity in cmsh

The connectivity command can be run from within the device mode of cmsh. It runs ICMP pings along each node route on a network of the cluster. By default the network is the management network.

By default the output displays if the connection is OK, the ping sequence ID (counting starts from zero), and the latency between the source and destination:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% connectivity
Source Destination Result ID Latency
-----
basecm11 node001 Ok 0 0.4ms
basecm11 node002 Ok 0 0.3ms
basecm11 node003 Ok 0 0.4ms
basecm11 basecm11 Ok 0 0.1ms
```

Pings where the source and destination have identical names are carried out via identical interfaces.

Further options to the connectivity command can be seen by running `help connectivity`. Options include the ability to set ping timeouts and the cluster network on which to ping, as well as node grouping options.

For larger clusters, the following type of connectivity check may be a helpful diagnostic:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]# connectivity --statistics --count 100 --delay 0.01
Name      Value
-----
OK       400
Total    400
Count    2
Average  0.35ms
Minimum  0.35ms
Maximum  0.35ms
Uniformity 100.0%
```

The preceding shows how uniform nodes are in ping timings. A significant spread in uniformity can indicate network problems.

### Viewing Network Performance With `cm-ipperf.py`

A handy tool for checking the network performance of the nodes on a cluster is `cm-ipperf.py`.

The nodes to be checked must be specified with the `-n | --node` option:

### Example

```
basecm11:~# /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/cm-ipperf.py -n node001..node004
Thread Port   Server     Client     Target     Bitrate
===== ===== ===== ===== ===== =====
0      5000  node001   node002   node001   7.89 Gbits/sec
0      5001  node001   node003   node001   7.84 Gbits/sec
0      5002  node001   node004   node001   8.22 Gbits/sec
0      5003  node002   node003   node002   7.53 Gbits/sec
0      5004  node002   node004   node002   8.60 Gbits/sec
0      5005  node003   node004   node003   7.59 Gbits/sec
```

For a Type 1 cluster (section 3.3.9 of the *Installation Manual*) with  $n$  nodes, the total number of connection pairs that can be evaluated is:

$$\binom{n}{2} = \frac{(n)(n-1)}{2}$$

For a 4-node cluster this means 6 network connection pairs are displayed, as is seen in the preceding example.

Each pair is checked for about 10s. This means that for a 1000-node cluster, the time for a default run would take about 2 months. The following options are therefore useful:

- `--count`: specify the number of pairs that are checked
- `-r | --random`: have the connection pairs chosen in a random sequence
- `-p | --parallel`: specify the number of parallel threads to runs the process

### Example

```
basecm11:~# /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/cm-ipperf.py -n node001..node004 --count 5 -r -p 2
```

Further options can be viewed with the `-h | --help` option.

### 3.3 Configuring Bridge Interfaces

Bridge interfaces can be used to divide one physical network into two separate network segments at layer 2 without creating separate IP subnets. A bridge thus connects the two networks together at layer 3 in a protocol-independent way.

The network device name given to the bridge interface is of the form `br<number>`. The following example demonstrates how to set up a bridge interface in cmsh, where the name `br0` is stored by the parameter `networkdevicename`.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces]% add bridge br0
[basecm11->...->interfaces*[br0*]]% set network internalnet
[basecm11->...->interfaces*[br0*]]% set ip 10.141.1.1
[basecm11->...->interfaces*[br0*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Additional Hostnames
DHCP                no
Forward Delay        0
IP                  10.141.1.1
Interfaces
MAC                 00:00:00:00:00:00
Network              internalnet
Network device name  br0
Revision
SpanningTreeProtocol  no
Type                bridge
```

A bridge interface is composed of one or more physical interfaces. The IP and network fields of the member interfaces must be empty:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->...->interfaces*[br0*]]% set interfaces eth1 eth2; exit
[basecm11->...->interfaces*]% clear eth1 ip; clear eth1 network
[basecm11->...->interfaces*]% clear eth2 ip; clear eth2 network
[basecm11->...->interfaces*]% use br0; commit
```

The BOOTIF interface is also a valid interface option.

Currently, the following bridge properties can be set:

- `SpanningTreeProtocol`: sets the spanning tree protocol to be on or off. The default is off.
- `Forward Delay`: sets the delay for forwarding Ethernet frames, in seconds. The default is 0.

Additional properties, if required, can be set manually using the `brctl` command in the OS shell.

When listing interfaces in cmsh, if an interface is a member of a bond (or bridge) interface, then the corresponding bond or bridge interface name is shown in parentheses after the member interface name:

#### Example

```
[headnode->device[node001]->interfaces]% list
Type      Network device name  IP          Network
-----
bond      bond0 [prov]        10.141.128.1  internalnet
bridge    br0                10.141.128.2  internalnet
```

```

physical    eth0                10.141.0.1      internalnet
physical    eth1 (bond0)        0.0.0.0
physical    eth2 (bond0)        0.0.0.0
physical    eth3 (br0)          0.0.0.0
physical    eth4 (br0)          0.0.0.0

```

It is possible to create a bridge interface with no IP address configured, that is, with an IP address of 0.0.0.0. This can be done for security reasons, or when the number of available IP addresses on the network is scarce. As long as such a bridge interface has a network assigned to it, it is properly configured on the nodes and functions as a bridge on the network.

## 3.4 Configuring VLAN interfaces

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) is an independent logical LAN within a physical LAN network. VLAN tagging is used to segregate VLANs from each other. VLAN tagging is the practice of inserting a VLAN ID tag into a packet frame header, so that each packet can be associated with a VLAN.

The physical network then typically has sections that are VLAN-aware or VLAN-unaware. The nodes and switches of the VLAN-aware section are configured by the administrator to decide which traffic belongs to which VLAN.

A VLAN interface can be configured for an interface within BCM using cmsh or Base View.

### 3.4.1 Configuring A VLAN Interface Using cmsh

In the following cmsh session, a regular node interface that faces a VLAN-aware switch is made VLAN-aware, and assigned a new interface—an alias interface. It is also assigned a network, and an IP address within that network:

#### Example

```

[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device interfaces node001
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces]% list
Type           Network device name   IP             Network
-----
physical       BOOTIF [prov]        10.141.0.1     internalnet
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces]% list -h | tail -4
Arguments:
  type
    alias, bmc, bond, bridge, netmap, physical, tunnel, vlan

[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces]% add vlan BOOTIF.1
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->interfaces*[BOOTIF.1*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces[BOOTIF.1]]% show

Parameter          Value
-----
Additional Hostname
DHCP               no
IP                 0.0.0.0
MAC                00:00:00:00:00:00
Network
Network device name   BOOTIF.1
Reorder HDR         no
Revision
Type               vlan
[basecm11->...[BOOTIF.1]]% set network internalnet
[basecm11->...[BOOTIF.1*]]% set ip 10.141.2.1; commit

```

The Reorder HDR setting in a VLAN, if enabled, moves the ethernet header around to make it look exactly like a real ethernet device. This setting controls the REORDER\_HDR setting in the file at /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-<interface> on the node.

### 3.4.2 Configuring A VLAN Interface Using Base View

Within Base View a VLAN interface can be added for a node such as node001 via the navigation path: Devices > Nodes > Edit[node001] > Settings > JUMP TO > Interfaces > +ADD[Network VLAN interface] (figure 3.10).

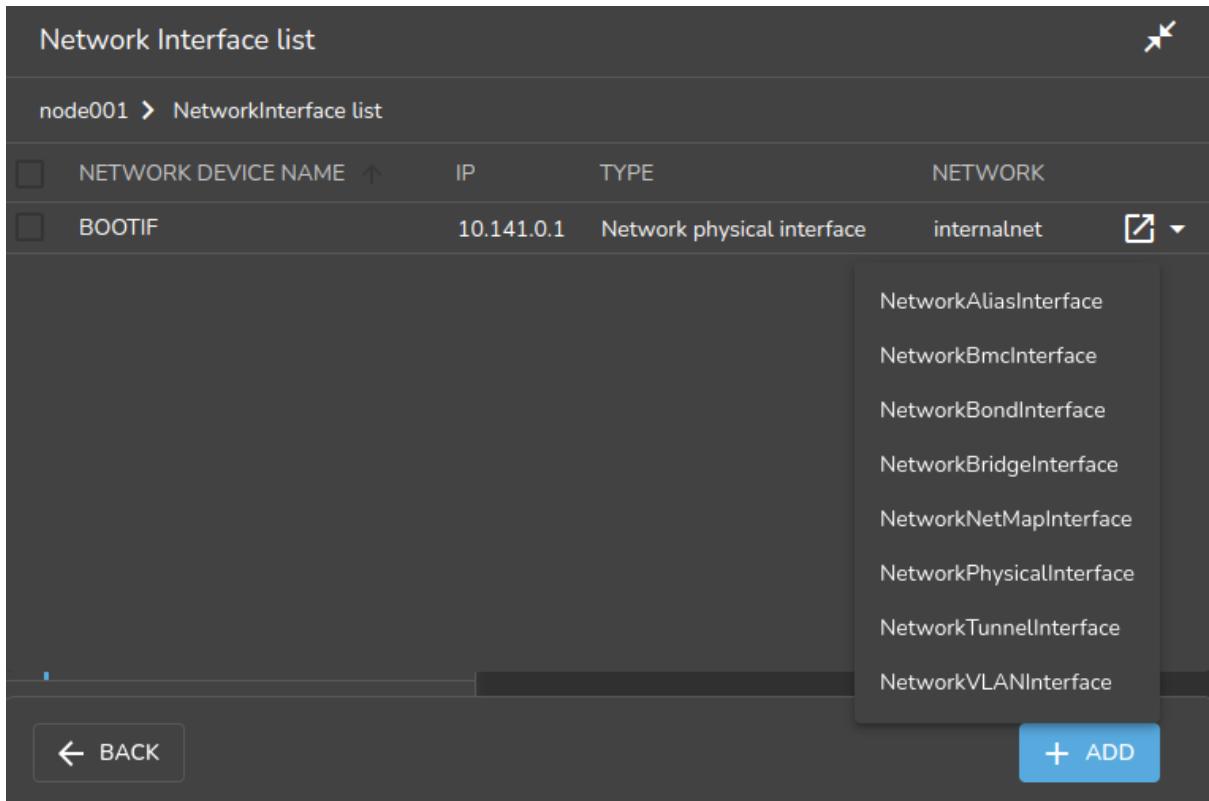


Figure 3.10: Configuring a VLAN via Base View

A Network VLAN Interface window opens up, allowing an IP address, network, and other options to be configured for the VLAN interface.

## 3.5 Configuring Bonded Interfaces

### 3.5.1 Adding A Bonded Interface

The Linux bonding driver allows multiple physical network interfaces that have been configured previously (for example, as on page 104) to be bonded as a single logical bond interface. The behavior of such interfaces is determined by their bonding mode. The modes provide facilities such as hot standby or load balancing.

The driver is included by default on head nodes. To configure a non-head node to use a bonded interface, a Linux kernel module called the bonding module must be included in the kernel modules list of the software image of the node. A bonding interface can then be created, and its properties set as follows:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces]% add bond bond0
[...->device*[node001*]->interfaces*[bond0*]]% set network internalnet
```

```
[...->device*[node001*]->interfaces*[bond0*]]% set ip 10.141.128.1
[...->device*[node001*]->interfaces*[bond0*]]% set mode 3
[...->device*[node001*]->interfaces*[bond0*]]% set interfaces eth1 eth2
```

Each bonded interface has a unique set of object properties, called bonding options, that specify how the bonding device operates. The bonding options are a string containing one or more options formatted as `option=value` pairs, with pairs separated from each other by a space character.

A bonded interface also always has a mode associated with it. By default it is set to 0, corresponding to a balanced round-robin packet transmission.

The 7 bonding modes are:

- 0 – balance-rr
- 1 – active-backup
- 2 – balance-xor
- 3 – broadcast
- 4 – 802.3ad
- 5 – balance-tlb
- 6 – balance-alb

Technically, outside of Base View or cmsh, the bonding mode is just another bonding option specified as part of the options string. However in BCM the bonding mode value is set up using the dedicated `mode` property of the bonded interface, for the sake of clarity. To avoid conflict with the value of the `mode` property, trying to commit a bonding mode value as an `option=value` pair will fail validation.

### 3.5.2 Single Bonded Interface On A Regular Node

A single bonded interface on a node can be configured and coexist in several ways on nodes with multiple network interfaces. Possibilities and restrictions are illustrated by the following:

- The bonded interface may be made up of two member interfaces, and a third interface outside of the bond could be the boot interface. (The boot interface is the node interface used to PXE boot the node before the kernel loads (section 5.1)).
- The boot interface could itself be a member of the bonded interface. If the boot interface is a member of a bonded interface, then this is the first bonded interface when interfaces are listed as in the example on page 113.
- The bonded interface could be set up as the provisioning interface. However, the provisioning interface cannot itself be a member of a bonded interface. (The provisioning interface is the node's interface that picks up the image for the node after the initial ramdisk is running. Chapter 5 covers this in more detail).
- A bonded interface can be set up as the provisioning interface, while having a member interface which is used for PXE booting.

### 3.5.3 Multiple Bonded Interface On A Regular Node

A node can also have multiple bonded interfaces configured. Possibilities and restrictions are illustrated by the following:

- Any one of the configured bonded interfaces can be configured as the provisioning interface. However, as already mentioned in the case of single bond interfaces (section 3.5.2), a particular member of a bonded interface cannot be made the provisioning interface.

- When a bonded interface is set as the provisioning interface, then during the node-installer phase of boot, the node-installer brings up the necessary bonded interface along with all its member interfaces so that node provisioning is done over the bonded interface.

### 3.5.4 Bonded Interfaces On Head Nodes And HA Head Nodes

It is also possible to configure bonded interfaces on head nodes.

For a single head node setup, this is analogous to setting up bonding on regular nodes.

For a high availability (HA) setup (chapter 15), bonding is possible for `internalnet` as well as for `externalnet`, but it needs the following extra changes:

- For the bonded interface on `internalnet`, the shared internal IP alias interface name (the value of `networkdevicename`, for example, `eth0:0` in figure 15.1) for that IP address should be renamed to the bonded alias interface name on `internalnet` (for example, `bond0:0`).
- For the bonded interface on `externalnet`, the shared external IP alias interface name (the value of `networkdevicename`, for example, `eth1:0` in figure 15.1) for that IP address should be renamed to the bonded alias interface name on `externalnet` (for example, `bond1:0`).
- Additionally, when using a bonded interface name for the internal network, the value of the provisioning network interface name (the value of `provisioninginterface`, for example, `eth0`) for the head nodes, must be changed to the name of the bonded interface (for example, `bond0 [prov]`) on the internal network. The `provisioninginterface` value setting is described further on page 266.

#### Example

```
[headnode1->device[headnode1]->interfaces]# list
Type      Network device name  IP          Network
-----
alias     bond0:0           10.141.255.252 internalnet
alias     bond1:0           10.150.57.1    externalnet
bond      bond0 [prov]       10.141.255.254 internalnet
bond      bond1             10.150.57.3    externalnet
physical   eth0 (bond0)     0.0.0.0
physical   eth1 (bond0)     0.0.0.0
physical   eth2 (bond1)     0.0.0.0
physical   eth3 (bond1)     0.0.0.0
```

### 3.5.5 Tagged VLAN On Top Of a Bonded Interface

It is possible to set up a tagged VLAN interface on top of a bonded interface. There is no requirement for the bonded interface to have an IP address configured in this case. The IP address can be set to `0.0.0.0`, however a network must be set.

#### Example

```
[headnode1->device[node001]->interfaces]# list
Type      Network device name  IP          Network
-----
bond      bond0             0.0.0.0      internalnet
physical  eth0 [prov]       10.141.0.1   internalnet
physical  eth1 (bond0)     0.0.0.0
physical  eth2 (bond0)     0.0.0.0
vlan     bond0.3            10.150.1.1   othernet
```

### 3.5.6 Association Of MAC Address With A Bonded Interface

BCM has MAC settings for interfaces as well as for nodes.

When a node is provisioned via PXE booting (Chapter 5), the MAC on the NIC that is being booted from is matched with the MAC property of the node. This is how the node is identified.

If a bonded interface is used, then depending on the bond mode, any interface may be used for PXE booting. Each interface has its own MAC address, which means that if the interface MAC address does not match the node MAC address, then the node loops in the node-installer waiting to be identified as a new node (section 5.4.2).

BCM from version 10.25.05 by default has the node-installer recognize any interface MAC in the bonded interface for a node. To change that behavior, the AnyMAC advanced configuration directive (page 862) should be set to 0. When the node CMDaemon starts for the first time, it adds the MAC addresses for all the physical interfaces that are a part of a bond automatically to the bond interface.

### 3.5.7 Further Notes On Bonding

If using bonding to provide failover services, then the kernel module option setting for media independent interface monitoring, `miimon`, which is set to be off by default (set to 0), should be given a non-zero value.

The `miimon` setting is the time period in milliseconds between checks of the interface carrier state. A common value is `miimon=100`.

Its value is set in the bonding device configuration file.

- For RHEL and derivatives, and for SLES distributions, the file is in a network script along a file path such as `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-bond0`.

The line within the stanza for the `ifcfg-bond0` file might look like:

#### Example

```
BONDING_MODULE_OPTS="mode=active-backup miimon=100"
```

and can be set manually.

- For RHEL and derivatives, it can alternatively be configured with front-end tools such as the `nmcli` tool, `nmtui`, or others.

#### Example

```
# nmcli connection add type bond con-name bond0 ifname bond0 bond.options \
"mode=active-backup,miimon=100"
```

- For SLES, YaST can be used as a front-end tool (YaST > System > Network Settings).

- For Ubuntu, the interface definitions are in a file, either `/etc/network/interfaces`, or a file under `/etc/network/interfaces.d/`.

The line to set the value of `miimon` follows a form such as:

```
bond-miimon 100
```

instead of

```
miimon=100
```

and can be set manually.

Alternatively, Canonical's `netplan` (<https://netplan.io>) utility can be used to set the network configuration files. The `netplan` YAML configuration key to set `bond-miimon` is `mii-monitor-interval`.

When listing interfaces in cmsh, if an interface is a member of a bond or bridge interface, then the corresponding bonded or bridge interface name is shown in parentheses after the member interface name. Section 3.3, on configuring bridge interfaces, shows an example of such a listing from within cmsh on page 113.

More on bonded interfaces (including a detailed description of bonding options and modes) can be found at <http://www.kernel.org/doc/Documentation/networking/bonding.txt>.

## 3.6 Configuring InfiniBand Interfaces

On clusters with an InfiniBand interconnect, the InfiniBand Host Channel Adapter (HCA) in each node must be configured before it can be used.

This section describes how to set up the InfiniBand service on the nodes for regular use. Setting up InfiniBand for booting and provisioning purposes is described in Chapter 5, while setting up InfiniBand for NFS is described in section 3.13.4.

### 3.6.1 Installing Software Packages

On a standard NVIDIA Base Command Manager cluster, the OFED (OpenFabrics Enterprise Distribution) packages that are part of the Linux base distribution are used. These packages provide RDMA implementations allowing high bandwidth/low latency interconnects on OFED hardware. The implementations can be used by InfiniBand hardware.

By default, all relevant OFED packages are installed on the head node and software images. It is possible to replace the distribution OFED with a non-distribution OFED. The replacement can be for the entire cluster, or only for certain software images. Administrators may choose to switch to a different OFED version if the HCAs used are not supported by the distribution OFED version, or to increase performance by using an OFED version that has been optimized for a particular HCA. Installing a DOCA Mellanox OFED stack onto BCM is covered in Chapter 10 of the *Installation Manual*.

If the InfiniBand network is enabled during cluster installation, then the `infiniband.conf` and `rdma.conf` modules in the subdirectory `etc/rdma/modules/` are automatically configured for the detected hardware.

The relevant InfiniBand HCA kernel modules are then automatically loaded during the init stage by systemd. Verifying that InfiniBand is active can be done after the cluster is up and running by running `ibstat`:

```
auser@head:~$ ibstat
CA 'mlx5_0'
  CA type: MT4123
  Number of ports: 1
  Firmware version: 20.31.2006
  Hardware version: 0
  Node GUID: 0xb8599f0300e4222a
  System image GUID: 0xb
  Port 1:
    State: Active
    Physical state: LinkUp
...
...
```

### 3.6.2 Subnet Managers

Every InfiniBand subnet requires at least one subnet manager to be running. The subnet manager takes care of routing, addressing and initialization on the InfiniBand fabric. Some InfiniBand switches include subnet managers. However, on large InfiniBand networks or in the absence of a switch-hosted subnet manager, a subnet manager needs to be started on at least one node inside of the cluster. When multiple subnet managers are started on the same InfiniBand subnet, one instance will become the active subnet

manager whereas the other instances will remain in passive mode. It is recommended to run 2 subnet managers on all InfiniBand subnets to provide redundancy in case of failure.

On a Linux machine that is not running BCM, an administrator sets a subnet manager service<sup>1</sup> to start at boot-time with a command such as:

```
systemctl enable opensm.service
```

However, for clusters managed by BCM, a subnet manager is best set up using CMDaemon. There are two ways of setting CMDaemon to start up the subnet manager on a node at boot time:

1. by assigning a role.

In cmsh this can be done with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device roles <node>; assign subnetmanager; commit"
```

where <node> is the name of a node on which it will run, for example: basecm11, node001, node002...

In Base View, the subnet manager role is assigned by selecting a head node or regular node from the Devices resource, and assigning it the “Subnet manager role”. The navigation path for this, for a node node002 for example, is Devices > Nodesnode002 > Settings > Roles > Add[Subnet manager role].

2. by setting the service up. Services are covered more generally in section 3.14.

In cmsh this is done with:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device services node001
[basecm11->device[node001]->services]% add opensm
[basecm11->device[node001]->services*[opensm*]]% set autostart yes
[basecm11->device[node001]->services*[opensm*]]% set monitored yes
[basecm11->device[node001]->services*[opensm*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->services[opensm]]%
```

In Base View the subnet manager service is configured by selecting a head node or regular node from the resources tree, and adding the service to it. The navigation path for this, for a node node002 for example, is: Devices > Nodesnode002 > Settings > Services[Service].

When the head node in a cluster is equipped with an InfiniBand HCA, it is a good candidate to run as a subnet manager for smaller clusters.

On large clusters a dedicated node is recommended to run the subnet manager.

### 3.6.3 InfiniBand Network Settings

Although not strictly necessary, it is recommended that InfiniBand interfaces are assigned an IP address (i.e. IP over IB). First, a network object in the cluster management infrastructure should be created. The procedure for adding a network is described in section 3.2.2. The following settings are recommended as defaults:

---

<sup>1</sup>usually opensm, but opensmd in SLES

Property	Value
Name	ibnet
Domain name	ib.cluster
Type	internal
Base address	10.149.0.0
Netmask bits	16
MTU	up to 4k in datagram mode up to 64k in connected mode

By default, an InfiniBand interface is set to datagram mode, because it scales better than connected mode. It can be configured to run in connected mode by setting the `connectedmode` property:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces[ib0]]% set connectedmode yes
```

For nodes that are PXE booting or are getting provisioned over InfiniBand, the mode setting in the node-installer script has to be changed accordingly.

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# echo datagram > /cm/node-installer/scripts/ipoib_mode
```

Once the network has been created all nodes must be assigned an InfiniBand interface on this network. The easiest method of doing this is to create the interface for one node device and then to clone that device several times.

For large clusters, a labor-saving way to do this is using the `addinterface` command (section 3.7.1) as follows:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# echo "device
addinterface -n node001..node150 physical ib0 ibnet 10.149.0.1
commit" | cmsh -x
```

When the head node is also equipped with an InfiniBand HCA, it is important that a corresponding interface is added and configured in the cluster management infrastructure.

#### Example

Assigning an IP address on the InfiniBand network to the head node:

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces]% add physical ib0
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces*[ib0*]]% set network ibnet
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces*[ib0*]]% set ip 10.149.255.254
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces*[ib0*]]% commit
```

As with any change to the network setup, the head node needs to be restarted to make the above change active.

#### 3.6.4 Verifying Connectivity

After all nodes have been restarted, the easiest way to verify connectivity is to use the `ping` utility

#### Example

Pinging node015 while logged in to node014 through the InfiniBand interconnect:

```
[root@node014 ~]# ping node015.ib.cluster
PING node015.ib.cluster (10.149.0.15) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from node015.ib.cluster (10.149.0.15): icmp_seq=1 ttl=64
time=0.086 ms
...
```

If the ping utility reports that ping replies are being received, the InfiniBand is operational. The ping utility is not intended to benchmark high speed interconnects. For this reason it is usually a good idea to perform more elaborate testing to verify that bandwidth and latency are within the expected range.

The quickest way to stress-test the InfiniBand interconnect is to use the Intel MPI Benchmark (IMB), which is installed by default in /cm/shared/apps/imb/current. The setup.sh script in this directory can be used to create a template in a user's home directory to start a run.

### Example

Running the Intel MPI Benchmark using openmpi to evaluate performance of the InfiniBand interconnect between node001 and node002:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# su - cmsupport
[cmsupport@basecm11 ~]$ cd /cm/shared/apps/imb/current/
[cmsupport@basecm11 current]$ ./setup.sh
[cmsupport@basecm11 current]$ cd ~/BenchMarks/imb/2017
[cmsupport@basecm11 2017]$ module load openmpi/gcc
[cmsupport@basecm11 2017]$ module initadd openmpi/gcc
[cmsupport@basecm11 2017]$ make -f make_mpi2
[cmsupport@basecm11 2017]$ mpirun -np 2 -machinefile ../nodes IMB-MPI1 PingPong
#-----
# Benchmarking PingPong
# #processes = 2
#-----
#bytes #repetitions      t [usec]    Mbytes/sec
     0      1000        0.78        0.00
     1      1000        1.08        0.88
     2      1000        1.07        1.78
     4      1000        1.08        3.53
     8      1000        1.08        7.06
    16      1000        1.16       13.16
    32      1000        1.17       26.15
    64      1000        1.17       52.12
   128      1000        1.20      101.39
   256      1000        1.37      177.62
   512      1000        1.69      288.67
  1024      1000        2.30      425.34
  2048      1000        3.46      564.73
  4096      1000        7.37      530.30
  8192      1000       11.21      697.20
 16384      1000       21.63      722.24
 32768      1000       42.19      740.72
 65536       640       70.09      891.69
131072       320       125.46     996.35
262144       160       238.04     1050.25
524288        80       500.76     998.48
1048576        40      1065.28     938.72
2097152        20      2033.13     983.71
4194304        10      3887.00     1029.07
```

```
# All processes entering MPI_Finalize
```

To run on nodes other than node001 and node002, the `../nodes` file must be modified to contain different hostnames. To perform other benchmarks, the PingPong argument should be omitted.

## 3.7 Configuring BMC (IPMI/iLO/DRAC/CIMC/Redfish) Interfaces

BCM can initialize and configure the baseboard management controller (BMC) that may be present on devices. This ability can be set during the installation on the head node (figure 3.15 of the *Installation Manual*), or it can be set after installation as described in this section. The IPMI, iLO, DRAC, CIMC, or Redfish interface that is exposed by a BMC is treated in the cluster management infrastructure as a special type of network interface belonging to a device. In the most common setup a dedicated network (i.e. IP subnet) is created for BMC communication. The `10.148.0.0/16` network is used by default for BMC interfaces by BCM.

### 3.7.1 BMC Network Settings

The first step in setting up a BMC is to add the BMC network as a network object in the cluster management infrastructure. The procedure for adding a network is described in section 3.2.2. The following settings are recommended as defaults:

Property	Value
Name	bmcnet, ilonet, ipminet, dracnet, cimcnet, or rfnet
Domain name	bmc.cluster, ilo.cluster, ipmi.cluster, drac.cluster, cimc.cluster, or rf.cluster
Type	Internal
Base address	10.148.0.0
Netmask bits	16
Broadcast address	10.148.255.255

Once the network has been created, all nodes must be assigned a BMC interface, of type `bmc`, on this network. The easiest method of doing this is to create the interface for one node device and then to clone that device several times.

For larger clusters this can be laborious, and a simple bash loop can be used to do the job instead:

```
[basecm11 ~]# for ((i=1; i<=150; i++)) do
echo "
device interfaces node${(printf '%03d' $i)}
add bmc ipmi0
set network bmcnet
set ip 10.148.0.$i
commit"; done | cmsh -x      # -x usefully echoes what is piped into cmsh
```

The preceding loop can conveniently be replaced with the `addinterface` command, run from within the device mode of `cmsh`:

```
[basecm11 ~]# echo "
device
addinterface -n node001..node150 bmc ipmi0 bmcnet 10.148.0.1
commit" | cmsh -x
```

The help text in `cmsh` gives more details on how to use `addinterface`.

Most administrators are likely to simply run it as an interactive session in `cmsh`, running the `help addinterface` command for reference, and then supplying the options for the nodes and interface settings in device mode. For example, as in the following session:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% help addinterface
Name:
    addinterface - Add a network interface to one or more nodes

Usage:
    addinterface [OPTIONS] <type> <devicename> <network> <firstip>

Options:
...help text omitted...
Examples:
    addinterface -n node001..node010 physical ib0 ibnet 10.149.0.1

[basecm11->device]% addinterface -n node001..node150 bmc ipmi0 bmcnet 10.148.0.1
[basecm11->device*]% commit
```

In order to be able to communicate with the BMC interfaces, the head node also needs an interface on the BMC network. Depending on how the BMC interfaces are physically connected to the head node, the head node has to be assigned an IP address on the BMC network one way or another. There are two possibilities for how the BMC interface is physically connected:

- When the BMC interface is connected to the primary internal network, the head node should be assigned an alias interface configured with an IP address on the BMC network.
- When the BMC interface is connected to a dedicated physical network, the head node must also be physically connected to this network. A physical interface must be added and configured with an IP address on the BMC network.

### Example

Assigning an IP address on the BMC network to the head node using an alias interface:

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces]% add alias eth0:0
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces*[eth0:0*]]% set network bmcnet
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces*[eth0:0*]]% set ip 10.148.255.254
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces*[eth0:0*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces[eth0:0]]%
Mon Dec 6 05:45:05 basecm11: Reboot required: Interfaces have been modified
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->interfaces[eth0:0]]% ...;..
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% reboot
```

As with any change to the network setup, the head node needs to be restarted to make the above change active.

BMC connectivity from the head node to the IP addresses of the configured interfaces on the regular nodes can be tested with Bash one-liner such as:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# for i in $(cmsh -c "device; foreach -t physicalnode (interfaces; \
use ilo0; get ip)"); do ping -c1 $i; done | grep -B1 packet
--- 10.148.0.1 ping statistics ---
1 packets transmitted, 0 received, 100% packet loss, time 0ms
--- 10.148.0.2 ping statistics ---
1 packets transmitted, 0 received, 100% packet loss, time 0ms
--- 10.148.0.3 ping statistics ---
1 packets transmitted, 0 received, 100% packet loss, time 0ms
...
```

In the preceding example the packet loss demonstrates there is a connection problem between the head node and the BMC subnet.

### 3.7.2 BMC Authentication

The node-installer described in Chapter 5 is responsible for the initialization and configuration of the BMC interface of a device. In addition to a number of network-related settings, the node-installer also configures BMC authentication credentials. By default BMC interfaces are configured with username `bright` and a random password that is generated during the installation of the head node. The password is stored by CMDDaemon. It can be managed from `cmsh` from within the `base` object of partition mode, in the `bmcsettings` submode. This means that by default, each BMC in the cluster has that username and password set during node boot.

For example, the current values of the BMC username and password for the entire cluster can be obtained and changed as follows:

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% partition use base
[basecm11->partition[base]]% bmcsettings
[basecm11->partition[base]->bmcsettings]%
```

get username  
`bright`

```
[basecm11->partition[base]->bmcsettings]%
```

get password  
`Za4ohni1ohMa2zew`

```
[basecm11->partition[base]->bmcsettings]%
```

set username `bmcadmin`

```
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->bmcsettings*]%
```

set password  
enter new password: \*\*\*\*\*  
retype new password: \*\*\*\*\*

```
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->bmcsettings*]%
```

commit

In Base View, selecting the cluster item in the resources pane, and then using the `Settings` option, allows the BMC settings to be edited.

The BMC authentication credentials, and also some other BMC properties can be set cluster-wide, category, or per node. As usual, category settings override cluster-wide settings, and node settings override category settings. The relevant properties are:

Property	Description
BMC User ID	User type. Normally set to 4 for administrator access.
BMC User Name	User name used when sending a BMC command
BMC Password	Password for specified user name when sending a BMC command
BMC Power reset delay	Delay, in seconds, before powering up (default value: 0)
BMC extra arguments	Extra arguments passed to BMC commands
BMC privilege	Possible options are <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• administrator</li> <li>• callback</li> <li>• OEMproprietary</li> <li>• operator</li> <li>• user</li> </ul>

---

BMC configuration on a head node is done directly.

For regular nodes BCM stores the BMC configuration, and uses it:

- to configure the BMC interface from the node-installer
- to authenticate to the BMC interface after it has come up

BMC management operations, such as power cycling nodes and collecting hardware metrics, can then be performed after the node has been provisioned again.

If BMC authentication fails, then an explanation for why can often be found in the node-installer log at `/var/log/node-installer`.

### 3.7.3 Interfaces Settings

#### Interface Name

It is recommended that the network device name of a BMC interface start with `ipmi`, `ilo`, `drac`, `cimc`, or `rf`, according to whether the BMC is running with IPMI, iLO, DRAC, CIMC, or Redfish. Numbers are appended to the base name, resulting in, for example: `ipmi0`.

#### Obtaining The IP address

BMC interfaces can have their IP addresses configured statically, or obtained from a DHCP server.

Only a node with a static BMC IP address has BMC power management done by BCM. If the node has a DHCP-assigned BMC IP address, then it requires custom BMC power management (section 4.1.4) due to its dynamic nature.

#### Dell OpenManage And `racadm` Installation

The Dell OpenManage utilities are provided with BCM only for RHEL8-based distributions at the time of writing of this section (September 2023).

If Dell was chosen as the hardware vendor when the BCM ISO was created for installation, and chosen as the hardware manufacturer when the head node was configured in the BCM installer (section 3.3.10 of the *Installation Manual*), then the Dell OpenManage utilities are located under `/opt/dell` on the head node.

If Dell was chosen as the hardware manufacturer when nodes are configured in the BCM installer (section 3.3.11 of the *Installation Manual*), then the default software image that is used by the node has the Dell OpenManage utilities, located on the head node at `/cm/images/default-image/opt/dell`.

The Dell OpenManage utilities contain the `racadm` binary to carry out remote access control administration. The `racadm` tool can be used to issue power commands (Chapter 4). BCM runs commands similar to the following to issue the power commands:

```
/opt/dell/srvadmin/sbin/racadm -r <DRAC interface IP address> -u <bmcusername> -p <bmcpassword>\ 
serveraction powerstatus
/opt/dell/srvadmin/sbin/racadm -r <DRAC interface IP address> -u <bmcusername> -p <bmcpassword>\ 
serveraction hardreset
```

The BMC username/password values can be obtained from `cmsh` as follows:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% partition use base
[basecm11->partition[base]]% bmcsettings
[basecm11->partition[base]->bmcsettings]% get password
12345
[basecm11->partition[base]->bmcsettings]% get username
tom
[basecm11->partition[base]->bmcsettings]%
```

Sometimes the `bright` user does not have the right privilege to get the correct values. The `racadm` commands then fail.

The `bright` user privilege can be raised using the following command:

```
/opt/dell/srvadmin/sbin/racadm -r <DRAC interface IP address> -u root -p <root password> set \
iDRAC.Users.4.Privilege 511
```

Here it is assumed that the BMC user has the username `bright`, a userID 4, and the privilege can be set to 511.

### 3.7.4 Identification With A BMC

Sometimes it is useful to identify a node using BMC commands. This can be done by, for example, blinking a light via a BMC command on the node:

#### Example

```
ipmitool -U <bmcusername> -P <bmcpassword> -H <host IP> chassis identify 1
```

The exact implementation may be vendor-dependent, and need not be an `ipmitool` command. Such commands can be scripted and run from CMDDaemon.

For testing without a BMC, the example script at `/cm/local/examples/cmd/bmc_identify` can be used if the environment variable `$CMD_HOSTNAME` is set. The logical structure of the script can be used as a basis for carrying out an identification task when a physical BMC is in place, by customizing the script and then placing the script in a directory for use.

To have such a custom BMC script run from CMDDaemon, the `BMCIdentifyScript` advanced configuration directive (page 855) can be used.

## 3.8 Configuring BlueField DPUs

NVIDIA BlueField Data Processing Units (DPUs) are an aarch64-based compute platform for cluster infrastructure.

A DPU is a programmable network card with in-network compute, acceleration, isolation, storage, and security capabilities.

Organizations can use DPUs to build software-defined, hardware-accelerated IT infrastructure.

The configuration of DPUs with BCM is done using the `cm-dpu-setup` utility. This creates DPU entities in BCM, installs the DOCA (<https://docs.nvidia.com/doxygen/sdk/overview/index.html>) software stack on host nodes, creates a specialized software image for the DPUs, and provisions them to boot over the network.

### 3.8.1 Assumptions And Limitations

DPU provisioning with BCM assumes that DPUs and their host nodes have a strict 1-to-1 relation. This means that for all host nodes with DPUs, a single host only ever has a single DPU.

At the time of writing of this section, (April 2023) the `cm-dpu-setup` utility supports provisioning using the 1.5.1 LTS version of the DPU software stack. Version 2.0 is due soon, but has not yet been tested with `cm-dpu-setup`.

### 3.8.2 Preparation

- Secure boot must be disabled in the DPU BIOS settings. This is required to allow the DPU to boot over PXE.
- The DPU provisioning process requires the following two additional files:
  - a DOCA host software repository archive. For example:  
`doса-host-repo-ubuntu2004_1.5.1-0.1.8.1.5.1007.1.5.8.1.1.2.1_amd64.deb`
  - a BlueField Bootstream (BFB) file. For example:  
`DOCA_1.5.1_BSP_3.9.3_Ubuntu_20.04-4.2211-LTS.signed.bfb`

Both can be acquired from the NVIDIA developer website at <https://developer.nvidia.com/networking/doca#downloads>. The files should be placed on the head node.

- The DPUs all need to be physically installed in their hosts before running `cm-dpu-setup`.
  1. Provisioning requires at least one performance port to be connected.
  2. There must also be an Ethernet connection with the OOB/BMC port, which is the interface over which BCM manages and PXE boots the DPU.

### 3.8.3 Installation

New DPU deployments can only be provisioned using the `cm-dpu-setup` CLI tool, and not using Base View. Configuration of the deployment should usually be done interactively, which results in a YAML configuration file. This configuration file is then used by `cm-dpu-setup` to perform all provisioning steps.

When a cluster already has a provisioned DPU deployment, `cm-dpu-setup` gives an option to extend it with new DPUs.

#### Provisioning DPUs With `cm-dpu-setup`

Starting `cm-dpu-setup` without any arguments launches the interactive TUI for configuring a new DPU deployment (figure 3.11):

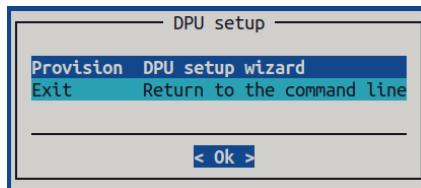


Figure 3.11: Initial screen for `cm-dpu-setup`

When **Provision** is selected, the wizard guides the user on selecting the host nodes of the DPUs. It is the DPUs that are to be provisioned within these hosts. Host nodes can be selected by choosing whole categories or individual nodes. The selected nodes are rebooted during the provisioning process.

The `cm-dpu-setup` wizard then prompts for a name for the category of all DPU nodes. The DPU image and DPU settings are assigned to this category, and the settings are thus automatically applied to all DPU nodes.

Next is a screen to configure the performance network (figure 3.12):

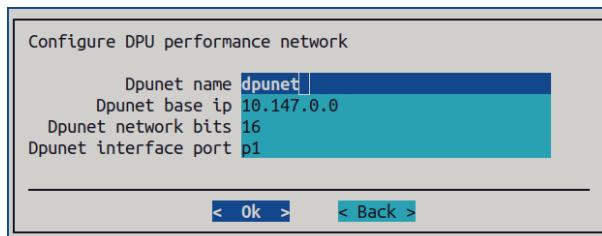


Figure 3.12: Configuration screen for the DPU network

This configuration creates a network and connects it to the provided interface port. The options for the port interfaces on most DPUs are P0 and P1. The exact value depends on the PCI bus numbering allocated to the DPU.

The next screen asks for the IP address offset for the management interface, relative to the host node's assigned IP address on the internal network.

The `cm-dpu-setup` utility then prompts for names to be given for the software images that are to be created on the DPU and the host nodes. The BFB file for building the DPU image, and a DOCA archive for building an image for the host nodes, are also selected.

Finally, `cm-dpu-setup` prompts for configuration of the DPU settings object that is defined in BCM (figure 3.13):

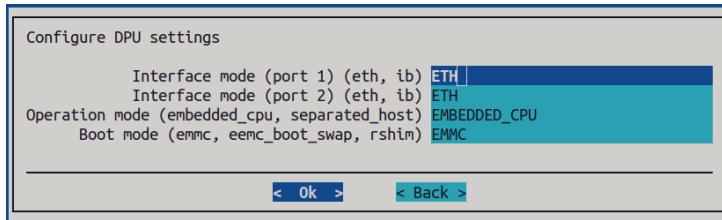


Figure 3.13: Configuration screen for the DPU settings

Every physical interface port of a DPU can be configured to be either Ethernet or InfiniBand, depending on its SKU. The operation mode (section 3.8.4) of a DPU can be set to:

- `separated_host`: treats the DPU as a separate host to the node hosting it
- `embedded_cpu`: treats the DPU as part of the node hosting it

The boot mode determines from which device the DPU boots. This does not include PXE boot, which is configured separately by `cm-dpu-setup` itself. This boot mode is relevant in cases where PXE boot fails.

The summary screen appears after the configuration steps are completed. It allows the configuration to be viewed, saved, or saved and deployed.

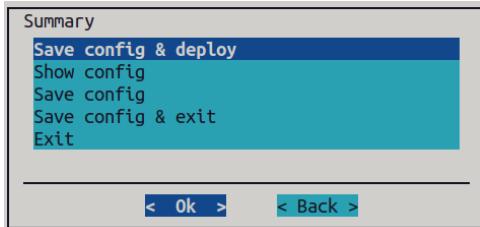


Figure 3.14: Summary of the configuration

Deployment takes some time, especially during software image creation from the BFB file. The DPU device is automatically given a name composed of the node which hosts it together with the suffix `-dpu`. Steps are displayed during the deployment process. The log file gets written at `/var/log/cm-dpu-setup.log`

#### Extending DPU Deployment With `cm-dpu-setup`

When the cluster already contains DPU nodes, the `cm-dpu-setup` wizard provides additional menu options to extend or remove the deployment (figure 3.15):

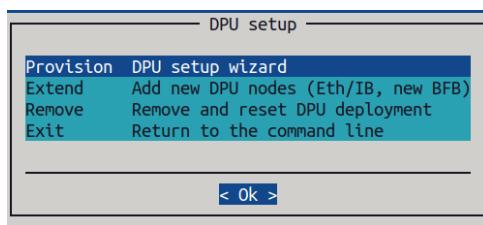


Figure 3.15: Initial screen for `cm-dpu-setup` with already existing DPU nodes

Extending the cluster with more DPU nodes can be done with

- a new network, for example InfiniBand instead of Ethernet, or just a separate subnet

- with a new BFB base image, which creates a new DPU software image
- simply adding additional DPUs to an existing DPU category, which implies that they boot with the same image and have the same network configuration

For the first two options, `cm-dpu-setup` prompts for the configuration of a new category, so that the different subsets of DPUs in the cluster can be distinguished. All kinds of variations in configuration can thus be carried out.

### CLI Options For `cm-dpu-setup`

The `cm-dpu-setup` utility has the following usage instructions:

```
root@basecm11:~# cm-dpu-setup -h

usage: DPU cm-dpu-setup [-c <config_file>] [--remove] [--yes-i-really-mean-it] [--erase-images]
                         [--skip-network] [--skip-host-image] [--skip-archos] [--extend]
                         [--hold-bfb-packages HOLD_BFB_PACKAGES] [-v] [--store-name-aliases]
                         [--no-distro-checks] [--json] [--output-remote-execution-runner]
                         [--on-error-action debug,remotedebug,undo,abort] [--skip-packages]
                         [--min-reboot-timeout <reboot_timeout_seconds>] [--allow-running-from-secondary]
                         [--dev] [-h]

optional arguments:
-h, --help            Print this screen

common:
Common arguments

-c <config_file>      Load runtime configuration for plugins from a YAML config file

Managing DPUs:
Flags that can be used to manage DPUs in a cluster

--remove              Remove and reset DPUs
--yes-i-really-mean-it
                     Required for additional safety
--erase-images        Erase all images from disk during removal
--skip-network        Skip check and creation of DPU performance network
--skip-host-image    Skip creation of the Host Image
--skip-archos         Skip creation of ArchOS and continue with DPU deployment
--extend              Extend current deployment with new DPU nodes
--hold-bfb-packages HOLD_BFB_PACKAGES
                     Mark a custom set (comma-separated) of packages to be held for install
                     during DPU image build
```

The help output continues beyond this, but only contains advanced, generic `cm-setup` options, and not DPU-specific options.

The options can be grouped as follows:

- Common arguments:
  - `-c <YAML configuration file>`: Loads a runtime configuration for plugins, from a YAML configuration file.
- Removal arguments:
  - `--remove`: Starts the removal process. Does not do anything unless `--yes-i-really-mean-it` is also provided.

- `--yes-i-really-mean-it`: Required as a safety precaution when removing the DPU deployment from the CLI.
- `--erase-images`: Also removes the software images from disk instead of only removing the entities from BCM.
- Provisioning management arguments: This group of arguments is useful when the provisioning process has been interrupted and an administrator wants to continue it without starting again from scratch.
  - `--skip-network`: Skips check for overlap with existing networks and creation of the network.
  - `--skip-host-image`: Skips the creation of the host image.
  - `--skip-archos`: Skips the creation of the DPU image, node-installer image, shared image, and the ArchOS object.
- DPU image arguments:
  - `--hold-bfb-packages <packages>`: Comma-separated list of packages to hold off on with post-install configuration and set up a service to finish it on DPU boot. This is necessary for certain packages that fail to install inside of a chroot/systemd-spawn environment because their configuration depends on certain hardware being present or being booted with `systemd` as PID 1.

## Troubleshooting

Some problems that may occur during installation are described in this section, along with possible solutions.

### Host or DPU image creation stage fails:

- **A package fails to install or the software configuration fails:** If this happens, then the cluster administrator should try to establish how it failed. Did it fail because of:
  - dependencies on `systemd`? A workaround could be to pass a dependency as an argument to `--hold-bfb-packages`.
  - unsupported external hardware? The cluster administrator can check that that the base BFB file used supports the hardware used (1.5.1 LTS or newer).
- **A repository is inaccessible:** If this happens, then the cluster administrator should check that the BCM repositories are reachable from the head node, and that the authentication is correct. If there are missing or invalid GPG keys, then the keys that the BFB file is shipped with should be checked. The 1.5.1 LTS version of the BFB file ships with a Kubernetes GPG key that expired in December 2022. The `cm-dpu-setup` utility automatically fetches the correct key.

### Pre-install checks are failing:

- DPU-related entities already exist in the cluster: if a previous deployment or setup process was not cleaned up properly, then there might be leftover entities in BCM that inhibit a fresh setup. The generic entities related to a DPU deployment are as follows:
  - DPU network
  - RShim network
  - DPU category
  - DPU settings (applied to the category)
  - Host image

- DPU image
- Ubuntu 20.04 aarch64 (in the base partition, under archos mode)
- Ubuntu 20.04 aarch64 node-installer image
- Ubuntu 20.04 aarch64 shared image
- DPU nodes

**Rebooting nodes fails** Possible failures when trying to reboot nodes are:

**Mellanox configuration fails:** the DPU provisioning stage configures the DPU via the command:

`mlxconfig -d /dev/mst/mt41686_pciconf0`

on the host. If this stage fails, then possible reasons are:

- the DPU is not available
- it is a model that does not support Ethernet (the default config resets both ports to Ethernet during provisioning)
- the DPU appears under a different device identifier in the filesystem

In the last case, BCM support can be contacted to check on the state of updates for support on the device.

**Timeout while waiting for DPUs to become reachable:** It may be that `cm-dpu-setup` could not establish an SSH connection from the RSHim (outside the DPU) to the `tmfifo` interface (inside the DPU). Underlying reasons for this could be:

- The PXE boot may have failed
- the interfaces on the DPU are not configured correctly.

Provisioning a base BFB file to the DPU directly with `cmsh` using

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001-dpu]]% dpu push-bfb
```

can be tried out to confirm that the interface is healthy. If the problem persists, then BCM support can be contacted.

### 3.8.4 Managing DPU Settings

A DPU is generally managed as a node, with a custom kernel, by CMDaemon. So most of the regular node operations work with the DPU just as they do with a regular node.

This section covers DPU operations that are not managed by regular node operations in CMDaemon. A backend script, `cm-dpu-manage`, is used to carry out these operations, but it is recommended to use the `cmsh` front end for all the operations instead.

#### DPU Discovery

At device level, DPUs can be discovered:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% dpu discover
Node      bfb  boot_order      mac                  success  version
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----
node001-dpu no   NET-00B-IPV4  94:6d:ae:6c:89:1e  yes      bright ubuntu 22.04 Cluster Manager...
node002-dpu no   NET-00B-IPV4  94:6d:ae:6c:88:be  yes      bright ubuntu 22.04 Cluster Manager...
```

### **Listing And Pushing BFB Files For DPUs**

All available BFB files can be listed with:

#### **Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% dpu list-bfb
DOCA_2.0.2_BSP_4.0.3_Ubuntu_22.04-10.23-04.prod.bfb
```

A specific BFP file can be provisioned to a DPU node001-dpu with

#### **Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% dpu push-bfb -n node001-dpu -f DOCA2.0.2_BSP_4.0.3_Ubuntu_test.bfb
```

### **DPU Settings That Have Been Applied**

The DPU settings that are active (that have been *applied*) for a particular DPU can be viewed with:

#### **Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% dpu show -n node001-dpu
Node      boot_mode   boot_timeout  display_level  drop_mode  operation_mode  Result  Error
-----  -----
node001-dpu  EMMC        100          BASIC        NORMAL    EMBEDDED_CPU(1)  good
```

### **DPU Settings Submode**

DPU settings can be managed with cmsh from within the dpusettings submode. This submode is accessible from within the partition and category modes. The submode can also be accessed from within device mode, if the device is a DPU.

For example, for a DPU category given the name dpu during a cm-dpu-setup run, the submode settings might look like:

#### **Example**

```
basecm11->category [dpus]->dpusettings]% show
Parameter           Value
-----
Revision
Operation mode      embedded
Display level       basic
Boot mode            emmc
Drop mode            normal
Boot timeout         1m 40s
Boot order           NET-OOB-IPV4
Interface mode port 1 eth
Interface mode port 2 ib
Offload OVS to hardware yes
Key value settings  <submode>
```

If a setting is changed within the dpusettings submode, then the value becomes active on the DPU only after committing it, and then running the dpu apply command.

**The dpu apply command:** makes committed DPU settings active on the DPU.

#### **Example**

```

root@basecm11:~# cmsh
[basecm11]# device use node001-dpu
[basecm11->device[node001-dpu]]# dpusettings
[basecm11->device[node001-dpu]->dpusettings]# get displaylevel
advanced
[basecm11->device[node001-dpu]]# !ssh node001 grep DISPLAY /dev/rshim0/misc
DISPLAY_LEVEL    1 (0:basic, 1:advanced, 2:log)
[basecm11->device[node001-dpu]->dpusettings]# set displaylevel <tab><tab>
advanced basic      log
[basecm11->device[node001-dpu]->dpusettings]# set displaylevel basic
[basecm11->device*[node001-dpu*]->dpusettings*]# commit
[basecm11->device[node001-dpu]->dpusettings]# exit
[basecm11->device[node001-dpu]]# dpu apply
[basecm11->device[node001-dpu]]# !ssh node001 grep DISPLAY /dev/rshim0/misc
DISPLAY_LEVEL    0 (0:basic, 1:advanced, 2:log)

```

Within the dpusettings submode:

- The displaylevel setting can take a value of

- basic
- advanced, or
- log.

The value configures the verbosity of the /dev/rshim0/misc file of the rshim0 device. An rshim device is a network interface between the host and a DPU.

- An Offload OVS to hardware value of yes allows Open vSwitch to offload tasks to the hardware running on the interface, reducing CPU load.
- The value of operationmode can be:
  - embedded: ECPF (Embedded CPU Physical Function) mode lets the embedded ARM system of the DPU control the NIC resources and data path of the host as well as of the DPU.
  - separated: separated host mode lets the host and the DPU control their own resources, but has them sharing the same NIC.

Further details on the operation mode can be found in the DOCA SDK documentation at <https://docs.nvidia.com/doxygen/doxygen/index.html#configuring-operation-mode>.

- The boot order configures the UEFI order from which device the DPU boots. Options are:
  - DISK: boots from an EMMC device
  - UEFI\_SHELL: boots into a UEFI shell
  - NET-OOB-IPV4: boots via PXE over an OOB interface running IPv4

Options can also be combined using comma-separation, and the boot order then follows that comma-separated order. The boot order gets written with a dpu apply to a BlueField configuration file /etc/bf.cfg on the DPU. The value DISK,NET-OOB-IPV4 thus results in a bf.cfg file:

```

BOOT0=DISK
BOOT1=NET-OOB-IPV4

```

which results in disk booting being tried first, then PXE booting.

- The `keyvaluesettings` are existing key/value settings that can be committed from the `mlxconfig` script (<https://docs.nvidia.com/networking/display/MFT4170/Examples+of+mlxconfig+Usage>).

The settings can alternatively be user-defined for the DPU in `cmsh` and committed from there.

For example, the `mlnxconfig` script can be run directly on the DPU host, `node001` as follows:

## Example

```
node001# mlxconfig -d <device-id> set PCI_DOWNSTREAM_PORT_OWNER[4]=0xFF
```

The cmsh equivalent for the DPU is:

## Example

```
[basecm11->device [node001-dpu] ->dpusettings] % keyvaluesettings  
[basecm11->device*[node001-dpu*] ->dpusettings*->keyvaluesettings*] % set PCI_DOWNSTREAM_PORT_OWNER[4] 0xF  
[basecm11->device*[node001-dpu*] ->dpusettings*->keyvaluesettings*] % commit  
[basecm11->device [node001-dpu] ->dpusettings->keyvaluesettings] % show  


| Parameter                    | Value |
|------------------------------|-------|
| PCI_DOWNSTREAM_PORT_OWNER[4] | 0xF   |


```

DPU Interfaces And IP Address Persistence When Operation Mode Changes

The IP address, network, and network device settings of the DPU and host can be seen as usual within the interfaces mode. For a node node001, that hosts a DPU node001-dpu, the interfaces list would show an output similar to:

## Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces] % list
Type      Network device name   IP           Network          Start if
-----
physical  BOOTIF [prov]        10.141.0.1    internalnet     always
physical  DPU1                10.147.0.1    netdpu1        always
physical  tmfifo_net0         192.168.100.1  tmfifonet     always

[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces] % device use node001-dpu
[basecm11->device[node001-dpu]->interfaces] % list
Type      Network device name   IP           Network          Start if
-----
physical  BOOTIF [prov]        10.141.0.101  internalnet     always
physical  p1                  10.147.0.1    netdpu1        always
physical  tmfifo_net0         192.168.100.2  tmfifonet     always
```

In the example, looking at the performance embedded network `netdpu1`, the device DPU1 on the host node `node001` and the device `p1` on the DPU `node001-dpu`, have the same IP address. This is to avoid interfaces reconfiguration when the DPU is switched between embedded and separated mode.

### 3.9 Configuring Switches And PDUs

### 3.9.1 Configuring With The Manufacturer's Configuration Interface

Network switches and PDUs that are to be used as part of the cluster should be configured with the PDU/switch configuration interface described in the PDU/switch documentation supplied by the manufacturer. Typically the interface is accessed by connecting via a web browser or telnet to an IP address preset by the manufacturer.

The IP address settings of the PDU/switch must match the settings of the device as stored by the cluster manager.

- In Base View, this is done via the navigation path Devices > Edit > <switchname> to select the switch. If the switch does not already exist, then it can be added via the ADD button. The values in the associated Settings window that comes up (figure 3.16) can then be filled in, and the IP address can be set and saved.
- In cmsh this can be done in device mode, with a set command:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% set switch01 ip 10.141.253.2
[basecm11->device*]% commit
```

### Port Assignments For Switches

- Using the uplinks option to configure uplink ports is described in section 3.10.3.
- The showport tool for seeing what MAC address matches what port number on a switch is described in section 3.10.4.
- The switchoverview tool gives an overview of the MAC addresses detected on the ports based on SNMP queries, and is described in section 3.10.6.
- The switchports command lists the switches and switch ports that have been assigned a node.
- The switchports option assigns ports on a switch to a node:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% #the option:
[basecm11->device]% set node003 switchports switch01:1
[basecm11->device*]% commit
[basecm11->device]% #the command:
[basecm11->device*]% switchports
Switch      #Port  Node
-----
switch01    1      node003
```

The switchports option used at node level is a legacy option, which can still be used in BCM version 10. However it may not work as expected when a node has multiple interfaces that may be connected to a switch.

Since BCM version 10 it is therefore recommended to assign ports from within the interfaces submode for a node. This assigns ports clearly per interface, and supports bonding of the interfaces (section 3.5). Management of ports at interface level also makes it possible for CMDaemon Lite (section 2.6.7) to manage the network configuration of Cumulus switches (section 3.10).

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% use node003; interfaces
[basecm11->device[node003]->interfaces]% set eth1 switchports switch01:2
[basecm11->device*[node003*]->interfaces*]% set eth2 switchports switch01:3
[basecm11->device*[node003*]->interfaces*]% commit; ...
[basecm11->device[node003]]% switchports
Switch      #Port  Node
-----
switch01    1      node003
switch01    2      node003
switch01    3      node003
```

Managing PDUs in Base View or cmsh is done in a similar way to the preceding method for switches. However, assigning PDUs and PDU ports to devices such as nodes is not part of this method, and is instead described in section 4.1.1.

### APC PDUs

For the APC brand of PDUs, the powercontrol value for the PDU device should be set to apc.

For example, for a PDU with the name mypdu, its value can be set in cmsh with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[mypdu]]% set powercontrol apc; commit
```

and in Base View with the navigation path:

```
Devices > Power Distribution Units > Power Distribution Unit list > Power Distribution Unit > Power control
```

If it is not set to apc, then the list of PDU ports is ignored by default.

### 3.9.2 Configuring SNMP

BCM can be used to manage switches, including many InfiniBand switches, using SNMP. This requires that SNMP be enabled. If disablesnmp is set to no, the default, then SNMP is enabled for the switch:

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% device add switch myibswitch
[basecm11->device[myibswitch]]% get disablesnmp
no
```

#### Configuring SNMP Community Strings

In order to allow the cluster management software to communicate with the switch or PDU, SNMP must be enabled on it, and the SNMP community strings should be configured correctly.

By default, the SNMP community strings for switches and PDUs are set to public and private for respectively read and write access. If different SNMP community strings have been configured in the switch or PDU, the readstring and writestring properties of the corresponding switch device should be changed.

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% device use switch01
[basecm11->device[switch01]]% snmpsettings
[basecm11->device[switch01]->snmpsettings]% get readstring
public
[basecm11->device[switch01]->snmpsettings]% get writestring
private
[basecm11->device[switch01]->snmpsettings]% set readstring public2
[basecm11->device*[switch01*]->snmpsettings*]% set writestring private2
[basecm11->device*[switch01*]->snmpsettings*]% commit
```

Alternatively, these properties can also be set in Base View via the navigation path:

```
Devices > Switches > Edit > SNMP Settings
```

## Configuring SNMP Settings

SNMP settings can be configured in cmsh via the `snmpsettings` submode, which is available under partition mode as well as under device mode.

The submode allows the version to be set to v1, v2c, or v3.

Setting the version to the value `file` is also an option, but is not meant as an option for end users. It is used in SNMP walk emulation for debugging non-standard switches.

The SNMPv3 settings that can be managed in BCM are:

### Example

```
[basecm11]# device use switch01
[basecm11->device[switch01]]% snmpsettings
[basecm11->device[switch01]->snmpsettings]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Authentication key      < not set >
Authentication protocol    MD5
Context
Privacy key            < not set >
Privacy protocol        DES
Retries                  -1
Revision
Security level          Authentication encrypted
Security name
Timeout                  0s
VLAN Timeout             0s
version                  V3
```

The `set` command can be used, sometimes with tab-completion, to set the SNMP switch parameters. For example, for the SNMPv3 parameters that are set to use cryptographic keys:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device*[switch01*]->snmpsettings*]% set authenticationprotocol <TAB><TAB>
md5 sha
[basecm11->device[switch01]->snmpsettings]% set authenticationprotocol aes
[basecm11->device*[switch01*]->snmpsettings*]% set privacyprotocol <TAB><TAB>
aes des
[basecm11->device*[switch01*]->snmpsettings*]% set privacyprotocol aes
[basecm11->device*[switch01*]->snmpsettings*]% commit
[basecm11->device[switch01]->snmpsettings]%
```

## SNMP Traps

BCM can assign an SNMP trap manager role to a node. The `snmptrapd` daemon is then configured and managed on the assigned node by CMDaemon.

Configuration options include enabling or disabling mailing of the messages, and setting the sender and recipients for the mail. By default an undefined value for `Server` means that the SNMP server is `localhost`.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]# device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% roles
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles]% assign snmptrap
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles*[snmptrap*]]% show
```

Parameter	Value
Access	public
Add services	yes
All administrators	no
Alternative script	
Arguments	
Event	yes
Mail	yes
Name	snmptrap
Provisioning associations	<0 internally used>
Recipients	
Revision	
Sender	
Server	
Type	SnmpTrapRole

## 3.10 Configuring Cumulus Switches

A Cumulus switch is a switch that runs Cumulus Linux, which is a Debian-based distribution with a networking focus.

The following capabilities and features are available, or can be run, on a switch that can run Cumulus Linux:

- ONIE (Open Network Install Environment, <https://opencomputeproject.github.io/onie/>): a bootloader, similar in concept to PXE booting. It allows the switch to boot up and install the Cumulus OS from an image on the network. Installing Cumulus with ONIE wipes out any existing image already installed on the switch.
- ZTP (Zero Touch Provisioning): a protocol that is used with the ztp client. The protocol uses specially defined DHCP options. ZTP allows the switch to automatically carry out provisioning for other hardware devices on a network on top of an OS on the switch. The capability to carry this out becomes available automatically when the switch is powered on, and the interface on which provisioning is to be carried out automatically becomes active with an IP address (“day-0 provisioning”).
- NVUE (NVIDIA User Experience): a CLI that uses the nv command set to manage the network configuration of the switch. The NVUE CLI is documented at <https://docs.nvidia.com/networking-ethernet-software/cumulus-linux-55/System-Configuration/NVIDIA-User-Experience-NVUE/NVUE-CLI/>.
- The NVUE REST API: if it is explicitly enabled, can run the same commands via HTTP as the NVUE CLI. The NVUE REST API is documented at <https://docs.nvidia.com/networking-ethernet-software/cumulus-linux-55/System-Configuration/NVIDIA-User-Experience-NVUE/NVUE-API/>
- Public key SSH: if configured, the administrator can access the switch from the head node safely and securely with public key SSH, including passwordless SSH.

A Cumulus switch is added to the cluster manager as a regular switch object:

### Example

```
[basecm11]# device add switch myswitch
[basecm11->device*[myswitch*]]% # hasclientdaemon: set if CMDaemon Lite should run on switch
[basecm11->device*[myswitch*]]% set hasclientdaemon yes
```

```
[basecm11->device*[myswitch*]]% interfaces
[basecm11->device*[myswitch*]->interfaces]% add physical eth0
[basecm11->device*[myswitch*]->interfaces*[eth0*]]% set mac 12:34:56:78:90:AB
[basecm11->device*[myswitch*]->interfaces*[eth0*]]% set ip 1.2.3.4
[basecm11->device*[myswitch*]->interfaces*[eth0*]]% commit
[basecm11->device*[myswitch*]->interfaces*[eth0*]]% ...
[basecm11->device*[myswitch*]->interfaces*[eth0*]]% status
myswitch ..... [ DOWN ]
```

Cumulus access settings (described later on, starting from page 140) and ZTP settings (described later on, starting from page 145) must also be configured for the switch to work correctly.

Committing the Cumulus switch object configuration automatically configures the DHCP and the DNS services. The DHCP server is configured by CMDaemon to use the ZTP custom provisioning script. The ZTP provisioning script is created on-demand, along with a directory, from a default template (page 146) when the switch boots. The creation can alternatively be forced right away by running the initialize command.

### 3.10.1 Cumulus Switches Access Configuration, Initialization And Network Device Discovery

#### Cumulus Switches Access Configuration

By default, Cumulus switches use certificate-based authentication for CMDaemon access, just like regular nodes. DGX SuperPODS are configured in that manner.

However, CMDaemon Lite (section 2.6.7) is recommended instead of CMDaemon for Cumulus switches on most other clusters. If CMDaemon Lite is to run on the switch, then the hasclientdaemon parameter must be enabled for it:

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% device use mycumulus
[basecm11->device*[mycumulus*]]% set hasclientdaemon yes
[basecm11->device*[mycumulus*]]% commit
```

The cluster administrator must configure a username/password pair for SSH public key authentication with CMDaemon Lite.

- Since BCM version 11, Cumulus switch access via a username/password pair is configured in the accesssettings submode. Updates can be done using ZTP or NV.
- In earlier versions of BCM SNMP settings were used to set the username/password pair.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% add switch mycumulus
[basecm11->device*[mycumulus*]]% accesssettings
[basecm11->device*[mycumulus*]->accesssettings*]% set username cumulus; set password 1234
[basecm11->device*[mycumulus*]->accesssettings*]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Revision
Username          cumulus
Password          *****
Rest port          8765
Update in ztp      no
Update in NV       no
[basecm11->device*[mycumulus*]->accesssettings*]% commit
```

If all switches are Cumulus switches, then setting the username/password can be carried out at partition level with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->partition[base]]% accesssettings
[basecm11->partition[base]]->accesssettings% set username cumulus; set password 1234
[basecm11->partition*[base*]]->accesssettings*% commit
```

Compared with a regular node (section 6.2), a Cumulus switch has these differences when setting a username and password:

- The password change only takes effect on the switch after the switch reboots.
- If the `startup.yaml` file used by NV does not set the password, and `cm-lite-daemon` is not installed, then during reboot either
  - `Update in ztp` must be set to yes to allow the password change using ZTP or
  - `Update in NV` must be set to yes, to allow the password change using NV

The REST API port, with a default value of 8765, can also be modified from the `accesssettings` submode, to match the deployment specifications.

Other parameters for CMDaemon Lite integration are described in the section starting on page 142, **Custom Services Option 1: Cumulus With CMDaemon Lite**. Also covered in that section, on page 145, are the ZTP settings. ZTP settings are managed via the ZTP mode of `cmsh`, and are needed for the switch to pick up its ZTP provisioning script.

#### The Cumulus Custom Discovery Script (Deprecated)

This is a legacy script that comes with BCM, and is at `/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/cm-cumulus-switch.py`.

Setting the script and running the `initialize` command for the Cumulus switch in device mode initializes access settings and carries out network discovery for the Cumulus switch, in versions of BCM prior to version 10.

Since BCM version 10, the script is only needed for the Cumulus Linux version 4 series. Since Cumulus Linux version 5, and since BCM version 10, the script is no longer required, due to the integration of Cumulus with BCM.

A Cumulus switch running version 4 of Cumulus Linux can be set up and initialized on BCM version 10 with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device*[mycumulus*]]% set controlscript /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/cm-cumulus-switch.py
[basecm11->device*[mycumulus*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[mycumulus]]% initialize
```

#### 3.10.2 Custom Service Setups For Cumulus Linux

There are two custom service setups that are supported for cluster management on top of Cumulus Linux:

1. a setup that uses CMDaemon Lite (page 142, **Custom Services Option 1: Cumulus With CMDaemon Lite**)
2. a setup that uses YAML to configure the services (page 146, **Custom Services Option 2: Cumulus With A YAML Preconfiguration**).

These can actually be run together, if the services do not conflict with each other. For example, the nvued service can be installed via YAML, to provide the NVUE, independently of CMDaemon Lite. It is however useful to describe these custom service setups individually.

### Custom Services Option 1: Cumulus With CMDaemon Lite

If the Cumulus switch is defined and configured with CMDaemon Lite, then this allows some Cumulus features to be managed via BCM, as well as some of the standard features of BCM to work on the switch. The following features can be managed:

- monitoring (Chapter 10). For example, the latest data values (section 10.6.3) of the switch, including the bytes going through the many ports, can be seen with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[myswitch]]% latestmonitoringdata
Measurable      Parameter    Type     Value      Age       State     Info
-----          -----
AlertLevel      count        Internal  0          1m 5s
AlertLevel      maximum      Internal  0          1m 5s
AlertLevel      sum          Internal  0          1m 5s
BufferMemory    Memory       Memory    113 MiB   2m 5s
BytesRecv       eth0         Network   22.3917 B/s 2m 5s
BytesRecv       mgmt         Network   6.79167 B/s 2m 5s
BytesRecv       mirror        Network   0 B/s     2m 5s
BytesRecv       swid0_eth   Network   0 B/s     2m 5s
BytesRecv       swp1          Network   0 B/s     2m 5s
BytesRecv       swp2          Network   0 B/s     2m 5s
BytesRecv       swp3          Network   0 B/s     2m 5s
BytesRecv       swp4          Network   0 B/s     2m 5s
...
...
```

- system information can be viewed with the sysinfo command:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[myswitch]]% sysinfo
Name           Value
-----
BIOS Version   1.3
BIOS Vendor    American Megatrends Inc.
BIOS Date
Motherboard Manufacturer
Motherboard Name
System Manufacturer  NVIDIA
System Name      SN2201
Vendor Tag
Total Memory    8048771072 bytes (7.496GB)
Swap Memory     0 bytes (0B)
OS Name          Linux
OS Version      5.10.0-cl-1-amd64
OS Flavor        #1 SMP Debian 5.10.162-1+cl5.4.0u1 (2023-01-20)
Number of Physical CPUs 1
Number of Cores  2
Core 0-1         Intel(R) Atom(TM) CPU C3338R @ 1.80GHz
Number of Disks  1
```

```
Total Disk Space           115,923,419,136 bytes (115GB)
Disk /dev/nvme0n1p4        (19,320,569,856 bytes, 19.3GB) ()
SELinux                   no
FIPS                       no
Fabric                     no
Age                        21h 58m
ZTP/date                  Tue Apr 11 09:50:21 2023 UTC
ZTP/method                ZTP DHCP
ZTP/result                success
ZTP/state                 enabled
ZTP/url                  http://10.141.255.254:8080/switch/myswitch/cumulus-ztp.sh
ZTP/version               1.0
[basecm11->device[myswitch]]%
```

- systemd services can be added for the device via roles, and listed in the services submode (section 3.14). Management of services is a standard part of CMDaemon Lite since NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 10.23.06.
- configuration via cmsh: can be set up via either a YAML file, or manually, or automatically with some optional manual parts. The appropriate mode is set with nvconfigurationmode for the Cumulus device:

```
[basecm11->device[cumulus02]]% set nvconfigurationmode <tab><tab>
auto      file      manual
```

- auto: BCM settings such as for hostname or timezone for a Cumulus switch network configuration are converted automatically to run as nv commands. All the nv commands carried out on the switch via BCM, whether from an automatic conversion or not, can be viewed within nvconfiguration mode. The nv commands that have been automatically converted from BCM settings are assigned a type value of auto, and can be viewed within nvconfiguration mode:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[myswitch]->nvconfiguration]]% show
Type      #Index      Command
-----
auto      1          nv set system hostname myswitch
auto      2          nv set system timezone Europe/Amsterdam
auto      3          nv set service snmp-server enable on
auto      4          nv set service snmp-server listening-address all
auto      5          nv set service snmp-server listening-address all-v6
auto      6          nv set service snmp-server readonly-community public access any
auto      7          nv set service ntp mgmt pool 10.141.255.254
auto      8          nv set service dns mgmt server 10.141.255.254
auto      9          nv set service syslog mgmt server 10.141.255.254 port 514
auto     10          nv set service syslog mgmt server 10.141.255.254 protocol udp
auto     11          nv set bridge domain br_default type vlan-aware
[basecm11->device[myswitch]->nvconfiguration]]%
```

The settings are applied to the switch when the apply command is run within nvconfiguration mode.

- manual: If nvconfigurationmode is set to manual then the commands of type auto (as shown within the preceding example) are ignored. Direct nv commands can be entered by the administrator manually from within the manual NV Configuration mode.

Direct nv commands can actually also be added within auto mode for nvconfiguration, and are in that case also of type manual:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device [myswitch] ->nvconfiguration]% nv set interface swp27 ip address 10.141.255.123
[basecm11->device* [myswitch*] ->nvconfiguration*]%
Type #Index Command
-----
auto 1 nv set system hostname myswitch
...
auto 11 nv set bridge domain br_default type vlan-aware
manual 1 nv set interface swp27 ip address 10.141.255.123
```

The changes are applied when the apply command is run within nvconfiguration mode. Only commands of type manual can be removed from nvconfiguration mode. The removal can be carried out from within nvconfiguration mode with the help of the manual command and the nv del command:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device* [myswitch] ->nvconfiguration]%
..; get nvconfigurationmode; nvconfiguration
AUTO
[basecm11->device* [myswitch] ->nvconfiguration]%
show
...
auto 11 nv set bridge domain br_default type vlan-aware
manual 1 nv set interface swp27 ip address 10.141.255.123
manual 2 nv set system timezone Europe/Berlin
manual 3 nv set service snmp-server listening-address all-v6

[basecm11->device* [myswitch] ->nvconfiguration]%
manual #nvconfiguration mode changes to manual
#copies all types to be manual
[basecm11->device* [myswitch] ->nvconfiguration]%
..; get nvconfigurationmode; nvconfiguration
MANUAL
[basecm11->device* [myswitch] ->nvconfiguration]%
show
manual 1 nv set interface swp27 ip address 10.141.255.123
manual 2 nv set system timezone Europe/Berlin
manual 3 nv set service snmp-server listening-address all-v6
[basecm11->device* [myswitch] ->nvconfiguration]%
nv del 1-2
[basecm11->device* [myswitch] ->nvconfiguration]%
commit
[basecm11->device* [myswitch] ->nvconfiguration]%
apply #only now is switch updated
```

The manual command switches nvconfigurationmode to manual, and copies the stack of auto type commands over to the stack in manual mode. The commit command saves the configuration in the CMDaemon database. As usual, the configuration defined by the manual NV configuration mode is only applied to the switch after using the apply command.

The stack in the manual mode stack is then what is used on the switch instead of the auto mode stack, as per the CMDaemon state.

- file: If nvconfigurationmode is set to file, then a YAML file is used by BCM to carry out the commands. A sample YAML file that uses the currently running configuration of the switch can be displayed by running  
nv config show  
on the switch.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[myswitch]]% set nvconfigurationmode file
[basecm11->device*[myswitch*]]% set nvconfigurationfile startup.yaml
[basecm11->device*[myswitch*]]% commit
```

The apply command is not used for file mode, since the commands are carried out over ZTP.

- the ZTP configuration can be managed from ztpsettings mode:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[cumulus02]]% ztpsettings
[basecm11->device[cumulus02]->ztpsettings]%
Parameter          Value
-----
Revision
Script template      cumulus-ztp.sh
JSON template
Image                cumulus-linux-5.13.1-mlx-amd64.bin
Check image on boot   yes
Run ZTP on each boot yes
Install lite daemon   yes
Authorized key file root /root/.ssh/authorized_keys
Authorized key file cumulus
Authorized key file admin
Enable API           no
Enable external access API no
Merge key value settings partition no
Key value settings    <submode>
Firmwares
Preinstall scripts
Post-install scripts
PTM topology file
```

Notes about some of the ztpsettings:

- By default, authorizedkeyfileroot is not set, which means that user root cannot access the switch with public key authentication.
- By default, authorizedkeyfilecumulus is not set. The user cumulus is the API user with administrator privileges for the Cumulus switch.
- By default, authorizedkeyfileadmin is not set. The user admin is the API user with administrator privileges for the NVLink switch.
- Cumulus images for the switch, set by image, are provisioned from the head node. Cumulus images can be picked up from <https://enterprise-support.nvidia.com/s/downloads> and can then be placed on the head node at /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/switch/images/.
- The checkimageonboot setting checks that the existing image on the switch matches the image that can be offered via ZTP. If it does not, then the switch updates its image, picking it up via ZTP.
- The file specified by scripttemplate is used to generate a ZTP provisioning file on-demand when the switch boots. Running initialize from the switch object level (at cumulus02 level in the preceding example) generates the file without a reboot.
- The file specified by PTM topology file describes the cabling topology.

- The `switchoverview` command returns output such as:

```
[base]cm11->device[cumulus01]]% switchoverview
Device: cumulus01
State : [ UP ]
Model : Cumulus Linux 5.2.1
Port   Name    Status Assigned      Uplink Speed       Detected
----- -----
1      swp1   DOWN          no     0 b/s           bridge domains: cm-default
2      swp2   DOWN          no     0 b/s           bridge domains: cm-default
3      swp3   DOWN          no     0 b/s           bridge domains: cm-default
4      swp4   DOWN          no     0 b/s           bridge domains: cm-default
5      swp5   UP           node001-dpu no    100 Gb/s        bridge domains: cm-default
6      swp6   DOWN          no     0 b/s           bridge domains: cm-default
7      swp7   UP           node002-dpu no    100 Gb/s        bridge domains: cm-default
```

- The `switchports` command (page 136) is used to configure the port assignment between the nodes and the switch ports. Configuring the port assignment at `interfaces` level is needed to allow CMDaemon Lite to manage Cumulus network configuration.

### Example

```
[base]cm11->device[node002]]% interfaces node004
[base]cm11->device[node004]->interfaces]]% set DPU1 switchports cumulus01:4
```

### Custom Services Option 2: Cumulus With A YAML Preconfiguration

A YAML configuration can be used outside of `cmsh`. DGX SuperPODS use this option during the standard BCM installation. It means that CMDaemon Lite running on the switch (section 3.10.2) does not need to be used. Instead, two custom-generated YAML files are used.

The YAML files that are generated are:

- `startup.yaml`: this contains a sequence of Cumulus nv commands
- `cm-startup.yaml`: this contains the BCM DGX/switch definitions to be added by `pythoncm`

The `cm-startup.yaml` file is parsed, and the devices that are defined within it are configured with the PythonCM (Chapter 1 of the *Developer Manual*) script, `cm-import-startup`.

The devices are then powered on in the correct order.

The YAML file `startup.yaml` can be handled manually (using `scp` and the `nv apply` command), or by using ZTP, or by using Ansible.

### Settings Applied Via ZTP

The configuration script `cumulus-ztp.sh` template, found under `/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/switch/template`, can be customized to suit the requirements.

The YAML file `startup.yaml` is placed under:

```
/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/switch/<switch or host name>/
```

This allows it to be picked up automatically via ZTP, and the nv commands are applied to the switch on boot.

CMDaemon Lite is not required, but can be installed separately.

### Settings Applied Via Ansible

Alternatively, Ansible can be used to push the YAML configuration to each switch.

With an Ansible installation, ZTP is not required, but it can be used. CMDaemon Lite is not required for applying the settings via Ansible either, but can be installed separately.

### 3.10.3 Uplink Ports

Uplink ports are switch ports that are connected to other switches. CMDaemon must be told about any switch ports that are uplink ports, or the traffic passing through an uplink port will lead to mistakes in what CMDaemon knows about port and MAC correspondence. Uplink ports are thus ports that CMDaemon is told to ignore.

To inform CMDaemon about what ports are uplink ports, Base View or cmsh are used:

- In Base View, the switch is selected, and uplinks can be added via the navigation path Devices > Switches > Edit > Uplinks (figure 3.16):

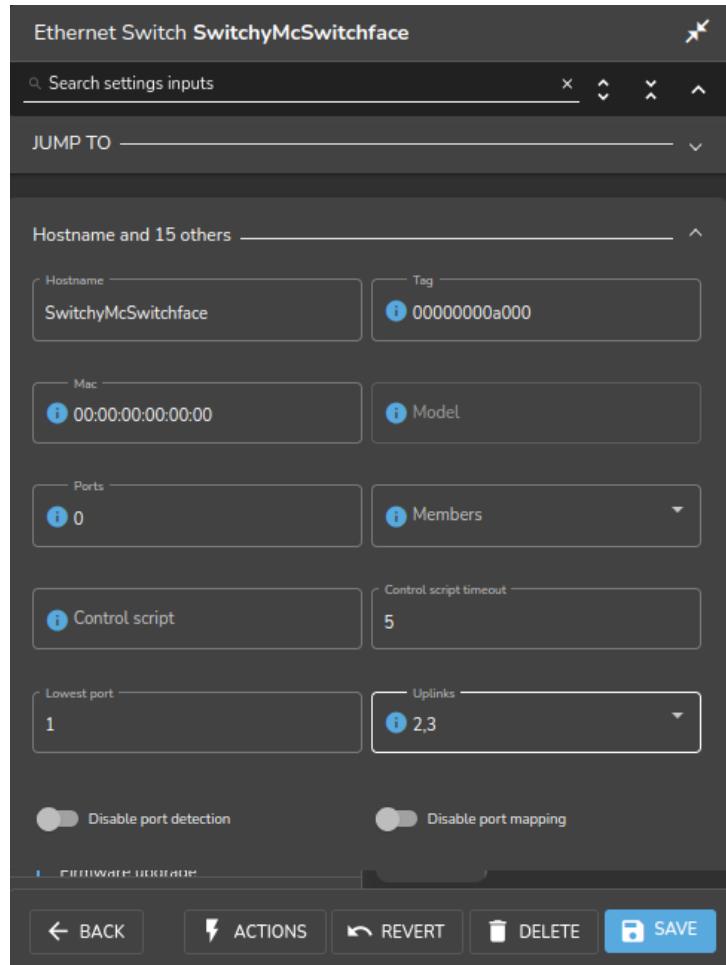


Figure 3.16: Notifying CMDaemon about uplinks with Base View

A dialog box then appears, and allows uplink port numbers to be added with a  $\oplus$  button. The state is saved with the SAVE button of figure 3.16.

- In cmsh, the switch is accessed from the device mode. The uplink port numbers can be appended one-by-one with the append command, or set in one go by using space-separated numbers.

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% set switch01 uplinks 15 16
```

```
[basecm11->device*] % set switch02 uplinks 01
[basecm11->device*] % commit
successfully committed 3 Devices
```

### 3.10.4 The showport MAC Address to Port Matching Tool

The showport command can be used in troubleshooting network topology issues, as well as checking and setting up new nodes (section 5.4.2).

#### Basic Use Of showport

In the device mode of cmsh is the showport command, which works out which ports on which switch are associated with a specified MAC address.

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% showport 00:30:48:30:73:92
switch01:12
```

When running showport, CMDaemon on the head node queries all switches until a match is found.

If a switch is also specified using the “-s” option, then the query is carried out for that switch first. Thus the preceding example can also be specified as:

```
[basecm11->device]% showport -s switch01 00:30:49.00:73:92
switch01:12
```

If there is no port number returned for the specified switch, then the scan continues on other switches.

#### Mapping All Port Connections In The Cluster With showport

A list indicating the port connections and switches for all connected devices that are up can be generated using this script:

#### Example

```
#!/bin/bash
for nodename in $(cmsh -c "device; foreach * (get hostname)")
do
  macad=$(cmsh -c "device use $nodename; get mac")
  echo -n "$macad $nodename "
  cmsh -c "device showport $macad"
done
```

The script may take a while to finish its run. It gives an output like:

#### Example

```
00:00:00:00:00:00 switch01: No ethernet switch found connected to this mac address
00:30:49.00:73:92 basecm11: switch01:12
00:26:6C:F2:AD:54 node001: switch01:1
00:00:00:00:00:00 node002: No ethernet switch found connected to this mac address
```

### 3.10.5 Disabling Port Detection

An administrator may wish to disable node identification based on port detection. For example, in the case of switches with buggy firmware, the administrator may feel more comfortable relying on MAC-based identification. Disabling port detection can be carried out by clearing the switchports setting of a node, a category, or a group. For example, in cmsh, for a node:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% clear switchports
[basecm11->device*[node001*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[node001]]%
```

Or, for example for the default category, with the help of the foreach command:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]]% foreach -c default (clear switchports); commit
```

**3.10.6 The switchoverview Command**

Also within device mode, the switchoverview command gives an overview of MAC addresses detected on the ports, and some related properties. The command works using SNMP queries. Output is similar to the following (some lines ellipsized):

```
[basecm11->device]]% switchoverview dell-switch1
Device: dell-switch1
State : [    UP    ]
Model : 24G Ethernet Switch

Port Assignment:

Port   Status Assigned          Uplink Speed   Detected
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----
1      UP                 false  1 Gb/s   -
2      UP                 false  1 Gb/s   -
3      UP                 false  1 Gb/s   74:86:7A:AD:3F:2F, node3
4      UP                 false  1 Gb/s   74:86:7A:AD:43:E9, node4
...
11     UP                 false  1 Gb/s   74:86:7A:AD:44:D8, node11
12     UP                 false  1 Gb/s   74:86:7A:AD:6F:55, node12
...
23     UP                 false  1 Gb/s   74:86:7A:E9:3E:85, node23
24     UP                 false  1 Gb/s   74:86:7A:AD:56:DF, node24
49     UP                 false  10 Gb/s  74:86:7A:AD:68:FD, node1
50     UP                 false  10 Gb/s  74:86:7A:AD:41:A0, node2
53     UP     node34        false  1 Gb/s   5C:F9:DD:F5:79:0D, node34
54     UP     node35        false  1 Gb/s   5C:F9:DD:F5:45:AC, node35
...
179    UP                 false  1 Gb/s   24:B6:FD:F6:20:6F, \
24:B6:FD:FA:64:2F, 74:86:7A:DF:7E:4C, 90:B1:1C:3F:3D:A9, \
90:B1:1C:3F:51:D1, D0:67:E5:B7:64:0F, D0:67:E5:B7:61:20
180    UP                 false  100 Mb/s QDR-switch
205    UP                 true   10 Gb/s  -
206    DOWN                false  10 Gb/s  -

[basecm11 ->device]]%
```

### 3.11 Configuring NetQ Network Management System

NetQ telemetry data values are produced by NetQ. A running NetQ server can be integrated with BCM by configuring its credentials and connectivity settings in the `netqsettings` submode from within the partition mode of BCM:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->partition[base]]% netqsettings
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->netqsettings*]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Revision
Server
User name
Password          < not set >
Port              443
Verify SSL        no
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->netqsettings*]% set username <NetQ username>
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->netqsettings*]% set password <NetQ password>
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->netqsettings*]% set server <NetQ hostname or IP address>
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->netqsettings*]% commit
```

Connecting to the NetQ server allows NetQ telemetry data values to be picked up by BCM. These values are then treated as measurables (section 10.2.1). NetQ measurables (sections G.1.13 and G.2.4) can be managed and displayed with BCM just like other measurables.

### 3.12 Disk Layouts: Disked, Semi-Diskless, And Diskless Node Configuration

Configuring the disk layout for head and regular nodes is done as part of the initial setup (section 3.3.16 of the *Installation Manual*). For regular nodes, the disk layout can also be re-configured by BCM once the cluster is running. For a head node, however, the disk layout cannot be re-configured after installation by BCM, and head node disk layout reconfiguration must then therefore be treated as a regular Linux system administration task, typically involving backups and resizing partitions.

The remaining parts of this section on disk layouts therefore concern regular nodes, not head nodes.

#### 3.12.1 Disk Layouts

A disk layout is specified using an XML schema (Appendix D.1). The disk layout typically specifies the devices to be used, its partitioning scheme, and mount points. Possible disk layouts include the following:

- Default layout (Appendix D.3)
- Hardware RAID setup (Appendix D.4)
- Software RAID setup (Appendix D.5)
- LVM setup (Appendix D.7)
- Diskless setup (Appendix D.9)
- Semi-diskless setup (Appendix D.10)

#### 3.12.2 Disk Layout Assertions

Disk layouts can be set to *assert*

- that particular hardware be used, using XML element tags such as `vendor` or `requiredSize` (Appendix D.11)

- custom assertions using an XML `assert` element tag to run scripts placed in CDATA sections (Appendix D.12)

### 3.12.3 Changing Disk Layouts

A disk layout applied to a category of nodes is inherited by default by the nodes in that category. A disk layout that is then applied to an individual node within that category overrides the category setting. This is an example of the standard behavior for categories, as mentioned in section 2.1.3.

By default, the cluster is configured with a standard layout specified in section D.3. The layouts can be accessed from Base View or cmsh, as is illustrated by the example in section 3.12.4, which covers changing a node from disked to diskless mode:

### 3.12.4 Changing A Disk Layout From Disked To Diskless

The XML schema for a node configured for diskless operation is shown in Appendix D.9. This can often be deployed as is, or it can be modified during deployment using Base View or cmsh as follows:

#### Changing A Disk Layout Using Base View

To change a disk layout with Base View, the current disk layout is accessed by selecting a node category or a specific node from the resource tree in the navigation panel. For a node, the navigation path is

Devices > Nodes > Edit > Settings > Installing > Disk setup

(figure 3.17):

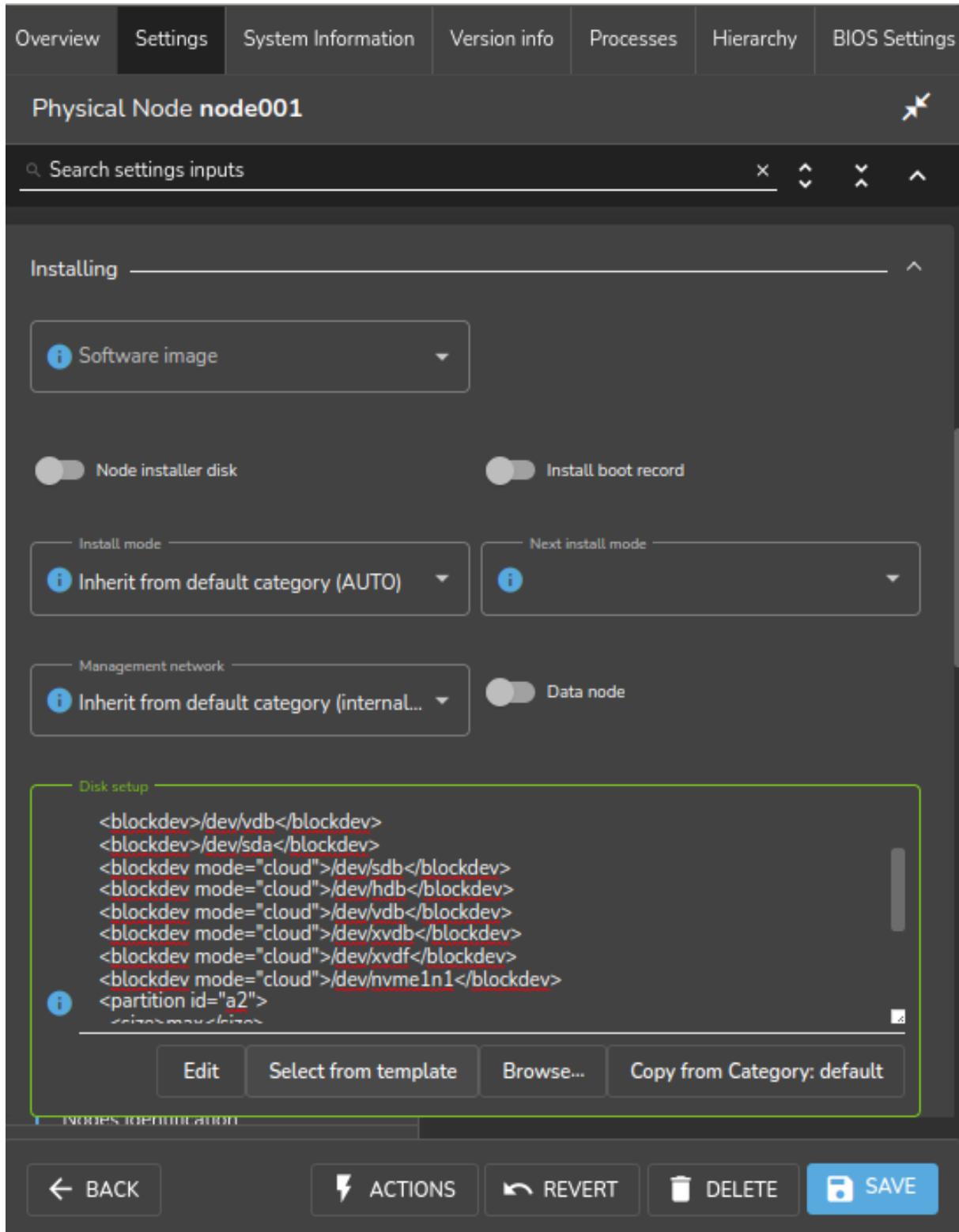


Figure 3.17: Changing a disked node to a diskless node with Base View

The `Disk setup` field can then be edited.

Clicking on the `Select from template` button shows several possible ready-made configurations that can be loaded up from the CMDB daemon database, and if desired, the copy stored for the node can

be edited to suit the situation.

To switch from the existing disk layout to a diskless one, the diskless XML configuration template is loaded via the **Select from template** button, and saved to the node or node category.

The **Browse** button can be used to upload a custom configuration via the browser, and there is also a **Copy from Category:default** button that can be used to copy the category configuration to the node.

### Changing A Disk Layout Using cmsh

To edit an existing disk layout from within cmsh, the existing XML configuration is accessed by editing the `disksetup` property in device mode for a particular node, or by editing the `disksetup` property in category mode for a particular category. Editing is done using the `set` command, which opens up a text editor:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh  
[basecm11]% device use node001  
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set disksetup
```

After editing and saving the XML configuration, the change is then committed to CMDaemon with the `commit` command. It should be understood that a disk layout XML configuration is not stored in a file on the filesystem, but in the CMDaemon database. The XML configurations that exist on a default cluster at

`/cm/images/default-image/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/disk-setup/`

and

`/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/disk-setup/`

are merely default configurations.

If the `disksetup` setting for a device is deleted, using the `clear` command, then the category level `disksetup` property is used by the device. This is in accordance with the usual behavior for node values that override category values (section 2.1.5).

Instead of editing an existing disk layout, another XML configuration can also be assigned. A diskless configuration may be chosen and set as follows:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set disksetup /cm/local/apps/cmd/\  
etc/htdocs/disk-setup/slave-diskless.xml
```

In these preceding Base View and cmsh examples, after committing the change and rebooting the node, the node then functions entirely from its RAM, without using its own disk.

However, RAM is usually a scarce resource, so administrators often wish to optimize diskless nodes by freeing up the RAM on them from the OS that is using the RAM. Freeing up RAM can be accomplished by providing parts of the filesystem on the diskless node via NFS from the head node. That is, mounting the regular node with filesystems exported via NFS from the head node. The details of how to do this are a part of section 3.13, which covers the configuration of NFS exports and mounts in general.

## 3.13 Configuring NFS Volume Exports And Mounts

NFS allows NFS clients shared access to a filesystem on an NFS server. The accessed filesystem is called an NFS volume by remote machines. The NFS server exports the filesystem to selected hosts or networks, and the clients can then mount the exported volume locally.

An unformatted filesystem cannot be used. The drive must be partitioned beforehand with `fdisk` or similar partitioning tools, and its filesystem formatted with `mkfs` or similar before it can be exported.

In BCM, the head node is typically used to export an NFS volume to the regular nodes, and the regular nodes then mount the volume locally.

- NFS can be made to work at higher speeds with remote direct memory access (RDMA), by bypassing the CPU. If there is RDMA hardware present, and if the rdma-core package is installed, then the RDMA service works automatically in RHEL 8 and 9.

The settings that determine client module loading are set in the file /etc/rdma/modules/rdma.conf so that the service auto-loads by default.

- An alternative to NFS over RDMA for very fast file systems is the massively parallel and free (GPLv2) Lustre filesystem, running over InfiniBand.

### Automounting With NFS

If auto-mounting is used, then the configuration files for exporting should be set up on the NFS server, and the mount configurations set up on the software images. The service “autofs” or the equivalent can be set up using Base View via the “Services” option (section 3.14) on the head and regular nodes or node categories. With cmsh the procedure to configure auto-mounting on the head and regular nodes could be:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use basecm11
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% services
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]% add autofs
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->services*[autofs*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Autostart          no
Belongs to role   no
Monitored          no
Revision
Run if             ALWAYS
Service            autofs
Sickness check interval 60
Sickness check script
Sickness check script timeout 10
Timeout            -1
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->services*[autofs*]]% set autostart yes
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->services*[autofs*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services[autofs]]% category use default
[basecm11->category[default]]% services
[basecm11->category[default]->services]% add autofs
[basecm11->category*[default*]->services*[autofs*]]% set autostart yes
[basecm11->category*[default*]->services*[autofs*]]% commit
[basecm11->category[default]->services[autofs]]%
```

Filesystems imported to a regular node via an auto-mount operation must explicitly be excluded in excludelistupdate by the administrator, as explained in section 5.6.1, page 280.

### Dropping All Use Of NFS Version 3

At the time of writing, (August 2025), the default NFS protocol versions used in BCM are a mixture of version 3 and 4. This is because some aspects of NFS version 4 clients in BCM have not yet been extensively tested. Migrating the remaining version 3 parts over to version 4 is therefore still experimental. If, despite this, the cluster administrator would still like to migrate over to the use of only NFS version 4 clients, then it can be carried out as follows:

The following configuration files should be modified:

- `/etc/nfs.conf`: On all nodes, changing the default value of `vers3=y` by adding the line  
`vers3=n`
- `/etc/nfsmount.conf`: On the head node(s), changing the line `Nfsvers=3` (the BCM default) to  
`Nfsvers=4`
- `/cm/node-installer*/scripts/node-installer.conf`: On the head node(s), adding the line  
`disableNodeInstallerNFSCertificateStore = true`
- `/cm/node-installer*/scripts/initrd_linuxrc`: On the head node(s), modifying the `nolock` entries:

```
root@basecm11:~# grep nolock /cm/node-installer/scripts/initrd_linuxrc
# mount with nolock so we do not have to run portmapper+statd
mount -o nolock,ro $PXE_MASTER_IP:$nodeinstallerpath /installer_root
mount -vo nolock,ro $PXE_MASTER_IP:$nodeinstallerpath /installer_root
```

so that the `vers=4` option is explicitly specified:

```
root@basecm11:~# grep nolock /cm/node-installer/scripts/initrd_linuxrc
# mount with nolock so we do not have to run portmapper+statd
mount -o nolock,ro,vers=4 $PXE_MASTER_IP:$nodeinstallerpath /installer_root
mount -vo nolock,ro,vers=4 $PXE_MASTER_IP:$nodeinstallerpath /installer_root
```

The changes can be deployed by rebuilding the ramdisk:

### Example

```
root@basecm11:~# cmsh
[basecm11]% softwareimage foreach * (createramdisk)
```

and then rebooting the head and regular nodes.

The rest of this section describes the configuration of NFS for static mounts, using Base View or `cmsh`.

Sections 3.13.1 and 3.13.2 explain how exporting and mounting of filesystems is done in general by an administrator using Base View and `cmsh`, and considers some mounting behavior that the administrator should be aware of.

Section 3.13.3 discusses how filesystems in general on a diskless node can be replaced via mounts of NFS exports.

Section 3.13.4 discusses how OFED InfiniBand or iWarp drivers can be used to provide NFS over RDMA.

### 3.13.1 Exporting A Filesystem Using Base View And cmsh

#### Exporting A Filesystem Using Base View

As an example, if an NFS volume exists at “basecm11:/modeldata” it can be exported using Base View using the head node navigation path:

Devices > Head nodes[basecm11] > Settings [JUMP TO] > Filesystem exports

This shows the list of exports (figure 3.18):

FS Export list				
W..	NAME	PATH	INHERITED	
<input type="checkbox"/>	true	/cm/node-installer/certificates...	/cm/node-installer/certificates	 ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	false	/cm/node-installer@internalnet	/cm/node-installer	 ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	true	/cm/shared@internalnet	/cm/shared	 ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	true	/home@internalnet	/home	 ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	true	/var/spool/burn@internalnet	/var/spool/burn	 ▾

 BACK       + ADD

Figure 3.18: NFS exports from a head node viewed using Base View

Using the Add button, and selecting FSExport from the popup, a new entry (figure 3.19) can be configured with values as shown:

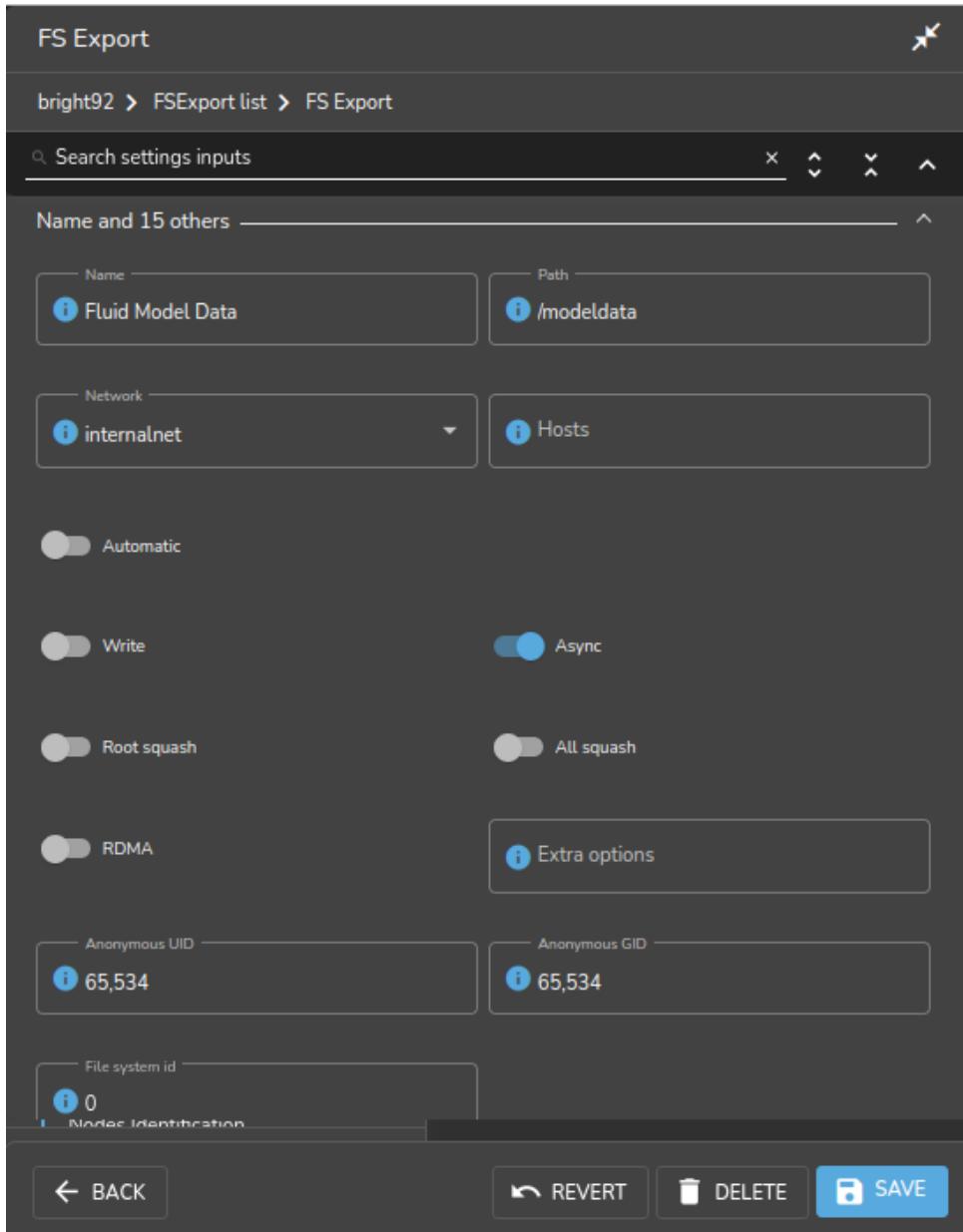


Figure 3.19: Setting up an NFS export using Base View

For this example, the value for "Name" is set arbitrarily to "Fluid Model Data", the value for Path is set to /modeldata, and the value for Network is set from the selection menu to allowing access to internalnet (by default 10.141.0.0/16 in CIDR notation).

By having the Write option disabled, read-only access is kept.

Saving this preceding configuration means the NFS server now provides NFS access to this filesystem for internalnet.

The network can be set to other network values using CIDR notation. It can also be set to particular hosts such as just node001 and node002, by specifying a value of "node001 node002" instead. Other settings and options are also possible and are given in detail in the man pages for exports(5).

#### Exporting A Filesystem Using cmsh

The equivalent to the preceding Base View NFS export procedure can be done in cmsh by using the fsexports submode on the head node (some output elided):

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use basecm11
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% fsexports
[...->fsexports]% add "Fluid Model Data"
[...->fsexports*[Fluid Model Data*]]% set path /modeldata
[... [Fluid Model Data*]]% set hosts 10.141.0.0/16
[... [Fluid Model Data*]]% commit
[...->fsexports[Fluid Model Data]]% list | grep Fluid
Name (key)      Path          Hosts        Write
-----
Fluid Model Data /modeldata  10.141.0.0/16  no
```

### General Considerations On Exporting A Filesystem

**Built-in exports:** In versions of NVIDIA Base Command Manager prior to version 9.0, all filesystem exports could be removed from the fsexports submode, simply by using the remove command with the name of the export.

From version 9.0 onward however, the following filesystem exports:

- /var/spool/burn
- /home
- /cm/shared

are treated as special built-ins.

**Head node role and disableautomaticexports:** Built-ins are exported automatically as part of the headnode role, also introduced in NVIDIA Base Command Manager 9.0, and cannot simply be removed.

To disable export of the built-in file systems, the disableautomaticexports command must be run in the headnode role for that node:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use basecm11
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% roles
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles]% use headnode
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[headnode]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name              headnode
Revision
Type              HeadNodeRole
Add services      yes
Disable automatic exports  no
Provisioning associations <2 internally used>
role use headnode
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[headnode]]% set disableautomaticexports yes ; commit
```

**Disabling exports that are not built-ins:** Exports that are not built-ins can still simply be removed. However, also from NVIDIA Base Command Manager 9.0 onward they can also simply be disabled in the fsexports submode. For example there is an export created by the cluster administrator for /opt, it can be disabled as follows:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->fsexports]# list
Name (key)      Path          Network     Disabled
-----  -----
opt            /opt          internalnet no
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->fsexports]# set opt disabled yes; commit
```

The reason for automating the export for nodes via a headnode role is that NVIDIA Base Command Manager 9.0 onward has multidistro and multiarch capabilities (section 9.7), which would make manual management of exports harder for such nodes. The reason for the extra hurdle of disableautomaticexports for built-ins is that that disabling these exports can result in an unbootable system.

### 3.13.2 Mounting A Filesystem Using Base View And `cmsh`

Continuing on with the Fluid Model Data export example from the preceding section, the administrator decides to mount the remote filesystem over the default category of nodes. Nodes can also mount the remote filesystem individually, but that is usually not a common requirement in a cluster. The administrator also decides not to re-use the exported name from the head node. That is, the remote mount name modeldata is not used locally, even though NFS allows this and many administrators prefer to do this. Instead, a local mount name of /modeldatagpu is used, perhaps because it avoids confusion about which filesystem is local to a person who is logged in, and perhaps to emphasize the volume is being mounted by nodes with GPUs.

#### Mounting A Filesystem Using Base View

In Base View the navigation path to manage the mount points of a category such as default is:

Grouping > Categories[default] > Edit > Settings [JUMP TO] > Filesystem mounts

A mount point can be added with the ADD button, and clicking on the popup FSMount. Values for the remote mount point (basecm11:/modeldata), the filesystem type (nfs), and the local mount point (/modeldatagpu) can then be set in category mode, while the remaining options stay at their default values (figure 3.20):

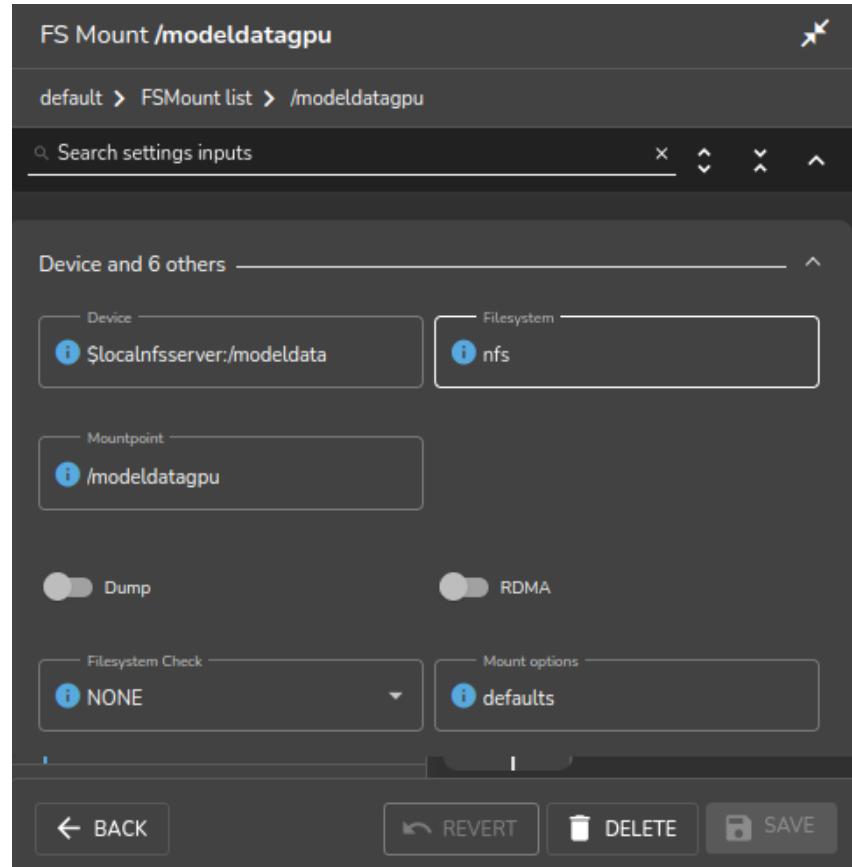


Figure 3.20: Setting up NFS mounts on a node category using Base View

Saving the configuration saves the values and creates the local mount point, so that the volume can then be accessed by nodes within that category.

### Mounting A Filesystem Using cmsh

The equivalent to the preceding Base View NFS mount procedure can be done in cmsh by using the fsmounts submode, for example on the default category. The add method under the fsmounts submode sets the mountpoint path, in this case /modeldatagpu (some output elided):

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% category use default
[basecm11->category[default]]% fsmounts
[basecm11->category[default]->fsmounts]% add /modeldatagpu
[basecm11->...*/[/modeldatagpu*]]% set device basecm11:/modeldata
[basecm11->...*/[/modeldatagpu*]]% set filesystem nfs
[basecm11->category*[default*]->fsmounts*/[/modeldatagpu*]]% commit
[basecm11->category[default]->fsmounts*/[/modeldatagpu*]]%
Device          Mountpoint (key)      Filesystem
-----
...
basecm11:/modeldata    /modeldatagpu        nfs
[basecm11->category[default]->fsmounts*/[/modeldatagpu*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Device            basecm11:/modeldata
```

```

Dump          no
Filesystem    nfs
Filesystem Check NONE
Mount options defaults
Mountpoint   /modeldatagpu

```

Values can be set for Mount options other than default. For example, the noac flag can be added as follows:

```
[basecm11->... [/modeldatagpu]]% set mountoptions defaults,noac; commit
```

Mounting a CIFS might use:

```
[basecm11->... [/modeldatagpu]]% set mountoptions gid,users,file_mode=0666,dir_mode=0777, \
iocharset=iso8859-15,credentials=/path/to/credential
[basecm11->... [/modeldatagpu*]]% commit
```

A \_netdev mount option to make systemd wait until the network is up before it is mounted can be added as follows:

```
[basecm11->... [/modeldatagpu]]% append mountoptions _netdev; commit
```

### General Considerations On Mounting A Filesystem

There may be a requirement to segregate the access of nodes. For example, in the case of the preceding, because some nodes have no associated GPUs.

Besides the “Allowed hosts” options of NFS exports mentioned earlier in section 3.13.1, BCM offers two more methods to fine tune node access to mount points:

- Nodes can be placed in another category that does not have the mount point.
- Nodes can have the mount point set, not by category, but per device within the Nodes resource. For this, the administrator must ensure that nodes that should have access have the mount point explicitly set.

Other considerations on mounting are that:

- When adding a mount point object:
  - The settings take effect right away by default on the nodes or node categories.
  - If noauto is set as a mount option, then the option only takes effect on explicitly mounting the filesystem.
  - If “AutomaticMountAll=0” is set as a CMDaemon directive (Appendix C), then CMDaemon changes for /etc/fstab are written to the file, but the mount -a command is not run by CMDaemon. However, the administrator should be aware that since mount -a is run by the distribution during booting, a node reboot implements the mount change.
- While a mount point object may have been removed, umount does not take place until reboot, to prevent mount changes outside of the cluster manager. If a umount needs to be done without a reboot, then it should be done manually, for example, using the pdsh or pexec command (section 14.1), to allow the administrator to take appropriate action if unmounting goes wrong.
- When manipulating mount points, the administrator should be aware which mount points are inherited by category, and which are set for the individual node.
  - In Base View, for a node, inheritance by category is indicated in the navigation path Devices > Nodes [node name] > Edit > Settings > Filesystem mounts, under the INHERITED column, with the entry (Category).

- In cmsh, the category a mount belongs to is displayed in brackets. This is displayed from within the fsmounts submode of the device mode for a specified node:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device; fsmounts node001; list"
```

Device	Mountpoint (key)	Filesystem
[default] none	/dev/pts	devpts
[default] none	/proc	proc
[default] none	/sys	sysfs
[default] none	/dev/shm	tmpfs
[default] \$localnfsserv+	/cm/shared	nfs
[default] basecm11:/home	/home	nfs
basecm11:/cm/shared/exat	/home/examples	nfs

[root@basecm11 ~]#

To remove a mount point defined at category level for a node, it must be removed from within the category, and not from the specific node.

### Mount Order Considerations

Care is sometimes needed in deciding the order in which mounts are carried out.

- For example, if both /usr/share/doc and a replacement directory subtree /usr/share/doc/compat-gcc-34-3.4.6java are to be used, then the stacking order should be that /usr/share/doc is mounted first. This order ensures that the replacement directory subtree overlays the first mount. If, instead, the replacement directory were the first mount, then it would be overlaid, inaccessible, and inactive.
- There may also be dependencies between the subtrees to consider, some of which may prevent the start up of applications and services until they are resolved. In some cases, resolution may be quite involved.

The order in which such mounts are mounted can be modified with the up and down commands within the fsmounts submode of cmsh.

### 3.13.3 Mounting A Filesystem Subtree For A Diskless Node Over NFS

#### NFS Vs tmpfs For Diskless Nodes

For diskless nodes (Appendix D.9), the software image (section 2.1.2) is typically installed from a provisioning node by the node-installer during the provisioning stage, and held as a filesystem in RAM on the diskless node with the tmpfs filesystem type.

It can be worthwhile to replace subtrees under the diskless node filesystem held in RAM with subtrees provided over NFS. This can be particularly worthwhile for less frequently accessed parts of the diskless node filesystem. This is because, although providing the files over NFS is much slower than accessing it from RAM, it has the benefit of freeing up RAM for tasks and jobs that run on diskless nodes, thereby increasing the cluster capacity.

An alternative “semi-diskless” way to free up RAM is to use a local disk on the node itself for supplying the subtrees. This is outlined in Appendix D.10.

#### Moving A Filesystem Subtree Out Of tmpfs To NFS

To carry out subtree provisioning over NFS, the subtrees are exported and mounted using the methods outlined in the previous examples in sections 3.13.1 and 3.13.2. For the diskless case, the exported filesystem subtree is thus a particular path under /cm/images/<image><sup>2</sup> on the provisioning node, and the subtree is mounted accordingly under / on the diskless node.

---

<sup>2</sup>by default <image> is default-image on a newly-installed cluster

While there are no restrictions placed on the paths that may be mounted in NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11, the administrator should be aware that mounting certain paths such as /bin is not possible.

When Base View or cmsh are used to manage the NFS export and mount of the subtree filesystem, then tmpfs on the diskless node is reduced in size due to the administrator explicitly excluding the subtree from tmpfs during provisioning.

An example might be to export /cm/images/default-image from the head node, and mount the directory available under it, /usr/share/doc, at a mount point /usr/share/doc on the diskless node. In cmsh, such an export can be done by creating an FS export object corresponding to the software image object defaultimage with the following indicated properties (some prompt output elided):

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use basecm11; fsexports
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->fsexports]% add defaultimage
[basecm11...defaultimage*]]% set path /cm/images/default-image
[basecm11...defaultimage*]]% set hosts 10.141.0.0/16
[basecm11...defaultimage*]]% commit
[basecm11...defaultimage]]% list | grep defaultimage
Name (key)          Path                  Hosts      Write
-----  -----
defaultimage        /cm/images/default-image 10.141.0.0/16  no
```

As the output to list shows, the NFS export should be kept read-only, which is the default. Appropriate parts of the export can then be mounted by a node or node category. The mount is defined by setting the mount point, the nfs filesystem property, and the export device. For example, for a node category (some output elided):

```
[br...defaultimage]]% category use default
[basecm11->category[default]]% fsmounts
[basecm11->category[default]->fsmounts]]% add /usr/share/doc
[basecm11->...*[/usr/share/doc*]]% set device basecm11:/cm/images/default-image/usr/share/doc
[basecm11->...*[/usr/share/doc*]]% set filesystem nfs
[basecm11->category*[default*]->fsmounts*[/usr/share/doc*]]% commit
[basecm11->category[default]->fsmounts[/usr/share/doc]]% list
Device                Mountpoint (key)    Filesystem
-----  -----
...
basecm11:/cm/images/usr/share/doc /usr/share/doc      nfs
[basecm11->category[default]->fsmounts[/usr/share/doc]]% show
Parameter            Value
-----
Device              basecm11:/cm/images/default-image/usr/share/doc
Dump                no
Filesystem          nfs
Filesystem Check   0
Mount options       defaults
Mountpoint         /usr/share/doc
```

Other mount points can be also be added according to the judgment of the system administrator. Some consideration of mount order may be needed, as discussed on page 162 under the subheading "Mount Order Considerations".

### An Example Of Several NFS Subtree Mounts

The following mounts save about 440MB from tmpfs on a diskless node with Rocky Linux 8, as can be worked out from the following subtree sizes:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cd /cm/images/default-image/
[root@basecm11 default-image]# du -sh usr/share/locale usr/lib/jvm usr/share/doc usr/src
160M    usr/share/locale
118M    usr/lib/jvm
88M     usr/share/doc
77M     usr/src
```

The filesystem mounts can then be created using the techniques in this section. After doing that, the result is then something like (some lines omitted):

```
[root@basecm11 default-image]# cmsh
[basecm11]# category use default; fsmounts
[basecm11->category[default]->fsmounts]# list -f device:53,mountpoint:17
device                                mountpoint (key)
-----
...
master:/cm/shared                      /cm/shared
master:/home                            /home
basecm11:/cm/images/default-image/usr/share/locale /usr/share/locale
basecm11:/cm/images/default-image/usr/lib/jvm   /usr/lib/jvm
basecm11:/cm/images/default-image/usr/share/doc /usr/share/doc
basecm11:/cm/images/default-image/usr/src      /usr/src
[basecm11->category[default]->fsmounts]%
```

Diskless nodes that have NFS subtree configuration carried out on them can be rebooted to start them up with the new configuration.

### 3.13.4 Configuring NFS Volume Exports And Mounts Over RDMA With OFED Drivers

If running NFS over RDMA, then at least NFS version 4.0 is recommended. NFS version 3 will also work with RDMA, but uses IPoIB encapsulation instead of native verbs. NFS version 4.1 uses the RDMA Connection Manager (`librdmacm`), instead of the InfiniBand Connection Manager (`ib_cm`) and is thereby also able to provide pNFS.

The administrator can set the version of NFS used by the cluster by setting the value of `Nfsvers` in the file `/etc/nfsmount.conf` on the head node(s).

#### Drivers To Use For NFS Over RDMA

The DOCA Mellanox OFED drivers (chapter 10 of the *Installation Manual*) can support using the RDMA protocol (section 3.6) to provide NFS.

The distribution OFED drivers also support NFS over RDMA.

When using NFS over RDMA, `ibnet`, the IP network used for InfiniBand, should be set. Section 3.6.3 explains how that can be done.

#### Exporting With Base View And cmsh Using NFS Over RDMA

With the drivers installed, a volume export can be carried out using NFS over RDMA.

The procedure using Base View is much the same as done in section 3.13.1 (“Exporting A Filesystem Using Base View”), except for that the `ibnet` network should be selected instead of the default `internalnet`, and the “RDMA” option should be enabled.

The procedure using `cmsh` is much the same as done in section 3.13.1 (“Exporting A Filesystem Using `cmsh`”), except that the `ibnet` network (normally with a recommended value of `10.149.0.0/16`) should be set, and the `rdma` option should be set.

#### Example

(based on the example in section 3.13.1)

```
...
[...->fsexports*[Fluid Model Data*]]% set path /modeldata
[... [Fluid Model Data*]]% set hosts ibnet
[... [Fluid Model Data*]]% set rdma yes
[... [Fluid Model Data*]]% commit
...
```

### Mounting With Base View And cmsh Using NFS Over RDMA

The mounting of the exported filesystems using NFS over RDMA can then be done.

The procedure using Base View is largely like that in section 3.13.2, (“Mounting A Filesystem Using Base View”), except that the Device entry must point to `master.ib.cluster` so that it resolves to the correct NFS server address for RDMA, and the checkbox for NFS over RDMA must be ticked.

The procedure using `cmsh` is similar to that in section 3.13.2, (“Mounting A Filesystem Using `cmsh`”), except that device must be mounted to the `ibnet`, and the `rdma` option must be set, as shown:

#### Example

(based on the example in section 3.13.2)

```
...
[basecm11->category[default]->fsmounts]% add /modeldatagpu
[basecm11->...*[/modeldatagpu*]]% set device basecm11.ib.cluster:/modeldata
[basecm11->...*[/modeldatagpu*]]% set filesystem nfs
[basecm11->...*[/modeldatagpu*]]% set rdma yes
[basecm11->category*[default*]->fsmounts*[/modeldatagpu*]]% commit
...
```

## 3.14 Managing And Configuring Services

### 3.14.1 Why Use The Cluster Manager For Services?

Linux administrators should be familiar with managing services from the command line using `systemctl`:

#### Example

```
systemctl start <service-name>.service
```

where `<service name>` indicates a service such as `mysqld`, `mariabd`, `nfs`, `postfix` and so on.

Services can also be managed with BCM. That is, they can also be started and stopped with Base View and `cmsh` tools.

An additional convenience that comes with the cluster manager tools is that some CMDaemon parameters useful for managing services in a cluster are very easily configured, whether on the head node, a regular node, or for a node category. These parameters are:

- `monitored`: checks periodically if a service is running. Information is displayed and logged the first time it starts or the first time it dies
- `autostart`: restarts a failed service that is being monitored.
  - If autostart is set to on, and a service is stopped using BCM, then no attempts are made to restart the service. Attempted autostarts become possible again only after BCM starts the service again.
  - If autostart is set to on, and if a service is removed using BCM, then the service is stopped before removal.
  - If autostart is off, then a service that has not been stopped by CMDaemon still undergoes an attempt to restart it, if

- \* CMDaemon is restarted
- \* its configuration files are updated by CMDaemon, for example in other modes, as in the example on page 98.
- runif: (only honored for nodes used as part of a high availability configuration (chapter 15)) whether the service should run with a state of:
  - active: run on the active node only
  - passive: run on the passive only
  - always: run both on the active and passive
  - preferpassive: preferentially run on the passive if it is available. Valid only for head nodes. Invalid for failover groups (section 15.5.3).

The details of a service configuration remain part of the configuration methods of the service software itself.

- Thus BCM can run actions on typical services only at the generic service level to which all the unix services conform. This means that CMDaemon can run actions such as starting and stopping the service. If the restarting action is available in the script, then CMDaemon can also run that.
- The operating system configuration of the service itself, including its persistence on reboot, remains under control of the operating system, and is not handled by CMDaemon. So, stopping a service within CMDaemon means that by default the service may start up on reboot. Running `systemctl disable <service name>.service` from the command line can be used to configure the service to no longer start up on reboot.

BCM can be used to keep a service working across a failover event with an appropriate runif setting and appropriate failover scripts such as the Prefailover script and the Postfailover script (section 15.4.6). The details of how to do this will depend on the service.

### 3.14.2 Managing And Configuring Services—Examples

If, for example, the CUPS software is installed (“`yum install cups`”), then the CUPS service can be managed in several ways:

#### Managing The Service From The Regular Shell, Outside Of CMDaemon

Standard unix commands from the bash prompt work, as shown by this session:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# systemctl enable cups.service
... symlinks created...
[root@basecm11 ~]# systemctl start cups
```

#### Managing The Service From cmsh

**Starting the service in cmsh:** The following session illustrates adding the CUPS service from within device mode and the services submode. The device in this case is a regular node, node001, but a head node can also be chosen. Monitoring and auto-starting are also set in the session (some lines elided):

```
[basecm11]% device services node001
[basecm11->device[node001]->services]% add cups
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->services*[cups*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Autostart          no
Belongs to role   no
Monitored         no
```

```

...
Run if           ALWAYS
Service          cups
...
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->services*[cups*]]% set monitored on
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->services*[cups*]]% set autostart on
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->services*[cups*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->services[cups]]%
Apr 14 14:02:16 2017 [notice] node001: Service cups was started
[basecm11->device[node001]->services[cups]]%

```

**Other service options in cmsh:** Within cmsh, the start, stop, restart, and reload options to the service *<service name> start|stop|restart|...*

command can be used to manage the service at the services submode level. For example, continuing with the preceding session, stopping the CUPS service can be done by running the cups service command with the stop option as follows:

```

[basecm11->device[node001]->services[cups]]% stop
Fri Apr 14 14:03:40 2017 [notice] node001: Service cups was stopped
Successfully stopped service cups on: node001
[basecm11->device[node001]->services[cups]]%

```

The service is then in a STOPPED state according to the status command.

```

[basecm11->device[node001]->services[cups]]% status
cups          [STOPPED]

```

Details on how a state is used when monitoring a service are given in the section “Monitoring A Service With cmsh And Base View” on page 170.

Continuing from the preceding session, the CUPS service can also be added for a node category from category mode:

```

[basecm11->device[node001]->services[cups]]% category
[basecm11->category]% services default
[basecm11->category[default]->services]% add cups

```

As before, after adding the service, the monitoring and autostart parameters can be set for the service. Also as before, the options to the service *<service name> start|stop|restart|...* command can be used to manage the service at the services submode level. The settings apply to the entire node category (some lines elided):

### Example

```

[basecm11->category*[default*]->services*[cups*]]% show
...
[basecm11->category*[default*]->services*[cups*]]% set autostart yes
[basecm11->category*[default*]->services*[cups*]]% set monitored yes
[basecm11->category*[default*]->services*[cups*]]% commit
[basecm11->category[default]->services[cups]]%
Fri Apr 14 14:06:27 2017 [notice] node002: Service cups was started
Fri Apr 14 14:06:27 2017 [notice] node005: Service cups was started
Fri Apr 14 14:06:27 2017 [notice] node004: Service cups was started
Fri Apr 14 14:06:27 2017 [notice] node003: Service cups was started
[basecm11->category[default]->services[cups]]% status
node001..... cups      [STOPPED ]
node002..... cups      [   UP   ]
node003..... cups      [   UP   ]
node004..... cups      [   UP   ]
node005..... cups      [   UP   ]

```

### Managing The Service From Base View

Using Base View, a service can be managed from an `OSServiceConfig` list window, accessible via the Services button from the JUMP TO section of the Settings. The window is accessible for

- Head Nodes, for example via a navigation path of  
Devices > Head Nodes[basecm11] > Settings > Services
- Nodes, for example via a navigation path of  
Devices > Nodes[node001] > Settings > Services  
(figure 3.21):

OS Service Config list					
node001 > OSServiceConfig list					
SERVICE	MONITOR...	AUTOSTART	INHERITED	STATUS	ACTIONS
containerd	true	true		UP	
kube-apiserver	true	true		UP	
kube-controller-m...	true	true		UP	
kube-proxy	true	true		UP	
kube-scheduler	true	true		UP	
kubelet	true	true		UP	
munge	true	true		UP	
nginx	true	true		UP	
slurmd	true	true		UP	
sssd	true	true		UP	

Figure 3.21: Operating system service configuration list window for nodes in Base View

- Node categories, for example via a navigation path of  
Grouping > Node categories[default] > Settings > Services

By default, with the default software image, there are no services set at category level for nodes (figure 3.22):

OS Service Config list					
default > OSServiceConfig list					
SERVICE	MONITORED	AUTOSTART	INHERITED	STATUS	ACTIONS

Figure 3.22: Operating system service configuration list window for the default category in Base View

The Service `<service name> start|stop|restart...` command options `start`, `stop`, `restart`, and so on, are displayed as selection options to an `OSService` popup that appears when the ACTIONS button is clicked (figure 3.23):

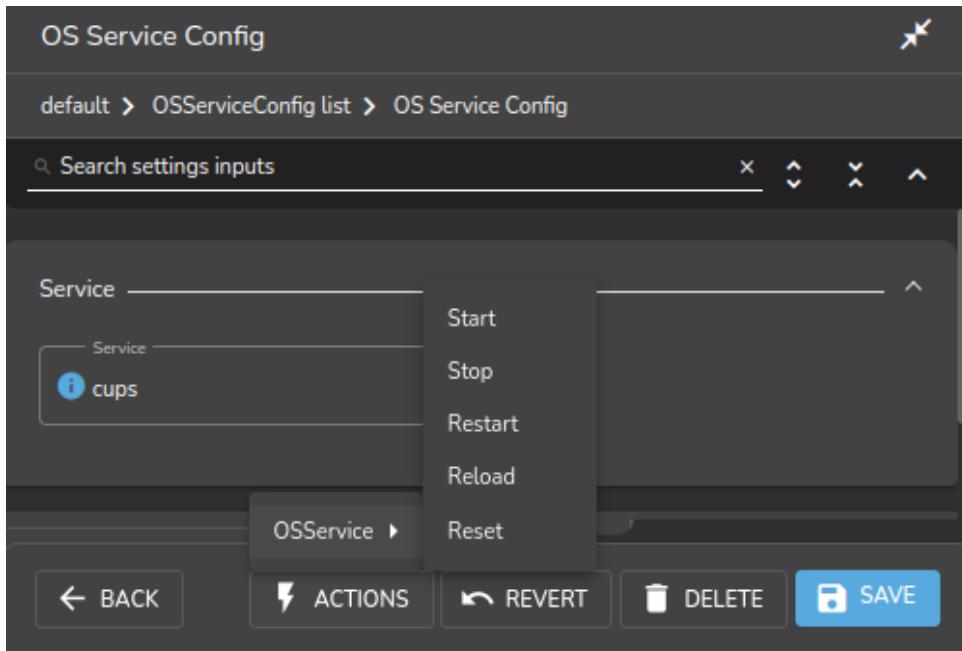


Figure 3.23: Operating system service actions in Base View

A service can be added with the ADD button, and clicking on the OSServiceConfig popup. The fields of the service can then be edited. The REVERT button reverts unsaved changes, while the DELETE button removes the saved changes.

Figure 3.24 shows CUPS being set up from an Add dialog in the services window. The window is accessible via the ADD button of figure 3.22.

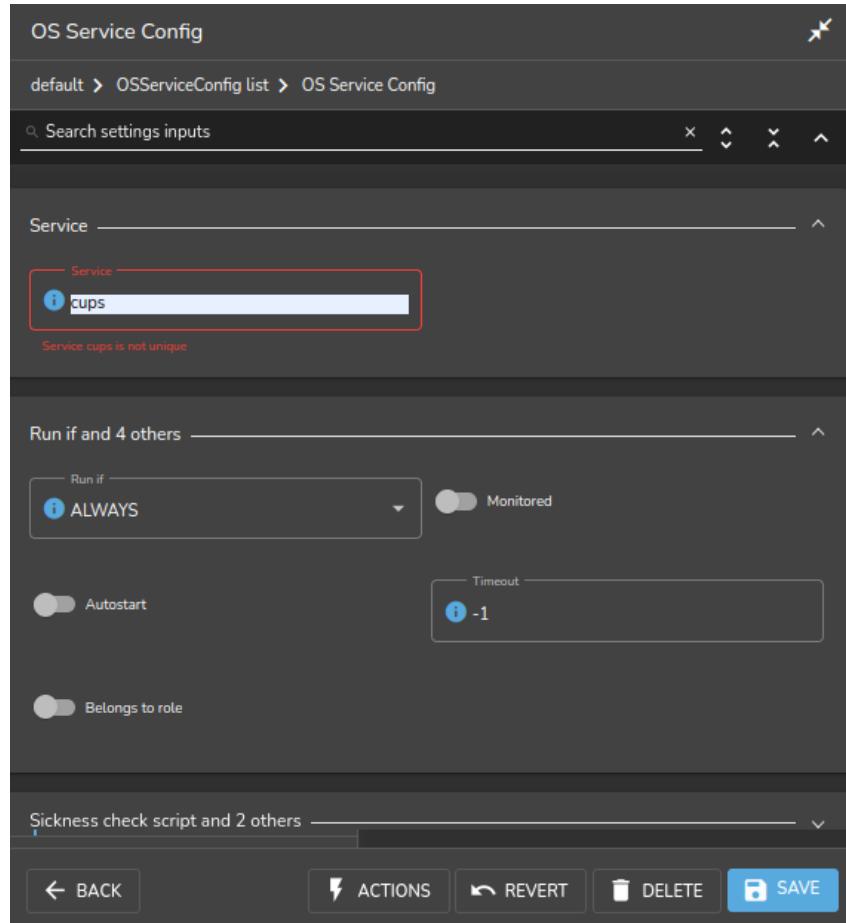


Figure 3.24: Setting up a service using Base View

For a service in the services subwindow, clicking on the Status button in figure 3.22 displays a grid of the state of services on a running node as either Up or Down.

#### Monitoring A Service With cmsh And Base View

The service is in a DOWN state if it is not running, and in a FAILING state if it is unable to run after 10 auto-starts in a row. Event messages are sent during these first 10 auto-starts. After the first 10 auto-starts, no more event messages are sent, but autostart attempts continue.

In case an autostart attempt has not yet restarted the service, the reset option may be used to attempt an immediate restart. The reset option is not a service option in the regular shell, but is used by CMDaemon (within cmsh and Base View) to clear a FAILING state of a service, reset the attempted auto-starts count to zero, and attempt a restart of the service.

The monitoring system sets the ManagedServices0k health check (Appendix G.2.1) to a state of FAIL if any of the services it monitors is in the FAILING state. In cmsh, the statuses of the services are listed by running the latesthealthdata command (section 10.6.3) from device mode.

Standard init.d script behavior is that the script return a non-zero exit code if the service is down, and a zero exit code if the service is up. A non-zero exit code makes BCM decide that the service is down, and should be restarted.

However, some scripts return a non-zero exit code even if the service is up. These services therefore have BCM attempt to start them repetitively, even though they are actually running.

This behavior is normally best fixed by setting a zero exit code for when the service is up, and a non-zero exit code for when the service is down.

### Removing A Service From CMDaemon Control Without Shutting It Down

Removing a service from BCM control while autostart is set to on stops the service on the nodes:

```
[basecm11->category[default]->services]% add cups
[basecm11->category*[default*]->services*[cups*]]% set monitored on
[basecm11->category*[default*]->services*[cups*]]% set autostart on
[basecm11->category*[default*]->services*[cups*]]% commit; exit
[basecm11->category[default]->services]% remove cups; commit
Wed May 23 12:53:58 2012 [notice] node001: Service cups was stopped
```

In the preceding cmsh session, cups starts up when the autostart parameter is committed, if cups is not already up.

The behavior of having the service stop on removal is implemented because it is usually what is wanted.

However, sometimes the administrator would like to remove the service from CMDaemon control without it shutting down. To do this, autostart must be set to off first.

```
[basecm11->category[default]->services]% add cups
[basecm11->category*[default*]->services*[cups*]]% set monitored on
[basecm11->category*[default*]->services*[cups*]]% set autostart off
[basecm11->category*[default*]->services*[cups*]]% commit; exit
Wed May 23 12:54:40 2012 [notice] node001: Service cups was started
[basecm11->category[default]->services]% remove cups; commit
[basecm11->category[default]->services]% !# no change: cups stays up
```

## 3.15 Managing And Configuring A Rack

### 3.15.1 Racks

A cluster may have local nodes grouped physically into racks. A rack is 42 units in height by default, and nodes normally take up one unit.

#### Rack List

**Rack list in Base View:** The Rack list pane can be opened up in Base View via the navigation path Datacenter Infrastructure > Racks (figure 3.25):

X-COORDINATE	Y-COORDINATE	HEIGHT	NAME	ROOM
0	0	42	1	

+ ADD

Figure 3.25: Rack list using Base View

Racks can then be added, removed, or edited from the pane.

Within the Rack list pane:

- a new rack item can be added with the ADD button, and then clicking on the Rack popup. This opens a Settings tab in the rack item window pane where rack configuration can be carried out and saved (figure 3.26).
- an existing rack item can be edited with the Edit menu option, or by double-clicking on the item itself. This also opens up the Settings tab in the rack item window pane where rack configuration can be managed.

## Racks overviews in cmsh:

- The list command in rack mode in cmsh allows racks defined in the cluster manager to be listed:

```
[basecm11->rack]% list
Name (key) Room x-Coordinate y-Coordinate Height
-----
rack2 skonk works 2 0 42
racknroll 1 0 42
```

- The rackoverview command displays information about the types of entities in a specified rack. It also lists some more detailed information about some of the entity types:

### Example

```
[basecm11->rack]% rackoverview <TAB><TAB>
a01 a02 a03 a04 a05 a06 a07 a08 a09 a10 a11 a12 b01 b02 b03 b04...
[basecm11->rack]% rackoverview a05
Type Up Down Closed Total
-----
Nodes 18 0 0 18
DPU nodes 0 0 0 0
Managed switches 0 0 0 0
NVLink switches 0 9 0 9
Power shelves 8 0 0 8
Devices 0 0 0 0
Cores 2,592 - - 2,592
GPUs 72 - - 72

Name Value
-----
User CPU 0.03%
System CPU 0.07%
Idle CPU 99.9%
Other CPU 0.0%
Memory used 1.28 TiB (4.53%)
Memory unused 27.4 TiB (96.6%)
Memory total 28.3 TiB
Total GPU utilization 0 W
Total GPU power usage 10.9 KW
Total GPU NVlink bandwidth 0 W
Average GPU temperature 30.5588 C

Node GPU Utilization Temperature Power usage Memory used Memory free Fabric status
-----
a05-p1-dgx-01-c01 gpu0 0.0% 30 C 166.551 W 0 B 185 GiB success
a05-p1-dgx-01-c01 gpu1 0.0% 30 C 158.166 W 1.00 MiB 185 GiB success
...
Switch Utilization Temperature Power usage Fan speed Links active Links inactive
-----
a05-p1-nvsw-01 35.7% 0 C 0 W 0 RPM 0 0
a05-p1-nvsw-02 26.9% 0 C 0 W 0 RPM 0 0
...
```

Power shelf	Input power	Output power	Temperature	Fan speed	Active PSU	Total PSU
a05-p1-pwr-01	0 W	0 W	0 C	0 RPM	0	6
a05-p1-pwr-02	0 W	0 W	0 C	0 RPM	0	6
...						
[basecm11->rack]%						

- The display command in rack mode is useful for visualizing where devices are located in the rack, if the cluster administrator has recorded the device positions

### Example

```
[basecm11->rack]% display |less -R
...
          A05           B05

48          48
47          47
46          46
45          45
44          44
43          43
42  a05-p1-pwr-08    42  B05-P1-PWR-08
41  a05-p1-pwr-07    41  B05-P1-PWR-07
40  a05-p1-pwr-06    40  B05-P1-PWR-06
39  a05-p1-pwr-05    39  B05-P1-PWR-05
38          38
37  a05-p1-dgx-01-c18 37  b05-p1-dgx-05-c18
36  a05-p1-dgx-01-c17 36  b05-p1-dgx-05-c17
35  a05-p1-dgx-01-c16 35  b05-p1-dgx-05-c16
34  a05-p1-dgx-01-c15 34  b05-p1-dgx-05-c15
33  a05-p1-dgx-01-c14 33  b05-p1-dgx-05-c14
32  a05-p1-dgx-01-c13 32  b05-p1-dgx-05-c13
31  a05-p1-dgx-01-c12 31  b05-p1-dgx-05-c12
30  a05-p1-dgx-01-c11 30  b05-p1-dgx-05-c11
29  a05-p1-dgx-01-c10 29  b05-p1-dgx-05-c10
28  a05-p1-dgx-01-c09 28  b05-p1-dgx-05-c09
27  a05-p1-nvsw-09    27  B05-P1-NVSW-09
26  a05-p1-nvsw-08    26  B05-P1-NVSW-08
25  a05-p1-nvsw-07    25  B05-P1-NVSW-07
24  a05-p1-nvsw-06    24  B05-P1-NVSW-06
23  a05-p1-nvsw-05    23  B05-P1-NVSW-05
22  a05-p1-nvsw-04    22  B05-P1-NVSW-04
21  a05-p1-nvsw-03    21  B05-P1-NVSW-03
20  a05-p1-nvsw-02    20  B05-P1-NVSW-02
19  a05-p1-nvsw-01    19  B05-P1-NVSW-01
18  a05-p1-dgx-01-c08 18  b05-p1-dgx-05-c08
17  a05-p1-dgx-01-c07 17  b05-p1-dgx-05-c07
16  a05-p1-dgx-01-c06 16  b05-p1-dgx-05-c06
15  a05-p1-dgx-01-c05 15  b05-p1-dgx-05-c05
14  a05-p1-dgx-01-c04 14  b05-p1-dgx-05-c04
13  a05-p1-dgx-01-c03 13  b05-p1-dgx-05-c03
12  a05-p1-dgx-01-c02 12  b05-p1-dgx-05-c02
11  a05-p1-dgx-01-c01 11  b05-p1-dgx-05-c01
```

10	10
09	a05-p1-pwr-04
08	a05-p1-pwr-03
07	a05-p1-pwr-02
06	a05-p1-pwr-01
05	05
04	04
03	03
02	02
01	01

Other rack overview commands allow the electrical supply, liquid cooling, leak detection, and leak detection-related actions to be viewed at rack level (section 3.3 of the *NVIDIA Mission Control Manual*).

### Rack Configuration Settings

**Rack configuration settings in Base View:** A Settings tab for editing a rack item selected from the Rack list pane is shown in figure 3.26.

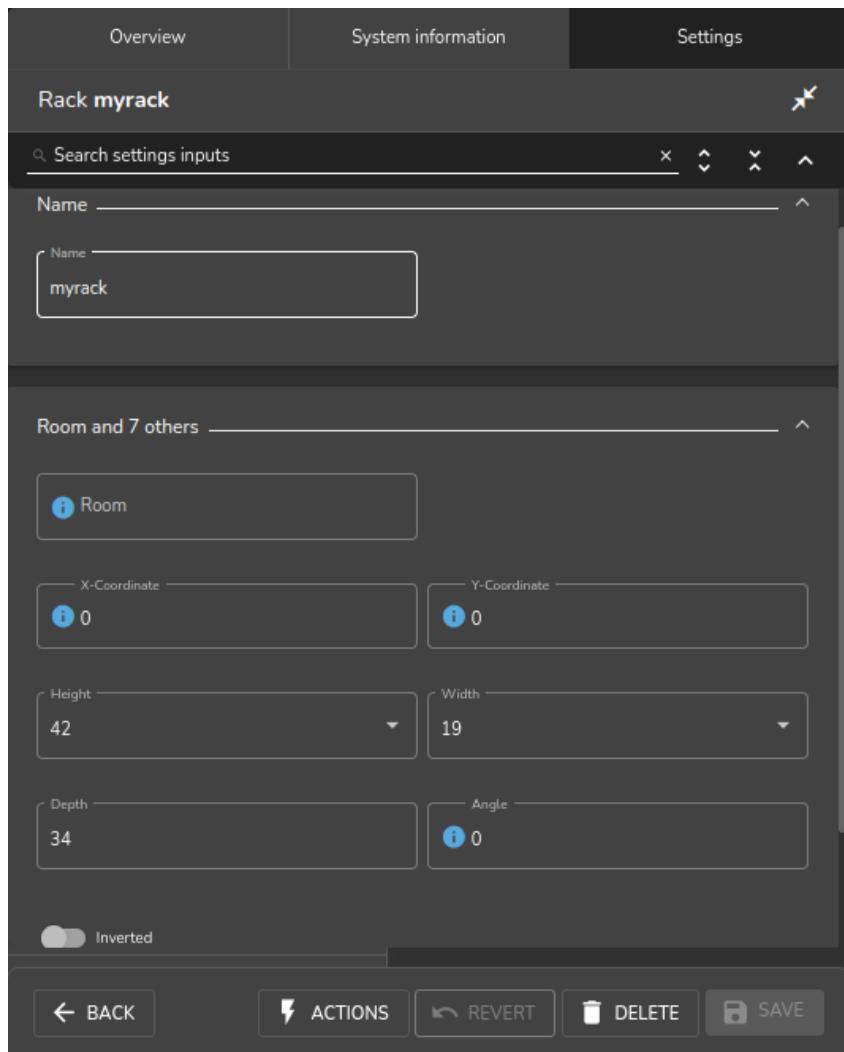


Figure 3.26: Rack configuration settings using Base View

Among the rack configuration attributes are:

- **Name:** A unique name for the rack item. Names such as `rack001`, `rack002` are a sensible choice.
- **Room:** A unique name for the room the rack is in.
- **Position:** The *x*- and *y*-coordinates of the rack in a room. These coordinates are meant to be a hint for the administrator about the positioning of the racks in the room, and as such are optional, and can be arbitrary numbers. The `Notes` field can be used as a supplement or as an alternative for hints.
- **Height:** by default this is the standard rack size of 42U.
- **Inverted:** Normally, a rack uses the number 1 to mark the top and 42 to mark the bottom position for the places that a device can be positioned in a rack. However, some manufacturers invert this and use 1 to mark the bottom instead. Enabling the `Inverted` setting records the numbering layout accordingly for all racks, if the inverted rack is the first rack seen in `Rackview`.

**Rack configuration settings in cmsh:** In `cmsh`, tab-completion suggestions for the `set` command in rack mode display the racks available for configuration. On selecting a particular rack (for example, `rack2` as in the following example), tab-completion suggestions then display the configuration settings available for that rack:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->rack]% set rack
rack1  rack2  rack3
[basecm11->rack]% set rack2
angle      inverted      notes      twin      y-coordinate
building   location      revision   type
depth      model        room       width
height     name         row        x-coordinate
```

The configuration settings for a particular rack obviously match with the parameters associated with and discussed in figure 3.26.

Setting the values can be done as in this example:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->rack]% use rack2
[basecm11->rack[rack2]]% set room "skonk works"
[basecm11->rack*[rack2*]]% set x-coordinate 2
[basecm11->rack*[rack2*]]% set y-coordinate 0
[basecm11->rack*[rack2*]]% set inverted no
[basecm11->rack*[rack2*]]% commit
[basecm11->rack[rack2]]%
```

### 3.15.2 Assigning Devices To A Rack

Devices such as nodes, switches, and chassis, can be assigned to racks.

By default, no such devices are assigned to a rack.

Devices can be assigned to a particular rack and to a particular position within the rack as follows:

#### Assigning Devices To A Rack Using Base View

Using Base View, a device such as a node `node001` can be assigned to a rack via the navigation path `Devices > Nodes[node001] > Settings > JUMP TO > Rack` (figure 3.27):

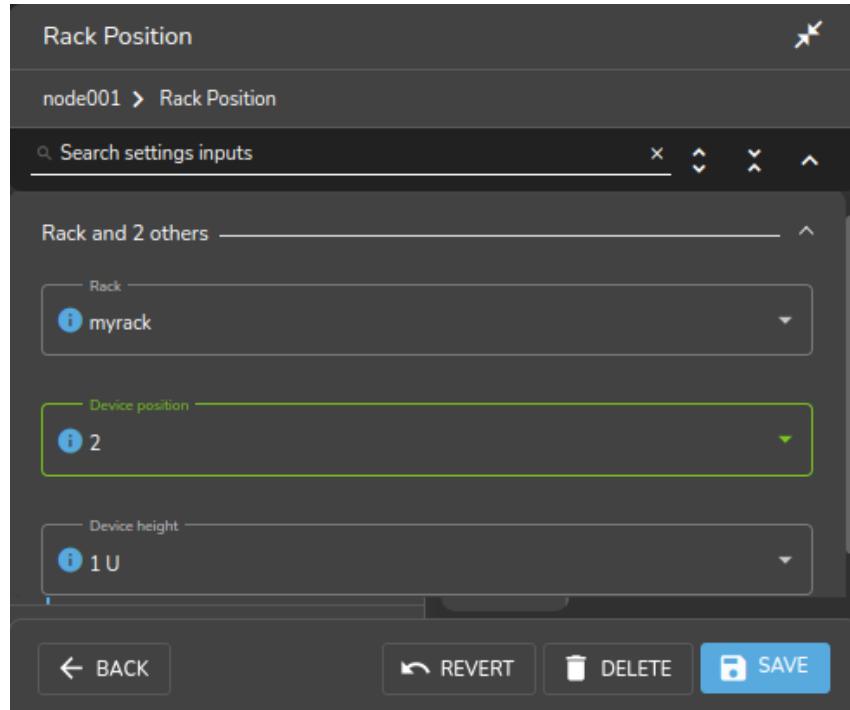


Figure 3.27: Rack assignment using Base View

### Assigning Devices To A Rack Using cmsh

- In device mode, nodes can be assigned to a position in a rack. For example:
  - node001 to position 1
  - node002 to position 2
  - node003 to position 3

A looping instruction to do this in a rack rack2 is:

```
root@basecm11:~# for i in 1..3 ; do cmsh -c "device use node00$i; get hostname; set rack rack2; \
get rack; set deviceposition $i; get deviceposition; commit"; done
```

- The `addrackposition` command fills devices into a rack object more implicitly. By default the command fills devices into the first free slots on the rack.

```
root@basecm11:~# cmsh-c "device; addrackposition -n node001..node010 --position 1 rack rack2
```

The first free `deviceposition` value that it uses can be set with the `--position` option. Forcing a device into the same position as another device is also possible, with the `--force` option.

More options can be found using the help text for the command.

```
[basecm11->device]% help addrackposition
Name:
    addrackposition - Add a rack position information to one or more nodes

...
Examples:
    addrackposition -n node001..node010 rack1
    addrackposition -n node001..node010 --height 2 --position 4 rack rack2
```

- The `rackposition` submode allows individual nodes to be managed directly:

```
[basecm11->device[node002]->rackposition] % show
Parameter          Value
-----
Rack                rack2
Revision
Device position     2
Device height       1
Tray ID
Tray name
```

### The Convention Of The Top Of The Device Being Its Position

Since rack manufacturers usually number their racks from top to bottom, the position of a device in a rack (using the parameter `Position` in Base View, and the parameter `deviceposition` in cmsh) is always taken to be where the top of the device is located. This is the convention followed even for the less usual case where the rack numbering is from bottom to top.

A position on a rack is 1U of space. Most devices have a height that fits in that 1U, so that the top of the device is located at the same position as the bottom of the device, and no confusion is possible. The administrator should however be aware that for any device that is greater than 1U in height such as, for example, a blade enclosure chassis (section 3.15.3), the convention means that it is the position of the top of the device that is where the device is considered to be. The position of the bottom of the device is ignored.

### 3.15.3 Assigning Devices To A Chassis

#### A Chassis As A Physical Part Of A Cluster

In a cluster, several local nodes may be grouped together physically into a chassis. This is common for clusters using blade systems. Clusters made up of blade systems use less space, less hardware, and less electrical power than non-blade clusters with the same computing power. In blade systems, the blades are the nodes, and the chassis is the blade enclosure.

A blade enclosure chassis is typically 6 to 10U in size, and the node density for server blades is typically 2 blades per unit with 2014 technology.

#### Chassis Configuration And Node Assignment

**Chassis list in Base View:** The Chassis list pane can be opened up in Base View via the navigation path

Datacenter Infrastructure > Chassis

or

Devices > Chassis

A chassis can then be added, removed, or edited from the pane.

Within the Chassis list pane:

- a new chassis item can be added with the ADD button, and then clicking on the Chassis popup. This opens a Chassis pane where chassis configuration can be carried out and saved (figure 3.28).
- an existing chassis item can be edited with the Edit menu option, or by double-clicking on the item itself. This also opens up the Chassis pane for chassis configuration.

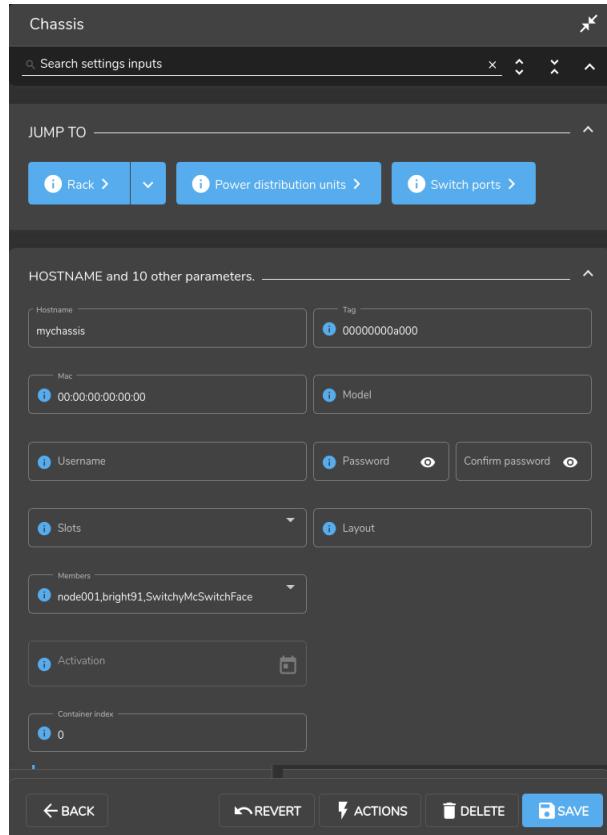


Figure 3.28: Base View chassis configuration

The options that can be set within the Chassis pane include the following:

- **Hostname:** a name that can be assigned to the chassis operating system
- **Tag:** a hardware tag for the chassis
- **Mac:** the MAC address of the chassis
- **Model:** the hardware model name
- **Rack:** the rack in which the chassis is placed
- **Members:** the Members menu option allows devices to be assigned to a chassis (figure 3.29). An item within the Device set can be any item from the subsets of Node, Switch, Power Distribution Unit, Generic Device, Rack Sensor, and Gpu Unit. These items can be filtered for viewing, depending on whether they are Assigned (members of the chassis), Not Assigned (not members of the chassis), or they can All be viewed (both Assigned and Not Assigned items).
- **Layout:** how the nodes in a chassis are laid out visually.
- **Network:** which network the chassis is attached to.
- **Username, Password:** the user name and password to access the chassis operating system
- **Power control, Custom power script, Custom power script argument:** power-related items for the chassis.
- **Userdefined1, Userdefined2:** administrator-defined variables that can be used by CMDaemon.

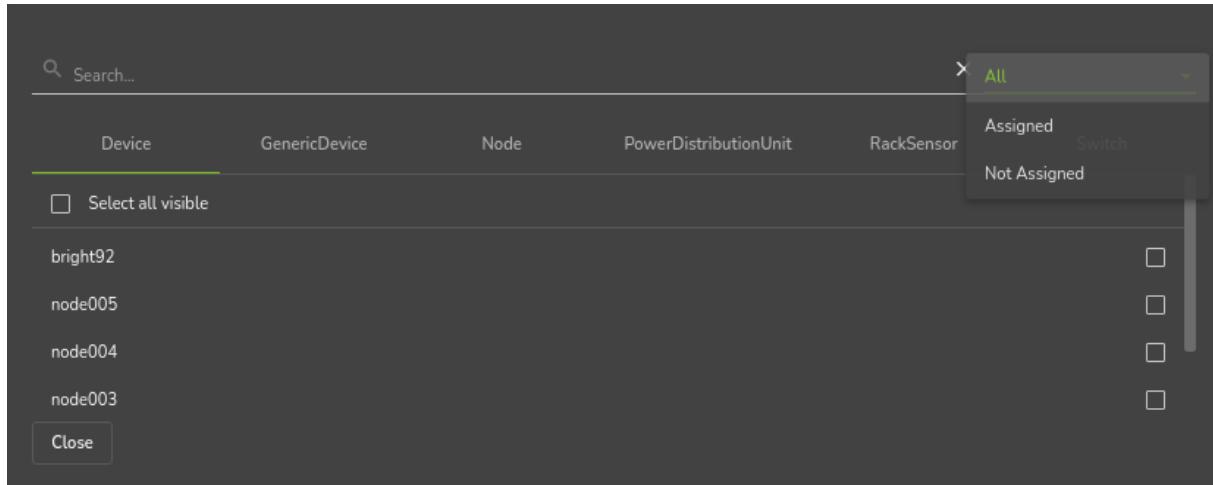


Figure 3.29: Base View Chassis Members Menu Options

**Basic chassis configuration and node assignment with cmsh:** The chassis mode in cmsh allows configuration related to a particular chassis. Tab-completion suggestions for a selected chassis with the set command show possible parameters that may be set:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[chassis1]]% set
containerindex          hostname           partition      switchports
custompingscript        ip                 password       tag
custompingscriptargument layout            powercontrol userdefined1
custompowerscript        mac                powerdistributionunits userdefined2
custompowerscriptargument members           rack           userdefinedresources
defaultgateway          model              revision      username
deviceheight            network            slots
deviceposition          notes              supportsgnss
```

Whether the suggested parameters are actually supported depends on the chassis hardware. For example, if the chassis has no network interface of its own, then the ip and mac address settings may be set, but cannot function.

The positioning parameters of the chassis within the rack can be set as follows with cmsh:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[chassis1]]% set rack rack2
[basecm11->device*[chassis1*]]% set deviceposition 1; set deviceheight 6
[basecm11->device*[chassis1*]]% commit
```

The members of the chassis can be set as follows with cmsh:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[chassis1]]% append members basecm11 node001..node005
[basecm11->device*[chassis1*]]% commit
```

## 3.16 Configuring GPU Settings

### 3.16.1 GPUs And GPU Units

GPUs (Graphics Processing Units) are processors that are heavily optimized for executing certain types of parallel processing tasks. GPUs were originally used for rendering graphics, and one GPU typically has hundreds of cores. When used for general processing, they are sometimes called General Processing GPUs, or GPGPUs. For convenience, the “GP” prefix for General Processing is not used in this manual.

A GPU is typically placed on a PCIe card. GPUs can be physically inside the node that uses them, or they can be physically external to the node that uses them. As far as the operating system on the node making use of the physically external GPUs is concerned, the GPUs are internal to the node.

If the GPUs are physically external to the node, then they are typically in a *GPU unit*. A GPU unit is a chassis that hosts only GPUs. It is typically able to provide GPU access to several nodes, usually via PCIe extender connections. This ability means that external GPUs typically require more configuration than internal GPUs. GPU units are not covered in this manual because they are not very popular due to their greater cost and slowness.

Configuring GPU settings for GPUs—that is, for devices internal to a node—is covered next.

### 3.16.2 Configuring GPU Settings

#### The gpusettings Submode In cmsh

In cmsh, GPUs can be configured for a specified node via device mode.

Going into the gpusettings submode for that node then allows a type of GPU to be set, from the amd or nvidia types, and a range to be specified for the GPU slots for that particular node:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% gpusettings
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings]% add nvidia 1-3 ; commit
```

The range can be specified as

- a single number, for a particular slot, for example: 3
- a range, for a range of slots, for example: 0-2
- all, for all GPU slots on that node, using:

all

or

\*

GPUs can also be configured for a specified category via category mode. For example, using the category default, then entering into the gpusettings submode allows a type (nvidia or amd) and a range to be set for the range of GPUs:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% category use default
[basecm11->category[default]]% gpusettings
[basecm11->category[default]->gpusettings]% list
GPU range (key)  Power limit  ECC mode    Compute mode  Clock speeds
----- -----
[basecm11->category[default]->gpusettings]% add nvidia 1-3 ; commit
[basecm11->category[default]->gpusettings[nvidia:1-3]]% show
```

Parameter	Value
<hr/>	
Clock speeds	
Clock sync boost mode	
Compute mode	
ECC mode	
...	

As usual, GPU settings for a node override those for a category (section 2.1.3).

### GPU Settings With NVIDIA GPUs

The installation of the NVIDIA GPU software driver packages is covered in section 9.1 of the *Installation Manual*. It should be noted that the `cuda-dcgm` package must be installed to access NVIDIA GPU metrics.

The present section is about configuring NVIDIA GPUs in BCM. The driver itself does not necessarily have to be in place for the configuration to be done, although the configuration only becomes active when the driver is installed.

After a GPU type has been set, the following NVIDIA GPU settings may be specified, if supported, from within the `gpusettings` submode:

- `clockspeeds`: The pair of clock speeds (frequency in MHz) to be set for this parameter can be selected from the list of available speeds. The available speeds can be seen by running the `status` command. The values are specified in the form: `<number for GPU processor>,<number for memory>`
- `clocksyncboostmode`: GPU boosting. Exceed the maximum core and memory clock speeds if it is safe. Choices are:
  - `enabled`
  - `disabled`
- `computemode`: Contexts can be computed with the following values for this mode:
  - `Default`: Multiple contexts are allowed
  - `Exclusive thread`: Only one context is allowed per device, usable from one thread at a time
  - `Exclusive process`: Only one context is allowed per device, usable from multiple threads at a time. This mode option is valid for CUDA 4.0 and higher. Earlier CUDA versions ran only in this mode.
  - `Prohibited`: No contexts are allowed per device
- `eccmode`: Sets the ECC bit error check, with:
  - `enabled`
  - `disabled`

When ECC is enabled:

- Single bit errors are detected, using the `EccSBitGPU` metric (page 929), and corrected automatically.
- Double bit errors are also detected, using the `EccDBitGPU` metric (page 929), but cannot be corrected.
- `GPU range`: range values can be set as follows:
  - `all`: The GPU settings apply to all GPUs on the node.
  - `<number>`: The GPU settings apply to an individual GPU, for example: 1

- <number range>: The GPU settings apply to a range of GPUs, for example: 1,3-5
- powerlimit: The administrator-defined upper power limit for the GPU. Only valid if powermode is Supported.
  - min: The minimum upper power limit that the hardware supports.
  - max: The maximum upper power limit that the hardware supports.
  - <number>: An arbitrary upper power limit, specified as a number between min and max
  - default: Upper power limit based on the default hardware value.

If no value is specified for a GPU setting, then the hardware default is used.

### The updatenodegpuconfig Command For Controlling Power Consumption

Above the gpusettings submode, within device mode, nodes with GPUs can have their power consumption limited per specified GPU:

Without arguments, the updatenodegpuconfig command shows the current status:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% updatenodegpuconfig
Node      GPU      Power limit      Processor speed      Memory speed
-----  -----
node001    0        350 W          135 MHz           958 MHz
node001    1        350 W          135 MHz           958 MHz
```

In the preceding example, the only node with a GPU is node001. The same result is therefore shown if the command is run as updatenodegpuconfig -n node001.

The first and second GPUs on node001 can have their power limits set to the same value with a range syntax:

```
[basecm11->device]% updatenodegpuconfig node001:0-1:330
Node      GPU      Power limit      Processor speed      Memory speed
-----  -----
node001    0        330 W          135 MHz           958 MHz
node001    1        330 W          135 MHz           958 MHz
```

For the first and second GPUs on node001, the power limit, in watts, can be set to different values:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% updatenodegpuconfig node001:1:300 node001:0:330
Node      GPU      Power limit      Processor speed      Memory speed
-----  -----
node001    0        330 W          135 MHz           958 MHz
node001    1        300 W          135 MHz           958 MHz
```

A dry-run option shows the effect on both the GPUs:

```
[basecm11->device]% updatenodegpuconfig node001:0-1:350 --dry-run
Node      GPU      Power limit      Processor speed      Memory speed
-----  -----
node001    0        350 W          -                  -
node001    1        350 W          -                  -
```

The clock speed can be set with a 3rd colon delimited field, in Hz:

```
[basecm11->device] % updatenodegpuconfig node001:0:350:142M
Node      GPU      Power limit      Processor speed      Memory speed
-----
node001    0        350 W          135 MHz           142 MHz
```

Using both `gpusettings` values and `updatenodegpuconfigs` may cause conflict. For example with the processor speed setting of `updatenodegpuconfig` and the value of `clockspeeds` in `gpusettings`.

If the clocks cannot be changed, then the driver is handling them dynamically.

### GPU Settings With AMD GPUs

GPU settings for AMD Radeon GPUs are accessed via `cmsh` in the same way as NVIDIA GPU settings. The AMD GPU setting parameters do differ from the NVIDIA ones.

The AMD GPUs supported are Radeon cards. A list of cards and operating systems compatible with the Linux driver used is at <https://support.amd.com/en-us/kb-articles/Pages/Radeon-Software-for-Linux-Release-Notes.aspx>

AMD GPU driver installation is described in section 7.4 of the *Installation Manual*.

The Radeon Instinct MI25 shows the following settings in Ubuntu 16\_06 running a Linux 4.4.0-72-generic kernel:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings] % list
Type GPU range Info
-----
AMD 0      PowerPlay: manual
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings] % use amd:0
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[amd:0]] % show
Parameter      Value
-----
Activity threshold      1
Fan speed              255
GPU clock level        5
GPU range               0
Hysteresis down        0
Hysteresis up          0
Info                   PowerPlay: manual
Memory clock level     3
Minimum GPU clock      0
Minimum memory clock   0
Overdrive percentage   1
PowerPlay mode         manual
Revision
Type                  AMD
```

The possible values here are:

- `activitythreshold`: Percent GPU usage at a clock level that is required before clock levels change. From 0 to 100.
- `fanspeed`: Maximum fan speed. From 0 to 255
- `gpuclocklevel`: GPU clock level setting. From 0 to 7.
- `gpurange`: The slots used.
- `hysteresisdown`: Delay in milliseconds before a clock level decrease is carried out.

- `hysteresisup`: Delay in milliseconds before a clock level increase is carried out.
- `info`: A compact informative line about the GPU status.
- `memoryclocklevel`: Memory clock speed setting. From 0-3. Other cards can show other values.
- `minimumgpuclock`: Minimum clock frequency for GPU, in MHz. The kernel only allows certain values. Supported values can be seen using the `status` command.
- `minimummemoryclock`: Minimum clock frequency for the memory, in MHz. The kernel only allows certain values. Supported values can be seen using the `status` command.
- `overdrivepercentage`: Percent overclocking. From 0 to 20%
- `powerplaymode`: Decides how the performance level power setting should be implemented.
  - `high`: keep performance high, regardless of GPU workload
  - `low`: keep performance low, regardless of GPU workload
  - `auto`: Switch clock rates according to GPU workload
  - `manual`: Use the memory clock level and GPU clock values.

The `status` command displays supported clock frequencies (some values ellipsized):

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[amd:0]]% status
Index Name          Property    Value      Supported
----- -----
0     Radeon Instinct MI25 Clock      1399Mhz   852Mhz, 991Mhz, ..., 1440Mhz, 1515Mhz
0     Radeon Instinct MI25 Memory    945Mhz   167Mhz, 500Mhz, 800Mhz, 945Mhz
```

### GPU Settings In Base View

In Base View, GPU settings can be accessed within the settings options for a category or a device. This brings up a GPU settings list.

**GPU settings list in Base View:** A GPU Settings list pane can be opened up in Base View for a regular node, for example `node001`, with the navigation path:

`Devices > Nodes[node001] > Edit > Settings > JUMP TO > GPU Settings`

Similarly, a GPU Settings list pane can be opened up in Base View for nodes in a category, for example `gpunodes`, with the navigation path:

`Grouping > Categories[gpunodes] > Edit > Settings > JUMP TO > GPU Settings`

Within the GPU Settings list pane:

- a new GPU settings item can be added with the ADD button, and then clicking on either the `AMDGPUSettings` or the `NVIDIAGPUSettings` item in the popup. This opens an AMDGPU Settings pane or an NVIDIA GPU Settings pane, where GPU configuration can be carried out and saved (figure 3.30).

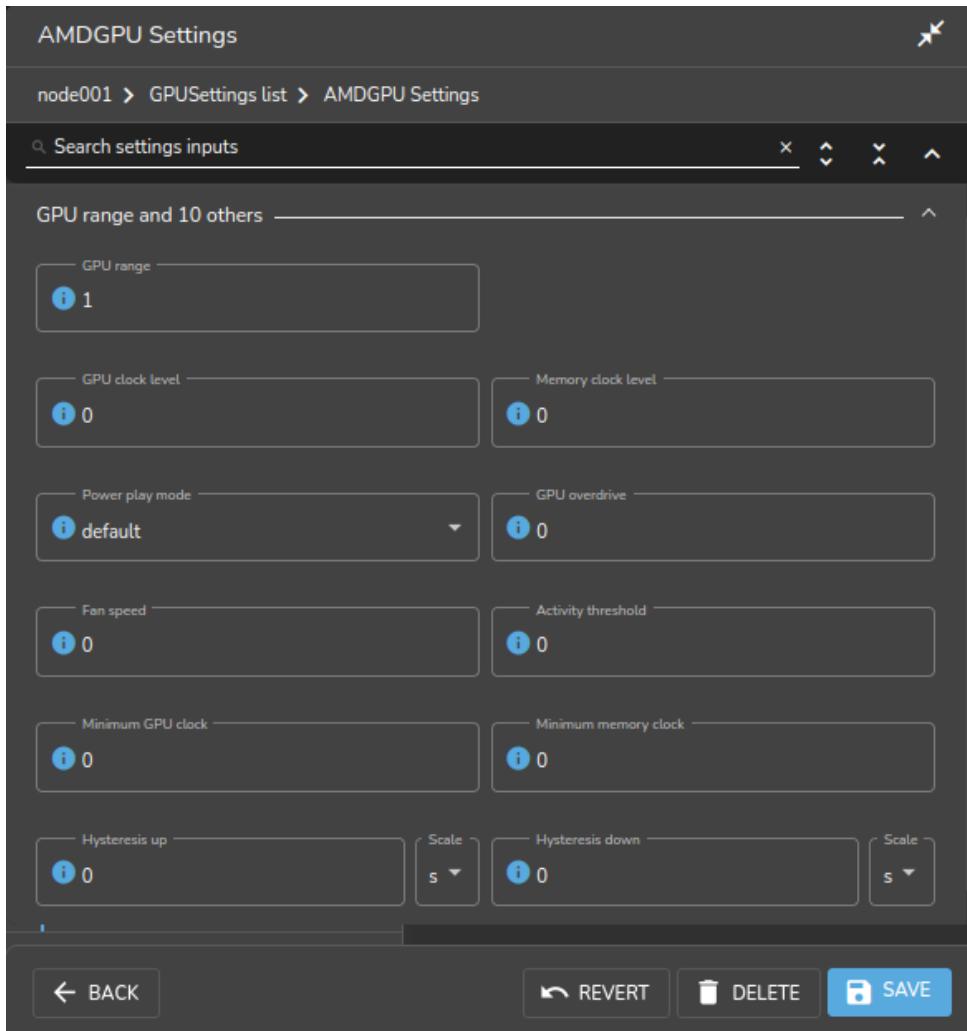


Figure 3.30: GPU settings window for a node

- an existing GPU settings item can be edited with the Edit menu option, or by double-clicking on the item itself. This also opens up the GPU Settings pane where GPU configuration can be managed.

### GPU Configuration For HPC Workload Managers

**Slurm GPU configuration via direct slurm.conf changes:** To configure NVIDIA GPUs for Slurm, changes are made in `slurm.conf` when `cm-wlm-setup` configures GPUs for Slurm (section 7.3).

Changes made are kept in the AUTOGENERATED section and can be worked out by checking the difference between the `slurm.conf.template` file and the actual `slurm.conf` file. Changes made include defining the `GresTypes gpu` and `mps`, and setting GPU plugins that allow Slurm generic resources to work.

The configured gres options can be seen by running `sbatch --gres=help`:

#### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ sbatch --gres=help
Valid gres options are:
gpu[:type]:count
mps[:type]:count
```

This means that a GPU can be requested in a job script with the Slurm gres option:

```
#SBATCH --gres=gpu:1
```

Similarly, MPS resources ([https://slurm.schedmd.com/gres.html#MPS\\_Management](https://slurm.schedmd.com/gres.html#MPS_Management)) can be requested with:

```
#SBATCH --gres=mps:100
```

If adding new parameters manually, care must be taken to avoid duplication of parameters already in the file, because `slurmd` is unlikely to work properly with duplicated parameters.

The Slurm client role can be configured at configuration overlay, category, or node level. If configuring the Slurm client role for GPU gres resources manually, then each GPU can be configured within the role:

### Example

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay]%
[basecm11->configurationoverlay]% list
Name (key) Priority All head nodes Nodes Categories Roles
-----
slurm-accounting 500 yes
slurm-client 500 no default slurmclient
slurm-server 500 yes
slurm-submit 500 no default slurmsubmit
wlm-headnode-submit 600 yes slurmserver
slurmclient
slurmsubmit
[basecm11->configurationoverlay]%
[basecm11->configurationoverlay]% use slurm-client
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles]%
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles[slurmclient]]% genericresources
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles[slurmclient]->genericresources]%
[basecm11->...->roles[slurmclient]->genericresources]% add gpu0
[basecm11->...->roles*[slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu0*]]% set name gpu
[basecm11->...->roles*[slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu0*]]% set file /dev/nvidia0
[basecm11->...->roles*[slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu0*]]% commit
[basecm11->...->roles[slurmclient]->genericresources[gpu0]]%
(Repeat similar settings for the other GPUs, gpu1...gpu7)
[basecm11->...->roles[slurmclient]->genericresources]%
[basecm11->...->roles[slurmclient]->genericresources]% list
Alias (key) Name Type Count File
-----
gpu0 gpu /dev/nvidia0
gpu1 gpu /dev/nvidia1
gpu2 gpu /dev/nvidia2
gpu3 gpu /dev/nvidia3
gpu4 gpu /dev/nvidia4
gpu5 gpu /dev/nvidia5
gpu6 gpu /dev/nvidia6
gpu7 gpu /dev/nvidia7
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles[slurmclient]->genericresources]%
```

By default, Slurm just allows a single job to be executed per node. To change this behavior, it is necessary to allow oversubscription. For example, to allow 8 jobs per node:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% jobqueue
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobqueue]% use defq
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobqueue[defq]]% set oversubscribe yes:8
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobqueue*[defq*]]% commit
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobqueue[defq]]%
```

**Slurm GPU configuration via auto-detection:** Instead of carrying out Slurm configuration by modifying `slurm.conf` by hand, it may be configured via auto-detection. More details on this are to be found starting at page 391.

**PBS:** NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 9.0 onward supports GPU configuration in PBS via the `cm-wlm-setup` tool after installation (section 7.3.2).

**LSF:** Within LSF cluster configuration, GPU devices can be autodetected by setting the `gpuautoconfig` parameter to yes. In `cmsh` this can be carried out with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]]% set gpuautoconfig yes
[basecm11->wlm*[lsf*]]%
```

The parameter can also be set during LSF configuration via `cm-wlm-setup` (figure 3.31):

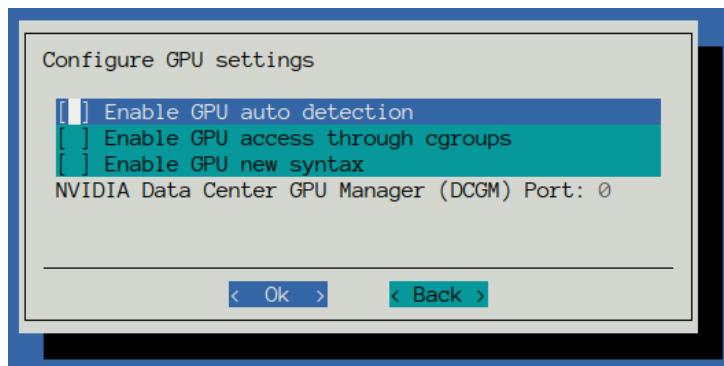


Figure 3.31: GPU settings screen for LSF in `cm-wlm-setup`

GPU resource enforcement can be configured for LSF as follows:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]->cgroups]% append resourceenforce gpu
[basecm11->wlm*[lsf*]->cgroups*]%
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]->cgroups]%
```

### 3.16.3 MIG Configuration

MIG configuration can be carried out for the cluster using the BCM MIG management as described in this section.

An alternative for MIG configuration is to not use the BCM MIG management tool (`cmsh`), and to instead use other MIG management tools, such as the DGX native `nvidia-migmanager.service`, or the GPU operator-provided `nvidia-mig-manager`. If non-BCM MIG management tools are used, then BCM leaves the MIG configuration alone. Using multiple MIG management tools simultaneously to configure MIG should not be done.

#### What Is MIG?

An Ampere NVIDIA GPU is a GPU based on the GA100 microarchitecture. It has compute capability 8.0, which means it can be configured into multiple logical GPU instances if it uses CUDA 11 and NVIDIA driver 450.80.02 or later.

This configuration of multiple logical GPU instances is called Multi-Instance GPU (MIG). The logical GPU instances are MIG devices, that are enabled by setting up the physical GPU to switch to MIG mode.

**As a sanity check to see if MIG is supported:** If the hardware and drivers are in place, then running the nvidia-smi command on the node with the physical GPU should display its MIG capability:

```
root@basecm11:~# ssh node001 "nvidia-smi" | grep MIG
| | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| MIG devices: | | | | | | | | |
| GPU GI CI MIG | Memory-Usage | Vol | Shared |
```

**GPU utilization information changes on enabling MIG:** Once enabled, the full physical GPU is no longer available as a device, and GPU utilization metrics become unavailable by default.

GPU profiling metrics (section G.1.7) for the physical GPU can however still be enabled. For example, it can be carried out with cmsh as follows, for a GPU on node001:

### Example

```
basecm11->device[node001]]% gpuprofiling show
Hostname GPU Major ID Minor ID Field ID Metric Watched
----- -----
node001 0 0 1 1002 gpu_profiling_sm_active no
node001 0 0 1 1003 gpu_profiling_sm_occupancy no
...
basecm11->device[node001]]% gpuprofiling watch 1003
Hostname GPU Major ID Minor ID Field ID Metric Watched
----- -----
...
node001 0 0 1 1003 gpu_profiling_sm_occupancy yes
...

[basecm11->device[node001]]% metrics | grep gpu_profiling
Metric gpu_profiling_sm_occupancy gpu0 GPU GPUSampler
```

Enabling physical GPU profiling after MIG enablement should be done with caution, because:

- it may affect the performance
- newer drivers may support MIG profiling, which may be confusing

### Overview Of MIG Concepts And Terminology

The logical GPU instances are composed of *slices* of GPU resources. Slices are the smallest fraction possible of the resource that can be allocated in a logical GPU instance. Thus:

- memory slice: this is the smallest fraction of the memory of the physical GPU that can be allocated to the GPU instance. For the Ampere architecture this is 1/8<sup>th</sup> of the total physical GPU memory.
- SM slice: this is the smallest fraction of the streaming multiprocessors (SMs) on the GPU that can be allocated as a logical SM. An SM is composed of multiple cores (streaming processors). For the Ampere architecture an SM slice is 1/7<sup>th</sup> of the total physical GPU SMs.
- GPU slice: this is the smallest fraction of the physical GPU that has a single GPU memory slice and a single GPU SM slice. A maximum of 7 GPU slices can be specified from the original physical GPU.

The preceding fractional slices can be combined in various mixes to compose a logical GPU instance:

- GPU instance: a combination of GPU slices and GPU engines. GPU engines are hardware components that execute other work on the GPU, and can be encoders/decoders (NVENCs/NVDECs), shortcut connectors (CE (copy engine) for DMA), etc.

- compute instance: a part of a GPU instance. It consists of a subset of the parent GPU instance's SM slices and other GPU engines (DMAs, NVENCs ...). The compute instances can share memory and GPU engines with other compute instances within their GPU instance.

Further details on the terminology and how slices can be allocated to GPU instances are given in the NVIDIA documentation at <https://docs.nvidia.com/datacenter/tesla/mig-user-guide/#concepts>.

A use case for creating several GPU instances from a full physical GPU is when allocation of the full physical GPU is wasteful.

For example, if a full physical GPU is allocated to a job, but the job only uses a fraction of the full set of GPU cores, then the allocation is wasteful, because no other job can then be processed on the remaining idle cores. Instead, if the physical GPU is split into several instances and the job allocated to an instance with a closer match in resources, then it means that other GPU instances are still available for processing other jobs.

When configuring GPU instances for the cluster, the administrator typically allocates all available slices to all the GPU instances that are being configured. Leaving a slice unallocated means that that slice cannot be available to jobs, and it means that the physical resources of that slice are lying idle. For example, if some of the 7 SM slices from the physical GPU are not used, then they are wasted as their processors are never available to jobs, and so that slice stays idle.

Cluster management of GPU instances is described in the following sections.

### MIG Status Of Physical GPUs

The MIG status on a GPU can be viewed with the `mig status` command. For example, the following shows 8 physical GPUs on node001 that have not yet become MIG enabled:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig status
```

Node	GPU	Active	Pending
node001	0	no	no
node001	1	no	no
node001	2	no	no
node001	3	no	no
node001	4	no	no
node001	5	no	no
node001	6	no	no
node001	7	no	no

### MIG enable And disable Options To Set Up Pending States For The Physical GPUs

If the `enable` or `disable` options are run, then by default all the physical GPUs are set to a pending state for enabled (yes) and disabled (no) respectively:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig enable
```

Node	GPU	Active	Pending
node001	0	no	yes
node001	1	no	yes
node001	2	no	yes
node001	3	no	yes
node001	4	no	yes
node001	5	no	yes
node001	6	no	yes
node001	7	no	yes

Individual physical GPUs can also be set to a pending state of enabled or disabled, following the node list syntax (section 2.5.5):

Node	GPU	Active	Pending
node001	0	no	yes
node001	1	no	yes
node001	2	no	yes
node001	3	no	no
node001	4	no	yes
node001	5	no	no
node001	6	no	no
node001	7	no	no

### Rebooting The MIG Instances To Activate/Deactivate Instances According To Pending State Settings

The pending states only become active after the node is rebooted for A100 GPUs:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% reboot
Reboot in progress for: node001
...
node001 [    UP    ]
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig status
```

Node	GPU	Active	Pending
node001	0	yes	yes
node001	1	yes	yes
node001	2	yes	yes
node001	3	no	no
node001	4	yes	yes
node001	5	no	no
node001	6	no	no
node001	7	no	no

The effect of enable and disable persists after reboots, until the pending value changes once more. For H100 GPUs, the changes do not require a reboot.

#### The MIG Profiles

**Listing MIG Profiles:** The full list of the existing available MIG profiles for each physical GPU is displayed with the `mig profiles` command for the node. If there are 7 physical GPUs at the node, then the listing might look something like:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig profiles
Node      GPU     ID      Name      Instances Memory
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----
node001    0       1      1g.5gb    7      4.7GiB
node001    0       1      1g.5gb+me  1      4.7GiB
node001    0       2      2g.10gb   3      9.7GiB
node001    0       3      3g.20gb   1      19.6GiB
node001    0       4      4g.20gb   1      19.6GiB
node001    0       7      7g.40gb   1      39GiB
...
```

node001	7	2	2g.10gb	3	9.7GiB
node001	7	3	3g.20gb	1	19.6GiB
node001	7	4	4g.20gb	1	19.6GiB
node001	7	7	7g.40gb	1	39GiB

A list for physical GPU 1 can be displayed with:

### Example

Node	GPU	ID	Name	Instances	Memory
node001	1	1	1g.5gb	7	4.7GiB
node001	1	1	1g.5gb+me	1	4.7GiB
node001	1	2	2g.10gb	3	9.7GiB
node001	1	3	3g.20gb	1	19.6GiB
node001	1	4	4g.20gb	1	19.6GiB
node001	1	7	7g.40gb	1	39GiB

**MIG Profiles Naming Convention:** The naming format for the profile takes the form

*<number of GPU slices in the physical GPU>g.<memory for slice in GB>gb*

The +me suffix implies media extensions being active. The number of GPU instances, the number of GPU slices used, and the memory used by the instance can thus be worked out from the name.

For example:

- 1g.5gb implies that the size of the GPU slice used for the instances is 1. 4.7GiB of memory is used by each of the 7 GPU instances,
- 2g.10gb implies that the size of the GPU slice used for the instances is 2. 9.7GiB of memory is used by each of the 3 GPU instances.

**Creating GPU instances, by setting the MIG profile for a GPU:** The MIG profile is an attribute that can be set within the GPU settings for its physical GPU. This can be done after having set up a CMdaemon entity for a physical GPU 0 (section 3.16.2):

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% gpusettings
[basecm11->device*[node001]->gpusettings]% list
Type    GPU range Info
-----
Nvidia 0      default
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings]% use nvidia:0
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
...
MIG profiles
```

- A simple existing set of profiles with 7 GPU instances with 1 GPU slice each, and 5 GB of memory for each slice can be specified with:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% set migprofiles 1g.5gb; commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
...
MIG profiles      1g.5gb
```

Setting the profiles, and carrying out the `commit` configures the GPU instances, but does not yet apply them:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% ...;...
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig show
Node      GPU      MIG      Instance Name      Profile   Start   Size
-----
```

Applying the profile deploys the configuration, and shows the configuration:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig apply
Node      GPU      MIG      Instance Name      Profile   Start   Size
-----
```

Node	GPU	MIG	Instance Name	Profile	Start	Size	
node001	0	13	-	1g.5gb	19	6	1
node001	0	13	0	1g.5gb	0	0	1

In the preceding, 1 GPU instance has been deployed, with 1 compute instance slice using 5GB. The instance with the - represents the hosting GPU instance, while the subsequent row represents the compute instance.

- **Setting a profile with `mig apply --profile`** is an alternative to setting it within `gpusettings`. However, only a profile set within `gpusettings` is persistent. The profile set with the `--profile` option is lost if its node reboots. Multiple profiles can be set using comma-separation (instead of using space-separation). Using multiple `--profile` options is also possible.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig apply --profile 1g.5gb,2g.10gb
Node      GPU      MIG      Instance Name      Profile   Start   Size
-----
```

Node	GPU	MIG	Instance Name	Profile	Start	Size	
node001	0	5	-	2g.10gb	14	4	2
node001	0	5	0	2g.10gb	1	0	2
node001	0	13	-	1g.5gb	19	6	1
node001	0	13	0	1g.5gb	0	0	1

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig apply --profile 1g.5gb --profile 2g.10gb
Node      GPU      MIG      Instance Name      Profile   Start   Size
-----
```

Node	GPU	MIG	Instance Name	Profile	Start	Size	
node001	0	5	-	2g.10gb	14	4	2
node001	0	5	0	2g.10gb	1	0	2
node001	0	13	-	1g.5gb	19	6	1
node001	0	13	0	1g.5gb	0	0	1

- **Multiple GPU instances** can be specified, if the GPU allows it, using a *<number>\** prefix syntax. So, to deploy 7 GPU instances, each hosting 1 compute instance with 5gb slices, the specification can be:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% gpusettings; use nvidia:0
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% set migprofiles 7*1g.5gb; commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% ...;..
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig apply
Node      GPU      MIG      Instance Name      Profile   Start   Size
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
node001    0        7        -        1g.5gb    19       0        1
node001    0        7        0        1g.5gb    0         0        1
node001    0        8        -        1g.5gb    19       1        1
node001    0        8        0        1g.5gb    0         0        1
node001    0        9        -        1g.5gb    19       2        1
node001    0        9        0        1g.5gb    0         0        1
node001    0       10        0        1g.5gb    19       3        1
node001    0       10        0        1g.5gb    0         0        1
node001    0       11        -        1g.5gb    19       4        1
node001    0       11        0        1g.5gb    0         0        1
node001    0       12        -        1g.5gb    19       5        1
node001    0       12        0        1g.5gb    0         0        1
node001    0       13        -        1g.5gb    19       6        1
node001    0       13        0        1g.5gb    0         0        1
```

- **GPU slices** can be implied by default by the profile, and subsets of these slices can be specified explicitly.

To deploy 1 GPU instance, with 7 GPU slices of compute instance resources, the specification can be:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% gpusettings; use nvidia:0
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% set migprofiles 7g.40gb; commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% ...;..
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig apply
Node      GPU      MIG      Instance Name      Profile   Start   Size
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
node001    0        0        -        7g.40gb   0         0        8
node001    0        0        0        7g.40gb   4         0        7
```

If a profile with a more than 1 GPU slice is chosen, then GPU slice subsets can be set up via the following syntax:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% gpusettings; use nvidia:0
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% set migprofiles 2g.10gb; commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% ...;..
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig apply
Node      GPU      MIG      Instance Name      Profile   Start   Size
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
node001    0        5        -        2g.10gb   14       4        2
node001    0        5        0        2g.10gb   1         0        2
```

- GPU slices use a colon syntax to explicitly specify subsets of GPU slices.

The configuration specification 2g.10gb can also be specified as 2g.10gb:1, where that :1 indicates the number of GPU slices for the compute instance, counting from zero. That means the compute instance has 2 GPU slices. The resulting configuration is exactly the same as 2g.10g.

If the specification 2g.10gb:0 is used instead, then the compute instance ends up looking like:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% gpusettings; use nvidia:0
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% set migprofiles 2g.10gb:0; commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% ...;...
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig apply
Node          GPU      MIG      Instance Name      Profile   Start     Size
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----
node001        0        5        -        2g.10gb      14        4        2
node001        0        5        0        1c.2g.10gb    0          0        1
```

Here the 1c indicates 1 GPU slice (here it is counting from 1).

Adding another slice to a separate compute instance within the same GPU instance can be specified with:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% gpusettings; use nvidia:0
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% set migprofiles 2g.10gb:0:0; commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% ...;...
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig apply
Node          GPU      MIG      Instance Name      Profile   Start     Size
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----
node001        0        5        -        2g.10gb      14        4        2
node001        0        5        0        1c.2g.10gb    0          0        1
node001        0        5        1        1c.2g.10gb    0          1        1
```

In the preceding set migprofiles command, the specification

2g.10gb:0:0

can alternatively be expanded out and written in the form:

2g.10gb:1c.2g.10gb:1c.2g.10gb

for more clarity, at the expense of more typing.

For a general profile that allows N GPU slices for an instance (with  $N \leq 7$ ), the mapping for the colon syntax takes the form:

<b>compact colon form</b>	<b>expanded form</b>
---------------------------	----------------------

:0	1c.<profile>
----	--------------

:1	2c.<profile>
----	--------------

...	...
-----	-----

:N-1	Nc.<profile>	or
	<profile>	

In practice, there are hardware-based restrictions for what is permitted to be allocated. So for example on the NVIDIA A100-PCIE-40GB:

7g.40gb:3 is allowed but

7g.40gb:4 is not.

Details on supported profiles for hardware can be found in the NVIDIA documentation. For example, for the A30 profiles at:

<https://docs.nvidia.com/datacenter/tesla/mig-user-guide/#a30-profiles>

and for the A100 profiles at:

<https://docs.nvidia.com/datacenter/tesla/mig-user-guide/#a100-profiles>.

Increasing the number of GPU instances can also still be done using the earlier `<number>*` prefix syntax together with the colon syntax, if the GPU allows it:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% gpusettings; use nvidia:0
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% set migprofiles 3*2g.10gb:0:0; commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% ...;...
[basecm11->device[node001]]% mig apply
Node      GPU      MIG      Instance Name      Profile   Start   Size
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
node001    0        3        -        2g.10gb    14       0        2
node001    0        3        0        1c.2g.10gb 0        0        1
node001    0        3        1        1c.2g.10gb 0        1        1
node001    0        4        -        2g.10gb    14       2        2
node001    0        4        0        1c.2g.10gb 0        0        1
node001    0        4        1        1c.2g.10gb 0        1        1
node001    0        5        -        2g.10gb    14       4        2
node001    0        5        0        1c.2g.10gb 0        0        1
node001    0        5        1        1c.2g.10gb 0        1        1
```

- **A heterogeneous set of existing profiles** for GPU instances can also be defined for the GPU with MIG profiles.

For example, 2 instances with the MIG profile 1g.5gb, and 1 instance with the MIG profile 2g.10gb can be specified with:

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% gpusettings; use nvidia:0
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% set migprofiles 2*1g.5gb 2g.10gb; commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
...
MIG profiles          2*1g.5gb,2g.10gb
[basecm11->device[node001]->gpusettings[nvidia:0]]% ...;...
[basecm11->device*[node001*]]% mig apply
Node      GPU      MIG      Instance Name      Profile   Start   Size
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
node001    0        3        -        2g.10gb    14       0        2
node001    0        3        0        2g.10gb    1        0        2
node001    0        11       -        1g.5gb     19       4        1
node001    0        11       0        1g.5gb     0        0        1
node001    0        13       -        1g.5gb     19       6        1
node001    0        13       0        1g.5gb     0        0        1
```

- **heterogeneous sets are useful when trying to use up all the slices available**, to make the maximum resources available. So, while an administrator can carry out the preceding specification:

`2*1g.5gb 2g.10gb`

this is not a good allocation of resources since it only makes 4/7 of the GPU slices available, and 4/8 of the memory slices available. An administrator would more sensibly specify something like, for example:

`5*1g.5gb,2g.10gb`

which uses up the full 7 GPU slices and 35GB (6/8 slices) of memory available from the physical GPU. This makes full use of the SM resources derived from the physical GPU, so that these SM resources are fully available to workloads.

- **Overallocating slices for MIG configuration is not possible**. If there is an attempt to overallocate, then the slices that are allocated too late are simply not allocated. This can lead to unexpected results for the unwary cluster administrator. For example:

- `5*1g.5gb,2g.10gb` allocates the 5 slices of the 1g instance and the 2 slices of the 2g instance.  
But
- `6*1g.5gb,2g.10gb` allocates the 6 slices of the 1g instance and none of the 2g instance.
- `7*1g.5gb,2g.10gb` allocates the 7 slices of the 1g instance and none of the 2g instance.
- `70*1g.5gb,2g.10gb` allocates 7 slices of the 1g instance and none of the 2g instance.

### 3.17 Configuring Sampling From A Prometheus Exporter

CMDaemon can be configured to sample a Prometheus exporter, for example from the NVIDIA Unified Fabric Manager (UFM) platform. A CMDaemon front end such as cmsh can have a data producer, for example UFM, configured within the monitoring setup mode (section 10.5.4) to allow sampling of the Prometheus exporter:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11]# cmsh
[basecm11]% monitoring setup
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% add prometheus UFM          #create a data producer of type Prometheus
[basecm11->monitoring->setup* [UFM*]]% set urls http://10.180.217.170:9001/metrics    #end point
[basecm11->monitoring->setup* [UFM*]]% set -e NoPostAllowed yes   #HTTP GET only, use for older exporters
[basecm11->monitoring->setup* [UFM*]]% nodeexecutionfilters
[basecm11->monitoring->setup* [UFM*]->nodeexecutionfilters]% active    #run on active head node only
Added active resource filter
[basecm11->monitoring->setup* [UFM*]->nodeexecutionfilters]% commit
```

In the example, the URL needs to be set to the Prometheus export server endpoint. The value of `NoPostAllowed` only needs to be set to `yes` for some older Prometheus versions that do not work with HTTP POST. The data producer is set to run on only the active head node with the `nodeexecutionfilter` setting (page 586).

The preceding example configures CMDaemon to sample from a Prometheus exporter. The other way around, that is to have CMDaemon be the exporter of Prometheus data, can be achieved via the `EnablePrometheusExporterService` directive (page 850).

### 3.18 Configuring Custom Scripts

Some scripts are used for custom purposes. These are used as replacements for certain default scripts, for example, in the case of non-standard hardware where the default script does not do what is expected. The custom scripts that can be set, along with their associated arguments are:

- `custompowerscript` and `custompowerscriptargument` (section 4.1.4)
- `custompingscript` and `custompingscriptargument` (section 3.18.2)
- `customremoteconsolescript` and `customremoteconsolescriptargument` (section 3.18.3)

In addition to the preceding `custom*` scripts, system information scripts can be set that provide extra information to the `sysinfo` command in BCM (section 3.18.4).

The environment variables of CMDDaemon (section 3.3.1 of the *Developer Manual*) can be used in the scripts. Successful scripts, as is the norm, return 0 on exit.

### 3.18.1 `custompowerscript`

The use of custom power scripts is described in section 4.1.4.

### 3.18.2 `custompingscript`

The following example script:

#### Example

```
#!/bin/bash
/bin/ping -c1 $CMD_IP
```

can be defined and set for the cases where the default built-in ping script, cannot be used.

By default, the node device states are detected by the built-in ping script (section 5.5) using ICMP ping. This results in the statuses that can be seen on running the list command of `cmsh` in device mode. An example output, formatted for convenience, is:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11]# cmsh -c "device; format hostname:15, status:15; list"
hostname (key)  status
-----
basecm11      [    UP    ]
node001       [    UP    ]
node002       [    UP    ]
```

If some device is added to the cluster that blocks such pings, then the built-in ping can be replaced by the custom ping of the example, which relies on standard ICMP ping.

However, the replacement custom ping script need not actually use a variety of ping at all. It could be a script running web commands to query a chassis controller, asking if all its devices are up. The script simply has to provide an exit status compatible with expected ping behavior. Thus an exit status of 0 means all the devices are indeed up.

### 3.18.3 `customremoteconsolescript`

A custom remote console script can be used to run in the built-in remote console utility. This might be used, for example, to allow the administrator remote console access through a proprietary KVM switch client.

For example, a user may want to run a KVM console access script that is on the head node and with an absolute path on the head node of `/root/kvmaccesshack`. The script is to run on the console, and intended to be used for node `node001`, and takes the argument 1. This can then be set in `cmsh` as follows:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% get customremoteconsolescript; get customremoteconsolescriptargument

[basecm11->device[node001]]% set customremoteconsolescript /root/kvmaccesshack
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set customremoteconsolescriptargument 1
[basecm11->device[node001]]% rconsole
    KVM console access session using the 1 argument option is displayed
```

In Base View, the corresponding navigation paths to access these script settings are:

Devices > Nodes > Edit > Settings > Custom remote console script

and

Devices > Nodes > Edit > Settings > Custom remote console script argument

while the remote console can be launched via the navigation path:

Devices > Nodes > Edit > Connect > Remote console

### 3.18.4 sysinfo Custom Scripts

#### Standard sysinfo

The sysinfo command in BCM is run from device mode in cmsh for a node. By default, sysinfo returns some basic hardware information for the node.

#### Overview Of Running Custom Scripts In sysinfo

A cluster administrator may however wish to extract some additional hardware-related information from the cluster. To do this, custom scripts associated with the sysinfo command can be created by the cluster administrator. These sysinfo custom scripts run when the sysinfo command is executed via cmsh, and they pick up the additional information.

**Custom script types:** The scripts can be of three types, with corresponding directory locations. as indicated by the following table:

Type of script	Script directory path on node
local	/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/sysinfo/local/
director	/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/sysinfo/director/
head	/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/sysinfo/head/

**Custom script process:** When sysinfo runs for a particular node, the scripts that are called have the following characteristics, and are run as follows:

- Any scripts of the local type are run on the node that sysinfo is executed on. The scripts must be placed by the cluster administrator on the node itself. The node could be a head node, director node, a regular node, or a cloud node. The output from the local scripts is picked up.
- Any scripts of the director type are run on the director node. The scripts must be placed by the cluster administrator on the director node itself. The output from the scripts is picked up.
- Any scripts of the head type are run on the head node. The scripts themselves must be placed by the cluster administrator on the head node. The output from the scripts is picked up.

**Custom script output format:** The script outputs are JSON format key value pairs (JSON object literals).

The simplest standard JSON output form supported for sysinfo is:

```
{
  "key": "value"
}
```

The format if getting output for N key-value pairs is:

```
{
  "key1": "value1",
  "key2": "value2",
  ...
  "keyN": "valueN"
}
```

**Nested sysinfo output:** The key-value pairs can also be grouped, with the output presented in the following format for a group:

```
{
  "group": {
    "key1": "value1",
    "key2": "value2",
    ...
    "keyN": "valueN"
  }
}
```

The key-value pairs can also be structured with multiple groups. In the following example there are two groups:

### Example

```
{
  "group1": {
    "key1.1": "value1.1",
    "key1.2": "value1.2"
  },
  "group2": {
    "key2.1": "value2.1",
    "key2.2": "value2.2",
    "key2.3": "value2.3"
  }
}
```

The nested multilayer output format can be useful for grouped. For example, dmidecode can output key-value pairs that specify starting and ending ranges, which can be grouped according to the various DMI types that are also available in the output.

**Simple sysinfo custom script construction:** For example, the following bash script can be run on the head node:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/sysinfo/head/outputscript.sh
#!/bin/bash
myhostname=$(hostname)
#next line extracts just the UUID value from the dmidecode output for the system for this particular hardware
myuuid=$(dmidecode | grep -A6 "System Information" | grep UUID | sed -e 's/^W*UUID: //')
echo '{'
echo '"script path is":'"\$0"',
echo '"CMDdaemon running on":'"$CMD_HOSTNAME"',
echo '"script running on":'"$myhostname"',
echo '"'$myhostname' UUID":'"$myuuid"'
echo '}'
```

If run directly, outside of CMDaemon, then this would display a JSON key-value output similar to the following:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/sysinfo/head/outputscript.sh
{
"script path is": "/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/sysinfo/head/outputscript.sh",
"CMDdaemon running on": "",
"script running on": "basecm11",
"basecm11 UUID": "6733d33a-2933-41ea-aa3c-b218e784c8b9"
}
```

**Custom script placement—overview for placing on a regular node:** Placing this head script on a regular node can be done by copying the script into a local directory on the node image, and rebooting the regular node so that it picks up the image with the new local type script. After CMDaemon is updated with the new sysinfo information, then, whenever sysinfo is run, the script is automatically run by CMDaemon.

### Examples Of Running Custom Scripts In sysinfo

The following example session makes the preceding concepts more explicit: the script is copied over from the head node to the default image of a regular node. It goes into the directory location for custom sysinfo scripts of the local type. Rebooting a node then installs the new script on the node:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cp -r /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/sysinfo/head/outputscript.sh \
/cm/images/default-image/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/sysinfo/local/
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% reboot node001
[the reboot of the node has to complete]
```

To update cmdaemon with the values from the new scripts for the node, the --update option to the sysinfo command can be run for the node. Running sysinfo for the node then displays the output of the scripts for the node. The sysinfo output value for Age shows how long it has been since CMDaemon was updated by the scripts for the node:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% sysinfo node001 --update
[basecm11->device]% sysinfo node001
...

```

```

Age           11s
CMDaemon running on      node001
script running on      node001
node001 UUID          3b1c7973-07ef-419f-9324-4edf999690d5
script path is        /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/sysinfo/local/outputscript.sh } local script

CMDaemon running on      node001
script running on      basecm11
basecm11 UUID          6733d33a-2933-41ea-aa3c-b218e784c8b9
script path is        /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/sysinfo/head/outputscript.sh } head script

```

In the preceding example, the grouping braces are not part of the actual output. They are just part of this explanation, and show that the first four lines after the Age line are from the local type script running on node001. The four lines after that are from the head type script running on head, even though its corresponding CMDaemon is running on node001.

### Considerations Before Running Custom Scripts With sysinfo

Although BCM gives the administrator the freedom to construct all kinds of custom sysinfo scripts, some caution is urged before implementing the scripts. The following issues should at least be considered:

- The scripts should be speedy. The scripts run asynchronously, but a script is expected to take less than 15 seconds to run.
- The data output should be small. JSON objects allow, for example, that megabyte-sized text could be output by the sysinfo scripts. However, this is often unwise, given the nature of clusters. A cluster with a 1000 nodes and 1MB blobs would mean that 1GB of memory is being moved around.

## 3.19 Cluster Configuration Without Execution By CMDaemon

### 3.19.1 Cluster Configuration: The Bigger Picture

The configurations carried out in this chapter so far are based almost entirely on configuring nodes, via a CMDaemon front end (cmsh or Base View), using CMDaemon to execute the change. Indeed, much of this manual is about this too because it is the preferred technique. It is preferred:

- because it is intended by design to be the easiest way to do common cluster tasks,
- and also generally keeps administration overhead minimal in the long run since it is CMDaemon rather than the system administrator that then takes care of tracking the cluster state.

There are however other cluster configuration techniques besides execution by CMDaemon. To get some perspective on these, it should be noted that cluster configuration techniques are always fundamentally about modifying a cluster so that it functions in a different way. The techniques can then for convenience be separated out into modification techniques that rely on CMDaemon execution and techniques that do not, as follows:

1. **Configuring nodes with execution by CMDaemon:** As explained, this is the preferred technique. The remaining techniques listed here should therefore usually only be considered if the task cannot be done with Base View or cmsh.
2. **Replacing the node image:** The image on a node can be replaced by an entirely different one, so that the node can function in another way. This is covered in section 3.19.2. It can be claimed that since it is CMDaemon that selects the image, this technique should perhaps be classed as under

item 1. However, since the execution of the change is really carried out by the changed image without CMDaemon running on the image, and because changing the entire image to implement a change of functionality is rather extreme, this technique can be given a special mention outside of CMDaemon execution.

3. **Using a FrozenFile directive:** Applied to a configuration file, this directive prevents CMDaemon from executing changes on that file for nodes. During updates, the frozen configuration may therefore need to be changed manually. The prevention of CMDaemon acting on that file prevents the standard cluster functionality that would run based on a fully CMDaemon-controlled cluster configuration. The `FrozenFile` directive is introduced in section 2.6.5, and covered in the configuration context in section 3.19.3.
4. **Using an initialize or finalize script:** This type of script is run during the initrd stage, much before CMDaemon on the regular node starts up. It is run if the functionality provided by the script is needed before CMDaemon starts up, or if the functionality that is needed cannot be made available later on when CMDaemon is started on the regular nodes. CMDaemon does not execute the functionality of the script itself, but the script is accessed and set on the initrd via a CMDaemon front end (Appendix E.2), and executed during the initrd stage. It is often convenient to carry out minor changes to configuration files inside a specific image in this way, as shown by the example in Appendix E.5. The `initialize` and `finalize` scripts are introduced in section 3.19.4.
5. **A shared directory:** Nodes can be configured to access and execute a particular software stored on a shared directory of the cluster. CMDaemon does not execute the functionality of the software itself, but is able to mount and share directories, as covered in section 3.13.

Finally, outside the stricter scope of cluster configuration adjustment, but nonetheless a broader way to modify how a cluster functions, and therefore mentioned here for more completeness, is:

6. **Software management:** the installation, maintenance, and removal of software packages. Standard post-installation software management based on repositories is covered in sections 9.2–9.6. Third-party software management from outside the repositories, for software that is part of BCM is covered in Chapter 7 of the *Installation Manual*.

Third-party software that is not part of BCM can be managed on the head node as on any other Linux system, and is often placed under `/opt` or other recommended locations. If required by the other nodes, then the software should typically be set up by the administrator so that it can be accessed via a shared filesystem.

### 3.19.2 Making Nodes Function Differently By Image

#### Making All Nodes Function Differently By Image

To change the name of the image used for an entire cluster, for example after cloning the image and modifying it (section 3.19.2), the following methods can be used:

- in Base View, via Cluster > Settings > Cluster name
- or in cmsh from within the `base` object of partition mode

A system administrator more commonly sets the software image on a per-category or per-node basis (section 3.19.2).

#### Making Some Nodes Function Differently By Image

For minor changes, adjustments can often be made to node settings via initialize and finalize scripts so that nodes or node categories function differently (section 3.19.4).

For major changes on a category of nodes, it is usually more appropriate to have nodes function differently from each other by simply carrying out image changes per node category with CMDaemon. Carrying out image changes per node is also possible. As usual, node settings override category settings.

**Modifying images via cloning primitives for a node or category:** Setting a changed image for a category can be done as follows with cmsh:

1. The image on which the new one will be based is cloned. The cloning operation not only copies all the settings of the original (apart from the name), but also the data of the image:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% softwareimage
[basecm11->softwareimage]% clone default-image imagetwo
[basecm11->softwareimage*[imagetwo*]]% commit
... [notice] basecm11: Started to copy: /cm/images/default-image -> /cm/images/imagetwo
[basecm11->softwareimage*[imagetwo*]]%
... [notice] basecm11: Copied: /cm/images/default-image -> /cm/images/imagetwo
[basecm11->softwareimage*[imagetwo*]]%
```

2. After cloning, the settings can be modified in the new object. For example, if the kernel needs to be changed to suit nodes with different hardware, kernel modules settings are changed (section 5.3.2) and committed. This creates a new image with a new ramdisk.

Other ways of modifying and committing the image for the nodes are also possible, as discussed in sections 9.2–9.6.

3. The modified image that is to be used by the differently functioning nodes is placed in a new category in order to have the nodes be able to choose the image. To create a new category easily, it can simply be cloned. The image that the category uses is then set:

```
[basecm11->softwareimage*[imagetwo*]]% category
[basecm11->category]% clone default categorytwo
[basecm11->category*[categorytwo*]]% set softwareimage imagetwo
[basecm11->category*[categorytwo*]]% commit
[basecm11->category*[categorytwo*]]%
```

4. • For just one node, or a few nodes, the node can be set from device mode to the new category (which has the new image):

```
[basecm11->category*[categorytwo*]]% device
[basecm11->device]% use node099
[basecm11->device*[node099*]]% set category categorytwo
[basecm11->device*[node099*]]% commit; exit
```

- If there are many nodes, for example node100 sequentially up to node200, they can be set to that category using a foreach loop like this:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% foreach -n node100..node200 (set category categorytwo)
[basecm11->device*]*% commit
```

5. Rebooting restarts the nodes that are assigned to the new category with the new image.

**Modifying images by adding files in the cm/conf directory, for a category, node, or MAC address:** The preceding 5-step method is understandable. For just a few file changes it is perhaps overkill and not very elegant. BCM has a more structured and efficient way to make some nodes function differently by image if only a few file additions are to be carried out. The specification adds the files in the image via a target path that is specified in special configuration locations in the image. It can be configured per node, but also per category and MAC address.

- For a category, the specification takes the form:

```
/cm/images/<image>/cm/conf/category/<category>/<target>
```

Thus, if some file on the node is to be placed so that on a running node it is at /path/to/some.file, and this needs to be configured for an image default-image, and a category default, then it would be placed at this location on the head node:

### Example

```
/cm/images/default-image/cm/conf/category/default/path/to/some.file
```

The file on the target node would be placed in the absolute directory /path/to/some.file

Multiple categories can be configured per image. Thus, for example, beside the default category, an additional gpu category can exist:

### Example

```
/cm/images/default-image/cm/conf/category/gpu/path/to/some.file
```

Also, multiple files can be specified per category per image. Thus, beside the file some.file, an additional file some.other.file could be placed:

### Example

```
/cm/images/default-image/cm/conf/category/gpu/path/to/some.file
```

```
/cm/images/default-image/cm/conf/category/gpu/path/to/some.other.file
```

- For a node, the configuration form is:

```
/cm/images/<image>/cm/conf/node/<node name>/<target>
```

An example for a node called node001 could then be:

### Example

```
/cm/images/default-image/cm/conf/node/node001/path/to/some.file
```

- For a MAC address, the configuration form is:

```
/cm/images/<image>/cm/conf/node/<MAC address>/<target>
```

An example for a node with MAC address 00:aa:bb:cc:dd:ee could then be:

### Example

```
/cm/images/default-image/cm/conf/node/00-aa-bb-cc-dd-ee/path/to/some.file
```

The copying of the specified files to the image is done just before the finalize stage of the node-installer (section 5.4.11) during node provisioning.

A common theme in BCM is that node-level configuration overrides category-level configuration. In keeping with this behavior, a file configuration at category level could be applied to the many nodes in a category. And, a file configuration copy at node level (for a node that is in the category) overrides the category level value for just that particular node.

### 3.19.3 Making All Nodes Function Differently From Normal Cluster Behavior With FrozenFile

Configuration changes carried out by Base View or cmsh often generate, restore, or modify configuration files (Appendix A).

However, sometimes an administrator may need to make a direct change (without using Base View or cmsh) to a configuration file to set up a special configuration that cannot otherwise be done.

The `FrozenFile` directive to CMDaemon (Appendix C, page 857) applied to such a configuration file stops CMDaemon from altering the file. The frozen configuration file is generally applicable to all nodes and is therefore a possible way of making all nodes function differently from their standard behavior.

Freezing files is however best avoided, if possible, in favor of a CMDaemon-based method of configuring nodes, for the sake of administrative maintainability.

### 3.19.4 Adding Functionality To Nodes Via An initialize Or finalize Script

CMDaemon can normally be used to allocate different images per node or node category as explained in section 3.19.2. However, some configuration files do not survive a reboot (Appendix A), sometimes hardware issues can prevent a consistent end configuration, and sometimes drivers need to be initialized before provisioning of an image can happen. In such cases, an `initialize` or `finalize` script (sections 5.4.5, 5.4.11, and Appendix E.5) can be used to initialize or configure nodes or node categories.

These scripts are also useful because they can be used to implement minor changes across nodes:

#### Example

Supposing that some nodes with a particular network interface have a problem auto-negotiating their network speed, and default to 100Mbps instead of the maximum speed of 1000Mbps. Such nodes can be set to ignore auto-negotiation and be forced to use the 1000Mbps speed by using the `ETHTOOL_OPTS` configuration parameter in their network interface configuration file: `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0` (or `/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0` in SUSE).

The `ETHTOOL_OPTS` parameter takes the options to the “`ethtool -s <device>`” command as options. The value of `<device>` (for example `eth0`) is specified by the filename that is used by the configuration file itself (for example `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0`). The `ethtool` package is installed by default with BCM. Running the command:

```
ethtool -s autoneg off speed 1000 duplex full
```

turns out after some testing to be enough to reliably get the network card up and running at 1000Mbps on the problem hardware.

However, since the network configuration file is overwritten by node-installer settings during reboot, a way to bring persistence to the file setting is needed. One way to ensure persistence is to append the configuration setting to the file with a `finalize` script, so that it gets tagged onto the end of the configuration setting that the node-installer places for the file, just before the network interfaces are taken down again in preparation for `init`.

The script may thus look something like this for a Red Hat system:

```
#!/bin/bash

## node010..node014 get forced to 1000 duplex
if [[ $CMD_HOSTNAME = node01[0-4] ]]
then
echo 'ETHTOOL_OPTS="speed 1000 duplex full"'>>/localdisk/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0
fi
```

The method of enforcing an interface space just outlined is actually just for educational illustration, and is not a recommended method.

In practice, the recommended way to enforce an interface speed is to simply set it in the CMDaemon database. For example, for the boot interface of node001 it could be via the Base View navigation path:

Devices > Nodes [node001] > Edit > Settings > Interfaces [BOOTIF] > Edit > Speed

### 3.19.5 Examples Of Configuring Nodes With Or Without CMDaemon

A node or node category can often have its software configured in CMDaemon via Base View or cmsh:

#### Example

**Configuring a software for nodes using Base View or cmsh:** If the software under consideration is CUPS, then a node or node category can manage it from Base View or cmsh as outlined in section 3.14.2.

A counterexample to this is:

#### Example

**Configuring a software for nodes without using Base View or cmsh<sup>3</sup>, using an image:** Software images can be created with and without CUPS configured. Setting up nodes to load one of these two images via a node category is an alternative way of letting nodes run CUPS.

Whether node configuration for a particular functionality is done with CMDaemon, or directly with the software, depends on what an administrator prefers. In the preceding two examples, the first example, that is the one with Base View or cmsh setting the CUPS service, is likely to be preferred over the second example, where an entire separate image must be maintained. A new category must also be created in the second case.

Generally, sometimes configuring the node via BCM, and not having to manage images is better, sometimes configuring the software and making various images to be managed out of it is better, and sometimes only one of these techniques is possible anyway.

#### Configuring Nodes Using Base View Or cmsh: Category Settings

When configuring nodes using Base View or cmsh, configuring particular nodes from a node category to overrule the state of the rest of its category (as explained in section 2.1.3) is sensible for a small number of nodes. For larger numbers it may not be organizationally practical to do this, and another category can instead be created to handle nodes with the changes conveniently.

The CUPS service in the next two examples is carried out by implementing the changes via Base View or cmsh acting on CMDaemon.

#### Example

**Setting a few nodes in a category:** If only a few nodes in a category are to run CUPS, then it can be done by enabling CUPs just for those few nodes, thereby overriding (section 2.1.3) the category settings.

#### Example

**Setting many nodes to a category:** If there are many nodes that are to be set to run CUPS, then a separate, new category can be created (cloning it from the existing one is easiest) and those many nodes are moved into that category, while the image is kept unchanged. The CUPS service setting is then set at category level to the appropriate value for the new category.

In contrast to these two examples, the software image method used in section 3.19.2 to implement a functionality such as CUPS would load up CUPS as configured in an image, and would not handle

---

<sup>3</sup>except to link nodes to their appropriate image via the associated category

it via CMDaemon<sup>3</sup>. So, in section 3.19.2, software images prepared by the administrator are set for a node category. Since, by design, images are only selected for a category, a node cannot override the image used by the category other than by creating a new category, and using it with the new image. The administrative overhead of this can be inconvenient.

Administrators would therefore normally prefer letting CMDaemon track software functionality across nodes as in the last two examples, rather than having to deal with tracking software images manually. Indeed, the `roles` assignment option (section 2.1.5) is just a special pre-configured functionality toggle that allows CMDaemon to set categories or regular nodes to provide certain functions, typically by enabling services.

## 3.20 Saving A Backup Of Configuration Files With `versionconfigfiles`

If `versionconfigfiles` is set to the value `yes` for a node or a category, then if configuration files changed for that node or category due to CMDaemon, then the old configuration files are saved.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set versionconfigfiles yes; commit
```

This is useful, for example, if an administrator would like to know what the configuration was just before it was changed.

If a configuration change takes place, then the old configuration files are automatically sent from the node where they changed, to the active head node. The configuration files:

- are saved on the active head node under the directory `/var/spool/cmd/config_file_versions`, under their node name.
- have a modification time that indicates the time of the change.
- are given a suffix in the form of the local unix epoch time.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cd /var/spool/cmd/
[root@basecm11 cmd]# tree -a --charset=C config_file_versions/
config_file_versions/
|-- node001
|   |-- cm
|   |   |-- local
|   |   |   '-- modulefiles
|   |   |       '-- slurm
|   |   |           |-- .modulerc.lua.1970-01-01_01:00:00
|   |   |           '-- slurm
|   |   |               '-- 21.08.8.1970-01-01_01:00:00
|   |
|   ...
|
[root@basecm11 cmd]# cd config_file_versions/node001/cm/local/modulefiles/slurm/
[root@basecm11 slurm]# ls -al .modulerc.lua.1970-01-01_01:00:00
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 43 Mar 14 17:22 .modulerc.lua.1970-01-01_01:00:00
[root@basecm11 slurm]#
```



# 4

## Power Management

Aspects of power management in NVIDIA Base Command Manager include:

- managing the main power supply to nodes through the use of power distribution units, baseboard management controllers, or CMDaemon
- monitoring power consumption over time
- setting power-saving options in workload managers
- ensuring the passive head node can safely take over from the active head during failover (Chapter 15)
- allowing cluster burn tests to be carried out (Chapter 11 of the *Installation Manual*)

The ability to control power inside a cluster is therefore important for cluster administration, and also creates opportunities for power savings. This chapter describes BCM power management features.

In section 4.1 the configuration of the methods used for power operations is described.

Section 4.2 then describes the way the power operations commands themselves are used to allow the administrator turn power on or off, reset the power, and retrieve the power status. It explains how these operations can be applied to devices in various ways.

Section 4.3 briefly covers monitoring power.

The integration of power saving with workload management systems is covered in the chapter on Workload Management (section 7.9).

Power management at rack level and at data center level, and using power shelves, is covered in chapters 3 and 4 of the *NVIDIA Mission Control Manual*.

### 4.1 Configuring Power Parameters

Several methods exist to control power to devices:

- Power Distribution Unit (PDU) based power control
- IPMI-based power control (for node devices only)
- Custom power control
- HP iLO-based power control (for node devices only)
- Dell DRAC-based power control (for node devices only)
- Cisco UCS CIMC-based power control (for node devices only)
- Redfish-based power control (for node devices only)

#### 4.1.1 PDU-based Power Control

##### Introduction To PDU-based Power Control

For PDU-based power control, the power supply of a device is plugged into a port on a PDU. The device can be a node, but also anything else with a power supply, such as a switch or a blade chassis. The device can then be turned on or off by changing the state of the PDU port.

##### Configuring The PDU Itself

To use PDU-based power control, the PDU itself must be added and configured as a device in the cluster, and must be reachable over the network. PDU configuration was introduced in section 3.9. A summary of the configuration of PDUs is as follows:

The PDU can be added via cmsh using device mode, and is set as an object with a type of PowerDeviceUnit and is given a name. The value for Ports is automatically read, and is the number of power ports available to the other devices in the cluster.

In Base View the corresponding navigation path for a PDU named mypdu is:

```
Devices > PowerDistribution Unit list > mypdu > Add
```

##### Configuring The Devices To Use The PDU

After the PDU itself is configured, then the devices that use it can be configured to use the PDU and its ports.

For example, for a node node001 that is be powered by the PDU mypdu, in Base View the configuration can be done using the navigation path:

```
Devices > Nodes > Physical Node list[node001] > Edit > Settings > JUMP TO > Power Distribution Units > ADD > PDUPort
```

which opens up the PDU Port window (figure 4.1):

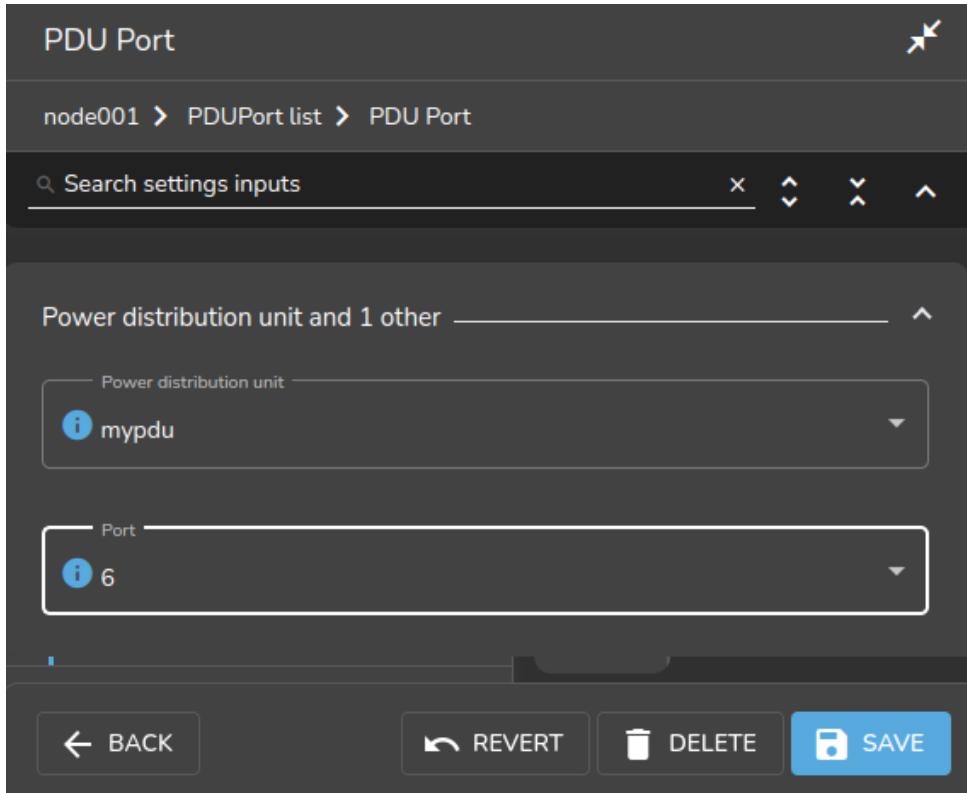


Figure 4.1: PDU configuration settings for a node

and allows the PDU and port used by node001 to be set.

**For the APC brand of PDUs:** the Power control property (page 137) should be set to apc, or the list of PDU ports is ignored by default. Overriding the default is described in section 4.1.3.

#### Power Ports: One-to-many And Many-to-one

Nodes may have multiple power feeds for redundancy reasons. Thus, there may be multiple PDU ports and multiple PDUs defined for a single device. The cluster management takes care of operating all ports of a device in the correct order when a power operation is done on the device.

For example, if a PDU mypdu has its ports 2 and 4 connected to a blade chassis mychassis, then the configuration can be specified using cmsh with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device*[mychassis]]% set powerdistributionunits mypdu:2 mypdu:4; commit
```

It is also possible for multiple devices to share the same PDU port. This is the case for example when *twin nodes* are used (i.e. two nodes sharing a single power supply). In this case, all power operations on one device apply to all nodes sharing the same PDU port.

#### Non-manageable PDUs

If the PDUs defined for a node are not manageable, then the node's baseboard management controllers (that is, IPMI/iLO and similar) are assumed to be inoperative and are therefore assigned an unknown state. This means that dumb PDUs, which cannot be managed remotely, are best not assigned to nodes in BCM. It is suggested that administrators record that a dumb PDU is assigned to a node as follows:

- in Base View the Notes field or the Userdefined1/Userdefined2 fields can be used with the navigation paths:

```
Devices[device] > Settings > Partition > Notes
or
Devices[device] > Settings > User Defined > Userdefined1/Userdefined1
```

- in cmsh the equivalent is accessible on using the device from device mode, and running:

- set notes
- set userdefined1 or
- set userdefined2

### Manageable PDUs And Node Power Status

For PDUs that are manageable:

- In cmsh, power-related options can be accessed from device mode, after selecting a device:

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% show | grep -i power
Custom power script argument
Ipmi/iLO power reset delay          0
Power control                      apc
PowerDistributionUnits             apc01:6 apc01:7
```

The power status of a node can be accessed with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% power status
```

If the node is up and has one or more PDUs assigned to it, then the power status is one of ON, OFF, RESET, FAILED, or UNKNOWN:

Power Status	Description
ON	Power is on
OFF	Power is off
RESET	Shows during the short time the power is off during a power reset. The reset is a hard power off for PDUs, but can be a soft or hard reset for other power control devices.
FAILED	Power status script communication failure.
UNKNOWN	Power status script timeout

#### 4.1.2 IPMI-Based Power Control

IPMI-based power control relies on the baseboard management controller (BMC) inside a node. It is therefore only available for node devices. Blades inside a blade chassis typically use IPMI for power management. Section 3.7 describes setting up networking and authentication for IPMI/iLO/DRAC/CIMC/Redfish interfaces.

To carry out IPMI-based power control operations, the `Power control` property (page 137) must be set to the IPMI interface through which power operations should be relayed. Normally this IPMI interface is configured to be `ipmi0`. Any list of configured APC PDU ports displayed in the GUI is ignored by default when the `Power control` property is not `apc`.

#### Example

Configuring power parameters settings for all the nodes using `cmsh`, with IPMI interfaces that are called `ipmi0`:

```
[mycluster]% device
[...device]% foreach -t physicalnode (set powercontrol ipmi0; commit)
```

#### Example

Configuring power parameters settings for a node using `cmsh` with APC:

```
[mycluster]% device use node001
[...device[node001]]% set powerdistributionunits apc01:6 apc01:7 apc01:8
[...device*[node001*]]% get powerdistributionunits
apc01:6 apc01:7 apc01:8
[...device*[node001*]]% removefrom powerdistributionunits apc01:7
[...device*[node001*]]% get powerdistributionunits
apc01:6 apc01:8
[...device*[node001*]]% set powercontrol apc
[...device*[node001*]]% get powercontrol
apc
[...device*[node001*]]% commit
```

### 4.1.3 Combining PDU- and IPMI-Based Power Control

By default when nodes are configured for IPMI Based Power Control, any configured PDU ports are ignored. However, it is sometimes useful to change this behavior.

For example, in the CMDDaemon configuration file directives in `/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf` (introduced in section 2.6.2 and listed in Appendix C), the default value of `PowerOffPDUOutlet` is `false`. It can be set to `true` on the head node, and CMDDaemon restarted to activate it.

With `PowerOffPDUOutlet` set to `true` it means that CMDDaemon, after receiving an IPMI-based power off instruction for a node, and after powering off that node, also subsequently powers off the PDU port. Powering off the PDU port shuts down the BMC, which saves some additional power—typically a few watts per node. When multiple nodes share the same PDU port, the PDU port only powers off when all nodes served by that particular PDU port are powered off.

When a node has to be started up again the power is restored to the node. It is important that the node BIOS is configured to automatically power on the node when power is restored.

### 4.1.4 Custom Power Control

For a device which cannot be controlled through any of the standard existing power control options, it is possible to set a custom power management script. This is then invoked by the cluster management daemon on the head node whenever a power operation for the device is done.

Power operations are described further in section 4.2.

#### Using `custompowerscript`

To set a custom power management script for a device, the `powercontrol` attribute is set by the administrator to `custom` using either Base View or `cmsh`, and the value of `custompowerscript` is specified by the administrator. The value for `custompowerscript` is the full path to an executable custom power management script on the head node(s) of a cluster.

A custom power script is invoked with the following mandatory arguments:

```
myscript <operation> <device>
```

where <device> is the name of the device on which the power operation is done, and <operation> is one of the following:

```
ON
OFF
RESET
STATUS
```

On success a custom power script exits with exit code 0. On failure, the script exits with a non-zero exit-code.

### **Using `custompowerscriptargument`**

The mandatory argument values for <operation> and <device> are passed to a custom script for processing. For example, in bash the positional variables \$1 and \$2 are typically used for a custom power script. A custom power script can also be passed a further argument value by setting the value of `custompowerscriptargument` for the node via cmsh or Base View. This further argument value would then be passed to the positional variable \$3 in bash.

An example custom power script is located at /cm/local/examples/cmd/custompower. In it, setting \$3 to a positive integer delays the script via a `sleep` command by \$3 seconds.

An example that is conceivably more useful than a “`sleep $3`” command is to have a “`wakeonlan $3`” command instead. If the `custompowerscriptargument` value is set to the MAC address of the node, that means the MAC value is passed on to \$3. Using this technique, the power operation ON can then carry out a Wake On LAN operation on the node from the head node.

Setting the `custompowerscriptargument` can be done like this for all nodes:

```
#!/bin/bash
for nodename in $(cmsh -c "device; foreach * (get hostname)")
do
    macad=`cmsh -c "device use $nodename; get mac"`
    cmsh -c "device use $nodename; set customscriptargument $macad; commit"
done
```

The preceding material usefully illustrates how `custompowerscriptargument` can be used to pass on arbitrary parameters for execution to a custom script.

However, the goal of the task can be achieved in a simpler and quicker way using the environment variables available in the cluster management daemon environment (section 3.3.1 of the *Developer Manual*). This is explained next.

### **Using Environment Variables With `custompowerscript`**

Simplification of the steps needed for custom scripts in CMDaemon is often possible because there are values in the CMDaemon environment already available to the script. A line such as:

```
env > /tmp/env
```

added to the start of a custom script dumps the names and values of the environment variables to /tmp/env for viewing.

One of the names is `$CMD_MAC`, and it holds the MAC address string of the node being considered.

So, it is not necessary to retrieve a MAC value for `custompowerscriptargument` with a bash script as shown in the previous section, and then pass the argument via \$3 such as done in the command “`wakeonlan $3`”. Instead, `custompowerscript` can simply call “`wakeonlan $CMD_MAC`” directly in the script when run as a power operation command from within CMDaemon.

#### 4.1.5 Hewlett Packard iLO-Based Power Control

##### iLO Configuration During Installation

If “Hewlett Packard” is chosen as the node manufacturer during installation (section 3.3.11 of the *Installation Manual*), and the nodes have an iLO management interface, then Hewlett-Packard’s iLO management package, hponcfg, is installed by default on the nodes and head nodes.

##### iLO Configuration After Installation

If “Hewlett Packard” has not been specified as the node manufacturer during installation then it can be configured after installation as follows:

The hponcfg rpm package is normally obtained and upgraded for specific HP hardware from the HP website. Using an example of hponcfg-3.1.1-0.noarch.rpm as the package downloaded from the HP website, and to be installed, the installation can then be done on the head node, the software image, and in the node-installer as follows:

```
rpm -iv hponcfg-3.1.1-0.noarch.rpm  
rpm --root /cm/images/default-image -iv hponcfg-3.1.1-0.noarch.rpm  
rpm --root /cm/node-installer -iv hponcfg-3.1.1-0.noarch.rpm
```

To use iLO on a node, the iLO interface of the node is set up just like the IPMI interfaces as outlined in section 4.1.2. That is, using “set powercontrol ilo0” instead of “set powercontrol ipmi0”. BCM treats HP iLO interfaces just like regular IPMI interfaces, except that the interface names are ilo0, ilo1... instead of ipmi0, ipmi1...

For example, nodes in the default category can be brought under iLO power control as follows:

##### Example

```
[mycluster]% device foreach -c default (set powercontrol ilo0)  
[mycluster]% device commit
```

#### 4.1.6 Dell drac-based Power Control

Dell drac configuration is covered on page 126.

#### 4.1.7 Redfish-Based and CIMC-Based Power Control

Section 3.7 describes setting up networking and authentication for Redfish/CIMC, as well as for IPMI/iLO/DRAC interfaces.

## 4.2 Power Operations

### 4.2.1 Power Operations Overview

#### Main Power Operations

Power operations may be carried out on devices from either Base View or cmsh. There are four main power operations:

- Power On: power on a device
- Power Off: power off a device
- Power Reset: power off a device and power it on again after a brief delay
- Power Status: check power status of a device

### Scheduling-related Power Operations

There are also *scheduling-related* power operations, which are currently (December 2018) only accessible via cmsh. Scheduling-related power operations are power operations associated with managing and viewing explicitly-scheduled execution.

Scheduled execution of power operations can be carried out explicitly via the `--at`, `--after`, `-d`, and `--parallel-delay` options. The scheduling-related power operations to manage and view such scheduled power operations are:

- `power wait`: Identifies the devices that have power operations that are in the waiting state, i.e. waiting to be carried out, and also outputs the number of operations that are waiting to be carried out.
- `power cancel`: Cancels an operation in the waiting state. The devices on which they should be cancelled can be specified.
- `power list`: Lists the power operations on the device and the states of the operations. Possible states for operations are:
  - `waiting`: waiting to be executed
  - `busy`: are being executed
  - `canceled`: have been canceled
  - `done`: have been executed

It is possible that power operations without an explicitly-scheduled execution time setting show up very briefly in the output of `power list` and `power wait`. However, the output displayed is almost always about the explicitly-scheduled power operations.

#### 4.2.2 Power Operations With Base View

In Base View, executing the main power operations can be carried out as follows:

- using the vertical dots option within the Actions column for a device. This can be accessed for a device—for example the head node—using the navigation path:

```
Devices > All Devices > Head Node > :
```

Clicking on the vertical dots then makes power operation menu items available (figure 4.2):

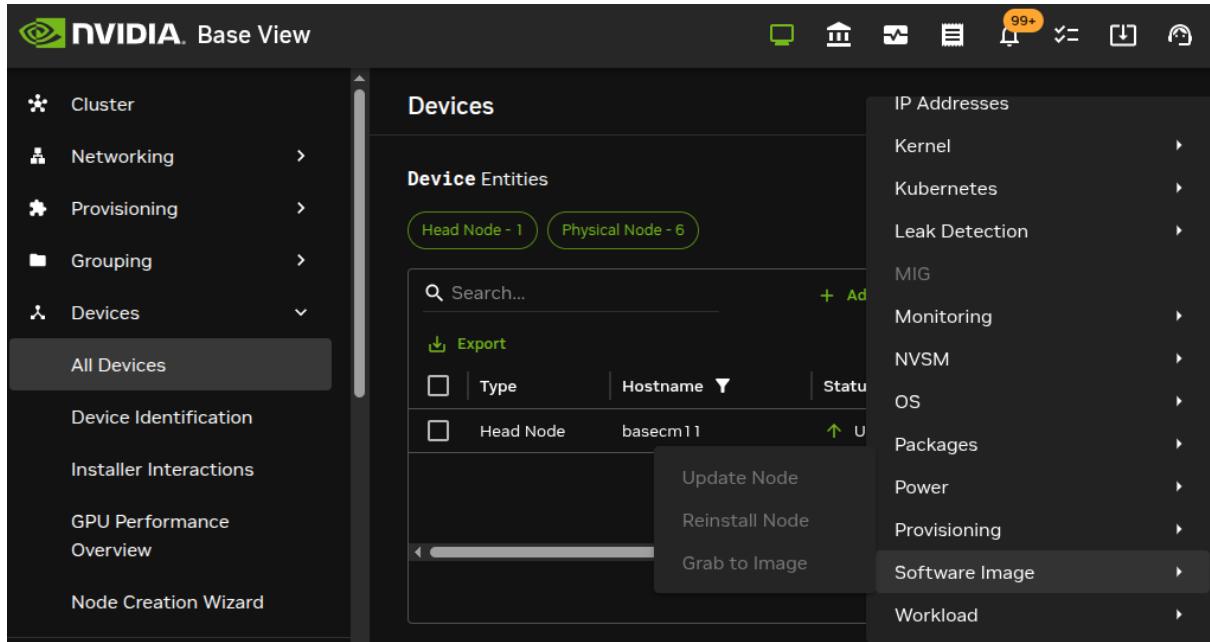


Figure 4.2: Actions button, accessing the power operations

- using the vertical dots option within the Actions column for categories or nodegroups. This can be accessed—for example the default category—using the navigation path:

`Grouping > Categories > default > :`

#### 4.2.3 Power Operations Through cmsh

Power operations on nodes can be carried out from within the device mode of cmsh, via the power command options.

##### Powering On

Powering on can be carried out on a list of nodes (page 67). Powering on node001, and nodes from node018 to node033 (output truncated):

##### Example

```
[mycluster]% device power -n node001,node018..node033 on
apc01:1 ..... [ ON ] node001
apc02:8 ..... [ ON ] node018
apc02:9 ..... [ ON ] node019
...
...
```

When a power operation is carried out on multiple devices, CMDaemon ensures that a 1 second delay occurs by default between successive devices. This helps avoid power surges on the infrastructure.

##### Delay Period Between Nodes

The delay period can be modified from within the device mode of cmsh, by using the `-d | --delay` option of the power command. For example, the preceding power command can be run with a shorter, 10ms delay with:

```
[mycluster]% device power -n node001,node018..node033 -d 0.01 on
```

A 0-second delay (`-d 0`) should not be set for larger number of nodes, unless the power surge that this would cause has been taken into consideration.

## Powering Up In Batches

Groups of nodes can be powered up “in batches”, according to power surge considerations. For example, to power up 3 racks at a time (“in batches of 3”), the `-p|--parallel` option is used:

### Example

```
[mycluster]% device power on -p 3 rack[01-12]
```

By default, there is a delay of 20s between batch commands. So, in the preceding example, there is a 20s pause before the each batch of the next three racks is powered up. For batch operation a delay of `-d 0` is assumed, i.e. the nodes within in the rack are powered up without a built-in delay between the nodes of the rack.

## Thread Use During Powering Up

The default number of threads that are started up to handle powering up of all the nodes is 32. If the hardware can cope with it, then it is possible to decrease startup time by increasing the default number of threads used to handle powerup, by editing the `PowerThreadPoolSize` advanced configuration directive in CMDaemon (page 856).

## Powering Off Nodes

An example of powering off nodes is the following, where all nodes in the `default` category are powered off, with a 100ms delay between nodes (some output elided):

### Example

```
[mycluster]% device power off -c default -d 0.1
apc01:1 ..... [ OFF ] node001
apc01:2 ..... [ OFF ] node002
...
apc23:8 ..... [ OFF ] node953
```

## Getting The Power Status

The `power status` command lists the status for devices:

### Example

```
[mycluster]% device power status -g mygroup
apc01:3 ..... [ ON ] node003
apc01:4 ..... [ OFF ] node004
```

## Getting The Power History

The `power history` command lists the last few power operations on nodes. By default it lists up to the last 8.

### Example

Device	Time	Operation	Success
node001	Sat Sep 14 03:35:03 2019	shutdown	yes
node001	Fri Sep 20 14:28:38 2019	on	yes
node002	Sat Sep 14 03:35:03 2019	shutdown	yes
node002	Fri Sep 20 14:28:38 2019	on	yes
node003	Sat Sep 14 03:35:03 2019	shutdown	yes
node003	Fri Sep 20 14:28:38 2019	on	yes
node004	Sat Sep 14 03:35:03 2019	shutdown	yes

**The power Command Help Text**

The help text for the power command is:

```
[basecm11->device] % help power
Name:
    power - Manipulate or retrieve power state of devices

Usage:
    power [OPTIONS] status
    power [OPTIONS] on
    power [OPTIONS] off
    power [OPTIONS] reset
    power [OPTIONS] list
    power [OPTIONS] history
    power [OPTIONS] cancel
    power [OPTIONS] wait <index>

Options:
    -n, --nodes <node>
        List of nodes, e.g. node001..node015,node020..node028,node030 or
        ^/some/file/containing/hostname

    -g, --group <group>
        Include all nodes that belong to the node group, e.g. testnodes or test01,test03

    -c, --category <category>
        Include all nodes that belong to the category, e.g. default or default,gpu

    -r, --rack <rack>
        Include all nodes that are located in the given rack, e.g rack01 or
        rack01..rack04

    -h, --chassis <chassis>
        Include all nodes that are located in the given chassis, e.g chassis01 or
        chassis03..chassis05

    -e, --overlay <overlay>
        Include all nodes that are part of the given overlay, e.g overlay1 or
        overlayA,overlayC

    -m, --image <image>
        Include all nodes that have the given image, e.g default-image or
        default-image,gpu-image

    -t, --type <type>
        Type of devices, e.g node or virtualnode,cloudnode

    -i, --intersection
        Calculate the intersection of the above selections

    -u, --union
        Calculate the union of the above selections

    -l, --role role
        Filter all nodes that have the given role
```

```

-s, --status <status>
    Only run command on nodes with specified status, e.g. UP, "CLOSED|DOWN",
    "INST.*"

-b, --background
    Run in background, output will come as events

-d, --delay <seconds>
    Wait <seconds> between executing two sequential power commands. This option is
    ignored for the status command

-f, --force
    Force power command on devices which have been closed

-w, --overview
    Group all power operation results into an overview

-p, --parallel <number>
    Number of parallel option-items to be used per batch, default 0 (disabled)

--at <time>
    Execute the operation at the provided time

--after <seconds>
    Wait <seconds> before executing the operation

--parallel-delay <seconds>
    Wait <seconds> between executing the next batch of parallel commands, default
    20s

--parallel-dry-run
    Only display the times at which operations will be executed, do not perform
    any power operations

--retry-count <number>
    Number of times to retry operation if it failed the first time (default 0)

--retry-delay <seconds>
    Delay between consecutive tries of a failed power operation (default 3s)

--port <pdu>:<port>
    Do the power operation directly on a pdu port.

```

**Examples:**

power status	Display power status for all devices or current device
power on node001	Power on node001
power on -n node00[1-2]	Power on node001 and node002
power list	List all pending power operations
power history	List the last couple of power operations
power wait	List all power operation that can be waited for
power wait 1	Wait for a power operation to be completed
power wait all	Wait for all power operations to be completed
power wait last	Wait for the last given power operation to be completed
power off --after 10m	Power off the current node after 10 minutes

```
power off --at 23:55      Power off the current node today just before midnight
power cancel node001      Cancel all pending power operations for node001
power on -p 4 rack[01-80] Power on racks 1 to 80 in batches of 4. With a delay of 20s
                           between each batch. And a delay of 0s between nodes.
power on --port pdu1:1    Power on port 1 on pdu1
power on --port pdu1:[1-4] Power on port 1 through 4 on pdu1
```

## 4.3 Monitoring Power

Monitoring power consumption is important since electrical power is an important component of the total cost of ownership for a cluster. The monitoring system of BCM collects power-related data from PDUs in the following metrics:

- PDUBankLoad: Phase load (in amperes) for one (specified) bank in a PDU
- PDULoad: Total phase load (in amperes) for one PDU

Chapter 10 on cluster monitoring has more on metrics and how they can be visualized.

## 4.4 Switch Configuration To Survive Power Downs

Besides the nodes and the BMC interfaces being configured for power control, it may be necessary to check that switches can handle power on and off network operations properly. Interfaces typically negotiate the link speed down to reduce power while still supporting Wake On Lan and other features. During such renegotiations the switch may lose connectivity to the node or BMC interface. This can happen if dynamic speed negotiation is disabled on the switch. Dynamic speed negotiation should therefore be configured to be on on the switch in order to reduce the chance that a node does not provision from a powered down state.



# 5

# Node Provisioning

This chapter covers *node provisioning*. Node provisioning is the process of how nodes obtain an image. Typically, this happens during their stages of progress from power-up to becoming active in a cluster, but node provisioning can also take place when updating a running node.

Section 5.1 describes the stages leading up to the loading of the kernel onto the node.

Section 5.2 covers configuration and behavior of the provisioning nodes that supply the software images.

Section 5.3 describes the configuration and loading of the kernel, the ramdisk, and kernel modules.

Section 5.4 elaborates on how the node-installer identifies and places the software image on the node in a 13-step process.

Section 5.5 explains node states during normal boot, as well node states that indicate boot problems.

Section 5.6 describes how running nodes can be updated, and modifications that can be done to the update process.

Section 5.7 explains how to add new nodes to a cluster so that node provisioning will work for these new nodes too. The Base View and cmsh front ends for creating new node objects and properties in CMDaemon are described.

Section 5.8 describes troubleshooting the node provisioning process.

## 5.1 Before The Kernel Loads

Immediately after powering up a node, and before it is able to load up the Linux kernel, a node starts its boot process in several possible ways:

### 5.1.1 PXE Booting

By default, nodes boot from the network when using BCM. This is called a *network boot*. On the x86\_64 (amd64) architecture it is known as a *PXE boot* (often pronounced as “pixie boot”). It is recommended as a BIOS setting for nodes. The head node runs a tftpd server that is managed by systemd. The tftpd server supplies the boot loader from within the default software image (section 2.1.2) offered to nodes.

The boot loader runs on the node and displays a menu (figure 5.1) based on loading a menu module within a configuration file. The default configuration files offered to nodes are located under /tftpboot/pixelinux.cfg/ on the head node. To implement changes in the files, CMDaemon may need to be restarted, or the updateprovisioners command (page 233) can be run.

The default configuration files give instructions to the menu module of PXElinux. The instruction set used is documented at <http://www.syslinux.org/wiki/index.php/Comboot/menu.c32>, and includes the TIMEOUT, LABEL, MENU LABEL, DEFAULT, and MENU DEFAULT instructions.

#### The PXE TIMEOUT Instruction

During the display of the PXE boot menu, a selection can be made within a timeout period to boot the node in a several ways. Among the options are some of the install mode options (section 5.4.4). If no

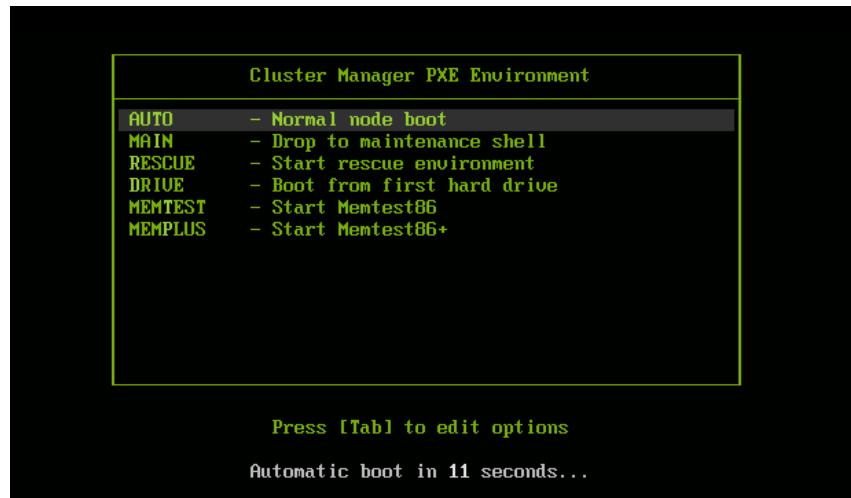


Figure 5.1: PXE boot menu options

selection is made by the user within the timeout period, then the AUTO install mode option is chosen by default.

In the PXE menu configuration files under pxelinux.cfg/, the default timeout of 5 seconds can be adjusted by changing the value of the "TIMEOUT 50" line. This value is specified in deciseconds.

### Example

```
TIMEOUT 300 # changed timeout from 50 (=5 seconds)
```

### The PXE LABEL And MENU LABEL Instructions

**LABEL:** The menu configuration files under pxelinux.cfg/ contain several multiline LABEL statements.

Each LABEL statement is associated with a kernel image that can be loaded from the PXE boot menu along with appropriate kernel options.

Each LABEL statement also has a text immediately following the LABEL tag. Typically the text is a description, such as linux, main, RESCUE, and so on. If the PXE menu module is not used, then tab completion prompting displays the list of possible text values at the PXE boot prompt so that the associated kernel image and options can be chosen by user intervention.

**MENU LABEL:** By default, the PXE menu module is used, and by default, each LABEL statement also contains a MENU LABEL instruction. Each MENU LABEL instruction also has a text immediately following the MENU LABEL tag. Typically the text is a description, such as AUTO, RESCUE and so on (figure 5.1). Using the PXE menu module means that the list of the MENU LABEL text values is displayed when the PXE boot menu is displayed, so that the associated kernel image and options can conveniently be selected by user intervention.

### The PXE DEFAULT And MENU DEFAULT Instructions

**DEFAULT:** If the PXE menu module is not used and if no MENU instructions are used, and if there is no user intervention, then setting the same text that follows a LABEL tag immediately after the DEFAULT instruction, results in the associated kernel image and its options being run by default after the timeout.

By default, as already explained, the PXE menu module is used. In particular it uses the setting: DEFAULT menu.c32 to enable the menu.

**MENU DEFAULT:** If the PXE menu module is used and if MENU instructions are used, and if there is no user intervention, then setting a MENU DEFAULT tag as a line within the multiline LABEL statement results in the kernel image and options associated with that LABEL statement being loaded by default after the timeout.

### The CMDaemon PXE Label Setting For Specific Nodes

The MENU DEFAULT value by default applies to every node using the software image that the PXE menu configuration file under `pxelinux.cfg/` is loaded from. To override its application on a per-node basis, the value of PXE Label can be set for each node.

- Some simple examples of overriding the default MENU DEFAULT value are as follows:

- For example, using cmsh:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set pxelabel MEMTEST ; commit
```

Carrying it out for all nodes in the default category can be done, for example, with:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% foreach -c default (set pxelabel MEMTEST)
[basecm11->device*]% commit
```

The value of pxelabel can be cleared with:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device; foreach -c default (clear pxelabel); commit"
```

- In Base View, the PXE label can be set for a node node001 using the navigation path

Devices > Nodes > Physical Node list[node001] > Settings[Physical Node node001] > Provisioning[PXE Label]

which leads to a screen as in (figure 5.2):

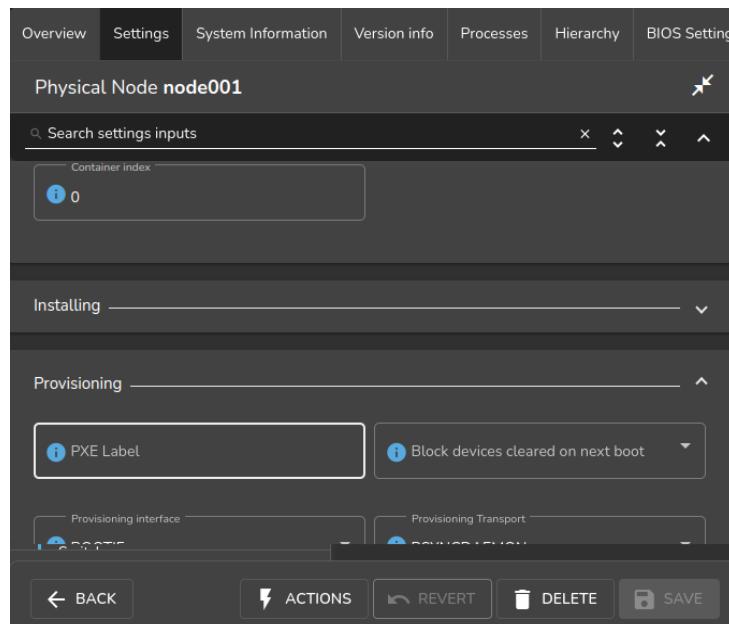


Figure 5.2: Base View PXE Label option

- A more complicated example of overriding the default MENU DEFAULT value now follows. Although it helps in understanding how PXE labels can be used, it can normally be skipped because the use case for it is unlikely, and the details are involved.

In this example, `pxelabel` is set by the administrator via Base View or `cmsh` to `localdrive`. This will then set the node to boot from the first local drive and not the node-installer. This is a setting that is discouraged since it usually makes node management harder, but it can be used by administrators who do not wish to answer any prompt during node boot, and also want the node drives to have no risk of being overwritten by the actions of the node-installer, and also want the system to be up and running quite fully, even if not necessarily provisioned with the latest image from the head node.

Here, the overwriting-avoidance method relies on the nodes being associated with a configuration file under `pxelinux.cfg` at the time that the `localdrive` setting is done. However, nodes that are unidentified, or are identified later on, will have their MENU DEFAULT value still set to a default `pxelabel` value set in the files under `/tftpboot/pxelinux.cfg/`, which is the value `linux` by default, and which is associated with a code block in that file with the label `LABEL linux`. To make such (as yet) unidentified nodes boot to a `localdrive` setting instead, requires modifying the files under `/tftpboot/pxelinux.cfg/`, so that the MENU DEFAULT line is associated with the code block of `LABEL localdrive` rather than the code block of `LABEL linux`.

There are two methods other than using the preceding `pxelabel` method to deal with the risk of overwriting. Unlike the `pxelabel` method however, these methods can interrupt node booting, so that the node does not progress to being fully up until the administrator takes further action:

1. If it is acceptable that the administrator manually enters a confirmation as part of the boot process when a possible overwrite risk is found, then the `datanode` method (section 5.4.4) can be used.
2. If it is acceptable that the boot process halts on detecting a possible overwrite risk, then the XML assertions method (Appendix D.11) is recommended.

### Changing The Install Mode Or Default Image Offered To Nodes

The selections offered by the PXE menu are pre-configured by default so that the AUTO menu option by default loads a kernel, runs the AUTO install mode, and eventually the default-image software image is provisioned.

Normally administrators should not be changing the install mode, kernel, or kernel options in the PXE menu configuration files under `pxelinux.cfg/`.

More on changing the install mode is given in section 5.4.4. More on changing software images, image package management, kernels, and kernel options, is to be found in Chapter 9.

#### 5.1.2 iPXE Booting From A Disk Drive

Also by default, on disked nodes, iPXE software is placed on the drive during node installation. If the boot instructions from the BIOS for PXE booting fail, and if the BIOS instructions are that a boot attempt should then be made from the hard drive, it means that a PXE network boot attempt is done again, as instructed by the bootable hard drive. This can be a useful fallback option that works around certain BIOS features or problems.

#### 5.1.3 iPXE Booting Using InfiniBand

On clusters that have InfiniBand hardware, it is normally used for data transfer as a service after the nodes have fully booted up (section 3.6). InfiniBand can also be used for PXE booting (described here) and used for node provisioning (section 5.3.3). However these uses are not necessary, even if InfiniBand is used for data transfer as a service later on, because booting and provisioning is available over Ethernet by default. This section (about boot over InfiniBand) may therefore safely be skipped when first configuring a cluster.

Booting over InfiniBand via PXE is enabled by carrying out these 3 steps:

1. Making BCM aware that nodes are to be booted over InfiniBand. Node booting (section 3.2.3, page 103) can be set from cmsh or Base View as follows:
  - (a) From cmsh's network mode: If the InfiniBand network name is `ibnet`, then a cmsh command that will set it is:

```
cmsh -c "network; set ibnet nodebooting yes; commit"
```
  - (b) From Base View: The Settings window for the InfiniBand network, for example `ibnet`, can be accessed from the Networking resource via the navigation path `Networking > Networks[ibnet] > Edit > Settings` (this is similar to figure 3.5, but for `ibnet`). The Node booting option for `ibnet` is then enabled and saved.

If the InfiniBand network does not yet exist, then it must be created (section 3.2.2). The recommended default values used are described in section 3.6.3. The MAC address of the interface in CMDaemon defaults to using the GUID of the interface.

The administrator should also be aware that the interface from which a node boots, (conveniently labeled `BOOTIF`), must not be an interface that is already configured for that node in CMDaemon. For example, if `BOOTIF` is the device `ib0`, then `ib0` must not already be configured in CMDaemon. Either `BOOTIF` or the `ib0` configuration should be changed so that node installation can succeed. It is recommended to set `BOOTIF` to `eth0` if the `ib0` device should exist.

2. Flashing iPXE onto the InfiniBand HCAs. (The ROM image is obtained from the HCA vendor).
3. Configuring the BIOS of the nodes to boot from the InfiniBand HCA.

All MAC addresses become invalid for identification purposes when changing from booting over Ethernet to booting over InfiniBand.

Administrators who enable iPXE booting almost always wish to provision over InfiniBand too. Configuring provisioning over InfiniBand is described in section 5.3.3.

#### 5.1.4 Using PXE To Boot From The Drive

Besides PXE booting from only the network, a node can also be configured via PXE to step over to using its own drive to start booting and get to the stage of loading up its kernel entirely from its drive, just like a normal standalone machine. This can be done by setting `PXE LABEL` to `localdrive` (page 223).

#### 5.1.5 Network Booting Without PXE On The ARMv8 Architecture

ARMv8 nodes use a network boot implementation that differs slightly from the x86 PXE boot implementation. The actual firmware that starts up on ARMv8 nodes depends on the environment the hardware is in. Networking is then started by the firmware and the network requests what to boot. The head node however then sends out a GRUB binary instead of an iPXE binary. The GRUB binary then runs on the regular node, and fetches the kernel and initrd via TFTP. The node-installer then runs on the nodes and follows the same steps as in the x86 process.

#### 5.1.6 Network Booting Protocol

The protocol used by network booting is set with the parameter `bootloaderprotocol`. It is set to `HTTP` by default at category level:

##### Example

```
[basecm11->category[mydefaultimage]]% get bootloaderprotocol
HTTP
```

The protocol can be modified at category or node level, to one of the values `HTTP`, `HTTPS`, or `TFTP`:

## Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% get bootloaderprotocol
HTTP (mydefaultimage)
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set bootloaderprotocol <TAB><TAB>
http https tftp
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set bootloaderprotocol tftp
[basecm11->device*[node001*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[node001]]% get bootloaderprotocol
TFTP
```

If the protocol has the setting of HTTP, then initial PXE booting actually still uses the TFTP protocol on x86\_64 hardware. However, a switchover to the HTTP protocol is done when loading up the kernel and RAM disk.

The HTTPS protocol for node booting should almost never be used, because it is rarely implemented in hardware.

### 5.1.7 The Boot Role

The action of providing a boot image to a node via DHCP and TFTP is known as providing *node booting*. Node provisioning (section 5.2), on the other hand, is about provisioning the node with the rest of the node image.

Roles in general are introduced in section 2.1.5. The *boot role* is one such role that can be assigned to a regular node. The boot role configures a regular node so that it can then provide node booting. The role cannot be assigned or removed from the head node—the head node always has a boot role.

The boot role is assigned by administrators to regular nodes if there is a need to cope with the scaling limitations of TFTP and DHCP. TFTP and DHCP services can be overwhelmed when there are large numbers of nodes making use of them during boot. An example of the scaling limitations may be observed, for example, when, during the powering up and network booting attempts of a large number of regular nodes from the head node, it turns out that random different regular nodes are unable to boot, typically due to network effects.

One implementation of boot role assignment might therefore be, for example, to have a several groups of racks, with each rack in a subnet, and with one regular node in each subnet that is assigned the boot role. The boot role regular nodes would thus take the DHCP and TFTP load off the head node and onto themselves for all the nodes in their associated subnet, so that all nodes of the cluster are then able to boot without networking issues.

## 5.2 Provisioning Nodes

The action of transferring the software image to the nodes is called *node provisioning*, and is done by special nodes called the *provisioning nodes*. More complex clusters can have several provisioning nodes configured by the administrator, thereby distributing network traffic loads when many nodes are booting.

Creating provisioning nodes is done by assigning a *provisioning role* to a node or category of nodes. Similar to how the head node always has a boot role (section 5.1.7), the head node also always has a provisioning role.

### 5.2.1 Provisioning Nodes: Configuration Settings

The provisioning role has several parameters that can be set:

Property	Description
<code>allImages</code>	<p>The following values decide what images the provisioning node provides:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>onlocaldisk</code> (the default): all images on the local disk, regardless of any other parameters set</li> <li>• <code>onlocaldiskexceptsharedimages</code>: all images on the local disk, except for shared images</li> <li>• <code>onsharedstorage</code>: all images on the shared storage, regardless of any other parameters set</li> <li>• <code>no</code>: only images listed in the <code>localimages</code> or <code>sharedimages</code> parameters, described next</li> </ul>
<code>localimages</code>	<p>A list of software images on the local disk that the provisioning node accesses and provides. The list is used only if <code>allImages</code> is “no”.</p>
<code>sharedimages</code>	<p>A list of software images on the shared storage that the provisioning node accesses and provides. The list is used only if <code>allImages</code> is “no”</p>
<code>Provisioning slots</code>	<p>The maximum number of nodes that can be provisioned in parallel by the provisioning node. The optimum number depends on the infrastructure. The default value is 10, which is safe for typical cluster setups. Setting it lower may sometimes be needed to prevent network and disk overload.</p>
<code>nodegroups</code>	<p>A list of node groups (section 2.1.4). If set, the provisioning node only provisions nodes in the listed groups. Conversely, nodes in one of these groups can only be provisioned by provisioning nodes that have that group set. Nodes without a group, or nodes in a group not listed in <code>nodegroups</code>, can only be provisioned by provisioning nodes that have no <code>nodegroups</code> values set. By default, the <code>nodegroups</code> list is unset in the provisioning nodes. The <code>nodegroups</code> setting is typically used to set up a convenient hierarchy of provisioning, for example based on grouping by rack and by groups of racks.</p>
<code>localprovisioning</code>	<p>If set to <code>yes</code> (the default), then it speeds up the initial provisioning of cloud directors and cloud provisioning nodes (section 3.2 of the <i>Cloudbursting Manual</i>). Also if set to <code>yes</code>, if a software image is used as the rootfs of the provisioning node and is also to be used by that node to provision other cloud nodes, then during the initial FULL install (page 258) that image is transferred only once to the provisioning node, instead of twice.</p>

A provisioning node keeps a copy of all the images it provisions on its local drive, in the same directory as where the head node keeps such images. The local drive of a provisioning node must therefore have enough space available for these images, which may require changes in its disk layout.

### 5.2.2 Provisioning Nodes: Role Setup With `cmsh`

In the following `cmsh` example the administrator creates a new category called `misc`. The default category `default` already exists in a newly installed cluster.

The administrator then assigns the role called `provisioning`, from the list of available assignable roles, to nodes in the `misc` category. After the `assign` command has been typed in, but before entering

the command, tab-completion prompting can be used to list all the possible roles. Assignment creates an association between the role and the category. When the `assign` command runs, the shell drops into the level representing the provisioning role.

If the role called `provisioning` were already assigned, then the `use provisioning` command would drop the shell into the provisioning role, without creating the association between the role and the category.

As an aside from the topic of provisioning, from an organizational perspective, other assignable roles include `monitoring`, `storage`, and `failover`.

Once the shell is within the role level, the role properties can be edited conveniently.

For example, the nodes in the `misc` category assigned the `provisioning` role can have `default-image` set as the image that they provision to other nodes, and have `20` set as the maximum number of other nodes to be provisioned simultaneously (some text is elided in the following example):

### Example

```
[basecm11]% category add misc
[basecm11->category*[misc*]]% roles
[basecm11->category*[misc*]->roles]%
[basecm11->category*[misc*]->roles*-[provisioning*]]% assign provisioning
[basecm11...*]->roles*-[provisioning*]]% set allimages no
[basecm11...*]->roles*-[provisioning*]]% set localimages default-image
[basecm11...*]->roles*-[provisioning*]]% set provisioningslots 20
[basecm11...*]->roles*-[provisioning*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
All Images          no
Include revisions of local images yes
Local images        default-image
Name               provisioning
Nodegroups
Provisioning associations <0 internally used>
Revision
Shared images
Type               ProvisioningRole
Provisioning slots 20
[basecm11->category*[misc*]->roles*-[provisioning*]]% commit
[basecm11->category[misc]->roles[provisioning]]%
```

Assigning a provisioning role can also be done for an individual node instead, if using a category is deemed overkill:

### Example

```
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% roles
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles]%
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->roles*-[provisioning*]]%
...

```

A role change configures a provisioning node, but does not directly update the provisioning node with images. After carrying out a role change, BCM runs the `updateprovisioners` command described in section 5.2.4 automatically, so that regular images are propagated to the provisioners. The propagation can be done by provisioners themselves if they have up-to-date images. CMDaemon tracks the provisioning nodes role changes, as well as which provisioning nodes have up-to-date images available, so that provisioning node configurations and regular node images propagate efficiently. Thus, for example, image update requests by provisioning nodes take priority over provisioning update requests from regular nodes.

### 5.2.3 Provisioning Nodes: Role Setup With Base View

The provisioning configuration outlined in cmsh mode in section 5.2.2 can be done via Base View too, as follows:

A misc category can be added via the navigation path

Grouping > Categories > Add > Settings > <name>

Within the Settings tab, the node category should be given a name misc (figure 5.3), and saved:

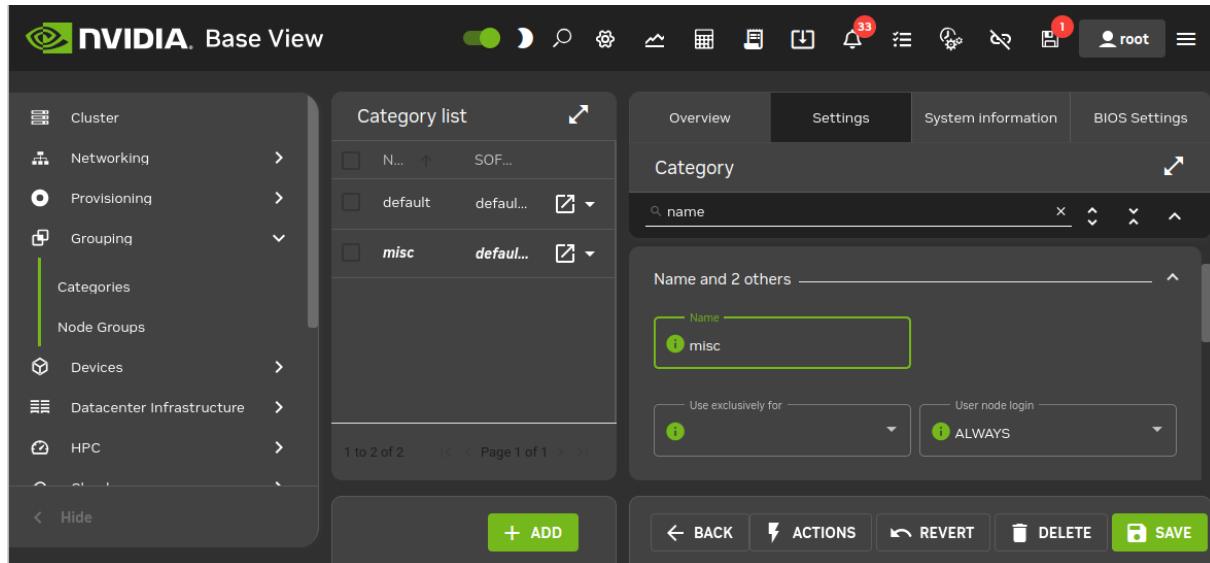


Figure 5.3: Base View: Adding A misc Category

The Roles window can then be opened from within the JUMP TO section of the settings pane. To add a role, the Add button in the Roles window is clicked. A scrollable list of available roles is then displayed, (figure 5.4):

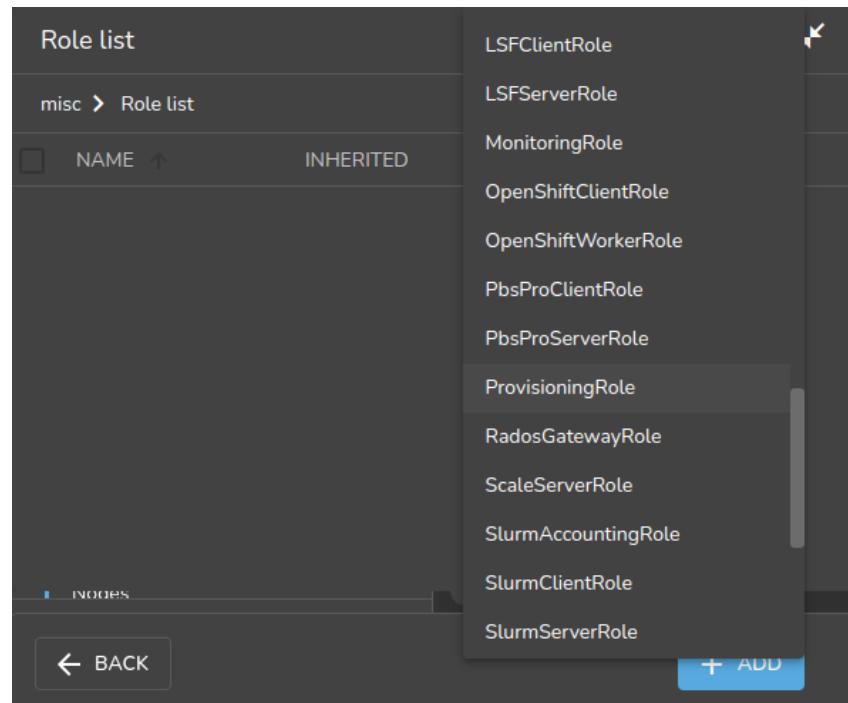


Figure 5.4: Base View: Setting A provisioning Role

After selecting a role, then navigating via the Back buttons to the Settings menu of figure 5.3, the role can be saved using the Save button there.

The role has properties which can be edited (figure 5.5):

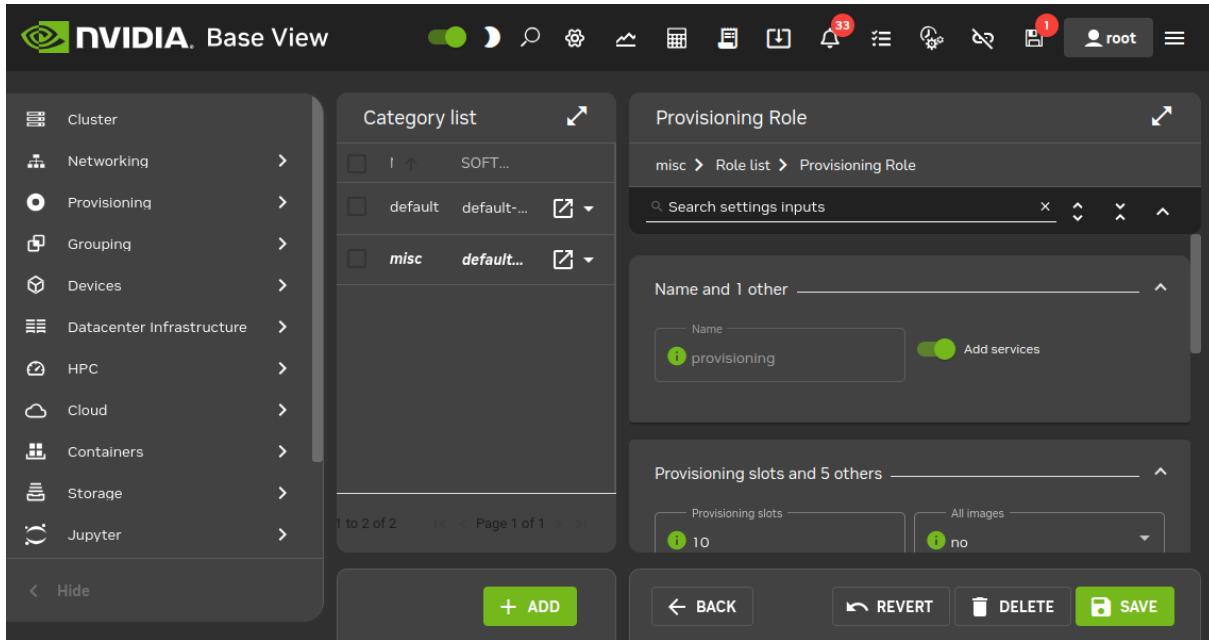


Figure 5.5: Base View: Configuring A provisioning Role

For example:

- the `Provisioning slots` setting decides how many images can be supplied simultaneously from the provisioning node
- the `All images` setting decides if the role provides all images
- the `Local images` setting decides what images the provisioning node supplies from local storage
- the `Shared images` setting decides what images the provisioning node supplies shared storage.

The settings can be saved with the Save button of figure 5.5.

The images offered by the provisioning role should not be confused with the software image setting of the `misc` category itself, which is the image the provisioning node requests for itself from the category.

#### 5.2.4 Provisioning Nodes: Housekeeping

The head node does housekeeping tasks for the entire provisioning system. Provisioning is done on request for all non-head nodes on a first-come, first-serve basis. Since provisioning nodes themselves, too, need to be provisioned, it means that to cold boot an entire cluster up quickest, the head node should be booted and be up first, followed by provisioning nodes, and finally by all other non-head nodes. Following this start-up sequence ensures that all provisioning services are available when the other non-head nodes are started up.

Some aspects of provisioning housekeeping are discussed next:

##### Provisioning Node Selection

When a node requests provisioning, the head node allocates the task to a provisioning node. If there are several provisioning nodes that can provide the image required, then the task is allocated to the provisioning node with the lowest number of already-started provisioning tasks.

### Limiting Provisioning Tasks With MaxNumberOfProvisioningThreads

Besides limiting how much simultaneous provisioning per provisioning node is allowed with Provisioning Slots (section 5.2.1), the head node also limits how many simultaneous provisioning tasks are allowed to run on the entire cluster. This is set using the `MaxNumberOfProvisioningThreads` directive in the head node's CMDaemon configuration file, `/etc/cmd.conf`, as described in Appendix C.

### Provisioning Tasks Deferral and Failure

A provisioning request is *deferred* if the head node is not able to immediately allocate a provisioning node for the task. Whenever an ongoing provisioning task has finished, the head node tries to re-allocate deferred requests.

A provisioning request *fails* if an image is not transferred. 5 retry attempts at provisioning the image are made in case a provisioning request fails.

A provisioning node that is carrying out requests, and which loses connectivity, has its provisioning requests remain allocated to it for 180 seconds from the time that connectivity was lost. After this time the provisioning requests fail.

### Provisioning Role Change Notification With updateprovisioners

The `updateprovisioners` command can be accessed from the `softwareimage` mode in `cmsh`. It can also be accessed from Base View, via the navigation path `Provisioning > Provisioning requests > Update provisioning nodes`.

In the examples in section 5.2.2, changes were made to provisioning role attributes for an individual node as well as for a category of nodes. This automatically ran the `updateprovisioners` command.

The `updateprovisioners` command runs automatically if CMDaemon is involved during software image changes or during a provisioning request. If on the other hand, the software image is changed outside of the CMDaemon front ends (Base View and `cmsh`), for example by an administrator adding a file by copying it into place from the bash prompt, then `updateprovisioners` should be run manually to update the provisioners.

In any case, if it is not run manually, then by default it runs every midnight (UTC). The scheduling period can be adjusted with the `autoupdateperiod` setting:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ]# cmsh
[basecm11]% partition use base
[basecm11->partition[base]]% provisioningsettings
[basecm11->partition[base]->provisioningsettings]% get autoupdateperiod
[basecm11->partition[base]->provisioningsettings]% 86400
[basecm11->partition[base]->provisioningsettings]% # is UTC epoch start time modulo 24 hours
[basecm11->partition[base]->provisioningsettings]% # set UTC epoch start time modulo 18 hours:
[basecm11->partition[base]->provisioningsettings]% set autoupdateperiod 64800
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->provisioningsettings*]% commit
```

When the default `updateprovisioners` is invoked manually, the provisioning system waits for all running provisioning tasks to end, and then updates all images located on any provisioning nodes by using the images on the head node. It also re-initializes its internal state with the updated provisioning role properties, i.e. keeps track of what nodes are provisioning nodes.

The default `updateprovisioners` command, run with no options, updates all images. If run from `cmsh` with a specified image as an option, then the command only does the updates for that particular image. A provisioning node undergoing an image update does not provision other nodes until the update is completed.

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% softwareimage updateprovisioners
Provisioning nodes will be updated in the background.

Sun Dec 12 13:45:09 2010 basecm11: Starting update of software image(s) \
 provisioning node(s). (user initiated).
[basecm11]% softwareimage updateprovisioners [basecm11]%
Sun Dec 12 13:45:41 2010 basecm11: Updating image default-image on prov \
isioning node node001.
[basecm11]%
Sun Dec 12 13:46:00 2010 basecm11: Updating image default-image on prov \
isioning node node001 completed.
Sun Dec 12 13:46:00 2010 basecm11: Provisioning node node001 was updated
Sun Dec 12 13:46:00 2010 basecm11: Finished updating software image(s) \
on provisioning node(s).
```

### Provisioning Role Draining And Undraining Nodes With drain, undrain

The drain and undrain commands to control provisioning nodes are accessible from within the softwareimage mode of cmsh.

If a node is put into a drain state, then all currently active provisioning requests continue until they are completed. However, the node is not assigned any further pending requests, until the node is put back into an undrain state.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]% drain -n master
Nodes drained
[basecm11->softwareimage]% provisioningstatus
Provisioning subsystem status
Pending request:           node001, node002
Provisioning node status:
+ basecm11
  Slots:                 1 / 10
  State:                 draining
  Active nodes:          node003
  Up to date images:     default-image
[basecm11->softwareimage]% provisioningstatus
Provisioning subsystem status
Pending request:           node001, node002
Provisioning node status:
+ basecm11
  Slots:                 0 / 10
  State:                 drained
  Active nodes:          none
  Up to date images:     default-image
```

To drain all nodes at once, the --role option can be used, with provisioning role as its value. All pending requests then remain in the queue, until the nodes are undrained again.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]% drain --role provisioning
...Time passes. Pending
  requests stay in the queue. Then
  admin undrains it...
[basecm11->softwareimage]% undrain --role provisioning
```

### Provisioning Node Update Safeguards And `dirtyautoupdatetimeout`

The `updateprovisioners` command is subject to safeguards that prevent it running too frequently. The minimum period between provisioning updates can be adjusted with a timeout parameter `dirtyautoupdatetimeout`, which has a default value of 300s.

Exceeding the timeout does not by itself trigger an update to the provisioning node.

When the head node receives a provisioning request, it checks if the last update of the provisioning nodes is more than the timeout period. If true, then an update is triggered to the provisioning node. The update is disabled if the `dirtyautoupdatetimeout` is set to zero (false).

The parameter can be accessed and set within `cmsh` from partition mode:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ]# cmsh
[basecm11)% partition use base
[basecm11->partition[base]]% provisioningsettings
[basecm11->partition[base]->provisioningsettings]% get dirtyautoupdatetimeout
[basecm11->partition[base]->provisioningsettings]% 300
[basecm11->partition[base]->provisioningsettings]% set dirtyautoupdatetimeout 0
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->provisioningsettings*]% commit
```

Within Base View the parameter is accessible via the navigation path:

Cluster > Settings > Provisioning Settings > Dirty auto update timeout.

To prevent provisioning an image to the nodes, it can be locked (section 5.4.7). The provisioning request is then deferred until the image is once more unlocked.

### Synchronization Of Fspart Subdirectories To Provisioning Nodes

In BCM, an *fpart* is a subdirectory, and it is a filesystem part that can be synced during provisioning.

The fparts can be listed with:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ]# cmsh
[basecm11)% fspart
[basecm11->fspart)% list
Path (key)          Type      Image
-----
/cm/images/default-image    image    default-image
/cm/images/default-image/boot boot    default-image:boot
/cm/node-installer        node-installer
/cm/shared                 cm-shared
/tftpboot                  tftpboot
/var/spool/cmd/monitoring monitoring
```

The `updateprovisioners` command (page 233) is used to update image fparts to all nodes with a provisioning role.

**The trigger command:** is used to update non-image fparts to off-premises nodes, such as cloud directors and edge directors. The directors have a provisioning role for the nodes that they direct.

All of the non-image types can be updated with the `--all` option:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->fspart)% trigger --all
```

The command `help trigger` in `fspart` mode gives further details.

**The info command:** shows the architecture, OS, and the number of inotify watchers that track rsyncs in the fspart subdirectory.

Path	Architecture	OS	Inotify watchers
/cm/images/default-image	x86_64	rhel9	0
/cm/images/default-image/boot	-	-	0
/cm/node-installer	x86_64	rhel9	0
/cm/shared	x86_64	rhel9	0
/tftpboot	-	-	0
/var/spool/cmd/monitoring	-	-	0

Path	Architecture	OS	Inotify watchers	Size
/cm/images/default-image	x86_64	rhel9	0	4.8 GiB
/cm/images/default-image/boot	-	-	0	313 MiB
/cm/node-installer	x86_64	rhel9	0	2.84 GiB
/cm/shared	x86_64	rhel9	0	1.16 GiB
/tftpboot	-	-	0	3.5 MiB
/var/spool/cmd/monitoring	-	-	0	1.02 GiB

#### The locked, lock, and unlock commands:

- The locked command lists fsplits that are prevented from syncing.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->fspart]% locked
No locked fsplits
```

- The lock command prevents a specific fspart from syncing.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->fspart]% lock /var/spool/cmd/monitoring
[basecm11->fspart]% locked
/var/spool/cmd/monitoring
```

- The unlock command unlocks a specific locked fspart again.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->fspart]% unlock /var/spool/cmd/monitoring
[basecm11->fspart]% locked
No locked fsplits
```

**Access to excludelistsnippets:** The properties of excludelistsnippets for a specific fspart can be accessed from the excludelistsnippets submode:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->fspart] % excludelistsnippets /tftpboot

[basecm11->fspart[/tftpboot]->excludelistsnippets] % list
Name (key)    Lines    Disabled      Mode sync     Mode full     Mode update     Mode grab     Mode grab new
-----
Default       2        no           yes          yes          yes          no           no

[basecm11->fspart[/tftpboot]->excludelistsnippets] % show default
Parameter            Value
-----
Lines                2
Name                Default
Revision
Exclude list          # no need for rescue on nodes with a boot role,/rescue,/rescue/*
Disabled             no
No new files          no
Mode sync             yes
Mode full             yes
Mode update           yes
Mode grab             no
Mode grab new         no

[basecm11->fspart[/tftpboot]->excludelistsnippets] % get default excludelist
# no need for rescue on nodes with a boot role
/rescue
/rescue/*
```

## 5.3 The Kernel Image, Ramdisk And Kernel Modules

A *software image* is a complete Linux filesystem that is to be installed on a non-head node. Chapter 9 describes images and their management in detail.

The head node holds the head copy of the software images. Whenever files in the head copy are changed using CMDaemon, the changes automatically propagate to all provisioning nodes via the updateprovisioners command (section 5.2.4).

### 5.3.1 Booting To A “Good State” Software Image

When nodes boot from the network in simple clusters, the head node supplies them with a *known good state* during node start up. The known good state is maintained by the administrator and is defined using a software image that is kept in a directory of the filesystem on the head node. Supplementary filesystems such as /home are served via NFS from the head node by default.

For a diskless node the known good state is copied over from the head node, after which the node becomes available to cluster users.

For a disked node, by default, the hard disk contents on specified local directories of the node are checked against the known good state on the head node. Content that differs on the node is changed to that of the known good state. After the changes are done, the node becomes available to cluster users.

Each software image contains a Linux kernel and a ramdisk. These are the first parts of the image that are loaded onto a node during early boot. The kernel is loaded first. The ramdisk is loaded next, and contains driver modules for the node’s network card and local storage. The rest of the image is loaded after that, during the node-installer stage (section 5.4).

### 5.3.2 Selecting Kernel Driver Modules To Load Onto Nodes

Kernel modules can be managed in softwareimage mode (using an image), in category mode (using a category), or in device mode (using a node), as indicated by the following cmsh tree view of a newly-

installed cluster with default values:

```
cmsh
|-- category[default]
|   |-- kernelmodules
...
|-- device] [node001]
|   |-- kernelmodules
...
|-- softwareimage[default-image]
|   |-- kernelmodules
...
...
```

As is usual in BCM, if there are values specified at the lower levels in the hierarchy, then their values override the values set higher up in the hierarchy. For example, modules specified at node level override modules specified at category or software image level. Similarly modules specified at the category level override whatever is specified at the software image level. The cluster administrators should be aware that “override” for kernel modules appended to a kernel image means that any kernel modules defined at a higher level are totally ignored—the modules from a lower level exclude the modules at the higher level. A misconfiguration of kernel modules in the lower levels can thus prevent the node from starting up.

Modules are normally just set at `softwareimage` level, using `cmsh` or Base View.

### **Kernel Driver Modules With cmsh**

In `cmsh`, the modules that are to go on the ramdisk can be placed using the `kernelmodules` submode of the `softwareimage` mode. The order in which they are listed is the attempted load order.

Within the `kernelmodules` submode, the `import` command can be used to import the kernel modules list from a software image, from a node, or from a category, replacing the original kernel modules list.

Whenever a change is made via the `kernelmodules` submode to the kernel module selection of a software image, CMDaemon automatically runs the `createramdisk` command. The `createramdisk` command regenerates the ramdisk inside the `initrd` image and sends the updated image to all provisioning nodes, to the image directory, set by default to `/cm/images/default-image/boot/`. The original `initrd` image is saved as a file with suffix “`.orig`” in that directory. An attempt is made to generate the image for all software images that CMDaemon is aware of, regardless of category assignment, unless the image is protected from modification by CMDaemon with a `FrozenFile` directive (Appendix C).

The `createramdisk` command can also be run manually from within the `softwareimage` mode.

### **Kernel Driver Modules With Base View**

In Base View the kernel modules for a particular image are managed through the `Software images` resource, and then choosing the `Kernel modules` menu option of that image. For example, for the image `default-image`, the navigation path that can be followed is:

Provisioning > Software images[`default-image`] > Edit > Settings > Kernel modules  
which opens up the `Kernel Module` list screen, which allows kernel modules to be removed or added (figure 5.6):

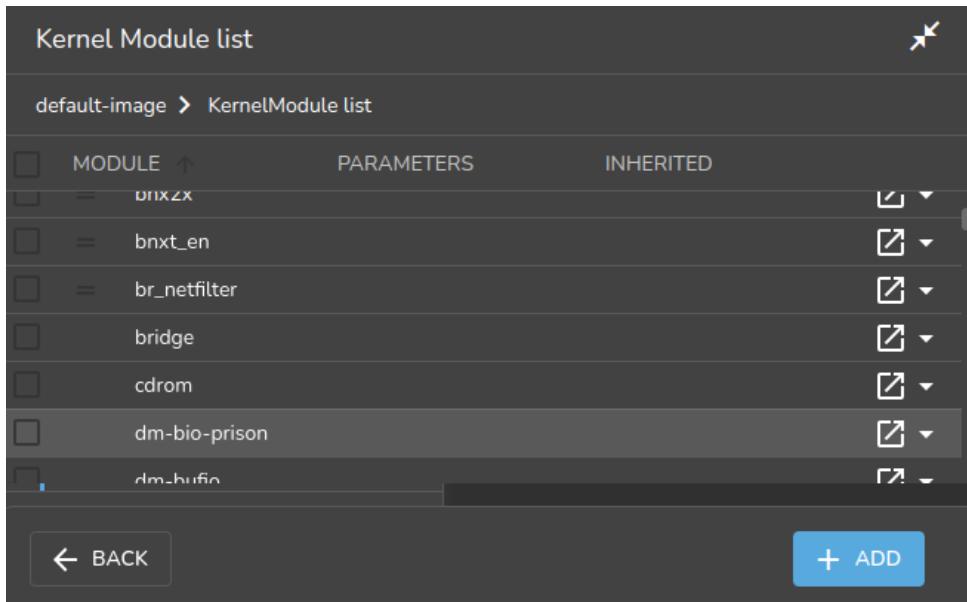


Figure 5.6: Base View: Selecting Kernel Modules For Software Images

New kernel modules can be added using the Add button, existing kernel modules can be removed using the Delete button, and kernel module parameters can be edited using the Edit button.

### Manually Regenerating A Ramdisk

Regenerating a ramdisk manually via cmsh or Base View is useful if the kernel or modules have changed without using CMDaemon. For example, after running a YUM update which has modified the kernel or modules of the nodes (section 9.3). In such a case, the distribution would normally update the ramdisk on the machine, but this is not done for the extended ramdisk for nodes in BCM. Not regenerating the BCM ramdisk for nodes after such an update means the nodes may fail on rebooting during the loading of the ramdisk (section 5.8.4).

An example of regenerating the ramdisk is seen in section 5.8.5.

### Implementation Of Kernel Driver Via Ramdisk Or Kernel Parameter

Sometimes, testing or setting a kernel driver as a kernel parameter may be more convenient. How to do that is covered in section 9.3.4.

#### 5.3.3 InfiniBand Provisioning

On clusters that have InfiniBand hardware, it is normally used for data transfer as a service after the nodes have fully booted up (section 3.6). It can also be used for PXE booting (section 5.1.3) and for node provisioning (described here), but these are not normally a requirement. This section (about InfiniBand node provisioning) may therefore safely be skipped in almost all cases when first configuring a cluster.

During node start-up on a setup for which InfiniBand networking has been enabled, the `init` process runs the `rdma` script. For SLES the `openib` script is used instead of the `rdma` script. The script loads up InfiniBand modules into the kernel. When the cluster is finally fully up and running, the use of InfiniBand is thus available for all processes that request it.

Provisioning nodes over InfiniBand is not implemented by default, because the `init` process, which handles initialization scripts and daemons, takes place only after the node-provisioning stage launches. InfiniBand modules are therefore not available for use during provisioning, which is why, for default kernels, provisioning in BCM is done via Ethernet.

Provisioning at the faster InfiniBand speeds rather than Ethernet speeds is however a requirement for some clusters. To get the cluster to provision using InfiniBand requires both of the following two configuration changes to be carried out:

1. configuring InfiniBand drivers for the ramdisk image that the nodes first boot into, so that provisioning via InfiniBand is possible during this pre-init stage
2. defining the provisioning interface of nodes that are to be provisioned with InfiniBand. It is assumed that InfiniBand networking is already configured, as described in section 3.6.

The administrator should be aware that the interface from which a node boots, (conveniently labeled `BOOTIF`), must not be an interface that is already configured for that node in CMdaemon. For example, if `BOOTIF` is the device `ib0`, then `ib0` must not already be configured in CMdaemon. Either `BOOTIF` or the `ib0` configuration should be changed so that node installation can succeed.

How these two changes are carried out is described next:

### InfiniBand Provisioning: Ramdisk Image Configuration

An easy way to see what modules must be added to the ramdisk for a particular HCA can be found by running `rdma` (or `openibd`), and seeing what modules do load up on a fully booted regular node.

One way to do this is to run the following lines as root:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# { service rdma stop; lsmod | cut -f1 -d" " ; }>/tmp/a
[root@basecm11 ~]# { service rdma start; lsmod | cut -f1 -d" " ; }>/tmp/b
```

The `rdma` service in the two lines should be replaced by `openibd` service instead when using SLES, or distributions based on versions of Red Hat prior to version 6.

The first line stops the InfiniBand service, just in case it is running, in order to unload its modules, and then lists the modules on the node.

The second line starts the service, so that the appropriate modules are loaded, and then lists the modules on the node again. The output of the first step is stored in a file `a`, and the output from the second step is stored in a file `b`.

Running `diff` on the output of these two steps then reveals the modules that get loaded. For `rdma`, the output may display something like:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# diff /tmp/a /tmp/b
1,3c1
< Unloading OpenIB kernel modules:
< Failed to unload ib_core
<
[FAILED]
---
> Loading OpenIB kernel modules: [ OK ]
4a3,14
> ib_ipoib
> rdma_ucm
> ib_ucm
> ib_uverbs
> ib_umad
> rdma_cm
> ib_cm
> iw_cm
> ib_addr
> ib_sa
> ib_mad
> ib_core
```

As suggested by the output, the modules `ib_ipoib`, `rdma_ucm` and so on are the modules loaded when `rdma` starts, and are therefore the modules that are needed for this particular HCA. Other HCAs may cause different modules to be loaded.

For a default Red Hat from version 7 onward, the `rdma` service can only be started; it cannot be stopped. Finding the modules that load can therefore only be done once for the default configuration, until the next reboot.

The preceding `lsmod` lines in that case can be generated with:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# { lsmod | cut -f1 -d" " ; }>/tmp/a
[root@basecm11 ~]# { systemctl start rdma-load-modules@rdma; lsmod | cut -f1 -d" " ; }>/tmp/b
```

Here, `systemctl` is used instead of the older `service` command just because it is the modern way to run such commands.

The InfiniBand modules that load are the ones that the `initrd` image needs, so that InfiniBand can be used during the node provisioning stage. The administrator can therefore now create an `initrd` image with the required InfiniBand modules.

Loading kernel modules into a ramdisk is covered in general in section 5.3.2. A typical Mellanox HCA may have an `initrd` image created as follows (some text ellipsized in the following example):

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% softwareimage use default-image
[basecm11->softwareimage [default-image]]% kernelmodules
[basecm11...age [default-image]->kernelmodules]% add mlx4_ib
[basecm11...age*[default-image*]->kernelmodules*[mlx4_ib*]]% add ib_ipoib
[basecm11...age*[default-image*]->kernelmodules*[ib_ipoib*]]% add ib_umad
[basecm11...age*[default-image*]->kernelmodules*[ib_umad*]]% commit
[basecm11->softwareimage [default-image]->kernelmodules[ib_umad]]%
Tue May 24 03:45:35 2011 basecm11: Initial ramdisk for image default-image was regenerated successfully.
```

If the modules are put in another image instead of `default-image`, then the default image that nodes boot from should be set to the new image (section 3.19.2).

### InfiniBand Provisioning: Network Configuration

It is assumed that the networking configuration for the final system for InfiniBand is configured following the general guidelines of section 3.6. If it is not, that should be checked first to see if all is well with the InfiniBand network.

The provisioning aspect is set by defining the provisioning interface. An example of how it may be set up for 150 nodes with a working InfiniBand interface `ib0` in `cmsh` is:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% foreach -n node001..node150 (set provisioninginterface ib0)
[basecm11->device*]% commit
```

### 5.3.4 VLAN Provisioning

Nodes can be configured for provisioning over a VLAN interface, starting in NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 8.2.

This requires:

- A VLAN network and node interface. The VLAN network is typically specified by the network switch. The interface that connects the node to the switch can be configured as a VLAN interface as outlined in section 3.4.

- The 8021q (rtnl-link-vlan) driver to be available in the software image that is provisioned. In recent distributions this driver is not part of the base kernel, and is instead available as a module. The module should be loaded into the software image that is to be provisioned. For example, for node001 that is missing the module in the software image, the module could be configured to run on the node from the software image as follows:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ssh node001 "lsmod | grep 8021q"
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% softwareimage
[basecm11]->softwareimage% use default-image
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]]% kernelmodules
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]->kernelmodules]% list | grep 8021q
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]->kernelmodules]% add 8021q
[basecm11->softwareimage*[default-image*]->kernelmodules*[8021q*]]% commit

[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]->kernelmodules[8021q]]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% reboot
...
      some time after boot
[root@basecm11 ~]# ssh node001 "lsmod | grep 8021q"
8021q          40960  0
garp           16384  1 8021q
mrp            20480  1 8021q
```

Rebooted nodes that use the modified software image then have the VLAN module available in the running kernel.

- The BIOS of the node must have the VLANID value set within the BIOS network options. If the BIOS does not support this setting, then PXE over VLAN cannot work. For a NIC that is missing this in the BIOS, the NIC hardware provider may sometimes have a BIOS update that supports this setting.
- The VLANID value should be set in the kernel parameters. Kernel parameters for a node can be specified in cmsh with the `kernelparameters` setting of `softwareimage` mode (section 9.3.4). An example where the VLANID is appended to some existing parameters could be:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% softwareimage use default-image
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]]% append kernelparameters " VLANID=89"
[basecm11->softwareimage*[default-image*]]% commit
```

## 5.4 Node-Installer

After the kernel has started up, and the ramdisk kernel modules are in place on the node, the node launches the node-installer.

The node-installer is a software image (section 9.4.4) provided by the head node. It interacts with CMDaemon on the head node and takes care of the rest of the boot process.

As an aside, the node-installer modifies some files (Appendix A.2.3) on the node it is installing to, so that they differ from the otherwise-expected pre-init stage Linux system. Such modifications can be prevented by a `frozenFilesPerNode` or `frozenFilesPerCategory` directive, as documented within the `node-installer.conf` file, and explained in greater detail on page 858.

Once the node-installer has completed its tasks, the local drive of the node has a complete Linux pre-init stage system. The node-installer ends by calling `/sbin/init` from the local drive and the boot process then proceeds as a normal Linux boot.

The steps the node-installer goes through for each node are:

1. requesting a node certificate (section 5.4.1)
2. deciding or selecting node configuration (section 5.4.2)
3. starting up all network interfaces (section 5.4.3)
4. determining install-mode type and execution mode (section 5.4.4)
5. running `initialize` scripts (section 5.4.5)
6. checking partitions, mounting filesystems (section 5.4.6)
7. synchronizing the local drive with the correct software image (section 5.4.7)
8. writing network configuration files to the local drive (section 5.4.8)
9. creating an `/etc/fstab` file on the local drive (section 5.4.9)
10. installing GRUB bootloader if configured by BCM (section 5.4.10), and initializing SELinux if it has been installed and configured (Chapter 12 of the *Installation Manual*)
11. running `finalize` scripts (section 5.4.11)
12. unloading specific drivers no longer needed (section 5.4.12)
13. switching the root device to the local drive and calling `/sbin/init` (section 5.4.13)

These 13 node-installer steps and related matters are described in detail in the corresponding sections 5.4.1–5.4.13.

#### 5.4.1 Requesting A Node Certificate

Each node communicates with the CMDaemon on the head node using a certificate. If no certificate is found, it automatically requests one from CMDaemon running on the head node (figure 5.7).



Figure 5.7: Certificate Request

The certificate is stored on the head node in `/cm/node-installer/certificates/` by MAC address.

### Certificate Auto-signing

*Certificate auto-signing* means the cluster management daemon automatically signs a certificate signing request (CSR) that has been requested by a node. Certificate auto-signing can be configured from within partition mode of cmsh, with the `signinstallercertificates` parameter. It can take one of the following values:

- AUTO (the default)
- MANUAL

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% partition
[basecm11->partition[base]]% set signinstallercertificates auto
```

For untrusted networks, it may be wiser to approve certificate requests manually to prevent new nodes being added automatically without getting noticed.

Disabling certificate auto-signing for all networks can be done by setting `signinstallercertificates` to MANUAL.

Instead of disabling certificate autosigning for all networks, a finer tuning can be carried out for individual networks. This requires that `signinstallercertificates` be set to AUTO in partition mode. The `allowautosign` parameter in network mode can then be set for a particular network, and it can take one of the following values:

- Always
- Automatic (the default)
- Never

- Secret

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% network use internalnet
[basecm11->network[internalnet]]% set allowautosign automatic <TAB><TAB>
always      automatic   never       secret
```

If Always is set, then incoming CSRs from all types of networks are automatically auto-signed.

If Automatic is set, then only networks that are of type internal are automatically auto-signed.

If Never is set, then all incoming CSRs that come in for that network have to be manually approved.

The value Secret is required for the globalnet network, for edge sites. A node on an edge site uses a shared secret that is passed along with the node request. The secret is set during edge site setup by BCM (section 2.1.1 of the *Edge Manual*).

### Manual Approval Of A CSR

**Approval of the CSR from a regular node (not an edge node):** Manual approval of a CSR is typically done from within certs mode. A list of requests can be found, and from the list, the appropriate unsigned request can be signed and issued. The following session illustrates the process:

```
[basecm11->cert]% listrequests
Request ID Client type Session ID Autosign Name
-----
6           installer    42949672986 No      fa-16-3e-22-cd-13
[basecm11->cert]% issuecertificate 6
Issued 6
```

**Approval of the CSR from an edge node:** If the shared secret has not been set for the edge director—that is, if it has not been stored locally on the edge director, or if it has not been passed on via the installation medium—then the node-installer prompts for the secret the first time that it boots. If the secret that is typed in matches the site secret, then a CSR from the edge director is handled by the head node, and a signed certificate is issued.

The edge compute nodes pick up their secret from the director. If the director does not have the secret, then the compute node's node-installer prompts for the secret on first boot. Once the secret is set, then edge compute node sends its CSR to the head node (via the edge director) and gets a signed certificate automatically.

Section 2.3 has more information on certificate management in general.

### Certificate Storage And Removal Implications

After receiving a valid certificate, the node-installer stores it in /cm/node-installer/certificates/<node mac address>/ on the head node. This directory is NFS exported to the nodes, but can only be accessed by the root user. The node-installer does not request a new certificate if it finds a certificate in this directory, valid or invalid.

If an invalid certificate is received, the screen displays a communication error. Removing the node's corresponding certificate directory allows the node-installer to request a new certificate and proceed further.

### 5.4.2 Deciding Or Selecting Node Configuration

Once communication with the head node CMDaemon is established, the node-installer tries to identify the node it is running on so that it can select a configuration from CMDaemon's record for it, if any such record exists. It correlates any node configuration the node is expected to have according to network hardware detected. If there are issues during this correlation process then the administrator is prompted to select a node configuration until all nodes finally have a configuration.

### Possible Node Configuration Scenarios

The correlations process and corresponding scenarios are now covered in more detail:

It starts with the node-installer sending a query to CMDaemon to check if the MAC address used for net booting the node is already associated with a node in the records of CMdaemon. In particular, it checks the MAC address for a match against the existing *node configuration* properties, and decides whether the node is *known* or *new*.

- the node is **known** if the query matches a node configuration. It means that node has been booted before.
- the node is **new** if no configuration is found.

In both cases the node-installer then asks CMdaemon to find out if the node is connected to an Ethernet switch, and if so, to which port. Setting up Ethernet switches for port detection is covered in section 3.9.

If a port is detected for the node, the node-installer queries CMdaemon for a node configuration associated with the detected Ethernet switch port. If a port is not detected for the node, then either the hardware involved with port detection needs checking, or a node configuration must be selected manually.

There are thus several scenarios:

1. The node is new, and an Ethernet switch port is detected. A node configuration associated with the port is found. The node-installer suggests to the administrator that the new node should use this configuration, and displays the configuration along with a confirmation dialog (figure 5.8). This suggestion can be interrupted, and other node configurations can be selected manually instead through a sub-dialog (figure 5.9). By default (in the main dialog), the original suggestion is accepted after a timeout.

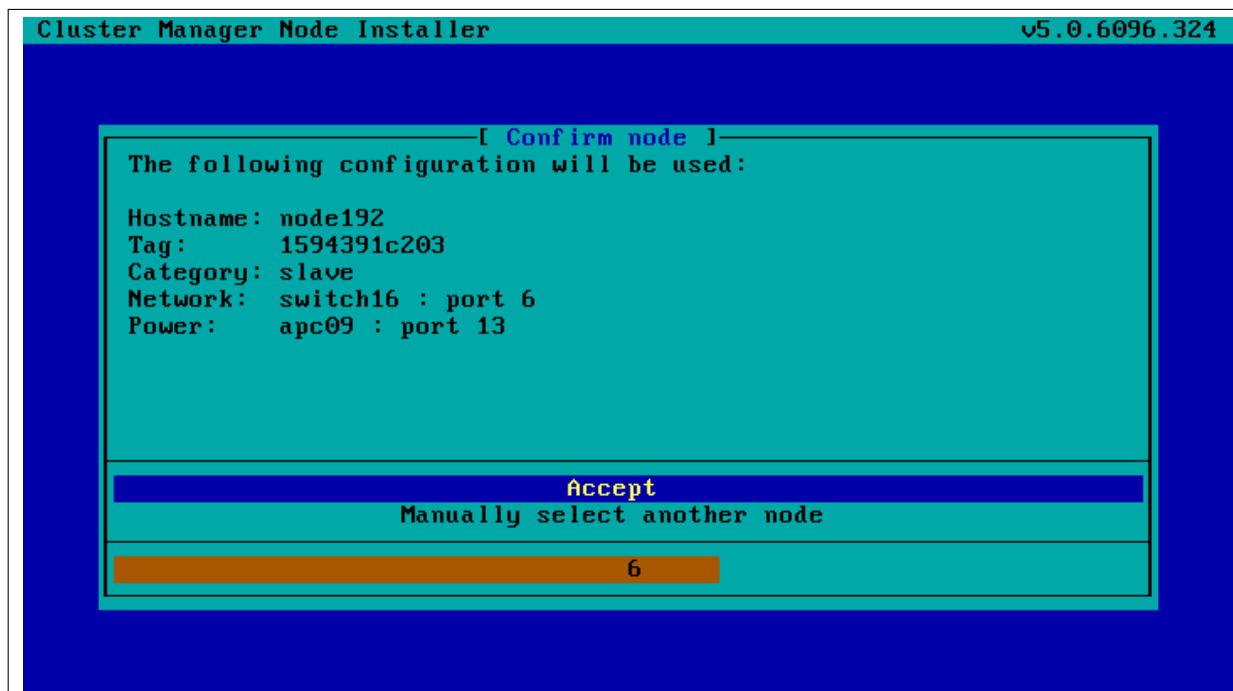


Figure 5.8: Scenarios: Configuration Found, Confirm Node Configuration

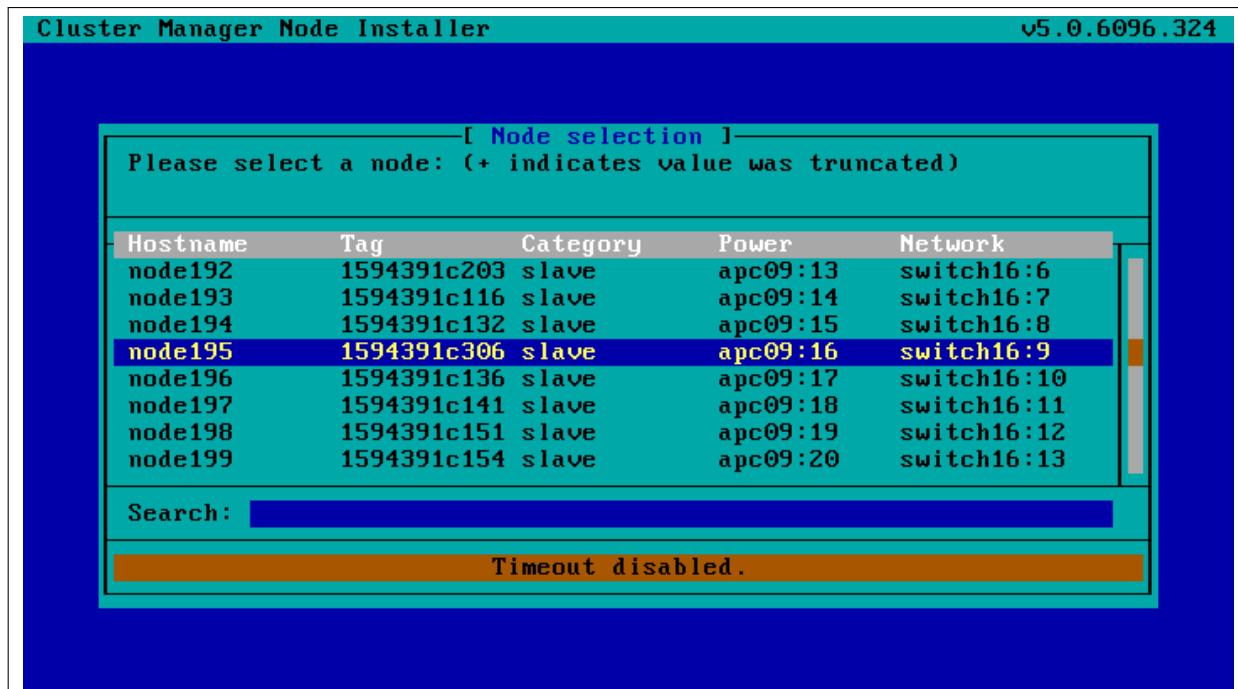


Figure 5.9: Scenarios: Node Selection Sub-Dialog

2. The node is new, and an Ethernet switch port is detected. A node configuration associated with the port is not found. The node-installer then displays a dialog that allows the administrator to either retry Ethernet switch port detection (figure 5.10) or to drop into a sub-dialog to manually select a node configuration (figure 5.9). By default, port detection is retried after a timeout.

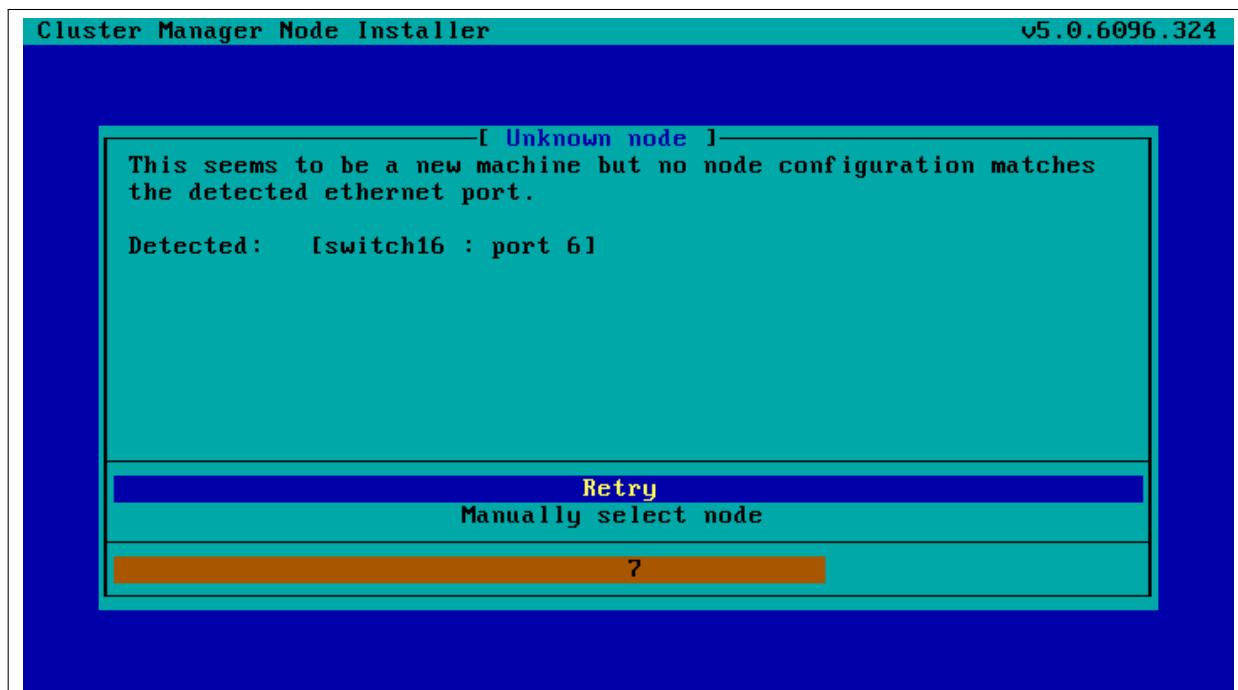


Figure 5.10: Scenarios: Unknown Node, Ethernet Port Detected

3. The node is new, and an Ethernet switch port is not detected. The node-installer then displays a

dialog that allows the user to either retry Ethernet switch port detection (figure 5.11) or to drop into a sub-dialog to manually select a node configuration (figure 5.9). By default, port detection is retried after a timeout.

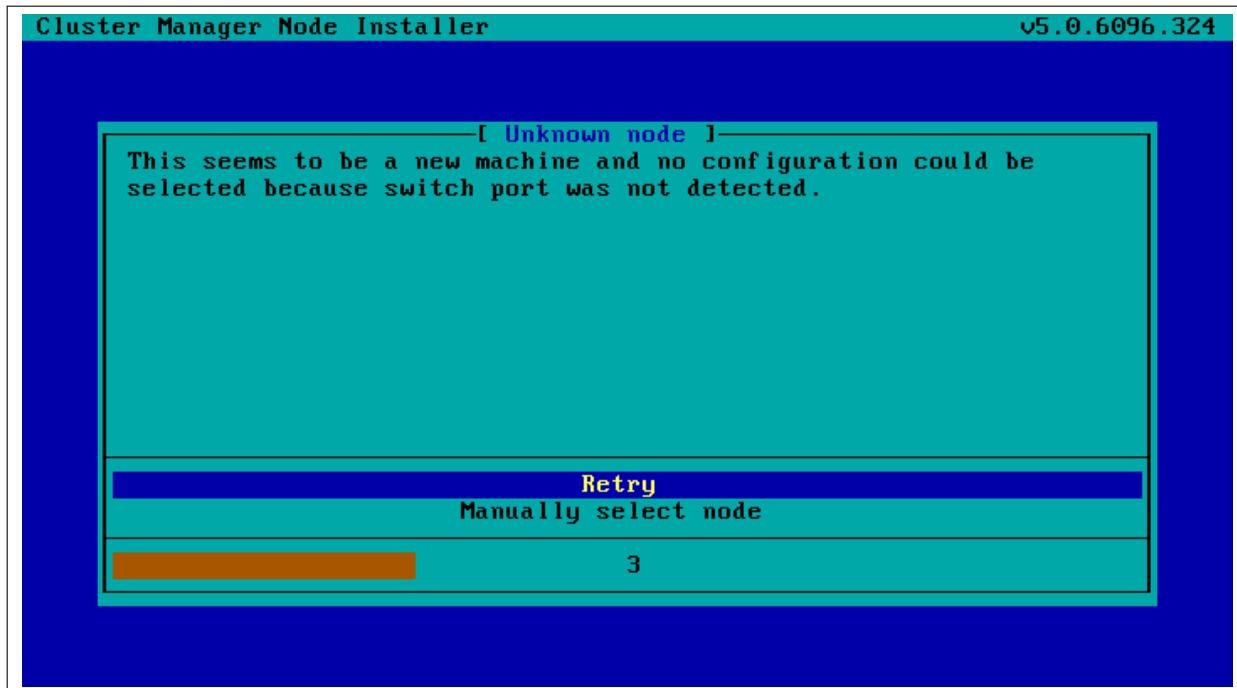


Figure 5.11: Scenarios: Unknown Node, No Ethernet Port Detected

4. The node is known, and an Ethernet switch port is detected. The configuration associated with the port is the same as the configuration associated with the node's MAC address. The node-installer then displays the configuration as a suggestion along with a confirmation dialog (figure 5.8). The suggestion can be interrupted, and other node configurations can be selected manually instead through a sub-dialog (figure 5.9). By default (in the main dialog), the original suggestion is accepted after a timeout.
5. The node is known, and an Ethernet switch port is detected. However, the configuration associated with the port is not the same as the configuration associated with the node's MAC address. This is called a *port mismatch*. This type of port mismatch situation occurs typically during a mistaken *node swap*, when two nodes are taken out of the cluster and returned, but their positions are swapped by mistake (or equivalently, they are returned to the correct place in the cluster, but the switch ports they connect to are swapped by mistake). To prevent configuration mistakes, the node-installer displays a port mismatch dialog (figure 5.12) allowing the user to retry, accept a node configuration that is associated with the detected Ethernet port, or to manually select another node configuration via a sub-dialog (figure 5.9). By default (in the main port mismatch dialog), port detection is retried after a timeout.

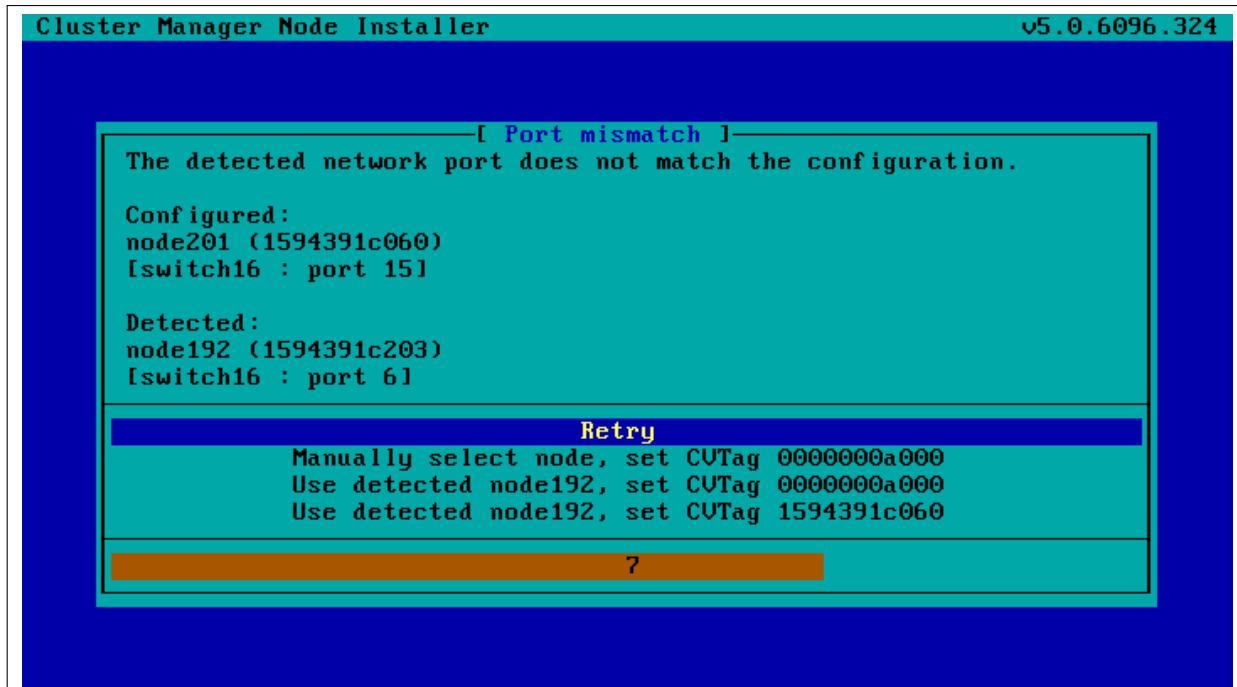


Figure 5.12: Scenarios: Port Mismatch Dialog

6. The node is known, and an Ethernet switch port is not detected. However, the configuration associated with the node's MAC address does have an Ethernet port associated with it. This is also considered a port mismatch. To prevent configuration mistakes, the node-installer displays a port mismatch dialog similar to figure 5.12, allowing the user to retry or to drop into a sub-dialog and manually select a node configuration that may work.

However, a more likely solution in most cases is to:

- either clear the switch port configuration in the cluster manager so that switch port detection is not attempted. For example, for node001, this can be done by running this cmsh command on the head node:  
`cmsh -c "device clear node001 switchports; commit"`
- or enable switch port detection on the switch. This is usually quite straightforward, but may require going through the manuals or software application that the switch manufacturer has provided.

By default (in the port mismatch dialog), port detection is retried after a timeout. This means that if the administrator clears the switch port configuration or enables switch port detection, the node-installer is able to continue automatically with a consistent configuration.

7. The node is known, and an Ethernet switch port is detected. However, the configuration associated with the node's MAC address has no Ethernet switch port associated with it. This is not considered a port mismatch but an unset switch port configuration, and it typically occurs if switch port configuration has not been carried out, whether by mistake or deliberately. The node-installer displays the configuration as a suggestion along with a confirmation dialog (figure 5.13). The suggestion can be interrupted, and other node configurations can be selected manually instead using a sub-dialog. By default (in the main dialog) the configuration is accepted after a timeout.

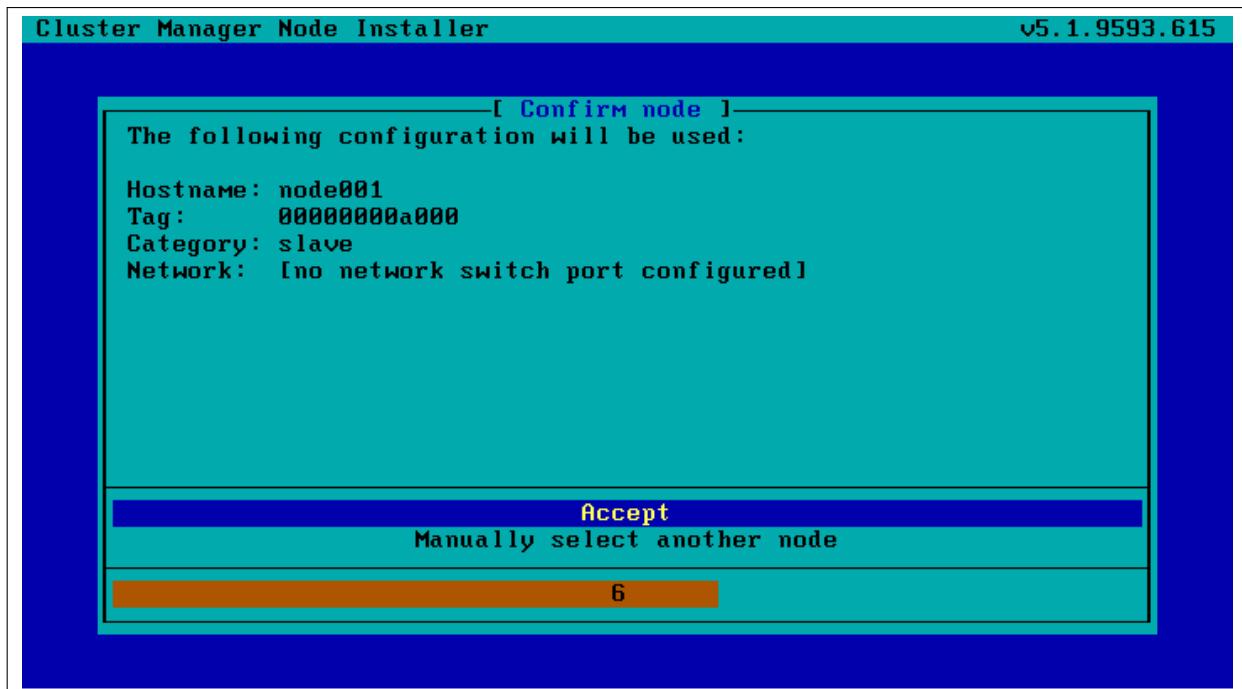


Figure 5.13: Scenarios: Port Unset Dialog

A truth table summarizing the scenarios is helpful:

Scenario	Node known?	Switch port detected?	Switch port configuration found?	Switch port configuration conflicts with node configuration?
1	No	Yes	Yes	No
2	No	Yes	No	No
3	No	No	No	No
4	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
5	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes (configurations differ)
6	Yes	No	Yes	Yes (port expected by MAC configuration not found)
7	Yes	Yes	No	No (port not expected by MAC configuration)

In these scenarios, whenever the user manually selects a node configuration in the prompt dialog, an attempt to detect an Ethernet switch port is repeated. If a port mismatch still occurs, it is handled by the system as if the user has not made a selection.

#### Summary Of Behavior During Hardware Changes

The logic of the scenarios means that an unpreconfigured node always boots to a dialog loop requiring manual intervention during a first install (scenarios 2 and 3). For subsequent boots the behavior is:

- If the node MAC hardware has changed (scenarios 1, 2, 3):
  - if the node is new and the detected port has a configuration, the node automatically boots to that configuration (scenario 1).
  - else manual intervention is needed (scenarios 2, 3)

- If the node MAC hardware has not changed (scenarios 4, 5, 6, 7):
  - if there is no port mismatch, the node automatically boots to its last configuration (scenarios 4, 7).
  - else manual intervention is needed (scenarios 5, 6).

### The newnodes Command

**newnodes basic use:** New nodes that have not been configured yet can be detected using the newnodes command from within the device mode of cmsh. A new node is detected when it reaches the node-installer stage after booting, and contacts the head node.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% newnodes
The following nodes (in order of appearance) are waiting to be assigned:
MAC           First appeared           Detected on switch port
-----
00:0C:29:01:0F:F8  Mon, 14 Feb 2011 10:16:00 CET  [no port detected]
```

At this point the node-installer is seen by the administrator to be looping, waiting for input on what node name is to be assigned to the new node.

The nodes can be uniquely identified by their MAC address or switch port address.

The port and switch to which a particular MAC address is connected can be discovered by using the showport command (section 3.10.4). After confirming that they are appropriate, the switchports property for the specified device can be set to the port and switch values.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% showport 00:0C:29:01:0F:F8
switch01:8
[basecm11->device]% set node003 switchports switch01:8
[basecm11->device*]% commit
```

When the node name (node003 in the preceding example) is assigned, the node-installer stops looping and goes ahead with the installation to the node.

The preceding basic use of newnodes is useful for small numbers of nodes. For larger number of nodes, the advanced options of newnodes may help carry out node-to-MAC assignment with less effort.

**newnodes advanced use—options:** The list of MAC addresses discovered by a newnodes command can be assigned in various ways to nodes specified by the administrator. Node objects should be created in advance to allow the assignment to take place. The easiest way to set up node objects in cmsh is to use the --clone option of the foreach command (section 2.5.5, page 65).

The advanced options of newnodes are particularly useful for quickly assigning node names to specific physical nodes. All that is needed is to power the nodes up in the right order. For nodes with the same hardware, the node that is powered up first reaches the stage where it tries to connect with the node-installer first. So its MAC address is detected first, and arrives on the list generated by newnodes first. If some time after the first node is powered up, the second node is powered up, then its MAC address becomes the second MAC address on the list, and so on for the third, fourth, and further nodes.

When assigning node names to a physical node, on a cluster that has no such assignment already, the first node that arrived on the list gets assigned the name node001, the second node that arrived on the list gets assigned the name node002 and so on.

The advanced options are shown in device mode by running the help newnodes command. The options can be introduced as being of three kinds: straightforward, grouping, and miscellaneous:

- The straightforward options:

```
-n|--nodes
-w|--write
-s|--save
```

Usually the most straightforward way to assign the nodes is to use the `-n` option, which accepts a list of nodes, together with a `-w` or `-s` option. The `-w` (`--write`) option sets the order of nodes to the corresponding order of listed MAC addresses, and is the same as setting an object in cmsh. The `-s` (`--save`) option is the same as setting and committing an object in cmsh, so `-s` implies a `-w` option is run at the same time.

So, for example, if 8 new nodes are discovered by the node-installer on a cluster with no nodes so far, then:

### Example

```
[base@cm11->device]% newnodes -w -n node001..node008
```

assigns (but does not commit) the sequence node001 to node008 the new MAC address according to the sequence of MAC addresses displaying on the list.

- The grouping options:

```
-g|--group
-c|--category
-h|--chassis
-r|--rack
```

The “`help newnodes`” command in device mode shows assignment options other than `-n` for a node range are possible. For example, the assignments can also be made for a group (`-g`), per category (`-c`), per chassis (`-h`), and per rack (`-r`).

- The miscellaneous options:

```
-f|--force
-o|--offset
```

By default, the `newnodes` command fails when it attempts to set a node name that is already taken. The `-f` (`--force`) option forces the new MAC address to be associated with the old node name. When used with an assignment grouping, (node range, group, category, chassis, or rack) all the nodes in the grouping lose their node-to-MAC assignments and get new assignments. The `-f` option should therefore be used with care.

The `-o` (`--offset`) option takes a number `<number>` and skips `<number>` nodes in the list of detected unknown nodes, before setting or saving values from the assignment grouping.

Examples of how to use the advanced options follow.

**newnodes advanced use—range assignment behavior example:** For example, supposing there is a cluster with nodes assigned all the way up to node022. That is, CMDaemon knows what node is assigned to what MAC address. For the discussion that follows, the three nodes node020, node021, node022 can be imagined as being physically in a rack of their own. This is simply to help to visualize a layout in the discussion and tables that follow and has no other significance. An additional 3 new, that is unassigned, nodes are placed in the rack, and allowed to boot and get to the node-installer stage.

The `newnodes` command discovers the new MAC addresses of the new nodes when they reach their node-installer stage, as before (the switch port column is omitted in the following text for convenience):

**Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% newnodes
MAC           First appeared
-----
00:0C:29:EF:40:2A  Tue, 01 Nov 2011 11:42:31 CET
00:0C:29:95:D3:5B  Tue, 01 Nov 2011 11:46:25 CET
00:0C:29:65:9A:3C  Tue, 01 Nov 2011 11:47:13 CET
```

The assignment of MAC to node address could be carried out as follows:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% newnodes -s -n node023..node025
MAC           First appeared           Hostname
-----
00:0C:29:EF:40:2A  Tue, 01 Nov 2011 11:42:31 CET  node023
00:0C:29:95:D3:5B  Tue, 01 Nov 2011 11:46:25 CET  node024
00:0C:29:65:9A:3C  Tue, 01 Nov 2011 11:47:13 CET  node025
```

Once this is done, the node-installer is able to stop looping, and to go ahead and install the new nodes with an image.

The physical layout in the rack may then look as indicated by this:

before	after
node020	node020
node021	node021
node022	node022
	node023
	node024
	node025

MAC  
...A  
...B  
...C

Here, node023 is the node with the MAC address ending in A.

If instead of the previous `newnodes` command, an offset of 1 is used to skip assigning the first new node:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% newnodes -s -o 1 node024..node025
```

then the rack layout looks like:

before	after
node020	node020
node021	node021
node022	node022
	<i>unassigned</i>
	node024
	node025

MAC  
...A  
...B  
...C

Here, *unassigned* is where node023 of the previous example is physically located, that is, the node with the MAC address ...A. The lack of assignment means there is actually no association of the name

node023 with that MAC address, due to the newnodes command having skipped over it with the `-o` option.

If instead the assignment is done with:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % newnodes -s 1 node024..node026
```

then the node023 name is unassigned, and the name node024 is assigned instead to the node with the MAC address ...A, so that the rack layout looks like:

before	after	MAC
node020	node020	
node021	node021	
node022	node022	
	node024	...A
	node025	...B
	node026	...C

**newnodes advanced use—assignment grouping example:** Node range assignments are one way of using newnodes. However assignments can also be made to a category, a rack, or a chassis. For example, with Base View assigning node names to a rack can be done from the `Racks` option of the node. For example, to add a node001 to a rack1, the navigation path would be:

Devices > Settings [node001] > Rack [rack1].

In cmsh, the assignment of multiple node names to a rack can conveniently be done with a `foreach` loop from within device mode:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % foreach -n node020..node029 (set rack rack02)
[basecm11->device*] % commit
[basecm11->device] % foreach -n node030..node039 (set rack rack03)
[basecm11->device*] % commit
```

The assignment of node names with the physical node in the rack can then be arranged as follows: If the nodes are identical hardware, and are powered up in numerical sequence, from node020 to node039, with a few seconds in between, then the list that the basic newnodes command (without options) displays is arranged in the same numerical sequence. Assigning the list in the rack order can then be done by running:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % newnodes -s -r rack02..rack03
```

If it turns out that the boot order was done very randomly and incorrectly for all of rack02, and that the assignment for rack02 needs to be done again, then a simple way to deal with it is to bring down the nodes of rack02, then clear out all of the rack02 current MAC associations, and redo them according to the correct boot order:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % foreach -r rack02 ( clear mac ) ; commit  
...removes MAC association with nodes from CMdaemon...  
  
...now reboot nodes in rack02 in sequence (not with BCM)...  
  
[basecm11->device] % newnodes  
  
...shows sequence as the nodes come up...  
  
[basecm11->device] % newnodes -s -r rack02  
  
...assigns sequence in boot order...
```

**newnodes advanced use—assignment forcing example:** The --force option can be used in the following case: Supposing that node022 fails, and a new node hardware comes in to replace it. The new regular node has a new MAC address. So, as explained by scenario 3 (section 5.4.2), if there is no switch port assignment in operation for the nodes, then the node-installer loops around, waiting for intervention.<sup>1</sup>

This situation can be dealt with from the command line by:

- accepting the node configuration at the regular node console, via a sub-dialog
- accepting the node configuration via cmsh, without needing to be at the regular node console:

```
[basecm11->device] % newnodes -s -f -n node022
```

### Node Identification

The *node identification* resource can be accessed via the Base View navigation path:

Devices > Nodes Identification.

The node identification resource is roughly the Base View equivalent to the newnodes command of cmsh, and it opens up the New Node list window (figure 5.14).

As is the case for newnodes in cmsh, the New Node list window of Base View lists the MAC address of any unassigned node that the head node detects, and shows the associated detected switch port for the node. Also, just as for newnodes, New Node list can help assign a node name to the node, assuming the node object exists. After assignment is done, the new status should be saved.

---

<sup>1</sup>with switch port assignment in place, scenario 1 means the new node simply boots up by default and becomes the new node022 without further intervention

New Node list					
<input type="checkbox"/> MAC	APPEARED	ACTION	NODE	UP	SWITCH PORT
<input type="checkbox"/> Apply to all visible				Loading...	
<input type="checkbox"/> FA:16:3E:0E:89:D5	Wed, 04 Jan 202...			-	
<input type="checkbox"/> FA:16:3E:25:4E:95	Wed, 04 Jan 202...			-	
<input type="checkbox"/> FA:16:3E:B6:69:6E	Wed, 04 Jan 202...	MAC		-	
			node004 node005 node003		

Figure 5.14: Node Identification Resource

The most useful way of using the node identification resource is for node assignment in large clusters.

To do this, it is assumed that the node objects have already been created for the new nodes. The creation of the node objects means that the node names exist, and so assignment to the node names is able to take place. An easy way to create many nodes in Base View, set their provisioning interface, and set their IP addresses is described in the section on the *node creation wizard* (section 5.7.2). Node objects can also be created easily in large numbers by using cmsh's foreach loop command on a node with the --clone option (section 2.5.5, page 65).

The nodes are also assumed to be set for net booting, typically set from a BIOS setting.

The physical nodes are then powered up in an arranged order. Because they are unknown new nodes, the node-installer keeps looping after a timeout. The head node in the meantime detects the new MAC addresses and switch ports in the sequence in which they first have come up and lists them in that order.

By default, all these newly detected nodes are set to an install mode of auto (section 5.4.4), which means that their numbering goes up sequentially from whatever number is assigned to the preceding node in the list. Thus, if there are 10 new unassigned nodes that are brought into the cluster, and the first node in the list is assigned to the first available number, say node327; then clicking on assign automatically assigns the remaining nodes to the next 9 available numbers, say node328-node336.

After the assignment, the node-installer looping process on the new nodes notices that the nodes are now known. The node-installer then breaks out of the loop, and installation goes ahead without any intervention needed at the node console.

### 5.4.3 Starting Up All Network Interfaces

At the end of section 5.4.2, the node-installer knows which node it is running on, and has decided what its node configuration is.

#### Starting Up All Provisioning Network Interfaces

It now gets on with setting up the IP addresses on the provisioning interfaces required for the node-installer, while taking care of matters that come up on the way:

**Avoiding duplicate IP addresses:** The node-installer brings up all the network interfaces configured for the node. Before starting each interface, the node-installer first checks if the IP address that is about to be used is not already in use by another device. If it is, then a warning and retry dialog is displayed until the IP address conflict is resolved.

**Using BOOTIF to specify the boot interface:** BOOTIF is a special name for one of the possible interfaces. The node-installer automatically translates BOOTIF into the name of the device, such as eth0 or eth1, used for network booting. This is useful for a machine with multiple network interfaces where it can be unclear whether to specify, for example, eth0 or eth1 for the interface that was used for booting. Using the name BOOTIF instead means that the underlying device, eth0 or eth1 in this example, does not need to be specified in the first place.

**Halting on missing kernel modules for the interface:** For some interface types like VLAN and channel bonding, the node-installer halts if the required kernel modules are not loaded or are loaded with the wrong module options. In this case the kernel modules configuration for the relevant software image should be reviewed. Recreating the ramdisk and rebooting the node to get the interfaces up again may be necessary, as described in section 5.8.5.

#### **Bringing Up Non-Provisioning Network Interfaces**

Provisioning interfaces are by default automatically brought up during the init stage, as the node is fully booted up. The BMC and non-provisioning interfaces on the other hand have a different behavior:

**Bringing Up And Initializing BMC Interfaces:** If a BMC interface is present and powered up, then it is expected to be running at least with layer 2 activity (ethernet). It can be initialized in the node configuration (section 3.7) with an IP address, netmask and user/password settings so that layer 3 (TCP/IP) networking works for it. BMC networking runs independently of node networking.

**Bringing up non-BMC, non-provisioning network interfaces:** Non-provisioning interfaces are inactive unless they are explicitly brought up. BCM can configure how these non-provisioning interfaces are brought up by using the `bringupduringinstall` parameter, which can take the following values:

- yes: Brings the interface up during the pre-init stage
- no: Keeps the interface down during the pre-init stage. This is the default for non-provisioning interfaces.
- yesandkeep: Brings the interface up during the pre-init stage, and keeps it up during the transition to the init stage.

#### **Bringing Up And Keeping Up Provisioning Network Interfaces**

The preceding `bringupduringinstall` parameter is not generally supported for provisioning interfaces. However the `yesandkeep` value does work for provisioning interfaces too, under some conditions:

- yesandkeep: Brings the interface up during the pre-init stage, and keeps it up during the transition to the init stage, for the following provisioning devices:
  - Ethernet device interfaces using a leased DHCP address
  - InfiniBand device interfaces running with distribution OFED stacks

#### **Restarting The Network Interfaces**

At the end of this step (i.e. section 5.4.3) the network interfaces are up. When the node-installer has completed the remainder of its 13 steps (sections 5.4.4–5.4.13), control is handed over to the local init process running on the local drive. During this handover, the node-installer brings down all network devices. These are then brought back up again by `init` by the distribution's standard networking init scripts, which run from the local drive and expect networking devices to be down to begin with.

#### 5.4.4 Determining Install-mode Type And Execution Mode

Stored *install-mode* values decide whether synchronization is to be applied fully to the local drive of the node, only for some parts of its filesystem, not at all, or even whether to drop into a maintenance mode instead.

Related to install-mode values are execution mode values (page 259) that determine whether to apply the install-mode values to the next boot, to new nodes only, to individual nodes or to a category of nodes.

Related to execution mode values is the confirmation requirement toggle value (page 261) in case a full installation is to take place.

These values are merely determined at this stage; nothing is executed yet.

##### Install-mode Values

The install-mode can have one of five values: `AUTO`, `FULL`, `MAIN`, `NOSYNC`, and `SKIP`. It should be understood that the term “install-mode” implies that these values operate only during the node-installer phase.<sup>2</sup>

- If the install-mode is set to `FULL`, then the node-installer re-partitions, creates new filesystems and synchronizes a full image onto the local drive according a *partition layout*. This process wipes out all pre-boot drive content.

A partition layout (Appendix D) includes defined values for the partitions, sizes, and filesystem types for the nodes being installed. An example of a partition layout is the default partition layout (Appendix D.3).

- If the install-mode is set to `AUTO`, then the node-installer checks the partition layout of the local drive against the node’s stored configuration. If these do not match because, for example, the node is new, or if they are corrupted, then the node-installer recreates the partitions and filesystems by carrying out a `FULL` install. If however the drive partitions and filesystems are healthy, the node-installer only does an incremental software image synchronization. Synchronization tends to be quick because the software image and the local drive usually do not differ much.

Synchronization also removes any extra local files that do not exist on the image, for the files and directories considered. Section 5.4.7 gives details on how it is decided what files and directories are considered.

- If the install-mode is set to `MAIN`, then the node-installer does not carry out a disk check, and goes on to maintenance mode, allowing manual investigation of specific problems. The local drive is untouched.
- If the install-mode is set to `NOSYNC`, and the partition layout check matches the stored XML configuration, then the node-installer skips synchronizing the image to the node, so that contents on the local drive persist from the previous boot. An exception to this is the node certificate and key, that is the files `/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cert.{pem|key}`. These are updated from the head node if missing.

If however the partition layout does not match the stored configuration, a `FULL` image sync is triggered. Thus, for example, a burn session (Chapter 11 of the *Installation Manual*), with the default burn configuration which destroys the existing partition layout on a node, will trigger a `FULL` image sync on reboot after the burn session.

The `NOSYNC` setting should therefore not be regarded as a way to protect data. Ways to preserve data across node reboots are discussed in the section that discusses the `FULL` install confirmation settings (page 261).

---

<sup>2</sup>For example, `imageupdate` (section 5.6.2), which is run by CMDaemon, ignores these settings, which is as expected. This means that, for example, if `imageupdate` is run with `NOSYNC` set, then the head node image is still synchronized over as usual to the regular node while the node is up. It is only during node boot, during the installer stage, that setting `NOSYNC` prevents synchronization.

NOSYNC is useful during mass planned node reboots when set with the `nextinstallmode` option of device mode. This sets the nodes to use the OS on the hard drive, during the next boot only, without an image sync:

#### Example

```
[basecm11] % device foreach -n node001..node999 (set nextinstallmode nosync)
[basecm11] % device commit
```

- If the install-mode is set to SKIP, then the node-installer does not carry out a check of the partitions and filesystems, and it also does not carry out a software image synchronization. If a node runs into problems with its drive content during a normal start up attempt, then this mode can perhaps be used to attempt data recovery on the node.

#### Install-mode Logging

The decision that is made is normally logged to the node-installer file, `/var/log/node-installer` on the head node.

#### Example

```
08:40:58 node001 node-installer: Installmode is: AUTO
08:40:58 node001 node-installer: Fetching disks setup.
08:40:58 node001 node-installer: Setting up environment for initialize scripts.
08:40:58 node001 node-installer: Initialize script for category default is empty.
08:40:59 node001 node-installer: Checking partitions and filesystems.
08:40:59 node001 node-installer: Updating device status: checking disks
08:40:59 node001 node-installer: Detecting device '/dev/sda': found
08:41:00 node001 node-installer: Number of partitions on sda is ok.
08:41:00 node001 node-installer: Size for /dev/sda1 is ok.
08:41:00 node001 node-installer: Checking if /dev/sda1 contains ext3 filesystem.
08:41:01 node001 node-installer: fsck.ext3 -a /dev/sda1
08:41:01 node001 node-installer: /dev/sda1: recovering journal
08:41:02 node001 node-installer: /dev/sda1: clean, 129522/1250928 files, 886932/5000000 blocks
08:41:02 node001 node-installer: Filesystem check on /dev/sda1 is ok.
08:41:02 node001 node-installer: Size for /dev/sda2 is wrong.
08:41:02 node001 node-installer: Partitions and/or filesystems are missing/corrupt. (Exit code\
 18, signal 0)
08:41:03 node001 node-installer: Creating new disk layout.
```

In this case the node-installer detects that the size of `/dev/sda2` on the disk no longer matches the stored configuration, and triggers a full re-install. For further detail beyond that given by the node-installer log, the `disks` script at `/cm/node-installer/scripts/disks` on the head node can be examined. The node-installer checks the disk by calling the `disks` script. Exit codes, such as the 18 reported in the log example, are defined near the top of the `disks` script.

#### Install-mode's Execution Modes

Execution of an install-mode setting is possible in several ways, both permanently or just temporarily for the next boot. Execution can be set to apply to categories or individual nodes. The node-installer looks for install-mode execution settings in this order:

1. The “`New node installmode`” property of the node’s category. This decides the install mode for a node that is detected to be new.

It can be set for the `default` category using a Base View navigation path such as:

```
Grouping > Node categories[default] > Edit > Settings > Install mode
```

or using `cmsh` with a one-liner such as:

```
cmsh -c "category use default; set newnodeinstallmode FULL; commit"
```

By default, the “New node installmode” property is set to FULL.

2. The Install-mode setting as set by choosing a PXE menu option on the console of the node before it loads the kernel and ramdisk (figure 5.15). This only affects the current boot. By default the PXE menu install mode option is set to AUTO.

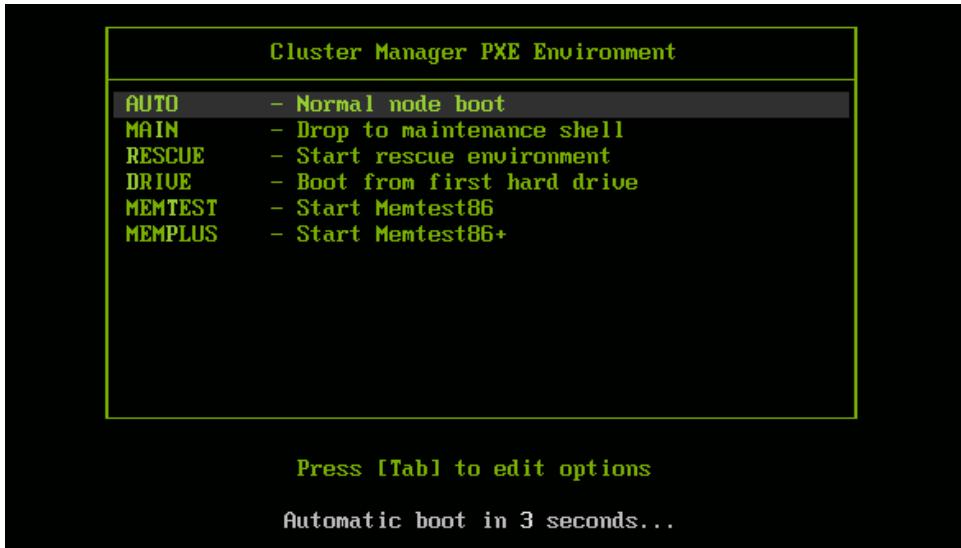


Figure 5.15: PXE Menu With Install-mode Set To AUTO

3. The “Next boot install-mode” property of the node configuration. This can be set for a node such as node001 using a Base View navigation path such as:

Devices > Nodes[node001] > Edit > Settings > Install mode

It can also be set using cmsh with a one-liner:

```
cmsh -c "device use node001; set nextinstallmode FULL; commit"
```

The property is cleared when the node starts up again, after the node-installer finishes its installation tasks. So it is empty unless specifically set by the administrator during the current uptime for the node.

4. The install-mode property can be set in the node configuration using Base View via Devices > Nodes[node001] > Edit > Settings > Install mode or using cmsh with a one-liner such as:

```
cmsh -c "device use node001; set installmode FULL; commit"
```

By default, the install-mode property is auto-linked to the property set for install-mode for that category of node. Since the property for that node’s category defaults to AUTO, the property for the install-mode of the node configuration defaults to “AUTO (Category)”.

5. The install-mode property of the node’s category. This can be set using Base View with a navigation path such as:

Grouping > Node categories[default] > Edit > Settings > Install mode or using cmsh with a one-liner such as:

```
cmsh -c "category use default; set installmode FULL; commit"
```

As already mentioned in a previous point, the install-mode is set by default to AUTO.

6. A dialog on the console of the node (figure 5.16) gives the user a last opportunity to overrule the install-mode value as determined by the node-installer. By default, it is set to AUTO:

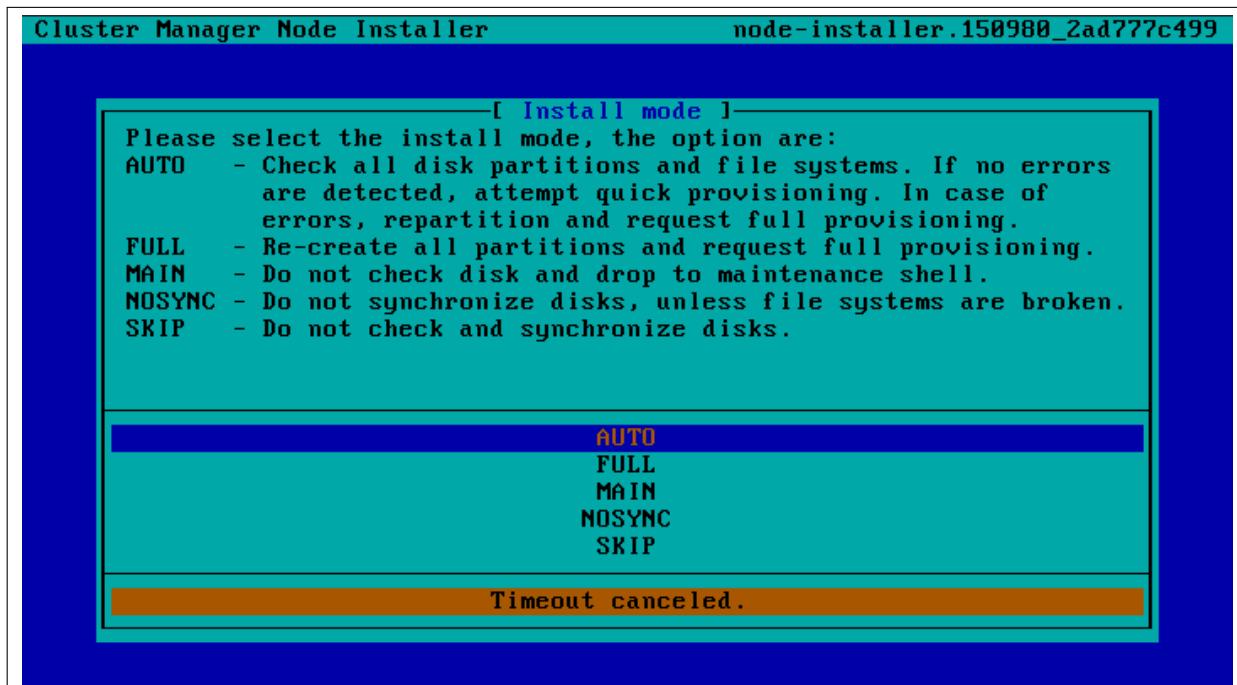


Figure 5.16: Install-mode Setting Option During Node-Installer Run

#### FULL Install Confirmation via `datanode` Setting

Related to execution mode values is the ability to carry out a FULL install only after explicit confirmation, via the `datanode` property. This must be set in order to prompt for a confirmation, when a FULL installation is about to take place. If it is set, then the node-installer only goes ahead with the FULL install after the administrator has explicitly confirmed it.

The `datanode` property can be set in the node configuration of, for example, `node001` with Base View via the navigation path:

`Devices > Nodes[node001] > Edit > Settings > Data node[Yes]`

Alternatively, the parameter `datanode` can be set using a `cmsh` one-liner as follows:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device use node001; set datanode yes; commit"
```

The property can also be set at a category level. Since `datanode` is a boolean value, the actual value that is used for a node is the result of the `or` operation for that value across the levels. The level at which a value works due to its boolean or non-boolean type is explained more on page 27.

**Why the FULL install confirmation is useful:** The reason for such a setting is that a FULL installation can be triggered by disk or partition changes, or by a change in the MAC address. If that happens, then:

- considering a drive, say, `/dev/sda` that fails, this means that any drive `/dev/sdb` would then normally become `/dev/sda` upon reboot. In that case an unwanted FULL install would not only be triggered by an install-mode settings of FULL, but also by the install-mode settings of AUTO or NOSYNC. Having the new, “accidental” `/dev/sda` have a FULL install is unlikely to be the intention, since it would probably contain useful data that the node-installer earlier left untouched.

- considering a node with a new MAC address, but with local storage containing useful data from earlier. In this case, too, an unwanted FULL install would not only be triggered by an install-mode setting of FULL, but also by the install-mode settings AUTO or NOSYNC.

Thus, in cases where nodes are used to store data, an explicit confirmation before overwriting local storage contents is a good idea. However, by default, no confirmation is asked for when a FULL installation is about to take place.

**Carrying out the confirmation:** When the confirmation is required, then it can be carried out by the administrator as follows:

- From the node console. A remote console launched from Base View or cmsh will also work if SOL connectivity has been configured.
- From cmsh, within device mode, using the `installerinteractions` command (some output elided):

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% installerinteractions -w -n node001 --confirm
Hostname Action
-----
node001 Requesting FULL Install (partition mismatch)
[basecm11->device]%
...07:57:36 [notice] basecm11: node001 [ INSTALLER_CALLINGINIT ]...
[basecm11->device]%
...07:58:20 [notice] basecm11: node001 [    UP    ]
```

The `installerinteractions` command then sets the node to a `confirmed` state. The other possible states are `deny` and `pending`.

Besides confirmation, the `installerinteractions` command has options that include letting it:

- deny the installation, and put it into maintenance mode
- carry out a dry-run
- carry out its actions for node groupings such as: node lists, node categories, node groups, chassis, racks, as are possible in the grouping options (page 64).

Further details on the command can be viewed by running `help installerinteractions`.

**An alternative way to avoid overwriting node storage:** Besides the method of FULL install confirmation for datanode, there is a method based on XML assertions, that can also be used to prevent data loss on nodes.

It uses XML assertions to confirm that the physical drive is recognized (Appendix D.11).

**A way to overwrite a specified block device:** A related method is that sometimes, for reasons of performance or convenience, it may be desirable to clear data on particular block devices for a node, and carry it out during the next boot only. This can be done by setting the block device names to be cleared as values to the parameter `Block devices cleared on next boot`. The values can be set in cmsh as follows:

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% append blockdevicesclearedonnextboot /dev/sda /dev/sdb ; commit
```

The value of `blockdevicesclearedonnextboot` is automatically cleared after the node is rebooted. Clearing data in this way ignores any datanode or `nextinstallmode` settings, and should therefore be used with due care.

### 5.4.5 Running Initialize Scripts

An *initialize script* is used when custom commands need to be executed before checking partitions and mounting devices (section 3.19.4). For example, to initialize some not explicitly supported hardware, or to do a RAID configuration lookup for a particular node. In such cases the custom commands are added to an *initialize* script. How to edit an *initialize* script is described in Appendix E.2.

An *initialize* script can be added to both a node's category and the node configuration. The node-installer first runs an *initialize* script, if it exists, from the node's category, and then an *initialize* script, if it exists, from the node's configuration.

The node-installer sets several environment variables which can be used by the *initialize* script. Appendix E contains an example script documenting these variables.

Related to the *initialize* script is the *finalize* script (section 5.4.11). This may run after node provisioning is done, but just before the `init` process on the node runs.

### 5.4.6 Checking Partitions, RAID Configuration, Mounting Filesystems

#### Behavior As Decided By The Install-Mode Value

In section 5.4.4 the node-installer determines the install-mode value, along with when to apply it to a node.

**AUTO:** The install-mode value is typically set to default to AUTO. If AUTO applies to the current node, it means the node-installer then checks the partitions of the local drive and its filesystems and recreates them in case of errors. Partitions are checked by comparing the partition layout of the local drive(s) against the drive layout as configured in the node's category configuration and the node configuration.

After the node-installer checks the drive(s) and, if required, recreates the layout, it mounts all filesystems to allow the drive contents to be synchronized with the contents of the software image.

**FULL, MAIN, or SKIP:** If install-mode values of FULL, MAIN, or SKIP apply to the current node instead, then no partition checking or filesystem checking is done by the node-installer.

**NOSYNC:** If the install-mode value of NOSYNC applies, then if the partition and filesystem checks both show no errors, the node starts up without getting an image synced to it from the provisioning node. If the partition or the filesystem check show errors, then the node partition is rewritten, and a known good image is synced across.

#### Behavior As Decided By XML Configuration Settings

The node-installer is capable of creating advanced drive layouts, including LVM setups, and hardware and software RAID setups. Drive layout examples and relevant documentation are in Appendix D.

The XML description used to set the drive layouts can be deployed for a single device or to a category of devices.

**Hardware RAID:** BCM supports hardware RAID levels 0, 1, 5, 10, and 50, and supports the following options:

Option
64kB
128kB
• stripe size:
256kB
512kB
1024kB

Option	
• cache policy:	Cached Direct

Option Description	
• read policy:	NORA No Read Ahead
	RA Read Ahead
	ADRA Adaptive Read

Option Description	
• write policy:	WT Write Through
	WB Write Back

#### 5.4.7 Synchronizing The Local Drive With The Software Image

After having mounted the local filesystems, these can be synchronized with the contents of the software image associated with the node (through its category). Synchronization is skipped if the install-mode values of NOSYNC or SKIP are set, and takes place FULL or AUTO are set. Synchronization is delegated by the node-installer to the CMDaemon provisioning system. The node-installer just sends a provisioning request to CMDaemon on the head node.

For an install-mode of FULL, or for an install-mode of AUTO where the local filesystem is detected as being corrupted, full provisioning is done. For an install-mode of AUTO where the local filesystem is healthy and agrees with that of the software image, sync provisioning is done.

#### The lock, unlock, And islocked Commands For Software Images

The software image that is requested is available to nodes by default. Its availability can be altered and checked with the following commands:

- lock: this *locks* an image so that the image cannot be provisioned until the image is *unlocked*.
- unlock: this *unlocks* a locked image, so that request for provisioning the image is no longer prevented by a lock
- islocked: this lists the locked or unlocked states of images.

Locking an image is sometimes useful, for example, to make changes to an image when nodes are booting:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% softwareimage list
Name (key)          Path                                Kernel version      Nodes
-----
default-image        /cm/images/default-image           3.10.0-1062.12.1.el7.x86_64  3
[basecm11]% softwareimage
[basecm11->softwareimage]% lock default-image
[basecm11->softwareimage]% islocked
Name          Locked
-----
default-image  yes
```

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]%
```

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]%
```

```
[basecm11->device]%
```

*...the cluster administrator makes changes to the node image during a boot, as it waits for the image to unlock...*

```
[basecm11->device]%
```

```
softwareimage unlock default-image
```

For an unlocked image, on receiving the provisioning request, CMDaemon assigns the provisioning task to one of the provisioning nodes. The node-installer is notified when image synchronization starts, and also when the image synchronization task ends—whether it is completed successfully or not.

**Exclude Lists:** `excludelistsyncinstall` **And** `excludelistfullinstall`

What files are synchronized is decided by an *exclude list*. An exclude list is a property of the node category, and is a list of directories and files that are excluded from consideration during synchronization. The excluded list that is used is decided by the type of synchronization chosen: `full` or `sync`:

- A `full` type of synchronization rewrites the partition table of the node, then copies the filesystem from a software image to the node, using a list to specify files and directories to exclude from consideration when copying over the filesystem. The list of exclusions used is specified by the `excludelistfullinstall` property.

The intention of `full` synchronization is to allow a complete working filesystem to be copied over from a known good software image to the node. By default the `excludelistfullinstall` list contains `/proc/`, `/sys/`, and `lost+found/`, which have no content in BCM's default software image. The list can be modified to suit the requirements of a cluster, but it is recommended to have the list adhere to the principle of allowing a complete working node filesystem to be copied over from a known good software image.

- A `sync` type of synchronization uses the property `excludelistsyncinstall` to specify what files and directories to exclude from consideration when copying parts of the filesystem from a known good software image to the node. The `excludelistsyncinstall` property is in the form of a list of exclusions, or more accurately in the form of two sub-lists.

The contents of the sub-lists specify the parts of the filesystem that should be retained or not copied over from the software image during sync synchronization when the node is booting. The intention behind this is to have the node boot up quickly, updating only the files from the image to the node that need updating due to the reboot of the node, and otherwise keeping files that are already on the node hard disk unchanged. The contents of the sub-lists are thus items such as the node log files, or items such as the `/proc` and `/sys` pseudo-filesystems which are generated during node boot.

The administrator should be aware that nothing on a node hard drive can be regarded as persistent because a FULL sync takes place if any error is noticed during a partition or filesystem check.

Anything already on the node that matches the content of these sub-lists is not overwritten by image content during an `excludelistsyncinstall` sync. However, image content that is not on the node is copied over to the node only for items matching the first sub-list. The remaining files and directories on the node, that is, the ones that are not in the sub-lists, lose their original contents, and are copied over from the software image.

A `cmsh` one-liner to get an exclude list for a category is:

```
cmsh -c "category use default; get excludelistfullinstall"
```

Similarly, to set the list:

```
cmsh -c "category use default; set excludelistfullinstall; commit"
```

where a text-editor opens up to allow changes to be made to the list. In Base View the navigation path is:

Grouping > Node Categories > Edit > Node Category > Settings > Exclude list full install

Image synchronization is done using `rsync`, and the syntax of the items in the exclude lists conforms to the “INCLUDE/EXCLUDE PATTERN RULES” section of the `rsync(1)` man page, which includes patterns such as “`**`”, “`?`”, and “[`:alpha:[]`]”.

The `excludelistfullinstall` and `excludelistsyncinstall` properties decide how a node synchronizes to an image during boot. For a node that is already fully up, the related `excludelistupdate` property decides how a running node synchronizes to an image without a reboot event, and is discussed in section 5.6.

#### **Interface Used To Receive Image Data: `provisioninginterface`**

For regular nodes with multiple interfaces, one interface may be faster than the others. If so, it can be convenient to receive the image data via the fastest interface. Setting the value of `provisioninginterface`, which is a property of the node configuration, allows this.

By default it is set to `BOOTIF` for regular nodes. Using `BOOTIF` is not recommended for node configurations with multiple interfaces.

When listing the network interfaces in `cmsh`, the provisioning interface has a `[prov]` flag appended to its name.

#### **Example**

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces]# list
Type      Network device name  IP          Network
-----
physical   BOOTIF [prov]       10.141.0.1    internalnet
physical   eth1              10.141.1.1    internalnet
physical   eth2              10.141.2.1    internalnet
```

**Head nodes and `provisioninginterface`:** A head node in a single-head cluster does not use the `provisioninginterface` setting.

Head nodes in a failover configuration (Chapter 15), however, do have a value set for `provisioninginterface`, corresponding to the interface on the head that is being provisioned over `internalnet` by the other head (`eth0` in figure 15.1).

#### **Transport Protocol Used For Image Data: `provisioningtransport`**

The `provisioningtransport` property of the node sets whether the image data is sent encrypted or unencrypted to the node from the provisioner. The property value is set via the `device` mode for the receiving node to one of these values:

- `rsyncdaemon`, which sends the data unencrypted
- `rsyncssh`, which sends the data encrypted

The `provisioningtransport` value can be set for all nodes, including provisioning nodes, head nodes, and cloud-director (section 3.2 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*) nodes. Because encryption severely increases the load on the provisioning node, using `rsyncssh` is only suggested if the users on the network cannot be trusted. By default, `provisioningtransport` is set to `rsyncdaemon`. If high availability (Chapter 15) is set up with the head nodes exposed to the outside world on the external network, the administrator should consider setting up `rsyncssh` for the head nodes.

The `rsyncssh` transport requires passwordless root access via `ssh` from the provisioner to the node being provisioned. This is configured by default in the default BCM nodes. However, if a new image is created with the `--exclude` options for `cm-create-image` as explained in (section 9.6.2), the keys must be copied over from `/root/.ssh/` on the existing nodes.

**Tracking The Status Of Image Data Provisioning:** provisioningstatus

The provisioningstatus command within the softwareimage mode of cmsh displays an updated state of the provisioning system. As a one-liner, it can be run as:

```
basecm11:~ # cmsh -c "softwareimage provisioningstatus"
Provisioning subsystem status:           idle, accepting requests
Update of provisioning nodes requested: no
Maximum number of nodes provisioning:   10000
Nodes currently provisioning:          0
Nodes waiting to be provisioned:       <none>
Provisioning node basecm11:
  Max number of provisioning nodes:    10
  Nodes provisioning:                 0
  Nodes currently being provisioned:  <none>
```

The provisioningstatus command has several options that allow the requests to be tracked. The **-r** option displays the basic status information on provisioning requests, while the **-a** option displays all status information on provisioning requests. Both of these options display the request IDs.

The Base View equivalent to provisioningstatus is accessed via the navigation path:

Provisioning > Provisioning nodes

By default, it displays basic status information on provisioning requests.

**Tracking The Provisioning Log Changes:** synclog

For a closer look into the image file changes carried out during provisioning requests, the synclog command from device mode can be used (lines elided in the following output):

**Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% synclog node001
Tue, 11 Jan 2011 13:27:17 CET - Starting rsync daemon based provisioning. Mode is SYNC.

sending incremental file list
./
...
deleting var/lib/ntp/etc/localtime
var/lib/ntp/var/run/ntp/
...
sent 2258383 bytes received 6989 bytes 156232.55 bytes/sec
total size is 1797091769 speedup is 793.29

Tue, 11 Jan 2011 13:27:31 CET - Rsync completed.
```

**Path Of The Provisioning Log File**

The path of the log file can be found with the **-p** option:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% synclog -p node001
/var/spool/cmd/node001-rsync
[basecm11->device]%
```

**Statistical Analysis Of Provisioning Sessions:** syncinfo

A provisioning session takes place between a provisioning image and a filesystem partition on a node. Statistics can be presented for the sessions using the syncinfo command. The statistical information presented is for number of files considered for transfer, the number of files that were actually transferred, how long the transfer took, which image and node were involved, and so on. The syncinfo command is run in device mode (output ellipsized and truncated):

## Example

```
[head->device]# syncinfo
Node      Path          Provisioner  Age   Duration Total files Transferred files ...
-----
node001   /cm/images/default-image head    34s   21s     171,504   328   ...
node002   /cm/images/default-image head    34s   22s     171,504   328   ...
...
...
```

The syncinfo command has options to run it per node, category, rack, and so on. Details on the options can be seen by running the help command (`help syncinfo`).

### Aborting Provisioning With cancelprovisioningrequest

The `cancelprovisioningrequest` command cancels provisioning.

Its usage is:

```
cancelprovisioningrequest [OPTIONS] [<requestid> ...]
```

To cancel all provisioning requests, it can be run as:

```
basecm11:~ # cmsh -c "softwareimage cancelprovisioningrequest -a"
```

The `provisioningstatus` command of `cmsh`, can be used to find request IDs. Individual request IDs, for example 10 and 13, can then be specified in the `cancelprovisioningrequest` command, as:

```
basecm11:~ # cmsh -c "softwareimage cancelprovisioningrequest 10 13"
```

The help page for `cancelprovisioningrequest` shows how to run the command on node ranges, groups, categories, racks, chassis, and so on.

The Base View equivalents to the `cmsh` versions for managing provisioning requests can be accessed via the navigation path Provisioning > Provisioning Requests

### 5.4.8 Writing Network Configuration Files

In the previous section, the local drive of the node is synchronized according to install-mode settings with the software image from the provisioning node. The node-installer now sets up configuration files for each configured network interface. These are files like:

```
/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth0
```

for Red Hat, Scientific Linux, CentOS, and Rocky Linux, while SUSE would use:

```
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-eth0
```

These files are placed on the local drive.

When the node-installer finishes its remaining tasks (sections 5.4.9–5.4.13) it brings down all network devices and hands over control to the local `/sbin/init` process. Eventually a local `init` script uses the network configuration files to bring the interfaces back up.

### 5.4.9 Creating A Local /etc/fstab File

The `/etc/fstab` file on the local drive contains local partitions on which filesystems are mounted as the `init` process runs. The actual drive layout is configured in the category configuration or the node configuration, so the node-installer is able to generate and place a valid local `/etc/fstab` file. In addition to all the mount points defined in the drive layout, several extra mount points can be added. These extra mount points, such as NFS imports, `/proc`, `/sys` and `/dev/shm`, can be defined and managed in the node's category and in the specific configuration of the node configuration, using Base View or `cmsh` (section 3.13.2).

### 5.4.10 Booting From The Local Hard Drive

By default, a node-installer boots from the software image on the head node via the network.

The node-installer can, optionally, during image synchronization, install a local drive boot record on the local hard drive if the `installbootrecord` boolean property of the node configuration or node category is set to on. Setting the local drive boot record means that the node tries to use a local hard drive boot installer during the next boot. This is a step toward having it become a standalone node that does not boot from the network. This step, and the other steps needed to allow booting from the local hard drive are covered next.

#### Setting The Boot Record To Allow The Node To Be Standalone

The local drive boot record is installed in the MBR of the local drive, overwriting the default iPXE boot record (section 5.1.2).

With a working custom software image, the boot record can be installed with `cmsh` commands for a node `node001` with:

```
cmsh -c "device use node001; set installbootrecord yes; commit"
```

or for a category default with:

```
cmsh -c "category use default; set installbootrecord yes; commit"
```

Since `installbootrecord` is a boolean property, it means that if the node or if the node category have the value set, then the node uses that value.

In Base View, the equivalent is the `Install boot record` option. This can similarly be enabled and saved in the Base View node configuration or node category.

Setting the local drive boot record allows the next boot to be from the local hard drive, if the node is set up right to boot from the local hard drive.

Booting from the local hard drive often requires some further changes, as explained next.

#### Managing Boot Sequence And Bootloader To Ensure The Node Can Be Standalone

For a local hard drive boot to work:

1. hard drive booting must be set to have a higher priority than network booting in the BIOS of the node. Otherwise regular PXE booting is attempted, despite whatever value `installbootrecord` has.
2. A working bootloader must be present.

By default, the node image for BCM has nodes set to use a SYSLINUX bootloader.

If the administrator is not using the default software image, but is using a custom software image (section 9.6.1), and if the image is based on a running node filesystem that has not been built directly from a parent distribution, then the GRUB boot configuration may not be appropriate for a standalone GRUB boot to work. This is because the parent distribution installers often use special logic for setting up the GRUB boot configuration. Carrying out this same special logic for all distributions using the custom software image creation tool `cm-create-image` (section 9.6.2) is impractical.

Providing a custom working image from a standalone node that has been customized after direct installation from the parent distribution, ensures the GRUB boot configuration layout of the custom image is as expected by the parent distribution. This then allows a standalone GRUB boot on the node to run properly.

Nodes can be set to use a GRUB bootloader from within `device` mode, or from within `category` mode, by changing the `bootloader` parameter within the mode. For example, for a node `node001`:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% get bootloader
syslinux (default)
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set bootloader grub
[basecm11->device*[node001*]]% commit
```

or, for the default category:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% category use default
[basecm11->category[default]]% get bootloader
syslinux
[basecm11->category[default]]% set bootloader grub
[basecm11->category*[default*]]% commit
```

Arranging for the two items in the preceding list ensures that the next boot is from GRUB on the hard drive. However, the BOOTIF also needs to be changed for booting to be successful. How it can be changed, and why it needs to be changed, is described next.

### **Changing BOOTIF To Ensure The Node Can Be Standalone**

If the BIOS is set to boot from the hard drive, and if there is a working boot loader, and if the boot record has been installed, then the node boots via the boot record on the hard drive.

BOOTIF is the default value for the network interface for a node that is configured as a BCM software image. However, the BOOTIF interface is undefined during hard drive booting, because it depends on the network provisioning setup, which is not running. This means that the networking interface would fail during hard drive boot for a standard image. To remedy this, the interface should be set to a defined network device name, such as eth0, or the modern equivalents such as en01 (section 5.8.1). The defined network device name, as the kernel sees it, can be found by logging into the node and taking a look at the output of ip link:

#### **Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ssh node001 ip link
1: lo: <LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 65536 qdisc noqueue...
2: eth0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc ...
```

In BCM the provisioning interface is mandatory, even if it is not provisioning. So it is set to the value of kernel-defined network device name instead of BOOTIF:

#### **Example**

```
[basecm11]% device interfaces node001
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces]% list
Type      Network device name   IP           Network
-----
physical   BOOTIF [prov]       10.141.0.1    internalnet
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces]% set bootif networkdevicename eth0
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->interfaces*]% commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces]% list
Type      Network device name   IP           Network
-----
physical   eth0 [prov]       10.141.0.1    internalnet
Tue Mar 31 13:46:44 2020 [notice] basecm11: node001 [    UP    ], restart required (eth0)
```

In the preceding example, the kernel-defined network device name is assumed to be `eth0`. It should be modified as required.

In addition, the new IP address is assumed to be on the same internal network. If the administrator intends the node to be standalone on another network, then the network and the IP address can be set to appropriate values.

When interface changes are carried out to make the node standalone, warnings show up saying that a reboot is required. A reboot of the node should be done when the interface configuration is complete.

During reboot, the node then boots from the hard drive as a standalone, with a non-BOOTIF network interface.

### Bringing A Node That Boots From Its Hard Drive Back Into A Cluster

If the node is to be brought back into the cluster, then simply unsetting “Install boot record” and rebooting the node does not restore its iPXE boot record and hence its ability to iPXE boot. To restore the iPXE boot record, the node can be booted from the default image copy on the head node via a network boot again. Typically this is done by manual intervention during node boot to select network booting from the BIOS of the node.

Setting the value of `provisioninginterface` in `cmsh` for the node to `B00TIF` is also recommended.

As suggested by the BCM iPXE boot prompt, setting network booting to work from the BIOS (regular “PXE” booting) is preferred to the relatively roundabout way of iPXE booting from the disk.

### SELinux Initialization For Hard Drive Boot And PXE Boot

If configured, SELinux (Chapter 12 of the *Installation Manual*) is initialized at this point. For a boot from the hard drive, the initialization occurs if an SELinux filesystem has been saved to disk previously. For a PXE boot, the initialization takes place if the `SELinuxInitialize` directive is set to `true` in the `node-installer.conf` file.

#### 5.4.11 Running Finalize Scripts

A `finalize` script is similar to an `initialize` script (section 5.4.5), only it runs a few stages later in the node-provisioning process.

In the context of configuration (section 3.19.4) it is used when custom commands need to be executed after the preceding mounting, provisioning, and housekeeping steps, but before handing over control to the node’s local `init` process. For example, custom commands may be needed to:

- initialize some not explicitly supported hardware before `init` takes over
- supply a configuration file for the software image that cannot simply be added to the software image and used by `init` because it needs node-specific settings
- load a slightly altered standard software image on particular nodes, typically with the change depending on automatically detecting the hardware of the node it is being loaded onto. While this could also be done by creating a full new software image and loading it on to the nodes according to the hardware, it usually turns out to be better for simplicity’s sake (future maintainability) to minimize the number of software images for the cluster.

The custom commands used to implement such changes are then added to the `finalize` script. How to edit a `finalize` script is described in Appendix E.2.

A `finalize` script can be added to both a node’s category and the node configuration. The node-installer first runs a `finalize` script, if it exists, from the node’s category, and then a `finalize` script, if it exists, from the node’s configuration.

The node-installer sets several environment variables which can be used by the `finalize` script. Appendix E contains an example script which documents these variables.

### 5.4.12 Unloading Specific Drivers

Many kernel drivers are only required during the installation of the node. After installation they are not needed and can degrade node performance.

Baseboard Management Controllers (BMCs, section 3.7) that use IPMI drivers are an egregious example of this. The IPMI drivers are required to have the node-installer configure the IP address of any IPMI cards. Once the node is configured, these drivers are no longer needed, but they continue to consume significant CPU cycles and power if they stay loaded, which can affect job performance.

To solve this, the node-installer can be configured to unload a specified set of drivers just before it hands over control to the local init process. This is done by editing the `removeModulesBeforeInit` setting in the node-installer configuration file

```
/cm/node-installer/scripts/node-installer.conf,
```

For the `node-installer.conf` file in multidistro and multiarch (section 9.7) configurations, the directory path `/cm/node-installer` takes the form:

```
/cm/node-installer-<distribution>-<architecture>
```

The values for `<distribution>` and `<architecture>` can take the values outlined on page 528.

By default, the IPMI drivers are placed in the `removeModulesBeforeInit` setting.

To pick up IPMI-related data values, IPMI access is then carried out over the network without the drivers.

### 5.4.13 Switching To The Local init Process

At this point the node-installer is done. The node's local drive now contains a complete Linux installation and is ready to be started. The node-installer hands over control to the local `/sbin/init` process, which continues the boot process and starts all runlevel services. From here on the boot process continues as if the machine was started from the drive just like any other regular Linux machine.

## 5.5 Node States

During the boot process, several state change messages are sent to the head node CMDaemon or detected by polling from the head node CMDaemon. The most important node states for a cluster after boot up are introduced in section 2.1.1. These states are described again, along with some less common ones to give a more complete picture of node states.

### 5.5.1 Node States Icons In Base View

In the node icons used by Base View:

- Nodes in the UP state are indicated by an up-arrow.
  - If all health checks (section 10.2.4) for the node are successful, the up-arrow is green.
  - If there is a health check that fails or if the node requires a reboot, the up-arrow is red.
- Nodes in the DOWN state are indicated by a blue down-arrow.
- There are some other states, including:
  - Nodes in a CLOSED state are indicated by an X
  - Nodes in a DOWN state that are installing are indicated by a underscored down-arrow icon: ↓

### 5.5.2 Node States Shown In cmsh

In cmsh, the node state can be found using the `status` command from device mode for a node:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% status -n node001..node002
node001 ..... [ UP ] restart-required, health check failed
node002 ..... [ DOWN ] (hostname changed) restart-required
```

Devices in general can have their states conveniently listed with the `list -f` (page 54) command:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% list -f "hostname:10, status:48"
hostname ( status
-----
apc01      [   UP   ]
basecm11   [   UP   ]
devvhpc    [   UP   ]
node001    [   UP   ] restart-required, health check failed
node002    [  DOWN  ] (hostname changed) restart-required
```

The reason for a red icon as shown in section 5.5.1 can be found within the parentheses. In this example it is (hostname changed).

### 5.5.3 Node States Indicating Regular Start Up

During a successful boot process the node goes through the following states:

- **BOOTING.** This is the state while the kernel and initrd are being downloaded by the node during network booting.

To allow the **BOOTING** state to be detected for a node:

- **BOOTIF** must be defined as an interface, or
- if there is no interface with the value **BOOTIF**, but a particular network device, such as `eth0`, is the boot interface, then a special revision tag of `bootif` can be used for no more than one interface:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device [node001]->interfaces [eth0]]% set revision bootif
```

- **INSTALLING.** This state is normally entered as soon as the node-installer has determined on which node the node-installer is running. Within this state, information messages display indicating what is being done while the node is in the **INSTALLING** state. Possible messages under the **status** column for the node within cmsh and Base View are normally, in sequence:

1. node-installer started
2. Optionally, the following two messages:
  - (a) waiting for user input
  - (b) installation was resumed
3. checking disks
4. recreating partitions and filesystems
5. mounting disks
6. One of these following two messages:
  - (a) waiting for FULL provisioning to start
  - (b) waiting for SYNC provisioning to start
7. provisioning started, waiting for completion
8. provisioning complete
9. initializing SELinux

Between steps 1 and 3 in the preceding, these optional messages can also show up:

- If burn mode is entered or left:
 

```
running burn-in tests
burn-in test completed successfully
```
  - If maintenance mode is entered:
 

```
entered maintenance mode
```
- INSTALLER\_CALLINGINIT. This state is entered as soon as the node-installer has handed over control to the local init process. The associated message normally seen with it in cmsh and Base View is:
    - switching to local root
  - UP. This state is entered as soon as the CMDaemon of the node connects to the head node CMDaemon.

#### 5.5.4 Node States That May Indicate Problems

Other node states are often associated with problems in the boot process:

- DOWN. This state is registered as soon as the CMDaemon on the regular node is no longer detected by CMDaemon on the head node. In this state, the state of the regular node is still tracked, so that CMDaemon is aware if the node state changes.
- CLOSED. This state is appended to the UP or DOWN state of the regular node by the administrator, and causes most CMDaemon monitoring actions for the node to cease. The state of the node is however still tracked by default, so that CMDaemon is aware if the node state changes.

The CLOSED state can be set from the device mode of cmsh using the close command. The help text for the command gives details on how it can be applied to categories, groups and so on. The -m option sets a message by the administrator for the closed node or nodes.

#### Example

```
root@headymcheadface ~]# cmsh
[headymcheadface]% device
[headymcheadface->device]% close -m "fan dead" -n node001,node009,node020
Mon May 2 16:32:01 [notice] headymcheadface: node001 ...[ DOWN/CLOSED ] (fan dead)
Mon May 2 16:32:01 [notice] headymcheadface: node009 ...[ DOWN/CLOSED ] (fan dead)
Mon May 2 16:32:01 [notice] headymcheadface: node020 ...[ DOWN/CLOSED ] (fan dead)
```

The CLOSED state can also be set from Base View via the navigation path

Devices > Nodes > Edit > Monitored state > Open/Close.

When the CLOSED state is set for a device, CMDaemon commands can still attempt to act upon it. For example, in the device mode of cmsh:

- open: This is the converse to the close command. It has the same options, including the -m option that logs a message. It also has the following extra options:
    - \* --reset: Resets whatever the status is of the devicestatus check. However, this reset by itself does not solve any underlying issue. The issue may still require a fix, despite the status having been reset.
- For example, the --reset option can be used to reset the restart-required flag (section 5.5.2). However, the reason that set the restart-required flag is not solved by the reset. Restarts are required for regular nodes if there have been changes in the following: network settings, disk setup, software image, or category.

- \* `-f | --failbeforedown <count>`: Specifies the number of failed pings before a device is marked as down (default is 1).
- drain and undrain (Appendix G.4.1)
- For nodes that have power control<sup>3</sup>:
  - \* `power -f on`
  - \* `power -f off`
  - \* `power -f reset`

In Base View, the equivalents for a node `node001` for example, are via the navigation paths:

- Devices > Nodes [node001] > Edit > Monitored state > Open/Close
- Devices > Nodes [node001] > Edit > Workload > Drain/Undrain
- Devices > Nodes [node001] > Edit > Power > On/Off/Reset.

CMDaemon on the head node only maintains device monitoring logs for a device that is in the UP state. If the device is in a state other than UP, then CMDaemon only tracks its state, and can display the state if queried.

For example: if a node displays the state UP when queried about its state, and is given a ‘close’ command, it then goes into a CLOSED state. Querying the node state then displays the state UP/CLOSED. It remains in that CLOSED state when the node is powered down. Querying the node state after being powered down displays DOWN/CLOSED. Next, powering up the node from that state, and having it go through the boot process, has the node displaying various CLOSED states during queries. Typically the query responses show it transitioning from DOWN/CLOSED, to INSTALLING/CLOSED, to INSTALLER\_CALLINGINIT/CLOSED, and ending up displaying the UP/CLOSED state.

Thus, a node set to a CLOSED state remains in a CLOSED state regardless of whether the node is in an UP or DOWN state. The only way out of a CLOSED state is for the administrator to tell the node to open via the cmsh “open” option discussed earlier. The node, as far as CMDaemon is concerned, then switches from the CLOSED state to the OPEN state. Whether the node listens or not does not matter—the head node records it as being in an OPENING state for a short time, and during this time the next OPEN state (UP/OPEN, DOWN/OPEN, etc.) is agreed upon by the head node and the node.

When querying the state of a node, an OPEN tag is not displayed in the response, because it is the “standard” state. For example, UP is displayed rather than UP/OPEN. In contrast, a CLOSED tag is displayed when it is active, because it is a “special” state.

The CLOSED state is normally set to take a node that is unhealthy out of the cluster management system. The node can then still be in the UP state, displaying UP/CLOSED. It can even continue running workload jobs in this state, since workload managers run independent of CMDaemon. So, if the workload manager is still running, the jobs themselves are still handled by the workload manager, even if CMDaemon is no longer aware of the node state until the node is re-opened. For this reason, draining a node is often done before closing a node, although it is not obligatory.

- OPENING. This transitional state is entered as soon as the CMDaemon of the node rescinds the CLOSED state with an “open” command from cmsh. The state usually lasts no more than about 5 seconds, and never more than 30 seconds in the default configuration settings of BCM. The help text for the open command of cmsh gives details on its options.
- INSTALLER\_FAILED. This state is entered from the INSTALLING state when the node-installer has detected an unrecoverable problem during the boot process. For instance, it cannot find the local drive, or a network interface cannot be started. This state can also be entered from the

---

<sup>3</sup>power control mechanisms such as PDUs, custom power scripts, and BMCs using IPMI/HP iLO/DRAC/CIMC/Redfish, are described in Chapter 4

INSTALLER\_CALLINGINIT state when the node takes too long to enter the UP state. This could indicate that handing over control to the local init process failed, or the local init process was not able to start the CMDaemon on the node. Lastly, this state can be entered when the previous state was INSTALLER\_REBOOTING and the reboot takes too long.

- INSTALLER\_UNREACHABLE. This state is entered from the INSTALLING state when the head node CMDaemon can no longer ping the node. It could indicate the node has crashed while running the node-installer.
- INSTALLER\_REBOOTING. In some cases the node-installer has to reboot the node to load the correct kernel. Before rebooting it sets this state. If the subsequent reboot takes too long, the head node CMDaemon sets the state to INSTALLER\_FAILED.

## 5.6 Updating Running Nodes

### Updating Running Nodes From A Stored Image By Rebooting

Changes made to the contents of the software image for nodes, kept on the head node, become a part of any other provisioning nodes according to the housekeeping system on the head node (section 5.2.4).

Thus, when a regular node reboots, the latest image is installed from the provisioning system onto the regular node via a provisioning request (section 5.4.7).

### Updating Running Nodes From A Stored Image Without Rebooting

However, updating a running node with the latest software image changes is also possible without rebooting it. Such an update can be requested using cmsh or Base View, and is queued and delegated to a provisioning node, just like a regular provisioning request. The properties that apply to the regular provisioning of an image also apply to such an update. For example, the value of the provisioninginterface setting (section 5.4.7) on the node being updated determines which interface is used to receive the image.

- In cmsh the request is submitted with the imageupdate option (section 5.6.2).
- In Base View, it is submitted, for a node node001 for example, using the navigation path:

Devices > Nodes[node001] > Edit > Software image > Update node (section 5.6.3).

The imageupdate command and “Update node” menu option use a configuration file called excludelistupdate, which is, as its name suggests, a list of exclusions to the update.

The running node is thus updated from a stored image with the help of that configuration file when imageupdate or “Update node” are run. More details are given in the rest of this section (section 5.6).

### Updating A Stored Image From A Running Node

The converse, that is, to update a stored image from what is on a running node, can be also be carried out. This converse can be viewed as grabbing from a node, and synchronizing what is grabbed, to an image. It can be done using grabimage (cmsh), or Grab to image (Base View), and involves further exclude lists excludegrab or excludelistgrabnew. The grabimage command and Grab to image option are covered in detail in section 9.5.2.

#### 5.6.1 Updating Running Nodes: Configuration With excludelistupdate

The exclude list excludelistupdate used by the imageupdate command is defined as a property of the node’s category. It has the same structure and rsync patterns syntax as that used by the exclude lists for provisioning the nodes during installation (section 5.4.7).

### Distinguishing Between The Intention Behind The Various Exclude Lists

The administrator should note that it is the `excludelistupdate` list that is being discussed here, in contrast with the `excludelistsyncinstall`/`excludelistfullinstall` lists which are discussed in section 5.4.7, and also in contrast with the `excludelistgrab`/`excludelistgrabnew` lists of section 9.5.2.

So, for the `imageupdate` command the `excludelistupdate` list concerns an *update* to a running system, while for installation sync or full provisioning, the corresponding exclude lists (`excludelistsyncinstall` and `excludelistfullinstall`) from section 5.4.7 are about an *install* during node start-up. Because the copying intention during updates is to be speedy, the `imageupdate` command synchronizes files rather than unnecessarily overwriting unchanged files. Thus, the `excludelistupdate` exclusion list it uses is actually analogous to the `excludelistsyncinstall` exclusion list used in the sync case of section 5.4.7, rather than being analogous to the `excludelistfullinstall` list.

Similarly, the `excludelistgrab`/`excludelistgrabnew` lists of section 9.5.2 are about a *grab* from the running node to the image.

- The `excludelistgrab` list here is intended for the case of synchronizing the existing image with the running node, and is thus analogous to the `excludelistsyncinstall` exclusion list.
- The `excludelistgrabnew` list here is intended for the case of copying a full image from the running node, and is thus analogous to the `excludelistfullinstall` list.

The following table summarizes this:

<b>During:</b>	<b>Exclude list used is:</b>	<b>Copy intention:</b>
update	<code>excludelistupdate</code>	sync, image to running node
install	<code>excludelistfullinstall</code>	full, image to starting node
	<code>excludelistsyncinstall</code>	sync, image to starting node
grab	<code>excludelistgrabnew</code>	full, running node to image
	<code>excludelistgrab</code>	sync, running node to image

The preceding table is rather terse. It may help to understand it if is expanded with some in-place footnotes, where the footnotes indicate what actions can cause the use of the exclude lists:

<b>During:</b>	<b>Exclude list used is:</b>	<b>Copy intention:</b>
update eg: imageupdate	<code>excludelistupdate</code>	sync, image to running node
install eg: node-provisioning process during pre-init stage depending on installmode decision	<code>excludelistfullinstall</code> eg: node provisioning with installmode FULL	full, image to starting node
	<code>excludelistsyncinstall</code> eg: node provisioning AUTO with healthy partition	sync, image to starting node
grab eg: grabimage (cmsh), Grab to image (Base View)	<code>excludelistgrabnew</code> <code>grabimage -i /Grab to image</code> for a new image	full, running node to image
	<code>excludelistgrab</code> <code>grabimage/Grab to image</code> for the original image	sync, running node to image

#### The Exclude List Logic For `excludelistupdate`

During an `imageupdate` command, the synchronization process uses the `excludelistupdate` list, which is a list of files and directories. One of the cross checking actions that may run during the synchronization is that the items on the list are excluded when copying parts of the filesystem from a known good software image to the node. The detailed behavior is as follows:

The `excludelistupdate` list is in the form of two sublists. Both sublists are lists of paths, except that the second sublist is prefixed with the text “`no-new-files:`” (without the double quotes). For the node being updated, all of its files are looked at during an `imageupdate` synchronization run. During such a run, the logic that is followed is:

- if an excluded path from `excludelistupdate` exists on the node, then nothing from that path is copied over from the software image to the node
- if an excluded path from `excludelistupdate` does not exist on the node, then
  - if the path is on the first, non-prefixed list, then the path is copied over from the software image to the node.
  - if the path is on the second, prefixed list, then the path is not copied over from the software image to the node. That is, no new files are copied over, like the prefix text implies.

This is illustrated by figure 5.17.

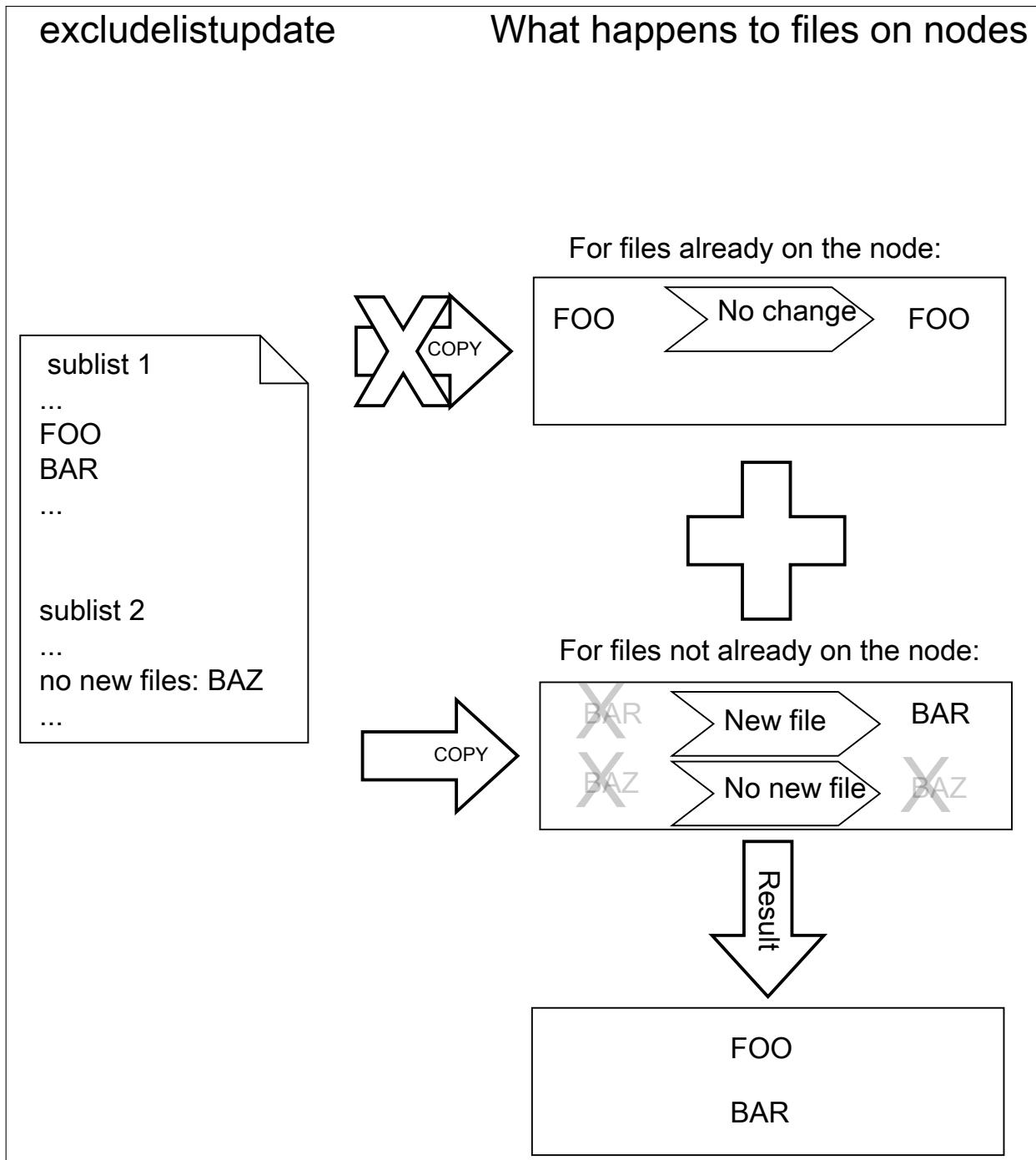


Figure 5.17: Exclude list logic

The files and directories on the node that are not in the sub-lists lose their original contents, and are copied over from the software image. So, content not covered by the sub-lists at that time is normally not protected from deletion.

Thus, the provisioning system excludes paths described according to the `excludelistupdate` property.

The provisioning system also excludes a statically-imported filesystem on a node if the filesystem is a member of the following special list: NFS, Lustre, FUSE, CephFS, CIFS, PanFS, FhGFS, BeeGFS, GlusterFS, or GPFS. If this exclusion were not done, then all data on these imported filesystems would

be wiped, since they are not part of the software image. The automatic exclusion for these imported filesystems does not rely on the excludelist values maintained by CMDDaemon—instead, CMDDaemon carries out the check on-the-fly when provisioning starts.

Statically-imported filesystems that have their mounts managed by BCM via the `fsmounts` mode can be excluded from being mounted on the nodes in the first place, by removing them from the listed mounts within the `fsmounts` mode.

Imported filesystems not on the special list can have their data wiped out during provisioning or sync updates, if the statically-imported filesystems are placed in the image manually—that is, if the filesystems are mounted manually into the image on the head node via `/etc/fstab` without using `cmsh` or Base View.

**Filesystems mounted dynamically cannot have their appearance or disappearance detected reliably:** Any filesystem that may be imported via an auto-mount operation must therefore explicitly be excluded by the administrator manually adding the filesystem to the exclude list. This is to prevent an incorrect execution of `imageupdate`. Neglecting to do this may wipe out the filesystem, if it happens to be mounted in the middle of an `imageupdate` operation.

**The `fstab` system is a statically mounting system, and not an auto-mounter:** While `fstab` mounts filesystems automatically, system administrators should not confuse that with auto-mounting. Auto-mounting as provided by `autofs` is designed for the dynamic mounting of filesystems on demand by regular users. The `fstab` table is designed for mounting as carried out by the system, as occurs during boot, which is why it is regarded as a static, non-auto-mounting system.

### Editing An Exclude List

A sample `cmsh` one-liner which opens up a text editor in a category so that the exclude list for updates can be edited is:

```
cmsh -c "category use default; set excludelistupdate; commit"
```

Similarly, the exclude list for updates can also be edited in Base View via the navigation path:  
Grouping > Node categories > Edit > Settings > Exclude list update

### Provisioning Modifications Via `excludelistmanipulatescript`

Sometimes the administrator has a need to slightly modify the execution of exclude lists during provisioning. The `excludelistmanipulatescript` file takes as an input the exclude list inherited from a category, modifies it in some way, and then produces a new exclude list. Conceptually it is a bit like how an administrator might use `sed` if it worked without a pipe. As usual, setting it for node level overrides the category level.

A script that manipulates the exclude lists of a node can be specified as follows within `cmsh`:

```
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set excludelistmanipulatescript
(a vi session will start. A script is edited and saved)
[basecm11->device[node001*]]% commit
```

The script can be as simple as:

### Example

```
#!/bin/bash

echo "- *"
echo 'no-new-files: - *'
```

If provisioning a node from the head node, then the script modifies the node-provisioning exclude lists—`excludelistfullinstall`, `excludelistsyncinstall`, and `excludelistupdate`—so that they appear to contain these items only:

```
- *
no-new-files: - *
```

The provisioning node then excludes everything during provisioning.

Careful editing and testing of the script is advised. Saving a script with just a single whitespace, for example, usually has undesirable results.

A more useful script template is the following:

### Example

```
#!/bin/bash

while read; do
    echo "$REPLY"
done

echo "# This and next line added by category excludelistmanipulatescript."
echo "# The command line arguments were: $@"
```

The provisioning exclude lists are simply read in, then sent out again without any change, except that the last two lines add comment lines to the exclude lists that are to be used.

Internally, the arguments taken by the `excludelistmanipulatescript` are the destination path and the sync mode (one of `install|update|full|grab|grabnew`). This can be seen in the output of `$@`, if running an `imageupdate` command to execute a dry run with the preceding example:

```
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% get excludelistmanipulatescript
(the script is put in)
[basecm11->device[node001*]]% commit; imageupdate
Performing dry run (use synclog command to review result, then pass -w to perform real update)...
Wed Apr 15 04:55:46 2015 [notice] basecm11: Provisioning started: send\ng basecm11:/cm/images/default-image to node001:/, mode UPDATE, dry run\
= yes, no data changes!
[basecm11->device[node001]]%
Wed Apr 15 04:55:51 2015 [notice] basecm11: Provisioning completed: sen\
t basecm11:/cm/images/default-image to node001:/, mode UPDATE, dry run \
= yes, no data changes!
imageupdate [ COMPLETED ]
```

An excerpt from the sync log, after running the `synclog` command, then shows output similar to (some output elided):

```
...
- /cm/shared/*
- /cm/shared/
- /home/*
- /home/
- /cm/shared/apps/slurm/*
- /cm/shared/apps/slurm/
# This and next line added by category excludelistmanipulatescript.
# The command line arguments were: update /
```

```
Rsync output:
sending incremental file list
cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/configfiles/
...
```

Here, the sync mode is update and the destination path is “/”. Which of the exclude lists is being modified can be determined by the `excludelistmanipulatescript` by parsing the sync mode.

The bash variable that accepts the exclude list text is set to a safely-marked form using curly braces. This is done to avoid expansion surprises, due to wild card characters in the exclude lists. For example, if `$REPLY` were used instead of  `${REPLY}`, and the script were to accept an exclude list line containing “`-/proc/*`”, then it would give quite confusing output.

### Other Exclude List Handling Options

**The `excludelistfailover` and `excludelistnormal` files:** are two further exclude list files that modify standard provisioning behavior. These are discussed in section 15.4.8.

**The `excludelistsnippets` tool:** When synchronizing to a cloud director, or to an edge director, it is sometimes useful to exclude unneeded files and paths from the synchronization, in order to speed it up. The `excludelistsmanipulatescript` tool is powerful enough to do it, but it has some issues due to its power. For example, it is a script, which means that it is called whenever it is used, and so uses up some extra resources. Also, it is a bit tricky to set up.

An easier way to manipulate exclude lists for the unneeded files and paths is via the `excludelistsnippets` tool, described in section 4.3.1 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*. This tool allows additional exclusion to be specified in a simpler way.

**The `provisioningassociations` mode:** Somewhat related to `excludelistsnippets` is the use of the `provisioningassociations` mode. This is described in section 4.3.2 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*. This mode is used to modify some properties of provisioned file systems.

### Exclude List State At Node Level

**Exclude lists at category level and node level:** An exclude list can be set at node level, as well as at category level. Roles and overlays can add implied exclude lists too.

At category level, an exclude list such as `excludelistfullinstall` can be set up explicitly with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->category[default]]% set excludelistfullinstall
...a text editor such as vi opens up and the list can be edited...
[basecm11->category*[default*]]% commit
```

At node level, an exclude list can be set in the same way:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set excludelistfullinstall
...a text editor such as vi opens up and the list can be edited...
[basecm11->device*[node001*]]% commit
```

An exclude list that is not empty at node level overrules its corresponding category list. Exclude lists brought in via roles are however simply included in the exclude list.

**The excludelist command:** At node level it can be unclear what the resulting exclude list (“operational exclude list”) actually is. The exclude list state at node level can therefore be viewed using the excludelist command options. The excludelist command becomes active if a software image has been set at the node level.

- The list option to excludelist lists the source and destination paths:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% excludelist list
Source path (on the head node)  Destination path (on the node)
-----
/cm/images/default-image      /
```

- The get option to the excludelist command has synchronization mode and destination suboptions for a node.

Earlier on (page 277), the intention behind the various exclude lists, according to the type of update or synchronization, were distinguished.

The excludelist get command can have a destination path specified, and have the type of update or synchronization specified according to those distinguishing concepts.

The output to the excludelist get command then shows the operational exclude list as seen by a node for that path and for that update or synchronization.

Thus, for example:

- The full install operational exclude list for the path / on node node001, intended for a full installation to a node that is starting up, can be found as follows:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% excludelist get full /
# For details on the exclude patterns defined here please refer to
# the FILTER RULES section of the rsync man page.
#
# Files that match these patterns will not be installed onto the node.
- lost+found/
- /proc/*
- /sys/*
- /boot/efi

# extra defaults
- /proc/*
- /sys/*
```

- Similarly, the sync install operational exclude list for the path / on node node001, intended for a sync installation to a node that is starting up, can be found as follows:

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% excludelist get sync /
# For details on the exclude patterns defined here please refer to
# the FILTER RULES section of the rsync man page.
#
# Files that exist on a node and match one of these patterns will not be
# modified or deleted. Any files that match one of these patterns and that
```

```
# exist in the image but are absent on the node, will be copied to the node.
- /.autofsck
- /boot/grub*/grub.cfg
- /cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/certs/ldap.key
- /cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/certs/ldap.pem
- /data/*
- /home/*
...
```

- Other `excludelist get` options, besides `full` and `sync`, are:

- \* `grab` (a grab from a running node for a sync back to an existing image)
- \* `grabnew` (a grab from a running node for a full install to a new image)
- \* `update` (a sync update of a running node from an image).

All `excludelist get` options correspond to the intentions of the associated exclude list types as distinguished on page 277.

### 5.6.2 Updating Running Nodes: With cmsh Using imageupdate

Using a defined `excludelistupdate` property (section 5.6.1), the `imageupdate` command of `cmsh` is used to start an update on a running node:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% imageupdate -n node001
Performing dry run (use synclog command to review result, then pass -w to perform real update)...
Tue Jan 11 12:13:33 2011 basecm11: Provisioning started on node node001
[basecm11->device]% imageupdate -n node001: image update in progress ...
[basecm11->device]%
Tue Jan 11 12:13:44 2011 basecm11: Provisioning completed on node node001
```

By default the `imageupdate` command performs a dry run, which means no data on the node is actually written. Before passing the “`-w`” switch, it is recommended to analyze the `rsync` output using the `synclog` command (section 5.4.7).

If the user is now satisfied with the changes that are to be made, the `imageupdate` command is invoked again with the “`-w`” switch to implement them:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% imageupdate -n node001 -w
Provisioning started on node node001
node001: image update in progress ...
[basecm11->device]% Provisioning completed on node node001
```

### 5.6.3 Updating Running Nodes: With Base View Using the Update node Option

In Base View, an image update can be carried out by selecting the specific node or category, for example `node001`, and updating it via the navigation path:

`Devices > Nodes[node001] > Edit > Software image > Update node`

### 5.6.4 Updating Running Nodes: Considerations

An attempt to update the image on a running node can run into some issues:

- Updating an image via `cmsh` or Base View automatically updates the provisioners first via the `updateprovisioners` command (section 5.2.4) if the provisioners have not been updated in the last 5 minutes. The conditional update period can be set with the `dirtyautoupdatetimeout` parameter (section 5.2.4).

So, with the default setting of 5 minutes, if there has been a new image created within the last 5 minutes, then provisioners do not get the updated image when doing the updates, which means that nodes in turn do not get those updates. Running the `updateprovisioners` command just before running the `imageupdate` command therefore usually makes sense.

- By default, BCM does not allow provisioning if automount (page 868) is running.
- Also, when updating services, the services on the nodes may not restart since the `init` process may not notice the replacement.

For these reasons, especially for more extensive changes, it can be safer for the administrator to simply reboot the nodes instead of using `imageupdate` to provision the images to the nodes. A reboot by default ensures that a node places the latest image with an `AUTO` install (section 5.4.7), and restarts all services.

The `Reinstall` node option, which can be run, for example, on a node `node001`, using a navigation path of `Devices > Nodes [node001] > Edit > Software image > Reinstall node` also does the same as a reboot with default settings, except for that it unconditionally places the latest image with a `FULL` install, and so may take longer to complete.

## 5.7 Adding New Nodes

How the administrator can add a single node to a cluster is described in section 1.3 of the *Installation Manual*. This section explains how nodes can be added in ways that are more convenient for larger numbers of nodes.

### 5.7.1 Adding New Nodes With cmsh And Base View Add Functions

Node objects can be added from within the `device` mode of `cmsh` by running the `add` command:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% add physicalnode node002 10.141.0.2  
[basecm11->device*[node002*]%
```

The Base View equivalent of this is following the navigation path:

`Devices > Nodes > ADD > PhysicalNode[Settings] > Hostname`

then adding the value `node002` to `Hostname`, and saving it.

When adding the node objects in `cmsh` and Base View, some values (the MAC addresses for example) may need to be filled in before the object validates. For regular nodes, there should be an interface and an IP address for the network that it boots from, as well as for the network that manages the nodes. A regular node typically has only one interface, which means that the same interface provides boot and management services. This interface is then the boot interface, `BOOTIF`, during the pre-init stage, but is also the management interface, typically `eth0` or whatever the device is called, after the pre-init stage. The IP address for `BOOTIF` is normally provided via DHCP, while the IP address for the management interface can be set to a static IP address via `cmsh` or Base View by the administrator.

Adding new node objects as “placeholders” can also be done from `cmsh` or Base View. By placeholders, here it is meant that an incomplete node object is set. For example, sometimes it is useful to create a node object with the MAC address setting unfilled because it is still unknown. Why this can be useful is covered shortly.

### 5.7.2 Adding New Nodes With The Node Creation Wizard

Besides adding nodes using the `add` command of `cmsh` or the `ADD` button of Base View as in the preceding text, there is also a Base View wizard that guides the administrator through the process—the *node creation wizard*. This is useful when adding many nodes at a time. It is available via the navigation path:

`Devices > Nodes > CREATE NODES`

This wizard should not be confused with the closely-related node *identification* resource described in section 5.4.2, which identifies unassigned MAC addresses and switch ports, and helps assign them node names.

- The node *creation* wizard creates an object for nodes, assigns them node names, but it leaves the MAC address field for these nodes unfilled, keeping the node object as a “placeholder”.
- The node *identification* resource assigns MAC addresses so that node names are associated with a MAC address.

If a node is left with an unassigned MAC address—that is, in a “placeholder” state—then it means that when the node starts up, the provisioning system lets the administrator associate a MAC address and switch port number at the node console for the node. This occurs when the node-installer reaches the node configuration stage during node boot as described in section 5.4.2. This is sometimes preferable to associating the node name with a MAC address remotely with the node identification resource.

In the first screen of the node creation wizard, IP address range suggestions are displayed for the new placeholder nodes. The administrator can override the range. The same screen also allows a category to be selected for the nodes (figure 5.18).

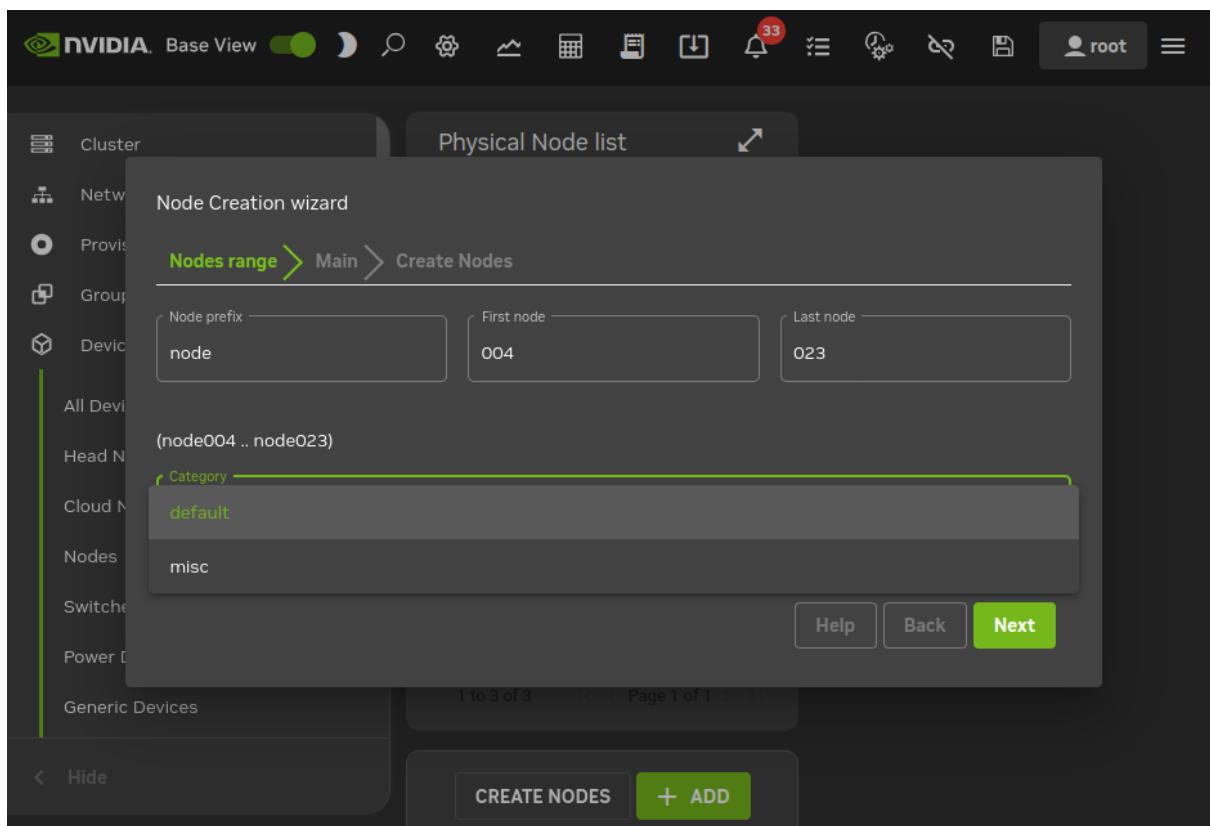


Figure 5.18: Node Creation Wizard: Setting Interfaces

The remaining screens of the wizard configure the interface assignment and executes the object creation. Once the object has been created, node identification (section 5.4.2) can be carried out.

The cmsh equivalent of the node creation wizard is running `foreach --clone` on a node that is to be cloned over a node range (section 2.5.5, page 65).

## 5.8 Troubleshooting The Node Boot Process

During the node boot process there are several common issues that can lead to an unsuccessful boot. This section describes these issues and their solutions. It also provides general hints on how to analyze boot problems.

Before looking at the various stages in detail, the administrator may find that simply updating software or firmware may fix the issue. In general, it is recommended that all available updates are deployed on a cluster.

- Updating software is covered in Chapter 9.
  - On the head node, the most relevant software can be updated with `yum`, `zypper`, or `apt`, as explained in section 9.2. For example, with `yum`:

### Example

```
yum update cmdaemon node-installer
```

- Similarly for the software image, the most relevant software can be updated too. This is done via a procedure involving a chroot installation., as described in section 9.4. If using `yum`, then the update can be carried out within the image, *<software image>*, with:

### Example

```
yum update --installroot=/cm/images/<software image> cmdaemon node-installer-slave
```

- UEFI or BIOS firmware should be updated as per the vendor recommendation

The various stages that may fail during node boot are now examined.

### 5.8.1 Node Fails To PXE Boot

Possible reasons to consider if a node is not even starting to network boot (PXE boot for x86 nodes) in the first place:

- DHCP may not be running. A check can be done to confirm that DHCP is running on the internal network interface (usually `eth0`):

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ps u -C dhcpcd
USER PID %CPU %MEM VSZ RSS TTY STAT START TIME COMMAND
root 2448 0.0 0.0 11208 436 ? Ss Jan22 0:05 /usr/sbin/dhcpcd eth0
```

This may indicate that `Node booting` is disabled in Base View (figure 3.5, page 94) and needs to be enabled. The equivalent in `cmsh` is to check if the response to:

```
cmsh -c "network use internalnet; get nodebooting"
```

needs to be set to `yes`.

- The DHCP daemon may be “locked down” (section 3.2.1: figure 3.5 and table 3.1). New nodes are granted leases only after `lockdowndhcpcd` is set to `no` in `cmsh`, or `Lock down dhcpcd` is disabled in Base View for the network.
- A rogue DHCP server may be running. If there are all sorts of other machines on the network the nodes are on, then it is possible that there is a rogue DHCP server active on it, perhaps on an IP address that the administrator has forgotten, and interfering with the expected PXE booting. Such stray DHCP servers should be eliminated.

- One way to identify the problem is to remove all the connections and switches and just connect the head node directly to a problem node, NIC-to-NIC. This should allow a normal network boot to happen. If a normal network boot then does happen, it indicates the problem is indeed due to a rogue DHCP server on the more-connected network.
- For a more cerebral approach, which avoids recabling, the nmap utility may be useful. The nmap utility since version 7.90 can discover and list multiple DHCP servers using its broadcast-dhcp-discover script. The following session output shows the configuration and installation of the utility on to node002 on the internal network. It then runs it for the internal network interface ens3. If it finds a second DHCP server on the network (in this test case on node001 at 10.141.0.1), then it may show responses in the output similar to the following (some output ellipsized):

### Example

```
[root@node002 ~]# wget https://nmap.org/dist/nmap-7.90.tgz
...
[root@node002 ~]# tar xvzf nmap-7.90
...
[root@node002 ~]# cd nmap-7.90
[root@node002 nmap-7.90]# make distclean && ./configure --disable-rdma && make
...
[root@node002 nmap-7.90]# ./nmap --script broadcast-dhcp-discover -e ens3
Starting Nmap 7.90 ( https://nmap.org ) at 2022-09-08 16:55 CEST
Pre-scan script results:
| broadcast-dhcp-discover:
|   Response 1 of 2:
|     IP Offered: 10.141.163.254
|     DHCP Message Type: DHCPOFFER
|     Server Identifier: 10.141.0.1
...
|   Response 2 of 2:
|     IP Offered: 10.141.167.255
|     DHCP Message Type: DHCPOFFER
|     Server Identifier: 10.141.255.254
...
[root@node002 nmap-7.90]#
```

- The boot sequence may be set wrongly in the BIOS. The boot interface should normally be set to be the first boot item in the BIOS.
  - The node may be set to boot from UEFI mode. If UEFI mode has a buggy network boot implementation, then it may fail to network boot. For x86 nodes, setting the node to PXE boot using the legacy BIOS mode can be tried instead, or perhaps the UEFI firmware can be updated.
  - There may a bad cable connection. This can be due to moving the machine, or heat creep, or another physical connection problem. Firmly inserting the cable into its slot may help. Replacing the cable or interface as appropriate may be required.
  - There may a problem with the switch. Removing the switch and connecting a head node and a regular node directly with a cable can help troubleshoot this.
- Disabling the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) functions of a managed switch is recommended. With STP on, nodes may randomly fail to network boot.
- The cable may be connected to the wrong interface. By default, on the head node, for a type 1 network, the first consistent network device name, for example eno1, is normally assigned the

internal network interface, and the second one, for example en02, is assigned the external network interface. However, the following possibilities should be considered during troubleshooting:

- The two interfaces can be confused when physically viewing them and a connection to the wrong interface can therefore be made.
- It is also possible that the administrator has changed the default assignment.
- The interface may have been set by the administrator to follow the network device naming scheme that has been used prior to RHEL7. Interfaces with names such as eth0 and eth1 on the head node are suggestive of this. The problem with the pre-RHEL7 scheme is that it can sometimes lead to network interfaces swapping after reboot, which is why the scheme is no longer recommended. The workaround for this issue in pre-RHEL7 schemes was to define a persistent name in the udev ruleset for network interfaces.

From NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 9.0 onward, the default scheme is the consistent network device naming scheme, and it is recommended.

### **Interface Naming Conventions Post-RHEL7 (Recommended)**

[https://access.redhat.com/documentation/en-US/Red\\_Hat\\_Enterprise\\_Linux/7/html/Networking\\_Guide/ch-Consistent\\_Network\\_Device\\_Naming.html](https://access.redhat.com/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux/7/html/Networking_Guide/ch-Consistent_Network_Device_Naming.html) describes the consistent network device scheme for interfaces post-RHEL7. This scheme sets an interface assignment on iPXE boot for multiple interfaces that is also valid by default during the very first iPXE boot. This means that an administrator can know which interface is used for provisioning and can connect the provisioning cable accordingly.

Some care may need to be taken in unusual naming assignments, in order to avoid exceeding the 16-character limit that Linux has for the naming of network interfaces.

### **Reverting To The Pre-RHEL7 Interface Naming Conventions (Not Recommended)**

To revert to the pre-RHEL7 behavior, the text:

```
net.ifnames=0 biosdevname=0
```

can be appended to the line starting with GRUB\_CMDLINE\_LINUX in /etc/default/grub within the head node. For this:

- \* The biosdevname parameter only works if the dev helper is installed. The dev helper is available from the biosdevname RPM package. The parameter also requires that the system supports SMBIOS 2.6 or ACPI DSM.
- \* The net.ifnames parameter is needed if biosdevname is not installed.

#### **Example**

```
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX="rd.lvm.lv=centos/swap vconsole.keymap=us \
crashkernel=auto rd.lvm.lv=centos/root vconsole.font=latacyr\
heb-sun16 rhgb quiet net.ifnames=0 biosdevname=0"
```

A cautious system administrator may back up the original grub.cfg file:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cp --preserve /boot/grub2/grub.cfg /boot/grub2/grub.cfg.orig
```

The GRUB configuration should be generated with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# grub2-mkconfig -o /boot/grub2/grub.cfg
```

If for some reason the administrator would like to carry out the pre-RHEL7 naming convention on a regular node, then the text net.ifnames=0 biosdevname=0 can be appended to the kernelparameters property, for an image selected from softwareimage mode.

#### **Example**

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]# list
Name (key)          Path
-----
default-image       /cm/images/default-image
openstack-image    /cm/images/openstack-image
[basecm11->softwareimage]# use default-image
[basecm11->softwareimage [default-image]]# append kernelparameters " net.ifnames=0 biosdevname=0"
[basecm11->softwareimage*[default-image*]]# commit
```

The append command requires a space at the start of the quote, in order to separate the kernel parameters from any pre-existing ones.

- The TFTP server that sends out the image may have hung. During a normal run, an output similar to this appears when an image is in the process of being served:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ps ax | grep [t]ftp
7512 ?        Ss      0:03 in.tftpd --maxthread 500 /tftpboot
```

If the TFTP server is in a zombie state, the head node should be rebooted. If the TFTP service hangs regularly, there is likely a networking hardware issue that requires resolution.

Incidentally, grepping the process list for a TFTP service returns nothing when the head node is listening for TFTP requests, but not actively serving a TFTP image. This is because the TFTP service runs under xinet.d and is called on demand. Running

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# chkconfig --list
```

should include in its output the line:

```
tftp:      on
```

if TFTP is running under xinet.d.

- The switchover process from TFTP to HTTP may have hung. During a normal provisioning run, assuming that CMDaemon uses the default bootloaderprotocol setting of HTTP, then TFTP is used to load the initial boot loader, but the kernel and ramdisk are loaded up via HTTP for speed. Some hardware has problems with switching over to using HTTP.

In that case, setting bootloaderprotocol to TFTP keeps the node using TFTP for loading the kernel and ramdisk, and should work. Another possible way to solve this is to upgrade the PXE boot BIOS to a version that does not have this problem.

ARMv8 hardware can boot only via TFTP.

Setting bootloaderprotocol to HTTPS only works for some special hardware.

- VLAN tagging may have been set up incorrectly in the BIOS of the node. VLAN provisioning (section 5.3.4) requires several changes in VLAN configuration for it to work.
- Sometimes a manufacturer releases hardware with buggy drivers that have a variety of problems. For instance: Ethernet frames may be detected at the interface (for example, by `ethtool`), but TCP/IP packets may not be detected (for example, by `wireshark`). In that case, the manufacturer should be contacted to upgrade their driver.
- The interface may have a hardware failure. In that case, the interface should be replaced.

### 5.8.2 Node-installer Logging

If the node manages to get beyond the net booting stage to the node-installer stage, then the first place to look for hints on node boot failure is usually the node-installer log file. The node-installer runs on the node that is being provisioned, and sends logging output to the syslog daemon running on that node. This forwards all log data to the IP address from which the node received its DHCP lease, which is typically the IP address of the head node or failover node. In a default BCM setup, the `local15` facility of the `syslog` daemon is used on the node that is being provisioned to forward all node-installer messages to the log file `/var/log/node-installer` on the head node.

After the node-installer has finished running, its log is also stored in `/var/log/node-installer` on the regular nodes.

If there is no node-installer log file anywhere yet, then it is possible that the node-installer is not yet deployed on the node. Sometimes this is due to a system administrator having forgotten to change a provisioning-related configuration setting. One possibility is that the `nodegroups` setting (section 5.2.1), if used, may be misconfigured. Another possibility is that the image was set to a locked state (section 5.4.7). The `provisioningstatus -a` command can indicate this:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]# provisioningstatus -a | grep locked
Scheduler info: requested software image is locked, request deferred
```

To get the image to install properly, the locked state should be removed for a locked image.

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "softwareimage islocked"
Name      Locked
-----
default-image  yes
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "softwareimage unlock default-image"
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "softwareimage islocked"
Name      Locked
-----
default-image  no
```

The node automatically picks up the image after it is unlocked.

Optionally, extra log information can be written by enabling debug logging, which sets the `syslog` importance level at `LOG_DEBUG`. To enable debug logging, the `debug` field is changed in `/cm/node-installer/scripts/node-installer.conf`.

For the `node-installer.conf` file in multidistro and multiarch (section 9.7) configurations, the directory path `/cm/node-installer` takes the form:

```
/cm/node-installer-<distribution>-<architecture>
```

The values for `<distribution>` and `<architecture>` can take the values outlined on page 528.

From the console of the booting node the log file is generally accessible by pressing `Alt+F7` on the keyboard. Debug logging is however excluded from being viewed in this way, due to the output volume making this impractical.

A booting node console can be accessed remotely if Serial Over LAN (SOL) is enabled (section 14.7), to allow the viewing of console messages directly. A further depth in logging can be achieved by setting the kernel option `loglevel=N`, where `N` is a number from 0 (`KERN_EMERG`) to 7 (`KERN_DEBUG`).

One possible point at which the node-installer can fail on some hardware is if SOL (section 14.7) is enabled in the BIOS, but the hardware is unable to cope with the flow. The installation can freeze completely at that point. This should not be confused with the viewing quirk described in section 14.7.4, even though the freeze typically appears to take place at the same point, that point being when the console shows “freeing unused kernel memory” as the last text. One workaround to the freeze would be to disable SOL.

### 5.8.3 Provisioning Logging

The provisioning system sends log information to the CMDaemon log file. By default this is in `/var/log/cmdaemon` on the local host, that is, the provisioning host. The host this log runs on can be configured with the CMDaemon directive `SyslogHost` (Appendix C).

The image synchronization log file can be retrieved with the `synclog` command (page 267) running from device mode in `cmsh`. Hints on provisioning problems are often found by looking at the tail end of the log.

If the tail end of the log shows an `rsync` exit code of 23, then it suggests a transfer error. Sometimes the cause of the error can be determined by examining the file or filesystem for which the error occurs. For the `rsync` transport, logs for node installation are kept under `/var/spool/cmd/`, with a log written for each node during provisioning. The name of the node is set as the prefix to the log name. For example `node002` generates the log:

```
/var/spool/cmd/node002-\ .rsync
```

### 5.8.4 Ramdisk Fails During Loading Or Sometime Later

One issue that may come up after a software image update via `yum`, `zypper`, or `apt` (section 9.4), is that the ramdisk stage may fail during loading or sometime later, for a node that is rebooted after the update. This occurs if there are instructions to modify the ramdisk by the update. In a normal machine the ramdisk would be regenerated. In a cluster, the extended ramdisk that is used requires an update, but BCM is not aware of this. Running the `createramdisk` command from `cmsh` or the `Recreate Initrd` command via the Base View navigation paths:

- Devices > Nodes > Edit > Kernel > Recreate Initrd
- Grouping > Node Categories > Edit > Kernel > Recreate Initrd
- Provisioning > Software Images > Edit > Recreate Initrd

(section 5.3.2) generates an updated ramdisk for the cluster, and solves the failure for this case.

Another, somewhat related possible cause of a halt at this stage, is that the kernel modules that are to be loaded may have been specified at a wrongly by the administrator in the hierarchy of software image, category, or node (page 237). A check of the kernel modules specified in `softwareimage` mode, `category` mode, or `device` mode (for the particular node) may reveal a misconfiguration.

### 5.8.5 Ramdisk Cannot Start Network

The ramdisk must activate the node's network interface in order to fetch the node-installer. To activate the network device, the correct kernel module needs to be loaded. If this does not happen, booting fails, and the console of the node displays something similar to figure 5.19.

```

Creating initial device nodes
Setting up hotplug.
Creating block device nodes.
Loading ehci-hcd.ko module
Loading ohci-hcd.ko module
Loading uhci-hcd.ko module
Loading jbd.ko module
Loading ext3.ko module
Loading sunrpc.ko module
Loading nfs_acl.ko module
Loading fscache.ko module
Loading lockd.ko module
Loading nfs.ko module
Loading scsi_mod.ko module
Loading sd_mod.ko module
Loading libata.ko module
Loading ahci.ko module
Waiting for driver initialization.
Creating root device.
Finished original ramdisk.
Can't configure the ethernet device used for booting.
You should probably insert the correct kernel module into the ramdisk.
Boot failed.
/bin/sh: can't access tty: job control turned off
# _
```

Figure 5.19: No Network Interface

To solve this issue the correct kernel module should be added to the software image's kernel module configuration (section 5.3.2). For example, to add the e1000 module to the default image using cmsh:

#### Example

```
[mc]% softwareimage use default-image
[mc->softwareimage [default-image]]% kernelmodules
[mc->softwareimage [default-image]->kernelmodules]% add e1000
[mc->softwareimage [default-image]->kernelmodules[e1000]]% commit
Initial ramdisk for image default-image was regenerated successfully
[mc->softwareimage [default-image]->kernelmodules[e1000]]%
```

After committing the change it typically takes about a minute before the initial ramdisk creation is completed via a `mkinitrd` run by CMDaemon.

#### 5.8.6 Node-Installer Cannot Create Disk Layout

When the node-installer is not able to create a drive layout it displays a message similar to figure 5.20. The node-installer log file (section 5.8.2) contains something like:

```
Mar 24 13:55:31 10.141.0.1 node-installer: Installmode is: AUTO
Mar 24 13:55:31 10.141.0.1 node-installer: Fetching disks setup.
Mar 24 13:55:31 10.141.0.1 node-installer: Checking partitions and
filesystems.
Mar 24 13:55:32 10.141.0.1 node-installer: Detecting device '/dev/sda':
not found
Mar 24 13:55:32 10.141.0.1 node-installer: Detecting device '/dev/hda':
not found
Mar 24 13:55:32 10.141.0.1 node-installer: Can not find device(s) (/dev/sda /dev/hda).
Mar 24 13:55:32 10.141.0.1 node-installer: Partitions and/or filesystems
are missing/corrupt. (Exit code 4, signal 0)
Mar 24 13:55:32 10.141.0.1 node-installer: Creating new disk layout.
```

```
Mar 24 13:55:32 10.141.0.1 node-installer: Detecting device '/dev/sda':  
not found  
Mar 24 13:55:32 10.141.0.1 node-installer: Detecting device '/dev/hda':  
not found  
Mar 24 13:55:32 10.141.0.1 node-installer: Can not find device(s) (/dev/sda /dev/hda).  
Mar 24 13:55:32 10.141.0.1 node-installer: Failed to create disk layout.  
(Exit code 4, signal 0)  
Mar 24 13:55:32 10.141.0.1 node-installer: There was a fatal problem. This node can not be\\  
installed until the problem is corrected.
```

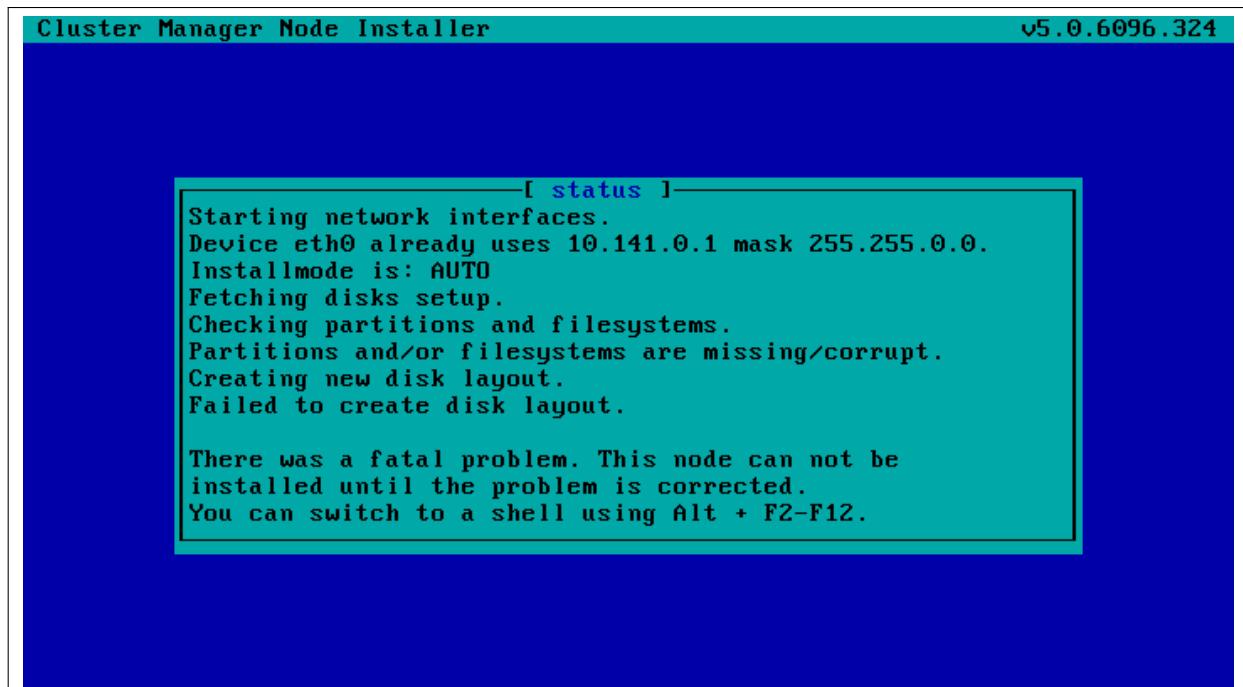


Figure 5.20: No Disk

Disk layout failures can have several reasons.

#### **BIOS And Order Issues**

One reason may be that the drive may be disabled in the BIOS. It should be enabled.

Another reason may be that the drive order was changed. This could happen if, for example, a defective motherboard has been replaced. The drive order should be kept the same as it was before a motherboard change.

#### **Read-only Mode Issues**

Another reason may be due to SSDs that have a hardware jumper or toggle switch that sets a drive to read-only mode. A read-only mode drive will typically fail at this point. The drive should be made writeable.

#### **Hardware Issues**

If the node-installer log for the node shows lines with the text `Input/output error`, then it generally indicates a hardware issue. Possible hardware issues include:

- a drive failure
- a faulty cable between storage and controller

- a faulty storage controller
- a faulty backplane in the server

If the node has enough RAM, then it is possible to boot up the node up as a diskless node, to carry out further diagnosis with disk tools such as `smartmontools`.

### Software Driver Issues

One of the most common software issues is that the correct storage driver is not being loaded. To solve this issue, the correct kernel module should be added to the software image's kernel module configuration (section 5.3.2).

Experienced system administrators work out what drivers may be missing by checking the results of hardware probes. For example, going into the node-installer shell using Alt-F2, and then looking at the output of `lspci`, shows a list of hardware detected in the PCI slots and gives the chipset name of the storage controller hardware in this case:

#### Example

```
[<installer> root@node001 ~]# lspci | grep SCSI
00:10.0 Serial Attached SCSI controller: LSI Logic / Symbios Logic SAS2\
008 PCI-Express Fusion-MPT SAS-2 [Falcon] (rev 03)
```

The next step is to Google with likely search strings based on that output.

The Linux Kernel Driver DataBase (LKDDb) is a hardware database built from kernel sources that lists driver availability for Linux. It is available at <http://cateee.net/lkddb/>. Using the Google search engine's "site" operator to restrict results to the `cateee.net` web site only, a likely string to try might be:

#### Example

```
SAS2008 site:cateee.net
```

The search result indicates that the `mpt2sas` kernel module needs to be added to the node kernels. A look in the modules directory of the software image shows if it is available:

#### Example

```
find /cm/images/default-image/lib/modules/ -name "*mpt2sas*"
```

If it is not available, the driver module must then be obtained. If it is a source file, it will need to be compiled. By default, nodes run on standard distribution kernels, so that only standard procedures need to be followed to compile modules.

If the module is available, it can be added to the default image, by using `cmsh` in `softwareimage` mode to create the associated object. The object is given the same name as the module, i.e. `mp2sas` in this case:

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% softwareimage use default-image
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]]% kernelmodules
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]->kernelmodules]% add mpt2sas
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]->kernelmodules*[mpt2sas*]]% commit
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]->kernelmodules[mpt2sas]]%
Thu May 19 16:54:52 2011 [notice] basecm11: Initial ramdisk for image de\
fault-image is being generated
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]->kernelmodules[mpt2sas]]%
Thu May 19 16:55:43 2011 [notice] basecm11: Initial ramdisk for image de\
fault-image was regenerated successfully.
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]->kernelmodules[mpt2sas]]%
```

After committing the change it can take some time before ramdisk creation is completed—typically about a minute, as the example shows. Once the ramdisk is created, the module can be seen in the list displayed from `kernelmodules` mode. On rebooting the node, it should now continue past the disk layout stage.

### 5.8.7 Node-Installer Cannot Start BMC (IPMI/iLO) Interface

In some cases the node-installer is not able to configure a node's BMC interface, and displays an error message similar to figure 5.21.

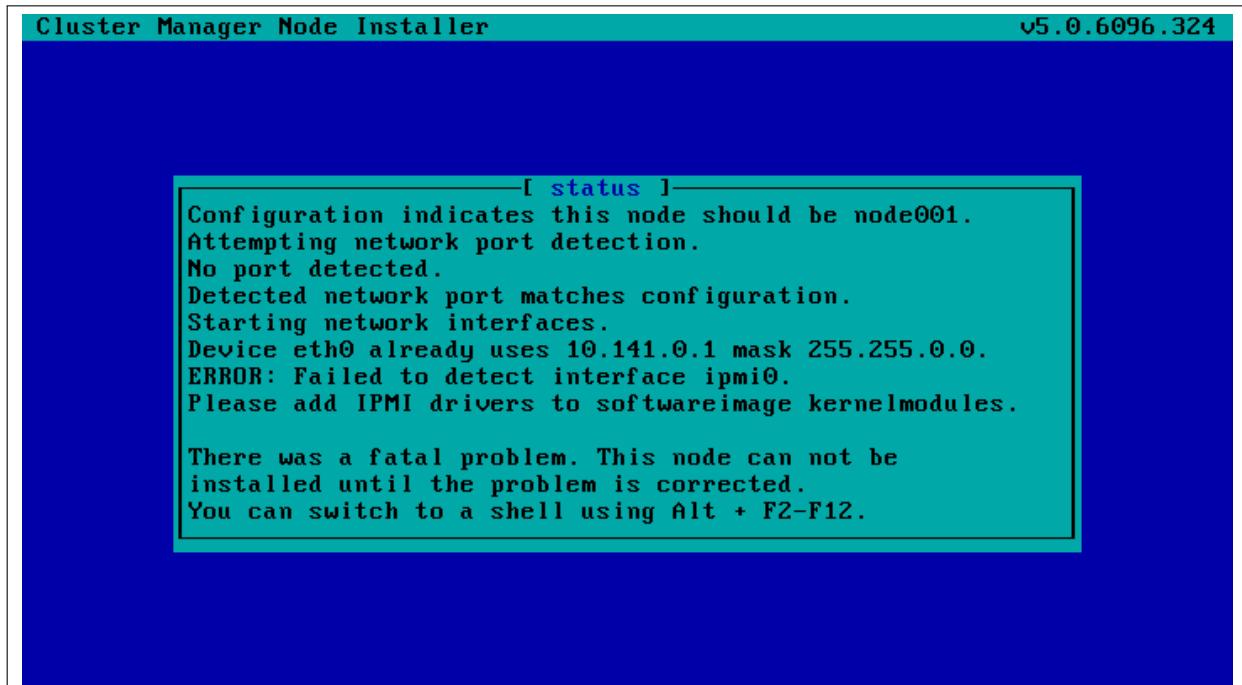


Figure 5.21: No BMC Interface

Usually the issue can be solved by adding the correct BMC (IPMI/iLO) kernel modules to the software image's kernel module configuration. However, in some cases the node-installer is still not able to configure the BMC interface. If this is the case the BMC probably does not support one of the commands the node-installer uses to set specific settings, or there may be a hardware glitch in the BMC.

#### The `setupBmc` Node-Installer Configuration Setting

To solve this issue, setting up BMC interfaces can be disabled globally by setting the `setupBmc` field to `false` in the node-installer configuration file `/cm/node-installer/scripts/node-installer.conf` (for multiarch/multidistro configurations the path takes the form: `/cm/node-installer-<distribution>-<architecture>/scripts/node-installer.conf`).

Doing this disables configuration of all BMC interfaces by the node-installer. A custom `finalize` script (Appendix E) can then be used to run the required commands instead.

The `setupBmc` field in the node-installer should not be confused with the `SetupBMC` directive in `cmd.conf` (Appendix C). The former is about enabling the BMC interface, while the latter is about enabling automated passwords to the BMC interface (an interface that must of course be enabled in the first place to work).

#### The `failOnMissingBmc` Node-Installer Configuration Setting

If the kernel modules for the BMC are loaded up correctly, and the BMC is configured, but it is not detected by the node-installer, then the node-installer halts by default. This corresponds to the set-

ting failOnMissingBmc = true in the node-installer configuration file /cm/node-installer/scripts/node-installer.conf. Toggling this to false skips BMC network device detection, and lets the node-installer continue past the BMC detection and configuration stage. This can be convenient, for example, if the BMC is not yet configured and the aim is to get on with setting up the rest of the cluster.

### The failOnFailedBmcCommand Node-Installer Configuration Setting

If a BMC command fails, then the node-installer by default terminates node installation. The idea behind this is to allow the administrator to fix the problem. Sometimes, however, hardware can wrongly signal a failure. That is, it can signal a false failure, as opposed to a true failure.

A common case is the case of ipmitool. ipmitool is used by BCM to configure the BMC. With most hardware vendors it works as expected, signaling success and failure correctly. As per the default behavior: with success, node installation proceeds, while with failure, it terminates.

With certain hardware vendors however ipmitool fails with an exit code 1, even though the BMC is properly configured. Again, as per the default behavior: success has node installation proceed, while failure has node installation terminate. Only this time, because the failure signal is incorrect, the termination on failure is also incorrect behavior.

To get around the default behavior for false failure cases, the administrator can force the node-installer to set the value of failOnFailedBmcCommand to false in the node-installer configuration file /cm/node-installer/scripts/node-installer.conf (for multiarch/multidistro configurations the path takes the form: /cm/node-installer-<distribution>-<architecture>/scripts/node-installer.conf). The installation then skips past the false failure.

### BMC Hardware Glitch And Cold Reset

Sometimes, typically due to a hardware glitch, a BMC can get into a state where it is not providing services, but the BMC is still up (responding to pings). Contrariwise, a BMC may not respond to pings, but still respond to IPMI commands. A fix for such glitchy states is usually to power cycle the BMC. This is typically done, either physically, or by using a BMC management tool such as ipmitool.

Physically resetting the power supply to the BMC is done typically by pulling the power cable out and then pushing it in again. For typical rack-based servers the server can just be pulled out and in again. Just doing a shutdown of the server with the power cable still in place normally does not power down the BMC.

BMC management does allow the BMC to power down and be reset from software, without having to physically handle the server. This software-based *cold reset* is a BIOS-manufacturer-dependent feature. A popular tool used for managing BMCs that can do such a cold reset is ipmitool. This can be run remotely, but also on the node console if the node cannot be reached remotely.

With ipmitool, a cold reset is typically carried out with a command such as:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load ipmitool
[root@basecm11 ~]# ipmitool -U <bmcusername> -P <bmcpassword> -H <host IP> -I lanplus mc reset cold
```

The values for <bmcusername> and <bmcpassword> can be obtained as shown in section 3.7.2.

### BMC Troubleshooting With The System Event Log

The System Event Log (SEL) can be read with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load ipmitool
[root@basecm11 ~]# ipmitool -U <bmcusername> -P <bmcpassword> -H <host IP> -I lanplus sel list
```

The timestamped output can be inspected for errors related to the CPU, ECC, or memory.

### Other BMC Troubleshooting

Some more specific commands for handling IPMI might be via the service ipmi <option> commands, which can show the IPMI service has failed to start up:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# service ipmi status
Redirecting to /bin/systemctl status ipmi.service
ipmi.service - IPMI Driver
   Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/ipmi.service; disabled; vendor preset: enabled)
     Active: inactive (dead)
```

In the preceding session the driver has simply not been started up. It can be started up with the `start` option:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# service ipmi start
Redirecting to /bin/systemctl start ipmi.service
Job for ipmi.service failed because the control process exited with error code. See "systemctl \
status ipmi.service" and "journalctl -xe" for details.
```

In the preceding session, the start up failed. The service status output shows:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# service ipmi status -l
Redirecting to /bin/systemctl status -l ipmi.service
ipmi.service - IPMI Driver
   Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/ipmi.service; disabled; vendor preset: enabled)
     Active: failed (Result: exit-code) since Mon 2016-12-19 14:34:27 CET; 2min 3s ago
       Process: 8930 ExecStart=/usr/libexec/openipmi-helper start (code=exited, status=1/FAILURE)
      Main PID: 8930 (code=exited, status=1/FAILURE)

Dec 19 14:34:27 basecm11 systemd[1]: Starting IPMI Driver...
Dec 19 14:34:27 basecm11 openipmi-helper[8930]: Startup failed.
Dec 19 14:34:27 basecm11 systemd[1]: ipmi.service: main process exited, code=exited, status=1/\
FAILURE
Dec 19 14:34:27 basecm11 systemd[1]: Failed to start IPMI Driver.
Dec 19 14:34:27 basecm11 systemd[1]: Unit ipmi.service entered failed state.
Dec 19 14:34:27 basecm11 systemd[1]: ipmi.service failed.
```

Further details can be found in the journal:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# journalctl -xe | grep -i ipmi
...
-- Unit ipmi.service has begun starting up.
Dec 19 14:34:27 basecm11 kernel: ipmi message handler version 39.2
Dec 19 14:34:27 basecm11 kernel: IPMI System Interface driver.
Dec 19 14:34:27 basecm11 kernel: ipmi_si: Unable to find any System Interface(s)
Dec 19 14:34:27 basecm11 openipmi-helper[8930]: Startup failed.
...
```

In the preceding session, the failure is due to a missing BMC interface (Unable to find any System Interface(s)). A configured BMC interface should show an output status similar to:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# service ipmi status
Redirecting to /bin/systemctl status ipmi.service
ipmi.service - IPMI Driver
   Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/ipmi.service; disabled; vendor preset: enabled)
     Active: active (exited) since Mon 2016-12-19 14:37:10 CET; 2min 0s ago
       Process: 61019 ExecStart=/usr/libexec/openipmi-helper start (code=exited, status=0/SUCCESS)
    Main PID: 61019 (code=exited, status=0/SUCCESS)
Dec 19 14:37:10 basecm11 systemd[1]: Starting IPMI Driver...
Dec 19 14:37:10 basecm11 systemd[1]: Started IPMI Driver.
```

Sometimes the issue may be an incorrect networking specification for the BMC interfaces. MAC and IP details that have been set for the BMC interface can be viewed with the `lan print` option to `ipmitool` if the service has been started:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load ipmitool
[root@basecm11 ~]# ipmitool lan print
Set in Progress          : Set Complete
Auth Type Support        : MD5 PASSWORD
Auth Type Enable          : Callback : MD5 PASSWORD
                           : User      : MD5 PASSWORD
                           : Operator   : MD5 PASSWORD
                           : Admin     : MD5 PASSWORD
                           : OEM       :
IP Address Source        : Static Address
IP Address                : 93.184.216.34
Subnet Mask               : 255.255.255.0
MAC Address                : aa:bb:01:02:cd:ef
SNMP Community String     : public
IP Header                  : TTL=0x00 Flags=0x00 Precedence=0x00 TOS=0x00
BMC ARP Control           : ARP Responses Enabled, Gratuitous ARP Disabled
Gratituous ARP Intrvl     : 0.0 seconds
Default Gateway IP         : 93.184.216.1
Default Gateway MAC        : 00:00:00:00:00:00
Backup Gateway IP          : 0.0.0.0
Backup Gateway MAC         : 00:00:00:00:00:00
802.1q VLAN ID            : Disabled
802.1q VLAN Priority      : 0
RMCP+ Cipher Suites       : 0,1,2,3,4,6,7,8,9,11,12,13,15,16,17,18
Cipher Suite Priv Max      : caaaaaaaaaaaaaaa
                           : X=Cipher Suite Unused
                           : c=CALLBACK
                           : u=USER
                           : o=OPERATOR
                           : a=ADMIN
                           : 0=OEM
```

During normal operation the metrics (Appendix G) displayed by BCM are useful. However, if those are not available for some reason, then the direct output from BMC sensor metrics may be helpful for troubleshooting:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load ipmitool
[root@basecm11 ~]# ipmitool sensor list all
```

```
# ipmitool sensor list
Ambient Temp | 22.000 | degrees C | ok | na | na | na | 38.000 | 41.000 | 45.000
AVG Power    | 300.000 | Watts     | ok | na | na | na | na | na | na
Fan 1 Tach   | 4125.000 | RPM      | ok | na | 750.000 | na | na | na | na
...
...
```

# 6

# User Management

Users and groups for the cluster are presented to the administrator in a single system paradigm. That is, if the administrator manages them with BCM, then the changes are automatically shared across the cluster (the single system).

BCM runs its own LDAP service to manage users, rather than using unix user and group files. In other words, users and groups are managed via the centralizing LDAP database server running on the head node, and not via entries in /etc/passwd or /etc/group files.

Sections 6.1 and 6.2 cover the most basic aspects of how to add, remove and edit users and groups using BCM.

Section 6.3 describes how an external LDAP server can be used for authentication services instead of the one provided by BCM.

Section 6.4 discusses how users can be assigned only selected capabilities when using Base View or cmsh, using profiles with sets of tokens.

## 6.1 Managing Users And Groups With Base View

Within Base View:

- users can be managed via the navigation path Identity Management > Users
- groups can be managed via the navigation path Identity Management > Groups.

For users (figure 6.1) the LDAP entries for users are displayed. These entries are editable and each user can then be managed in further detail.

There is already one user on a newly-installed BCM: cmsupport. This user has no password set by default, which means (section 6.2.2) no logins to this account are allowed by default. BCM uses the user cmsupport to run various diagnostics utilities, so it should not be removed, and the default contents of its home directory should not be removed.

The + ADD button allows users to be added via a User parameters window (figure 6.2). The changes in parameter values can be committed via the SAVE button in the User parameter window.

User list			
	NAME	ID	HOME DIRECTORY
<input type="checkbox"/>	fred	1001	/home/fred
<input type="checkbox"/>	cmsupport	1000	/home/cmsupport
			<input type="button" value="EDIT"/>
			<input type="button" value="DELETE"/>
			<input type="button" value="ADD"/>

Figure 6.1: Base View User Management

User 1001

Name and 11 others

Name	1001
Common name	fred
Group ID	fred
Login shell	/bin/bash
Home directory	/home/fred
Password	<input type="password"/>
Confirm password	<input type="password"/>
email	<input type="text"/>
Profile	none
<input type="checkbox"/> Create cmjob certificate <input type="checkbox"/> Write ssh proxy config	

Shadow min and 5 others

Figure 6.2: Base View User Management: Add Dialog

When saving an addition or modification:

- User and group ID numbers are automatically assigned from UID and GID 1000 onward.
- A home directory is created and a login shell is set. Users with unset passwords cannot log in.

Group management in Base View is carried out via the navigation path Identity Management > Groups. Clickable LDAP object entries for regular groups then show up, similar to the user entries already covered. Management of these entries is done with the same functions as for user management.

## 6.2 Managing Users And Groups With cmsh

User management tasks as carried out by Base View in section 6.1, can be carried with the same end results in cmsh too.

A cmsh session is run here in order to cover the functions corresponding to the user management functions of Base View of section 6.1. These functions are run from within the user mode of cmsh:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% user
[basecm11->user]%
```

#### 6.2.1 Adding A User

This part of the session corresponds to the functionality of the Add button operation in section 6.1. In user mode, the process of adding a user maureen to the LDAP directory is started with the add command:

### Example

```
[basecm11->user]% add maureen
[basecm11->user*[maureen*]]%
```

The cmsh utility helpfully drops into the user object just added, and the prompt shows the user name to reflect this. Going into user object would otherwise be done manually by typing use maureen at the user mode level.

Asterisks in the prompt are a helpful reminder of a modified state, with each asterisk indicating that there is an unsaved, modified property at that asterisk's level.

The modified command displays a list of modified objects that have not yet been committed:

### Example

```
[basecm11->user*[maureen*]]% modified
State  Type          Name
-----
+     User          maureen
```

This corresponds roughly to what is displayed by the `Unsaved entities` icon in the top right corner of the Base View standard display (figure 10.5).

Running show at this point reveals a user name entry, but empty fields for the other properties of user maureen. So the account in preparation, while it is modified, is clearly not yet ready for use:

### Example

```
[basecm11->user*[maureen*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Accounts
Managees
Name              maureen
Primary group
Revision
Secondary groups
ID
Common name
Surname
Group ID
Login shell
```

```

Password < not set >
Home directory
Home directory operation yes
Email
Profile
Write ssh proxy config no
Create ssh key no
Disable password ssh no
Allow GPU workload power profiles no
Authorized ssh keys <0B>
Shadow min 0
Shadow max 999999
Shadow warning 7
Shadow inactive 0
Last change 1970/1/1
Expiration date 2038/1/1
Project manager <submode>
Notes <0B>

```

### 6.2.2 Saving The Modified State

This part of the session corresponds to the functionality of the SAVE button operation in section 6.1.

In section 6.2.1 above, user maureen was added. maureen now exists as a proposed modification, but has not yet been committed to the LDAP database.

Running the commit command now at the maureen prompt stores the modified state at the user maureen object level:

#### Example

```

[basecm11->user*[maureen*]]% commit
[basecm11->user[maureen]]% show
Parameter Value
-----
Accounts
Managees
Name maureen
Primary group 1001
Revision
Secondary groups
ID 1001
Common name maureen
Surname maureen
Group ID 1001
Login shell /bin/bash
Password *****
Home directory /home/maureen
Home directory operation yes
Email
Profile
Write ssh proxy config no
Create ssh key no
Disable password ssh no
Allow GPU workload power profiles no
Authorized ssh keys <0B>
Shadow min 0
Shadow max 999999
Shadow warning 7

```

Shadow inactive	0
Last change	2025/5/20
Expiration date	2038/1/1
Project manager	<submode>
Notes	<OB>

If, however, `commit` were to be run at the user mode level without dropping into the `maureen` object level, then instead of just that modified user, all modified users would be committed.

When the commit is done, all the empty fields for the user are automatically filled in with defaults based the underlying Linux distribution used. Also, as a security precaution, if an empty field (that is, a “not set”) password entry is committed, then a login to the account is not allowed. So, in the example, the account for user `maureen` exists at this stage, but still cannot be logged into until the password is set. Editing passwords and other properties is covered in section 6.2.3.

The default permissions for file and directories under the home directory of the user are defined by the `umask` settings in `/etc/login.defs`, as would be expected if the administrator were to use the standard `useradd` command. Setting a path for the `homedirectory` parameter for a user sets a default home directory path. By default the default path is `/home/<username>` for a user `<username>`. If `homedirectory` is unset, then the default is determined by the `HomeRoot` directive (Appendix C).

### 6.2.3 Editing Properties Of Users And Groups

This corresponds roughly to the functionality of the `Edit` operation in section 6.1.

In the preceding section 6.2.2, a user account `maureen` was made, with an unset password as one of its properties. Logins to accounts with an unset password are refused. The password therefore needs to be set if the account is to function.

#### Editing Users With `set` And `clear`

The tool used to set user and group properties is the `set` command. Typing `set` and then either using tab to see the possible completions, or following it up with the enter key, suggests several parameters that can be set, one of which is `password`:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->user[maureen]]% set
Name:
      set - Set specific user property

Usage:
      set [OPTIONS] [user] <parameter> <value> [<value> ...]

Options:
      -e, --extra
          Set an extra free key/value parameter

      -v, --vector
          Set extra parameter values as a vector even for a single value

      -t, --type <type>
          Convert extra parameter values, type: [i]nt, [u]unsigned, f[float], d[double]

Arguments:
      user           name of the user, omit if current is set

Parameters:
      name ..... User login (e.g. donald)
      id ..... User ID number
```

```

commonname ..... Full name (e.g. Donald Duck)
surname ..... Surname (e.g. Duck)
groupid ..... Base group of this user
loginshell ..... Login shell
homedirectory ..... Home directory
password ..... Password
homedirectoryoperation Set to false to not create or move home directory
shadowmin ..... Minimum number of days required between password changes
shadowmax ..... Maximum number of days for which the user password remains valid.
shadowwarning ..... Number of days of advance warning given to the user before the user password expires
shadowinactive ..... Number of days of inactivity allowed for the user
expirationdate ..... Date on which the user login will be disabled
email ..... Email
profile ..... Profile for Authorization
projectmanager ..... Project manager
notes ..... Administrator notes
writesshproxyconfig . Write ssh proxy config
createsshkey ..... Create ssh key for added users
disablepasswordssh .. Disable password ssh
authorizedsshkeys ... Authorized ssh keys
allowgpuworkloadpowerprofiles Allow changing GPU workload power profiles from jobs
revision ..... Entity revision
[basecm11->user[maureen]]%

```

Continuing the session from the end of section 6.2.2, the password can be set at the user context prompt like this:

### Example

```
[basecm11->user[maureen]]% set password seteca5tr0n0my
[basecm11->user*[maureen*]]% commit
[basecm11->user[maureen]]%
```

At this point, the account maureen is finally ready for use.

The converse of the set command is the clear command, which clears properties:

### Example

```
[basecm11->user[maureen]]% clear password; commit
```

Setting a password in cmsh is also possible by setting the LDAP hash (the encrypted storage format) that is generated from the password within cmsh. When setting passwords in cmsh, a string starting with {MD5}, {CRYPT} or {SSHA} is considered to be the hash of the password:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# #first create the LDAP salted SHA-1 hash of the password:
[root@basecm11 ~]# /cm/local/apps/openldap/sbin/slappasswd -h {SSHA} -s seteca5tr0n0my
[root@basecm11 ~]# {SSHA}sViD+lfSTt1Iy0MuGwPGfGd5XKHgEm5d
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% user use maureen
[basecm11->user[maureen]]% set password
enter new password:          #here and in the next line {SSHA}sViD+lfSTt1Iy0MuGwPGfGd5XKHgEm5d is typed in
retype new password:
[basecm11->user[maureen]]% commit
[basecm11->user[maureen]]% !ssh maureen@node001      #now will test the password that generated the hash
Warning: Permanently added 'node001' (ECDSA) to the list of known hosts.
```

```
maureen@node001's password: #here seteca5tr0n0my is typed in
Creating ECDSA key for ssh
[maureen@node001 ~]$ #successfully logged in with the password associated with the hash
```

Managing passwords in cmsh via direct LDAP hash entry is not normally done.

### **Editing Groups With append And removefrom**

While the preceding commands `set` and `clear` also work with groups, there are two other commands available which suit the special nature of groups. These supplementary commands are `append` and `removefrom`. They are used to add extra users to, and remove extra users from a group.

For example, it may be useful to have a printer group so that several users can share access to a printer. For the sake of this example (continuing the session from where it was left off in the preceding), `tim` and `fred` are now added to the LDAP directory, along with a group `printer`:

#### **Example**

```
[basecm11->user[maureen]]% add tim; add fred
[basecm11->user*[fred*]]% exit; group; add printer
[basecm11->group*[printer*]]% commit
[basecm11->group[printer]]% exit; exit; user
[basecm11->user*]%
```

The context switch that takes place in the preceding session should be noted: The context of user `maureen` was eventually replaced by the context of group `printer`. As a result, the group `printer` is committed, but the users `tim` and `fred` are not yet committed, which is indicated by the asterisk at the user mode level.

Continuing onward, to add users to a group the `append` command is used. A list of users `maureen`, `tim` and `fred` can be added to the group `printer` like this:

#### **Example**

```
[basecm11->user*]%
Successfully committed 2 Users
[basecm11->user]%
[basecm11->group use printer]
[basecm11->group[printer]]% append members maureen tim fred; commit
[basecm11->group[printer]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
ID                1002
Revision
Name              printer
Members           maureen,tim,fred
```

To remove users from a group, the `removefrom` command is used. A list of specific users, for example, `tim` and `fred`, can be removed from a group like this:

```
[basecm11->group[printer]]% removefrom members tim fred; commit
[basecm11->group[printer]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
ID                1002
Revision
Name              printer
Members           maureen
```

The `clear` command can also be used to clear members—but it also clears all of the extras from the group:

### Example

```
[basecm11->group[printer]]% clear members
[basecm11->group*[printer*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
ID                1002
Revision
Name              printer
Members
```

The `commit` command is intentionally left out at this point in the session in order to illustrate how reversion is used in the next section.

#### 6.2.4 Reverting To The Unmodified State

This corresponds roughly to the functionality of the `Revert` operation in section 6.1.

This section (6.2.4) continues on from the state of the session at the end of section 6.2.3. There, the state of group `printers` was cleared so that the extra added members were removed. This state (the state with no group members showing) was however not yet committed.

The `refresh` command reverts an uncommitted object back to the last committed state.

This happens at the level of the object it is using. For example, the object that is being handled here is the properties of the group object `printer`. Running `revert` at a higher level prompt—say, in the group mode level—would revert everything at that level and below. So, in order to affect only the properties of the group object `printer`, the `refresh` command is used at the group object `printer` level prompt. It then reverts the properties of group object `printer` back to their last committed state, and does not affect other objects:

### Example

```
[basecm11->group*[printer*]]% refresh
[basecm11->group[printer]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
ID                1002
Revision
Name              printer
Members           maureen
```

Here, the user `maureen` reappears because she was stored in the last save. Also, because only the group object `printer` has been committed, the asterisk indicates the existence of other uncommitted, modified objects.

#### 6.2.5 Removing A User

Removing a user using `cmsh` corresponds roughly to the functionality of the `Delete` operation in section 6.1.

The `remove` command removes a user or group. The useful “`-d|--data`” flag added to the end of the `username` removes the user’s home directory too. For example, within `user` mode, the command “`remove user maureen -d; commit`” removes user `maureen`, along with her home directory. Continuing the session at the end of section 6.2.4 from where it was left off, as follows, shows this result:

### Example

```
[basecm11->group[printer]]% user use maureen
[basecm11->user[maureen]]% remove -d; commit
Successfully removed 1 Users
```

```
Successfully committed 0 Users
[basecm11->user]! ls -d /home/* | grep maureen #no maureen left behind
[basecm11->user]%
```

## 6.3 Using An External LDAP Server

Sometimes, an external LDAP server is used to serve the user database. If, instead of just using the database for authentication, the user database is also to be managed, then its LDAP schema must match the BCM LDAP schema.

For RHEL8, the `/etc/nslcd.conf`, `/etc/openldap/ldap.conf`, and the certificate files under `/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/certs/` should be copied over. For RHEL9, `/etc/sssd/sssd.conf` is copied over instead of `/etc/nslcd.conf`.

Port 636 on ShoreWall running on the head node should be open for LDAP communication over the external network, if external nodes are using it on the external network. In addition, the external nodes and the head node must be able to resolve each other.

By default, BCM runs an LDAP health check using the `cmsgsupport` user on the LDAP server. The LDAP health check may need to be modified or disabled by the administrator to prevent spurious health warnings with an external LDAP server:

### Modifying Or Disabling The `ldap` Healthcheck

**Modifying the `ldap` health check:** To keep a functional `ldap` health check with an external LDAP server, a permanent external LDAP user name, for example `ldapcheck`, can be added. This user can then be set as the parameter for BCM's `ldap` health check object that is used to monitor the LDAP service. Health checks and health check objects are discussed in Chapter 10.

- If user management is not configured to work on CMDaemon for the external LDAP server, then the user management tool that is used with the external LDAP server should be used by the administrator to create the `ldapcheck` user instead.
- If user management is still being done via CMDaemon, then an example session for configuring the `ldap` script object to work with the new external LDAP user is (some prompt text elided):

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% user
[basecm11->user]! add ldapcheck; commit
[basecm11->user[ldapcheck]]% monitoring setup use ldap
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[ldap]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
...
Arguments
...
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[ldap]]% set arguments "ldapcheck"; commit
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[ldap:ldapcheck]]%
```

**Disabling the `ldap` health check:** Instead of modifying the `ldap` health check to work when using an external LDAP server, it can be disabled entirely via Base View or `cmsh`.

- Base View: the `ldap` health check is disabled via the navigation path:

Monitoring > Data Producers > `ldap` > Edit

- `cmsh`: the `disabled` parameter of the `ldap` health check object is set to `yes`. The `disabled` parameter for the `ldap` health check can be set as follows:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "monitoring setup use ldap; set disabled yes; commit"
```

### Configuring The Cluster To Authenticate Against An External LDAP Server

The cluster can be configured in different ways to authenticate against an external LDAP server.

For smaller clusters, a configuration where LDAP clients on all nodes point directly to the external server is recommended. An easy way to set this up is as follows:

- On the head node:
  - In distributions that are derived from the RHEL 8.x series: The files in which the changes need to be made are `/etc/nsLCD.conf` and `/etc/openldap/ldap.conf`. To implement the changes, the `nsLCD` daemon must then be restarted, for example with `systemctl nsLCD restart`.  
For the RHEL 9.x series, `/etc/nsLCD.conf` is replaced by `/etc/sssd/sssd.conf`, and it is the `sssd` daemon that must be restarted, for example with: `/bin/systemctl restart sssd`.
  - the `updateprovisioners` command (section 5.2.4) is run to update any other provisioners.

- Then, the configuration files are updated in the software images that the nodes use. If the nodes use the `default-image`, and if the nodes are based on RHEL8 and derivatives, then the files to update are `/cm/images/default-image/etc/nsLCD.conf` and `/cm/images/default-image/etc/openldap/ldap.conf`.

For RHEL9 and derivatives `/cm/images/default-image/etc/sssd/sssd.conf` is used instead `/cm/images/default-image/etc/nsLCD.conf`.

After the configuration change has been made, and the nodes have picked up the new configuration, the regular nodes can then carry out LDAP lookups.

- Nodes can simply be rebooted to pick up the updated configuration, along with the new software image.
- Alternatively, to avoid a reboot, the `imageupdate` command (section 5.6.2) can be run to pick up the new software image from a provisioner.
- The CMDaemon configuration file `cmd.conf` (Appendix C) has LDAP user management directives. These may need to be adjusted:
  - If another LDAP tool is to be used for external LDAP user management instead of Base View or `cmsh`, then altering `cmd.conf` is not required, and BCM's user management capabilities do nothing in any case.
  - If, however, system users and groups are to be managed via Base View or `cmsh`, then CMDaemon, too, must refer to the external LDAP server instead of the default LDAP server. This configuration change is actually rare, because the external LDAP database schema is usually an existing schema generated outside of BCM, and so it is very unlikely to match BCM LDAP database schema. To implement the changes:
    - \* On the node that is to manage the database, which is normally the head node, the `LDAPHost`, `LDAPUser`, `LDAPPass`, and `LDAPSearchDN` directives in `cmd.conf` are changed so that they refer to the external LDAP server.
    - \* CMDaemon is restarted to enable the new configurations.

For larger clusters the preceding solution can cause issues due to traffic, latency, security and connectivity fault tolerance. If such occur, a better solution is to replicate the external LDAP server onto the head node, hence keeping all cluster authentication local, and making the presence of the external LDAP server unnecessary except for updates. This optimization is described in the next section.

### 6.3.1 External LDAP Server Replication

This section explains how to set up replication for an external LDAP server to an LDAP server that is local to the cluster, if improved LDAP services are needed. Section 6.3.2 then explains how this can then be made to work with a high availability setup.

Typically, the BCM LDAP server is configured as a replica (consumer) to the external LDAP server (provider), with the consumer refreshing its local database at set timed intervals. How the configuration is done varies according to the LDAP server used. The description in this section assumes the provider and consumer both use OpenLDAP.

#### External LDAP Server Replication: Configuring The Provider

It is advisable to back up any configuration files before editing them.

The provider is assumed to be an external LDAP server, and not necessarily part of the BCM cluster. The LDAP TCP ports 389 and 689 may therefore need to be made accessible between the consumer and the provider by changing firewall settings.

If a provider LDAP server is already configured then the following synchronization directives must be in the `slapd.conf` file to allow replication:

```
index entryCSN eq
index entryUUID eq
overlay syncprov
syncprov-checkpoint <ops> <minutes>
syncprov-sessionlog <size>
```

The openldap documentation (<http://www.openldap.org/doc/>) has more on the meanings of these directives. If the values for `<ops>`, `<minutes>`, and `<size>` are not already set, typical values are:

```
syncprov-checkpoint 1000 60
```

and:

```
syncprov-sessionlog 100
```

To allow the consumer to read the provider database, the consumer's access rights need to be configured. In particular, the `userPassword` attribute must be accessible. LDAP servers are often configured to prevent unauthorized users reading the `userPassword` attribute.

Read access to all attributes is available to users with replication privileges. So one way to allow the consumer to read the provider database is to bind it to replication requests.

Sometimes a user for replication requests already exists on the provider, or the root account is used for consumer access. If not, a user for replication access must be configured.

A replication user, `syncuser` with password `secret` can be added to the provider LDAP with adequate rights using the following `syncuser.ldif` file:

```
dn: cn=syncuser,<suffix>
objectClass: person
cn: syncuser
sn: syncuser
userPassword: secret
```

Here, `<suffix>` is the suffix set in `slapd.conf`, which is originally something like `dc=example,dc=com`. The `syncuser` is added using:

```
ldapadd -x -D "cn=root,<suffix>" -W -f syncuser.ldif
```

This prompts for the root password configured in `slapd.conf`.

To verify `syncuser` is in the LDAP database the output of `ldapsearch` can be checked:

```
ldapsearch -x "(sn=syncuser)"
```

To allow access to the userPassword attribute for syncuser the following lines in `slapd.conf` are changed, from:

```
access to attrs=userPassword
  by self write
  by anonymous auth
  by * none
```

to:

```
access to attrs=userPassword
  by self write
  by dn="cn=syncuser,<suffix>" read
  by anonymous auth
  by * none
```

Provider configuration is now complete. The server can be restarted using

```
systemctl restart slapd.service
in RHEL8.x and RHEL9.x.
```

### **External LDAP Server Replication: Configuring The Consumer(s)**

The consumer is an LDAP server on a BCM head node. It is configured to replicate with the provider by adding the following lines to `/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/slappd.conf`:

```
syncrepl rid=2
  provider=ldap://external.ldap.server
  type=refreshOnly
  interval=01:00:00:00
  searchbase=<suffix>
  scope=sub
  schemachecking=off
  binddn="cn=syncuser,<suffix>"
  bindmethod=simple
  credentials=secret
```

Here:

- The `rid=2` value is chosen to avoid conflict with the `rid=1` setting used during high availability configuration (section 6.3.2).
- The provider argument points to the external LDAP server.
- The interval argument (format DD:HH:MM:SS) specifies the time interval before the consumer refreshes the database from the external LDAP. Here, the database is updated once a day.
- The credentials argument specifies the password chosen for the `syncuser` on the external LDAP server.

More on the `syncrepl` directive can be found in the openldap documentation (<http://www.openldap.org/doc/>).

The configuration files must also be edited so that:

- The `<suffix>` and `rootdn` settings in `slapd.conf` both use the correct `<suffix>` value, as used by the provider.
- The `base` value in `/etc/ldap.conf` uses the correct `<suffix>` value as used by the provider. This is set on all BCM nodes including the head node(s). If the `/etc/ldap.conf` file does not exist, then the note on page 310 applies.

Finally, before replication takes place, the consumer database is cleared. This can be done by removing all files, except for the DB\_CONFIG file, from under the configured database directory, which by default is at /var/lib/ldap/.

The consumer is restarted using `systemctl restart slapd`. This replicates the provider's LDAP database, and continues to do so at the specified intervals.

### 6.3.2 High Availability

#### No External LDAP Server Case

If the LDAP server is not external—that is, if BCM is set to its high availability configuration, with its LDAP servers running internally, on its own head nodes—then by default LDAP services are provided from both the active and the passive node. The high-availability setting ensures that CMdaemon takes care of any changes needed in the `slapd.conf` file when a head node changes state from passive to active or vice versa, and also ensures that the active head node propagates its LDAP database changes to the passive node via a `syncprov/syncrepl` configuration in `slapd.conf`.

#### External LDAP Server With No Replication Locally Case

In the case of an external LDAP server being used, but with no local replication involved, no special high-availability configuration is required. The LDAP client configuration in `/etc/ldap.conf` simply remains the same for both active and passive head nodes, pointing to the external LDAP server. The file `/cm/images/default-image/etc/ldap.conf`, in each software image also point to the same external LDAP server. If the `/etc/ldap.conf` files referred to here in the head and software images do not exist, then the note on page 310 applies.

#### External LDAP Server With Replication Locally Case

In the case of an external LDAP server being used, with the external LDAP provider being replicated to the high-availability cluster, it is generally more efficient for the passive node to have its LDAP database propagated and updated only from the active node to the passive node, and not updated from the external LDAP server.

The configuration should therefore be:

- an active head node that updates its consumer LDAP database from the external provider LDAP server
- a passive head node that updates its LDAP database from the active head node's LDAP database

Although the final configuration is the same, the sequence in which LDAP replication configuration and high availability configuration are done has implications on what configuration files need to be adjusted.

1. For LDAP replication configuration done after high availability configuration, adjusting the new suffix in `/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/slappd.conf` and in `/etc/ldap.conf` on the passive node to the local cluster suffix suffices as a configuration. If the `ldap.conf` file does not exist, then the note on page 310 applies.
2. For high availability configuration done after LDAP replication configuration, the initial LDAP configurations and database are propagated to the passive node. To set replication to the passive node from the active node, and not to the passive node from an external server, the provider option in the `syncrepl` directive on the passive node must be changed to point to the active node, and the suffix in `/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/slappd.conf` on the passive node must be set identical to the head node.

The high availability replication event occurs once only for configuration and database files in BCM's high availability system. Configuration changes made on the passive node after the event are therefore persistent.

## 6.4 Tokens And Profiles

Access to Base View and cmsh is based on user certificates (section 2.3.3).

*Tokens* can be assigned by the administrator to users so that users can carry out some of the operations that the administrator does with Base View or cmsh. Every cluster management operation requires that each user, including the administrator, has the relevant tokens in their *profile* for the operation.

The tokens for a user are grouped into a profile, and such a profile is typically given a name by the administrator according to the assigned capabilities. For example the profile might be called `readmonitoringonly` if it allows the user to read the monitoring data only, or it may be called `powerhandler` if the user is only allowed to carry out power operations. Each profile thus consists of a set of tokens, typically relevant to the name of the profile, and is typically assigned to several users.

The profile is stored as part of the authentication certificate (section 2.3) which is generated for running authentication operations to the cluster manager for the certificate owner.

Profiles are handled with the `profiles` mode of cmsh, or from the Base View Profiles window, accessible via a navigation path of Identity Management > Profiles

The following preconfigured profiles are available from cmsh:

Profile name	Default Tasks Allowed	nonuser ?
<code>admin</code>	all tasks	no
<code>autonomous-hardware-recovery</code>	autonomous hardware recovery tasks	yes
<code>autonomous-job-recovery</code>	autonomous job recovery tasks	yes
<code>bootstrap</code>	bootstrap tasks	yes
<code>cmhealth</code>	health-related prejob tasks	yes
<code>cmpam</code>	BCM PAM tasks	yes
<code>litenode</code>	CMDaemon Lite (section 2.6.7) tasks	yes
<code>monitoringpush</code>	pushing raw monitoring data to CMDaemon via a JSON POST (page 67 of the <i>Developer Manual</i> )	yes
<code>mqtt</code>	MQTT tasks	yes
<code>node</code>	node-related tasks, for example by the node-installer	yes
<code>portal</code>	user portal viewing	no
<code>power</code>	device power	yes
<code>prs</code>	PRS tasks	yes
<code>readonly</code>	view-only	no

The last column in the preceding table indicates whether the preconfigured profile is a nonuser profile or not. A cmsh one-liner that indicates this is:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "profile; foreach * (get name; get nonuser)" | paste - -
```

- Most of the preconfigured profiles are nonuser profiles. Such a profile is used by cluster manager clients, and should never be modified by the cluster administrator.
- The preconfigured profiles that are not nonuser profiles are `admin`, `readonly`, and `portal`. These can be modified by the cluster administrator and used for human users.

The cluster manager services that use the available preconfigured profiles can be viewed in cmsh the `list` command in `profile` mode.

The tokens, and other properties of a particular profile can be seen within `profile` mode as follows:

### Example

```
[basecm11->profile]% show readonly
Parameter      Value
-----
Name          readonly
Non user      no
Revision
Services      CMDevice CMNet CMPart CMMon CMJob CMAuth CMServ CMUser CMSession CMMain CMGui CMP+
Tokens        GET_DEVICE_TOKEN GET_CATEGORY_TOKEN GET_NODEGROUP_TOKEN POWER_STATUS_TOKEN GET_DE+
```

For screens that are not wide enough to view the parameter values, the values can also be listed:

### Example

```
[basecm11->profile]% get readonly tokens
GET_DEVICE_TOKEN
GET_CATEGORY_TOKEN
GET_NODEGROUP_TOKEN
...
```

A profile can be set with cmsh for a user within user mode as follows:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% user use conner
[basecm11->user[conner]]% get profile

[basecm11->user[conner]]% set profile readonly; commit
```

Only a subset of the predefined profiles are available to users. The ones that are made available to users are readonly, admin, and portal.

#### 6.4.1 Modifying Profiles

A profile can be modified by adding or removing appropriate tokens to it. For example, the readonly group by default has access to the burn status and burn log results. Removing the appropriate tokens stops users in that group from seeing these results.

In cmsh the removal can be done from within profile mode as follows:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% profile use readonly
[...[readonly]]% removefrom tokens burn_status_token get_burn_log_token
[basecm11]->profile*[readonly*]]% commit
```

Tab-completion after typing in removefrom tokens helps in filling in the tokens that can be removed.

In Base View (figure 6.3), the same removal action can be carried out via the navigation path:

Identity Management > Profiles > readonly > Edit > Tokens

In the resulting display it is convenient to maximize the window. Also convenient is running a search for burn, which will show the relevant tokens:

BURN\_STATUS\_TOKEN and GET\_BURN\_LOG\_TOKEN

as well as the subgroup they are in, which is the device subgroup.

The ticks can be removed from the BURN\_STATUS\_TOKEN and GET\_BURN\_LOG\_TOKEN checkboxes, and the changed settings can then be saved.

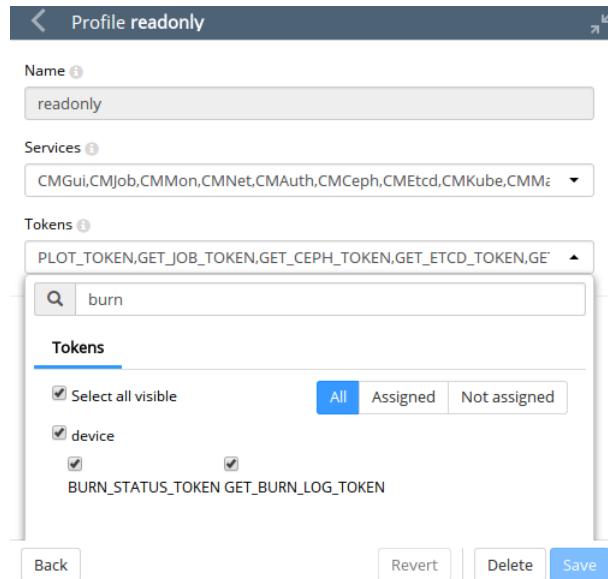


Figure 6.3: Base View Profile Token Management

#### 6.4.2 Creation Of Custom Certificates With Profiles, For Users Managed By BCM's Internal LDAP

Custom profiles can be created to include a custom collection of capabilities in `cmsh` and Base View. Cloning of profiles is also possible from `cmsh`.

A certificate file, with an associated expiry date, can be created based on a profile. The time of expiry for a certificate cannot be extended after creation. An entirely new certificate is required after expiry of the old one.

The creation of custom certificates using `cmsh` (page 318) or Base View (page 319) is described later on. After creating such a certificate, the `openssl` utility can be used to examine its structure and properties. In the following example most of the output has been elided in order to highlight the expiry date (30 days from the time of generation), the common name (`democert`), the key size (2048), profile properties (`readonly`), and system login name (`peter`), for such a certificate:

```
[root@basecm11]# openssl x509 -in peterfile.pem -text -noout
Data:
...
Not After : Sep 21 13:18:27 2014 GMT
Subject: ... CN=democert
        Public-Key: (2048 bit)
...
X509v3 extensions:
    1.3.6.1.4.4324.1:
        ..readonly
    1.3.6.1.4.4324.2:
        ..peter
[root@basecm11]#
```

However, using the `openssl` utility for managing certificates is rather inconvenient. BCM provides more convenient ways to do so, as described next.

#### **Listing Certificates**

All certificates that have been generated by the cluster are noted by CMDaemon.

**Listing certificates with cmsh:** Within the cert mode of cmsh, the listcertificates command lists all cluster certificates and their properties:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% cert
[basecm11-> cert]% listcertificates
Serial Revoked Time left Profile System log in Name
----- -----
1 No 5214w 1d admin root Administrator
2 No 5214w 1d cmhealth CMHealth
3 No 5214w 1d cmhealth CMHealth
4 No 5214w 1d power Slurm
5 No 5214w 1d bootstrap CertificateRequest
6 No 5214w 1d cmpam CMPam
7 No 5214w 1d portal WebPortal
...
...
```

**Listing certificates with Base View:** The Base View equivalent for listing certificates is via the navigation path Identity Management > Certificates (figure 6.4):

Certificate list						
	NAME	REVOKED	SERIAL NUMBER	REMAINING	PROFILE	COUNTRY
	Administrator	false	1	36d 11h 56m...	admin	US
	CMHealth	false	2	36d 11h 56m...	cmhealth	US
	CMHealth	false	3	36d 11h 56m...	cmhealth	US
	Slurm	false	4	36d 11h 56m...	power	US
	CertificateRequest	false	5	36d 11h 56m...	bootstrap	US
	CMPam	false	6	36d 11h 56m...	cmpam	US
	WebPortal	false	7	36d 11h 56m...	portal	US
	pj-92k.cm.cluster	false	8	36d 11h 56m...	admin	US
	pj-92k	false	9	36d 11h 56m...		US
	fa-16-3e-25-4e-95	false	10	36d 11h 56m...	node	US
	fa-16-3e-b6-69-6e	false	11	36d 11h 56m...	node	US
	fa-16-3e-e3-66-70	false	12	36d 11h 56m...	node	US
	fa-16-3e-0e-89-d5	false	13	36d 11h 56m...	node	US

Figure 6.4: Base View Certificates List Window

## Node Certificates

In the certificates list, node certificates that are generated by the node-installer (section 5.4.1) for each node for CMDaemon use are listed. These are entries that look like:

```
[basecm11-> cert]% listcertificates
Serial Revoked Time left Profile System log in Name
----- -----
...
10 No 5214w 1d node fa-16-3e-74-24-dc
11 No 5214w 1d node fa-16-3e-57-2c-8e
12 No 5214w 1d node fa-16-3e-b6-c7-4a
```

```

13     No      5214w 1d      node          fa-16-3e-bd-cd-05
14     No      5214w 1d      node          fa-16-3e-0d-ab-ea
...

```

### Creating A Custom Certificate

Custom certificates are also listed in the certificates list.

Unlike node certificates, which are normally system-generated, custom certificates are typically generated by a user with the appropriate tokens in their profile, such as root with the admin profile. Such a user can create a certificate containing a specified profile, as discussed in the next section, by using:

- cmsh: with the `createcertificate` operation from within cert mode
- Base View: via the navigation path Identity Management > Users > Edit > Profile to set the Profile.

**Creating a new certificate for cmsh users:** Creating a new certificate in cmsh is done from cert mode using the `createcertificate` command, which has the following help text:

```
[basecm11->cert]% help createcertificate
Name:
  createcertificate - Create a new certificate

Usage:
  createcertificate <key-length> <common-name> <organization> <organizational-unit> <location> <state> <country> <profile> <sys-login> <days> <key-file> <cert-file>

Arguments:
  key-file
    Path to key file that will be generated

  cert-file
    Path to pem file that will be generated
```

Accordingly, as an example, a certificate file with a read-only profile set to expire in 30 days, to be run with the privileges of user peter, can be created with:

### Example

```
[basecm11->cert]% createcertificate 2048 democert a b c d e f readonly peter 30 /home/peter\
/peterfile.key /home/peter/peterfile.pem

Thu Jan  5 15:13:01 2023 [notice] basecm11: New certificate request with ID: 16
[basecm11->cert]% createcertificate 2048 democert a b c d e f readonly peter 30 /home/peter\
/peterfile.key /home/peter/peterfile.pem
Certificate key written to file: /home/peter/peterfile.key
Certificate pem written to file: /home/peter/peterfile.pem
```

The certificate list would show it as something like:

```
[basecm11-> cert]% listcertificates
Serial Revoked  Time left      Profile           System log in      Name
----- -----
...
23     No      4w 1d      readonly      peter      democert
```

**Setting the ownership of the new custom certificate:** The certificates are owned by the owner generating them, so they are root-owned if root was running cmsh. This means that user peter cannot use them until their ownership is changed to user peter:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cd /home/peter
[root@basecm11 peter]# ls -l peterfile.*
-rw----- 1 root root 1704 Aug 22 06:18 peterfile.key
-rw----- 1 root root 1107 Aug 22 06:18 peterfile.pem
[root@basecm11 peter]# chown peter:peter peterfile.*
```

Other users must have the certificate ownership changed to their own user names.

**Associating users with paths to the new custom certificate:** Users associated with such a certificate can then carry out cmdaemon tasks that have a read-only profile, and CMDaemon sees such users as being user peter. Two ways of being associated with the certificate are:

1. The paths to the pem and key files can be set with the -i and -k options respectively of cmsh. For example, in the home directory of peter, for the files generated in the preceding session, cmsh can be launched with these keys with:

```
[peter@basecm11 ~] cmsh -i peterfile.pem -k peterfile.key
[basecm11]% quit
```

2. If the -i and -k options are not used, then cmsh searches for default keys. The default keys for cmsh are under these paths under \$HOME, in the following order of priority:
  - (a) .cm/admin.{pem,key}
  - (b) .cm/cert.{pem,key}

**Creating a custom certificate for Base View users:** As in the case of cmsh, a Base View user having a sufficiently privileged tokens profile, such as the admin profile, can create a certificate and key file for themselves or another user. This is done by associating a value for the Profile from the Add or Edit dialog for the user (figure 6.2).

The certificate files, cert.pem and cert.key, are then automatically placed in the following paths and names, under \$HOME for the user:

- .cm/admin.{pem,key}
- .cm/cert.{pem,key}

Users that authenticate with their user name and password when running Base View use this certificate for their Base View clients, and are then restricted to the set of tasks allowed by their associated profile.

#### 6.4.3 Creation Of Custom Certificates With Profiles, For Users Managed By An External LDAP

The use of an external LDAP server instead of BCM's for user management is described in section 6.3. Generating a certificate for an external LDAP user must be done explicitly in BCM. This can be carried out with the external-user-cert script, which is provided with the cluster-tools package. The package is installed by default with BCM.

Running the external-user-cert script embeds the user and profile in the certificate during certificate generation. The script has the following usage:

```
external-user-cert -h
Usage: for a single profile: external-user-cert <profile> <user> [<user> ... ]
        --home=<home-prefix> [-g <group>] [-o]
    for several profiles: external-user-cert --home=<home-prefix>
        --file=<inputfile> [-g <group>]
        where lines of <inputfile> have the syntax
        <profile> <user> [<user> ... ]
```

#### Options:

-h, --help	show this help message and exit
--file=FILE	input FILE
--home=HOME_PATH	path for home directories, default /home/
-g GROUP	name of primary group, e.g. wheel
-o	overwrite existing certificates

Here,

- <profile> should be a valid profile
- <user> should be an existing user
- <home-prefix> is usually /home
- <group> is a group, such as wheel
- <inputfile> is a file with each line having the syntax

```
<profile> <user> [<user> ... ]
```

One or more external LDAP user certificates can be created by the script. The certificate files generated are cert.pem and cert.key. They are stored in the home directory of the user.

For example, a user spongebob that is managed on the external server, can have a read-only certificate generated with:

```
# external-user-cert readonly spongebob --home=/home
```

If the home directory of spongebob is /home/spongebob, then the key files that are generated are /home/spongebob/.cm/cert.key and /home/spongebob/.cm/cert.pem.

Assuming no other keys are used by cmsh, a cmsh session that runs as user spongebob with readonly privileges can now be launched:

```
$ module load cmsh
$ cmsh
```

If other keys do exist, then they may be used according to the logic explained in item 2 on page 319.

#### 6.4.4 Logging The Actions Of CMDaemon Users

The following directives allow control over the logging of CMDaemon user actions.

- CMDaemonAudit: Enables logging
- CMDaemonAuditorFile: Sets log location
- DisableAuditorForProfiles: Disables logging for particular profiles

Details on these directives are given in Appendix C.

#### 6.4.5 Creation Of Certificates For Nodes With `cm-component-certificate`

The `cm-component-certificate` utility can be used to generate or update SSL certificates for components of services. The cluster administrator is not expected to use this utility because the cluster manager manages the certificates without bothering the administrator about it during normal operations. If the utility is to be used, then it should be used with caution, to avoid failure in the components that use these certificates.

One of the SSL client components for which this utility works is LDAP.

Options include setting a new CA and creating a new certificate or key for nodes.

Some examples of how it can be used are:

##### LDAP PEM And Key Creation For A Standalone Node

A standalone node (page 907) is a node that is not provisioned from the head node, but is configured to boot from its own drive. A standalone node *<mynode>* may have a PEM and key certificate created on the head node with:

###### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-component-certificate --generate=<mynode>
Certificate saved to ./ldap.{pem,key}
Done.
```

The certificates are saved to the working directory. They should be copied over manually to the location of the LDAP certificates on *mynode*. The `nslcd` daemon on *mynode* for RHEL8 (or the `sssd` daemon for RHEL9) should then be restarted.

##### LDAP PEM And Key Creation For A Regular Node

If a node *node001* that is provisioned has a lost or corrupted LDAP key or certificate, then replacements for these can be made with:

###### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-component-certificate -n node001
Sending request to recreate certificates for 1 node to cmd on basecm11
[(38654705666, 1)] 1 0 0
1 certificates were successfully recreated
Done.
```

The `ldap.{pem,key}` files are automatically placed on *node001*, by default at the location specified by the CMDaemon LDAPCertificate and LDAPPPrivateKey directives (page 848).

The files `/cm/node-installer/certificates/<node001-mac>/ldap.{pem,key}` should be removed on the head node.

The `nslcd`, `sssd`, and LDAP daemons should be restarted on *node001*, or more simply it can be rebooted if it is not in use. The reboot replaces the `ldap.{pem,key}` files on the head node with the newly-generated ones.

##### LDAP CA Certificate Creation

If a new LDAP CA certificate is needed, then a replacement can be made with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-component-certificate --ca
Sending request to recreate the CA to cmd on basecm11
Done.
```

The following steps must be done manually:

- If there is another head node, then the CA files, by default `ca.pem` and `ca.key` under `/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/certs/`, should be copied over the other head node.

- The key/PEM certificate files on all the nodes should be recreated using:  
`cm-component-certificate --allnodes`
- The old component PEM/key files for each regular node, `ldap.pem` and `ldap.key`, under the `node-installer` directory of the head node(s), should be removed. These certificates are kept under a directory named for the MAC address of the regular node, and follow the pattern:  
`/cm/node-installer/certificates/<MAC address>/<LDAP.{pem,key}>`
- The node CA files, by default `ca.pem` and `ca.key` under `/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/certs/` should be copied to the nodes:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# export ldapcertdir="/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/certs/"
for i in {01..12}
do
    scp $ldapcertdir/ca.pem node0$i:$ldapcertdir
    scp $ldapcertdir/ca.key node0$i:$ldapcertdir
done
```

- The `nslcd`, `sssd` and LDAP daemons should be restarted on all nodes
- CMDaemon should be restarted on the active head node

# 7

# Workload Management

For clusters that have many users and a significant load, a workload manager (WLM) system allows a more efficient use of resources to be enforced for all users than if there were no such system in place. This is because without resource management, there is a tendency for each individual user to over-exploit common resources.

When a WLM is used, the end user can submit a job to it. This can be done interactively, but it is typically done as a non-interactive batch job.

The WLM assigns resources to the job, and checks the current availability as well as checking its estimates of the future availability of the cluster resources that the job is asking for. The WLM then schedules and executes the job based on the assignment criteria that the administrator has set for the WLM system. After the job has finished executing, the job output is delivered back to the user.

Among the hardware resources that can be used for a job are GPUs. Installing CUDA software to enable the use of GPUs is described in section 9 of the *Installation Manual*. Configuring GPU settings for BCM is described in section 3.16.2 of the *Administration Manual*. Configuring GPU settings for an individual WLM is described in the section on getting that particular WLM up and running.

The details of job submission from a user's perspective are covered in the *User Manual*.

Sections 7.1–7.5 cover the installation procedure to get a WLM up and running.

Sections 7.6 –7.7 describe how Base View and cmsh are used to view and handle jobs, queues and node drainage.

Section 7.8 shows examples of WLM assignments handled by BCM.

Section 7.9 describes the power saving features of WLMs.

Section 7.10 describes cgroups, a resources limiter, mostly in the context of WLMs.

Section 7.11 describes WLM customizations for settings other than the common settings covered by BCM.

## 7.1 Workload Managers Choices

Some WLM packages are installed by default, others require registration from the distributor before installation.

During cluster installation, a WLM can be chosen (figure 3.9 of the *Installation Manual*) for setting up. The choices are:

- **PBS**: An HPC job scheduler, originally developed at NASA, now developed by Altair. This is integrated with BCM in these variants:
  1. **PBS Professional**: A commercial variant, with commercial support from Altair. Available as:
    - **PBS Professional version 2022**
  2. **OpenPBS**: A community-supported variant. The variant was known as PBS Pro CE before version 20. OpenPBS is available as:

- OpenPBS version 22.05
- OpenPBS version 23.06
- **Slurm:** Available as version 24.05, 24.11, or 25.05. Slurm is a free (GPL) job scheduler, with commercial support.
- **LSF v10.1:** IBM Spectrum LSF (Load Sharing Facility) version 10.1, is a further development of what used to be IBM Platform LSF.
- **None:** For clusters that need no HPC job-scheduling.

The WLMs in the preceding list can also be chosen and set up later using the `cm-wlm-setup` tool (section 7.3).

After installation, if there are no major changes in the WLM for updated versions of the workload managers, then

- WLMs that are packaged with BCM (Slurm, PBS) can have their packages updated using standard package update commands (`yum update` and similar). The installation and configuration of the WLM from the updated packages is carried out as described later on in this chapter.
- WLMs such as LSF that are installed by picking up software from the vendor can be updated by following vendor guidelines.

## 7.2 Forcing Jobs To Run In A Workload Management System

Another preliminary step is to consider forcing users to run jobs only within the WLM system. Having jobs run via a WLM is normally a best practice.

For convenience, BCM defaults to allowing users to log in via `ssh` to a node, using the authorized keys files stored in each users directory in `/home` (section 2.3.2). This allows users to run their processes without restriction, that is, outside the WLM system. For clusters with a significant load this policy results in a sub-optimal use of resources, since such unplanned-for jobs disturb any already-running jobs.

Disallowing user logins to nodes, so that users have to run their jobs through the WLM system, means that jobs are then distributed to the nodes only according to the planning of the WLM. If planning is based on sensible assignment criteria, then resources use is optimized—which is the entire aim of a WLM in the first place.

### 7.2.1 Disallowing User Logins To Regular Nodes Via `cmsh`

The `usernodelogin` setting of `cmsh` restricts direct user logins from outside the WLM, and is thus one way of preventing the user from using node resources in an unaccountable manner. The `usernodelogin` setting is applicable to node categories only, rather than to individual nodes.

In `cmsh` the attribute of `usernodelogin` is set from within category mode:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% category use default
[basecm11->category[default]]% set usernodelogin onlywhenjob
[basecm11->category*[default*]]% commit
```

The attributes for `usernodelogin` are:

- **always** (the default): This allows all users to `ssh` directly into a node at any time.
- **never:** This allows no user other than root to directly `ssh` into the node.

- `onlywhenjob`: This allows the user to ssh directly into the node when a job is running on it. It typically also prevents other users from doing a direct ssh into the same node during the job run, since typically the WLM is set up so that only one job runs per node. However, an ssh session that is already running is not automatically terminated after the job is done.

- Some cluster administrators may wish to allow some special user accounts to override the `onlywhenjob` setting, for example for diagnostic purposes. Before giving the details of how to override the setting, some background explanation is probably useful:

The `onlywhenjob` setting works with the PAM system, and adds the following line to `/etc/pam.d/sshd` on the regular nodes:

```
account      required      pam_bright.so
```

Nodes with the `onlywhenjob` restriction can be configured to allow a particular set of users to access them, despite the restriction, by allowing them with the PAM system, as follows: Within the software image `<node image>` used by the node, that is under `/cm/images/<node image>`, the administrator can add the set of user accounts to the file `etc/security/pam_bright.d/pam_allow.conf`. This file is installed in the software image with a chroot installation (section 9.4) of the `cm-libpam` package.

Groups of users can be allowed using the file `etc/security/pam_bright.d/pam_allow_group.conf`.

Other adjustments to PAM configuration, such as the number of attempted logins and the associated wait time per login, can be carried by editing the `/etc/security/pam_bright.d/cm-check-alloc.conf` file.

The image can then be updated to allow the users, by running the `imageupdate` command in `cmsh` (section 5.6.2), or by clicking the `Update node` option in Base View (section 5.6.3).

### 7.2.2 Disallowing User Logins To Regular Nodes Via Base View

In Base View, user node login access is set via a category setting, for example for the `default` category via the navigation path in figure 7.1:

`Grouping > Categories[default] > Edit > Settings > User node login`

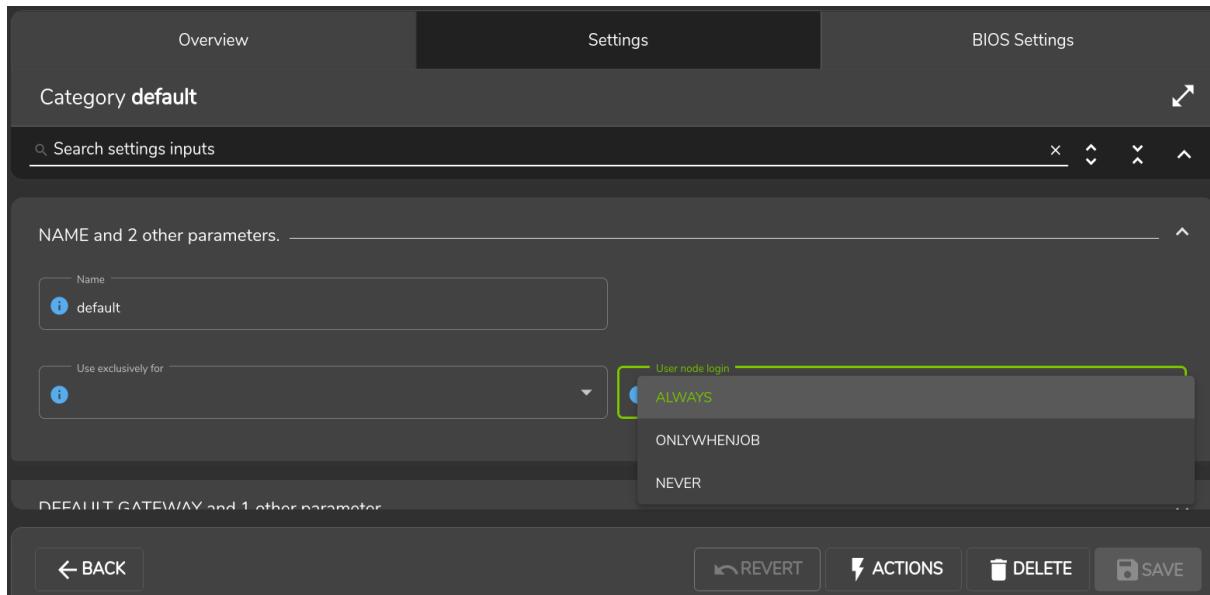


Figure 7.1: Disallowing user logins to nodes via Base View

### 7.2.3 Disallowing Other User Processes Outside Of Workload Manager User Processes

Besides disabling user logins, administrators may choose to disable interactive jobs in the WLM as an additional measure to prevent users from starting jobs on other nodes.

Administrators may also choose to set up scripts that run after job execution. Such scripts can terminate user processes outside the WLM, as part of a policy, or for general administrative hygiene. These are Epilog scripts and are part of the WLM.

The WLM documentation has more on configuring these options.

### 7.2.4 High Availability By Workload Managers

NVIDIA Base Command Manager uses the existing built-in high availability (HA) functionalities of workload managers as much as possible. A double server HA configuration with the existing built-in HA functionality can be carried out using the `cm-wlm-setup` utility (section 7.3), or using the Base View HA wizard (section 7.4.1). The built-in functionality makes use of the primary WLM server and secondary WLM server, which are placed on separate nodes.

The HA configuration aspect (section 15.1.3) in this case means that a WLM server role is assigned to both the WLM primary and the WLM secondary nodes. These primary WLM and secondary WLM servers can then:

- both be on head nodes,
- both be on regular (compute) nodes

It is not possible to configure a mixed setup—that is with one head node and one regular node—for the WLM servers on an HA setup.

In a non-HA cluster, the WLM `primaryserver` value is set to the head node by default.

#### Example

```
[head->wlm[slurm]]% get primaryserver
head
```

This is because NVIDIA Base Command Manager always configures the primary WLM server on the primary cluster head node.

If both the head nodes are configured with the WLM server roles, then the WLM `primaryserver` value is set to the primary cluster head node. This is because NVIDIA Base Command Manager always configures the primary WLM server on the primary cluster head node, and the backup WLM server on the secondary head node.

#### Example

```
[head1->wlm[slurm]]% get primaryserver
head1
[head1->wlm[slurm]]% exit
root@head1:~# ssh head2 "cmha makeactive"
...
... [logging into the newly active head node, and checking where the primary server is:] ...
[head2->wlm[slurm]]% get primaryserver
head1
```

If the parameter `primaryserver` is unset in `wlm` mode, and the Slurm server role is assigned to the head nodes, then the `slurmctld` service is always started on both head nodes. During a failover, the Slurm configuration is regenerated and both `slurmctld` services are restarted. The primary `slurmctld` is always on the active head node.

If two regular nodes are configured with the WLM server roles instead, then in the cluster entity configuration the `primaryserver` parameter is set to one of the compute nodes.

The cluster primary head node and the WLM primary server should not be confused. In particular, the active cluster head node and active workload manager server are not necessarily the same for the case of the Slurm, PBS Professional, or LSF workload managers. For these, if the passive cluster head node becomes an active cluster head node without a crash, then this does not trigger a passive WLM server on the newly active head node to also become an active WLM server. Thus, the WLM server can be active on a passive head node, and vice versa, because the WLM primary server is independent of the cluster primary head node.

### **Slurm High Availability, scontrol takeover And slurmstartpolicy**

This section considers some Slurm high availability issues on running `scontrol takeover` with BCM integration.

**Logical steps during the Slurm takeover between head nodes:** Slurm high availability normally waits a short while with moving its control activity over to a passive head node that has just been made active. After a short delay, the Slurm failover algorithm is followed so that the Slurm controller (`slurmctld`) takes over operations on the newly active head node.

Slurm can speed up takeover by running `scontrol takeover` from the Bash shell on the node with the secondary `slurmctld`. Running `scontrol takeover` stops the primary `slurmctld` and triggers the Slurm failover algorithm.

This can be useful if the administrator wants to carry out maintenance on the usually active head node. Carrying out the takeover lets the Slurm service remain available, and stops the Slurm primary controller following the newly active head node.

The logic on how this works in BCM is:

1. The production state starts with
  - an active primary
  - a passive secondary
  - the primary head node set up as the primary Slurm controller
2. the administrator runs `cmha makeactive` on the secondary passive. This causes the following to happen:
  - `scontrol takeover` is run by CMDaemon on the secondary passive
  - CMDaemon goes into the passive state on the primary node, and `slurmctld` on the primary node stops
  - CMDaemon goes into the active state on the secondary node, and `slurmctld` on the secondary node starts
3. there is no interruption in Slurm services, because with `scontrol takeover` CMDaemon has forced the backup `slurmctld` to take over
4. the administrator can now carry out maintenance on the primary (now passive) head node
5. once maintenance has been completed, the administrator can optionally reboot the primary (passive) head node, and then make it active again with `cmha makeactive` to get back to the original production state

The problem with the preceding logic is that by default BCM automatically restarts a stopped `slurmctld` that it notices. This means that the results of `scontrol takeover` in steps 2 and 3 are unknown if carried out manually. That is, it is not practical to run the `scontrol takeover` command directly from Bash because it is possible to unintentionally configure the primary and backup `slurmctld` with an incorrect status.

To deal with this problem cleanly, CMDaemon provides the `slurmctldstartpolicy` parameter, described next.

**The `slurmctldstartpolicy` parameter and Slurm takeover behavior:** The `slurmctldstartpolicy` parameter can take the following values to decide the `slurmctld` behavior during `scontrol` takeover:

- **TAKEOVER:** The default value on an HA cluster.
- **ALWAYS:** The default value on a non-HA cluster.
- **ACTIVEONLY:** Useful only if `/cm/shared` is not mounted on both head nodes at the same time. For example, as in DAS (Direct Attached Storage), which should never be used anyway for shared storage in a production system.

1. If within NVIDIA Base Command Manager, in the `SlurmServerRole`, the `slurmctldstartpolicy` parameter is set to `TAKEOVER`, then disabling the automatic restart of the `slurmctld` service is unnecessary:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11-]% configurationoverlay
[basecm11-]>configurationoverlay[% use slurm-server
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-server]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-server]->roles]%- use slurmserver
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-server]->roles[slurmserver]]% set slurmctldstartpolicy TAKEOVER
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*[slurm-server*]->roles*[slurmserver*]]% commit
```

The setting value can be cleared with:

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-server]->roles[slurmserver]]% set slurmctldstartpolicy ALWAYS
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*[slurm-server*]->roles*[slurmserver*]]% commit
```

2. If `cm-wlm-setup` installs Slurm on an HA cluster, then the `slurmctldstartpolicy` parameter can be set in one of the TUI screens during the session. Before HA is configured, the parameter has a default value of `ALWAYS`. After HA is configured it has a default value of `TAKEOVER`. The default value of `TAKEOVER` causes `prefailoverscript` in the failover submode (section 15.4.6) to take the value `/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/slurm.takeover.sh`
3. If `cm-wlm-setup` installs Slurm on a non-HA cluster, then the `prefailoverscript` parameter must be set within the failover submode of partition mode:

```
[basecm11->partition[base]->failover]% set prefailoverscript /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/slurm.takeover.sh
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->failover*]]% commit
```

This ensures that the active head node is taken over by Slurm during a change of the active head node.

The takeover is temporary. If the head node which has the Slurm primary `slurmctld` on it is restarted, or if the service itself is restarted manually, then the primary `slurmctld` takes back its role, as per Slurm documentation.

For a Slurm cluster with a single `slurmctld`, where the Slurm server role is assigned to a single compute node or the BCM cluster has only one head node, the parameter `slurmctldstartpolicy` should be set to `ALWAYS`, which is the default.

Table 7.2.4 shows what `slurmctld` does when the `slurmctldstartpolicy` parameter is set to `TAKEOVER` and when in `SlurmWlmCluster` the parameter `primaryserver` is set. The detailed behavior per head node depends on whether the head nodes are active or primary:

Node pair	Is slurmctldstartpolicy TAKEOVER?	Active node?	Slurm primary node?	slurmctld starts?
Head001	no	*	*	yes
Head002	no	*	*	yes
Head001	yes	yes	yes	yes
Head002	yes	no	no	yes
Head001	yes	yes	no	yes
Head002	yes	no	yes	no
Head001	yes	no	yes	no
Head002	yes	yes	no	yes
Head001	yes	no	no	yes
Head002	yes	yes	yes	yes

\* any value of yes or no

Table 7.2.4 slurmctldstartpolicy parameter and slurmctld

## 7.3 Installation Of Workload Managers

Normally the administrator selects a WLM to be used during BCM installation (figure 3.9 of the *Installation Manual*). A WLM may however also be added and configured after BCM has been installed, using cm-wlm-setup, or the Base View WLM wizard.

With most other objects, BCM front ends—cmsh and Base View—can be used to create a new object from scratch, or can clone a new object from another existing object. However, the front ends cannot do this for a WLM object. An attempt to create or clone a new WLM object via cmsh or Base View is prohibited by the front ends, because there are many pitfalls possible in configuration.

A new WLM object, and WLM instance, can therefore only be installed via cm-wlm-setup, the Base View WLM wizard, or by selecting a WLM during the initial BCM installation.

### 7.3.1 Running cm-wlm-setup In CLI Mode

The recommended way to run the cm-wlm-setup utility is without options or arguments, in which case a TUI dialog starts up. A TUI session run with cm-wlm-setup is covered in section 7.3.2.

However, the cm-wlm-setup utility can alternatively be used in a non-GUI, command-line, mode, with options and arguments. The utility has the following usage:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-wlm-setup -h
usage: Workload manager setup cm-wlm-setup [-c <config_file>]
                                              [--setup | --disable]
                                              [--wlm <name>]
                                              [--server-nodes SERVER_NODES]
                                              [--server-primary SERVER_PRIMARY]
                                              [--server-overlay-name SERVER_OVERLAY_NAME]
                                              [--server-overlay-priority SERVER_OVERLAY_PRIORITY]
                                              [--client-categories CLIENT_CATEGORIES]
                                              [--client-nodes CLIENT_NODES]
                                              [--client-overlay-name CLIENT_OVERLAY_NAME]
                                              [--client-overlay-priority CLIENT_OVERLAY_PRIORITY]
                                              [--client-slots <slots>]
                                              [--submit-categories SUBMIT_CATEGORIES]
                                              [--submit-nodes SUBMIT_NODES]
                                              [--submit-overlay-name SUBMIT_OVERLAY_NAME]
                                              [--submit-overlay-priority SUBMIT_OVERLAY_PRIORITY]
```

```

[--wlm-cluster-name WLM_CLUSTER_NAME]
[--reboot] [--reset-cgroups]
[--yes-i-really-mean-it]
[--archives-location <path>]
[--license <license>] [--purge]
[--accounting-overlay-name ACCOUNTING_OVERLAY_NAME]
[--accounting-overlay-priority ACCOUNTING_OVERLAY_PRIORITY]
[--with-pyxis]
[--add-pyxis]
[--reinstall-pyxis]
[--remove-pyxis]
[--pyxis-data-directory <path>]
[--nvidia-gpus NVIDIA_GPUS] [-v]
[--no-distro-checks] [--json]
[--output-remote-execution-runner]
[--on-error-action {debug,remotedebug,undo,abort}]
[--skip-packages]
[--min-reboot-timeout <reboot_timeout_seconds>]
[--allow-running-from-secondary]
[--dev] [-h]

```

The help output from running `cm-wlm-setup -h` continues on beyond the preceding text output, and presents more options.

These options can be grouped as follows:

### Optional Arguments

- `--setup`: Helps set up a server, enable roles, and create the default queues/partitions
- `--disable`: Disable WLM services
- `-h, --help`: Displays the help screen

### Common Arguments

- `-c <YAML configuration file>`: Loads a runtime configuration for plugins, from a YAML configuration file.

### Options For Installing Or Managing A WLM

- `--wlm <WLM name>`: Specifies which WLM is to be set up. Choices for `<WLM name>` are:
  - openpbs
  - pbspro
  - slurm
  - lsf
- `--wlm-cluster-name <WLM cluster name>`: Specifies the name for the new WLM cluster that is to be set up.
- `--reboot`: Reboot after install

### Server Role Settings

- `--server-nodes <server nodes>`: Sets the server roles of the WLM to the value set for `<server nodes>`, which is a comma-separated list of nodes. Default value: HEAD, which is a reserved name for the head node.
- `--server-primary <primary server>`: Sets the hostname used for the primary server to `<primary server>`. Default name: HEAD.

- `--server-overlay-name <server overlay name>`: Sets the server role configuration overlay name to `<server overlay name>`. Default name: `<WLM name>-server`, where `<WLM name>` is the name specified in the `--wlm` option.
- `--server-overlay-priority <server overlay priority>`: Sets the server role configuration overlay priority to `<server overlay priority>`. Default value: 500.

### Client Role Settings

- `--client-categories <client categories>`: Sets the client roles of the WLM to the value set for `<client categories nodes>`, which is a comma-separated list of node categories. Default value: `default`.
- `--client-nodes <client nodes>`: Sets the client roles of the WLM to the value set for `<client nodes>`, which is a comma-separated list of nodes. No value set by default.
- `--client-overlay-name <client overlay name>`: Sets the client role configuration overlay name to `<client overlay name>`. Default name: `<WLM name>-client`, where `<WLM name>` is the name specified in the `--wlm` option.
- `--client-overlay-priority <client overlay priority>`: Sets the client role configuration overlay priority to `<client overlay priority>`. Default value: 500.
- `--client-slots <slots>`: Sets the number of slots on the client to `<slots>`.

### Submit Role Settings

- `--submit-categories <submit categories>`: Sets the submit roles of the WLM to the value set for `<submit categories nodes>`, which is a comma-separated list of node categories that are submit nodes. Default value: `default`.
- `--submit-nodes <submit nodes>`: Sets the submit roles of the WLM to the value set for `<submit nodes>`, which is a comma-separated list of submit nodes. No value set by default.
- `--submit-overlay-name <submit overlay name>`: Sets the submit role configuration overlay name to `<submit overlay name>`. Default name: `<WLM name>-submit`, where `<WLM name>` is the name specified in the `--wlm` option.
- `--submit-overlay-priority <submit overlay priority>`: Sets the submit role configuration overlay priority to `<submit overlay priority>`. Default value: 500.

### Disable Options

- `--reset-cgroups`: Disable joining cgroup controllers with systemd setting `JoinControllers`
- `--yes-i-really-mean-it`: Required for additional safety

### Workload Manager Specific Options

- `--archives-location <path>`: Set the directory path for the archive files, only for LSF. This parameter is mandatory for LSF installation.
- `--license <path>`: Set the path to the PBSPro, or LSF license.
- `--purge`: Remove the directories on disable, for LSF.

### Slurm Accounting Role Settings

- `--accounting-overlay-name <accounting overlay name>`: Sets the accounting role configuration overlay
- `--accounting-overlay-priority <accounting overlay priority>`: Sets the accounting role configuration overlay priority to `<accounting overlay priority>`. Default value: 500.

### Slurm Pyxis Settings

- `--add-pyxis`: Add Pyxis to an existing cluster
- `--reinstall-pyxis`: Reinstall or upgrade Pyxis on all the clusters using it
- `--remove-pyxis`: Remove Pyxis from an existing cluster
- `--with-pyxis`: Enable Pyxis
- `--pyxis-data-directory <path>`: Sets directory where images will be stored

### Slurm GPU Settings

- `--nvidia-gpus <NVIDIA GPUs specification>`: Sets the NVIDIA GPUs that will be used in the configuration, specifying type and number of GPUs. For example: `--nvidia-gpus=A100:4`
- `--gpu-client-nodes <NVIDIA GPU client nodes>`: Sets a comma-separated list of nodes assigned to the GPU overlay.
- `--gpu-client-categories <NVIDIA GPU client categories>`: Sets a comma-separated list of node categories assigned to the GPU overlay.

### Advanced Options

- `-v, --verbose`: This displays a more verbose output. It can be helpful in troubleshooting.
- `--no-distro-checks`: Disables distribution checks based on `ds.json`.
- `--json`: Use json formatting for logs printed to STDOUT.
- `--output-remote-execution-runner`: Format output for CMDaemon.
- `--on-error-action {debug,remote debug,undo,abort}`: Upon encountering a critical error, instead of asking the user for choice, the setup will do the selected action.
- `--skip-packages`: Skip the stages which install packages. Requires packages to be already installed.
- `--min-reboot-timeout <timeout>`: How long to wait for nodes to finish reboot, in seconds. Minimum value: 300. Default value: 300.
- `--allow-running-from-secondary`: Allow the wizard to be run from the secondary when it is the active head node.
- `--dev`: Enables additional command line arguments for developers.

#### 7.3.2 Running `cm-wlm-setup` As A TUI

Running `cm-wlm-setup` with no options and with no arguments brings up a TUI screen (figure 7.2).

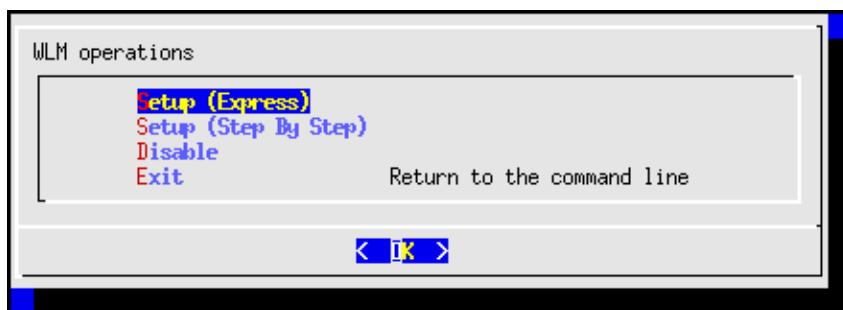


Figure 7.2: `cm-wlm-setup` TUI initial screen

### Express Installation

The Setup (Express) menu option allows the administrator to select the workload manager in the next screen (figure 7.3), and to install it with a minimal number of configuration steps. If it has already been installed, but disabled via cm-wlm-setup, then it can also be re-enabled, instead of installed from scratch.

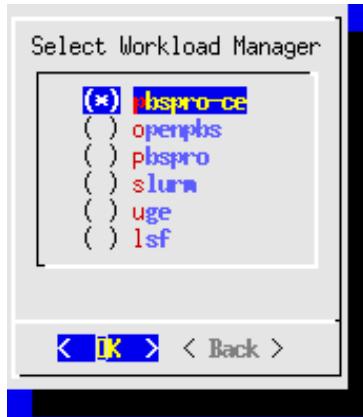


Figure 7.3: cm-wlm-setup TUI WLM selection screen

### Step-by-step Installation

If the Setup (Step By Step) menu option is chosen instead of the express option, then this also allows the administrator to select the workload manager in figure 7.3. But after selection, there are a number of extra configuration steps that can be carried out which are not available in the express configuration. Guidance is given for these extra steps, and sensible default values are already filled in for many options.

One part of the step-by-step session involves assigning the WLM client role to the compute nodes of the cluster. Only the non-GPU compute nodes should be assigned the (standard, non-GPU) WLM client role. The GPU compute nodes are assigned a GPU WLM client role in the section of the TUI wizard that deals with GPU configuration.

The WLM client role is assigned to the entire category—the default category—of non-head nodes by default (figure 7.4):

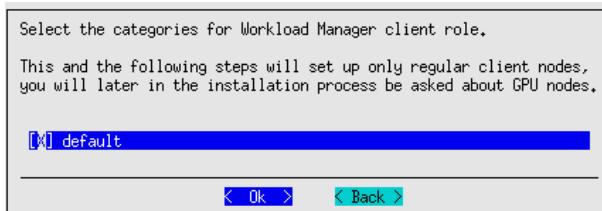


Figure 7.4: Slurm with cm-wlm-setup: WLM Client role category configuration screen

The WLM client role can be assigned to selected nodes only by setting the default category checkbox to blank, and then selecting the non-GPU nodes in the following screen. For example, as illustrated in figure 7.4, where the standard, non-GPU nodes are node002 and node003:

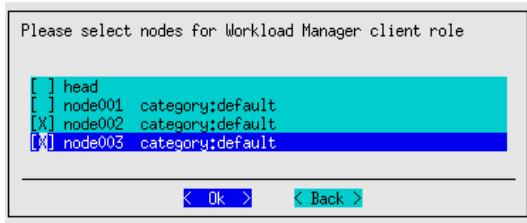


Figure 7.5: Slurm with cm-wlm-setup: WLM client role node configuration screen

### GPU Configuration Screens

The GPU configuration screens are extra steps available during a Setup (Step By Step) session. The GPU configuration steps are discussed summarily in the quickstart section for GPUs, on page 13 of the *Installation Manual*.

The GPU configuration steps are covered in this section in more detail:

After configuring the WLM server, WLM submission and WLM client roles for the nodes of the cluster, a screen that asks if GPU resources should be configured is displayed (figure 7.6):

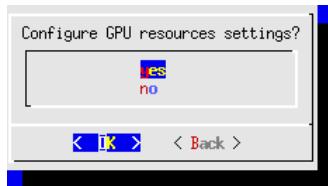


Figure 7.6: Slurm With cm-wlm-setup: GPU Configuration Entry Screen

Choosing yes means that some extra GPU configuration screens are presented. These are screens that allow:

- the configuration overlay (section 2.1.6) name to be set for the GPU WLM clients. By default the name is set to `slurm-client-gpu`.
- a GPU WLM client role to be assigned to a category, if, for example, all the GPU nodes have been given their own category.
- the GPU WLM client role to be assigned to individual nodes instead of to a category.
- a configuration overlay priority to be set for a GPU WLM client role. By default, this has a value of 450.
- automatic GPU detection, with the following options:
  - Automatic NVIDIA GPU configuration
  - Automatic AMD GPU configuration
  - Manual GPU configuration
  - Skip

### Slurm Accounting Database Configuration

In the step-by-step configuration for the Slurm WLM, after the server and client parameters have been set, the Slurm accounting database configuration can be set.

This requires setting:

- one or two accounting nodes
- a primary accounting node

All nodes must be reachable from `slurmctld`.

The accounting nodes can be set with the `Select accounting nodes` screen (figure 7.7):

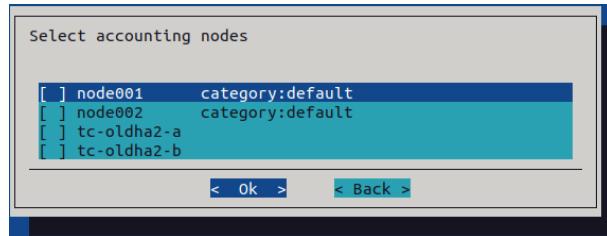


Figure 7.7: `cm-wlm-setup` selection of accounting nodes

Head nodes and compute nodes cannot be mixed for the accounting nodes. If two accounting nodes are set, then the `slurmdbd` high availability configuration is automatically set up.

The primary accounting node—that is, the node that is `AccountingStorageHost` in `slurm.conf`—can then be set in the `Select the primary accounting server node` screen (figure 7.8):

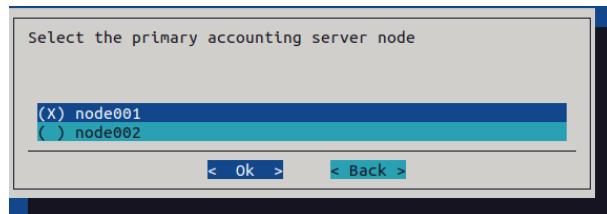


Figure 7.8: `cm-wlm-setup` selection of primary accounting node

The other accounting node is automatically set to be `AccountingStorageBackupHost`.

The type of node on which the `slurmdbd` database runs can then be set (figure 7.9):

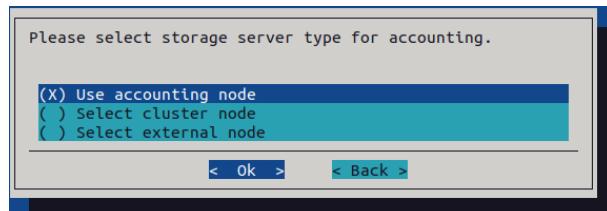


Figure 7.9: `cm-wlm-setup` selection of the type of node on which the Slurm accounting database runs

- If `Use accounting node` is selected, then the database is stored on the primary accounting node
- If `Select cluster node` is selected, then the next screen allows the selection of the BCM node on which the database is to be installed (figure 7.10)

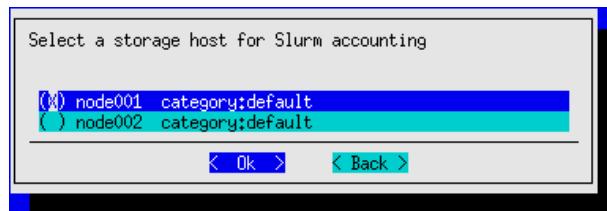


Figure 7.10: `cm-wlm-setup` Selection of host where the Slurm accounting database used by `slurmdbd` is stored

- If `Select external node` is selected, then a non-BCM hostname is asked for, and the cluster ad-

ministrator is responsible for the installation and configuration of the DBMS

Modifying the settings after installation is discussed on page 375.

### **Disabling An Installation**

The Disable option in figure 7.2 allows the administrator to disable an existing instance.

### **Summary Screen**

The screen that appears after the configuration steps are completed, is the Summary screen (figure 7.11). This screen allows the configuration to be viewed, saved, or saved and deployed.

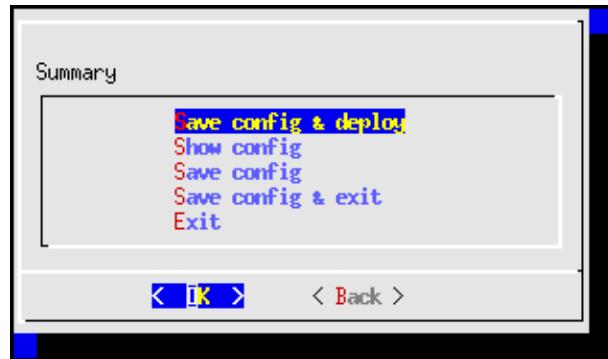


Figure 7.11: cm-wlm-setup TUI summary screen

If deployment is carried out, then several screens of output are displayed. After the deployment is completed, the log file can be viewed at /var/log/cm-wlm-setup.log.

### **7.3.3 Installation And Configuration Of Enroot And Pyxis With Slurm To Run Containerized Jobs**

#### **What Is Enroot?**

As the README file for Enroot says, Enroot is an open source tool to turn container images into unprivileged sandboxes. Enroot can be thought of as an enhanced unprivileged chroot. It uses user and mount namespaces, as well as other modern kernel features, in order to create such sandboxes. It uses the same underlying technologies as containers, but removes much of the isolation that they inherently provide, while preserving filesystem separation. Further details on Enroot can be found at <https://github.com/NVIDIA/enroot>.

Enroot can be used with different workload managers, but for now only Slurm has been tightly integrated.

#### **What Is Pyxis?**

Pyxis (<https://github.com/NVIDIA/pyxis>) is a SPANK plugin for Slurm. SPANK (Slurm Plug-in architecture for Node and job (K)control, `man spank.8`) is a generic interface for job launch code control in Slurm. The Pyxis plugin requires the Enroot utility, and allows the user's jobs to be executed seamlessly over Enroot in unprivileged containers. The plugin enables the Slurm submission utilities to provide container-related command line options.

#### **Enroot And Pyxis Packages**

BCM provides two Enroot package flavors: *standard* and *hardened*. The standard binaries are compiled as follows:

- Open file descriptors are inherited
- Spectre variant 2 (IBPB/STIBP) mitigations are disabled

- Spectre variant 4 (SSBD) mitigations are disabled

As a rule of thumb: the hardened flavor is slightly more secure but suffers a larger overhead.

- The standard packages that are installed by default on new clusters are:

- `enroot`: provides the main utility and helper files.
- `enroot+caps`: a nearly empty package which runs a post-installation script to grant extra capabilities to unprivileged users. This allows them to import and convert container images.
- `pyxis-sources`: installs a tarball with the Pyxis plugin source files. The tarball is used by `cm-wlm-setup` to compile the Pyxis plugin on a cluster. The version of the package (section 9.1), found using `yum info pyxis-sources` or `apt-cache show pyxis-sources`, implies the Pyxis source version that is provided. For example: `pyxis-sources-0.20.0-[...].rpm` provides the Pyxis source for version 0.20.0.

- The hardened packages that can be installed from the BCM repositories to replace the standard `enroot` and `enroot+caps` are:

- `enroot-hardened`: provides hardened main utility and helper files.
- `enroot-hardened+caps`: Provides extra capabilities to unprivileged users so that they can import and convert containers themselves.

The package `pyxis-sources` installs the tarball at `/cm/local/apps/slurm/var/pyxis/pyxis-sources.tar.gz`. If the administrator needs a version of Pyxis other than the one provided by the package, then the archive can be replaced with a source tarball of the same name.

### How Are Enroot And Pyxis Set Up In BCM?

Pyxis and Enroot can be set up by the administrator by choosing the appropriate options when Slurm is set up. In order to choose the appropriate options, `cm-wlm-setup` can be run in step-by-step mode (page 333). Alternatively, Pyxis-related command line options can be specified for the `cm-wlm-setup` arguments `--add-pyxis` and `--reinstall-pyxis`.

The step-by-step mode eventually presents a screen where the Pyxis setup can be enabled via a plugin:

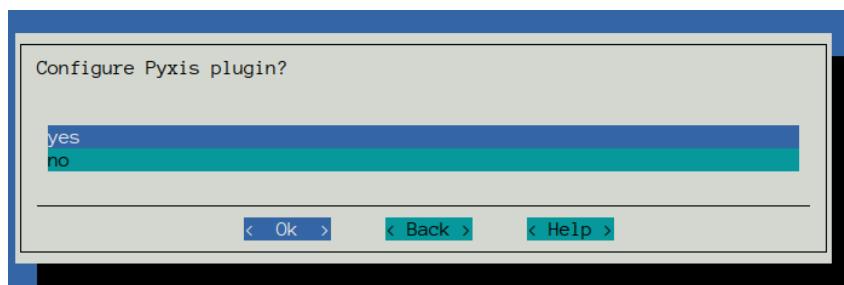


Figure 7.12: `cm-wlm-setup` Pyxis setup screen

The Pyxis screen is available for RHEL8-based systems and Ubuntu 20 and beyond. Older systems are not supported.

If the plugin is enabled in the Pyxis setup screen, then `cm-wlm-setup` installs the `enroot` and `enroot+caps` packages from <https://github.com/NVIDIA/enroot/releases> into the software images where the Slurm client role is to be assigned. The `cm-wlm-setup` utility also installs them directly on the head node if the head node was selected to run jobs. Pyxis sources are downloaded from GitHub, compiled with the installed Slurm, and installed in the appropriate Slurm directory.

If the administrator enables the Pyxis plugin, then a new screen with Enroot settings is shown:

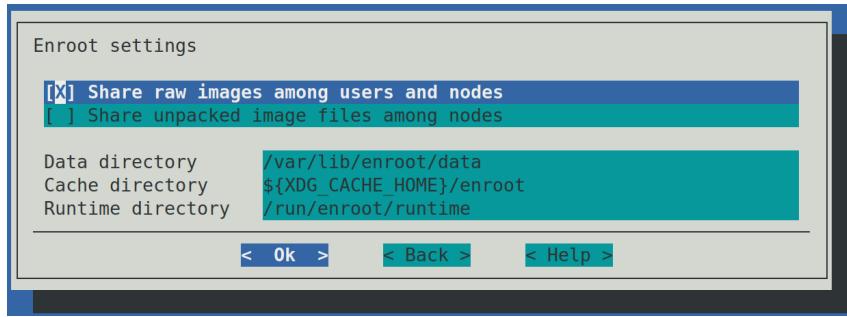


Figure 7.13: cm-wlm-setup Enroot settings screen

The Enroot settings have reasonable default values. The administrator can change these:

- Share raw images among users and nodes: If enabled, then the raw container image is shared among users and nodes, and the administrator must ensure that the cache directory is shared among all the compute nodes. Enabling the option disables the creation of a UID subdirectory by the Enroot prolog script.

The following points about implementing Enroot cache sharing should be considered by the administrator:

- Enabling the checkbox for the option normally changes the default value of the Enroot cache directory, as defined in the TUI in the Cache directory field, to \${XDG\_CACHE\_HOME}/enroot. This field is normally evaluated by the Enroot installation to the home directory of the user:  
`~/.cache/enroot`  
when a job is executed.

The default value can also be changed in the TUI to any shared directory. If the specified directory does not exist, then `cm-wlm-setup` creates it with Unix directory permissions set to `chmod 00777`, which allows all users to share container images in the cache with each other on all the nodes. The extra 0 prefix is a non-POSIX-compliant GNU/Linux extension that clears the SUID and SGID bits so that users do not get elevated privileges simply through sharing the images.

- Restrictions can be placed on the ability of regular users to share images and to create files in the cache, by setting more restrictive permissions for the directory manually, after the `cm-wlm-setup` run.

For example, the permissions can be set to 00770, while the ownership group of the directory is changed to a group with all the Pyxis users in it. In this case, only the users within the Pyxis users group can create the image layers in the cache.

- An alternative to cache sharing of images among users and nodes is to save Squashfs images in a shared directory, outside the cache. Then the users can specify a full path to a shared Squashfs image on the cluster in the `srun/sbatch` command line. In this case there is no need to share the cache among the nodes, as the Squashfs images are not copied over to cache before execution.

Only the administrator should have access to updating the image.

- Share unpacked container images among nodes: Enables sharing of unpacked container images (image filesystems) among nodes. A user job can modify the filesystem, so it is not recommended to share this directory among users.

Enabling the option disables removal of the Enroot data directory, if the container name is specified. This allows a user to keep the container filesystem between jobs run by the user. It is up to the user or the administrator to clean up the data directory if the option is enabled.

If the data directory is shared among nodes, then it is up to a user to ensure that the container filesystem is unpacked at least once before real jobs start. Otherwise, a race condition is possible when the images are extracted simultaneously on several nodes.

- **Cache directory:** Path to the cache directory where raw container image layers are stored.  
If the directory is not shared, then the Slurm prolog script creates a subdirectory with a name that is the job user ID, while epilog cleans up that subdirectory. If the directory is shared, then neither prolog nor epilog touches the directory.
- **Data directory:** Directory where the container filesystems (unpackaged images) are stored. If the directory is shared, then the epilog script checks if the container name is specified for the job, and skips removal of the container subdirectory.
- **Runtime directory:** A working directory with temporary files created by Enroot.

When Pyxis is set up, `cm-wlm-setup` also prepares the following configuration files for the compute nodes:

- `/etc/enroot/enroot.conf`: This is a symlink to `/cm/shared/apps/slurm/etc/enroot.conf`. The configuration file provides reasonable default settings that allows Enroot to be used by many users. Important settings in the file are:
  - `ENROOT_RUNTIME_PATH`: working directory for enroot, created per user. Default value: `/run/enroot/runtime/$(id -u)`
  - `ENROOT_CACHE_PATH`: directory where container layers are stored. Default value: `/run/enroot/cache/$(id -u)`
  - `ENROOT_DATA_PATH`: directory where the filesystems of running containers are stored. Default value: `/run/enroot/data/$(id -u)`
  - `ENROOT_SQUASH_OPTIONS`: options passed to `mksquashfs` to produce container images. Default value: `-noI -noD -noF -noX -no-duplicates`
  - `ENROOT_MOUNT_HOME`: mount the current user's home directory by default. Default value: `yes`.

The administrator can change the symlink, or replace the file with a customized `enroot.conf`, if other values are preferred.

- `/etc/sysctl.d/80-enroot.conf`: symlink to `/cm/shared/apps/slurm/etc/enroot-sysctl.conf`. The file tunes `sysctl` parameters for Enroot.
- `/cm/local/apps/slurm/var/prologs/50-prolog-enroot.sh`: symlink to `/cm/shared/apps/slurm/prologs/prolog-enroot.sh`. This is the `slurmd` prolog that creates appropriate directories, with appropriate user permissions, that are used by Enroot.
- `/cm/local/apps/slurm/var/epilogs/50-epilog-enroot.sh`: symlink to `/cm/shared/apps/slurm/epilogs/epilog-enroot.sh`. Cleans the user directories used by Enroot.

When `cm-wlm-setup` finishes its Pyxis configuration run, then there is no need for the nodes to be rebooted. The plugin works immediately.

The new Slurm submission command option names start with either `--container` or `--no-container`. The full list of options can be displayed with the `--help` option. For example:

### Example

```
[user@basecm11 ~]$ srun --help | grep container
--container           Path to OCI container bundle
--container-image=[USER@] [REGISTRY#] IMAGE[:TAG]|PATH
                           [pyxis] the image to use for the container
--container-mounts=SRC:DST[:FLAGS][,SRC:DST...]
                           [pyxis] bind mount[s] inside the container. Mount
--container-workdir=PATH
                           [pyxis] working directory inside the container
--container-name=NAME  [pyxis] name to use for saving and loading the
                       container on the host. Unnamed containers are
                       containers are not. If a container with this name
                       already exists, the existing container is used and
--container-save=PATH  [pyxis] Save the container state to a squashfs
--container-mount-home [pyxis] bind mount the user's home directory.
--no-container-mount-home
--container-remap-root [pyxis] ask to be remapped to root inside the
                       container. Does not grant elevated system
--no-container-remap-root
                           [pyxis] do not remap to root inside the container
--container-entrypoint [pyxis] execute the entrypoint from the container
--no-container-entrypoint
                           container image
--container-writable   [pyxis] make the container filesystem writable
--container-readonly   [pyxis] make the container filesystem read-only
```

**Simple installation validation:** The simplest way to validate the Pyxis/Enroot setup after Slurm setup is to try out an srun command:

### Example

```
[user@basecm11 ~]$ module load slurm
[user@basecm11 ~]$ srun --container-image=ubuntu grep PRETTY /etc/os-release
pyxis: importing docker image: ubuntu
PRETTY_NAME="Ubuntu 24.04.2 LTS"
```

**A more thorough installation validation:** In order to perform a more thorough test of Pyxis/Enroot, an NCCL-based test can be used. NCCL is the NVIDIA Collective Communications Library (<https://docs.nvidia.com/deeplearning/nccl>), which is a library of multi-GPU collective communication primitives. The test can be found at <https://github.com/NVIDIA/nccl-tests>. A prebuilt container image, with the NCCL test already installed, can be started as shown in the example that follows.

It should be noted that running a multi-tenant cluster with all the export flags enabled as in the example may compromise security. It is therefore not recommended as a standard configuration.

### Example

```
[user@basecm11 ~]$ module load slurm
[user@basecm11 ~]$ srun --export="NCCL_DEBUG=INFO,NCCL_IB_DISABLE=1,PMIX_MCA_gds=hash" -N 2 \
--ntasks-per-node=1 --gpus-per-task=1 --mpi=pmix --container-image=deepops/mpi-nccl-test \
/nccl_tests/build/all_reduce_perf -b 1M -e 4G -f 2 -g 1

pyxis: imported docker image: deepops/mpi-nccl-test
pyxis: imported docker image: deepops/mpi-nccl-test
# nThread 1 nGpus 1 minBytes 1048576 maxBytes 4294967296 step: 2(factor) warmup iters: 5 iters: 20 validation: 1
#
```

```

# Using devices
# Rank 0 Pid 175945 on    node001 device 0 [0x00] Tesla V100-SXM3-32GB
# Rank 1 Pid 180379 on    node002 device 0 [0x00] Tesla V100-SXM3-32GB
node001:175945:175945 [0] NCCL INFO Bootstrap : Using ens3:10.141.0.5<0>
node001:175945:175945 [0] NCCL INFO NET/Plugin : No plugin found (libnccl-net.so), using internal implementation
node001:175945:175945 [0] NCCL INFO NCCL_IB_DISABLE set by environment to 1.
node001:175945:175945 [0] NCCL INFO NET/Socket : Using [0]ens3:10.141.0.5<0>
node001:175945:175945 [0] NCCL INFO Using network Socket
NCCL version 2.11.4+cuda11.6
node002:180379:180379 [0] NCCL INFO Bootstrap : Using ens3:10.141.0.6<0>
node002:180379:180379 [0] NCCL INFO NET/Plugin : No plugin found (libnccl-net.so), using internal implementation
node002:180379:180379 [0] NCCL INFO NCCL_IB_DISABLE set by environment to 1.
node002:180379:180379 [0] NCCL INFO NET/Socket : Using [0]ens3:10.141.0.6<0>
node002:180379:180379 [0] NCCL INFO Using network Socket
node002:180379:182573 [0] NCCL INFO Trees [0] -1/-1/-1->1->0 [1] 0/-1/-1->1->-1
node001:175945:177561 [0] NCCL INFO Channel 00/02 : 0 1
node001:175945:177561 [0] NCCL INFO Channel 01/02 : 0 1
node001:175945:177561 [0] NCCL INFO Trees [0] 1/-1/-1->0->-1 [1] -1/-1/-1->0->1
node001:175945:177561 [0] NCCL INFO Channel 00 : 1[60] -> 0[60] [receive] via NET/Socket/0
node002:180379:182573 [0] NCCL INFO Channel 00 : 0[60] -> 1[60] [receive] via NET/Socket/0
node001:175945:177561 [0] NCCL INFO Channel 01 : 1[60] -> 0[60] [receive] via NET/Socket/0
node002:180379:182573 [0] NCCL INFO Channel 01 : 0[60] -> 1[60] [receive] via NET/Socket/0
node001:175945:177561 [0] NCCL INFO Channel 00 : 0[60] -> 1[60] [send] via NET/Socket/0
node002:180379:182573 [0] NCCL INFO Channel 00 : 1[60] -> 0[60] [send] via NET/Socket/0
node001:175945:177561 [0] NCCL INFO Channel 01 : 0[60] -> 1[60] [send] via NET/Socket/0
node002:180379:182573 [0] NCCL INFO Channel 01 : 1[60] -> 0[60] [send] via NET/Socket/0
node001:175945:177561 [0] NCCL INFO Connected all rings
node002:180379:182573 [0] NCCL INFO Connected all rings
node001:175945:177561 [0] NCCL INFO Connected all trees
node001:175945:177561 [0] NCCL INFO threadThresholds 8/8/64 | 16/8/64 | 8/8/512
node001:175945:177561 [0] NCCL INFO 2 coll channels, 2 p2p channels, 1 p2p channels per peer
node002:180379:182573 [0] NCCL INFO Connected all trees
node002:180379:182573 [0] NCCL INFO threadThresholds 8/8/64 | 16/8/64 | 8/8/512
node002:180379:182573 [0] NCCL INFO 2 coll channels, 2 p2p channels, 1 p2p channels per peer
node001:175945:177561 [0] NCCL INFO comm 0x1551f0001000 rank 0 nranks 2 cudaDev 0 busId 60 - Init COMPLETE
#
#                                     out-of-place                               in-place
#      size       count      type   redop     time    algbw   busbw  error      time    algbw   busbw  error
#      (B)      (elements)          (us)    (GB/s)  (GB/s)           (us)    (GB/s)  (GB/s)
node001:175945:175945 [0] NCCL INFO Launch mode Parallel
node002:180379:182573 [0] NCCL INFO comm 0x1551f8001000 rank 1 nranks 2 cudaDev 0 busId 60 - Init COMPLETE
  1048576      262144    float    sum  1491.5    0.70    0.70  0e+00  1421.3    0.74    0.74  0e+00
  2097152      524288    float    sum  3077.5    0.68    0.68  0e+00  2568.8    0.82    0.82  0e+00
  4194304      1048576    float    sum  4617.3    0.91    0.91  0e+00  4622.5    0.91    0.91  0e+00
  8388608      2097152    float    sum  9483.1    0.88    0.88  0e+00  8911.9    0.94    0.94  0e+00
 16777216      4194304    float    sum  17516    0.96    0.96  0e+00  18613    0.90    0.90  0e+00
 33554432      8388608    float    sum  34799    0.96    0.96  0e+00  41837    0.80    0.80  0e+00
 67108864      16777216    float    sum  99790    0.67    0.67  0e+00  83126    0.81    0.81  0e+00
 134217728     33554432    float    sum  204614    0.66    0.66  0e+00  199530    0.67    0.67  0e+00
 268435456     67108864    float    sum  319701    0.84    0.84  0e+00  341630    0.79    0.79  0e+00
 536870912     134217728    float    sum  608809    0.88    0.88  0e+00  683016    0.79    0.79  0e+00
 1073741824    268435456    float    sum  1337187    0.80    0.80  0e+00  1247369    0.86    0.86  0e+00
 2147483648    536870912    float    sum  2638741    0.81    0.81  0e+00  2743454    0.78    0.78  0e+00
 4294967296    1073741824    float    sum  5996381    0.72    0.72  0e+00  5430549    0.79    0.79  0e+00
# Out of bounds values : 0 OK

```

```
# Avg bus bandwidth      : 0.810575
#
```

The test demonstrates the usage of PMIX, MPI, and GPU in Enroot containers on multiple nodes. In the preceding example, 2 nodes with 1 GPU on each is requested by the job. For better results the cluster administrator can tune the test parameters.

It should be noted that the image is quite large, and requires enough free space under /var. Also, the transfer timeout (ENROOT\_TRANSFER\_TIMEOUT) in enroot.conf must be large enough to download such a large container image to the compute nodes. A value of at least 600 seconds is recommended.

If there are issues when executing MPI jobs with PMIX, then to help debug the issues the Pyxis documentation (<https://github.com/NVIDIA/pyxis/wiki/Setup>) suggests setting up the following environment variables:

- PMIX\_MCA\_ptl=^usock
- PMIX\_MCA\_psec=none
- PMIX\_SYSTEM\_TMPDIR=/var/empty
- PMIX\_MCA\_gds=hash (as configured on page 340)

This configuration change is typically carried out in the software image of the regular nodes. For example, for a node category called default:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# category=default
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat <<EOF >> /cm/images/${category}/etc/default/slurmd
PMIX_MCA_ptl=^usock
PMIX_MCA_psec=none
PMIX_SYSTEM_TMPDIR=/var/empty
PMIX_MCA_gds=hash
EOF
[root@basecm11 ~]# systemctl restart slurmd
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device; imageupdate -c ${category} -w"
```

### 7.3.4 Prolog And Epilog Scripts

#### What Prolog And Epilog Scripts Do

The workload manager runs prolog scripts before job execution, and epilog scripts after job execution. The purpose of these scripts can include:

- checking if a node is ready before submitting a job execution that may use it
- preparing a node in some way to handle the job execution
- cleaning up resources after job execution has ended.

The administrator can run custom prolog or epilog scripts for the queues from CMDaemon for LSF, by setting such scripts in the Base View or cmsh front ends.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]->jobqueue]% use normal
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]->jobqueue[normal]]% show | grep -i epilog
Prolog/Epilog user          root
Epilog
Host epilog                /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/epilog
```

For PBS and Slurm, there are global prolog and epilog scripts, but editing them is not recommended. Indeed, in order to discourage editing them, the scripts cannot be set via the cluster manager front ends. Instead the scripts must be placed by the administrator in the software image, and the relevant nodes updated from the image.

### Detailed Workings Of Prolog And Epilog Scripts

Even though it is not recommended, some administrators may nonetheless wish to link and edit the scripts directly for their own needs, outside of the Base View or cmsh front ends. A more detailed explanation of how the prolog scripts work therefore follows:

When a workload manager is configured via cm-wlm-setup or via the Base View setup wizard, then the workload manager is configured to run the generic prolog located in /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/prolog, and the generic epilog located in /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/epilog. The generic prolog and epilog scripts call a sequence of scripts for a particular workload manager in special directories. The directories have paths in the format:

1. /cm/local/apps/<workload manager>/var/prologs/
2. /cm/local/apps/<workload manager>/var/epilogs/

In these directories, scripts are stored with names that have suffixes and prefixes associated with them that make them run in special ways, as follows:

- **suffixes used in the prolog/epilog directory:**
  - -prejob script runs prior to all jobs
- **prefixes used in the prolog/epilog directory:**
  - 00- to
  - 99-

Number prefixes determine the order of script execution, with scripts with a lower number running earlier.

The script names can therefore look like:

#### Example

- 01-prolog-prejob
- 10-prolog-prejob

Return values for the prolog/epilog scripts have these meanings:

- 0: the next script in the directory is run.
- *A non-zero return value:* no further scripts are executed from the prolog/epilog directory.

Often, the script in a prolog/epilog directory is not a real script but a symlink, with the symlink going to a real file located in a different directory. The general script is then able to take care of what is expected of the symlink. The name of the symlink, and destination file, usually hints at what the script is expected to do.

For example, if any health checks are marked to run as prejob checks during cm-wlm-setup configuration, then each of the PBS workload manager variants use the symlink 01-prolog-prejob within the prolog directory /cm/local/apps/<workload manager>/var/prologs/. The symlink links to the script /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/prolog-prejob. In this case, the script is expected to run prior to the job.

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 apps]# pwd
/cm/local/apps
[root@basecm11 apps]# ls -l *pbs*/var/prologs/
openpbs/var/prologs/:
total 0
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root ... 01-prolog-prejob -> /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/prolog-prejob

pbspro/var/prologs/:
total 0
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root ... 01-prolog-prejob -> /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/prolog-prejob
```

Epilog scripts (which run after a job run) have the location `/cm/local/apps/<workload manager>/var/epilogs/`. Epilog script names follow the same execution sequence pattern as prolog script names.

It should be noted that the `01-prolog-prejob` symlink is created and removed by BCM on each compute node where prejob is enabled in the workload manager entity. Each such entity provides a `Enable Prejob` parameter that affects the symlink existence:

### Example

```
[head->wlm[openpbs]]% get enableprejob
yes
[head->wlm[openpbs]]%
```

This parameter is set to yes by `cm-wlm-setup` when at least one health check is selected as a prejob one. If any healthcheck was configured as a prejob check before `cm-wlm-setup` execution, and the administrator had a checkmark for that health check, then the prejob is considered enabled.

### Workload Manager Configuration For Prolog And Epilog Scripts

BCM configures generic prologs and epilogs during workload manager setup with `cm-wlm-setup`. The administrator can configure prologs and epilogs using appropriate parameters in the configuration of the workload managers, by creating the symlinks in the local prologs and epilogs directories.

Generic prologs and epilogs are configured by default to run on job compute nodes (one run per each node per job) for Slurm, PBS variants and LSF.

The following parameters for prologs and epilogs can be configured with `cmsh` or Base View:

- **Slurm**

- Prolog Slurmctld: the fully qualified path of a program to execute before granting a new job allocation. The program is executed on the same node where the `slurmserver` role is assigned. The path corresponds to the `PrologSlurmctld` parameter in `slurm.conf`.
- Epilog Slurmctld: the fully qualified path of a program to execute upon termination of a job allocation. The program is executed on the same node where the `slurmserver` role is assigned. Corresponds with the `EpilogSlurmctld` parameter in `slurm.conf`.
- Prolog: the fully qualified path of a program to execute on job compute nodes before granting a new job or step allocation. The program corresponds to the `Prolog` parameter, and by default points to the generic prolog. This prolog runs on every node of the job if the `Prolog flags` parameter contains the flag `Alloc` (the default value), otherwise it is executed only on the first node of the job.
- Epilog: the fully qualified path of a program to execute on job compute nodes when the job allocation is released.

- **LSF**

- Prolog: the fully qualified path of a program to execute on the LSF server node on job allocation. As an LSF queue parameter, it corresponds to the PRE\_EXEC parameter in lsb.queues.
- Epilog: the fully qualified path of a program to execute on the LSF server node on job allocation release. As an LSF queue parameter, it corresponds to the POST\_EXEC parameter in lsb.queues
- Host prolog: the fully qualified path of a program to execute on each node of a job before the job is started. Corresponds to the HOST\_PRE\_EXEC parameter in lsb.queues. By default it is configured to run the generic prolog
- Host epilog: the fully qualified path of a program to execute on each node of a job after the job is finished. Corresponds to the HOST\_POST\_EXEC parameter in lsb.queues. By default it is configured to run the generic epilog.

- PBS variants

- Pelogs: prolog and epilog hooks that emulate the classic PBS *prologue* and *epilogue* scripts located in the pbs\_mom directory. The pelogs are configured in the appropriate workload manager instance, within pelogs mode when configuring the PBS cluster entity. For example, in cmsh:

**Example**

```
[basecm11]% wlm use openpbs
[basecm11->wlm[openpbs]]% pelogs
[basecm11->wlm[openpbs]->pelogs]% list
Name (key) Enabled Order
-----
cm_epilog yes 99
cm_prolog yes 1
[basecm11->wlm[openpbs]->pelogs]%
[basecm11->wlm[openpbs]->pelogs]% show cm_prolog
Parameter Value
-----
Enabled yes
Name cm_prolog
Events execjob_begin
Path /cm/shared/apps/pbspro/var/cm/cm-peolog-hook.py
Default action RERUN
Enable parallel yes
Verbose user output no
Torque compatible no
Order 1
Alarm 35
Debug no
[basecm11->wlm[openpbs]->pelogs]% show cm_epilog
Parameter Value
-----
Enabled yes
Name cm_epilog
Events execjob_end
Path /cm/shared/apps/pbspro/var/cm/cm-peolog-hook.py
Default action RERUN
Enable parallel yes
Verbose user output no
Torque compatible no
Order 99
```

```

Alarm           35
Debug          no
[basecm1->wlm[openpbs]->pelogs]%

```

The parameters of each pelog correspond to appropriate parameters of PBS hooks:

- \* Name: hook name that will be used in PBS
- \* Enabled: flag to enable the hook in PBS
- \* Events: list of PBS events that the hook will run on
- \* Path: path to the hook script that will be imported to PBS in case the hook is not found.  
The script will not be imported if a hook with the same name already exists in PBS
- \* Order: the hook execution order
- \* Alarm: the hook alarm time (timeout), in seconds

Additional parameters related to the prolog and epilog hooks only are:

- \* Default action: The PBS default action when a prolog or epilog fails
- \* Enable parallel: enable parallel prologues and epilogues, that run on sister moms
- \* Verbose user output: provide verbose hook output to the user's .o/.e file
- \* Torque compatible: make torque compatible from prolog/epilog command line arguments point of view

By default, two pelogs are added. These are to run the generic prolog and the generic epilog. If needed, the administrator can add more pelog hooks that will run on different events.

## 7.4 Enabling, Disabling, And Monitoring Workload Managers

### Enabling And Disabling A WLM

A WLM can be disabled for all nodes with `cm-wlm-setup`. Disabling the WLM means the workload management services are stopped by removing roles, and removing the WLM cluster object.

Alternatively, a WLM can be enabled or disabled by the administrator via role addition and role removal with Base View or `cmsh`. This is described further on in this section.

**Multiple WLM instances of the same type:** Versions of NVIDIA Base Command Manager prior to 9.0 already had the ability to have different workload managers run at the same time. However, NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 9.0 introduced the additional ability to run many workload managers of the same kind at the same time.

### Example

Two WLM instances, Slurm and OpenPBS, are already running at the same time in the cluster, with each WLM assigned to one category. Then, BCM can start up a third WLM instance, such as another Slurm WLM instance. These WLM instances are alternatively called WLM clusters, because they effectively allow one cluster to function as many separate clusters as far as running WLMs is concerned.

From the Base View or `cmsh` point of view a WLM consists of

- a WLM server, usually on the head node
- WLM clients, usually on the compute nodes

For the administrator, enabling or disabling the servers or clients is then simply a matter of assigning or unassigning a particular WLM server or client role on the head or compute nodes, as deemed appropriate.

The administrator typically also sets up an appropriate WLM environment module (`slurm`, `openpbs`, `pbspro`, `lsf`), so that it is loaded up for the end user (section 2.2.3).

### 7.4.1 Enabling And Disabling A WLM With Base View

A particular WLM package may be installed, but the WLM may not be enabled. This can happen, for example, if disabling a WLM that was previously enabled.

If a WLM instance exists, then the WLM client, submission, and server roles can be enabled or disabled from Base View by assigning or removing the appropriate roles to nodes, categories, or configuration overlays. Within the role, the properties of the WLM may be further configured by setting options.

#### Workload Manager Role Assignment To An Individual Node With Base View

**Workload Manager Server** The following roles are WLM roles that can be assigned to a node:

- server
- submit
- accounting (for the Slurm WLM only, to configure and run the `slurmdbd` service)
- client

For example, a Slurm server role can be assigned to a head node, `basecm11`, via the navigation path:

```
Devices > Head Nodes[basecm11] > Edit > Settings > Role > Role list[ADD] > SlurmServerRole
```

The screenshot shows the 'Role list' interface in Base View. On the left, a sidebar shows the navigation path: Devices > Head Nodes[basecm11] > Edit > Settings > Role > Role list[ADD]. The main area is titled 'Role list' and shows a list of node roles: backup, boot, firewall, headnode, monitoring, provisioning, and storage. To the right, a list of available WLM roles is shown, each with a small icon and a delete button. The 'SlurmServerRole' is highlighted in the list. At the bottom, there are 'BACK' and 'ADD' buttons.

Figure 7.14: Workload management role assignment on a head node

The role window for the server then opens up, and allows role options to be set for the workload manager server. For example, for Slurm, a builtin or backfill option can be set for the Scheduler parameter. The workload manager server role is then saved with the selected options (figure 7.15).

To have the server start up on non-head nodes (but not for a head node), the `imageupdate` command (section 5.6.2) can be run. The workload manager server process and any associated schedulers then automatically start up.

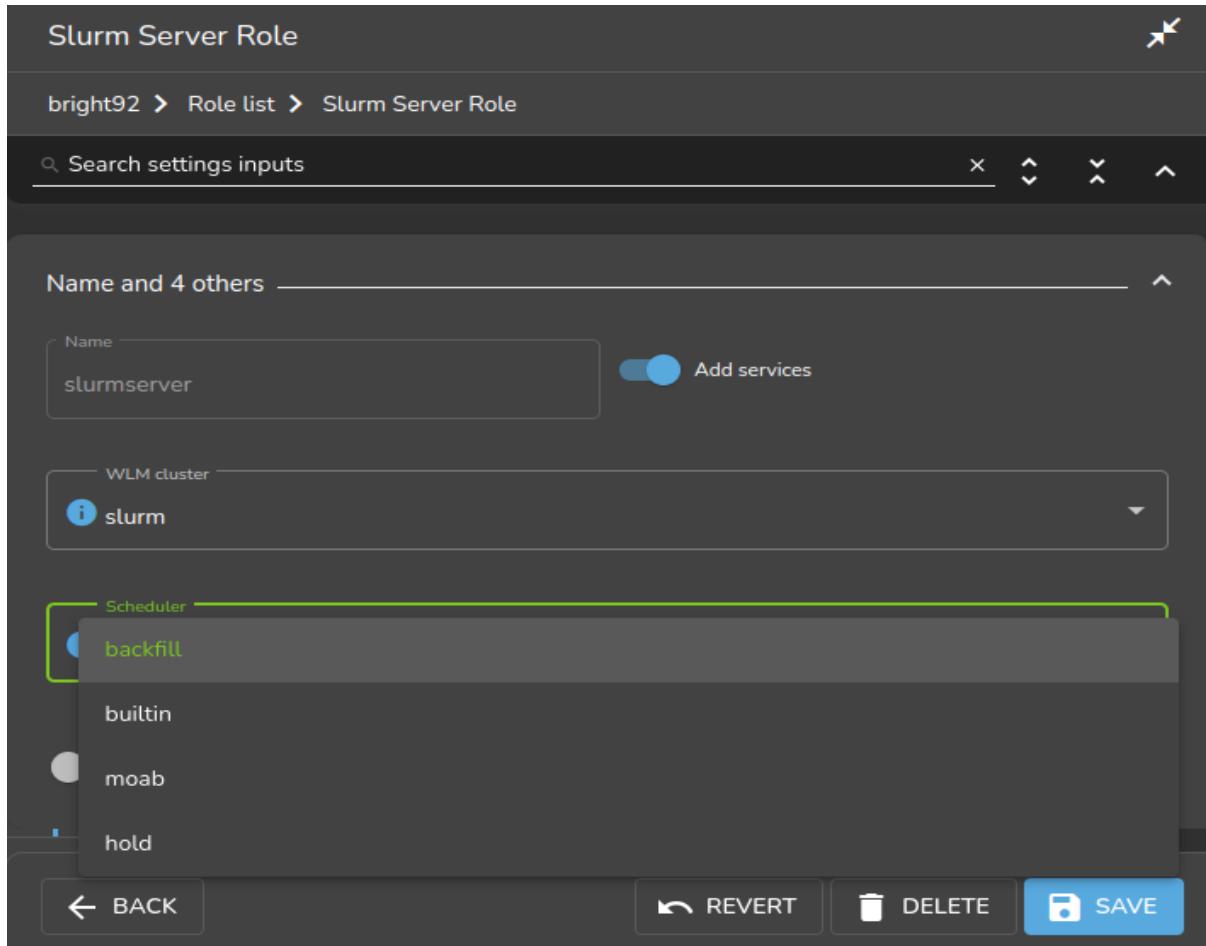


Figure 7.15: Workload management role assignment options on a head node

**Workload Manager Client** Similarly, the workload manager client process can be enabled on a node or head node by having the workload manager client role assigned to it. Some basic options can be set for the client role right away.

Saving the role, and then running `imageupdate` (section 5.6.2), automatically starts up the client process with the options chosen, and managed by CMDaemon.

#### Workload Manager Role Assignment To A Category With Base View

It is true that workload manager role assignment can be done as described in the preceding text for individual non-head nodes. However it is usually more efficient to assign roles using categories or configuration overlays, due to the large number of compute nodes in typical clusters.

For example, the case can be considered of all physical on-premises non-head nodes. By default these are in the `default` category. This means that, by default, roles in the category are automatically assigned to all those non-head nodes, unless, as an exception, an individual node configuration overrides the category setting and uses a role setting instead at node level.

Viewing the possible workload manager roles for the category `default` is done by using the navigation path:

`Grouping > Categories[default] > Edit > Settings > Roles > Add`

Once the role is selected, its options can be edited and saved.

For compute nodes, the role assigned is usually a workload manager client. If the assigned role is that of a workload manager client, then the node with that role can have queues, GPUs, and other parameters specified for it.

For example, queues can then be assigned via the navigation path:

`HPC > WLM Management Clusters[cluster instance] > Job Queues`

while GPUs, if using Slurm as the workload manager with default settings, can then be specified via the navigation path:

`Configuration Overlays > slurm-client-gpu > roles > slurmclient > edit > Generic Resources > gpu`

The workload manager server role can also be assigned to a non-head node. For example, a Slurm server role can be taken on by a non-head node. This is the equivalent to the `--server-nodes` option of `cm-wlm-setup`.

Saving the roles with their options and then running `imageupdate` (section 5.6.2) automatically starts up the newly-configured workload manager.

### Workload Manager Role Options With Base View

Each compute node role (workload manager client role) has options that can be set for GPUs, Queues, and Slots. Generally, the value that is set for Slots is the number of jobs expected to run on a node simultaneously. This number can, for example, be set to the number of threads. Threads (virtual cores) in the `x86_64` architecture are provided by Intel's hyper-threading (HT), or by AMD's simultaneous multithreading (SMT).

The physical CPU, the cores on the CPU, and the threads of a core (HT, SMT) should not be confused with each other, they are distinct concepts, and can all have different values.

- Slots, in a workload manager, corresponds in BCM to:

- the CPUs setting (a `NodeName` parameter) in Slurm's `slurm.conf`
- the `nproc` setting in PBS,

In LSF setting the number of slots for the client role to 0 means that the client node does not run jobs on itself, but becomes a submit host, which means it is able to forward jobs to other client nodes.

The default value for Slots is `AUTO`, which means that the value for Slots is auto-detected. The parameter may be alternatively be set to a non-negative number. Each WLM has a different implementation on how this is done. For instance, for Slurm, BCM uses Slurm's own auto-detection implementation.

- Queues with a specified name are available in their associated role after they are created. The creation of queues is described in sections 7.6.2 (using Base View) and 7.7.2 (using `cmsh`).

All server roles also provide the option to enable or disable the `External Server` setting. Enabling that means that the server is no longer managed by BCM, but provided by an external device.

The `cmsh` equivalent of enabling an external server is described on page 354.

#### 7.4.2 Enabling And Disabling A Workload Manager With `cmsh`

A particular workload manager package may be set up, but not enabled. This can happen, for example, if no WLM server or WLM client role has been assigned.

If a WLM instance exists, then the WLM client, server, or submit roles can be enabled from cmsh by assigning it from within the roles submode. Within the assigned role, the properties of the WLM may be further configured by setting options.

### Workload Manager Role Assignment To A Configuration Overlay With cmsh

In cmsh, workload manager role assignment to a configuration overlay (section 2.1.5) can be done using configurationoverlay mode. By default cm-wlm-setup run as a TUI session creates some configuration overlays with suggestive names, and assigns roles to the configuration overlays according to what the names suggest. Thus, for example, with the cm-wlm-setup TUI session used to carry out an express setup for Slurm, the configuration overlays that get created are the following:

#### Example

Name (key)	Priority	All head nodes	Nodes	Categories	Roles
slurm-accounting	500	yes			slurmaccounting
slurm-client	500	no		default	slurmclient
slurm-server	500	yes			slurmserver
slurm-submit	500	no		default	slurmsubmit
wlm-headnode-submit	600	yes			slurmsubmit

Nodes in the default category can take on the slurmclient or slurmsubmit role by setting the nodes for the role using the associated configuration overlays slurm-client or slurm-submit.

The wlm-headnode-submit configuration overlay is a special overlay. It is applied only to the head node, and is shared among all installed workload managers. Setting this overlay means that the head node, by default, has a submit role for a given workload manager.

#### Example

[basecm11->configurationoverlay]%	use slurm-client				
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]]%	show				
Parameter	Value				
Name	slurm-client				
Revision					
All head nodes	no				
Priority	500				
Nodes					
Categories	default				
Roles	slurmclient				
Customizations	<0 in submode>				
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]]%	set nodes				
node001 node002 node003 basecm11					
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]]%	set nodes node001..node002				
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*[slurm-client*]]%	commit				
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]]%	list				
Name (key)	Priority	All head nodes	Nodes	Categories	Roles
slurm-accounting	500	yes			slurmaccounting
slurm-client	500	no	node001,node002	default	slurmclient
slurm-server	500	yes			slurmserver
slurm-submit	500	no		default	slurmsubmit
wlm-headnode-submit	600	yes			slurmsubmit
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]]%					

All the head nodes can also be made to take on the configuration overlay role by setting its All head nodes value to yes. The union set of All head nodes with Nodes is the set of nodes to which the role is applied for that configuration overlay.

Values for the parameters in a role, such as the slurmclient role, can be set within the configuration overlay:

### Example

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles]% use slurmclient
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles[slurmclient]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name               slurmclient
Revision
Type               SlurmClientRole
Add services       yes
WLM cluster        slurm
Slots              0
All Queues         no
Queues             defq
Provisioning associations <0 internally used>
Power Saving Allowed no
Features
Sockets            0
Cores Per Socket  0
ThreadsPerCore    0
Boards             0
SocketsPerBoard   0
RealMemory         0B
NodeAddr
Weight             0
Port               0
TmpDisk            0
Reason
CPU Spec List     0
Core Spec Count   0
Mem Spec Limit    0B
Node Customizations <0 in submode>
Generic Resources  <0 in submode>
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles[slurmclient]]%
```

After the workload manager roles are assigned or unassigned, and after running `imageupdate` (section 5.6.2) for non-head nodes, the associated workload manager services automatically start up or stop as appropriate.

The configuration overlay role values are inherited by categories and nodes, unless the categories and nodes have their own values set. Thus, for role properties, a value set at node level overrides values set at category level, and a value set at configuration overlay level overrides a value set at category level. This is typical of how properties of objects are inherited in BCM levels.

### Workload Manager Role Assignment To A Category With `cmsh`

In `cmsh`, workload manager role assignment to a node category can be done using `category` mode, using the category name, assigning a role from the `roles` submode, setting the WLM instance for that role, and committing the modified role:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% category
[basecm11->category]% use default
[basecm11->category[default]]% roles
[basecm11->category[default]->roles]% assign slurmclient
[basecm11->category[default]->roles*[slurmclient*]]% wlm list
Type      Name (key)          Server nodes Submit nodes     Client nodes
-----
slurm    slurm1              basecm11     basecm11,node001 node001,node002
[basecm11->category[default]->roles*[slurmclient*]]% set wlmcluster slurm1
[basecm11->category[default]->roles*[slurmclient*]]% commit
```

Settings that are assigned in the `slurmclient` role of the category overrule the `slurmclient` role configuration overlay settings.

The role assignment at category level requires the value for a WLM instance to be specified for `wlmcluster` before the `commit` command is successful.

#### Workload Manager Role Assignment To An Individual Node With cmsh

In `cmsh`, assigning a workload manager role to a head node can be done in device mode. This can be done by using the head node name as the device, assigning the workload manager role to the device, setting the WLM instance value to the role within the `role` submode, and committing the modified role.

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% use basecm11
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% roles
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles]% assign slurmserver
[basecm11->category[default]->roles*[slurmserver*]]% wlm list
Type      Name (key)          Server nodes Submit nodes     Client nodes
-----
slurm    slurm1              basecm11     basecm11,node001 node001,node002
[basecm11->category[default]->roles*[slurmserver*]]% set wlmcluster slurm1
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->roles*[slurmserver*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[slurmserver]]%
```

For regular nodes, role assignment is done via device mode, using the node name. Th node name is assigned the workload manager role, the WLM instance value is set for that role in the `role` submode, and the modified role is committed.

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% roles
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles]% assign slurmclient
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles*[slurmclient*]]% wlm list
Type      Name (key)          Server nodes Submit nodes     Client nodes
-----
slurm    slurm1              basecm11     basecm11,node001 node001,node002
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles*[slurmclient*]]% set wlmcluster slurm1
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles*[slurmclient*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles[slurmclient]]%
```

The role assignment at node level requires the value for a WLM instance to be specified for `wlmcluster` before the `commit` command is successful.

Role assignment values set in device mode have precedence over any role assignment values set in category mode for that node. This means, for example, that if a node is originally in a node category with a `slurmclient` role and queues set, then when the node is assigned a `slurmclient` role from device mode, its queue properties are empty by default.

### Setting Options For Workload Manager Settings With cmsh

In the preceding text, it is explained how the workload manager client or server is assigned a role (such as `slurmclient` or `slurmserver`) within the `roles` submode. It is done from within a main mode of `cmsh`. The main modes from which role assignment can be done are: `configurationoverlay`, `category` or `device`.

**Options for workload managers in general:** Whatever main mode is used, the workload manager options for a role can then be set with the usual object commands introduced in section 2.5.3.

- **WLM client options:** For example, the configuration options of a WLM client, such as the PBS Professional client, can be seen by using the `show` command on the role. Here it can be seen at a category level, for the default category `default`:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->category [default] ->roles [pbsproclient]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Add services        yes
All Queues         no
GPUs               0
Name                pbsproclient
Properties
Provisioning associations <0 internally used>
Queues
Revision
Slots              1
Type                PbsProClientRole
WLM cluster
Mom Settings       <submode>
Comm Settings      <submode>
Node Customizations <0 in submode>
```

The `Slots` option can be set in the role

#### Example

```
[basecm11->category [default] ->roles [pbsproclient]]% set slots 2
[basecm11->category*[default*] ->roles*[pbsproclient*]]% commit
[basecm11->category [default] ->roles [pbsproclient]]%
```

- **WLM server options:** Similarly, WLM server options can be managed from an assigned server role. For PBS, the `pbsproserver` role for a device shows:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles]# use pbsproserver
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[pbsproserver]]# show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name              pbsproserver
Revision
Type              PbsProServerRole
Add services      yes
WLM cluster
Provisioning associations <0 internally used>
External Server   no
Comm Settings     <submode>
```

**Option to set an external workload manager:** A workload manager can be set to run as an external server from within a device mode role:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[pbsproserver]]# set externalserver on
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[pbsproserver*]]# commit
```

For convenience, setting it on the head node is recommended.

The Base View equivalent of configuring `externalserver` is described on page 349.

### 7.4.3 Monitoring The State Of Workload Manager Services

By default, the workload manager services are monitored. BCM attempts to restart the services using the service tools (section 3.14), unless the role for that workload manager service is disabled, or the service has been stopped.

Workload manager roles and corresponding services can be disabled using `cm-wlm-setup` (section 7.3), Base View role configuration (section 7.4.1), or `cmsh` role configuration (section 7.4.2).

The daemon service states can be viewed for each node via the shell, `cmsh`, or Base View (section 3.14).

Queue submission and scheduling daemons normally run on the head node.

### Viewing Services In Base View

From Base View services are viewable using the navigation path to the services running on the node. For example, on a head node, the navigation path:

Devices > All Devices > (Head Node)  > Settings > Services 

leads to a display similar to figure 7.16:

The screenshot shows the NVIDIA Base View interface for a head node named 'basecm11'. The left sidebar has sections for Cluster, Networking, Provisioning, Grouping, Devices (expanded to show All Devices, Device Identification, Installer Interactions, GPU Performance Overview, and Node Creation Wizard), and Datacenter. The main area is titled 'Device basecm11' and shows the 'Settings' tab selected. Below it, a table lists 'OSServiceConfig Entities' with columns for Service Name and From. The table contains three rows: 'dhcpd' (role: boot), 'ntpd' (role: boot, role: headnode), and 'postfix' (role: headnode). A green button at the bottom right says 'Commit HeadNode'.

Service Name	From	Actions
dhcpd	role: boot	<input type="checkbox"/> <span>⋮</span>
ntpd	role: boot, role: headnode	<input type="checkbox"/> <span>⋮</span>
postfix	role: headnode	<input type="checkbox"/> <span>⋮</span>

Figure 7.16: Services seen on head node in Base View

For a regular node, a similar navigation path for node001, for example, is:

Devices > All Devices > (Physical Node)  > Settings > Services

and leads to a display similar to figure 7.17:

The screenshot shows the NVIDIA Base View interface for a regular node named 'node001'. The left sidebar is identical to Figure 7.16. The main area is titled 'Device node001' and shows the 'Settings' tab selected. Below it, a table lists 'OSServiceConfig Entities' with columns for Service Name and From. The table contains three rows: 'slurmd' (role: slurmclient), 'munge' (role: slurmclient, role: slurmsubmit), and 'cuda-dcgm' (default). A green button at the bottom right says 'Commit PhysicalNode'.

Service Name	From	Actions
slurmd	role: slurmclient	<input type="checkbox"/> <span>⋮</span>
munge	role: slurmclient, role: slurmsubmit	<input type="checkbox"/> <span>⋮</span>
cuda-dcgm	default	<input type="checkbox"/> <span>⋮</span>

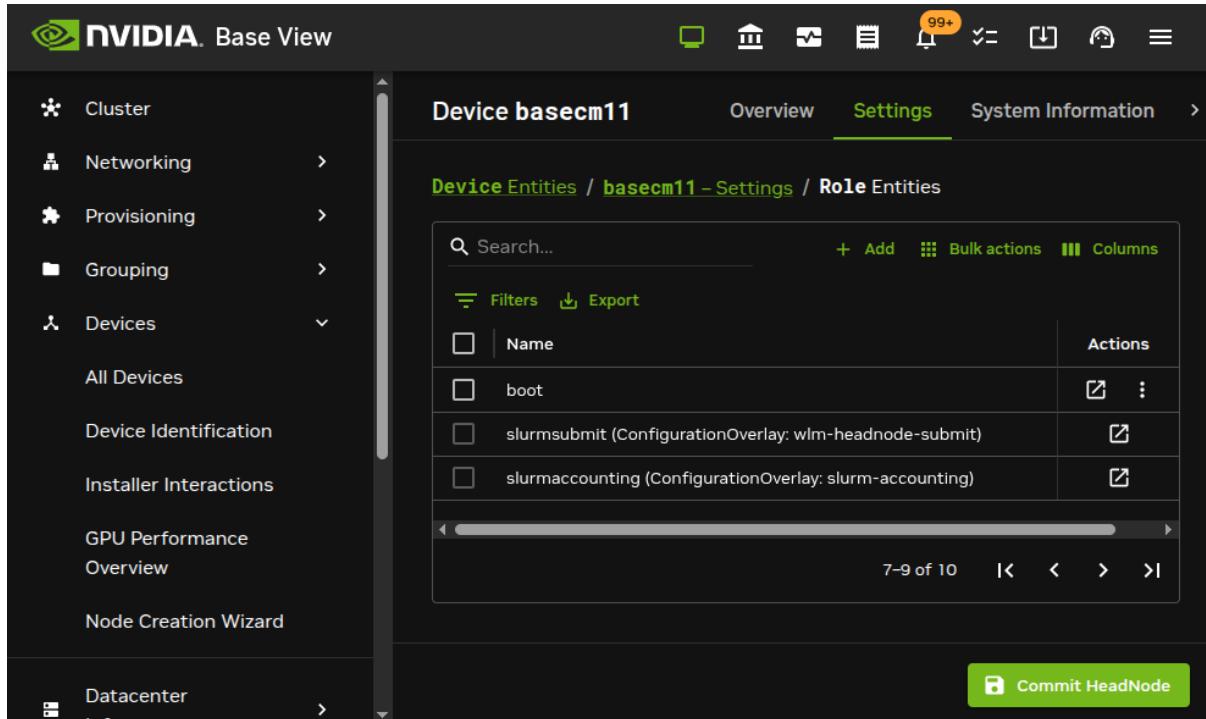
Figure 7.17: Services seen on regular node in Base View

### Viewing Roles In Base View

Services are often set with BCM roles (section 2.1.5). The navigation path:

Devices > All Devices > (Head Node)  > Settings > Roles > 

shows the list of roles. Figure 7.18 shows some of the Slurm roles that result in Slurm services running on the head node:



The screenshot shows the NVIDIA Base View interface. The left sidebar has sections like Cluster, Networking, Provisioning, Grouping, Devices (with sub-options All Devices, Device Identification, Installer Interactions, GPU Performance Overview, and Node Creation Wizard), and Datacenter. The main area is titled 'Device basecm11' and shows 'Overview', 'Settings' (which is selected), and 'System Information'. Below this, it says 'Device Entities / basecm11 - Settings / Role Entities'. A table lists four roles:

Name	Actions
boot	 
slurmsubmit (ConfigurationOverlay: wlm-headnode-submit)	 
slurmaccounting (ConfigurationOverlay: slurm-accounting)	 

At the bottom right of the main area is a green button labeled 'Commit HeadNode'.

Figure 7.18: Roles seen on head node in Base View

Similarly, the navigation path:

Devices > All Devices > (Physical Node)  > Settings > Roles > 

shows the list of roles for a regular node. Figure 7.19 shows some of the Slurm roles that result in Slurm services running on the regular nodes:

The screenshot shows the NVIDIA Base View interface with the title 'Device node001'. The 'Settings' tab is selected. In the 'Role Entities' section, there are two entries:

Name	Actions
slurmclient (ConfigurationOverlay: slurm-client)	<input type="checkbox"/>
slurmsubmit (ConfigurationOverlay: slurm-submit)	<input type="checkbox"/>

A green button at the bottom right says 'Commit PhysicalNode'.

Figure 7.19: Roles seen on regular node in Base View

The roles seen in these figures are from the defaults that `cm-wlm-setup` provides in an express setup.

For regular nodes, the inheritance of roles from category level or configuration overlay level is indicated by the values in the parentheses alongside the role name. Thus, in figure 7.19, the `slurmsubmit` and `slurmclient` roles are decided by the default setting from the configuration overlay.

The assignment of roles can be varied to taste for WLMs. This allows WLM services to run on the head node or on the regular nodes.

### Viewing Services And Roles In `cmsh`

From `cmsh` the services states are viewable from within device mode, using the `services` command. One-liners from the shell to illustrate this are (output elided):

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device services node001; status"
Service      Status
-----
nslcd        [    UP    ]
pbsmom       [    UP    ]
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device services basecm11; status"

Service      Status
-----
...
pbsserver    [    UP    ]
```

Roles can be viewed from within the main modes of `configurationoverlay`, `category`, or `device`. One-liners to view these are:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "configurationoverlay; list"
```

Name (key)	Priority	All head nodes	Nodes	Categories	Roles
openpbs-client	500	no		default	pbsproclient
openpbs-server	500	yes			pbsproserver
openpbs-submit	500	no		default	pbsprosubmit
wlm-headnode-submit	600	yes			pbsprosubmit

[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "category; use default; roles; list -p"
Name (key)
-----
[overlay:openpbs-client:500] pbsproclient
[overlay:openpbs-submit:500] pbsprosubmit

[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device use node001; roles; list -p"
Name (key)
-----
[overlay:openpbs-client:500] pbsproclient
[overlay:openpbs-submit:500] pbsprosubmit

[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device use basecm11; roles; list -p"
Name (key)
-----
[750] backup
[750] boot
[750] firewall
[750] headnode
[750] monitoring
[750] provisioning
[750] storage
[overlay:openpbs-server:500] pbsproserver
[overlay:openpbs-submit:500] pbsprosubmit

The `-p | --priority` option displays of the `list` command the priority setting for the roles.

## 7.5 Configuring And Running Individual Workload Managers

BCM deals with the various choices of workload managers in as generic a way as possible. This means that not all features of a particular workload manager can be controlled, so that fine-tuning must be done through the workload manager configuration files. Workload manager configuration files that are controlled by BCM should normally not be changed directly because BCM overwrites them. However, overwriting by CMDaemon is prevented on setting the directive:

`FreezeChangesTo<workload manager>Config = <true|false>`

in `cmd.conf` (Appendix C), where `<workload manager>` takes the value of Slurm, LSF, or PBSPro, as appropriate. The value of the directive defaults to `false`.

A list of configuration files that are changed by CMDaemon, the items changed, and the events causing such a change are listed in Appendix H.

A very short guide to some specific workload manager commands that can be used outside of the NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11 system is given in Appendix F.

### 7.5.1 Configuring And Running Slurm

#### Slurm Packages

At the time of writing (April 2025), BCM is integrated with Slurm packages for Slurm versions 24.05, 24.11 and 25.05. Slurm version 24.11 is installed by default.

For Slurm version 24.05, the following packages are available from the BCM repositories for Ubuntu 24.04:

- `slurm24.05`: Simple Linux Utility for Resource Management, Slurm Workload Management.
- `slurm24.05-contribs`: Perl tool to print Slurm job state information.
- `slurm24.05-devel`: Development package for SLURM. Includes the header files and static libraries for the SLURM API.
- `slurm24.05-libpmi`: Slurm's implementation of the pmi libraries.
- `slurm24.05-openlava`: openlava/LSF wrappers for transition from OpenLava/LSF to Slurm.
- `slurm24.05-pam`: PAM module for restricting access to compute nodes via Slurm.
- `slurm24.05-perlapic`: Perl API to Slurm.
- `slurm24.05-prs`: Slurm PRS plugin.
- `slurm24.05-sackd`: Slurm authentication daemon. Used on login nodes that are not running slurmd daemons to allow authentication to the cluster.
- `slurm24.05-slurmctld`: Slurm control daemon.
- `slurm24.05-slurmd`: Slurm compute node daemon.
- `slurm24.05-slurmdbd`: Slurm database daemon.
- `slurm24.05-slurmrestd`: Slurm REST API translator.
- `slurm24.05-torque`: Torque/PBS wrappers for transition from Torque/PBS to Slurm.

For Slurm version 24.11, the value of 24.05 is simply replaced by 24.11 in the preceding list of packages. Similarly, for Slurm version 25.05, the value of 24.05 is simply replaced by 25.05 in the preceding list of packages.

The distribution version of Slurm (package: `slurm`) is not integrated with BCM and conflicts with the preceding packages. It should not be used.

Important updates from upstream are patched into the BCM repositories. If updating Slurm packages, all the Slurm packages should be updated to the same version, on the compute nodes as well as on the scheduling node.

#### Updating From Earlier Slurm Versions To `slurm24.11`

Upgrading between major versions of Slurm is generally possible. It is a good idea to upgrade one version at a time, rather than jumping 2 or more versions ahead, which requires a full wipe of the Slurm configuration.

If Slurm is using Pyxis (section 7.3.3), then upgrading the Slurm version means that Pyxis needs to be reinstalled using `cm-wlm-setup`. The reinstallation run for Pyxis compiles Pyxis and recreates a plugin directory for the new Slurm version under `/cm/local/apps/slurm/`.

An upgrade from one major version of Slurm to another can be carried out according to the following example, which is for an update from major version 22.05 to version 24.11, and avoids total reconfiguration of the Slurm configuration:

- It is recommended that no jobs are running. Draining nodes (section 7.7.3) is one way to arrange this over time. No new jobs run on a drained node, but old ones are allowed to finish.
- When all running jobs are finished, then Slurm server services—`slurmctld` and `slurmdbd`—should be stopped using `cmsh` or Base View (section 3.14.2):

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]# stop slurmctld
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]# stop slurmdbd
```

- The old Slurm packages should then be removed. There can be only one version of Slurm at a time, so there will be a package installation conflict if a new version is installed while an old one is still there.

Removal can be carried out on RHEL-based systems with, for example:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# yum remove slurm22.05*
```

The old packages must also be removed from each software image that uses it:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-chroot-sw-img /cm/images/<software image>
...
[root@<software image> /]# yum remove slurm22.05*
...removal takes place...
[root@<software image> /]# exit
```

The `cm-chroot-sw-img` wrapper utility is discussed in section 9.4.1.

- The new packages can then be installed. For installation onto the RHEL head node, the installation might be carried out as follows:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# yum install slurm24.11 slurm24.11-slurmd slurm24.11-contribs \
slurm24.11-perlapi slurm24.11-devel slurm24.11-pam slurm24.11-slurmdbd \
slurm24.11-slurmrestd
```

The client package can be installed in each software image with, for example:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-chroot-sw-img /cm/images/<software image>
...
[root@<software image> /]# yum install slurm24.11-slurmd
...installation takes place...
[root@<software image> /]# exit
```

Other Slurm packages from the repository may also be installed on the head node and within the software images, as needed.

- The new Slurm version is then set in `cmsh` or Base View, in the Slurm WLM cluster configuration:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]# wlm use slurm
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]# set version 24.11; commit
```

- Slurm server services `slurmctld` and `slurmdbd` should then be started again using `cmsh` or Base View:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]# start slurmdbd
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]# start slurmctld
```

- The nodes can then have their new image placed on them, and the new Slurm configuration can then be taken up. This can be done in the following two ways:

1. The regular nodes can then be restarted to supply the live nodes with the new image and get the new Slurm configuration running.
2. Alternatively, the `imageupdate` command (section 5.6.2) can be run on the live nodes to supply them with the image.

Running the `imageupdate` command in dry mode (the default) first is recommended. The `synclog` command can then be run to check there are no unexpected changes that will take place due to the update. If all is well, then `imageupdate`'s wet mode flag `-w` can be used in order to really carry out the task.

For example, the change can be checked, and then actually carried out, for the image on node001 with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]# device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% imageupdate
Performing dry run (use synclog command to review result, then pass -w to perform real update)...
...some messages...
imageupdate [ COMPLETED ]
[basecm11->device[node001]]% synclog
...rsync dry run output...
[basecm11->device[node001]]% imageupdate -w
...same messages as before, but this time it really happens...
[basecm11->device[node001]]% commit
```

The last `commit` command triggers the reconfiguration of the file `/etc/systemd/system/slurmd.service.d/99-cmd.conf` on the node. After a short time—around 30 seconds—the file is regenerated. The `slurmd` service on the node can then be restarted with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ssh node001 "systemctl daemon-reload"
cmsh -c "device services node001; use slurmd; restart"
```

## IMEX

NVIDIA IMEX (Internode Memory Exchange Service) is a secure service that facilitates the mapping of GPU memory over NVLink between the GPUs in an NVLink domain.

For Slurm, BCM can enable the IMEX daemon either globally, or per job.

**Enabling the IMEX daemon globally for Slurm:** If IMEX is set globally, then it means that it is set to run on all nodes at runtime.

The advantage of this configuration is that it is easy to set up, and easy to test to see if it is all working.

A disadvantage is that a user running a job on one node can read memory from a job run by another user on another node. It requires overcoming difficult hurdles to carry out, but it is not impossible. The administrator should therefore weigh up if this seems a significant issue for the cluster being administered.

The IMEX global service can be run by setting the values for the service for the compute nodes. For example, nodes in a `dgx-gb200` category can have the service added and set to:

```
[basecm11->category[dgx-gb200]->services[nvidia-imex]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Revision
Service           nvidia-imex
Run if            always
Monitored         yes
Autostart         yes
Managed           yes
```

**Enabling and disabling the IMEX daemon per job for Slurm:** Configuring per job means that IMEX runs just before the job starts, and that the service runs only on a node that needs it for the job.

A disadvantage is that verifying that it actually works requires a job run.

Running the IMEX daemon per job has the advantage that one user running a job cannot read the memory of a job run by another user on another node.

To run IMEX per job, any global IMEX setting must first be cleared away. This can be done by first:

- removing the nvidia-imex service configuration entirely from CMDaemon

### Example

```
[basecm11->category[dgx-gb200]->services[nvidia-imex]]% remove nvidia-imex; commit
```

- stopping the service on the compute nodes, for example with pdssh or pdexec, or simply carrying out a reboot

The value of imex in the slurmclient role can then be set:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% configurationoverlay roles slurm-client-gpu
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client-gpu]->roles]% use slurmclient
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client-gpu]->roles[slurmclient]]% set imex yes
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*[slurm-client-gpu*]->roles*[slurmclient*]]% commit
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client-gpu]->roles[slurmclient]]%
```

Committing that imex setting configures Slurm prolog and epilog scripts in the backend as follows:

- the prolog script configures the IMEX daemon with the nodes allocated to the GPU job and starts the IMEX daemon on the node
- the epilog cleans up the configuration and stops the IMEX daemon on the node

The TCP port used by IMEX for peer communication is defined by SERVER\_PORT in /etc/nvidia-imex/config.cfg.

For running IMEX per job, the port in the file is written in as a random port for that job, in the allowed range of 0 to 65535.

To use an IMEX that is not managed by BCM, the SERVER\_PORT value needs to be changed manually for all nodes to suit that other IMEX. This can be done with the help of the pdcp command, which comes with the pdsh package (section 14.1). The pdcp command can copy the config.cfg file from the BCM software image to all nodes that no longer use BCM to run IMEX per job.

### Workload Power Profile Settings (WPPS)

NVIDIA Blackwell GPUs support workload power profiles. Each GPU in a job can have a specific workload power profile set for it; the profile can vary per GPU. For these power profiles to work as expected, a node that has a job allocated to it must have the job allocated exclusively to it.

BCM allows the user who is running a Slurm job to change its power profiles in two ways:

1. Statically: the job prolog script switches the power profiles for all GPUs allocated to the job just before the job starts
2. Dynamically: the job process sets power profiles for each allocated GPU during job execution

In both cases, when the job is finished, the epilog script resets the GPU power profiles back to the default.

Workload power profiles settings are a part of the `slurmclient` role, located within the `Power profiles` submode:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]# configurationoverlay roles slurm-client-gpu
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client-gpu]->roles]# use slurmclient
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client-gpu]->roles[slurmclient]]# powerprofiles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client-gpu]->roles[slurmclient]->powerprofiles]# show
Parameter          Value
-----
Disabled          yes
Fail on error    no
Job keyword       wpps
Jobs profiles directory /var/run/nvidia/workload-power-profiles
Debug             no
Debug log directory /var/spool/cmd/wlm/wpps
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client-gpu]->roles[slurmclient]->powerprofiles]# set disabled no
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*[slurm-client-gpu*]->roles*[slurmclient*]->powerprofiles*]# commit
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client-gpu]->roles[slurmclient]]#
```

The Power profiles parameters are:

1. **Disabled**: forbids a job from changing workload power profiles (yes by default)
2. **Fail on error**: allows prolog and epilog to fail if a workload power profiles change fails for any reason
3. **Job keyword**: a keyword in the JSON object, used by the WLM job, to specify a workload power profiles setting in the comment field
4. **Jobs profiles directory**: a top directory which includes job ID directories, and used by the job to change the workload power profiles
5. **Debug**: setting it to yes enables prolog and epilog debug messages. The prolog and epilog then write debug logs to the location set by the `Debug log directory` parameter.
6. **Debug log directory**: directory where prolog and epilog create debug log files per job. This is `/var/spool/cmd/wlm/wpps/<JOBID>.log` by default. The log files are not cleaned up automatically.

If WPPS is enabled, then special BCM prolog and epilog scripts are enabled in Slurm on compute nodes. The scripts parse the `SLURM_JOB_COMMENT` environment variable that is passed by Slurm. The scripts search for a JSON object that includes the key `wpps`. The key used can be changed using the `Job keyword` parameter. The expected format of the JSON object is:

```
{"wpps": {"profiles": PROFILES}}
```

Here, `PROFILES` is either

- a JSON list of strings (workload profile names or their numbers) or
- a single string (one workload profile name) or
- a workload profile number.

The values that `PROFILES` can take are:

- `max_p`
- `max_q`
- `llm_training`
- `llm_inference`

On matching, the specified profiles are set for all the GPUs on the node that are allocated for the job when the job starts.

For example, the following job submission command instructs the prolog script to set the workload profiles to `max_p` and `compute`:

```
$ sbatch --gres=gpu:b100:8 --comment='{"wpps": {"profiles": ["max_p", "compute"]}}' job.sh
```

All allocated GPUs on the node get the specified workload profiles, which means that job allocation must be configured to run on that node as a job that excludes other jobs running on it. If the cluster administrator has set oversubscribe for Slurm, then that takes precedence over exclusivity, and must therefore be taken into account.

If a job requires dynamic profiles management, then the job process can notify BCM to update the power profiles of specific GPUs during job execution. The prolog creates a directory of the form `/var/run/nvidia/workload-power-profiles/<JOB_ID>/` per job. The following files are created within the directory:

1. `username`: read-only (for users) file that includes the current job user name. Used by BCM.
2. `uuids`: read-only (for users) file that includes a list of GPU UUIDs (one per line) allocated for this job.
3. `profiles`: file that can be used by the job process to set new profiles. The file is empty by default. An empty file means that BCM does not modify the profiles. If the job process writes two lines:

```
max_p
compute
```

then BCM reads this file almost immediately, and applies these two workload profiles to the GPUs whose UUIDs are specified in `uuids` file.

What users are running in each workload power profile can be viewed with a PromQL query, as explained on page 368.

**Management of node workload profiles by regular users:** The user, for example John, can be given access to checking and managing GPU power profiles by running the `allowgpuworkloadpowerprofiles` command.

### Example

```
[basecm11->user[john]]% set allowgpuworkloadpowerprofiles yes
```

The `gpuworkloadpowerprofiles` command can then be run to check the current node profiles:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% gpuworkloadpowerprofiles show -n node001
Node      GPU      Profiles
-----
node001    0        COMPUTE(2)
node001    1        MAX_P(0)
node001    2        MAX_P(0)
node001    3        MAX_P(0)
node001    4        MAX_P(0)
node001    5        MAX_P(0)
node001    6        MAX_P(0)
node001    7        MAX_P(0)
[basecm11->device]%
```

This may be useful for debug purposes.

The BCM script `cm-gpu-workload-power-profiles` can then be used to change the profiles as follows:

- The user first gets the GPU UUIDs:

### Example

```
root@dgx-gb200-n07-c2:~# nvidia-smi --query-gpu=uuid --format=csv,noheader --id=0,1,2,3
GPU-1e72bc8d-b967-6031-24bd-c5a08ad090e1
GPU-3a6ac832-3423-68cc-ed1f-64f2b46d248d
GPU-f40fabbb7-eb9b-0253-4bd5-08b4a12916ea
```

- The user can then use the script to change the profile. For example, just for the GPUs 1 and 2:

### Example

```
root@dgx-gb200-n07-c2:~# /cm/local/apps/cmd/sbin/cm-gpu-workload-power-profiles -p compute -u john \
3a6ac832-3423-68cc-ed1f-64f2b46d248d f40fabbb7-eb9b-0253-4bd5-08b4a12916ea
```

The script carries the profile change out with the help of CMDaemon in the back end.

Slurm's prolog and epilog actually work with the script in BCM when carrying out dynamic profiles management, so that the user does not need to use the script manually.

**Management of external users to allow them to use profiles:** External users, that is users managed by an external LDAP and not managed by the BCM LDAP, can use the workload power profile settings if their user name or UID is added to the file:

```
/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/allow-users-wpps.conf
```

The file must be created on the head node, or on both head nodes if the cluster has HA. The file should have its mode set to 0600. The user name or UID should be added on its own line in the file.

## Advanced Slurm Job Accounting

PromQL queries can be run and then filtered by Slurm job labels with BCM. The labels are taken either from a job comment or from an account name used by the job. After the labels for the job are extracted, the labeled entity is stored in the monitoring data. The administrator can then run PromQL queries, and filter results by label. Examples of such PromQL queries are the `job_gpu_wasted` or `job_gpu_utilization` queries (section 12.4.1).

`Extract accounting info` must be set to `yes` to enable labels to be extracted from job comments or account names:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm use slurm
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% accounting
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->show]% accounting
Parameter          Value
-----
Managed hierarchy
Separator          -
Job comment labels
Extract accounting info      no
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->accounting]% set extractaccountinginfo yes
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]->accounting*]% commit
```

In addition, the administrator must configure the job comment label format and the format of Slurm account names, if they exist. Without that configuration, BCM cannot parse the labels.

**Job comment labels:** A user running the job can specify the label for the job comment in a special format. Such a label could be, for example, a tag to indicate the artificial neural network model, where different groups of jobs use different models. The administrator (after having enabled accounting information extraction) can set a regex for the tag in a `Job comment field` parameter in accounting sub-mode:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm use slurm
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% accounting
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->accounting]% set jobcommentlabels model
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]->accounting*]% commit
```

In the preceding example, the label `model` is set in the monitoring data when the job comment includes a JSON object with `model` as a key. The value must be a string that will be a value for the label `model`. For example "`model": "llm123`". The JSON object may contain other information that will be ignored by BCM when it reads the labels from the comment.

**Account name labels:** Several labels can be assigned by BCM to a job parsed from an associated account name. The labels can be used to represent a hierarchy of organizational entities, such as department, project, team, and so on. The following configuration options allow this representation:

1. Managed hierarchy: representation of the account name as a list of organizational entity labels.
2. Separator: a separator for the labels in the account names. By default this is the underscore character, `_`. The last entity is separated with double separator. This means that the last entity (and only the last entity) can have a single separator in the name itself.

For instance, if Slurm account names use the following format:

```
DEPARTMENT_PROJECT_TEAM
```

then Managed hierarchy values can be set as follows:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm use slurm
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% accounting
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->accounting]% set managedhierarchy department project team
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]->accounting*]% commit
```

It is up to the administrator to create the accounting hierarchy in Slurm, and set names as described by the Managed hierarchy parameter.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load slurm
[basecm11 ~]# sacctmgr add account NVIDIA Description="NVIDIA account" Organization=NVIDIA parent=root -i
[basecm11 ~]# sacctmgr add account Department1 Organization=NVIDIA parent=NVIDIA -i
[basecm11 ~]# sacctmgr add account Department1_Project1 Organization=NVIDIA parent=Department1 -i
[basecm11 ~]# sacctmgr add account Department1_Project1_Team_1 Organization=NVIDIA parent=Department1 -i
[basecm11 ~]# sacctmgr add account Department1_Team_2 Organization=NVIDIA parent=Department1 -i
```

In the preceding example two teams have been made. Team 1 is defined according to the full entities hierarchy (department, project, team), while Team 2 is defined only under a department. BCM correctly recognizes such "clipped" hierarchy locations for a team in the account names.

Similar to the Slurm command `sshare`, an administrator can display the Slurm account hierarchy with the `fairshare` command in `cmsh`:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% fairshare -t
Account          fairshare    raw_shares raw_usage   norm_shares norm_usage parent
-----
root (top account) 0.0        0           0           0.0        0.0
nvidia            0.0        1           0           0.5        0.0        root (top account)
department1       0.0        1           0           1.0        0.0        nvidia
department1_team_2 0.0        1           0           0.333333  0.0        department1
department1_project1 0.0        1           0           0.333333  0.0        department1
department1_project1_team_1 0.0        1           0           0.333333  0.0        department1
root              1.0        1           0           0.5        0.0        root (top account)
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% fairshare -f ""
root
└── nvidia
    └── department1
        ├── department1_team_2
        ├── department1_project1
        └── department1_project1_team_1
└── root
```

The following command options can be used:

1. `-t|--table`: print accounts fairshare parameters as a table
2. `-a|--account <name>`: print information for specific account

3. `-f|--fields <PARAMETERS>`: display only specified fairshare account parameters (comma-delimited)  
Format:

```
<FIELD>[%<MIN>[-<MAX>]] [,<FIELD>[%<MIN>[-<MAX>]],... ] ;
```

where MIN and MAX are minimum and maximum value lengths. The parameter can be combined with others.

The following example uses labels from both job comment and account names:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# su - alice
[alice@basecm11 ~]$ module load slurm
[alice@basecm11 ~]$ sbatch -A department1_project1__team_1 --comment='{"model": "llm123"}' --wrap="hostname"
Submitted batch job 1
[alice@basecm11 ~]$
```

PromQL queries with these labels are run later on.

In cmsh the administrator can validate how BCM parses the job labels from both job comment and from the Slurm account name:

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]% info 1 | grep "accounting info" -i
Accounting info      {"department": "department1", "model": "llm123", "project": "project1", "team": "team_1"}
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]%
```

Jobs information can also be displayed by filtering using the labels (some output elided for clarity):

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]% filter -i team="team_1"
Job ID  Job name   User   Queue   Submit time   Start time   End time   Nodes   Exit code
-----
1       wrap        alice
2       wrap        alice  defq    13:28:59     13:28:59     13:30:00   node001  0
3       wrap        alice  defq    13:30:39     13:30:39     13:31:40   node001  0
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]%
```

The following query filters the team:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]% instantquery "job_gpu_wasted{team=\\"team_1\\\"}[1h]"
Name          category department group  hostname job_id job_name project queue  team   user   wlm ...
-----
job_gpu_wasted default  department1 alice  node001  1        wrap    project1 defq   team_1  alice  slurm ...
job_gpu_wasted default  department1 alice  node002  2        wrap    project1 defq   team_1  alice  slurm ...
```

The following query filters the model name:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]% instantquery "job_gpu_wasted{model=\\"llm123\\\"}[1h]"
Name          category group  hostname job_id job_name model   queue  user   wlm ...
-----
job_gpu_wasted default  alice   node001  1        wrap    foo     defq   alice  slurm ...
job_gpu_wasted default  alice   node002  2        wrap    foo     defq   alice  slurm ...
```

The following query show what users are running in each WPPS profile:

```
[-head-01->monitoring->labeledentity]%
instantquery -q job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user
Name          gpu_workload_power_profile user   Timestamp ... Value
-----
job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user COMPUTE           avolkov  Mon Jun 2 ... 2
```

job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user	LLM_INFERENCE	avolkov	Mon Jun 2 ... 2133
job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user	LLM_INFERENCE	root	Mon Jun 2 ... 23
job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user	LLM_INFERENCE	shoreline	Mon Jun 2 ... 336
job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user	LLM_INFERENCE	wglantz	Mon Jun 2 ... 12
job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user	LLM_TRAINING	root	Mon Jun 2 ... 7
job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user	LLM_TRAINING	shoreline	Mon Jun 2 ... 331
job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user	MAX_P	avolkov	Mon Jun 2 ... 2134
job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user	MAX_P	root	Mon Jun 2 ... 60
job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user	MAX_P	shoreline	Mon Jun 2 ... 379
job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user	MAX_P	wglantz	Mon Jun 2 ... 12
job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user	MAX_Q	root	Mon Jun 2 ... 8
job_gpu_workload_power_profile_for_user	MAX_Q	shoreline	Mon Jun 2 ... 320

### Slurm NVIDIA Sharp Plugin

NVIDIA's Sharp packages are packages that offload some operations from CPUs and GPUs to the network. Sharp is the abbreviation used for the Scalable Hierarchical Aggregation and Reduction Protocol. The protocol refers to the reduction in the amount of data traversing the network and the reduction in the time for collective operations. Using Sharp frees up more CPUs and GPU resources for computation.

The Sharp binaries are available in various packages.

Slurm versions 24.05 and 24.11 have a special version that includes an NVIDIA Sharp plugin. To use it, the existing Slurm packages must be substituted by packages with the -sharp suffix. This allows the plugin and associated extra options to be used.

### Example

The following session on an Ubuntu system illustrates the existing Slurm version 24.05 packages, and then carrying out a replacement of these with the corresponding Sharp versions:

```
basecm11:~# dpkg --get-selections | grep slurm | cut -f1 | tr "\n" " " ; echo
slurm24.05 slurm24.05-client slurm24.05-contribs slurm24.05-devel slurm24.05-perlapi slurm24.05-slurmdbd
basecm11:~# apt install slurm24.05-sharp slurm24.05-sharp-client slurm24.05-sharp-contribs \
slurm24.05-sharp-devel slurm24.05-sharp-perlapi slurm24.05-sharp-slurmdbd
```

The change should be treated like the upgrade procedure on page 359, and should likewise end with the cluster administrator selecting the -sharp Slurm version parameter in cmsh and committing it.

### Example

```
root@basecm11:~# cmsh -c "wlm use slurm; get version"
24.05-sharp
```

This plugin is only useful for a network that has the necessary hardware and services configured. Further information about Sharp can be found at <https://docs.nvidia.com/networking/display/sharpv300>.

### Configuring Slurm

After Slurm setup is configured and installed with cm-wlm-setup (section 7.3), the Slurm software components are installed in a symlinked directory /cm/local/apps/slurm/current. The same set of Slurm packages should be installed on the head nodes and in each software image where any of the Slurm services run.

Slurm clients and servers can be configured to some extent via role assignment (sections 7.4.1 and 7.4.2).

Using cmsh, advanced option parameters can be set under the slurmclient and slurmserver roles. The settings for the roles can be done at configuration overlay, category, or node level (sections 2.1.5, 2.1.6).

By default, the cm-wlm-setup utility configures Slurm using configuration overlays.

## Example

Name (key)	Priority	All head nodes	Nodes	Categories	Roles
slurm-accounting	500	yes			slurmaccounting
slurm-client	500	no		default	slurmclient
slurm-server	500	yes			slurmserver
slurm-submit	500	no		default	slurmsubmit
wlm-headnode-submit	600	yes			slurmsubmit

The settings within the roles can be viewed and modified. For example, the slurmclient role of the slurm-client configuration overlay can be viewed:

## Example

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay]%/ list
[basecm11->configurationoverlay]%/ roles slurm-client
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles]%/ show slurmclient
Parameter          Value
-----
Name               slurmclient
Revision
Type               SlurmClientRole
Add services       yes
WLM cluster        slurm
Slots              0
All Queues        no
Queues             defq
Features
Sockets            0
Cores Per Socket  0
ThreadsPerCore    0
Boards             0
SocketsPerBoard   0
RealMemory         0B
NodeAddr
Weight             0
Port               0
TmpDisk            0
Reason
CPU Spec List
Core Spec Count   0
Mem Spec Limit    0B
GPU auto detect   BCM
Node Customizations <0 in submode>
Generic Resources  <0 in submode>
Cpu Bindings      None
Slurm hardware probe autodetect yes
Memory autodetection slack 0.0%
IMEX              no
```

**Assigning nodes to Slurm queues:** Slurm can configure *nodesets* (man slurm.conf.5). Nodesets are a way to conveniently group nodes under a unique arbitrary name, so that features can be assigned to a group of nodes.

Starting with BCM version 11, BCM can be used to configure Slurm nodesets using the *Nodesets* and *Nodeset features* options within the *slurmclient* role options:

- **Nodesets:** An arbitrary name can be set for the `Nodesets` parameter. Names that are set are automatically added to `slurm.conf`. Nodes with the `slurmclient` role are then associated with this arbitrary nodeset name in `slurm.conf`. For example, if the `nodesets` parameter is set to `ns1` and the role is assigned only to node `node001`, then BCM translates this configuration after a short time into a `slurm.conf` line that looks like:

```
NodeSet=ns1 Nodes=node001
```

In an express Slurm setup by `cm-wlm-setup` (page 333), the `slurmclient` role is set by default for all nodes via the configuration overlay. This means that setting the `nodesets` parameter in the `slurmclient` role there sets it for all nodes. After a short while, the `NodeSet` line in `slurm.conf` changes to match the parameter change:

### Example

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles[slurmclient] get nodesets
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles[slurmclient] set nodesets ns1; commit
then, after a minute or so:
[basecm11->...->roles[slurmclient] !grep -i nodeset /cm/shared/apps/slurm/etc/slurm.conf
[basecm11->...->roles[slurmclient] NodeSet=ns1 Nodes=node[001-003]      for a 3-node cluster
```

- **Nodeset features:** All values of the `Nodeset features` parameter are added to nodes that have the `slurmclient` role. They are added as Slurm node features, which means that there is no need to duplicate them in the `Features` parameter of the `slurmclient` role. The values that are set are a list of strings.

The Slurm nodesets are added to `slurm.conf` with the same name as these features. This is useful when the administrator needs to assign sets of nodes to queues based on the node features.

For example, if the parameter has a value `bigmem`, and the `slurmclient` role is assigned to node `node001`, then BCM adds lines with:

```
NodeName=node001 Features=bigmem ...
and
NodeSet=bigmem Feature=bigmem
to slurm.conf.
```

For the 3-node case specified by the configuration overlay of earlier, the change is illustrated by the following:

### Example

```
[basecm11->...->roles[slurmclient]]% get nodesetfeatures
[basecm11->...]->roles[slurmclient]]% !grep -i ^Node /cm/shared/apps/slurm/etc/slurm/slurm.conf
NodeName=node[001-003] ... Features=location=local
NodeSet=ns1 Nodes=node[001..003]
[basecm11->...->roles[slurmclient]]% set nodesetfeatures bigmem
... wait a little for the change to happen...
[basecm11->...->roles[slurmclient]]% !grep -i ^Node /cm/shared/apps/slurm/etc/slurm/slurm.conf
NodeName=node[001-003] ... Features=location=local,bigmem
NodeSet=ns1 Nodes=node[001-003]
NodeSet=bigmem Feature=bigmem
```

The `Nodeset features` parameter does not automatically add the nodesets to any queues. The administrator must add the nodesets to the queues separately.

**Specifying nodesets for Slurm via wlm mode with jobqueues, vs specifying nodes using the slurmclient role's queues parameter:**

Specifying which nodes go into Slurm job queues can be specified using either nodesets or nodes.

- The administrator can specify which nodesets are included in Slurm job queues by setting the nodesets parameter for a job queue, within a jobqueue submode.

For example, the nodeset ns1 defined in the slurmclient role earlier can be included in defq with:

**Example**

```
root@basecm11:~# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm jobqueue
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobqueue]% use defq
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobqueue[defq]]% set nodesets ns1; commit
```

If the nodesets parameter is set for a queue, then BCM does not add any nodes that are specified by the Compute nodes parameter, but only adds the nodes in the nodesets specification to a line with the format:

PartitionName=... Nodes=<nodesets> ...

in slurm.conf. As a reminder, a queue in Slurm terminology is a partition.

- The administrator can specify the nodes that are associated with a job queue.

- Prior to BCM version 11, job queues were specified for nodes only by using the queues parameter of the slurmclient role at the device, category, or configurationoverlay mode level.

For example, for the configuration overlay slurm-client that defines the Slurm client configuration by default, the nodes for the Slurm client role are the nodes in the default category default. Within the configuration overlay, within the slurmclient role, the default queue to be used is set to defq by default:

**Example**

```
root@basecm11:~# cmsh
[basecm11]% configurationoverlay use slurm-client
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]]% get categories
default
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles]% use slurmclient
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles[slurmclient]]% get queues
defq
```

- Starting with BCM version 11, the administrator can also add nodes to queues directly from within wlm mode for a particular WLM, within the jobqueue mode for a particular queue, by setting nodes for particular node grouping parameters. For example, for Slurm the following queue parameters are available:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobqueue[defq]]% show | egrep -i '(overlay|nodegroups|compute|category|nodeset)'
Nodesets
Overlays
Categories
Nodegroups
Compute nodes
```

Thus defq is used by nodes that have been specified in the following groupings:

- \* Nodesets: nodes in these nodesets
- \* Overlays: nodes in these configuration overlays (including nodes of categories that are in this overlay)
- \* Categories: nodes in these categories
- \* Nodegroups: nodes in these node groups
- \* Compute nodes: nodes listed in this parameter

**Slurm Hardware Autodetection (non-GPU):** The setting Slurm hardware probe autodetect in the Slurm role enables automated hardware detection for Slurm for non-GPU hardware. (Specifically for GPUs is the related Slurm GPU auto detect setting (page 374)).

Slurm hardware probe autodetect enables detection for the following Slurm parameters:

- corespersocket
- threadspercore
- boards
- socketsperboard
- sockets
- realmemory

The autodetected parameters are placed in the `NodeName` line in `slurm.conf`.

The Slurm client role parameters can be modified. For example Core Spec Count:

### Example

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles]%
```

`set slurmclient corespeccount 2`

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*[slurm-client*]->roles*]%
```

`commit`

As usual, values set at node level override the values set at categories and configuration overlays level.

For example, to set `corespeccount` to 4, only for node001 but not for other nodes, the session might run further as:

### Example

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles]%
```

`device use node001`

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]%
```

`roles`

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles]%
```

`assign slurmclient`

```
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->roles*[slurmclient*]]%
```

`set corespeccount 4`

```
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->roles*[slurmclient*]]%
```

`commit`

Field	Message			
wlmCluster	Error: The WLM cluster should be set			
<hr/>				
Type	Name (key)	Server nodes	Submit nodes	Client nodes
<hr/>				
Slurm	slurm	basecm11	basecm11, node001	node001, node001
<hr/>				
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->roles*[slurmclient*]]%				
set wlmcluster slurm				
<hr/>				
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->roles*[slurmclient*]]%				
commit				

In the preceding session, the role needs to be assigned at node level with `assign slurmclient` because it does not initially exist at node level. If it already existed, then use `slurmclient` could have been used to descend into that role.

Also in the preceding session, one of the values that the Slurm client needs to know is `wlmcluster`, which decides which WLM it is to work with on the cluster. The value is selected from the list of WLM instance names in `wlm` mode.

The level of the active role can be seen with the `list` command. For example, the Slurm client role assignment at node level is seen here:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles[slurmclient]]% list
Name (key)
-----
[overlay:slurm-submit] slurmsubmit
slurmclient
```

Removing the assignment has the `list` command display the configuration overlay Slurm client role assignment:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles[slurmclient]]% unassign slurmclient; commit
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles[slurmclient]]% list
Name (key)
-----
[overlay:slurm-submit] slurmsubmit
[overlay:slurm-client] slurmclient
```

**Slurm Hardware Autodetection For GPUs:** The Slurm GPU `auto detect` setting is a setting seen in the session output of page 370. It manages Slurm GRES configuration (<https://slurm.schedmd.com/gres.conf.html>) automatically, and can be set:

- globally, for all Slurm compute nodes in a Slurm instance, from within the `wlm` mode of `cmsh`
- for a particular role, such as in a device role, a category role, and a configuration overlay role for a Slurm client

### Example

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles[slurmclient]]% set gpusautodetect <TAB><TAB>
bcm      none     nrt      nvml     off      oneapi   rsmi
```

If GPU `auto detect` is assigned a value, then a corresponding value is assigned to the `autodetect` parameter in Slurm's `gres.conf` file. One out of 7 values can be assigned to GPU `auto detect`:

1. `bcm`: to use BCM values, which are the values that CMDDaemon automatically puts in for the vendor (NVIDIA, Intel, AWS, AMD) and for the number of GPUs.
2. `none`: to not have the `autodetect` parameter exist in `gres.conf`. In this case, there is actually no corresponding value that can be assigned to the `autodetect` of `gres.conf`.
3. `nrt`: to detect AWS Trainium/Inferentia devices. <— not yet, in October 2024, trunk, or `bcm10.24.09`
4. `nvml`: to detect NVIDIA GPUs.
5. `off`: to turn Slurm GPU autodetection off.

6. oneapi: to detect Intel GPUs.
7. rsmi: to detect AMD GPUs

Slurm GPU autodetection is described further on page 391.

**Slurm accounting database configuration in cmsh:** After package setup is carried out with cm-wlm-setup (section 7.3), cmsh can be used to modify the settings for the Slurm accounting database. Changes can be carried out in the slurm-accounting configuration overlay:

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-accounting]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name               slurm-accounting
Revision
All head nodes    no
Priority          500
Nodes              node001,node002
Categories
Roles              slurmaccounting
Customizations     <0 in submode>
```

In the preceding overlay, slurmdbd runs on the accounting node(s). It is possible to run slurmdbd on both head nodes or on one or two compute nodes, as set in the configuration overlay. It is not possible to mix up head nodes and compute nodes for this configuration, and it is not possible to run slurmdbd on more than two nodes.

Further Slurm accounting changes can be carried out within the slurmaccounting role:

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-accounting]->roles[slurmaccounting]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name               slurmaccounting
Revision
Type               SlurmAccountingRole
Add services       yes
High availability  yes
Primary accounting server  node001
DbdPort            6819
StorageHost        node001
StoragePort        3306
StorageLoc         slurm_acct_db
StorageUser        slurm
```

The primaryaccountingserver parameter defines which node is primary, that is, which one is AccountingStorageHost in slurm.conf. The other node setting in the configuration overlay is the AccountingStorageBackupHost.

StorageHost, StoragePort, StorageLoc and StorageUser are settings for connecting to the MySQL database, If these are for an external host, then they must be configured manually so that they are reachable by the nodes running slurmdbd.

The highavailability parameter sets the high availability mode for slurmdbd. If set to yes, then the service runs on both nodes at the same time.

**Generic resources (gres) configuration in Slurm:** In order to configure generic resources, the genericresources mode can be used to set a list of objects. Each object then represents one generic resource available on nodes.

Each value of name in genericresources must already be defined in the list of GresTypes. The list of GresTypes is defined in the wlm role for the instance.

## Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% get grestypes
gpu
```

Several generic resources entries can have the same value for name (for example gpu), but must have a unique alias. The alias is a string that is used to manage the resource entry in cmsh or in Base View. The string is enclosed in square brackets in cmsh, and is used instead of the name for the object. The alias does not affect Slurm configuration.

For example, to add two GPUs for all the nodes in the default category which are of type k20xm, and to assign them to different CPU cores, the following cmsh commands can be run:

## Example

```
[basecm11]% configurationoverlay use slurm-client
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles*]% use slurmclient
[... [slurmclient]]% genericresources
[... [slurmclient]->genericresources]% add gpu0
[... [slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu0*]]% set name gpu
[... [slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu0*]]% set file /dev/nvidia0
[... [slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu0*]]% set cores 0-7
[... [slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu0*]]% set type k20xm
[... [slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu0*]]% add gpu1
[... [slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu1*]]% set name gpu
[... [slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu1*]]% set file /dev/nvidia1
[... [slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu1*]]% set cores 8-15
[... [slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu1*]]% set type k20xm
[... [slurmclient*]->genericresources*[gpu1*]]% commit
[... [slurmclient]->genericresources[gpu1]]% list
Alias (key) Name      Type      Count     File
-----
gpu0      gpu       k20xm      /dev/nvidia0
gpu1      gpu       k20xm      /dev/nvidia1
[... [slurmclient]->genericresources[gpu1]]%
```

Typically this configuration is done automatically during the GPU configuration process as outlined in the GPU Configuration Screens section on page 334, where by default the configuration overlay is given the name slurm-client-gpu.

In Base View, the navigation path:

Configuration Overlays > slurm-client-gpu > Edit > Roles > slurmclient > Edit > Generic Resources > ADD

provides the equivalent (figure 7.20):

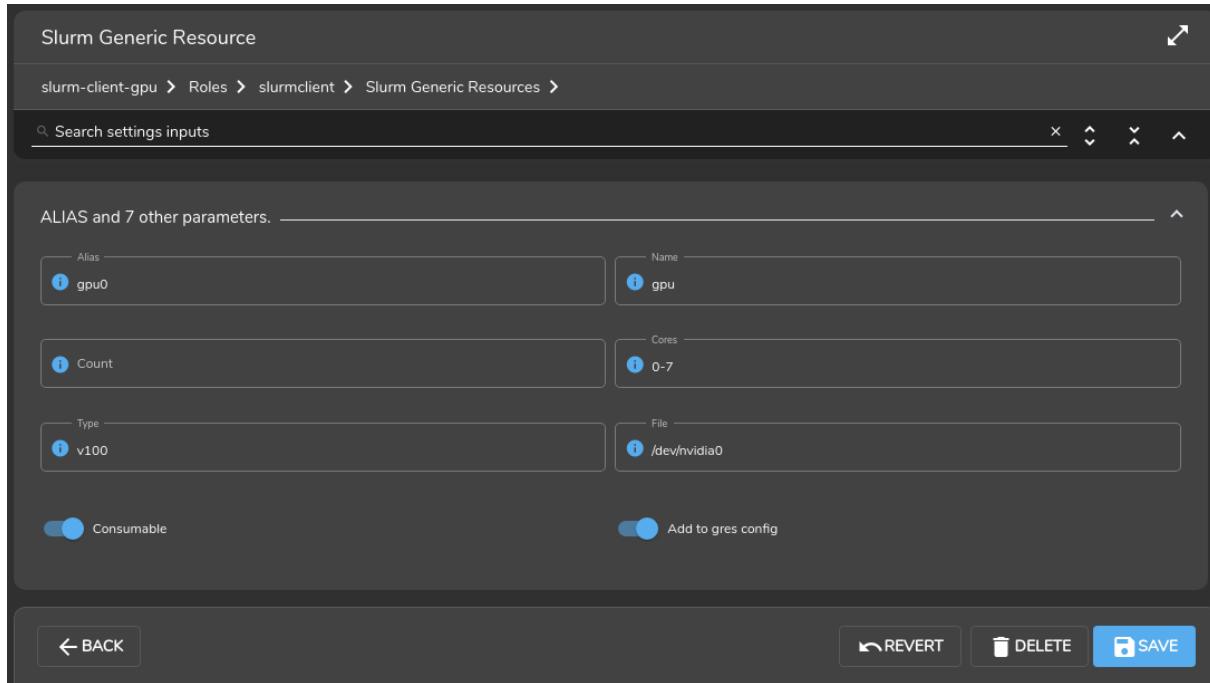


Figure 7.20: Base View access to NVIDIA GPU configuration options

After the generic resources are committed, BCM updates the `gres.conf` file.

Since NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 8.2 and higher, a single `gres.conf` configuration file, located at `/cm/shared/apps/slurm/etc/slurm/gres.conf` is used.

If the category consists of node001 and node002, then the entries to the `gres.conf` file in this case would look like:

### Example

```
# This section of this file was automatically generated by cmd. Do not edit manually!
# BEGIN AUTOGENERATED SECTION -- DO NOT REMOVE
NodeName=node[001,002] Name=gpu Type=k20xm Count=1 File=/dev/nvidia0 Cores=0-7
NodeName=node[001,002] Name=gpu Type=k20xm Count=1 File=/dev/nvidia1 Cores=8-15
# END AUTOGENERATED SECTION -- DO NOT REMOVE
[root@basecm11 ~]#
```

**Slurm topology configuration:** Slurm supports topology-aware resource allocation to optimize job performance. BCM supports configuration for the `topology/tree` and `topology/block` Slurm plugins using the `topograph` service (page 382):

- `topology/tree`: models the cluster network as a hierarchical structure, where Slurm allocates resources to jobs to minimize network contention. Nodes are grouped under leaf switches, which connect to higher-level switches. The plugin helps to allocate nodes that are close together in the network hierarchy. The plugin requires all nodes for a single job be connected via switches. The configuration of the plugin is defined via switches and their relationships.
- `topology/block`: models the network as non-overlapping blocks of nodes. The plugin aims to keep jobs contiguous within blocks for better communication. The plugin does not require all nodes to be part of blocks. The configuration is defined via blocks of nodes and their groupings.

The network topology configuration for a Slurm instance `<slurmcluster>` is described by:

`/cm/shared/apps/slurm/etc/<slurmcluster>/topology.conf`

The file is modified in an autogenerated section when the cluster administrator modifies the internal topology settings in BCM, or when the topology arrangement record is fetched from Topograph, the topology generation service (page 382). The topology settings can be modified in BCM via the `topologysettings` submode of the WLM instance in cmsh:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm use slurm
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% topologysettings
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings]% show
Located Parameter          Value
-----
Topology plugin            Block
Topology source             Internal
Parameters                 <submode>
Tree settings               <submode>
Block settings              <submode>
Topograph settings          <submode>
```

A visualization (figure 7.21) of `topologysettings`, and its submodes and settings may be useful when reading the contents of this section:

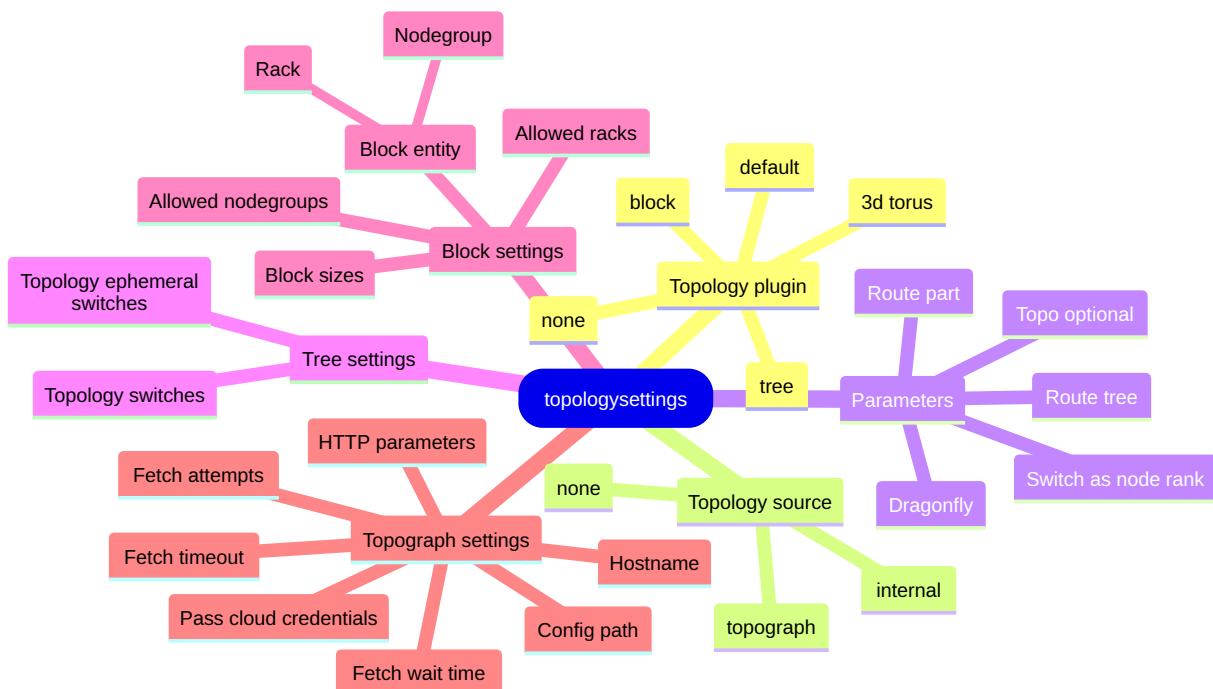


Figure 7.21: Visualization of settings under `topologysettings`

BCM allows a topology configuration to be generated for both the `topology/tree` and `topology/block` Slurm plugins. By default neither of these plugins is enabled. To enable topology generation, the administrator can select the plugin type within WLM mode using the `Topology plugin` parameter, and can select the `Topology source`:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm use slurm
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% set topologyplugin<TAB><TAB>
3d torus  block  default  none  tree
```

```
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]]% set topologyplugin tree
Tree
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]]% set topologysource<TAB><TAB>
internal    none      topograph
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]]% set topologysource internal
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]]% commit
```

By default, both Topology source and Topology plugin are set to none, which means that topology.conf is not updated by BCM.

Within topologysettings, the Topology plugin parameter configures plugins in the Slurm-related .conf files:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings]% set topologyplugin<TAB><TAB>
3d torus  block      default    none      tree
```

- none: no plugin is configured in slurm.conf
- default: the topology/default plugin is set in slurm.conf
- 3d torus: the topology/3d\_torus plugin is set in slurm.conf
- block: the topology/block plugin is set in slurm.conf and topology.conf is updated
- tree: the topology/tree plugin is set in slurm.conf and topology.conf is updated

The topology settings can be configured in a similar way in Base View.

Within topologysettings, there are these 4 submodes: Parameters, Tree settings, Block settings, and Topograph settings:

1. The parameters submode manages parameters that are common for all plugins:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings]% parameters
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings->parameters]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Dragonfly          no
Route part         no
Switch as node rank no
Route tree          no
Topo Optional      no
```

These correspond to values of TopologyParam in slurm.conf (man slurm.conf.5).

2. The treesettings submode allows access to some parameters that modify the topology for the topology/tree plugin:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings]% treesettings
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings->treesettings]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Topology switches
Topology ephemeral switches yes
```

The `treesettings` parameters are:

- `topologyephemeralswitches`: A boolean to allow ephemeral switches to be added to `topology.conf`
  - `topology switches`: A Slurm cluster configuration parameter that defines the list of switches used to write the topology file:

## Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings->treesettings] % set topologyswitches switch01 switch02 switch03  
[basecm11->wlm[slurm*]] % commit
```

The switches-to-nodes mapping does not require the switch devices to exist. The mapping can be defined in one of the following ways:

- Definitions using the `switchports` parameter: the port definitions (page 136) for a node or a switch must normally be configured to let BCM construct the topology tree in `topology.conf`. The definitions can be carried out using their `switchports` parameter:

## Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh  
[basecm11]# device use node001  
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set switchports switch01:3  
[basecm11->device[node001*]]% commit  
[basecm11->device[node001]]% use switch01  
[basecm11->device[switch01]]% set switchports switch02:15  
[basecm11->device[switch01*]]% commit
```

- Definitions using the SlurmTopology parameter: the Slurm network topology can be configured without configuring the ports in BCM, by using their SlurmTopology parameter:

## Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% set node001 -e SlurmTopology switch02 switch01
[basecm11->device*]%
[basecm11->device*]% set node002 -e SlurmTopology switch02 switch01
[basecm11->device*]%
[basecm11->device*]% set node003 -e SlurmTopology switch03
[basecm11->device*]%
[basecm11->device*]% commit
```

The preceding example populates the autogenerated section of `topology.conf` as follows:

## Example

```
SwitchName=switch01 Switches=switch02  
SwitchName=switch02 Nodes=node[001,002]  
SwitchName=switch03 Nodes=node003
```

The following `AdvancedConfig` directives (page 862) can be used to control the topology parameters layout further.

- `SlurmStraightExtraTopology`: If set to a value of 0, then the order of switches is reversed when setting the extra values. For example, to get the same content of `topology.conf` as in the preceding example, the following lines can then be committed:

## Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% set node001 -e SlurmTopology switch01 switch02
[basecm11->device*]% set node002 -e SlurmTopology switch01 switch02
[basecm11->device*]% set node003 -e SlurmTopology switch03
[basecm11->device*]% commit
```

In topology/plugin configuration, switches and nodes cannot both be connected to the same switch. This is consistent with the description in `man topology.conf.5`. If the configuration in BCM has both nodes and switches connected to the same switch, then only the nodes-to-switch connection is written to `topology.conf`.

- `SlurmConcatTopologySwitchName`: If set to 1, then it allows concatenation of the switch names in the topology defined via the `SlurmTopology` node extra setting. The `SlurmTopology` setting is described earlier on. The concatenation starts in order of parent switches first. Thus, switch `switch02` that is directly connected to switch `switch01` is named `switch01-switch02` in `topology.conf`.

#### **Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]# device
[basecm11->device]# set node001 -e SlurmTopology switch01 switch03
[basecm11->device*]# set node002 -e SlurmTopology switch01 switch03
[basecm11->device*]# set node002 -e SlurmTopology switch01 switch03
[basecm11->device*]# set node003 -e SlurmTopology switch01 switch03
[basecm11->device*]# set node003 -e SlurmTopology switch01 switch03
[basecm11->device*]# set node004 -e SlurmTopology switch02 switch03
[basecm11->device*]# set node005 -e SlurmTopology switch02 switch03
[basecm11->device*]# set node006 -e SlurmTopology switch02 switch03
[basecm11->device*]# commit
```

The preceding results in the following content within `topology.conf`:

#### **Example**

```
SwitchName=switch03 Switches=switch03-switch[01,02]
SwitchName=switch03-switch01 Nodes=node[001-003]
SwitchName=switch03-switch02 Nodes=node[004-006]
```

3. The `blocksettings` submode under `topologysettings` is where the topology/block plugin settings are located:

#### **Example**

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings]# blocksettings
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings->blocksettings]# show
Parameter          Value
-----
Block entity        NodeGroup
Block sizes         2 4
```

The parameters of the topology/block plugin are:

- `Block entity`: what BCM entity type defines a block. Possible entity type values are:
  - `nodegroup`: if a node is in several nodegroups then it goes to the first block
  - `rack`: if a pair of racks is configured as twins, then nodes from both racks go to a single block

Nodes with a `slurmclient` role that belong to the specified entity are grouped in a single block. For instance, if two nodegroups are defined in BCM as:

- `ng1`: a nodegroup that includes `node001` and `node002`, both with the `slurmclient` role and
- `ng2`: a nodegroup that includes `node003` and `node004`, both with the `slurmclient` role

then `topology.conf` is updated with the following lines:

### Example

```
BlockName=ng1 Nodes=node[001,002]
BlockName=ng2 Nodes=node[003,004]
```

- **Block sizes:** corresponds to the parameter in `topology.conf` with the same name. It displays a list of the planning base block size, alongside any higher-level block sizes that would be enforced. More details can be found in `man topology.conf.5`.
4. Topograph settings can be found within the `topographsettings` submode, under `topologysettings`. The settings are described further on.

**Topograph service integration:** A topograph in real life can be a monument that shows important geographical properties (for example altitude, latitude, roads, and so on) in a very visible location (typically on a hilltop). In BCM, Topograph is used to mean the topological record that is visible to the cluster manager in BCM. Topograph runs as a system service, while BCM fetches topology information from the service when required and updates `topology.conf`.

Currently, Topograph, when used with cloud services, supports only cloud GPU nodes that are supported by the topology API that the cloud providers provide. The nodes in the cloud must exist—that is, it must be possible to stop them—during topology generation. If Topograph cannot get the topology for a node, then the node in `topology.conf` is put under a special fake switch (if node is set to tree topology) or block (if the node is set to block topology).

The integration between BCM and Topograph is configured within the `topographsettings` submode:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings]# topographsettings
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings->topographsettings]# show
Parameter          Value
-----
Hostname           localhost
Config path        /etc/topograph/topograph-config.yaml
HTTP parameters
Pass cloud credentials   yes
Fetch timeout      20
Fetch attempts     12
Fetch wait time   15
```

The Topograph settings are:

- **Hostname:** the hostname where these settings run
- **Config path:** a path for the YAML configuration of the topograph settings
- **HTTP parameters:** used to pass a string of HTTP parameters to the HTTP API service
- **Pass cloud credentials:** if set to yes, then cloud service provider credentials are passed on to the topology generator
- **Fetch timeout:** the Topograph API timeout value (in seconds)
- **Fetch attempts:** the number of attempts to carry out when trying to get a topology from Topograph
- **Fetch wait time:** the wait time between fetch attempts (in seconds)

The service has its own configuration file (`topography-config.yaml`) which is read by BCM, but BCM does not modify it. The administrator can modify it manually if needed, but by default no changes are required on BCM clusters.

The `topograph` package is available from the BCM repositories for Ubuntu 22.04 or higher, and for RHEL9-compatible distributions:

### Example

```
root@basecm11:~# apt install topograph
...
Need to get 30.1 MB of archives.
After this operation, 0 B of additional disk space will be used.
...
```

After picking up the package, the service can be set up on any node. The `hostname` parameter in `topographsettings` is set to `localhost` by default, which is taken from the node that has the `slurmserver` role assigned to it. The value should be the Topograph server hostname or IP address, which means that if the Topograph service is running on a node without the `slurmserver` role, then the value must be manually adjusted.

Typically, since `slurmserver` usually runs on the head node, `topograph` also runs on the head node, and if the cluster is an HA cluster (Chapter 15) then it should be set up on both head nodes.

The service can be set up on the head node(s) in BCM using the `services` submode of `device` mode:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% services
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]% add topograph
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->services*[topograph*]]% set autostart yes
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->services*[topograph*]]% set monitored yes
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->services*[topograph*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services[topograph]]% status
Service          Status
-----
topograph        [    UP    ]
repeated for the other head node if using HA
```

The certificates for the `topograph` service are under `/etc/topograph/ssl/` and they are generated automatically when the package is installed. The certificates are used by BCM to carry out service API calls.

After restarting CMDaemon on nodes with the `slurmserver` role with:

```
systemctl restart cmd
a topology.conf file is generated in /cm/shared/apps/slurm/etc/<slurmcluster>/topology.conf.
```

A Slurm topology configuration for the Slurm topology/tree plugin (<https://slurm.schedmd.com/topology.conf.html>) is generated if a Slurm compute node is affected by:

- poweroff, shutdown, or power up
- creation or termination in cloud nodes
- a Slurm-related configuration change due to a BCM configuration change

**For cloud service providers** managed by BCM there are some extra considerations for the topograph service:

- For AWS clouds the compute nodes must be running (exist), and must have a flavor that supports the AWS topology API (<https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/ec2-instance-topology.html>). One of the supported flavors is the p5.48xlarge instance currently used by DGX Cloud.

Requirements:

- To access the AWS instance topology API using the topograph service, a prerequisite for an IAM identity is to have permissions for `ec2:DescribeInstanceTopology`. This permission can be enabled through an AWS-managed policy called `AmazonEC2ReadOnlyAccess`.
- Topograph needs credentials to perform the AWS API call.
  - \* If the administrator sets the value of `Pass cloud credentials` to yes, then BCM sends the credentials to the topograph service on each topology fetch.
  - \* If the administrator sets the value of `Pass cloud credentials` to no in BCM, then the profile of the EC2 instance where topograph runs has an IAM role with the `AmazonEC2ReadOnlyAccess` policy enabled. AWS EC2 instances support an IMDS API that provides metadata related to the instance itself. One of the features of this API is the support of a profile role for an instance.
- For OCI clouds the nodes must exist in OCI, and
  - the administrator can set the value of `Pass cloud credentials` to yes

or

- the administrator can set the value of `Pass cloud credentials` to no and specify some named dynamic group (<https://docs.oracle.com/en-us/iaas/Content/Identity/Tasks/managingdynamicgroups.htm>) policies in the tenancy.

Each named dynamic group must have permissions to inspect certain resources. Additionally, the special BCM `thebcmnonprod-topo-dg` dynamic group must have various permissions set to use a variety of resources. The permissions can be set according to the OCI policy syntax (<https://docs.oracle.com/en-us/iaas/Content/Identity/Tasks/callingservicesfrominstances.htm#Writing>) as follows:

```
Allow dynamic-group <dynamic_group_name> to inspect compute-capacity-topologies in tenancy
Allow dynamic-group <dynamic_group_name> to inspect compute-bare-metal-hosts in tenancy
Allow dynamic-group <dynamic_group_name> to inspect compute-hpc-islands in tenancy
Allow dynamic-group <dynamic_group_name> to inspect compute-network-blocks in tenancy
Allow dynamic-group <dynamic_group_name> to inspect compute-local-blocks in tenancy
```

- For GCP clouds the requirement is that the placement policy for VMs should be compact.

After the Topograph package is installed, the service started, and the administrator has met the requirements for the cloud topology API, then the `topologyplugin` and `topologysource` values must be set:

### Example

```
[basecm11] % wlm use slurm
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]] % topologysettings
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings] % set topologyplugin tree
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings*] % set topologysource topograph
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->topologysettings*] % commit
```

If `topologysource` is set to a value of `none`, then `topology.conf` content is not updated by BCM. Setting a value of `topograph` causes the Slurm topology to be fetched from the topograph service. The topograph service currently supports only the tree and block plugins.

Two additional cmsh commands allow testing:

- The topology update command starts a topology update in the background.
  - The topology print command prints the generated content for Slurm topology.conf to STD-OUT. This is a synchronous operation, which means that it can freeze for 10-15 seconds when Topograph is in use.

## Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm use slurm
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% topology update
Topology update initiated
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% topology print
SwitchName=nn-468b60a0020d2b170 Switches=nn-7a2f7858c1f7d5cd1
SwitchName=nn-7a2f7858c1f7d5cd1 Switches=nn-73d157eb3d683970e,nn-400810bf9f5e465d6
SwitchName=nn-400810bf9f5e465d6 Nodes=cnode001
SwitchName=nn-73d157eb3d683970e Nodes=cnode002
```

The topograph service logs can be seen with the `systemctl` command: `journalctl -u topograph -f`

**Prometheus exporter sampling** of the topograph service can be configured in CMDaemon. The topograph service sends out Prometheus metrics, which can be added to BCM as follows:

## Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]# monitoring setup
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]# add prometheus topograph
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[topograph*]]# set urls https://localhost:49021/metrics
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[topograph*]]# set -e NoPostAllowed yes
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[topograph*]]# set https yes
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[topograph*]]# set cacertificatepath /etc/topograph/ssl/ca-cert.pem
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[topograph*]]# set privatekeypath /etc/topograph/ssl/server-key.pem
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[topograph*]]# set certificatepath /etc/topograph/ssl/server-cert.pem
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[topograph*]]# nodeexecutionfilters
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[topograph*]->nodeexecutionfilters]# active
Added active resource filter
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[topograph*]->nodeexecutionfilters]# commit
```

If, in the following session, the numerator (the first number in the line starting with Measurables) is not zero, then it is a confirmation that the metrics are consumed by BCM:

## Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% monitoring setup
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% use topograph
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[topograph]]% show | grep measurables -i
Measurables          26 / 986
```

**Slurm drain reason policy:** CMDaemon allows nodes to be drained:

- either by user request, using the `drain` command (section 7.7.3) or
- automatically, when a monitoring trigger (section 10.4.5) is configured. For example, if some healthcheck fails, then the appropriate node can be drained automatically.

The administrator can also manually drain a node outside of `cmsh`, using the Slurm `scontrol` command from the terminal, as described in `man scontrol.1`.

In all these cases the drain reason can be specified. By default, if a node is already drained, then a second drain command with a new drain reason replaces the old drain reason.

The behavior can be configured with the parameter `Drain reason policy`, within the Slurm cluster settings. The `Drain reason policy` can take one of the following (case-insensitive) values:

- `REPLACE`: the old drain reason(s) is replaced by a new one
- `APPEND`: the new drain reason is separated by a comma, and appended to the existing one(s).
- `SKIP`:
  - If a drain reason already exists, then setting the new drain reason is skipped.
  - If no drain reason already exists, then the new drain reason is applied.

In the following example, the drain reason policy is set to `APPEND`. This means that CMDaemon always appends a new drain reason to any existing ones.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm use slurm
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% set drainreasonpolicy APPEND
[basecm11->wlm[slurm*]]% commit
```

It is also possible to temporarily set an append policy in `cmsh` when draining a node, by using the `+` operator as a prefix to the drain reason:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use node00
[basecm11->device[node001]]% drain --reason="+this will be appended regardless of the current policy"
```

### Slurm services restart or reconfiguration conditions:

- When parameters in the Slurm configuration files are changed by BCM via CMDaemon, typically via actions of `cmsh` or Base View, then Slurm services automatically restart, and `scontrol reconfigure` is automatically run, as required.
- When parameters in the Slurm configuration files are changed directly, then BCM does not detect a change automatically, and therefore does not automatically restart or reconfigure Slurm.

Slurm subsystems are restarted and reconfigured based on the following list of conditions:

- `slurmctld` and `slurmd` are restarted if:

1. any of the following global `slurm.conf` parameters managed by CMDaemon are changed:
  - `SelectType`
  - `SelectTypeParameters`

- GresTypes
  - StateSaveLocation
  - SchedulerType
  - SchedulerParameters
  - SlurmctldParameters
2. gres.conf is changed (by CMDaemon)
  3. oci.conf (<https://slurm.schedmd.com/oci.conf.html>) is changed (by CMDaemon). In cmsh this typically happens via the ocisettings submode under the wlm mode.
  4. nodes are changed (by CMDaemon) in slurm.conf (nodes are renamed, added, or removed).
- An scontrol reconfigure is carried out if:
    1. any Slurm parameters managed by BCM, that are not mentioned in the preceding list of conditions, are changed. This is true also for the Partition and Node parameters within the slurm.conf file, except for the NodeName and PartitionName parameters specifically.
    2. cgroups.conf is changed (by CMDaemon)
    3. topology.conf is changed (by CMDaemon)

A restart or a reconfigure is not done by CMDaemon under other conditions.

**Slurm resource consumption monitoring configuration:** Slurm allows the configuration of how consumable resources (core, CPU, memory, etc) are tracked and shared among jobs on a node. At the time of writing of this section (November 2022), cmsh or Base View can be used to configure the tracking and sharing of resources as in the following text.

- SelectType: this plugin configures the algorithm used to select resources for jobs. By default, NVIDIA Base Command Manager configures the select/cons\_tres plugin. This is an advanced version of select/cons\_res plugin, and it also allows GPUs to be tracked separately from other consumable resources.

Further details on cons\_res can be found in the Slurm documentation at [https://slurm.schedmd.com/cons\\_res.html](https://slurm.schedmd.com/cons_res.html) and [https://slurm.schedmd.com/cons\\_res\\_share.html](https://slurm.schedmd.com/cons_res_share.html).

The SelectType parameter is configured in cmsh or Base View, from within the Slurm cluster configuration settings:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm use slurm
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% set selecttype select<TAB><TAB>
select/cons_res  select/cons_tres  select/linear
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]%
```

- SelectTypeParameters: allows the configuration of the resource selection plugin that is specified for the SelectType parameter. The possible values depend on the plugin type. For select/cons\_tres, the values follow the pattern:

- CR\_Memory or
- CR\_<COMPUTE\_UNIT>[\_Memory] where <COMPUTE\_UNIT> takes one of the following values:

- \* Core
- \* CPU
- \* Socket
- \* Board

The value of `SelectTypeParameters` specifies if the `<COMPUTE_UNIT>` resource is tracked, or if the `<COMPUTE_UNIT>` resource is tracked together with memory, or if only memory is tracked.

There are also a few special values that can be applied to `SelectTypeParameters`:

- `CR_ONE_TASK_PER_CORE`: allocate one task per core (used only with the `select/linear` plugin)
- `CR_CORE_DEFAULT_DIST_BLOCK`: allocate cores within a node using a block distribution
- `CR_LLN`: schedule resources to jobs on the least loaded nodes
- `CR_Pack_Nodes`: if a job allocation contains more resources than will be used for launching tasks, then rather than distributing a job's tasks evenly across its allocated nodes, pack them as tightly as possible on these nodes.
- `OverSubscribe` (page 186):
  - if the `select/linear` plugin is used, then the `OverSubscribe` parameter controls whether or not the nodes are shared among jobs
  - if the `select/cons_res` or `select/cons_tres` plugins are used, then the `OverSubscribe` parameter controls whether or not the configured consumable resources are shared among jobs. For these plugins, when a consumable resource such as a core, socket, CPU, or other, is shared, it means that more than one job can be assigned to it. The parameter is set per Slurm partition (queue) and accepts the following values:
    - \* `EXCLUSIVE`: allocate entire node for a job;
    - \* `FORCE`: makes all resources (except for GRES) in the Slurm partition available for over-subscription without any means for users to disable it (may be followed with a colon and maximum number of jobs in running or suspended state);
    - \* `YES`: makes all resources (except for GRES) in the Slurm partition available for sharing upon request by the job (may be followed with a colon and maximum number of jobs in running or suspended state);
    - \* `NO`: no resource is allocated to more than one job.
- `AccountingStorageTRES`: A comma-separated list of resources that the administrator wants to track on the cluster. By default the following resources (TRES) are tracked:
  - billing
  - CPU
  - energy
  - memory
  - node
  - fs/disk
  - pages
  - vmem

These default TRES cannot be disabled, but only appended to. Resources use is recorded when used on the cluster. If GPUs of different types are tracked, then job requests with matching type specifications are recorded.

**Example**

If:

AccountingStorageTRES=gres/gpu:tesla,gres/gpu:volta is set  
then:  
gres/gpu:tesla and gres/gpu:volta track only jobs that explicitly request those two GPU types.

**Slurm REST API:** slurmrestd is Slurm's REST API daemon. It is installed with the BCM package slurm24.05-slurmrestd, or slurm24.11-slurmrestd. The distribution package, slurm-slurmrestd, should not be installed, and indeed its installation is not suggested by the package manager in a cluster that is correctly configured.

**Slurm REST API package installation and version matching:** If installing the REST API package, then care must be taken to match the versions exactly to its sibling Slurm packages (page 359). For example, if the already-installed packages have version 24.05:

**Example**

```
root@basecm11 ~]# rpm -qa slurm*      #what are the already installed packages?
slurm24.05-24.05.3-100806_cm11.0_9c8dc03511.x86_64
slurm24.05-perlapi-24.05.3-100806_cm11.0_9c8dc03511.x86_64
slurm24.05-slurmdbd-24.05.3-100806_cm11.0_9c8dc03511.x86_64
slurm24.05-slurmd-24.05.3-100806_cm11.0_9c8dc03511.x86_64
slurm24.05-slurmctld-24.05.3-100806_cm11.0_9c8dc03511.x86_64
slurm24.05-contribs-24.05.3-100806_cm11.0_9c8dc03511.x86_64
slurm24.05-devel-24.05.3-100806_cm11.0_9c8dc03511.x86_64
```

and if the Slurm REST API package version to be installed is as indicated by the following:

**Example**

```
root@basecm11 ~]# yum info slurm24.05-slurmrestd | egrep '(Name|Release|Source)' #what will install?
Name        : slurm24.05-slurmrestd
Release     : 100807_cm11.0_b3c3ec09a3
Source      : slurm24.05-24.05.4-100807_cm11.0_b3c3ec09a3.src.rpm
```

then it means that all already-installed Slurm packages must be upgraded to release 100807\_cm11.0\_b3c3ec09a3 too.

The reason behind matching versions exactly is that the upstream versions can have significant configuration changes between subminor versions (here subminor 24.05.03 changing to 24.05.4). These changes may result in a non-functioning workload manager. This is true, not only when considering the Slurm REST API package, but also true when considering the other Slurm packages.

**The user daemon cannot be in the bin group for slurm25.05-slurmrestd on SLES15:** Slurm 25.05 expects that the user daemon should be a member of only the group daemon. The groups command lists the groups that a user is in, so it can be used to check to see if the user daemon is in the group bin as well in the group daemon with:

**Example**

```
root@basecm11 ~]# groups daemon
daemon : daemon bin
```

Here the user daemon is in the group bin and as well as in the group daemon. For slurmrestd to work properly, the group bin must have user daemon deleted from it. The gpasswd command can do that with:

### Example

```
root@basecm11 ~]# gpasswd -d daemon bin
```

If slurmrestd is running on a compute node, then the gpasswd command must be run in the image of the compute node instead. For example, if the image is default-image:

### Example

```
root@basecm11 ~]# cm-chroot-sw-img /cm/images/default-image gpasswd -d daemon bin
```

The imageupdate command can then be run so that the change is picked up by the node.

The gpasswd command should be run for any group, other than group daemon, that user daemon is a member of.

**Slurm REST API and authentication:** The slurmrestd service can be configured with JWT (JSON Web Token) authentication as follows:

1. The JWT key is generated in the Slurm cluster configuration directory, and its ownership and permissions are then changed:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load slurm # Loads SLURM_CONF environment variable from modulefile
[root@basecm11 ~]# JWT_KEY=`dirname $SLURM_CONF`/jwt.key
[root@basecm11 ~]# install -m 0600 -o slurm -g slurm <(dd if=/dev/random bs=32 count=1) $JWT_KEY
```

The location of the key can differ, but user slurm must have read access to the file.

2. The JWT plugin is configured in slurm.conf for the Slurm cluster instance. For example, for a Slurm cluster instance <cluster name>:

### Example

```
AuthAltTypes=auth/jwt
AuthAltParameters=jwt_key=/cm/shared/apps/slurm/etc/<cluster name>/jwt.key
```

The slurmctld service is restarted to apply the plugin settings. For example, if it is running on the head node:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# systemctl restart slurmctld.service
```

3. A systemd drop-in file is created for the new slurmrestd service:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# slurmrestapidir="/etc/systemd/system/slurmrestd.service.d"
[root@basecm11 ~]# mkdir $slurmrestapidir
[root@basecm11 ~]# echo "[Service]" > $slurmrestapidir/99-cmd.conf
[root@basecm11 ~]# echo "Environment=SLURM_CONF=$SLURM_CONF" >> $slurmrestapidir/99-cmd.conf
```

Future versions of BCM may automatically create or update the file 99-cmd.conf. It is therefore recommended to use that file name as a best practice for cluster administration.

4. The `slurmrestd` service is configured within `cmsh` so that it can be monitored by BCM:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device services master
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]% add slurmrestd
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->services*[slurmrestd*]]% set monitored yes
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->services*[slurmrestd*]]% set autostart yes
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->services*[slurmrestd*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services[slurmrestd]]%.
```

5. A ping-like `curl` check can be run with custom extra headers to ensure that the Slurm REST API service is running properly, as follows:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# export $(scontrol token username=cmsupport)
[root@basecm11 ~]# curl 0.0.0.0:6820/openapi \
-H "X-SLURM-USER-TOKEN: $SLURM_JWT" \
-H "X-SLURM-USER-NAME: cmsupport"
  % Total    % Received % Xferd  Average Speed   Time     Time      Time  Current
               Dload  Upload   Total   Spent    Left  Speed
  0       0     0      0  0      0      0  --::-- --::-- --::-- 0
{
  "tags": [
    {
      "name": "slurm",
      "description": "methods that query slurmdbd"
    },
    {
      "name": "openapi",
      "description": "methods that query for OpenAPI specifications"
    }
  ]
}
```

[...]

The `slurmrestd` daemon configuration is specified by its command line arguments. These can be made permanent in `/etc/sysconfig/slurmrestd`.

**GPU autodetection:** Slurm supports GPU autodetection from version 20 onward, using the `AutoDetect` flag in `gres.conf`.

Slurm GPU autodetection allows AMD, Intel, and NVIDIA GPUs to have their GPU parameters be set automatically, if autodetection is also enabled in `gres.conf`. Slurm GPU autodetection removes the need for explicit GPU configuration in `gres.conf`.

The number of GPUs must however still be specified explicitly by the administrator. This is because at the time of writing (October 2024) Slurm has no GPU autodetection by default.

In BCM, the Slurm GPU hardware detection setting has 7 options, as covered on page 374.

- Setting the `bcm` option for Slurm GPU autodetection removes the need to specify any further GPU autodetect option.

- Setting a GPU vendor (NVIDIA, Intel, AMD) option for Slurm GPU autodetection means that the `Gres=...` parameter in `NodeName` lines in `slurm.conf` is still required in order to tell `slurmctld` how many GRES to expect. This means that the administrator must define GPUs in BCM, in the `genericresources` mode of the `slurmclient` role, if that has not already been specified during `cm-wlm-setup`.

However there is no need in this case to specify all the details. It is enough to add a single generic resource named `gpu`, and to specify the number of such GPUs. In order to skip adding the generic resources to `gres.conf`, while still allowing GRES information to be added the `slurm.conf` file, the flag `AddToGresConfig` should be set to `no` in the `genericresource` entity. For example:

### Example

```
[basecm11]# configurationoverlay use slurm-client
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[slurm-client]->roles]# use slurmclient
[...[slurmclient]]% genericresources
[...[slurmclient]->genericresources]# add autodetected-gpus
[...[slurmclient*]->genericresources*[autodetected-gpus*]]# set name gpu
[...[slurmclient*]->genericresources*[autodetected-gpus*]]# set count 8
[...[slurmclient*]->genericresources*[autodetected-gpus*]]# set addtогresconfig no
[...[slurmclient*]->genericresources*[autodetected-gpus*]]# commit
[...[slurmclient]->genericresources[autodetected-gpus]]% wlm use slurm
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% set gpuautodetect nvml
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]]% commit
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]%
```

Initial generic resources configuration for Slurm GPU autodetection can also be done during Slurm setup by `cm-wlm-setup`. If GPU configuration is chosen in the TUI screen of `cm-wlm-setup` (figure 7.22):

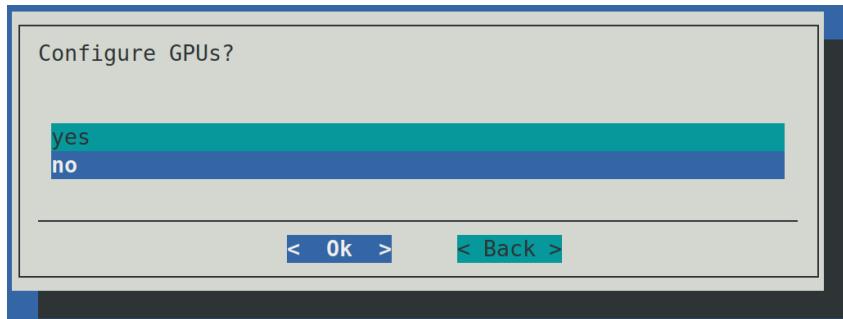


Figure 7.22: The screen prompting for GPU configuration in `cm-wlm-setup`

then the TUI allows Slurm GPU autodetection options to be selected (figure 7.23):

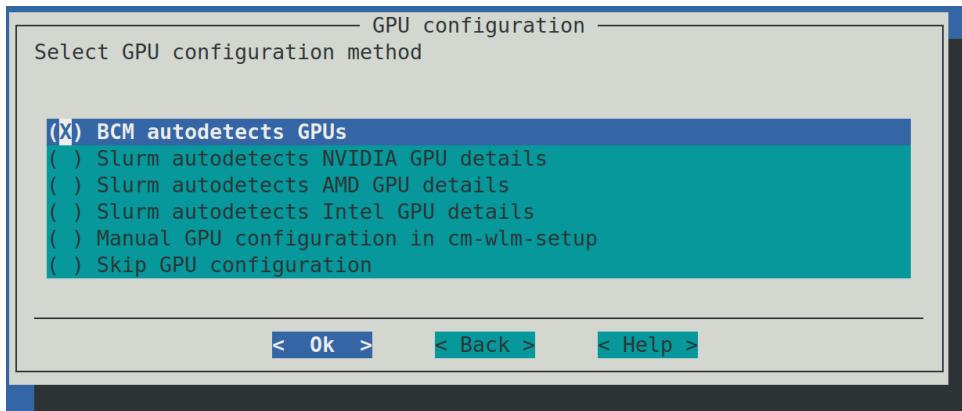


Figure 7.23: The GPU configuration screen of cm-wlm-setup

The options are the same as those described in the list of 7 options for GPU auto detect (page 375). The options result in the following actions:

- **BCM autodetects GPUs:** BCM automatically detects numbers and types of GPUs on the selected nodes and configures `slurm.conf` appropriately. The administrator is not asked to configure anything. This option does not work if the nodes have GPUs from a mix of vendors.
- **Slurm autodetects <vendor> GPU details:** the administrator is prompted to specify numbers and types of GPUs later on. These values are then added to the `Gres` parameter of `NodeName` lines in `slurm.conf`, while Slurm autodetects the rest of the GPU details.
- **Manual GPU configuration in cm-wlm-setup:** the administrator is prompted to enter the GPU parameters manually. The manual entries are then converted to appropriate lines in `gres.conf`.

**Slurm GPU cluster settings:** When a GPU is configured the following parameters can be configured with BCM:

Base View Option	Slurm Object Value Within WLM Mode Of cmsh	Description
Select Type	SelectType	Identifies the type of resource selection algorithm to be used. Changing this value causes the <code>slurmctld</code> daemon to be restarted. Default: Consumable trackable resource:select/cons_tres
Select Type Parameters	SelectTypeParameters	Parameters for the resource selection algorithm. Acceptable values for these parameters depend upon the algorithm selected. Default: Core as a consumable resource: CR_Core

...continues

*...continued*

Base View Option	Slurm Object Value Within WLM Mode Of cmsh	Description
Accounting Storage TRES	AccountingStorageTRES	Comma-separated list of resources to be tracked on the cluster, requested by an sbatch/srun job on submission. Default: GPU as a generic resource: gres/gpu

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% get selecttype
select/cons_tres
```

**MIG and Slurm:** NVIDIA's Multi-Instance GPU (MIG) technology is a way to optimize GPU use. MIG allows a single GPU to be partitioned into up to 7 separate logical GPU instances, each providing separate GPU resources to user jobs. Slurm is MIG-capable since version 21.08.

BCM automates the configuration of MIG profiles as GPU generic resource types. This means that a user can request GPUs by type, and Slurm then tracks the MIG profiles usage.

MIG detection on Slurm compute nodes (nodes with the slurmclient role assigned) means that the slurm.conf and gres.conf files are automatically configured by CMDaemon as follows:

- slurm.conf:

1. For each node, NodeName parameter lines have a Gres specification (generic resource type specification) with the MIG profile names appended as strings. The strings take the format:

gpu:<profile>:<number>

where <number> is the number of instances with the profile name of gpu:<profile>. For example:

- (a) A GPU on node001 is partitioned into two MIG instances, one with a profile name of 3g.40gb, and the other with a profile name of 4g.40gb:

#### Example

```
NodeName=node001 ... Gres=gpu:3g.40gb:1,gpu:4g.40gb:1 ...
```

- (b) A GPU on node001 is partitioned into two MIG instances, both with same profile name 3g.20gb. Also present is a regular GPU, a40, that is configured manually as a generic resource:

#### Example

```
NodeName=node001 ... Gres=gpu:a40:1,gpu:3g.20gb:2 ...
```

2. The GresTypes parameter line has the MIG profiles from all the compute nodes.

#### Example

```
GresTypes=3g.40gb,4g.40gb,gpu
```

3. The AccountingStorageTRES parameter line includes the new generic resource per MIG profile.

#### Example

```
AccountingStorageTRES=gres/gpu,gres/gpu:3g.40gb,gres/gpu:4g.40gb
```

- `gres.conf`: the `AutoDetect` parameter is set to `NVML` for the nodes where MIGs are detected.

### Example

```
NodeName=node[001-016] AutoDetect=NVML
```

In this case Slurm detects the MIG details (links, file, cores, and so on) automatically.

If the GPUs are repartitioned by BCM, then the Slurm configuration is by default automatically updated with the new GPU types according to the new MIG profiles. The default value of `yes` can be modified with the `configuremigs` parameter in Slurm cluster settings:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% set configuremigs no; commit
```

The administrator can validate that the MIG devices are correctly recognized by Slurm, by checking the `Gres` line output of the `scontrol show node` command:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# scontrol show node node001 | grep "Gres="
Gres=gpu:4g.40gb:1(S:0),gpu:3g.40gb:1(S:0)
```

The presence of a socket value such as `S:0` indicates that Slurm detected the MIG details on the node as expected.

**Slurm node settings:** The parameter value for a Slurm option in `slurm.conf` is set by CMDaemon, if its value is not: 0.

A parameter value of 0 means that the default values of Slurm are used. These usually have the value: 0.

The advanced options that CMDaemon manages for Slurm are:

Base View Option	Slurm Option	Description
Features	Feature=<string> entry in the file <code>slurm.conf</code>	Arbitrary strings can be entered to indicate some characteristics of a node, one string per entry. For example: <code>text1</code> <code>text2</code> and so on. These become part of the: <code>Feature=text1, text2...</code> attribute to the <code>NodeName=&lt;node name&gt;</code> entry line in <code>slurm.conf</code> , as indicated in <code>man slurm.conf.5</code> . The strings also become added attributes to the <code>GresTypes</code> entry of that file. Default: blank.

---

...continues

*...continued*

Base View Option	Slurm Option	Description
Slots	CPU	Number of logical processors on the node. For Slurm 20 and beyond, CMDDaemon detects the number of CPU cores, and sets <code>procs=number of cores</code> via slots autodetection. Default for Slurm prior to version 20: 0
Sockets	Sockets	Processor chips on node. If this is defined, then <code>SocketsPerBoard</code> must not be defined. Default: 0
Cores per socket	CoresPerSocket	Number of cores per socket. Default: 0
ThreadsPerCore	ThreadsPerCore	Number of logical threads for a single core. Default: 0
Boards	Boards	Number of baseboards in a node. Default: 0
SocketsPerBoard	SocketsPerBoard	Number of processor chips on baseboard. If this is defined, then <code>Sockets</code> must not be defined. Default: 0
RealMemory	RealMemory	Size of real memory on the node, MB. Default: 0
NodeHostname	NodeHostname	Default: as defined by Slurm's <code>NodeName</code> parameter.
NodeAddr	NodeAddr	Default: as set by Slurm's <code>NodeHostname</code> parameter.
State	State	State of the node with user jobs. Possible Slurm values are: DOWN, DRAIN, FAIL, FAILING, and UNKNOWN. Default: UNKNOWN
Weight	Weight	The priority of the node for scheduling. Default: 0

*...continues*

*...continued*

Base View Option	Slurm Option	Description
Port	Port	Port that slurmd listens to on the compute node. Default: as defined by SlurmdPort parameter. If SlurmdPort is not specified during build: Default: 6818.
TmpDisk	TmpDisk	Total size of Slurm's temporary filesystem, TmpFS, typically /tmp, in MB. TmpFS is the storage location available to user jobs for temporary storage. Default: 0
Options	extra options	Extra options that are added to slurm.conf

Further Slurm documentation is available:

- via man pages under /cm/local/apps/slurm/current/man/
- as HTML documentation in the version dependent directory of the form: /cm/local/apps/slurm/current/share/doc/slurm-<version>/html, or
- at the Slurm website at <http://slurm.schedmd.com/documentation.html>

Slurm is set up with reasonable defaults, but administrators familiar with Slurm can reconfigure the configuration file using a web browser. The web browser can be used, depending on the Slurm version being used, with one of the following paths:

- /cm/local/apps/slurm/current/share/doc/slurm-24.05.4/html/ or
- /cm/local/apps/slurm/current/share/doc/slurm-24.11.0/html/

The choice of JavaScript-based configuration generators is then:

- configurator.easy.html: for a simplified configurator
- configurator.html: for a full version of the configurator.

If the configuration file becomes mangled beyond repair, the original default can be regenerated once again by re-installing the Slurm package, then running the script /cm/local/apps/slurm/current/scripts/cm-restore-db-password, and then running cm-wlm-setup. Care must be taken to avoid duplicate parameters being set in the configuration file—slurmd may not function correctly in such a configuration.

**Slurm NVIDIA Sharp settings:** The Sharp plugin can be enabled by setting the following:

- SelectType to select/select/nvidia\_sharp

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% get selecttype
select/nvidia_sharp
```

- SelectTypeParameters with these mandatory parameters:
  - CR\_CPU or CR\_Core or CR\_Socket

- OTHER\_CONS\_TRES
- CR\_NVIDIA\_SHARP\_V3

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]]% get selecttypeparameters
CR_SOCKET,OTHER_CONS_TRES,CR_NVIDIA_SHARP_V3
```

- the Topology plugin must be set to topology/tree (page 377)
- the value for Licenses must be set:

### Example

```
Licenses=pod01:32,ibcleaf01-01:8,ibcleaf01-02:8,ibcleaf01-03:8,ibcleaf01-04:8
```

Here, pod01, and ibcleaf01-01...ibcleaf01-04 are switches. The number after the colon (:) is the *Sharp allocation*, which is the job connection limit for the switch. A job running on a node does not connect to a switch if that would exceed the Sharp allocation.

SelectType and SelectTypeParameters are simple parameters inside the cluster entity, while Licenses is a submode:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% licenses
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->licenses[ibcleaf01-02]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name              ibcleaf01-02
Count             8
```

## Running Slurm

Slurm can be disabled and re-initialized with the `cm-wlm-setup` tool (section 7.3) during package installation itself.

Alternatively, role assignment and role removal can be used to adjust what nodes, if any, run Slurm. The assignment and removal of roles can be carried out from Base View (section 7.4.1) or `cmsh` (section 7.4.2).

The Slurm workload manager runs these daemons:

1. as servers:
  - (a) `slurmdbd`: The database that tracks job accounting. It is part of the `slurmdbd` service.
  - (b) `slurmctld`: The controller daemon. Monitors Slurm processes, accepts jobs, and assigns resources. It is part of the `slurm` service.
  - (c) `munged`: The authentication (client-and-server) daemon. It is part of the `munge` service.
2. as clients:
  - (a) `slurmd`: The compute node daemon that monitors and handles tasks allocated by `slurmctld` to the node. It is part of the `slurm` service.
  - (b) `slurmstepd`: A temporary process spawned by the `slurmd` compute node daemon to handle Slurm job steps. It is not initiated directly by users or administrators.
  - (c) `munged`: The authentication (client-and-server) daemon. It is part of the `munge` service.

Logs for the daemons are saved on the node that they run on. Accordingly, the locations are:

- /var/log/slurmdbd
- /var/log/slurmd
- /var/log/slurmctld
- /var/log/munge/munged.log

### 7.5.2 Configuring And Running PBS

#### PBS Variants And Versions

BCM is integrated with PBS Professional Commercial workload manager version 2022, and with OpenPBS workload manager version 22.05.

- **PBS Professional:** This is the commercial variant. It requires a license or a license server in order to run jobs. This information can be provided during a run of the setup wizard, or it can be manually configured after setup.

- The packages for version 2022 are available as:

- \* pbspro2022 for the server,
    - \* pbspro2022-client for the compute nodes.

Pre-2020 major versions of this commercial PBS variant were denoted by 2 digits (such as 18 or 19) to signify the year. Since version 20 the version numbering is denoted by 4 digits (such as 2021 and 2022).

- **OpenPBS:** This is the open source variant with community support (<http://openpbs.org>). The community edition packages are available as:

- openpbs22.05 for the server,
  - openpbs22.05-client for the compute nodes.

and as

- openpbs23.06 for the server,
  - openpbs23.06-client for the compute nodes.

When no particular PBS variant is specified in BCM documentation, then the text is valid for both variants. BCM provides a similar level of integration for the commercial and the community packages. It is up to the cluster administrator to decide which variant is set up.

Both variants can be installed as a selection option during NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11 installation, at the point when a workload manager must be selected (figure 3.9 of the *Installation Manual*). Alternatively they can be installed later on, when the cluster has already been set up.

The PBS packages that the BCM repositories provide should be used instead of other available versions, such as from the Linux distribution.

If the PBS packages themselves have not been picked up, they can be installed and removed with a package manager such as YUM.

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# yum install pbspro2022 pbspro2022-client
[root@basecm11 ~]# yum install --installroot=/cm/images/default-image pbspro2022-client
```

If BCM has already been set up without PBS, but with PBS packages installed via YUM, then the cm-wlm-setup tool (section 7.3) should be used to install and initialize PBS.

## Installing PBS

After package installation via the package manager, as described in the preceding section, PBS can be installed and initialized to work with BCM via `cm-wlm-setup`. With no options, a TUI session is started to guide the process. The alternative CLI process with options might take the following forms:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-wlm-setup --wlm pbspro --wlm-cluster-name ppro --license <license information>
```

or

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-wlm-setup --wlm openpbs --wlm-cluster-name opbs
```

The option `--wlm pbspro` installs the commercial version, while `--wlm openpbs` installs the community version.

The *license information* is either a path to a license file, or it is a Altair license server address list in the format:

```
<port1>@<host1>:<port2>@<host2>:<...>@<...>:<portN>@<hostN>
```

This license information can also be set manually for the `pbs_license_info` attribute. For example if there is just one license server, `pbspro-license-server`, serving on port 6200, it could be set with `qmgr` as follows:

### Example

```
qmgr -c "set server pbs_license_info = 6200@pbspro-license-server"
```

The software components are installed and initialized by default under the `Spool` directory, which is defined by the `PBS_HOME` environment variable. The directory is named after the WLM cluster name, and follows a path of the form:

`/cm/shared/apps/pbspro/var/spool/<WLM cluster name>`

or

`/cm/shared/apps/openpbs/var/spool/<WLM cluster name>`

as appropriate.

The paths `/cm/shared/apps/pbspro` or `/cm/shared/apps/openpbs` are the `Prefix` settings of the WLM, and depend on whether the WLM is running PBS Professional, or OpenPBS.

Users must load an environment module associated with the cluster name to set `$PBS_HOME` and other environment variables, in order to use that cluster.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load pbspro
```

## Updating From PBS v2021 To v2022

An old PBS v2021 version can be upgraded to v2022.

The release notes in the guide at [https://2022.help.altair.com/2022.1.1/PBS%20Professional/PBS\\_RN\\_2022.1.1.pdf](https://2022.help.altair.com/2022.1.1/PBS%20Professional/PBS_RN_2022.1.1.pdf) should be checked to identify possible upgrade issues.

To preserve the job history from v2021, steps to carry out the upgrade are as follows:

1. Scheduling should be disabled:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# qmgr -c 'set server scheduling = false'      #remember to set to true later
```

A BCM way of preventing nodes from taking on jobs is to drain all the nodes that can run jobs. For example all the compute nodes that have the status UP:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device drain -s UP      #remember to undrain later
Engine   Node       Status        Reason
-----
pbspro  node001    Drained      Drained by CMDaemon
```

The cluster administrator should check that there are no running jobs.

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm jobs; list
Type      Job ID     User      Queue      Running time Status  Nodes
-----
```

Queued jobs, where the Status column shows the value Q, are not an issue.

2. The autostart setting for the pbsserver service must be set to no:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use basecm11; services
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]% set pbsserver autostart no; commit
```

This is to prevent CMDaemon restarting the PBS server automatically and interfering with the next few housekeeping steps.

3. The pbsserver service on the head node is stopped from within cmsh:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use master
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% services
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]% stop pbsserver
...
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]% status pbsserver
Service      Status
-----
pbsserver    [STOPPED ]
```

4. The cluster administrator would be wise to make a backup of the PBS instance <PBS instance> at /cm/shared/apps/pbspro/var/spool/<PBS instance> directory on the head node, in case of a contingency.
5. The cluster administrator must remove the pbspro2021 and pbspro2021-client packages from the head node and software image(s) using the package manager.
6. The cluster administrator must install the pbspro2022 and pbspro22-client packages on the head node, and the pbspro2022-client package in the software image(s) using the package manager.
7. The PBS version must be set to 22 in cmsh:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm use <PBS instance>
[basecm11[<PBS instance>]]% set version 22; commit
```

8. The PBS service on the head node must be manually restarted (outside of CMDaemon). That means running, for example:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# pbs_server
Connecting to PBS dataservice...connected to PBS dataservice@basecm11.cm.cluster
Using license server at 6200@pbspro-license-server
[root@basecm11 ~]#
```

This is to allow for enough time for the PBS database upgrades and any other PBS server upgrades to occur. This may take upwards of 10 minutes to complete.

Its status can be checked with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# /etc/init.d/pbs status
pbs_server is pid 1045633
pbs_sched is pid 762684
pbs_comm is 762669
```

or

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device use master; services; status pbsserver"
Service      Status
-----
pbsserver    [    UP    ]
```

Any post-upgrade steps outlined in the release notes documentation can now be carried out ([https://2022.help.altair.com/2022.1.1/PBS%20Professional/PBS\\_RN\\_2022.1.1.pdf](https://2022.help.altair.com/2022.1.1/PBS%20Professional/PBS_RN_2022.1.1.pdf)).

After the post-upgrade steps, the PBS service on the head node can be stopped again, outside of CMDaemon:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# qterm
```

The status can be checked with:

```
/etc/init.d/pbs status
```

or with:

```
cmsh -c "device use master; services; status pbsserver"
```

9. The autostart setting for the pbsserver service can now be set to yes again:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use basecm11; services
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]% set pbsserver autostart yes; commit
```

10. The pbserver service on the head node is restarted:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]% start pbsserver
...
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->services]% status pbsserver
Service      Status
-----
pbsserver    [    UP    ]
```

11. The pbsmom services on the compute nodes are then restarted:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device foreach -l pbsproclient (services; restart pbsmom)
```

12. Scheduling should be enabled again:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# qmgr -c 'set server scheduling = true'
```

If the nodes were drained, then they can be undrained:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device undrain -s UP
Engine   Node      Status      Reason
-----
pbspro   node001
```

13. The administrator can then run the tracejob command for PBS to check if the previous job information can still be accessed.

### PBS Configuration

PBS documentation is to be found in the PBS Professional Guides, which can be accessed from: [https://community.altair.com/community?id=altair\\_product\\_documentation](https://community.altair.com/community?id=altair_product_documentation).

By default, PBS examples are available under the directory /cm/shared/examples/workload/pbspro/jobsheets/

Some PBS configuration under BCM can be done using roles. The roles are the same for the variants of PBS, and are denoted as pbspro roles:

- In Base View the roles setting allows the configuration of PBS client and server roles.
  - For the PBS server role, the role is enabled, for example on a head node basecm11, via a navigation path of:  
Devices > Head Nodes > basecm11 > Settings > Roles > Add > PBS pro server role
    - \* Within the role window for the server role, its installation path and server spool path can be specified.
  - For the PBS client role, the role is enabled along a similar navigation path, just ending at PBS pro client role. The number of slots, GPUs and other properties can be specified, and queues can be selected.

- In cmsh the client and server roles can be managed for the individual nodes in device mode, or managed for a node category in category mode, or they can be managed for a configuration overlay in configurationoverlay mode.

For example, if there is a PBS cluster instance called pbsfast, then the head node could be assigned a pbsproserver role, with the following properties:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device roles basecm11
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles]% assign pbsproserver
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->roles*[pbsproserver*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name                pbsproserver
Revision
Type                PbsProServerRole
Add services        yes
WLM cluster
Provisioning associations <0 internally used>
External Server      no
Comm Settings       <submode>
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->roles*[pbsproserver*]]% set wlmcluster pbsfast; commit
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[pbsproserver]]%
```

Similarly, a category of nodes that can be used by the instance pbsfast, and called fastnodes, may have a PBS client role assigned and set with the following properties:

### Example

```
[basecm11->category[fastnodes]->roles[pbsproclient]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name                pbsproclient
Revision
Type                PbsProClientRole
Add services        yes
WLM cluster         pbsfast
Slots               1
GPUs
All Queues         no
Queues
Properties
Provisioning associations <0 internally used>
Mom Settings        <submode>
Comm Settings       <submode>
Node Customizations <0 in submode>
```

**Specifying nodes for job queues for PBS:** The administrator can specify the nodes that are associated with a job queue.

- Prior to BCM version 11, job queues were specified for nodes only by using the queues parameter of the pbsproclient role at the device, category, or configurationoverlay mode level.

For example, for the configuration overlay openpbs-client that defines the PBS client configuration by default, the nodes for the PBS client role are the nodes in the default category workq. Within the configuration overlay, within the pbsproclient role, the default queue to be used is set to workq by default:

### Example

```
root@basecm11:~# cmsh
[basecm11]% configurationoverlay use openpbs-client
```

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[openpbs-client]]% get categories
default
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[openpbs-client]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[openpbs-client]->roles]% use pbsproclient
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[openpbs-client]->roles[pbsproclient]]% get queues
workq
```

- Starting with BCM version 11, the administrator can also add nodes to queues directly from within `wlm` mode for a particular WLM, within the `jobqueue` mode for a particular queue, by setting nodes for particular node grouping parameters. For example, for PBS the following queue parameters are available:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[openpbs]->jobqueue[workq]]% show | egrep -i '(overlay|nodegroups|compute|catego)'
Overlays
Categories
Nodegroups
Compute nodes
```

Thus `workq` is used by nodes that have been specified in the following groupings:

- Overlays: nodes in these configuration overlays (including nodes of categories that are in this overlay)
- Categories: nodes in these categories
- Nodegroups: nodes in these node groups
- Compute nodes: nodes listed in this parameter

Cloudbursting with cluster extension may need special handling for PBS. If this feature is needed, then the administrator should contact BCM support via the website <https://www.nvidia.com/en-us/data-center/bright-cluster-manager/support/>.

Further configuration of PBS is done using its `qmgr` command and is covered in the PBS documentation.

### Running PBS

For the WLM cluster instances, PBS runs the following four daemons:

1. a `pbs_server` daemon running, typically on the head node. This handles submissions acceptance, and talks to the execution daemons on the compute nodes when sending and receiving jobs. It writes logs to the `var/spool/<WLM cluster instance>/server_logs/` directory, which is a directory that is under `/cm/shared/apps/pbspro` or `/cm/shared/apps/openpbs`. Queues for this service are configured with the `qmgr` command.
2. a `pbs_sched` scheduler daemon, also typically running on the head node. It writes logs to the `var/spool/<WLM cluster instance>/sched_logs/` directory under `/cm/shared/apps/pbspro` or `/cm/shared/apps/openpbs`.
3. a `pbs_mom` execution daemon running on each compute node. This accepts, manages, and returns the results of jobs on the compute nodes. By default, it writes logs
  - to the relative directory `var/spool/<WLM cluster instance>/mom_logs/`, which is under `/cm/shared/apps/pbspro` or `/cm/shared/apps/openpbs`
  - and

- to `/cm/local/apps/pbspro/var/spool/mom_logs/` on nodes with the client role.
4. a `pbs_comm` communication daemon usually running on the head node. This handles communication between PBS daemons, except for server-to-scheduler and server-to-server daemons communications. It writes logs
- to the relative directory `var/spool/<WLM cluster instance>/comm_logs/`, which is under `/cm/shared/apps/pbspro` or `/cm/shared/apps/openpbs`  
and
  - to `/cm/local/apps/pbspro/var/spool/comm_logs/` on nodes with the client role.

### Running PBS On Cluster Extension

Running PBS on a cluster extension must not involve any form of NAT, including netmap from iptables. Communication for both the commercial and the community PBS variants fail under the default NAT netmap via OpenVPN. Using a hardware VPN, Direct Connect (for AWS) or ExpressRoute (for Azure) is a workaround for using OpenVPN/netmap.

When PBS is set up with `cm-wlm-setup` or during the installation of the head node, then the `pbsproclient` role is assigned by default via a configuration overlay to the `default` node category only.

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "category; roles default; list"
Name (key)
-----
[overlay:openpbs-client] pbsproclient
...
```

In order to add cloud nodes to PBS, the administrator can assign the `pbsproclient` role manually.

There are two types of PBS configuration in this case. The configurations can be applied to both the commercial and to the community editions.

1. `pbs_mom` daemons on cloud compute nodes communicate to the `pbs_server` directly.

This scenario is suited to a non-VPN setup where cloud nodes have addresses on the same IP subnet for the cloud and for the on-premises parts of the cluster. Usually this kind of setup is used with Amazon DirectConnection or Azure ExpressRoute. In order to add new cloud nodes, the administrator just needs to assign the `pbsproclient` role to the `cloud` node category or the `cloud` nodes directly.

2. `pbs_mom` daemons on cloud compute nodes communicate to the `pbs_server` via a separate `pbs_comm` server. For BCM the use of the `cloud-director` is recommended for this purpose.

This can be useful if cluster extension is configured with a VPN tunnel setup. In this case the `pbs_mom` running on a cloud node communicates with the `pbs_server` by using the VPN connection, and the communication traffic goes via an OpenVPN server. The OpenVPN connection adds overhead on the `cloud-director` where the OpenVPN daemon runs. If the traffic is routed via `pbs_comm` running on `cloud-director`, then the OpenVPN server is not used. This is because `pbs_comm` daemon on the `cloud director` resolves the `cloud pbs_mom` addresses with `cloud IP addresses`, while `pbs_server` resolves `pbs_comm` on the `cloud director` by using the `VPN tunnel IP`.

In order to configure PBS to pass the communication traffic via `pbs_comm`, the administrator should assign `pbsproclient` roles to not only the compute cloud nodes, but also to the `cloud-director`. On the `cloud director`, the administrator should enable `pbs_comm` daemon to start, and `pbs_mom` daemon to not start, automatically. These actions are done in the `commsettings` and `momsettings` submodes of `pbsproclient` role.

For the `pbsproclient` role assigned in the configuration overlay, the settings can be accessed in `cmsh` as in the following:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11)% configurationoverlay
[basecm11->configurationoverlay)% use openpbs-client
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[openpbs-client]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[openpbs-client]->roles]% use pbsproclient
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[openpbs-client]->roles[pbsproclient]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name                pbsproclient
Revision
Type                PbsProClientRole
Add services         yes
WLM cluster          openpbs
Slots               1
GPUs                0
All Queues          no
Queues              workq
Properties
Provisioning associations <0 internally used>
Mom Settings         <submode>
Comm Settings        <submode>
Node Customizations <0 in submode>
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[openpbs-client]->roles[pbsproclient]]% commsettings
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[openpbs-client]->roles[pbsproclient]->commsettings]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Comm Routers
Revision
Comm Threads         4
Start Comm            no
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[openpbs-client]->roles[pbsproclient]->commsettings]% ...
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[openpbs-client]->roles[pbsproclient]]% momsettings
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[openpbs-client]->roles[pbsproclient]->momsettings]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Output Hostname
Revision
Leaf Routers
Leaf Name
Leaf Management FQDN    no
Start Mom              yes
Spool                 /cm/local/apps/openpbs/var/spool
```

Further configuration that should be carried out is to set the `commrouters` parameter on the cloud director to `master`, and set the `leafrouters` parameter on the compute cloud nodes to the host-name of the cloud director.

For example (some text elided):

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11)% category roles cloud-nodes
[basecm11->category[cloud-nodes]->roles]% assign pbsproclient
```

```
[basecm11->category*[cloud-nodes*]->roles*[pbsproclient*]]% set queues cloudq
[basecm11->...*]->roles*[pbsproclient*]->momsettings% momsettings
[basecm11->...*]->roles*[pbsproclient*]->momsettings% set leafrouters director
[basecm11->...*]->roles*[pbsproclient*]->momsettings% commit
[basecm11->...*]->roles[pbsproclient]->momsettings% device roles director
[basecm11->...*]->roles% assign pbsproclient
[basecm11->...*]->roles*[pbsproclient*]]% momsettings
[basecm11->...*]->roles*[pbsproclient*]->momsettings% set startmom no
[basecm11->...*]->roles*[pbsproclient*]->momsettings% ..
[basecm11->...*]->roles*[pbsproclient*]]% commsettings
[basecm11->...*]->roles*[pbsproclient*]->commsettings% set startcomm yes
[basecm11->...*]->roles*[pbsproclient*]->commsettings% set commrouters master
[basecm11->...*]->roles*[pbsproclient*]->commsettings% commit
[basecm11->...]->roles[pbsproclient]->commsettings%
```

### 7.5.3 Installing, Configuring, And Running LSF

IBM prefers to make LSF available directly from their Passport Advantage Online website, which is why it is not available by direct selection in figure 3.9 of the *Installation Manual*.

IBM provides LSF in 2 ways.

1. IBM Spectrum LSF Suites ([https://www.ibm.com/products/hpc-workload-management?mhsrc=ibmsearch\\_a&mhq=lsf](https://www.ibm.com/products/hpc-workload-management?mhsrc=ibmsearch_a&mhq=lsf) (April 2024)). These are not supported by BCM.
2. IBM LSF Standard Edition v10.1 (<https://www.ibm.com/support/pages/node/631591> (April 2024)). This is supported by BCM.

Installation is carried out with `cm-wlm-setup` as explained later on in this section 7.5.3. LSF Standard Edition 10.1 requires a licence (“entitlement”) from IBM. The product is updated with patch releases. Patch releases can be interim fixes, or they can be a bundle of interim fixes, called a fix pack. The fixes for 64-bit Linux can be viewed at:

[https://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/swg/selectFixes?parent=IBM%20Spectrum%20Computing&product=ibm/Other+software/IBM+Spectrum+LSF&release=10.1&platform=Linux+64-bit,x86\\_64&function=all](https://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/swg/selectFixes?parent=IBM%20Spectrum%20Computing&product=ibm/Other+software/IBM+Spectrum+LSF&release=10.1&platform=Linux+64-bit,x86_64&function=all)

(April 2024), and filters can be selected to fine tune the fixes that are displayed.

Fix packs use a versioning that follows the format:

10.1.0.<version>

where <version> can be a string such as:

14-spk-2023-Apr-build601547

Patches are installed by downloading the patches and installing them manually as new patches are released.

Somewhat confusingly, the archived IBM Spectrum LSF Suite version 10.2.0.9 has LSF Standard edition 10.1 as a component. The component is supported, but installation from the suite is not supported by BCM. That is, installation using the official IBM method or by carrying out a manual installation are both not supported by BCM. A cluster administrator should therefore not try to install LSF Standard Edition 10.1 from a IBM Spectrum LSF Suite release.

#### Installing LSF

The workload manager LSF version 10.1 is installed and integrated into NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11 with the following steps:

1. The following LSF files should be downloaded from the IBM web site into a directory on the head node:

- Installation package: `lsf<lsf_ver>_lsfinstall_linux_<cpu_arch>.tar.Z`
- Distribution package: `lsf<lsf_ver>_linux<kern_ver>-glibc<glibc_ver>-<cpu_arch>.tar.Z`
- Documentation package (optional): `lsf<lsf_ver>_documentation.tar.Z`

Here:

- `<lsf_ver>` is the LSF version, for example: 10.1
- `<kern_ver>` is the Linux kernel version, for example: 2.6
- `<glibc_ver>` is the glibc library version, for example: 2.3
- `<cpu_arch>` is the CPU architecture, for example: x86\_64

A check should be done to ensure that the `.tar.Z` files have not been renamed or had their names changed to lower case during the download, in order to avoid installation issues. All the files must be in the same directory before installation.

In case of an existing failover setup, the installation is done on the active head node.

A license file for LSF may also be needed for the installation, but it does not have to be in the same directory as the other `.tar.Z` files.

2. The `cm-lsf` package must be installed on the head node. The `cm-lsf-client` package must be installed on both the head node and within the software images. By default they should have been already installed. If not then they can be installed manually from the BCM repository. For RHEL-based distributions the procedure looks like:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# yum install cm-lsf cm-lsf-client
[root@basecm11 ~]# chroot <IMAGE> yum install cm-lsf-client
```

For SLES distributions the procedure looks like:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# zypper install cm-lsf cm-lsf-client
[root@basecm11 ~]# chroot <IMAGE> zypper install cm-lsf-client
```

For Ubuntu distributions the procedure looks like:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# apt-get install cm-lsf cm-lsf-client
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-chroot-sw-img <IMAGE>
[root@basecm11 ~]# apt-get install cm-lsf-client
...
[root@basecm11 ~]# exit
```

The `cm-lsf` and `cm-lsf-client` packages contain a template for an environment module file, an installation configuration file, and systemd unit files. The installation configuration file may be tuned by the administrator if required. It is passed to the `lsfinstall` script distributed with LSF, which is executed by `cm-wlm-setup` during setup. To change the default values in the installation configuration file, the administrator should change the template file:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cd /cm/shared/apps/lsf/var/cm/
[root@basecm11 cm]# vi install.config.template
...
```

Values enclosed by a percentage sign, '%', are replaced by cm-wlm-setup during installation. If such values are replaced by custom values, then cm-wlm-setup does not change them, and the custom values are used during installation.

If install.config is changed instead of the template file, then cm-wlm-setup replaces it with the configuration file generated from the template. So, changing install.config directly should almost certainly not ever be done.

3. cm-wlm-setup is run. The directory where the LSF files were downloaded is specified on one of the setup screens, or with the --archives-location option.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-wlm-setup --wlm lsf --setup --archives-location /root/lsf
```

The same can be achieved by executing cm-wlm-setup without any command line arguments. The required information can be specified within the TUI configuration screens in this case. Also the same can be achieved with the WLM Wizard in Base View.

4. The nodes are then rebooted, and the LSF command bhosts then displays an output similar to:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load lsf
[root@basecm11 ~]# bhosts
HOST_NAME STATUS JL/U MAX NJOBS RUN SSUSP ...
basecm11 ok - 2 0 0 0 ...
head2 ok - 0 0 0 0 ...
node001 ok - 1 0 0 0 ...
node002 ok - 1 0 0 0 ...
node003 unavail - 1 0 0 0 ...
node004 closed - 1 0 0 0 ...
node005 ok - 1 0 0 0 ...
```

The output in the preceding example has been truncated for this manual, for convenience.

The installation status can be checked with the service lsfd (some output elided):

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# systemctl status lsfd
lsfd.service - IBM Spectrum LSF
   Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/lsfd.service; enabled; vendor preset: disabled)
     Active: active (running) since Sat 2023-01-14 17:48:05 CET; 1 day 15h ago
   Process: 54334 ExecStart=/cm/shared/apps/lsf/current/etc/lsf_daemons start (code=exited, status=0/SUCCESS)
     Tasks: 13 (limit: 23269)
    Memory: 179.5M
      CGroup: /system.slice/lsfd.service
              |- 54410 /cm/shared/apps/lsf/...10.1/linux2.6-glibc2.3-x86_64/etc/res
              |- 54412 /cm/shared/apps/lsf/...10.1/linux2.6-glibc2.3-x86_64/etc/sbatchd
              |- 54427 /cm/shared/apps/lsf/...10.1/linux2.6-glibc2.3-x86_64/etc/mbatchd -d
                                /cm/shared/apps/l...
              |-102312 /cm/shared/apps/lsf/...10.1/linux2.6-glibc2.3-x86_64/etc/eauth -s
              |-344591 /cm/shared/apps/lsf/...10.1/linux2.6-glibc2.3-x86_64/etc/lim -d
                                /cm/shared/apps/l..
              |-344595 /cm/shared/apps/lsf/...10.1/linux2.6-glibc2.3-x86_64/etc/pim -d
                                /cm/shared/apps/...
              |-344612 /cm/shared/apps/lsf/...10.1/linux2.6-glibc2.3-x86_64/etc/melim
```

```

| -344647 /cm/shared/apps/lsf/...10.1_linux2.6-glibc2.3-x86_64/10.1...
`-457629 /cm/shared/apps/lsf/...10.1_linux2.6-glibc2.3-x86_64/10.1/...

Jan 14 23:29:30 basecm11 mbatchd[54427]: Jan 14 23:29:30 2023 54427:54427 3 10.1 ...
...
[root@basecm11 ~]#

```

while default queues can be seen by running:

```

[root@basecm11 ~]# module load lsf
[root@basecm11 ~]# bqueues
QUEUE_NAME      PRIQ STATUS          MAX JL/U JL/P ...
owners          43  Open:Active      -   -   -   ...
priority        43  Open:Active      -   -   -   ...
night           40  Open:Active      -   -   -   ...
chkpnt_rerun_qu 40  Open:Active      -   -   -   ...
short            35  Open:Active      -   -   -   ...
license          33  Open:Active      -   -   -   ...
normal           30  Open:Active      -   -   -   ...
interactive      30  Open:Active      -   -   -   ...
idle             20  Open:Active      -   -   -   ...

```

The output in the preceding example has been truncated for this manual, for convenience.

If more than one instance of an LSF cluster is set up, then the full modulefile name should be specified. For example:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load lsf/lsf1/10.1
```

## Configuring LSF

**LSF server configuration:** After LSF is set up with `cm-wlm-setup`, the following CMDaemon settings can be modified for the LSF server role:

- **External Server:** a value of yes means that LSF server daemons are running on an external server that is not managed by BCM.

The following settings are available in LSF cluster settings, and are applied to all the LSF roles of the LSF cluster:

- **Prefix:** this sets the path to the root location of the LSF installation. The default value is `/cm/shared/apps/lsf/current`.
- **Var:** this sets the path to the var directory of LSF. The default value is `/cm/shared/apps/lsf/var`.
- **Cgroups:** this is a submode that contains LSF-related cgroups settings.

The cgroups settings that affect LSF behavior are available via the LSF instance. For example, for an instance `lsf`, the settings can be accessed within `cmsh` via `cmsh->wlm[lsf]->cgroups`. The settings available are:

- **Automount:** if yes, then the workload manager tries to mount a subsystem if it is not mounted yet. The default value is No.
- **Job Cgroup Template:** this is the template relative job cgroup path. The token `$CLUSTER` specified in this template path is replaced with the actual LSF cluster name, and `$JOBID` is replaced by the job ID. The path is used by the BCM monitoring system in order collect job metrics from the cgroups. By default, the path is set to "`lsf/$CLUSTER/job.$JOBID.*`".

- **Process Tracking:** if yes, then processes are tracked based on job control functions such as: termination, suspension, resume, and other signaling. These are used on Linux systems that support the freezer subsystem under cgroups. The parameter sets LSF\_PROCESS\_TRACKING in `lsf.conf`.
- **Linux Cgroup Accounting:** if yes, then LSF tracks processes based on CPU and memory accounting. This is for Linux systems that support the memory and cpacct subsystems under cgroups. Once enabled, this parameter takes effect for new jobs. The parameter sets LSF\_LINUX\_CGROUP\_ACCT in `lsf.conf`.

If this parameter and Process Tracking are both enabled, then they take precedence over the parameters LSF\_PIM\_LINUX\_ENHANCE and EGO\_PIM\_SWAP\_REPORT in `lsf.conf`.

- **Mount Point:** specifies a path where cgroups is mounted. It only makes sense to set this when the location is not standard for the operating system.
- **Resource Enforce:** If yes, then resource enforcement is carried out through the Linux memory and cpuset subsystems under cgroups. This is for Linux systems with cgroup support. The parameter sets LSB\_RESOURCE\_ENFORCE in `lsf.conf`.

The server role settings can be modified as follows:

- **Within Base View:** For example for a head node `basecm11`, via a navigation path of Devices > Head Nodes > `basecm11` > Settings > Roles > LSF server role
- **Within cmsh:** For a particular category in the category mode, or a particular device in the device mode, the roles submode is chosen. Within the roles submode, the `lsfserver` object can be assigned or used. The following example shows how to set the LSF prefix parameter for the default category.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% configurationoverlay use lsf-server; roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[lsf-server]->roles]% use lsfserver
[basecm11->...[lsfserver]]% set externalserver yes
[basecm11->...[lsfserver*]]% commit
```

The global LSF cluster settings can be modified as follows:

- **Within Base View:**  
For example, for a head node `basecm11`, via a navigation path of HPC > Wlm Clusters > CLUSTER\_NAME > Settings
- **Within cmsh:**  
A particular LSF cluster instance can be chosen within `wlm` mode, to set its global parameters. The following example shows how to set the LSF prefix parameter for the `lsf1` cluster.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm use lsf1
[basecm11->wlm[lsf1]]% set prefix /cm/shared/apps/lsf2
[basecm11->wlm*[lsf1*]]% commit
```

**LSF client configuration:** After installation, the following CMDaemon settings can be specified for the LSF client role:

- **Queues** In cmsh, queues can be added using jobqueue mode. In LSF, the default queue is normal. More arbitrarily-named queues can be specified with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]->jobqueue] % add abnormal
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]->jobqueue*[abnormal*]]% add subnormal
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]->jobqueue*[subnormal*]]% add supernormal
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]->jobqueue*[supernormal*]]% commit
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]->jobqueue*[supernormal]]% ..
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]->jobqueue*]% list
Name (key)    Nodes
-----
abnormal
normal      node001..node005
subnormal
supernormal
```

The jobqueue values can be set for the LSF client role:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]->jobqueue*]% configurationoverlay
[basecm11->configurationoverlay]% use lsf-client
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[lsf-client]]% roles
[basecm11->...->roles]% use lsfclient
[basecm11->...->roles[lsfclient]]% get queues
normal
[basecm11->...->roles[lsfclient]]% set queues abnormal subnormal supernormal normal
[basecm11->...->roles*[lsfclient*]]% commit
[basecm11->...->roles*[lsfclient*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name               lsfclient
Revision
Type               LSFClientRole
Add services       yes
WLM cluster        lsf
Provisioning associations <0 internally used>
Slots              auto
All Queues         no
Queues             subnormal,supernormal,abnormal,normal
Server             yes
Host Model
Host Type          LINUX
GPUs              0
Node Customizations <0 in submode>
```

Alternatively, queues can be managed using Base View (section 7.6.2).

- **Specifying nodes for job queues for LSF** The administrator can specify the nodes that are associated with a job queue.

- Prior to BCM version 11, job queues were specified for nodes only by using the `queues` parameter of the `lsfclient` role at the device, category, or configurationoverlay mode level.

For example, for the configuration overlay `lsf-client` that defines the LSF client configuration by default, the nodes for the LSF client role are the nodes in the default category `normal`. Within the configuration overlay, within the `lsfclient` role, the default queue to be used is set to `normal` by default:

### Example

```
root@basecm11:~# cmsh
[basecm11]% configurationoverlay use lsf-client
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[lsf-client]]% get categories
default
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[lsf-client]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[lsf-client]->roles]% use lsfclient
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[lsf-client]->roles[lsfclient]]% get queues
normal
```

- Starting with BCM version 11, the administrator can also add nodes to queues directly from within `wlm` mode for a particular WLM, within the `jobqueue` mode for a particular queue, by setting nodes for particular node grouping parameters. For example, for LSF the following queue parameters are available:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[lsf]->jobqueue[normal]]% show | egrep -i '(overlay|nodegroups|compute|catego)'
Overlays
Categories
Nodegroups
Compute nodes
```

Thus `normal` is used by nodes that have been specified in the following groupings:

- \* **Overlays:** nodes in these configuration overlays (including nodes of categories that are in this overlay)
- \* **Categories:** nodes in these categories
- \* **Nodegroups:** nodes in these node groups
- \* **Compute nodes:** nodes listed in this parameter

- Options** A navigation path of:

Devices > Nodes [node001] > Edit > Settings > Roles > Add > LSF client role lets options be set for a regular node node001 (figure 7.24):

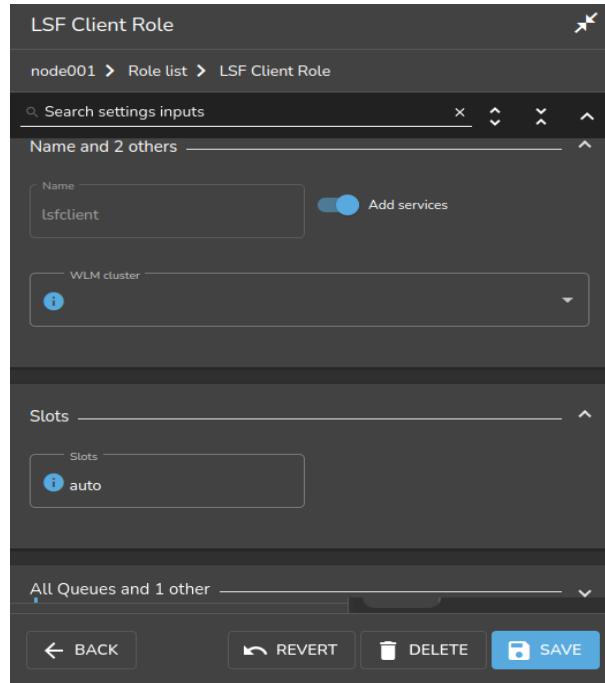


Figure 7.24: Base View access to LSF configuration options via roles window options

Available options are:

- **Slots:** The number of CPUs per node. By default LSF tries to determine the value automatically with the auto setting. If the number of slots is set to 0, then the node becomes an LSF submit host, so that no jobs can run on the host, but users can submit their jobs from this host using the LSF utilities.
- **Queues:** All queues can be set, or queues can be selected.
- **Server:** Whether the node is an LSF server
- **Host Model, Host Type:** Possible values for these are defined in `lsf.shared`
- **GPUs:** The number of GPUs per node.
- **Node Customizations:** LSF node custom properties (section 7.11).

From `cmsh` these properties are accessible from within the appropriate node or category `roles` submode (section 7.4.2).

**Submission hosts:** By default, all compute nodes to which the `lsfclient` role is assigned, also become submission hosts. This means that LSF users can submit their jobs from those compute nodes. If the administrator wants to allow users to submit their jobs from a non-compute node—for example from a login node—then the `lsfsubmit` role should be assigned, for example:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11~]# cmsh
[...->configurationoverlay[lsf1-submit]]% roles
[...->roles]% assign lsfsubmit
[...->roles*[lsfsubmit*]]% append lsfclusters lsf1
[...->roles*[lsfsubmit*]]% commit
[...->roles[lsfsubmit]]%
```

Configuring a node according to the preceding steps then allows users to submit their jobs from that node, without the submitted jobs getting scheduled to run on that node.

If more than one LSF cluster is set up, and they share the same submit host, then a single `lsfsubmit` role can be used. In this case, all the LSF cluster names should be appended to the `lsfcluster` parameter of the role.

**Further configuration:** For further configuration the *Administering Platform LSF* manual provided with the LSF software should be consulted.

### Running LSF

Role assignment and role removal enables and disables LSF from Base View (sections 7.4.1) or `cmsh` (section 7.4.2).

An active LSF master service (typically, but not necessarily on a head node) has the following LSF-related processes running on it:

Process/Service	Description
<code>res</code>	Remote Execution Server*
<code>sbatchd</code>	client batch job execution daemon*
<code>mbatchd</code>	master batch job execution daemon
<code>eauth</code>	External Authentication method
<code>lim</code>	Load Information Manager*
<code>pim</code>	Process Information Manager*
<code>pem</code>	Process Execution Manager*
<code>vemkd</code>	Platform LSF Kernel Daemon
<code>egosc</code>	Enterprise Grid Orchestrator service controller
<code>mbschd</code>	master batch scheduler daemon

\*These services/processes run on compute nodes.

Non-active LSF-masters running as compute nodes run the processes marked with an asterisk only.

LSF daemon logs are kept under `/cm/local/apps/lsf/var/log/`, on each of the nodes where LSF services run.

## 7.6 Using Base View With Workload Management

Viewing the workload manager services from Base View is described in section 7.4.3. The HPC (High Performance Computing) icon, which looks like a speedometer, is the Base View resource that allows the following items to be accessed:

- WLM clusters: for WLM cluster settings for a WLM cluster instance to be viewed and managed
- jobs: for jobs to be viewed and managed
- queues: for queues to be viewed and managed
- job queue stats: for job queue statistics to be viewed

These items are described next.

### 7.6.1 Jobs Display And Handling In Base View

The navigation path HPC > Jobs opens up the Job list window. This displays a list of recent job IDs, along with the user, status, scheduler used, queue, and nodes allocated to the job (figure 7.25).

Job list						
JOB ID	USER	STATUS	SCHEDULER	QUE...	NODES	
87	charlie	COMPLETED	slurm	defq	node002	 ▾
88	edgar	COMPLETED	slurm	defq	node002	 ▾
89	edgar	COMPLETED	slurm	defq	node002	 ▾
0.pj-92o	alice	R	pbspro	workq	node001	 ▾
1.pj-92o	charlie	E	pbspro	workq	node002	 ▾
2.pj-92o	alice	R	pbspro	workq		Hold  ▾
3.pj-92o	charlie	R	pbspro	workq		Release  ▾
4.pj-92o	david	E	pbspro	workq		Suspend  ▾
5.pj-92o	edgar	E	pbspro	workq		Resume  ▾
6.pj-92o	david	R	pbspro	workq		Cancel  ▾
7.pj-92o	edgar	E	pbspro	workq		

Figure 7.25: Workload manager job list window

Buttons in the last two columns allow the jobs to be examined and managed:

- The Show button, , is a window-opener button. It opens up a window with further details of the selected job.
- The Actions button, , brings up a pop-up menu. The menu options allow the selected job to be managed as follows:
  - The Hold option stops selected queued jobs from being considered for running by putting them in a Hold state (H in the Status column).
  - The Release option releases selected queued jobs in the Hold state so that they are considered for running again.
  - The Suspend option suspends selected running jobs (S in the Status column).
  - The Resume option allows selected suspended jobs to run again.
  - The Cancel option removes selected jobs from the queue.

## 7.6.2 Queues Display And Handling In Base View

The navigation path HPC > Wlm Clusters > Edit > Job Queues displays a list of queues available (figure 7.26).

Settings	Jobs	Job Queues	Job Queue Stats
Slurm Wlm Cluster slurm			
<input type="checkbox"/>	NAME ↑	 ▾	
<input type="checkbox"/>	antidesitterq	 ▾	
<input type="checkbox"/>	defq	 ▾	
<input type="checkbox"/>	gravq	 ▾	
<input type="checkbox"/>	holomorphq	 ▾	
<a href="#">BACK</a>		<a href="#">REVERT</a>	<a href="#">+ ADD</a>

Figure 7.26: Workload manager queues

Queues can be added or deleted. An Edit option allows existing queue parameters to be set, for example as in figure 7.27.

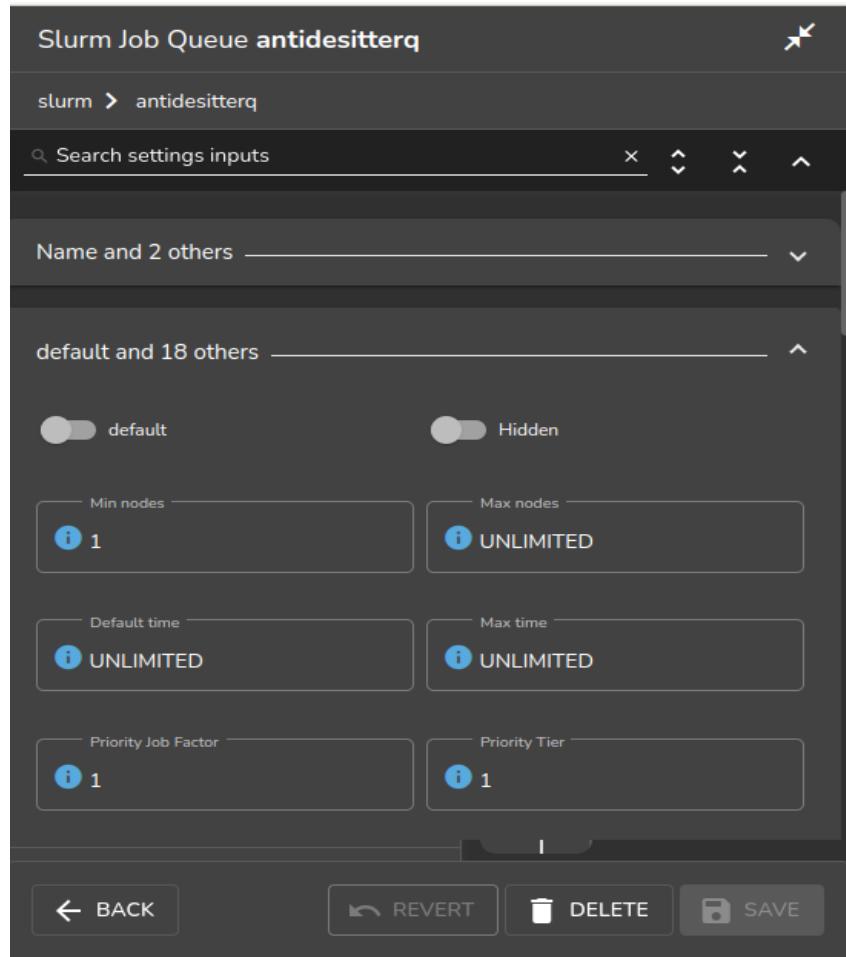


Figure 7.27: Workload manager queue parameters configuration

## 7.7 Using cmsh With Workload Management

The `wlm` mode in `cmsh` gives the administrator access to the WLM instances running on the cluster.

The `cmsh` tree (Appendix M) has the following submodes structure under the `wlm` mode:

```
-- wlm
  |-- accounting
  |-- cgroups
  |-- chargeback
  |-- jobqueue
  |-- jobs
  |-- ocisettings
  |-- pelogs
  `-- placeholders
```

- `accounting`: provides ways to set some advanced Slurm job accounting properties (page 366)
- `cgroups`: provides ways to configure WLMs via the cgroup mechanism of the Linux kernel (section 7.10)

- `chargeback`: provides ways to measure the costs of requested IT resources for WLM jobs (Chapter 13)
- `jobqueue`: allows WLM job queues to be managed (section 7.7.2)
- `jobs`: allows WLM jobs to be viewed and managed (section 7.7.1)
- `ocisettings`: allows OCI settings (Chapter 2 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*) to be viewed and managed
- `pelogs`: allows access to prolog and epilog hooks (page 345) for PBS
- `placeholders`: allows nodes to be configured in advance, for planning resource use in WLMs (section 8.4.8)

For basic WLM management via cmsh, the administrator is expected to use `wlm` mode with the `jobs` and `jobqueue` submodes.

If there is just one WLM instance running on the cluster, then an administrator that accesses `wlm` mode drops straight into the object representing that WLM instance, and can then access the submodes.

If there is more than one WLM running, then the administrator must select a WLM instance from the top level `wlm` mode, with the `use` command, in order to access the submodes.

While at the top level `wlm` mode, the instances can be listed. The list shows the nodes used by the instance, and the node roles assigned to the nodes.

Suppose BCM is being used to manage two WLM instances:

- one Slurm WLM, named `s1r`
- one GE WLM, named `uc`

with their nodes having been allocated roles as follows:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm]% list
Type      Name (key)          Server nodes   Submit nodes           Client nodes
-----  -----
Slurm    slr                  node001        basecm11,node001..node003  node002,node003
UGE      uc                   node004        basecm11,node004..node006  node005,node006
```

Then one way to list all jobs running per WLM instance, queue, and user, is with the `filter` command:

```
[basecm11->wlm]% filter --running
WLM  Job ID Job name  User  Queue  Submit time  Start time  End time  Nodes           Exit code
-----  -----
slr  103    sjob     maud  defq   15:43:02   15:43:03    N/A       node002,node003  0
slr  104    sjob     maud  defq   15:43:02   15:43:25    N/A       node002,node003  0
slr  105    sjob     maud  defq   15:43:02   15:43:33    N/A       node002,node003  0
slr  106    sjob     maud  defq   15:43:02   15:43:36    N/A       node002,node003  0
slr  171    sjob     maud  defq   14:20:09   14:20:23    N/A       node002,node003  0
uc   200    ugjob    fred   all.q  14:22:18   14:23:20    N/A       node005,node006  0
```

The `filter` command can also be run within the `jobs` mode, for a particular WLM instance, and is described in more detail on page 423.

An alternate way to list all jobs from `wlm` mode is with a `foreach` command to descend into `jobs` submode to list the jobs for each WLM instance:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm]% foreach * (jobs ; list)
Type Job ID User Queue Running time Status Nodes
-----
Slurm 55 maud defq 18m 10s COMPLETED node002,node003
Slurm 56 maud defq 18m 5s COMPLETED node002,node003
Slurm 57 maud defq 2m 11s RUNNING node002,node003
Slurm 58 maud defq 0s PENDING

Type Job ID User Queue Running time Status Nodes
-----
UGE 96 maud all.q 2m 30s r node005,node006
UGE 97 maud 0s qw
UGE 98 maud 0s qw
```

The jobs submode is now discussed further.

### 7.7.1 The jobs Submode In cmsh

Within the jobs submode of a WLM instance, the administrator can list jobs that are running or queued up for that particular instance. For example, the running and queued jobs listed for a PBS instance may be displayed as:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[openpbs]->jobs]% list
Type Job ID User Queue Running time Status Nodes
-----
PBSPro 3117.basecm11 pbuser1 hydroq 1s R node002
PBSPro 3118.basecm11 pbuser2 workq 1s R node001
PBSPro 3119.basecm11 pbuser1 hydroq 0s Q
PBSPro 3120.basecm11 pbuser3 hydroq 0s Q
PBSPro 3121.basecm11 pbuser1 hydroq 0s Q
PBSPro 3122.basecm11 pbuser1 hydroq 0s Q
```

The number of jobs can be very large. The wait command in jobs mode can be used to provide a shorter running summary. The following wait command displays a running summary that regularly displays a tally of the running and pending jobs; waits for all of them to complete; and has the waiting-for-completion condition overruled by a timeout of 10 minutes:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]% wait --timeout 10m --all
0s| running: 4, pending: 12
1m| running: 3, pending: 12
2m| running: 4, pending: 11
5m| running: 4, pending: 10
7m| running: 4, pending: 9
9m| running: 3, pending: 8
* timeout *
```

By default wait runs every minute until the specified timeout. Also, by default, as indicated by the missing 3rd and 4th minutes in the example, the outputs are only displayed with the tally changes. Further options to the wait command within jobs mode can be found in the help text display output when `help wait` is run.

In the foreach jobs listings for the Slurm and GE WLM instances shown earlier, the jobs are in a running, queued up, or completed state. They are also all being run by a user `maud`, who happens to be making use of both workload managers.

For Slurm, completed jobs are shown for a short time with the status `COMPLETED`.

**Commands That Change The Status Of A Queued Or Running Job**

Within a jobs submode, the following commands, used with a job ID, can change the status of a particular queued or running job:

- **hold**: puts a queued job into a hold state. This prevents the job from being considered for running.
- **release**: releases a job from a hold state, putting it back in the queue, so that it can be considered for running.
- **suspend**: pauses a running job
- **resume**: resumes a suspended job
- **remove**: removes a job

For example, continuing the case earlier on of the cmsh session with the `foreach` listing (page 419):

The administrator can suspend the running job with job ID 57 on the Slurm instance as follows:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->wlm] % jobs slr; suspend 57
[basecm11->wlm[slr]->jobs] % list | head -2; list | grep 57
Type   Job ID   User   Queue   Running time   Status      Nodes
-----
Slurm 57       maud   defq    2m 51s        SUSPENDED   node002,node003
```

and can hold the queued waiting job with job ID 98 on the GE instance as follows:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->wlm] % jobs uc; hold 98
[basecm11->wlm[uc]->jobs] % list | head -2; list | grep 98
Type   Job ID   User   Queue   Running time   Status      Nodes
-----
UGE    98       maud   hqw     0s           hqw
```

The administrator can then resume the suspended job ID 57, and can release the held job ID 98 as follows:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->wlm[uc]->jobs] % wlm; jobs uc; release 98
[basecm11->wlm[uc]->jobs] % wlm; jobs slr; resume 57
```

**Commands To Inspect Jobs:**

Within the jobs submode, the following commands can be used to inspect a job:

- **show <job ID>**: properties are shown for a running or pending job.

The properties that are displayed are taken directly from commands associated with particular workload managers:

- For Slurm: `scontrol show jobs`
- For PBS flavors: `qstat`
- For LSF: `bjobs`

- **info <job ID>**: details are shown about a particular job ID. The job can be pending, running, or completed jobs. The data is taken from the BCM database.
- **statistics**: statistics are shown for jobs. More detail on the **statistics** command is given on page 424.
- **list**: lists pending and running job IDs along with some other associated properties. Recently completed jobs are also displayed. Completed jobs do not remain listed for longer than a few minutes. The **filter** command (section 7.7.1) can be used instead to display all jobs for that WLM instance, using data taken from the BCM database.
- **dumpmonitoringdata [OPTIONS] [<start-time> <end-time>] <metric> <job id>**: Displays the monitoring data for a specific metric or healthcheck for a running or completed job. Example:  
`dumpmonitoringdata CtxtSwitches 170`  
More detail is given on the **dumpmonitoringdata** command in section 10.6.4.
- **latestmonitoringdata [OPTIONS] <job ID>**: Displays the last measured job monitoring data for the job.
  - **latesthealthdata <job ID>**: The subset of health checks within the last measured monitoring data.
  - **latestmetricdata <job ID>**: The subset of metrics within the last measured monitoring data.
More detail is given on the **latest\*data** commands in section 10.6.3.
- **measurables <job ID>**: The measurables used for job monitoring data.
  - **healthchecks <job ID>**: The subset of health checks within the measurables used for job monitoring data.
  - **metrics <job ID>**: The subset of metrics within the measurables used for job monitoring data.
  - **enummetrics <job ID>**: The subset of enummetrics within the measurables used for job monitoring data.

#### The **info** Command Within jobs Submode

Within the **jobs** submode of **wlm**, the **info <job ID>** command shows job information details stored in the BCM database. BCM starts updating the job information in its database as soon as it detects a new job. When the job is completed BCM pulls a final job state and exit code from the workload manager.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slr]->jobs]% info 2
Parameter          Value
-----
Job ID             2
Job name           hpl
Job Array ID
Job Task ID
User               alice
Group              alice
Account
Accounting info   < not set >
WlmCluster         slr
Queue              defq
Nodes              node001,node002
Submit time        04/12/2024 14:35:00
Start time         04/12/2024 14:35:00
```

```

End time           N/A
Run time          N/A
Persistent        no
Exit code          0
Status             RUNNING
Requested CPUs    32
Requested GPU     8
Requested memory  1.83GiB
Monitoring        yes
Comment
Run directory     /home/alice
Stdin file
Stdout file
Stderr file
Total power usage < not set >
Total GPU power usage < not set >
Total CPU power usage < not set >
Total power under allocation < not set >
QOS               normal
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]%

```

### The filter Command Within jobs Submode

If run at the top-level wlm mode, then the filter command lists jobs for all WLM instances.

It can also be run at the submode-level jobs mode, for a particular WLM instance, in which case it lists only the jobs for that instance (section 11.5).

The filter command without any options is a bit like an extension of the list command in that it lists currently pending and running jobs, although in a different format. However, in addition, it also lists past tasks, with their start and end times.

An example to illustrate the output format for a Slurm instance, somewhat simplified for clarity, is:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[myslurminstance]]% filter
Job ID Job name      User Queue Submit time Start time End time Nodes       Exit code
----- ----- -----
2      hello         fred  defq   15:00:51   15:00:51   15:00:52 node001      0
3      mpirun        fred  defq   15:03:17   15:03:17   15:03:18 node001      0
...
25     slurmhello.sh fred  defq   16:17:30   16:17:31   16:17:33 node001..node004 0
26     slurmhello.sh fred  defq   16:18:39   16:18:40   16:19:02 node001..node004 0
27     slurmhello.sh fred  defq   16:18:41   16:19:03   16:19:25 node001..node004 0
28     slurmhello.sh fred  defq   16:18:41   N/A       N/A       node001..node004 0
29     slurmhello.sh fred  defq   16:18:42   N/A       N/A       node001..node004 0
```

In the preceding example, the start and end times for jobs 28 and 29 are not yet available because the jobs are still pending.

Because all jobs for that WLM instance—historic and present—are displayed by the filter command, it means that finding a particular job in the output displayed can be hard. The displayed output can therefore be filtered further.

The following options to the filter command are therefore available in order to find particular groupings of jobs:

- `-w|--wlm`: by WLM instance
- `-u|--user`: by user

- `-g|--group`: by group
- `--ended`: by jobs that ended successfully, with a zero exit status
- `--running`: by jobs that are running
- `--pending`: by jobs that are pending
- `--failed`: by jobs that finished unsuccessfully, with a non-zero exit status

It may take about a minute for CMDaemon to become aware of job data. This means that, for example, a job submitted 10s ago may not show up in the output.

Further options to `filter` command can be seen by running the command `help filter` within the `wlm` or `jobs` modes.

### The `statistics` Command

The `statistics` command without any options displays an overview of states for all past and present jobs:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[uc]]% statistics
Pending      Running     Finished    Error      Nodes
----- ----- -----
4           0          154         5          309
```

The options available include the following:

- `-w|--wlm <WLM instance>`: by WLM instance
- `-u|--user`: by user
- `-g|--group`: by group
- `-a|--account`: by account
- `-p|--parentid`: by job parent ID
- `--hour`: by hour
- `--day`: by day
- `--week`: by week
- `--interval`: by interval

The jobs statistics can be split across users. An example of the output format in this case, somewhat simplified for clarity, is:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]% statistics --user
User      Pending      Running     Finished    Error      Nodes
----- ----- -----
alice     0           0           2           0           1
bob      0           0           5           0           4
charline 0           1           2           0           2
dennis   0           0           6           0           4
eve      0           0           4           0           1
frank   0           0           1           0           1
```

The job statistics can be displayed over various time periods, if there are jobs within the associated period. An example of the output format for an interval of 60s is:

### Example

Date	Pending	Running	Finished	Error	Nodes
2020/05/13 15:00:00	0	0	1	0	1
2020/05/13 15:03:00	0	0	7	0	7
2020/05/13 15:04:00	0	0	1	1	2
2020/05/13 15:06:00	0	0	3	0	7
2020/05/13 15:07:00	0	0	1	0	0
2020/05/13 15:08:00	0	0	6	0	8
2020/05/13 16:17:00	0	0	1	0	4
2020/05/13 16:19:00	0	0	9	0	36
2020/05/13 16:20:00	0	0	6	0	24
2020/05/13 16:21:00	0	0	3	0	12

In the preceding example there are no jobs within the period associated with the time 15:01 and 15:02. For readability the statistics for those intervals are not displayed.

### Job Directives

Job directives configure some of the ways in which CMDaemon manages job information processing.

The administrator can configure the following directives:

- `JobInformationKeepCount`: The maximal number of jobs that are kept in the cache, default 8192, maximal value 100 million (page 871).
- `JobInformationKeepDuration`: How long to keep jobs in the CMdaemon database, default 28 days (page 871).
- `JobInformationMinimalJobDuration`: Minimal duration for jobs to place them in the cache, default 0s (page 872).
- `JobInformationFlushInterval`: Over what time period to flush the cache to storage (page 872).
- `JobInformationDisabled`: Disables job information processing (page 870).

### 7.7.2 Job Queue Display And Handling In cmsh: jobqueue Mode

The `jobqueue` submode under the top level `wlm` mode can be used to manage queues for a WLM instance. Queue properties can be viewed and set.

From the top level `wlm` mode, a list of queues can be seen for each WLM instance by descending into the WLM instance with a `foreach`:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm]% foreach * (get name; jobqueue; list)
slr
Name (key)    Nodes
-----
defq          node002,node003
uc
Name (key)    Nodes
-----
all.q         node005,node006
[basecm11->wlm]%
```

The usual object manipulation commands (`show`, `get`, `set` and others) of section 2.5.3 work in the `jobqueue` submode.

### Job Queue Parameters For Slurm

For example, for a Slurm instance, the show command might display the following properties:

```
[basecm11->wlm[slr]->jobqueue]# show defq
Parameter          Value
-----
All nodes          node001..node003
Name              defq
Revision
Type              Slurm
WlmCluster        slr
Ordering          0
Default            yes
Hidden             no
Min nodes         1
Max nodes         UNLIMITED
Default time      UNLIMITED
Max time          UNLIMITED
Priority Job Factor 1
Priority Tier     1
OverSubscribe     NO
Alternate
Grace time        0
Preemption mode   OFF
Require reservation NO
Select Type Parameters
LLN                no
TRES Billing Weights
Alloc nodes
CPU bindings      None
QOS
Default memory per CPU  UNLIMITED
Max memory per CPU  UNLIMITED
Default memory per Node UNLIMITED
Max memory per Node  UNLIMITED
Max CPUs per node   UNLIMITED
Default memory per GPU UNLIMITED
Default CPU per GPU  UNLIMITED
Disable root       no
Root only          no
Allow groups       ALL
Allow accounts     ALL
Allow QOS          ALL
Deny Accounts
Deny QOS
ExclusiveUser      no
Queue State        None
Nodesets           ns1
Overlays
Categories
Nodegroups
Compute nodes
Options
```

### Job Queue Parameters For PBS

Likewise, for a PBS instance, the show command might display the following properties:

```
[basecm11->wlm[pb]->jobqueue]% show workq
Parameter          Value
-----
ACL host enable    no
Default Queue      yes
Default runtime
Enabled            yes
From Route Only   no
Maximal Queued    0
Maximal runtime    240:00:00
Minimal runtime    00:00:00
Name               workq
Nodes              node008,node009
Options
Priority          0
Queue Type        EXECUTION
Revision
Route Held Jobs   no
Route Lifetime    0
Route Retry Time  0
Route Waiting Jobs no
Routes
Started           yes
Type               PBSPro
WlmCluster         pb
```

### 7.7.3 Nodes Drainage Status And Handling In cmsh

Running the device mode command drainstatus displays if a specified node is in a Drained state or not. In a Drained state jobs are not allowed to start running on that node.

Running the device mode command drain puts a specified node in a Drained state:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% drainstatus
Node          Queue          Status
-----
node001       PbsPro/pb:workq
node002       UGE/uc/all.q
[basecm11->device]% drain node001
Node          Queue          Status
-----
node001       PbsPro/pb:workq      Drained
```

The undrain command unsets the Drained state so that jobs may start running on the node again.

The drain, undrain, and drainstatus commands have the same grouping options. The grouping options can make the command apply to not just one node, but to a list of nodes, a group of nodes, a category of nodes, a rack, a chassis, an overlay, a role, or a status. Continuing the example:

```
[basecm11->device]% drain -c default; !# for a category of nodes
Node          Queue          Status
-----
node001       PbsPro/pb:workq      Drained
node002       UGE/uc/all.q       Drained
```

The help text for each command indicates the syntax:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device help drain"
Name: drain - Drain jobs (not data) on a set of nodes

Usage: drain [OPTIONS/node]

Options: -n, --nodes <node>
          List of nodes, e.g.
          node001..node015,node020..node028,node030 or
          ^/some/file/containing/hostnames

          -g, --group <group>
          Include all nodes that belong to the node group, e.g.
          testnodes or test01,test03

          -c, --category <category>
          Include all nodes that belong to the category, e.g. default
          or default,gpu

          -r, --rack <rack>
          Include all nodes that are located in the given rack, e.g
          rack01 or rack01..rack04

          -h, --chassis <chassis>
          Include all nodes that are located in the given chassis, e.g
          chassis01 or chassis03..chassis05

          -e, --overlay <overlay>
          Include all nodes that are part of the given overlay, e.g
          overlay1 or overlayA,overlayC

          -m, --image <image>
          Include all nodes that have the given image, e.g default-image
          or default-image,gpu-image

          -t, --type <type>
          Type of devices, e.g node or virtualnode,cloudnode

          -i, --intersection
          Calculate the intersection of the above selections

          -u, --union
          Calculate the union of the above selections

          -l, --role <role>
          Filter all nodes that have the given
          role

          -s, --status <status>
          Only run command on nodes with specified status, e.g. UP,
          "CLOSED|DOWN", "INST.*"

          --setactions <actions>
```

```

set drain actions, actions already set will be removed
(comma-separated)

--appendactions <actions>
append drain actions to already existing drain actions
(comma-separated)

--removeactions <actions>
remove drain actions

--listactions
list all drain actions

--clearactions
remove all drain actions

Examples: drain                                Drain the current node
          drain node001                         Drain node001
          drain -r rack01                         Drain all nodes in rack01
          drain --setactions reboot               Drain the current node, and reboot when all jobs are completed

```

A useful one-liner to reboot and reprovision a sequence of nodes could be in the following format:

### Example

```
cmsh -c 'device; drain -n <nodes> --setactions powerreset ; drain -n <nodes> --appendactions undrain'
```

This drains the nodes and does a power reset action, which provisions the nodes. After the nodes are up again, they are undrained so that they are ready to accept jobs again. The command allows the sequence of nodes to be rebooted, for example for the purpose of upgrading a kernel, without needing to schedule a downtime for the cluster.

The cluster administrator should be aware that that using the preceding one-liner is not a universal solution. For example, it is not a good solution if the drain takes a long time, because it means that nodes that drain early could be idle for a long time.

## 7.8 Examples Of Workload Management Assignment

### 7.8.1 Setting Up A New Category And A New Queue For It

Suppose a new node with processor optimized to handle Shor's algorithm is added to a cluster that originally has no such nodes. This merits a new category, shornodes, so that administrators can configure more such nodes efficiently. It also merits a new queue, shorq, so that users are aware that they can submit suitably-optimized jobs to this category.

Ways to configure the cluster manager for this are described next.

#### A New Category And A New Queue With Base View For An Existing Workload Manager Cluster

Queues can be added to a WLM cluster by running the WLM wizard (navigation path HPC > WLM Wizard) if the WLM cluster does not yet exist. The wizard provides an option during WLM cluster creation for adding queues.

To create a new queue in an existing WLM cluster, the navigation path:

HPC > Workload Management Clusters > <WLM cluster name> > Job queues > Add

is followed. A pop-up menu appears to allow the WLM cluster to be chosen for the queue, and the properties of the new queue can then be set in the dialog window of the queue (figure 7.28). At least the queue name must be set for the queue.

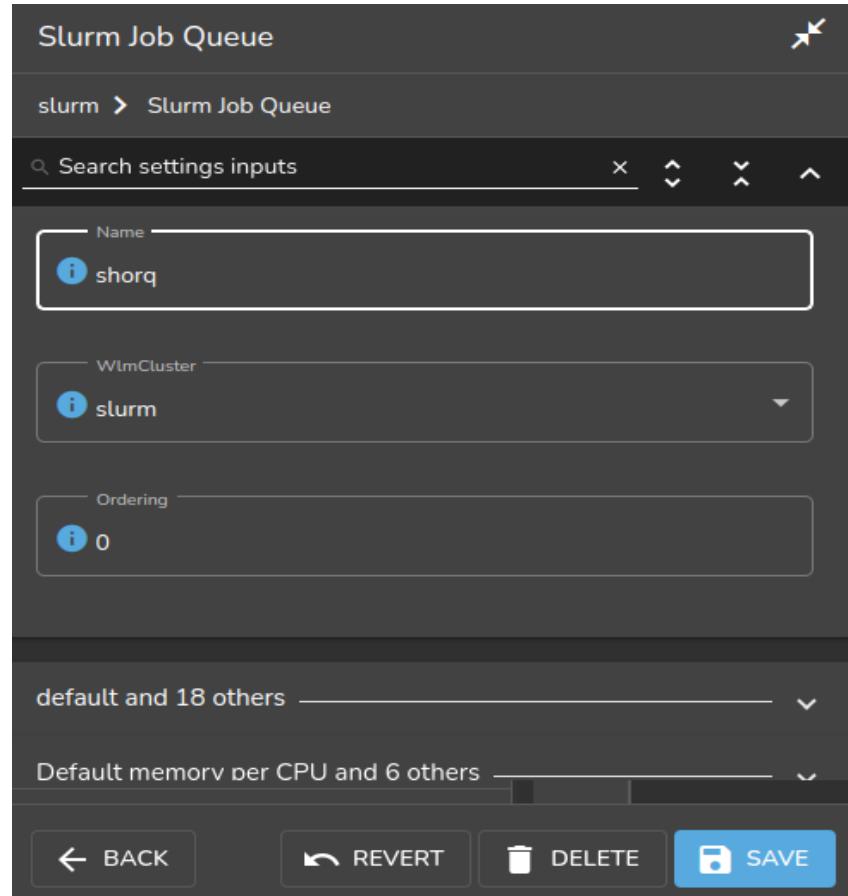


Figure 7.28: Adding a new queue via Base View

The configuration for the queue properties is saved, and then the job queue scheduler configuration is saved.

Next, a new category can be added via

Grouping > Categories > Add > Category > Settings

Parameters settings in the new category can be set—at least the category name should be set—to suit the new machines (figure 7.29). The name shornodes can therefore be set here.

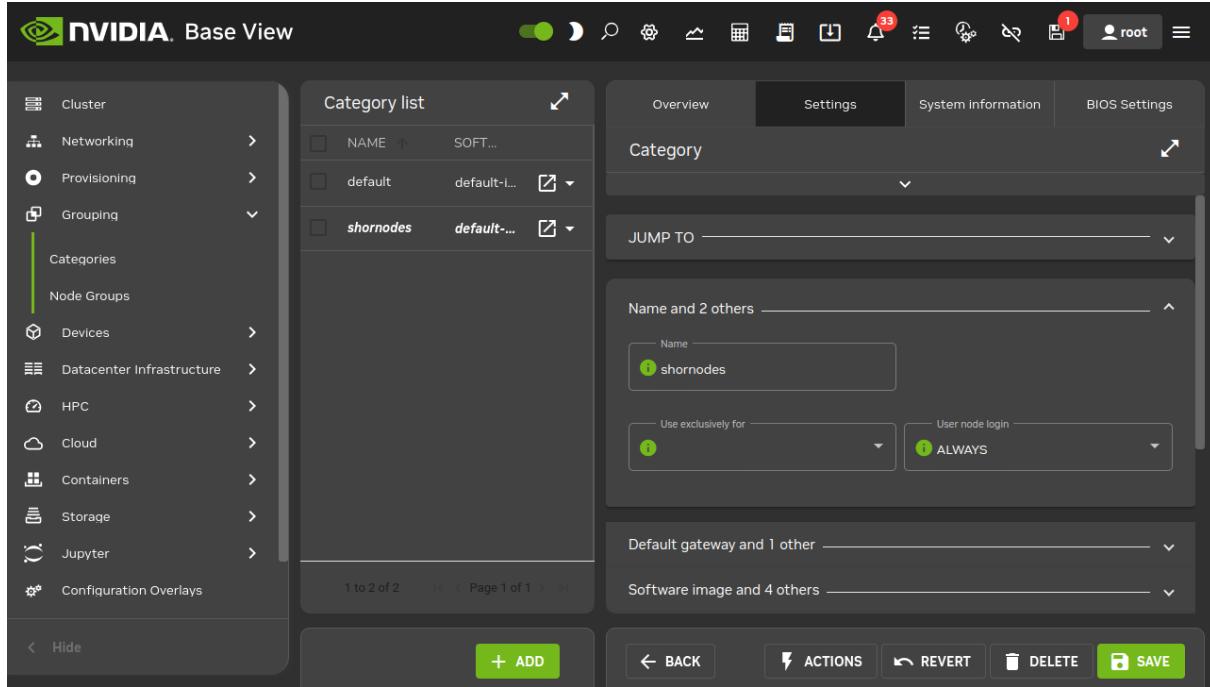


Figure 7.29: Adding a new category via Base View

Another option within the category is to set the queue. The queue, shorq, is therefore set here for this new category.

Setting a queue for the category means configuring the options of the queue scheduler role, for example the Slurm client role, for the category. Continuing from within the Node categories options window of figure 7.29, the relative navigation path to set a queue is:

JUMP TO > Roles > Slurmclient role > Edit > Queues

The appropriate queue can be selected from the queue scheduler menu option (figure 7.30):

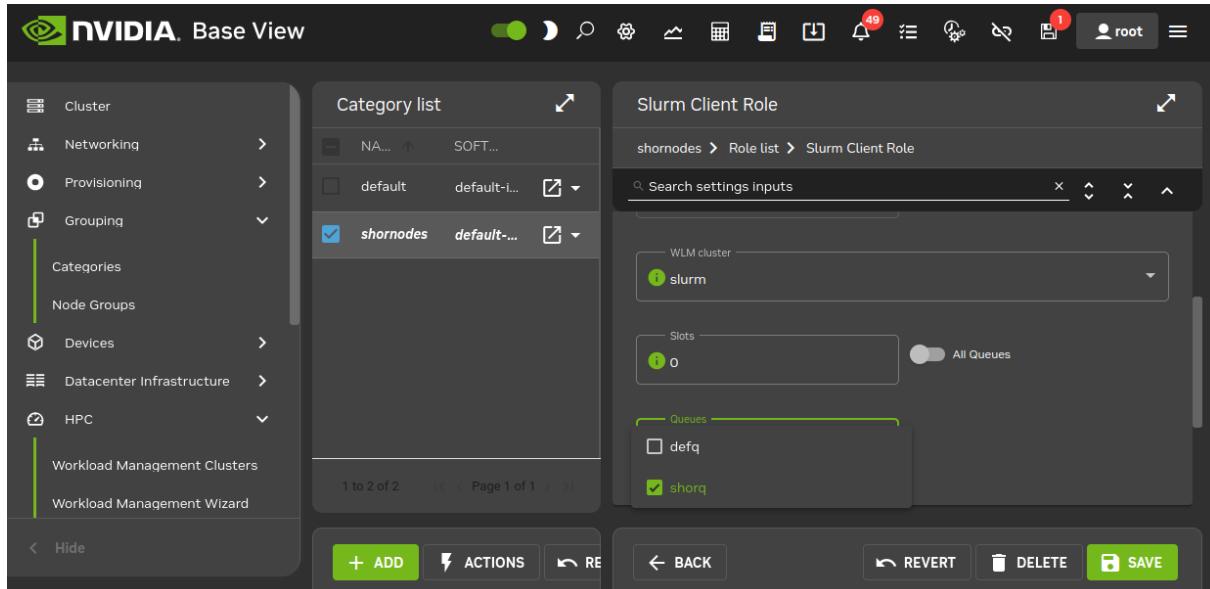


Figure 7.30: Setting a queue for a new category via Base View

In this case, the shorq created earlier on in figure 7.28 is presented for selection. After selection, the

configuration settings can then be saved by clicking on the Save button.

Nodes that are to use the queue should be members of the shornodes category. The final step is then to allocate such nodes to the category. This can be done, for example for a node001, by going into the settings of the node, via Devices > Nodes > node001 > Edit > Settings > Category and setting the category to shornodes.

### A New Category And A New Queue With cmsh

The preceding example can also be configured in cmsh as follows:

The new queue can be added from within jobqueue mode, for the workload manager. For example, if Slurm is the WLM cluster that is enabled:

```
[basecm11]# wlm; use slurm; jobqueue; add shrq
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobqueue*[shrq*]]% commit
```

The new category, shornodes, can be created by cloning an old category, such as default:

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobqueue[shrq]]% category
[basecm11->category]% clone default shornodes
[basecm11->category*[shornodes*]]% commit
```

Then, going into the roles submode, appropriate workload manager roles can be assigned, and appropriate queues can be appended and committed for that category:

```
[basecm11->category[shornodes]]% roles
[basecm11->category[shornodes]->roles]% assign slurmclient; commit
[basecm11->category[shornodes]->roles[slurmclient]]% append queues shrq
[basecm11->category[shornodes*]->roles*]]% commit
```

The nodes belonging to the shornodes category can then be placed by going into device mode to select the nodes to be placed in that category. For example:

```
[basecm11->category[shornodes]->roles]# device use node002
[basecm11->device[node002]]% set category shornodes
[basecm11->device*[node002*]]% commit
```

## 7.8.2 Setting Up A Prejob Or Postjob Check

### How It Works

Measurables such as health checks (section 10.2.4) by default run as scheduled tasks at timed intervals (page 558). They can independently be configured to run as prejob or postjob checks.

If a health check is configured as a prejob or postjob check, then its response means the same as that of a health check, that is:

- If the response to a prejob or postjob health check is PASS, then it shows that the node is displaying healthy behavior for that particular health check.
- If the response to a prejob or postjob health check is FAIL, then it implies that the node is unhealthy at the time of the check, at least for that particular health check.

Sometimes the strain of running a job can itself cause a health issue on the node. If that is the case, then sometimes the issue can be spotted by an immediate check of the node health after a job has completed—which is what the postjob health check does. A postjob health check is otherwise the same as a regular health check.

- If a postjob health check response is FAIL, then the node is unhealthy, even though the job completed. What effect the unhealthy node had on the job may need consideration by the cluster administrator.

- If a prejob health check response is FAIL, then the node is also unhealthy, but the job is prevented by the WLM from running on that node.

A node that has failed a prejob health check is not allowed to run a job. This is because an unhealthy node means that a job submitted to the node may fail, may not be able to start, or may even vanish outright. The way in which a job can vanish in some cases, without any information beyond the job submission “event horizon” leads to this behavior sometimes being called the *Black Hole Node Syndrome*.

**Draining On A Prejob Or Postjob Health Check Failure:** It can be troublesome for a system administrator to pinpoint the reason for such job failures, since a node may only fail under certain conditions that are hard to reproduce later on. It is therefore a good policy to disallow passing a job to a node which has just been flagged as unhealthy by a health check. Thus, a sensible action (section 10.2.6) taken by a prejob or postjob health check on receiving a FAIL response would be to put the node in a Drained state (section 7.7.3). The drain state means that BCM arranges a rescheduling of the job so that the job runs only on nodes that are believed to be healthy.

A node that has been put in a Drained state with a health check is not automatically undrained. The administrator must clear such a state manually.

The failedprejob health check (page 973) is enabled by default, and logs any prejob health check passes and failures. By default there are no prejob health checks configured, so by default this health check should always pass.

### Configuration Using cmsh

Prejob and postjob health checks can be enabled for a WLM instance:

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% show | grep -i job
Enable pre job          no
Enable post job         no
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% set enableprejob yes; commit
```

Each health check can then be enabled individually within the monitoring setup mode.

### Example

For example, for the ib health check:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% get ib prejob
no
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% set ib prejob <TAB><TAB>
yes  no
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% set ib prejob yes
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*]%
=====
Field           Message
-----
when           warning: Prejob is selected, but no WLM has prejob
```

To allow the healthcheck to run for the prejob with the workload manager, prejob must also be enabled appropriately for the associated workload manager:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% get enableprejob
no
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% set enableprejob yes
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]]% commit
```

## Configuration Using Base View

A similar configuration for prejob and postjob checks can be carried out with Base View.

For example, to configure the monitoring of nodes with a prejob check in Base View, the Pre job value can be set for a data producer with the navigation path:

```
Monitoring > Data Producers > Monitoring data producers > Edit > Pre job
```

Prejob should also be enabled appropriately for the associated workload manager with the navigation path:

```
HPC > Workload Management Clusters > Settings > Enable prejob
```

## Configuration Of Prejob Health Checks With cm-wlm-setup

To set a prejob health check up via cm-wlm-setup, cm-wlm-setup is run in step-by-step mode. During one of the steps the administrator is prompted to select, with a tick on a checkbox, which of the available health checks are to run as prejob health checks in BCM (figure 7.31):

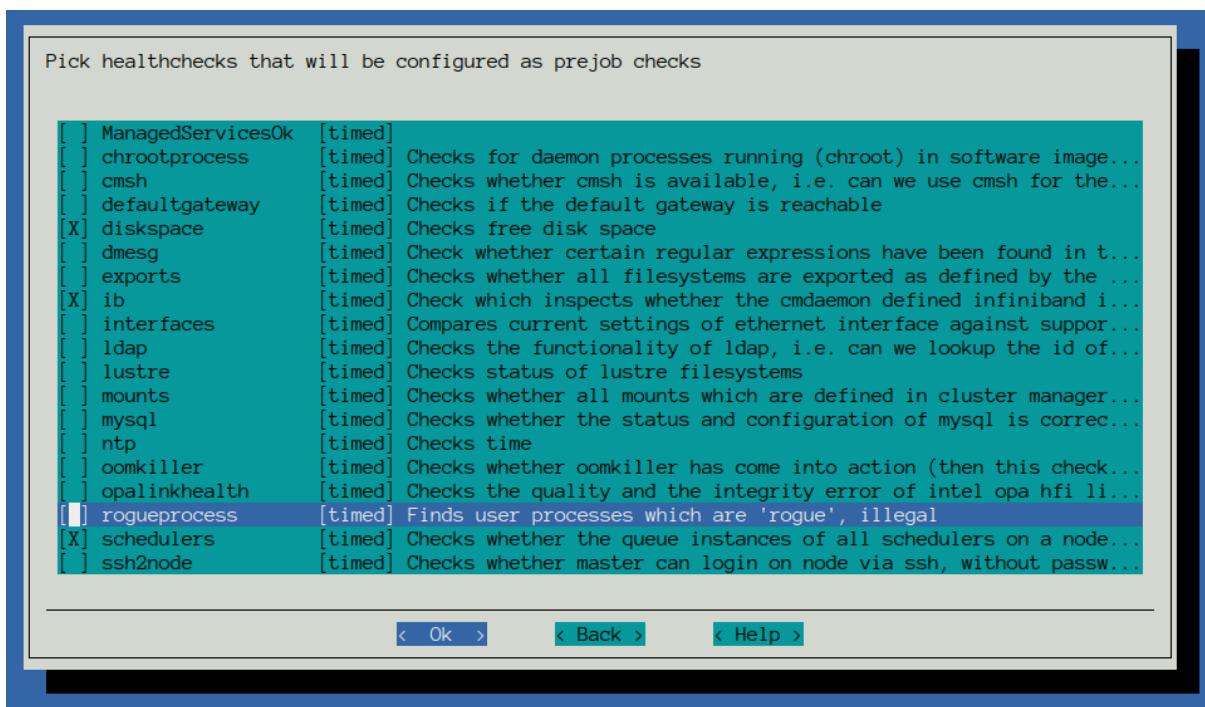


Figure 7.31: Prejob healthcheck selection in the cm-wlm-setup screen

If a selected health check was already set as a prejob—that is, if the prejob parameter within the monitoring setup mode for that particular health check is already set to yes—then the checkbox is already ticked.

## Custom Prejob Configuration

For more unusual prejob or postjob checking requirements, further details on how prologs and epilogs are configured are given in section 7.3.4.

## 7.9 Power Saving With cm-scale

The cm-scale service can be used by an administrator to reduce the energy and storage costs of compute nodes by changing their power state, or their existence state, according to workload demands. That is, cm-scale automatically scales a cluster up or down, on-demand, by powering up physical nodes, cloud

nodes, or virtual nodes. The scaling is carried out according to settings in the ScaleServer role which set the nodes that are to use the cm-scale service.

The cm-scale service is covered extensively in Chapter 8.

## 7.10 Cgroups

Linux system processes and all their future children can be gathered into sets called process aggregations. These sets can be made into hierarchical groups with specialized behavior using the Control Groups (cgroups) mechanism. The behavior is controlled by different subsystems that are attached to the cgroup. A subsystem may, for example, allow particular CPU cores to be allocated, or it may restrict memory, or it may reduce swap usage by processes that belong to the group, and so on.

Details about Linux cgroups and their subsystems can be found at <https://www.kernel.org/doc/Documentation/cgroup-v1/cgroups.txt>.

As far as workload management is concerned, it makes sense to distinguish between workload manager cgroup settings and system-wide cgroup parameters. The workload manager cgroup settings allow the administrator to configure a workload manager to use cgroups in a particular way, whereas the system-wide cgroup settings allow the administrator to manage cgroups whether a workload manager is used or not.

### 7.10.1 Cgroups Settings For Workload Managers

If the workload manager allows cgroups usage, then BCM provides capabilities to manage the cgroup parameters within the workload manager.

#### Slurm Cgroups

Slurm supports 3 cgroups-related plugins. These are all enabled by default, and are:

1. proctrack/cgroup: enables process tracking and suspend/resume capability using cgroups. This plugin is more reliable for tracking and control than the former proctrack/linux.
2. task/cgroup: provides the ability to
  - confine jobs and steps to their allocated cpuset
  - bind tasks to sockets, cores and threads
  - confine jobs and steps to specific memory resources and gres devices
3. jobacct\_gather/cgroup: collects accounting statistics for jobs, steps and tasks using the cpacct, memory, and blkio cgroups subsystems.

Slurm uses configuration files to store the parameters and devices used for cgroup support.

The file /cm/shared/apps/slurm/etc/<cluster name>/cgroup.conf defines parameters used by Slurm's Linux cgroup-related plugins. The file contains a section that is autogenerated by CMDaemon, with cgroups-related parameters defined in the SlurmServer role.

For Slurm, the administrator can set cgroups parameters using cmsh by going into the cgroups sub-mode of the WLM instance.

Parameters that can be managed include:

Parameter	Description	Configuration Parameter
In cgroup.conf		

...continues

*...continued*

Parameter	Description	Configuration Parameter In cgroup.conf
Auto Mount*	Force Slurm to mount cgroup subsystems if they are not mounted yet	CgroupAutomount
Mount Point	Where cgroup root is mounted	CgroupMountpoint
Task Affinity*	Set a default task affinity to bind each step task to a subset of the allocated cores using sched_setaffinity	TaskAffinity
Release Agent Dir	Directory containing Slurm cgroup release_agent files	CgroupReleaseAgentDir
Constrain Cores*	Constrain allowed cores to the subset of allocated resources	ConstrainCores
Constrain RAM Space*	Constrain the job's RAM usage	ConstrainRAMSpace
Constrain Swap Space*	Constrain the job's swap space usage	ConstrainSwapSpace
Constrain Devices*	Constrain the job's allowed devices (also constrain GPUs) based on GRES allocated resources	ConstrainDevices
Allowed RAM Space	Percentage memory (default is 100%) out of the allocated RAM allowed for the job cgroup RAM. If this percentage is exceeded, then the job steps will be killed and a warning message will be written to standard error.	AllowedRAMSpace

*...continues*

*...continued*

Parameter	Description	Configuration Parameter In cgroup.conf
Allowed Swap Space	Percent allocated memory allowed for the job cgroup swap space	AllowedSwapSpace
Max RAM Percent	Maximum percent of total RAM for a job	MaxRAMPercent
Max Swap Percent	Maximum percent of total RAM for the amount of RAM+Swap that may be used for a job	MaxSwapPercent
Min RAM Space	Minimum MB for the memory limits defined by Allowed RAM Space and Allowed Swap Space	MinRAMSpace

---

\* Boolean (takes yes or no as a value)

The options are always written in the `cgroup.conf` file. More details on these options can be found in the man page `man cgroup.conf.5`.

### PBS Cgroups

PBS supports cgroups through a special Python hook that is installed by `cm-wlm-setup` by default. The hook name is `pbs_cggroups`.

PBS cgroup options can be set to manage cgroups in `cmsh` or Base View. For example, in `cmsh` the options can be shown with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[openpbs]->cgroups]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Mount Point        /sys/fs/cgroup
Revision
Type              PbsProCgroupsSettings
...
Memsw reserve amount 64MiB
```

The following table shows the more important cgroup options that can be set:

Parameter	Description	Default Value
Mount Point	Where cgroup root is mounted	/sys/fs/cgroup
Revision	Entity revision	

---

*...continues*

*...continued*

Parameter	Description	Default Value
Type	Type of entity	PbsProCgroupsSettings
Job cgroup template	Template for job cgroup path (\$ESCAPE_JOBID will be replaced by systemd-escape of job id)	pbspro.slice/ pbspro-\$ESCAPE_JOBID.slice
Cgroup prefix	Cgroup prefix used by PBS when the cgroup is created	pbspro
Auto Mount*	If true then workload manager tries to mount a subsystem if it is not mounted yet	no
Enabled*	When set the cgroups hook is enabled (in the hook config: <code>enabled</code> )	yes
Nvidia SMI	The location of the nvidia-smi command (in the hook config: <code>nvidia-smi</code> )	/usr/bin/nvidia-smi
Kill timeout	Maximum number of seconds the hook spends attempting to kill job processes before destroying cgroups (in the hook config: <code>kill_timeout</code> )	10s
Server timeout	Maximum number of seconds the hook spends attempting to fetch node info from the server (in the hook config: <code>server_timeout</code> )	15s
Use hyperthreads*	All CPU threads are made available to jobs (in the hook config: <code>use_hyperthreads</code> )	no
Ncpus are cores*	Ncpus of a vnode is the number of cores, and the hook assigns all threads of each core to a job (in the hook config: <code>ncpus_are_cores</code> )	no
Cpuacct enabled*	Enable cpuacct cgroup controller for jobs	yes
Cpuset enabled*	Enable cpuset cgroup controller for jobs	yes
Devices enabled*	Enable devices cgroup controller for jobs	yes
Devices allow	Parameter specifies how access to devices will be controlled	b *:* rwm,c *:* rwm
Hugetlb enabled*	Enable hugetlb cgroup controller for jobs	no

*...continues*

*...continued*

Parameter	Description	Default Value
Hugetlb default	The amount of huge page memory assigned to the cgroup when the job does not request hpmem	0B
Hugetlb reserve percent	The percentage of available huge page memory (hpmem) that is not to be assigned to jobs	0
Hugetlb reserve amount	An amount of available huge page memory (hpmem) that is not to be assigned to job	0B
Memory enabled*	Enable memory cgroup controller for jobs	yes
Memory soft limit*	If false, then PBS uses hard memory limits which prevent the processes from ever exceeding their requested memory usage	yes
Memory default	Amount of memory assigned to the job if it doesn't request any memory	64MiB
Memory reserve percent	The percentage of available physical memory that is not to be assigned to jobs	0
Memory reserve amount	A specific amount of available physical memory that is not to be assigned to jobs	64MiB
Memsw enabled*	Enable memsw cgroup controller for jobs	no
Memsw default	Specifies the amount of memory + swap assigned to the job if it doesn't request any memory	256MiB
Memsw reserve percent	Percentage of available swap that is not to be assigned to jobs	0
Memsw reserve amount	An amount of available swap that is not to be assigned to jobs	64MiB

\* Boolean (takes yes or no as a value)

**PBS cgroups, hyperthreading, and ncpu:** By default the cluster manager enables the `pbs_cgroups` hook (page 437). By default, this sets `ncpus_are_cores` and `use_hyperthreading` both to `false`. The PBS Professional 2021.1 Administrator's Guide says the following about the disabled hyperthreading configuration (<https://2021.help.altair.com/2021.1/PBSProfessional/PBSAdminGuide2021.1.pdf#M19.9.62244.Heading3.15433.Configuring.Hyperthreading.Support>):

In this model PBS makes only the first thread of each core visible to PBS jobs, so if your workload cannot leverage hyperthreading well, you don't need to disable hyperthreading in the BIOS. The other CPU threads are still usable by the operating system, which means throughput is better than if hyperthreading support is disabled in the BIOS. The value of `resources_available.ncpus` reflects the number of cores associated with a vnode.

The value of `ncpus` can be made to match the number of hyperthreads (logical processors) in the node with

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c 'wlm; use pbspro; cgroups; set usehyperthreads yes; commit'
```

If `usehyperthreads` remains at its default value of `no`, then it means that a restart of the `pbs_mom` service causes `ncpus` to match the number of cores rather than the full number of logical processors that simultaneous multi-threading provides. Here, the value set for the attribute `slots` in the `pbsproclient` role is ignored. This is a deliberate design choice of PBS Professional, which may seem counter-intuitive without the background information given in this section.

### LSF

LSF allows resource enforcement to be controlled with the Linux cgroup memory and cpuset subsystems. By default, when LSF is set up with `cm-wlm-setup`, then both subsystems are enabled for LSF jobs. If job processes on a host use more memory than the defined limit, then the job is immediately killed by the Linux cgroup memory subsystem. The cgroups-related configuration options are available in `cmsh` or Base View, and can be found in the `cgroups` submode of the LSF cluster settings:

Parameter	Description	Configuration Parameter In <code>lsf.conf</code>
Resource Enforce	Controls resource enforcement through the Linux cgroups memory and cpuset subsystem, on Linux systems with cgroups support. The resource can be either memory or cpu, or both cpu and memory, in either order (default: memory cpu)	<code>LSB_RESOURCE_ENFORCE</code>
Process Tracking*	This parameter, when enabled, has LSF track processes based on job control functions such as termination, suspension, resume, and other signals, on Linux systems which support the cgroups freezer subsystem	<code>LSF_PROCESS_TRACKING</code>
Linux Cgroup Accounting*	When enabled, processes are tracked based on CPU and memory accounting for Linux systems that support cgroup's memory and cpacct subsystems	<code>LSF_LINUX_CGROUP_ACCT</code>

\* Boolean (takes `yes` or `no` as a value)

## 7.11 Custom Node Parameters

NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11 allows the administrator to specify the most important node parameters when a node is configured in a workload manager. But sometimes the workload manager allows the configuration of other advanced or user-defined settings for the nodes. When an administrator clones a node in BCM, or creates it from scratch, then those advanced settings may need to be configured manually per node in the workload manager. Sometimes the nodes are created or cloned automatically, for example `cm-scale` (Chapter 8), in which case node parameters customization is not possible without manual intervention in the workload manager configuration.

Since NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 8.2, the administrator can configure the advanced node settings in the node customizations mode of `cmsh` or Base View. The customizations are available

in the workload manager client roles, so they can be applied at the node, node category or configuration overlay levels.

In order to configure a custom node parameter for the workload manager, the administrator adds the node customization entry and sets its value to True or False. The entry is enabled by default, that is, an associated parameter Enabled is yes by default. The workload manager can take a minute to implement the new value.

For example, in order to add a new customization entry, for the resv\_enable setting for PBS, the following cmsh commands can be used:

### Example

```
[basecm11]# configurationoverlay
[basecm11->configurationoverlay]# use pbspro-client
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[pbspro-client]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[pbspro-client]->roles]# use pbsproclient
...->roles[pbsproclient]]% nodecustomizations
...->roles[pbsproclient]->nodecustomizations% list
Key (key)      Value      Enabled
-----
...->roles[pbsproclient]->nodecustomizations% add resv_enable
...->roles*[pbsproclient*]->nodecustomizations*[resv_enable*]]% set value False
...->roles*[pbsproclient*]->nodecustomizations*[resv_enable*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Key                  recv_enable
Value                False
Enabled              yes
Notes               <0 bytes>
...->roles*[pbsproclient*]->nodecustomizations*[resv_enable*]]% commit
...->roles[pbsproclient]->nodecustomizations[resv_enable]]% quit
```

On a cluster with two nodes, the change would show up within a minute:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# pbsnodes -av | egrep '^(node|resv)' ; sleep 60 ; pbsnodes -av | egrep '^(node|resv)'
node001
    resv_enable = True
node002
    resv_enable = True
node001
    resv_enable = False
node002
    resv_enable = False
```

Different workload managers allow different kinds of node settings to be set. For example, for PBS, the node settings are built-in, and so the administrator can only change their values but not their names. So when the administrator configures node customization entries, BCM configures them differently depending on the workload manager that is used.

Thus if the administrator creates a new customization entry with key name <KEY> and value <VALUE>, then this is applied to the workload managers as follows:

- **Slurm:** The node customization entry is appended to the `NodeName` line of the particular nodes in `slurm.conf` in the form `<KEY>=<VALUE>`. If the entry is removed or disabled in the BCM configuration, then the entry `<KEY>=<VALUE>` pair is removed from the `NodeName` line.
- **PBS Professional and OpenPBS:** The entry is configured with the `qmgr` utility, using this command syntax: `set node NODENAME <KEY>=<VALUE>`. If the entry is removed or disabled, then it is unset in the `qmgr`.

- **LSF:** The entry is set in the `1sb.hosts` file, in the `Hosts` section. If the `<KEY>` of the entry is defined as one of the section columns, then the parameter value is replaced by BCM to `<VALUE>`. When the customization entry is removed or disabled, then its value is replaced by `()` in the section.

### 7.11.1 Other PBS Professional Customizations Examples

For PBS, node customization can be carried out within the `pbsproclient` role, within the `nodecustomizations` object, as explained earlier on page 441.

The following are other customizations that can be carried out for PBS with the `qmgr` command:

**Setting a default value for ncpus:** To avoid having to add directives when submitting jobs, the default value for `ncpus` can be configured with the following `qmgr` command:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# qmgr -c "set server resources_default.ncpus = 4"
```

**Disallowing users from querying the job status of other users:** To disallow users from querying a job status other than their own, the `query_other_jobs` option can be configured with the following `qmgr` command:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# qmgr -c "set server query_other_jobs = False"
```

**Creating and configuring a resource:** A resource switch can be created and configured with the following `qmgr` command:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# qmgr -c "create resource switch type=string,flag=h"
```

**Setting an ACL for a queue:** The queue `workq` can have its `acl_groups` attribute set to users with the following `qmgr` command:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# qmgr -c "set q workq acl_groups=users"
```

# 8

# NVIDIA Base Command Manager Auto Scaler

## 8.1 Introduction

NVIDIA Base Command Manager Auto Scaler can be used by an administrator to reduce the energy costs, and the costs associated with (cloud) storage, by compute nodes. This can be done by changing their power state, or their existence state, according to workload demands. The idea behind Auto Scaler is that it automatically scales a cluster up or down, on-demand, by powering up physical nodes or cloud nodes.

On the cluster itself, Auto Scaler is implemented by the `cm-scale` service. The scaling is carried out according to settings in the `ScaleServer` role which set the nodes that are to use the `cm-scale` service.

The `cm-scale` service runs as a daemon. It collects information about workloads from different workload engines, and it uses knowledge of the nodes in the cluster. In the case of HPC jobs, the daemon also gathers knowledge of the queues that the jobs are to be assigned to, and also gathers knowledge on which of the HPC jobs are requesting exclusive node access.

Based on the workload engine information and queues knowledge, the `cm-scale` service can clone and start compute nodes when the workloads are ready to start. The service also stops or terminates compute nodes, when no queued or running workloads remain on the managed nodes.

### 8.1.1 Use Cases

The `cm-scale` service can be considered as a basis for the construction of different kinds of dynamic data centers. Within such centers, nodes can be automatically re-purposed from one workload engine setup to another, or they can be powered on and off based on the current workload demand.

A few use cases are discussed next, to show how this basis can be built upon:

1. An organization wants to run PBS Professional and Slurm on the same cluster, but how much one workload engine is used relative to the other varies over time. For this case, nodes can be placed in the same pool and shared. When a node finishes an existing job, the `cm-scale` service can then re-purpose that node from one node category to another if needed, pretty much immediately. The re-purposing decision for the node is based on the jobs situation in the PBS Professional and Slurm queues.
2. An organization would like to use their cluster for both Kubernetes and for Slurm jobs. For this case, the admin adds Kubernetes- and Slurm-related settings to the `ScaleServer` role. Using these settings, the `cm-scale` service then switches nodes from one configuration overlay to another. For example, if Slurm jobs are pending and there is a free Kubernetes node, then the node is turned into a Slurm node pretty much immediately. A configuration example for this case is given in section 8.4.9.

3. An organization has a small cluster with Slurm installed on it, and would like to be able to run more jobs on it. This can be carried out using BCM's Cluster Extension cloudbursting capability (Chapter 3 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*) to extend the cluster when there are too many jobs for the local cluster. The extension to the cluster is made to a public cloud provider, such as AWS or Azure. The `cm-scale` service then tracks the Slurm queues, and decides whether or not new cloud nodes should be added from the cloud as extensions to the local network and queues. When the jobs are finished, then the cloud nodes are terminated automatically. Cluster extension typically takes several minutes from prepared images, and longer if starting up from scratch, but in any case this change takes longer than simple re-purposing does.
4. An organization runs PBS Professional only and would like to power down free, local, physical nodes automatically, and start up such nodes when new jobs come in, if needed. In this case, `cm-scale` follows the queues and decides to stop or to start the nodes automatically depending on workload demand. Nodes typically power up in several minutes, so this change takes longer than simple re-purposing does.

### 8.1.2 Resource Constraints

When the service considers whether or not the node is suited for the workload

1. it matches the following requested node resources:
  - (a) the number of CPUs (in Kubernetes this value can be fractional);
  - (b) the number and type of GPUs (only the number of NVIDIA GPUs is considered for the Kubernetes engine);
  - (c) the amount of memory;
2. and, for Kubernetes, the following additional resources:
  - (a) pods;
  - (b) ephemeral storage;
  - (c) extended resources.

Other types of resources are not considered.

An extended resource is considered by `cm-scale` if the administrator adds it to the `KUBE_EXTENDED_RESOURCES` list in `config.py`. For example:

#### Example

```
opts: dict[str, Any] = {
    ...
    KUBE_EXTENDED_RESOURCES": ["fpga"],
}
```

For HPC workload engines that are unsupported by `cm-scale`, the resources validation is carried out by the HPC engine. If a resource that is requested by the workload cannot be provided by the node, then the HPC engine specifies a pending reason. The pending reason is used by `cm-scale` to decide on node operations.

For Kubernetes, all the used resources must explicitly be specified as extended resources.

When the Kubernetes engine is configured, then `cm-scale` uses the `maxPods` value from the `kubelet` role as a maximum for the available pod slots per node.

The `parallelism` parameter in the job definition YAML sets the number of pod copies to start. If a Kubernetes job sets the `parallelism` parameter, then `cm-scale` tries to find nodes to satisfy the number of pod copies for the job. The metric `kube_job_spec_parallelism` (page 961) tracks the `parallelism` value for a job.

For Kubernetes, cm-scale for now supports only NVIDIA GPUs. However, other types of GPUs can be configured in cm-scale as extended resources. If a pod or a job requests a resource with the name nvidia.com/gpu, then cm-scale gets the number of allocatable resources per node in the cluster with this particular resource name, and tries to match it with the pod or job request.

In cmsh, the wlmresources command displays the workload manager engine resources that Auto Scaler considers.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% wlmresources
WLM      Name          Amount      Nodes
-----
pbspro  cpu_total     32         node001..node006
pbspro  gpu_free      1          node005
pbspro  gpu_free      2          node001..node00+
pbspro  mem_free      8,108,032,000 node004,node005
pbspro  mem_free      948,224,000  node006
slurm   cpu_alloc     2          node001..node006
slurm   cpu_total     16         node006
slurm   cpu_total     8          node001..node005
slurm   gpu_free      1          node005
slurm   gpu_free      2          node001..node004
slurm   mem_free      1,000,000,000 node006
slurm   mem_free      380,000,000  node004
slurm   mem_free      6,778,000,000 node005
slurm   mem_free      7,257,000,000 node001..node003
uge     cpu_total     32         node001..node00+
uge     gpu_free      1          node005
uge     gpu_free      2          node001..node00+
uge     mem_free      0          node001..node003
uge     mem_free      1,396,000,000 node004
uge     mem_free      7,456,000,000 node005
uge     mem_free      990,900,000  node006
uge     mem_free_per_cpu 1,396,000,000 node004
uge     mem_free_per_cpu 990,900,000  node006
[basecm11->device]%
```

These resources are taken from the workload managers, and are not necessarily equal to the available physical resources on the nodes.

### Number Of CPU Cores Calculation

The cm-scale service uses the number of CPU cores on a node in order to decide on whether a workload should run on the node. The calculation of this number is optimized for many node scenarios.

For each node, at the beginning of each cm-scale iteration, the following procedure is followed step-by-step to determine the CPU cores number. The procedure for the current iteration stops when a step yields a non-zero value, otherwise the next step is tried.

1. If the engine is an HPC workload manager, then the workload manager client role is considered and its slots parameter is used. In the very unusual case of several workload manager roles assigned to the node at the same time, then the minimum number of slots is calculated.
2. If the node is a cloud node, then its flavor Type parameter in the case of EC2, or VMSize in case of Azure, is used. These parameters are accessible via cmsh, within device mode for the cloud node, within the cloudsettings submode. For EC2 nodes the flavor value (Type) can be set to a long

statement such as: "62 EC2 Compute Units (16 virtual cores with 3.00 EC2 Compute Units each)", and for this statement 16 is used as the number of CPU cores. If the flavor is not defined on the node, then its cloud provider is considered.

3. If a template node (page 460) is defined in the dynamic node provider, and it is a cloud node, then the template node flavor is used for the CPU core number in the same way as shown in the preceding step.
4. If the `Default Resources` parameter (in a resource provider) contains `cpus:engine=N`, where `N` is a number of CPU cores, then `N` is used. For Kubernetes, the number of CPUs can be fractional.
5. If the node exists at this moment (for example, it is not just cloned in BCM), then the CPU cores number is requested from CMDaemon, which collects nodes system information. This is used as one of the last methods because it is slow.
6. If the node is defined in the `ScaleServer` role via the dynamic resource provider, then the CPU cores number is retrieved from its template node. This method is as slow as the preceding method. It is therefore not recommended when many nodes are managed by `cm-scale`, otherwise the iteration can take several minutes. In such a case, setting the `slots` parameter manually is typically wiser, so that step 1 is the step that decides the CPU cores number.

If `cm-scale` does not manage to find a value for the node, then it prints a warning in the log file and does not make use of the node during the iteration. It is usually wise for the administrator to set the `slots` parameter manually for nodes that otherwise persistently stay unused, so that resources are not wasted.

### **Requested GPUs**

When a user of a workload manager requests a number of GPUs for the job that is to be run, then Auto Scaler presents nodes that have enough available GPUs for this job. For Slurm, in addition to the number of GPUs, Auto Scaler recognizes the GPU type if the user specifies it. For other workload managers only the number of GPUs is counted.

Auto Scaler knows from CMDaemon via the workload manager what GPUs and what types are available for that workload manager. Auto Scaler tracks the number of GPUs in use, or whether the administrator has configured fewer GPUs than the node actually has. Auto Scaler is therefore aware of what GPUs the workload managers can use during their job scheduling.

If debug messages are enabled in `ScaleServer` role, then the number and type of requested GPUs, as well as the number and types of available GPUs, can be found in the log file at `/var/log/cm-scale.log`

### **Requested Memory**

A memory request is considered by Auto Scaler if a user specifies this request when the job is submitted.

For Kubernetes, if a job or a pod defines a limit, then `cm-scale` uses that limit. If a limit is not set, then Kubernetes limits are followed.

For Slurm, if no memory requirement is specified by the job, then Slurm often sets its own defaults, and `cm-scale` then uses those implicit values.

GE does not provide the amount of memory requested by a user per node, but allocates memory per CPU core. Thus, Auto Scaler by default operates with a memory amount per CPU core, which can also be seen in the logs.

### **Default Resources Specification**

Sometimes the available consumable resources must be defined explicitly by the administrator. This is needed in the case of LSF, because when a node is down, LSF does not provide the available consumable resources configured for the node. Therefore in this case Auto Scaler does not know if the node actually has any of the resources known to LSF. The mechanism used for defining explicitly can also be used for other workload managers, for testing purposes.

For now, only the following types of consumable resources can be specified as default resources to the Default Resources setting, under the Resource Provider parameter. The setting is a list of strings, where each string specifies one of the following resources:

1. cpus: the number of available CPU cores or Kubernetes CPUs, if other sources for this information do not provide a value (the calculation for the number of CPU cores is described on page 445).

The cpus specification has the following format:

`cpus:<engine>=<amount>`

where `<engine>` is the name of the workload engine being used and `<amount>` is the amount of available CPUs.

### Example

`cpus:kube=8.5`

or

`cpus:slurm=16`

2. mem\_free: the amount of available memory. If no units are specified, then bytes are assumed. It is also possible to append one of the following units:

Multiple-byte units			
Decimal SI-style		Binary IEC-style	
name	unit or abbreviation	name	unit or abbreviation
kilobytes	KB or K	kibibytes	KiB or Ki
megabytes	MB or M	mebibytes	MiB or Mi
gigabytes	GB or G	gigabytes	GiB or Gi
terabytes	TB or T	tebibytes	TiB or Ti
petabytes	PB or P	pebibytes	PiB or Pi

The format of the memory specification is the following:

`mem_free:<engine>=<amount>`

where `<engine>` is the name of the workload engine which "provides" this value, and `<amount>` is the amount of memory.

### Example

`mem_free:lsf1=32GB`

3. gpu\_free: the number of available GPUs. The format of the GPUs specification is:

`gpu_free[:<type>]:<engine>=<number>`

where `<type>` is a string that specifies the GPUs type (available only for Slurm). Only a single GPU type per node is currently supported. `<number>` is a number of GPUs, and `<engine>` is the name of the workload engine which "provides" this value.

### Example

`gpu_free:a100:uge3=8`

or

`gpu_free:lsf=1`

### 8.1.3 Setup

In order to set up Auto Scaler the administrator can run the `cm-auto-scaler-setup` script. The setup allows one of the three base scenarios to be configured. This is possible in express mode as well as in step-by-step mode. When the setup is complete, the administrator can further tune the behaviour of Auto Scaler within the ScaleServer role. The Scaleserver role is always assigned to the head nodes, via a new configuration overlay named `autoscaler`.

The setup tool assigns the role. The role, in turn, starts the `cm-scale` system service (Auto Scaler). Auto Scaler can be disabled by running `cm-auto-scaler-setup` again, and selecting the menu item `Disable`. When Auto Scaler is disabled, the configuration overlay is removed.

The service writes logs to `/var/log/cm-scale.log`. Running the `cm-scale` daemon in the foreground for debugging or demonstration purposes is also possible, using the `-f` option. Other additional options that may be used, including at the same time, are:

- `-d`: debug logs
- `-i <N>`: number (`<N>`) of iterations

The logs are then duplicated to STDOUT:

#### Example

```
root@basecm11$ module load cm-scale
root@basecm11$ cm-scale -f
[...]
```

When `cm-auto-scaler-setup` is started the administrator can select from one of the following setup operations (figure 8.1):

- express setup,
- step-by-step setup,
- disable.

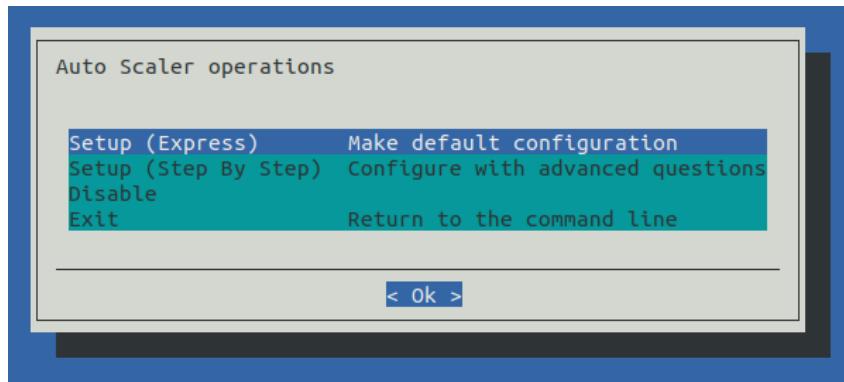


Figure 8.1: Auto Scaler Setup Operations

- Express setup allows an initial setup to be carried out, without many questions being asked. It applies default values wherever possible. Some inputs that do not have default values are still needed. Express setup is a good start for the administrators who have never used Auto Scaler before.
- Step-by-step setup allows an initial setup to be carried out too, but with some more questions to help tune the cluster to the needs of the administrator. This is more suitable for administrators with some experience in Auto Scaler configuration.

After the wizard has carried out the deployment, both the express and the step-by-step configuration can have their configurations tuned further via cmsh, within the scaleserver role.

Express setup and step-by-step setup both allow one of the 4 pre-defined use case scenarios to be selected (figure 8.2):

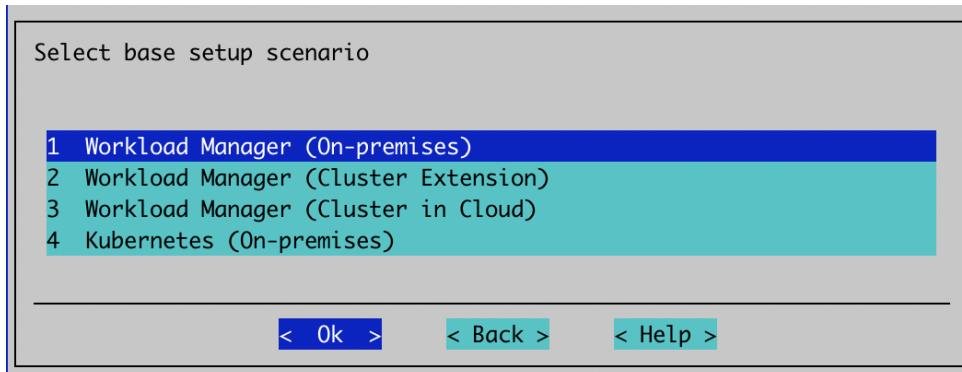


Figure 8.2: Auto Scaler Setup Scenario Selection

These use cases are:

1. **Workload Manager (On-premises)**: Auto Scaler tracks selected workload manager queues, and starts or stops specified on-premises nodes on demand. A static node provider is automatically added to the role for this scenario.
2. **Workload Manager (Cluster Extension)**: Auto Scaler dynamically clones nodes from a cloud template node, on demand. The nodes can be terminated or stopped when idle. This scenario is used when cloudbursting is set up, and there is a cloud director. A dynamic node provider is added automatically to the role for this scenario.
3. **Workload Manager (Cluster in Cloud)**: As in the preceding use case, Auto Scaler dynamically clones nodes from a cloud template node, on demand. In this scenario, there is no cloud director, and the entire cluster must reside in the cloud.
4. **Kubernetes (On-premises)**: Auto Scaler tracks Kubernetes jobs or individual pods, and starts or stops the nodes on demand. A static node provider is automatically added to the role for this scenario.

Static nodes and dynamic nodes providers are discussed in section 8.2.2.

In step-by-step mode, for the next step, the dialog suggests specifying Auto Scaler base options (figure 8.3):

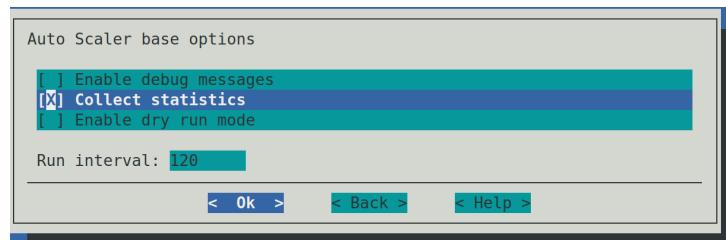


Figure 8.3: Auto Scaler Setup Base Options

The Auto Scaler base options are:

- **Enable debug messages**: Auto Scaler adds debug messages to its log file (default: /var/log/cm-scale).

- `Dry run` mode: Disables actual execution of any operation on the cluster. Auto Scaler decisions are still all written to the log file.
- `Run interval`: Number of seconds that Auto Scaler waits before making new decisions regarding cluster auto scaling.

### Use Case: Workload Manager (On-premises)

When this scenario is selected, then the next step is to configure the static nodes provider. First, categories and individual nodes to be managed by Auto Scaler are selected. The nodes of a selected category, or individual nodes, are added to the node provider (figures 8.4 and 8.5):

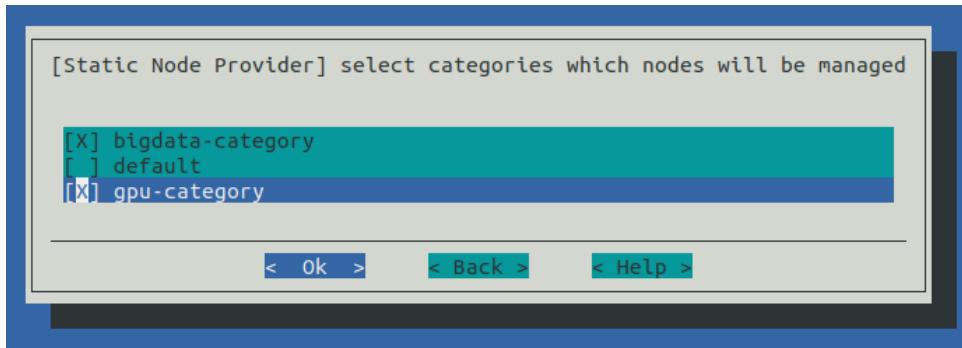


Figure 8.4: Auto Scaler Setup Categories Selection For Static Node Provider

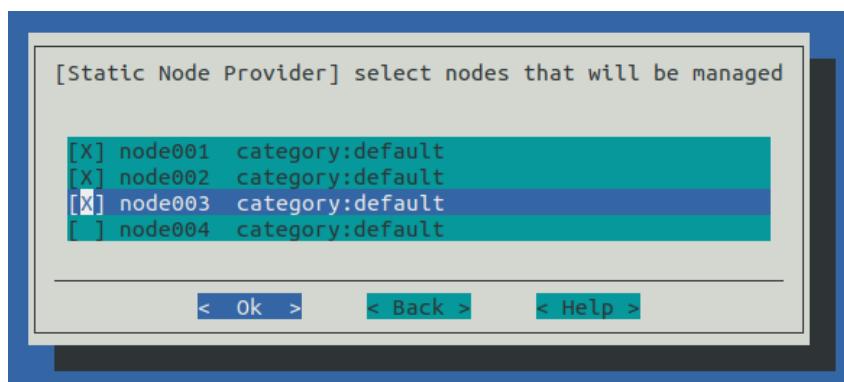


Figure 8.5: Auto Scaler Setup Individual Nodes Selection For Static Node Provider

The next step is to pick the workload manager cluster (figure 8.6):

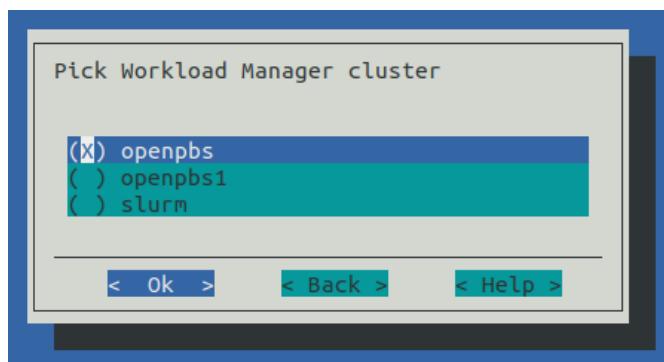


Figure 8.6: Auto Scaler Setup Workload Manager Selection

If only one workload manager instance exists, then the screen is skipped. The screen provides a list of workload manager names that `cm-wlm-setup` has set up. The `cm-auto-scaler-setup` wizard only configures one workload manager cluster, but others can be added later as separate workload engines with the ScaleServer role.

If running express mode, then the summary screen is displayed. The summary screen includes options to just show the configuration file, or to save the configuration and deploy the setup (figure 8.7):

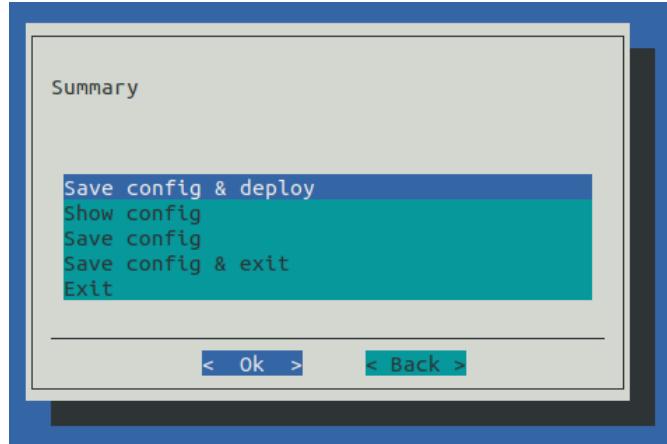


Figure 8.7: Auto Scaler Setup Summary

If running step-by-step mode for the workload manager, then there are some additional tune up screens:

Values can be set for resources in the default node resources screen (figure 8.8):

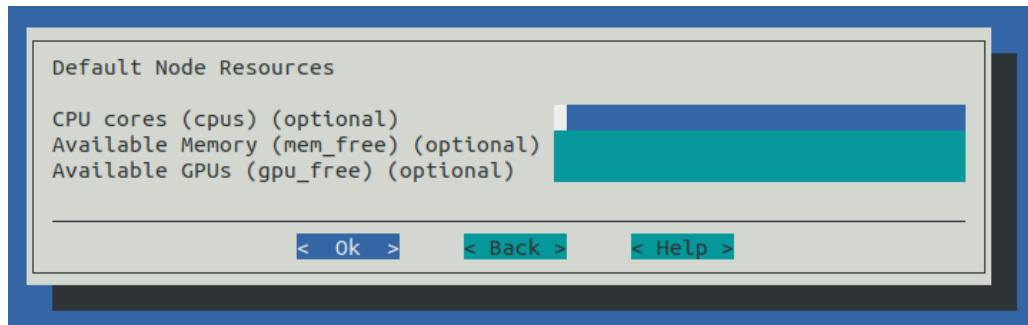


Figure 8.8: Auto Scaler Setup Default Resources

Resources that can be set are:

1. number of CPU cores per node. Format: `<number>`
2. number (and optionally, type) of GPUs per node. Format: `[<type>]:<number>`
3. available memory for jobs per node. Units can be specified as: KB, K, KiB, MB, M, MiB, GB, G, GiB, TB, T, TiB, PB, P, PiB. Format: `<amount>[<unit>]`. If no units are specified, then bytes are assumed.

When Auto Scaler considers whether or not the node is suited for the workload, it considers the following requested resources:

In `cmsh`, the `wlmresources` command, executed in `devices` mode, displays the resources that Auto Scaler considers. These resources are taken from the corresponding workload manager, and are not necessarily equal to the available physical resources on the nodes. Sometimes the available consumable resources must be defined explicitly by the administrator. This is needed if the node never started, or

if the WLM (such as in the case of LSF) does not provide node resource information when the node is down. It is recommended that these values are always defined. If nodes vary in their resource requirements, then, after setup, an administrator can add new resource providers (within the ScaleServer role) and set the various default resources for the various groups of nodes.

In the next screen the administrator can specify some WLM engine settings (figure 8.9):

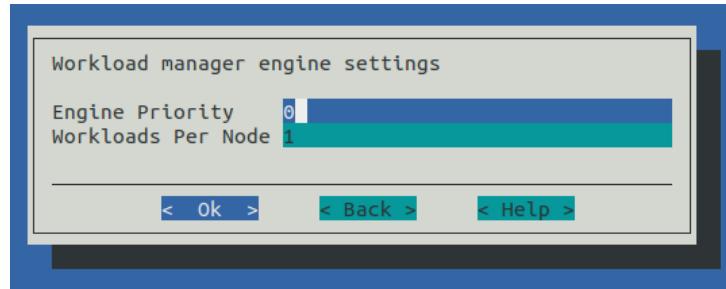


Figure 8.9: Auto Scaler Setup Engine Settings

The settings are:

- **Engine Priority:** The workload engine priority. This value is used when the final (global) workload priority is calculated by Auto Scaler. If 0, then this priority is not taken into account.
- **Workloads Per Node:** The maximum number of WLM jobs that can be started on a node.

Auto Scaler fetches the workload priority values from the settings specified in the next screen (figure 8.10):

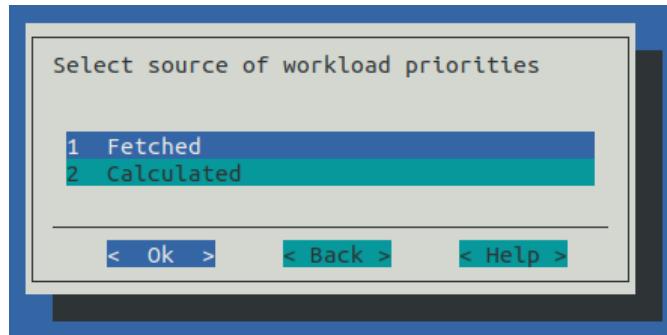


Figure 8.10: Auto Scaler Setup Workload Priorities Source Selection

The settings are:

- **Fetched:** Priorities are fetched from workload engine. Age and engine priorities are ignored. This option sets the age factor to 0.0, and engine priority to 0
- **Calculated:** Priorities are calculated from the workload age and engine priority. Both can be tuned by the administrator in ScaleServer role. This option sets the age factor to 1.0, and the external priority factor to 0.0

Workload trackers settings can be set in the next screen (figure 8.11):

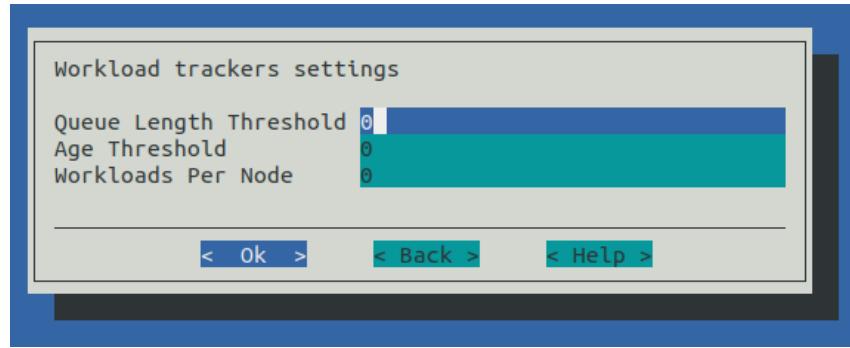


Figure 8.11: Auto Scaler Setup Tracker Settings

The settings are:

- Queue Length Threshold: Number of pending workloads. If this number is reached, then nodes are triggered to start up.
- Age Threshold: Workload pending time threshold, in seconds. If a workload reaches this age while pending, then nodes are triggered to start up for that workload.
- Workloads Per Node: The maximum number of WLM jobs that can be started on a node for that tracker. A value of 0 means no limit is set.

The settings are applied to all configuring queue trackers. The values can be tuned further afterwards in the ScaleServer role.

#### Use Case: Workload Manager (Cluster Extension)

In the case of workload manager cluster extension scenario, a dynamic node provider with a template node is configured. In this scenario the administrator should expect cloud nodes to be triggered, which run in a previously configured and deployed cluster extension.

Cluster extension configuration and deployment in BCM is described in Chapter 3 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*, and can be carried out, for example, for a particular cloud provider. For command line deployment, the `cm-cluster-extension` setup script can be run.

Cloud nodes are thus cluster nodes that extend into a cloud provider, and which are cloned and terminated depending on workload demand.

To configure a cluster extension with Auto Scaler, the administrator is asked to pick a cloud provider (figure 8.12):

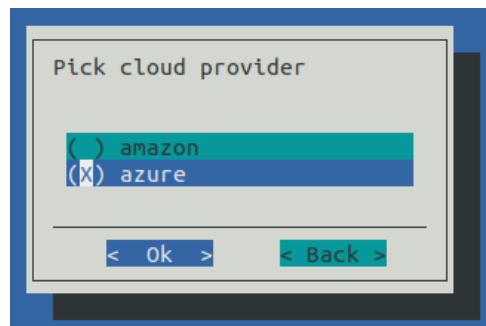


Figure 8.12: Auto Scaler Setup Cloud Provider

With the express setup, the next screen asks for workload manager selection (figure 8.6).

With the step-by-step setup, however, some additional screens are presented before getting to the workload manager selection screen. These extra screens are described next.

The Auto Scaler template node selection screen (figure 8.13) prompts for the selection of a template node that is to be used for cloud node cloning.

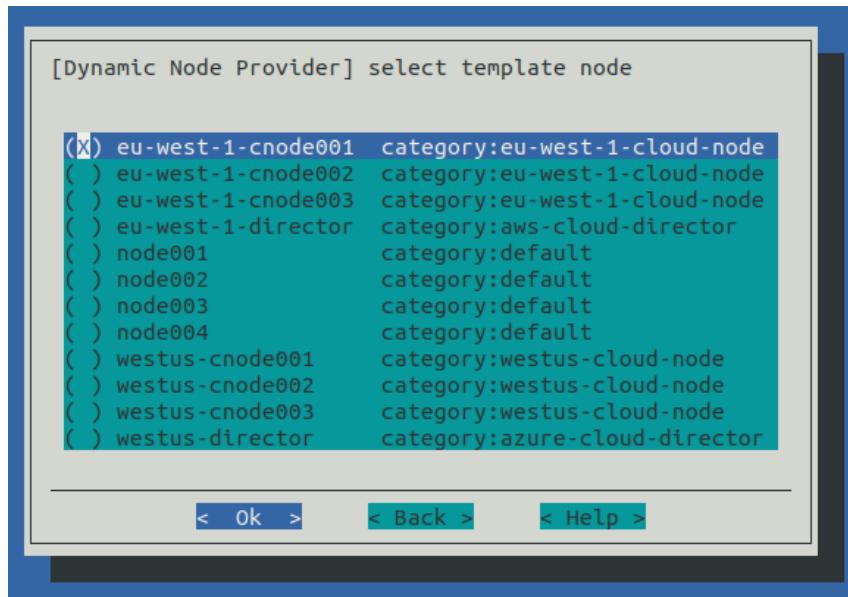


Figure 8.13: Auto Scaler Setup Template Node

The selected template node is then set in the dynamic node provider.

The Auto Scaler incrementing network interface screen (figure 8.14) prompts the administrator to select the network interface on the template node that is automatically incremented when the node is cloned.

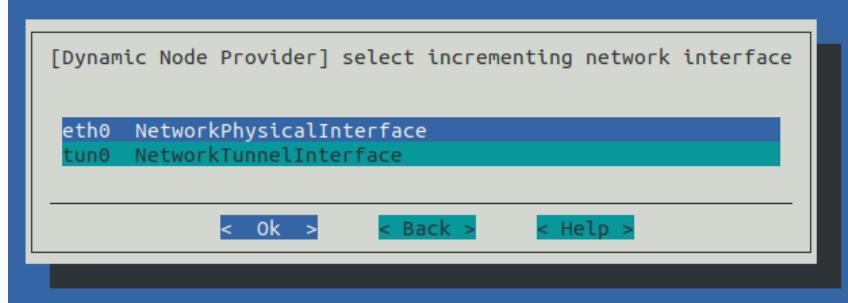


Figure 8.14: Auto Scaler Setup Incremented Network Interface Selection

The Auto Scaler node range specification screen (figure 8.15) prompts the administrator to specify a node range. Range format can be used. Nodes are automatically created by Auto Scaler on demand in the cloud according to the range specified.

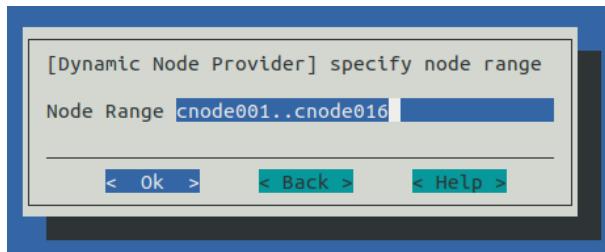


Figure 8.15: Auto Scaler Setup Node Range

The remaining screens in this use case have been covered in the earlier section (**Use Case: Workload Manager (On-premises)**, page 450), and are:

- default node resources (figure 8.8),
- engine settings (figure 8.9),
- workload priorities (figure 8.10),
- tracker settings (figure 8.11).

#### Use Case: Workload Manager (Cluster in Cloud)

If a workload manager (Cluster in Cloud) option is chosen from figure 8.2, then the screens that are displayed next follow the same steps as in the preceding case of a workload manager (Cluster Extension) (starting at page 453).

#### Use Case: Kubernetes (On-premises)

If a Kubernetes (On-premises) scenario is chosen from figure 8.2, and if Kubernetes has been set up (Chapter 4 of the *Containerization Manual*) then the screens that are displayed next are related to Kubernetes and Auto Scaler integration. Auto Scaler tracks Kubernetes jobs or individual pods, and can start or stop the on-premises nodes on demand.

The first screen displayed after the scenario is selected, is a screen that asks for node categories and individual nodes that are to be configured in the static resource provider. Such nodes are the only ones to be managed by Auto Scaler. Category and node selection screens are then displayed as in the earlier sections (figures 8.4 and 8.5).

The administrator is then prompted to select a Kubernetes cluster (figure 8.16).

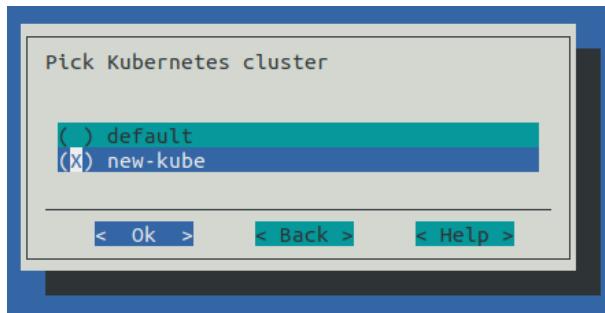


Figure 8.16: Auto Scaler Setup Kubernetes Cluster Selection

If there is only one Kubernetes cluster, then this screen is skipped, and the Kubernetes configuration is used for the integration with Auto Scaler.

The next screen prompts for the Kubernetes engine settings (figure 8.17):

- **Engine Priority:** A workload engine priority. This value is used when the final (global) workload priority is calculated by Auto Scaler. If 0, then this priority is not taken into account.
- **Workloads Per Node:** The maximum number of Kubernetes jobs, or individual Kubernetes pods without a controller, that can be started on a node.
- **CPU Busy Threshold:** The CPU load % that defines if node is too busy for new pods.
- **Memory Busy Threshold:** The Memory load % that defines if node is too busy for new pods.

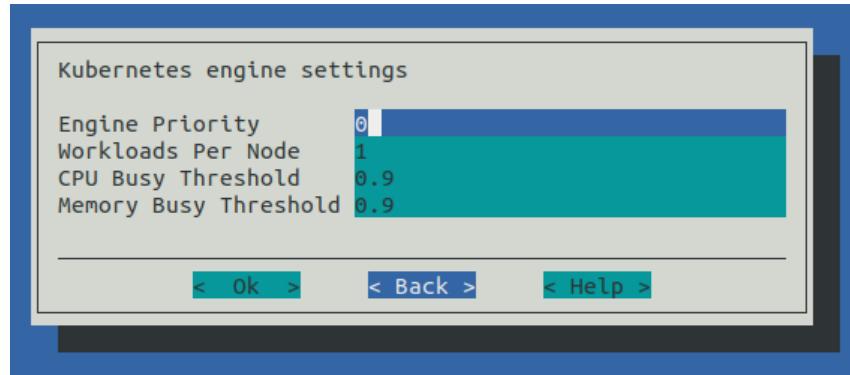


Figure 8.17: Auto Scaler Setup Kubernetes Engine Settings

The administrator is then prompted to pick the Kubernetes namespace that will be tracked by Auto Scaler (figure 8.18):

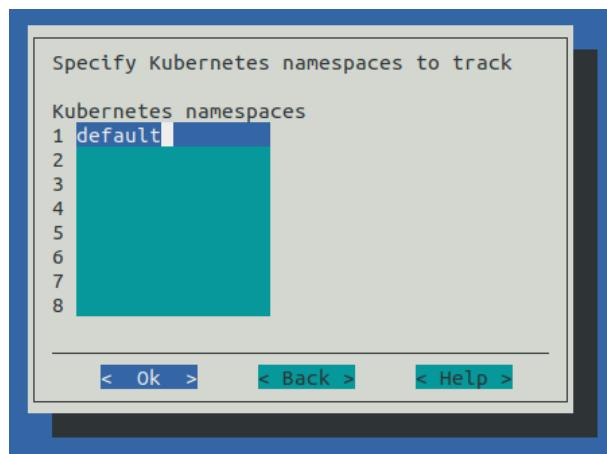


Figure 8.18: Auto Scaler Setup Kubernetes Namespace Selection

In step-by-step mode, the namespace tracker settings are then displayed (figure 8.18):

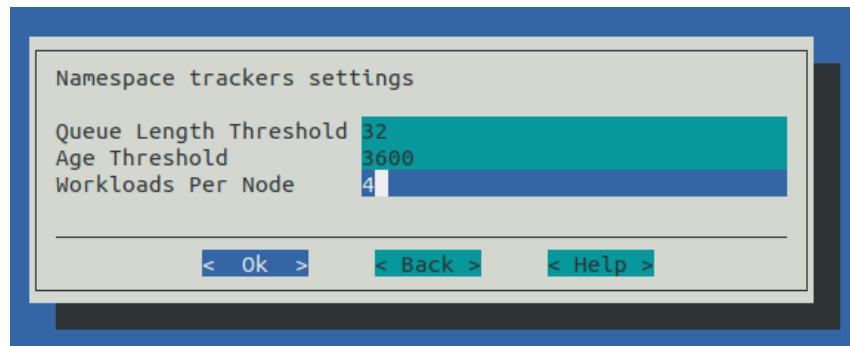


Figure 8.19: Auto Scaler Setup Kubernetes Namespace Tracker Settings

The settings are:

- Queue Length Threshold: If this number of pending workloads is exceeded, then that triggers nodes starting up.
- Age Threshold: Workload pending time threshold, in seconds. If the age of the workload is greater than this, then nodes are triggered to start for this workload.

- **Workloads Per Node:** The maximum number of Kubernetes jobs, or individual Kubernetes pods without a controller, that can be started on a node for that namespace tracker. A value of 0 means no limit is set.

The settings are applied to all configuring namespace trackers. The values can be tuned further afterwards within the ScaleServer role.

The summary screen is displayed next (figure 8.7). Selecting Save config & deploy saves the configuration and starts the setup procedure.

### 8.1.4 Workload Roles Assignment Limitations Per Node With cm-scale

The cm-scale service allows multiple workload managers to be considered on the same cluster, and besides supporting HPC workload managers, also supports Kubernetes as a type of workload engine.

However, more than one engine role should not be assigned to a node at one time. Thus, for example, assigning a Slurm role and a PBS role at the same time to a node should not be done. Nor, for example, should there be a Kubernetes role and a workload management role assigned at the same time to a node.

## 8.2 Configuration

### 8.2.1 The ScaleServer Role

To configure cm-scale, the cluster administrator configures the ScaleServer role. The role is typically assigned to head nodes:

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% device use master
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% roles
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles]% assign scaleserver
```

The role is configured by setting values to its settings. There are some advanced settings for less common options:

```
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->roles*[scaleserver*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name              scaleserver
Revision
Type              ScaleServerRole
Add services      yes
Engines           <0 in submode>
Resource Providers <0 in submode>
Dry Run           no
Debug             no
Run Interval     120
Advanced Settings <submode>
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->roles*[scaleserver*]]% advancedsettings
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->advancedsettings*]%
show
Parameter          Value
-----
Debug2            no
Max Threads       16
Power Operation Timeout 30
Connection Retry Interval 5
Log File           /var/log/cm-scale.log
Pin Queues         no
Mix Locations      yes
Failed Node Is Healthy no
```

Azure Disk Image Name	images
Azure Disk Container Name	vhds
Azure Disk Account Prefix	
Node Selection	Alphabetically
Node Selection Uptime Period	2w

The advanced settings are:

- `Debug2`: Enable printing very low level debug messages in the log file. This setting must be used with caution because it leads to a rapid increase in the log file size.
- `Max Threads`: Maximum number of threads for sequential RPCs to CMDaemon.
- `Power Operation Timeout`: Power operation RPC timeout, in seconds.
- `Connection Retry Interval`: Connection to CMDaemon retry interval, in seconds.
- `Log File`: Path to the log file (Default `/var/log/cm-scale.log`).
- `Pin Queues`: Pin workloads to their queue nodes.
- `Mix Locations`: Allow workload to be offered to different locations (cloud and local).
- `Failed Node Is Healthy`: Do not start a new node instead of a failed one.
- `Azure Disk Image Name`: Image name for Azure disks.
- `Azure Disk Container Name`: Container name for Azure disks.
- `Azure Disk Account Prefix`: Prefix for randomly-generated Azure disk account names.
- `Node Selection`: Type of node selection used by Auto Scaler. The values this can take are:
  - `Alphabetically`: This means that Auto Scaler picks next node to start according the node name.
  - `Randomly`: This means that the nodes are picked randomly, which helps make the node usage more even.
  - `Uptime`: This means that the nodes that have been used the least amount of time are picked first.
- `Node Selection Uptime Period`: If `Node Selection` is set to `uptime`, then the `Node Selection Uptime Period` is the time period from now into the past, over which Auto Scaler calculates the total uptime for nodes. So, with the default setting of `2w` this means that the uptime of nodes is calculated over the last 2 weeks.

An overview of the parameters and submodes is given next. An example showing how they can be configured is given afterwards, in section 8.3.

### ScaleServer Role Global Parameters

The ScaleServer role has the following global parameters for controlling the `cm-scale` service itself:

- `Debug`: Print debug messages to the log.
- `Dry Run`: If set, then the service runs in dry run mode. In this mode it may claim that actions have been carried out on the nodes that use the `cm-scale` service, however, no action is actually carried out on nodes. This mode is useful for demonstration or debug purposes
- `Run Interval`: interval, in seconds, between `cm-scale` decision-making

### ScaleServer Role Submodes

Within the ScaleServer role are the following three submodes:

- **advancedsettings**: allows some advanced properties to be set for cm-scale, using the parameters displayed on page 457.
- **resourceproviders**: defines the nodes used by cm-scale. More explicitly, this submode is used to define resource provider objects. The resource providers can be added as static or dynamic types, and can then have nodes and settings defined within them. The nodes allocated to these resource provider objects are what provide resources to cm-scale when that resource provider is requested.
- **engines**: define the engines used by cm-scale. This can be an instance of the type hpc, generic, or kubernetes (page 465).
  - **trackers** (within engines submode): define the trackers used by cm-scale (page 466)

The parameters are enforced only when the next decision-making iteration takes place.

#### 8.2.2 Resource Providers

The cm-scale service allows nodes to change state according to the workload demand. These managed nodes are defined by the administrator within the resourceproviders submode of ScaleServer. NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11 supports two types of resource providers: static and dynamic node providers.

##### Static Node Provider

When managed nodes are well-known and will not be extended or shrunk dynamically, then a static node provider can be used. Specifying settings for the static node provider allows cm-scale to power on, power off, or re-purpose nodes, based on nodegroups or a list of nodes nodes specified with a node list syntax (page 67).

The static node provider supports the following properties:

- **Enabled**: The static node provider is currently enabled.
  - **Nodes**: A list of nodes managed by cm-scale. These can be regular local compute nodes (nodes) or cluster extension cloud compute nodes (cnodes). For the purposes of this section on cm-scale, these compute nodes can conveniently be called nodes and cnodes. Since compute nodes are typically the most common cluster nodes, significant resources can typically be saved by having the cm-scale service decide on whether to bring them up or down according to demand.
    - cnodes can be cloned and terminated as needed. Cloning and terminating saves on cloud storage costs associated with keeping virtual machine images.
    - regular local compute nodes can be started and stopped as needed. This reduces power consumption.
  - **Nodegroups**: List of node groups (section 2.1.4) with nodes to be managed by cm-scale. Node groups are classed into *types*. The class of *node group types* is independent of the class of *node types*, and should not be confused with it.
- Node types are shown in the first column of the output of the default list command in device mode (page 48). The node types that can be managed by cm-scale are physicalnode and cloudnode.
- **Priority**: The provider priority. Nodes in the pool of a provider with a higher priority are used first by workloads. By default a resource provider has a priority value 0. These priority values should not be confused with the fairsharing priorities of page 464.

## Dynamic Node Provider

When managed nodes can be cloned or removed from the configuration, then a dynamic node provider should be used. A compute node that is managed by cm-scale as a dynamic node provider is configured as a template node within the dynamic submode of the ScaleServer role.

The dynamic node provider supports the following properties:

- **Template Node:** A node that will be used as a template for cloning other nodes in the pool. The following restrictions apply to the template node:
  - A workload manager client role must be assigned with a positive number of slots.
  - New node names should not conflict with the node names of nodes in a nodegroup defined for the queue.
  - A specific template node is restricted to a specific queue.

A template node only has to exist as an object in BCM, with an associated node image. A template node does not need to be up and running physically in order for it to be used to create clones. Sometimes, however, an administrator may want it to run too, like the other nodes that are based upon it, in which case the Start Template Node and Stop Template Node values apply.

- **Start Template Node:** The template node specified in the Template Node parameter is also started automatically on demand.
- **Stop Template Node:** The template node specified in the Template Node parameter is also stopped automatically on demand.

An alternative to a template node is to use a snapshot (Chapter 3.4 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*), for greater cloud node startup speed.

- **Never Terminate:** Number of cloud nodes that are never terminated even if no jobs need them. If there are this number or fewer cloud nodes, then cm-scale no longer terminates them. Cloud nodes that cannot be terminated can, however, still be powered off, allowing them to remain configured in BCM. As an aside, local nodes that are under cm-scale control are powered off automatically when no jobs need them, regardless of the Never Terminate value.
- **Never Terminate Nodes:** A list of nodes specified with a node list syntax (page 67). These cloud nodes are never terminated, even if no jobs need them. Cloud nodes that cannot be terminated can, however, still be powered off. The nodes must already exist in the BCM configuration when Never Terminate Nodes is configured.
- **Enabled:** Node provider is currently enabled.
- **Priority:** Node provider priority.
- **Node Range:** Range of nodes that can be created and managed by cm-scale.
- **Network Interface:** Which node network interface is changed on cloning (incremented).
- **Remove Nodes:** Should the new node be removed from BCM when the node terminates? If the node is not going to be terminated, but just stopped, then it is never removed.
- **Leave Failed Nodes:** If nodes are discovered to be in a state of INSTALLED\_FAILED or INSTALLED\_UNREACHABLE (section 5.5.4) then this setting decides if they can be left alone, so that the administrator can decide what do with them later on.
- **Default Resources:** List of default resources, in format [name=value].
  - **cpu:** value is the number of CPUs
  - **mem:** value is in bytes

These must be set when no real node instance is associated with a node defined in BCM.

### Extra Nodes Settings For Node Providers

Both the dynamic and static node providers support extra node settings. If configured, then cm-scale can start the extra nodes before the first workload is started, and can stop them after the last job from the managed queue is finished.

The most common use case scenario for extra nodes in the case of cloud nodes is a cloud director node. The cloud director node provisions cloud compute nodes and performs other management operations in a cloud.

In the case of non-cloud non-head nodes, extra nodes can be, for example, a license server, a provisioning node, or an additional storage node.

The configuration settings include:

- **Extra Nodes:** A list of extra nodes.
- **Extra Node Idle Time:** The maximum time, in seconds, that extra nodes can remain unused. The cm-scale service checks for the existence of queued and active workloads using the extra node, when the time elapsed since the last check reaches Extra Node Idle Time. If there are workloads using the extra node, then the time elapsed is reset to zero and a time stamp is written into the file cm-scale.state under the directory set by the Spool role parameter. The time stamp is used to decide when the next check is to take place. Setting Extra Node Idle Time=0 means the extra node is stopped whenever it is found to be idle, and started again whenever workloads require it, which may result in a lot of stops and starts.
- **Extra Node Start:** Extra node is started by cm-scale before the first compute node is started.
- **Extra Node Stop:** Extra node is stopped by cm-scale after the last compute node stops.

### Additional Settings For Node Providers

All of the node providers include the following settings that allows the Auto Scaler behavior to be tuned:

- **Keep Running:** Nodes that should not be stopped or terminated even if they are unused (range format).
- **Shutdown Before Power Off:** Shutdown nodes instead of just power off, and wait until a set timeout before doing a hard power off.
- **Shutdown Timeout:** Shutdown timeout before powering off.
- **Allocation Prolog:** Script that is executed when a node is allocated to a workload.
- **Allocation Epilog:** Script that is executed when a node is deallocated.
- **Long starting node action:** Action that is applied to a *long starting node*. A long starting node is a node that takes too long to start. Options:
  - none (default)
  - power off
  - terminate (applied to dynamic node provider only)
- **Long starting node timeout:** How long Auto Scaler should wait before the action is applied for a long starting node.

The following table summarizes the default attributes in cmsh for the resource providers, along the cmsh path cmsh->device [] ->roles->scaleserver->resourceproviders [dynamic/static]:

Parameter	static	dynamic
Name	static	dynamic
Revision		
Type	static	dynamic
Enabled	yes	yes
Priority	0	0
Whole Time	0	0
Stopping Allowance Period	0	0
Keep Running		
Extra Node		
Extra Node Idle Time	1h	1h
Extra Node Start	yes	yes
Extra Node Stop	yes	yes
Allocation Prolog		
Allocation Epilog		
Allocation Scripts Timeout	10s	10s
Nodes	N/A	N/A
Template Node	N/A	
Node Range	N/A	
Network Interface	N/A	tun0
Start Template Node	N/A	no
Stop Template Node	N/A	no
Remove Nodes	N/A	no
Leave Failed Nodes	N/A	yes
Never Terminate	N/A	32
Never Terminate Nodes	N/A	
Nodegroups		N/A
Default Resources	cpus=1	cpus=1
Shutdown Before Power Off	yes	yes
Shutdown Timeout	3m	3m
Long starting node action	None	None
Long starting node timeout	10m	10m

In the preceding table, the entry N/A means that the parameter is not available for the corresponding resource provider.

### 8.2.3 Time Quanta Optimization

*Time quanta optimization* is an additional feature that cm-scale can use for further cost-saving with certain cloud providers.

For instance, a cloud provider may charge per whole unit of time, or *time quantum*, used per cloud node, even if only a fraction of that unit of time was actually used. The aim of BCM's time quanta optimization is to keep a node up as long as possible within the already-paid-for time quantum, but without incurring further cloud provider charges for a node that is not currently useful. That is, the aim is to:

- keep a node up if it is running jobs in the cloud
- keep a node up if it is not running jobs in the cloud, if its cloud time has already been paid for, until that cloud time is about to run out
- take a node down if it is not running jobs in the cloud, if its cloud time is about to run out, in order to avoid being charged another unit of cloud time

Time quanta optimization is implemented with some guidance from the administrator for its associated parameters. The following parameters are common for both static and dynamic node resource providers:

- Whole time. A compute node running time (in minutes) before it is stopped if no workload requires it. For example, the cloud provider may have a time quantum of 60 minutes. By default, BCM uses a value of Whole Time=0, which is a special value that means Whole Time is ignored. Ignoring it means that BCM does no time quanta optimization to try to optimize how costs are minimized, but instead simply takes down nodes when they are no longer running jobs.
- Stopping Allowance Period. A time (in minutes) just before the end of the Whole Time period, prior to which all power off (or terminate) operations must be started. The parameter associated with time quanta optimization is the Stopping Allowance Period. This parameter can also be set by the administrator. The Stopping Allowance Period can be understood by considering the *last call time period*. The last call time period is the period between the last call time, and the time that the next whole-time period starts. If the node is to be stopped before the next whole-time charge is applied, then the last call time period must be at least more than the maximum time period that the node takes to stop. The node stopping period in a cluster involves cleanly stopping many processes, rather than just terminating the node instance, and can therefore take some minutes. The maximum period in minutes allowed for stopping the node can be set by the administrator in the parameter Stopping Allowance Period. By default, Stopping Allowance Period=0. Thus, for nodes that are idling and have no jobs scheduled for them, only if the last call time period is more than Stopping Allowance Period, does cm-scale stop the node.

The preceding parameters are explained next.

Figure 8.20 illustrates a time line with the parameters used in time quanta optimization.

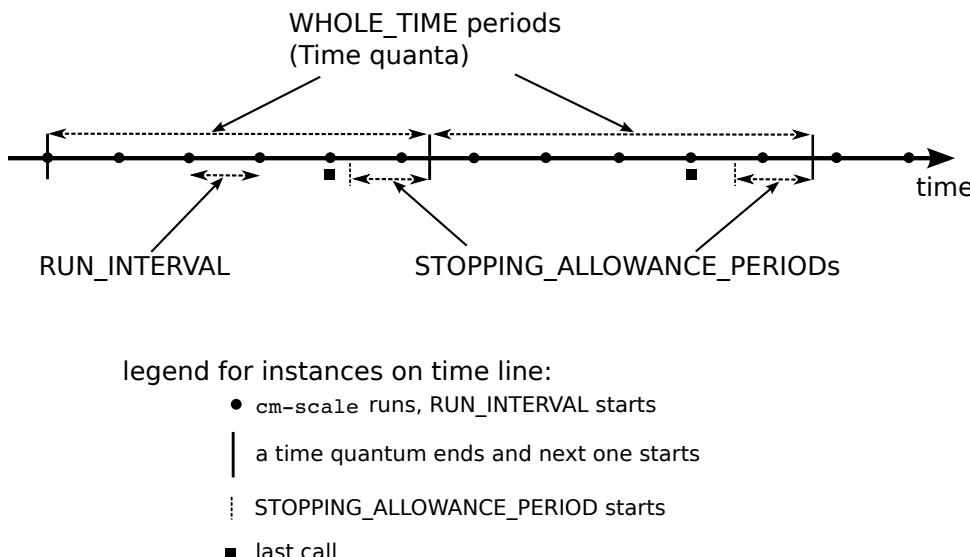


Figure 8.20: Time Quanta Optimization

The algorithm that cm-scale follows, with and without time quanta optimization, can now be described using the two parameters explained so far:

1. cm-scale as part of its normal working, checks every Run Interval seconds to see if it should start up nodes on demand or shut down idling nodes.
2. If it sees idling nodes, then:
  - (a) If Whole Time has not been set, or is 0, then there is no time quanta optimization that takes place. The cm-scale service then just goes ahead as part of its normal working, and shuts down nodes that have nothing running on them or nothing about to run on them.

(b) If a non-zero `Whole Time` has been set, then a time quanta optimization attempt is made. The `cm-scale` service calculates the time period until the next time quantum from public cloud starts. This time period is the current *closing time period*. Its value changes each time that `cm-scale` is run. If

- the current closing time period is long enough to let the node stop cleanly before the next time quantum starts, and
- the next closing time period—as calculated by the next `cm-scale` run but also running within the current time quantum—is not long enough for the node to stop cleanly before the next quantum starts

then the current closing time period starts at a time called the *last call*.

In drinking bars, the last call time by a bartender allows some time for a drinker to place the final orders. This allows a drinker to finish drinking in a civilized manner. The drinker is meant to stop drinking before closing time. If the drinker is still drinking beyond that time, then a vigilant law enforcement officer will fine the bartender.

Similarly, the last call time in a scaling cluster allows some time for a node to place its orders to stop running. It allows the node to finish running cleanly. The node is meant to stop running before the next time quantum starts. If the node is still running beyond that time, then a vigilant cloud provider will charge for the next whole time period.

The last call time is the last time that `cm-scale` can run during the current whole-time period and still have the node stop cleanly within that current whole-time period, and before the next whole-time period starts. Thus, when `Whole Time` has been set to a non-zero time:

- i. If the node is at the last call time, then the node begins with stopping
- ii. If the node is not at the last call time, then the node does not begin with stopping

The algorithm goes back again to step 1.

#### 8.2.4 Fairsharing Priority Calculation And Node Management

At intervals of `Run Interval`, `cm-scale` collects workloads using trackers configured in the `ScaleServer` role, and puts all the workloads in a single internal queue. This queue is then sorted by priorities. The priorities are calculated for each workload using the following fairsharing formula:

$$p_{ij} = k_1 \times a_i + k_2 \times b_j + k_3 \times c_j \quad (8.1)$$

where:

$p_{ij}$  is the global priority for the  $i$ -th workload of the  $j$ -th engine. Its value is used to re-order the queue.

$k_1$  is the age factor. This is the `agefactor` parameter that can be set via `cmsh` in the engine submode of the `ScaleServer` role. Usually it has the value 1.

$a_i$  is the age of the workload. That is, how long has passed since the  $i$ -th job submission, in seconds. This typically dominates the priority calculation, and makes older workloads a higher priority.

$k_2$  is the external priority factor. It is a floating point number in the range  $[0, 1]$ , and is the `External Priority Factor` parameter that can be set via `cmsh` in the engine submode of the `ScaleServer` role.

$b_i$  is the workload priority retrieved from the engine.

$k_3$  is the engine factor. It is a floating point number in the range  $[0, 1]$ , and is the `enginefactor` parameter in the engine submode of the `ScaleServer` role.

$c_j$  is the engine priority. This is the `priority` parameter in the engine submode of the `ScaleServer` role.

When all the workload priorities are calculated and the queue is re-ordered, then `cm-scale` starts to find appropriate nodes for workloads. The workloads are selected in order, from the top of the queue

where the higher priority workloads are, to the bottom. This way a higher priority engine has a greater chance of getting nodes for its workloads than a lower priority engine.

The factors  $k_1$ ,  $k_2$  and  $k_3$  in the equation 8.1 allow the significance of the related priority value in the final result to be controlled. For example if only the priority fetched from the engine should be taken into account, then  $k_1$  and  $k_3$  should be set to 0, and  $k_2$  to 1. Or, for example, when both the age and engine priorities should be treated as equally important, then  $k_1$  and  $k_3$  can be set to 0.5 and  $k_2$  to 0.

### 8.2.5 Engines

Each workload engine considered by `cm-scale` must be configured within the `engines` submode within the `ScaleServer` role. NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11 supports the following workload engines:

- Slurm
- PBS (OpenPBS and PBS Professional)
- LSF

Engines can be of three types:

- `hpc`: for all HPC (High Performance Computing) workload managers
- `kubernetes`: for Kubernetes
- `generic`: for a generic type

#### Common Parameters For The `cm-scale` Engines

All three engine types have the following parameters and submode in common, although their values may differ:

- `Workloads Per Node`: The number of workloads, Kubernetes jobs, or individual Kubernetes pods without a controller, that can be scheduled to run on the same node at the same time.
  - For a Kubernetes engine this parameter restricts the number of jobs or individual pods per node. It does not restrict the total number of pods that can be run per node by the `cm-scale` scheduler. The parameter is taken into consideration by the `cm-scale` scheduler when it is searching for new nodes to start up, and does not configure Kubernetes itself.

For example, a Kubernetes job, or Job with a capital 'J' in Kubernetes terminology, may consist of many pods. Then, if `Workload Per Node` is, for example, 2, then only 2 Jobs are run on the node.

The number of pods is also taken into account by `cm-scale`, but this number is taken from the `kubelet` role, where the `Max_Pods` option can be set. If the role is not assigned to a node, using a configuration overlay, category, or node, then `cm-scale` assumes that there is no possibility for any pods to run on the node.

- `Priority`: The engine priority
- `Age Factor`: Fairsharing coefficient for workload age
- `Engine Factor`: Fairsharing coefficient for engine priority
- `External Priority Factor`: Fairsharing coefficient for external priority significance
- `Trackers`: Enters the workload `trackers` submode

### Non-common parameters for the cm-scale engines:

- For the hpc engine:
  - WLM Cluster: A workload manager cluster name. The name is set during workload manager setup as the instance name. In cmsh the WLM cluster names are listed under wlm mode. In Base View they can be seen along the navigation path HPC > Wlm Clusters.
- For the kubernetes engine, the following parameters can be set:
  - Cluster: These are the Kubernetes clusters for which pods are to be tracked. BCM allows multiple Kubernetes clusters to run on a single compute cluster. Kubernetes must be already set up before this setting is configured.
  - CPU Busy Threshold: The CPU load is a value that can range from 0 to 1. The CPU Busy Threshold value defines if the node is too busy for new pods. Its default value is: 0.9.
  - Memory Busy Threshold: The Memory load is a value that can range from 0 to 1. The Memory Busy Threshold defines if the node is too busy for new pods. Its default value is: 0.9.

The CPU and Memory thresholds configured in the Kubernetes engine help cm-scale to decide when more nodes are needed. But cm-scale also retrieves the number of pods that are already running on the node and compares it with the Max Pods parameter that is configured in the kubelet role assigned to the node via at the configuration overlay level, category level, or node level. If the number of running pods is already equal or greater than the value of Max Pods, then (from the cm-scale point of view) the node cannot fit more pods, which means that a new node is needed.

### 8.2.6 Trackers

A workload tracker is a way to specify the workload and its node requirements to cm-scale. For HPC, the tracker may be associated with a specific queue, and cm-scale then tracks the jobs in that queue.

One or more trackers can be named and enabled within the trackers submode, which is located within the engines submode of the ScaleServer role. A queue (for workload managers) can be assigned to each tracker.

#### Example

There are three types of tracker objects supported in NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11:

- queue: Used with an HPC type engine, where each workload (job) is associated with a particular queue. The attribute Type takes the value ScaleHpcQueueTracker, and the attribute Queue is set to the queue name for the job.
- namespace: Used with a kubernetes type engine.
- generic: Used with a generic type engine.

The following settings are common for both types of trackers:

- Enabled: Enabled means that workloads from this tracker are considered by cm-scale.
- Allowed Resource Providers: Only the specified resource providers (in the scaleserver role) will be used for a workload of this tracker (if empty than all allowed).
- Assign Category: A node category name that should be assigned to the managed nodes. When a node is supposed to be used by a workload, then cm-scale should assign the node category to that node. If the node is already running, and has no workloads running on it, but its category differs from the category specified for the jobs of the queue, then the node is drained, stopped and restarted on the next decision-making iteration of cm-scale, and takes on the assigned category. Further details on this are given in the section on dynamic nodes re-purposing, page 482.

- Primary Overlays: A list of configuration overlays.

If a workload is associated with the tracker for which the overlays are specified by Primary Overlays, then BCM-managed nodes are appended to those configuration overlays by cm-scale. This takes place after the node is removed from the previous overlays that it is associated with.

If the node is already running, but has not yet been appended to the overlays specified for the workloads of the tracker, then the node is restarted when no other workloads run on the node, before going on to run the workloads with the new overlays.

- When a workload is associated with the tracker that has Primary Overlays set, then the pool of cm-scale-managed nodes is checked.

The check is to decide on if a node is to be made available for the workload.

If the node is appended to the Primary Overlays already and is not running workloads, then cm-scale simply hands over a workload from the tracker to run on the node.

If the node is not appended to the Primary Overlays already, and is not running workloads, then cm-scale prepares and boots the node as follows:

- \* the node is drained and rebooted if it is up, or
- \* the node is undrained and merely booted if it is not up

The node is removed from any previous overlays that it was with, before booting up, and it is appended to the new overlays of Primary Overlays.

- The threshold settings:

- Queue Length Threshold: number of pending workloads that triggers cloudbursting.
- Age Threshold: workload pending time threshold, in seconds, that triggers cloudbursting for this workload.

The queue length and age thresholds allow the administrator to set when cm-scale starts or creates cloudbursting nodes. Both thresholds can be used at the same time, or just one of them can be used and the other can be ignored by setting it to 0.

If the queue length threshold is set, then cm-scale ignores pending workloads that are located higher (added later) than the threshold in the managed queue.

### Example

Assuming there are 5 jobs in the queue, with job IDs 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5, where the 1st one is the first in the queue. If the queue length threshold is 3, then only jobs 1, 2 and 3 are taken into account, while jobs 4 and 5 are ignored.

### Example

If the age threshold is set to 100, then only workloads older than 100 seconds are taken into account, while younger jobs are ignored.

The queue type tracker has only one parameter specific to the tracker: Queue. This is set to the workload queue that is being tracked.

### Namespace Tracker

The namespace tracker of `cm-scale` is used to track Kubernetes workloads. It tracks Kubernetes jobs (via its Job controllers) and tracks individual pods. It does not start new nodes for pending pods owned by other types of Kubernetes pod controllers, such as ReplicaSet, DaemonSet, and so on. If non-Job controllers are running, then `cm-scale` will not stop or terminate those nodes.

The tracker settings in `cmsh` or Base View include additional parameters that are in common with other trackers:

1. **Controller Namespace:** Tracks the Kubernetes namespace name. Only Kubernetes workloads from this namespace are tracked. To track more than one namespace, one tracker must be created per namespace.
2. **Object:** Type of Kubernetes objects to track. BCM supports the following object types:
  - (a) **Job:** A Kubernetes Job controller type represents one or several pods that are expected to eventually terminate. The controller nature makes this type of Kubernetes workload very suited to dynamic data centers.
  - (b) **Pod:** Individual pod, without any controller.

If the specified namespace does not exist in Kubernetes, then the tracked jobs or individual pods in this namespace are ignored by `cm-scale`.

### Generic Engine And Tracker

The `cm-scale` service is able to deal with workloads that use various workload types. In order to add support of a new type of workload, the administrator

- adds an engine of type `generic`
- adds one or more trackers of type `generic` to the `ScaleServer` role
- implements `Tracker` and `Workload` classes in the Python programming language

When `cm-scale` starts a new iteration, it re-reads the engines and trackers settings from the `ScaleServer` role, and searches for the appropriate modules in its directories. In the case of a custom tracker, the module is always loaded according to the tracker handler path. When the tracker module is loaded, `cm-scale` requests a list of workloads from each of the tracker modules. So, the aim of the tracker module is to collect and provide the workloads to `cm-scale` in the correct format.

The path to the tracker module should be specified in the `handler` parameter of the generic tracker entity using `cmsh` or Base View as follows:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device roles master
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles]% use scaleserver
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[scaleserver]]% engines
...->roles[scaleserver]->engines% add generic myengine
...*->roles*[scaleserver*]->engines*[myengine*]]% trackers
...*[myengine*]->trackers% add generic mytracker
...*[mytracker*]]% set handler /cm/local/apps/cm-scale/examples/custom_tracker/tracker.py
...*->roles*[scaleserver*]->engines*[myengine*]->trackers*[mytracker*]]% commit
...->roles[scaleserver]->engines[myengine]->trackers[mytracker]]%
```

In the preceding example, the handler file `.../examples/tracker.py` is an example that is provided with the `cm-scale` package. Another example module file provided with the package is `.../examples/workload.py`, which implements the `ExampleWorkload` class. Together, the two examples can be used

to generate any amount of simple workloads during each cm-scale iteration. It is recommended to use the tracker and workload classes as templates for custom tracker and workload modules created by the administrator.

The generic engine does not have any specific parameters associated with its type. It only has parameters common to all of the engine types.

If the generic engine is configured with at least one generic tracker in its role, then cm-scale loads the handler module and uses two functions that are implemented in the class. The class name can be chosen arbitrarily, but should contain the string "Tracker", without the quotes. The two class functions used are:

1. `__init__`: initializes the tracker object. This can be omitted if there are no additional data values to initialize.
2. `get_workloads`: returns a list of objects belonging to a new class inherited from the `Workload` class. This new class should be created by the administrator.

The new workload class must provide the following functions and properties. The class name can be chosen arbitrarily:

1. `__init__`: initializes the workload object.
2. `to_string`: returns a string that identifies the workload. This is printed to the log file.
3. `begin_timestamp`: property that returns a unix timestamp that should be >0 if the workload is not allowed to start before that time. If it is 0 then it is ignored by cm-scale.

For example, the following very simple tracker and workload classes can be implemented:

### Example

```
class ExampleTracker(Tracker):
    def get_workloads(self):
        return [ExampleWorkload(self)]

class ExampleWorkload(Workload):
    def __init__(self):
        Workload.__init__(self, tracker)
        self.set_id("1")
        self._update_state()
        self._update_age()
        self._update_resources()

    def to_string(self):
        return "workload %s" % self._id

    def _update_state():
        self._set_pending()

    def _update_age(self):
        self._age = 0

    def _update_resources(self):
        node_res = NodeResource("*")

        cpus_res = CpusResource(1)
        node_res.add_resource(cpu_res)
```

```

engine_res = EngineResource("myengine")
node_res.add_resource(engine_res)

self.add_resource(node_res)

```

The classes should be located in different files, as Python module files. It is recommended, but not required, to keep both the files in the same directory. The `ExampleWorkload` class initializes the workload object with a state, age, and required resources. These values are described next.

**State:** The state can be `pending`, `running` or `failed`, which can be set with these appropriate functions:

- `self._set_pending()`
- `self._set_running()`
- `self._set_failed()`

If the state is `running`, then the workload is treated as one that occupies the nodes defined in the resources list. Each `NodeResource` object in the resources thus represents one occupied node.

If the state is `pending`, then the workload is treated as one that waits for free nodes. In this case `cm-scale` tries to find (start or clone) some more nodes in order to allow the workload engine to start this workload.

The `failed` workload state is considered by `cm-scale` as exceptional. Such a workload is logged in the log file, but is not considered when `cm-scale` decides what nodes to start or clone. Any other workload state is also ignored by `cm-scale`.

**Age:** The age defines how many seconds the workload is waiting for its resources since being added to the engine. Usually the engine can provide such information, so in the example age is set to 0, which means the workload has been added to the workload engine just now. The age is used in the fairsharing workload priority calculation (page 464). The value of `age` is not re-calculated by `cm-scale` after a while. This means that the number that the module sets in the class is used during the iteration, and then forgotten by `cm-scale` until the workload object is recreated from scratch on the next iteration.

**Resources:** The `Workload` class (a base class) includes the `resources` property with list types. This list includes resource objects that are used by `cm-scale` in order to find appropriate nodes for the workload. The top level resource type is always `NodeResource`. There can be one or several node resources requested by the workload.

If the node names are known, then one `NodeResource` object is created per compute node.

Otherwise a single `NodeResource` object is used as many times as the number of requested nodes, with the name set to `*`, which is treated by `cm-scale` as any suitable node. The number of nodes can be set in the `NodeResource` object with the `set_amount(number)` function of the resource.

In the preceding example one (any) node resource is added to the workload request, and the requirement for CPU (cores) number is set to 1. The engine resource is used in order to restrict the running of workloads from different engines to one node. Thus if a node has this resource assigned, then the node can take on the workload. If no engine resource is assigned to the node, then it can also take on the workload, but the engine resource of the workload is assigned to the node before other workloads are considered.

The resource types that can be added to the workload are defined in the Python module `core/resource.py`:

- `NodeResource`: top level resource, contains all other resources.
- `CpusResource`: defines the number of cpu cores required or already used by the workload.

- **CategoryResource**: node category required by the workload.
- **OverlayResource**: required configuration overlay.
- **QueueResource**: HPC queue that the workload (job) belongs to. Used only with engines that support queues.
- **EngineResource**: engine name that the workload belongs to.
- **FeatureResource**: required node feature (node property, in other terminology) that should be supported by the engine.

Custom resource types are not supported for now.

In order to drain a node in the custom engine before the node is stopped, and to undrain it before the node is started, the administrator can write and configure three scripts:

- **Drain script**: called before a node is drained by Auto Scaler.
- **Undrain script**: called before node is undrained by Auto Scaler.
- **Drain status script**: called when Auto Scaler retrieves information about the current node drain status.

Either all of the three scripts must be configured, or none of them.

It is useful to drain and undrain the nodes in order to ensure that the engine does not start new jobs in time period between the instant that Auto Scaler decides to stop the node, and the instant that the actual power operation is performed.

The scripts are configured in the file:

```
/cm/local/apps/cm-scale/lib/python3.12/site-packages/cmscale/config.py
```

with the **GENERIC\_DRAIN\_COMMANDS** parameter appended to the **opts** dictionary:

### Example

```
"GENERIC_DRAIN_COMMANDS": {
    "MyEngine": {
        "drain": "/cm/local/apps/cm-scale//examples/custom_drain/drain.py",
        "undrain": "/cm/local/apps/cm-scale/examples/custom_drain/undrain.py",
        "status": "/cm/local/apps/cm-scale/examples/custom_drain/drainstatus.py"
    }
},
```

Here, for each generic engine, a new dictionary is created that includes three items that correspond to, and specify, the script paths. In the preceding example **MyEngine** is the engine name, and should be the same as that defined in the **ScaleServer** role. If more than one generic engine is used then all of them can be added to **GENERIC\_DRAIN\_COMMANDS**.

It should be noted that if **GENERIC\_DRAIN\_COMMANDS** is defined in **config.py**, then CMdaemon does not drain, or undrain, via **cm-scale**.

All three scripts accept the same set of parameters, following the form:

```
<script name> <engine name> <host name> [host name . . . ]
```

### Example

```
drain.py MyEngine node001 node002 node003
```

Each of those three scripts print the following information to standard output:

- **stdout**: JSON structure that represents a map: hostname -> latest (new) drain status. For example:

### Example

```
{"node001": 2, "node002": 2, "node003": 2}
```

Here the numbers are enum values defined in pythoncm in the DrainResult class.

- stderr: debug logs that are appended to cm-scale.log.

### Enabling Node Shutdown

By default, cm-scale powers off nodes belonging to a resource pool once there is no more workload for them. Resource providers can also enable shutdown, to allow the node to terminate gracefully. Shutdown has two options that set its behavior directly:

- Shutdown Enable: If set to yes, then the shutdown command is run to terminate the system services first, and after that a command is run to power off the system. A waiting time of Shutdown Timeout seconds takes place between the two commands.
- Shutdown Timeout: The number of seconds to wait before powering off a node that is in a shutdown state.

It may take more than Shutdown Timeout seconds for a node to power off, depending on the Run Interval setting. For example, if Shutdown Timeout is 60, and Run Interval 50, then effectively the Shutdown Timeout is 100, because the power off event only happens during an iteration execution of cm-scale.

### Multi-partition Slurm jobs

Slurm allows a user to submit a job that requests multiple queues. Auto Scaler detects such jobs and tries to start nodes for the job. The queue with the maximum priority is first considered. If no nodes are found in that partition, then the next requested partition in order of priority, is considered.

The queue priority is taken from Slurm partition PriorityTier parameter, accessible via cmsh or Base View.

- In cmsh, the queue priorities can be seen from within jobqueue mode. In the following example there are 3 queues with different priorities:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm jobqueue; list
Name (key)    Nodes
-----
defq          node001..node005
medq          node006..node009
topq          node010..node012
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobqueue]%
get defq prioritytier; get medq prioritytier; get topq prioritytier
1
5
10
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobqueue]%
use defq; help set | grep tier
prioritytier ..... Jobs submitted to a partition with a higher priority tier value will be
                     dispatched before pending jobs in partition with lower priority tier value
```

- In Base View the navigation path for the queue defq is:

HPC > Workload Management Clusters > slurm > Job Queues > defq > Priority Tier

If multiple queue trackers are configured, and if queues are requested by the Slurm job that are tracked by different trackers, then only one tracker sees the job—the tracker for which tracking queue priority is the highest.

If two queues have the same priority, then the next selection criterion is the order of placement of its trackers (section 8.2.6) in the trackers list.

For example, if the Auto Scaler (as defined by the scaleserver role) is running on the head node basecm11, and if the trackers are, for example, mytracker and secondtracker, and if the engine is, for example, myengine, then the order of placement can be listed in cmsh via the path indicated by:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[scaleserver]->engines[myengine]->trackers]# list
Name (key)      Enabled
-----
mytracker       yes
secondtracker   yes
```

## 8.3 Examples Of cm-scale Use

### 8.3.1 Simple Static Node Provider Usage Example

The example session that follows explains how a static node provider (page 459) can be configured and used with cm-scale. The session considers a default cluster with a head node and 5 regular nodes which have been previously defined in the BCM configuration. 3 of the regular nodes are powered down at the start of the run. The power control for the nodes must be functioning properly, or otherwise cm-scale cannot power nodes on and off.

The head node has the Slurm server role by default, and the regular nodes run with the Slurm client role by default. So, on a freshly-installed cluster, the roleoverview command should show something like:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% roleoverview | head -2; roleoverview | grep slurm
Role          Nodes           Categories Configuration Overlays      Nodes up
-----
slurmaccounting  basecm11          slurm-accounting    1 of 1
slurmclient     node001..node005    default          slurm-client      2 of 5
slurmserver      basecm11          slurm-server       1 of 1
slurmsubmit      basecm11,node001..node005 default          slurm-submit, wlm-headnode-submit 3 of 6
```

A test user, fred can be created by the administrator (section 6.2), and an MPI hello executable based on the hello.c code (from section 3.5.1 of the *User Manual*) can be built:

### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ module add shared openmpi/gcc/64 slurm
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ mpicc hello.c -o hello
```

A batch file slurmhello.sh (from section 5.3.1 of the *User Manual*) can be set up. Restricting it to 1 process per node so that it spreads over nodes easier for the purposes of the test can be done with the settings:

### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ cat slurmhello.sh
#!/bin/sh
#SBATCH -o my.stdout
```

```
#SBATCH --time=30 #time limit to batch job
#SBATCH --ntasks=1
#SBATCH --ntasks-per-node=1
module add shared openmpi/gcc/64/ slurm

mpirun /home/fred/hello
```

The user fred can now flood the default queue, defq, with the batch file:

### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ while (true); do sbatch slurmhello.sh; done
```

After putting enough jobs into the queue (a few thousand should be enough, and keeping it less than 5000 would be sensible) the flooding can be stopped with a ctrl-c.

The activity in the queue can be watched:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# watch "squeue | head -3 ; squeue | tail -3"
```

```
Every 2.0s: squeue | head -3 ; squeue | tail -3                               Thu Sep 15 10:33:17 2016
```

JOBID	PARTITION	NAME	USER	ST	TIME	NODES	NODELIST(REASON)
6423	defq	slurmhel	fred	CF	0:00	1	node001
6424	defq	slurmhel	fred	CF	0:00	1	node002
6572	defq	slurmhel	fred	PD	0:00	1	(Priority)
6422	defq	slurmhel	fred	R	0:00	1	node001
6423	defq	slurmhel	fred	R	0:00	1	node002

The preceding indicates that node001 and node002 are being kept busy running the batch jobs, while the remaining nodes are not in use. The ST column is a status column, and indicates whether the job is CF (configuring), PD (pending), or R (running).

Abusing squeue in a loop like this is regarded as a bad practice, and doing it should be minimized.

The administrator can check on the job status via the job metrics of cmsh too, using the options to the filter command, such as --pending or --running:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "wlm use slurm; jobs; watch filter --running -u fred"
Every 2.0s: filter --running -u fred                                         Wed May  7 12:50:05 2017
Job ID Job name      User Queue Submit time Start time End time Nodes          Exit code
-----
406   slurmhello.sh fred defq  16:16:56    16:27:21   N/A      node001,node002  0
```

and eventually, when jobs are no longer running, it should show something like:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "wlm use slurm; jobs; watch filter --running -u fred"
Every 2.0s: filter --running                                              Wed May  7 12:56:53 2017
No jobs found
```

So far, the cluster is queuing or running jobs without cm-scale being used.

The next steps are to modify the behavior by bringing in cm-scale. The administrator assigns the ScaleServer role to the head node. Within the role a new static node provider, Slurm engine, and queue tracker for the defq are set as follows:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device roles master
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles]% use scaleserver
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[scaleserver]]% resourceproviders
...->roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders% add static pool1
...*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->resourceproviders*[pool1*]]% set nodes node001..node005
...*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->resourceproviders*[pool1*]]% commit
...]->roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders[pool1]]% ...;...
...]->roles[scaleserver]]% engines
...]->roles[scaleserver]->engines% add hpc slurm1
...*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->engines*[slurm1*]]% set wlmcluster slurm
...*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->engines*[slurm1*]]% trackers
...*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->engines*[slurm1*]->trackers% add queue tr1
...*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->engines*[slurm1*]->trackers*[tr1*]]% set queue defq
...*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->engines*[slurm1*]->trackers*[tr1*]]% commit
...->roles[scaleserver]->engines[slurm1]->trackers[tr1]]%
```

The nodes node001..node005 should already be in the queue defq, as assigned to them by default when they were assigned the SlurmClient role. With these settings, they can now be powered up or down on demand by cm-scale service, depending on the number of jobs that are pending. When the new ScaleServer role is committed in cmsh or Base View, then the cm-scale service is started. If needed, the administrator can check the log file /var/log/cm-scale to see what the service is doing.

On each iteration cm-scale checks whether the node states should be changed. Thus after a while, the nodes node003..node005 are started. Once up, they can start to process the jobs in the queue too.

Watching the running jobs should show the newly-started nodes running too:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "wlm use slurm; jobs ; watch filter --running"
Every 2.0s: filter --running                                         Thu Apr 25 16:21:59 2024
Job ID Job name      User Queue Submit time Start time End time Nodes     Exit code
----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- ----- -----
6147  slurmhello.sh fred defq  16:16:37    16:20:17    N/A       node004  0
6148  slurmhello.sh fred defq  16:16:37    16:20:17    N/A       node001  0
6149  slurmhello.sh fred defq  16:16:37    16:20:17    N/A       node003  0
```

Eventually, cm-scale finds that all jobs have been dealt with, and the nodes are then powered down.

**High-availability And Using A Configuration Overlay For The ScaleServer Role**

For high-availability clusters, where there are two head nodes, the scaleserver should run on the active head node. One labor-intensive way to set this up is to assign the service to both the head nodes, and match the scaleserver settings on both head nodes. A simpler way is to define a configuration overlay for the head nodes for the scaleserver. If the head nodes are basecm11-1 and basecm11-2, then a configuration overlay called basecm11heads can be created and assigned the service as follows:

**Example**

```
[basecm11-1]% configurationoverlay add basecm11heads
[basecm11-1->configurationoverlay*[basecm11heads*]]% append nodes basecm11-1 basecm11-2
[basecm11-1->configurationoverlay*[basecm11heads*]]% roles
[basecm11-1->configurationoverlay*[basecm11heads*]->roles]% assign scaleserver
[basecm11-1->configurationoverlay*[basecm11heads*]->roles*[scaleserver*]]%
```

The scaleserver can then be configured within the configuration overlay instead of on a single head as was done previously in the example of page 474. After carrying out a `commit`, the scaleserver settings modifications are then mirrored automatically between the two head nodes.

Outside the scaleserver settings, one extra modification is to set the `cm-scale` service to run on a head node if the head node is active. This can be done with:

### Example

```
[basecm11-1->configurationoverlay[basecm11heads]->roles[scaleserver]]% device services basecm11-1
[basecm11-1->device[basecm11-1]->services]% use cm-scale
[basecm11-1->device[basecm11-1]->services[cm-scale]]% set runif active
[basecm11-1->device*[basecm11-1*]->services*[cm-scale*]]% commit
[basecm11-1->device[basecm11-1]->services]% device use basecm11-2
[basecm11-1->device[basecm11-2]->services]% use cm-scale
[basecm11-1->device[basecm11-2]->services[cm-scale]]% set runif active
[basecm11-1->device*[basecm11-2*]->services*[cm-scale*]]% commit
```

The result is a scaleserver that runs when the head node is active.

### 8.3.2 Simple Dynamic Node Provider Usage Example

The following example session explains how a dynamic node provider (page 460) can be configured and used with `cm-scale`. The session considers a default cluster with a head node and 2 regular nodes which have been previously defined in the BCM configuration, and also 1 cloud director node and 2 cloud compute nodes. The cloud nodes can be configured using `cm-cluster-extension`. Only the head node is running at the start of the session, while the regular nodes and cloud nodes are all powered down at the start of the run.

At the start, the device status shows something like:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% ds
eu-west-1-cnode001 ..... [ DOWN ] (Unassigned)
eu-west-1-cnode002 ..... [ DOWN ] (Unassigned)
eu-west-1-cnode003 ..... [ DOWN ] (Unassigned)
eu-west-1-director ..... [ DOWN ]
node001 ..... [ DOWN ]
node002 ..... [ DOWN ]
basecm11 ..... [ UP ]
```

The power control for the regular nodes must be functioning properly, or otherwise `cm-scale` cannot power them on and off.

If the head node has the `slurmserver` role, and the regular nodes have the `slurmclient` role, then

the roleoverview command should show something like:

### Example

Role	Nodes	Categories	Nodes up
boot	basecm11		1 of 1
cgroupsupervisor	eu-west-1-cnode001..eu-west-1-cnode002	aws-cloud-director,default ,eu-west-1-director,node001..node002 ,eu-west-1-cloud-node ,basecm11	1 of 6
clouddirector	eu-west-1-director		0 of 1
cloudgateway	basecm11		1 of 1
login	basecm11		1 of 1
master	basecm11		1 of 1
monitoring	basecm11		1 of 1
provisioning	eu-west-1-director,basecm11		1 of 2
slurmclient	eu-west-1-cnode001..eu-west-1-cnode002	default,eu-west-1-cloud-node ,node001..node002	0 of 3
slurmserver	basecm11		1 of 1
storage	eu-west-1-director,basecm11	aws-cloud-director	1 of 2

A test user, fred can be created by the administrator (section 6.2), and an MPI hello executable based on the hello.c code (from section 3.5.1 of the *User Manual*) can be built:

### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ module add shared openmpi/gcc/64 slurm
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ mpicc hello.c -o hello
```

A batch file slurmhello.sh (from section 5.3.1 of the *User Manual*) can be set up. Restricting it to 1 process per node so that it spreads over nodes easier for the purposes of the test can be done with the settings:

### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ cat slurmhello.sh
#!/bin/sh
#SBATCH -o my.stdout
#SBATCH --time=30 #time limit to batch job
#SBATCH --ntasks=1
#SBATCH --ntasks-per-node=1
module add shared openmpi/gcc/64 slurm

mpirun /home/fred/hello
```

A default cluster can queue or run jobs without cm-scale being used. The default behavior is modified in the next steps, which bring in the cm-scale service:

The administrator assigns the ScaleServer role to the head node.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device roles master
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles]% assign scaleserver
```

Within the assigned scaleserver role, a new dynamic node provider can be set, and properties for the dynamic pool of nodes can be set for the cloud compute nodes. Here the properties that are set are priority (page 459), templatenode (page 460), noderange (page 460), and extranodes (page 461).

### Example

```
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->roles*[scaleserver*]]% resourceproviders
...->roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders)% add dynamic pool2
...resourceproviders*[pool2*]]% set priority 2
...resourceproviders*[pool2*]]% set noderange eu-west-1-cnode001..eu-west-1-cnode002
...resourceproviders*[pool2*]]% set templatenode eu-west-1-cnode001
...resourceproviders*[pool2*]]% set extranodes eu-west-1-director
...resourceproviders*[pool2*]]% commit
...resourceproviders[pool2]]%
```

The regular compute nodes, node001..node002 should be specified as nodes in the static pool.

The administrator may notice the similarity of dynamic and static pool configuration. The BCM front end has deliberately been set up to present dynamic pool and static pool nodes to the cluster administrator as two different configuration methods. This is because separating the pool types as dynamic and static pools is simpler for the cluster administrator to deal with. This way, regular compute nodes are treated, not as a special case of a dynamic pool, but simply as static pool nodes. The fundamental reason behind this separate treatment is because physical nodes cannot “materialize” dynamically with properties in the way the cloud compute nodes—which are virtualized nodes—can, due to the need to associate a MAC address with a physical node.

Assigning regular compute nodes to a static pool can be done in a similar way to what was shown before in the example on page 474.

Continuing with the current session, the nodes node001..node002 are added to the static pool of nodes, on-premises-nodes. For this example they are set to a lower priority than the cloud nodes:

### Example

```
...->roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders)% add static on-premises-nodes
...->roles*[scaleserver*]->resourceproviders*[on-premises-nodes*]]% set nodes node001..node002
...->roles*[scaleserver*]->resourceproviders*[on-premises-nodes*]]% set priority 1
...->roles*[scaleserver*]->resourceproviders*[on-premises-nodes*]]% commit
...->roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders[on-premises-nodes]]%
```

What this lower priority means is that a node that is not up and is in the static pool of nodes, is only powered on after all the cloud nodes are powered on and busy running jobs. If there happen to be nodes from the static pool that are already up, but are not running jobs, then these nodes take a job, despite the lower priority of the static pool, and irrespective of whether the dynamic pool nodes are in use.

Job priorities can be overridden in cm-scale by:

- allowing locations by setting Mix Locations to true (page 484) or
- pinning queues by setting Pin Queues to true (page 486)

A Slurm engine, and queue tracker for the defq are set as follows:

### Example

```
...]->roles[scaleserver]]% engines
...]->roles[scaleserver]->engines)% add hpc slurm2
...*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->engines*[slurm2*]]% set wlmcluster slurm
...*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->engines*[slurm2*]]% trackers
...*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->engines*[slurm2*]->trackers% add queue tr2
...*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->engines*[slurm2*]->trackers*[tr2*]]% set queue defq
...*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->engines*[slurm2*]->trackers*[tr2*]]% commit
...->roles[scaleserver]->engines[slurm2]->trackers[tr2]]%
```

The nodes node001..node002 and eu-west-1-cnode001..eu-west-1-cnode002 should already be in the queue defq by default, ready to run the jobs:

### Example

```
...->roles[scaleserver]->engines[slurm2]->trackers[tr2]]% wlm use slurm; jobqueue; get defq nodes
eu-west-1-cnode001
eu-west-1-cnode002
node001
node002
```

The roleoverview (page 477) command is also handy for an overview, and to confirm that the role assignment of these nodes are all set to the SlurmClient role:

With these settings, the nodes in the dynamic pool can now be powered up or down on demand by cm-scale service, depending on the number of jobs that are pending. When the new ScaleServer role is committed in cmsh or Base View, then the cm-scale is run periodically. Each time it is run, cm-scale checks whether the node states should be changed. If needed, the administrator can check the log file /var/log/cm-scale to see what the service is doing.

Job submission can now be carried out, and the scaleserver assignment carried out earlier scales the cluster to cope with jobs according to the configuration that has been carried out in the session.

Before submitting the batch jobs, the administrator or user can check the jobs that are queued and running with the squeue command. If there are no jobs yet submitted, the output is simply the squeue headers, with no job IDs listed:

### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ squeue
JOBID PARTITION      NAME      USER ST          TIME   NODES NODELIST(REASON)
```

As in the previous example for the static pool only case (page 473), a way for user fred to flood the default queue defq is to run the batch file in a loop:

### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ while (true); do sbatch slurmhello.sh; done
Submitted batch job 1
Submitted batch job 2
Submitted batch job 3
...
```

After putting enough jobs into the queue (a few thousand should be enough, not more than five thousand would be sensible), the flooding can be stopped with a ctrl-c.

The changes in the queue can be watched by user fred:

### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ watch "squeue | head -5 ; squeue | tail -4"
Every 2.0s: squeue | head -5 ; squeue | tail -4                               Wed Nov 22 16:08:52 2017

JOBID PARTITION      NAME      USER ST          TIME   NODES NODELIST(REASON)
  1      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00      1 (Resources)
  2      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00      1 (Resources)
  3      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00      1 (Resources)
  4      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00      1 (Resources)
3556     defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00      1 (Resources)
3557     defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00      1 (Resources)
3558     defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00      1 (Resources)
3559     defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00      1 (Resources)
```

The head `-4` and tail `-4` filters here are convenient for showing just the first 4 rows and last 4 rows of the very long `squeue` output, and skipping the bulk of the queue.

The preceding output illustrates how, with the jobs queued up, nothing is being processed yet from jobs number 1 to 3559 due to the resources not yet being available.

At this point `cm-scale` should have noticed that jobs are queued and that resources are needed to handle the jobs.

It should be noted that, at the time of writing of this section (January 2023), Slurm job processing with Auto Scaler currently only works as expected if `sbatch` rather than `srun` is used for dynamic jobs. The reason behind this `srun` quirk is explained on page 924.

At the start of this example session the cloud director is not up. So, `cm-scale` powers it up. This can be seen by running the `ds` command, or from CMDaemon info messages:

```
[basecm11->device]% ds | grep director
eu-west-1-director [ DOWN ]
then some time later:
eu-west-1-director [ PENDING ] (External ip assigned: 34.249.166.63, setting up tunnel)
then some time later:
eu-west-1-director [ INSTALLING ] (node installer started)
then some time later:
eu-west-1-director [ INSTALLER_CALLINGINIT ] (switching to local root)
then some time later:
eu-west-1-director [ UP ]
```

If the cloud director is yet to be provisioned to the cloud from the head node for the very first time (“from scratch”), then that can take a while. Then, because the cloud compute nodes are in turn provisioned from the cloud director, it takes a while for the cloud compute nodes to be ready to run the jobs. So, the jobs just have to wait around in the queue until the cloud compute nodes are ready, before they are handled. Fortunately, the startup of a cloud director is by default much faster after the very first time.

A quick aside about how provisioning is speeded up the next time around: The cloud compute nodes will be stopped if they are idle, and after there are no more jobs in the queue, because the jobs have all been dealt with. Then, when the `extranodeidletime` setting has been exceeded, the cloud director is also stopped. The next time that jobs are queued up, all the cloud nodes are provisioned from a stopped state, rather than from scratch, and so they are ready for job execution much faster. Therefore, unlike the first time, the jobs queued up the next time are processed with less waiting around.

Getting back to how things proceed in the example session after the cloud director is up: `cm-scale` then provisions the cloud compute nodes `eu-west-1-node001` and `eu-west-1-node002` from the cloud director.

## Example

```
[basecm11->device]% ds | grep cnode
eu-west-1-cnode001 ..... [ PENDING ] (Waiting for instance to start)
eu-west-1-cnode002 ..... [ PENDING ] (Waiting for instance to start)
then some time later:
eu-west-1-cnode002 [ INSTALLING ] (node installer started)
eu-west-1-cnode001 [ INSTALLING ] (node installer started)
and so on
```

Once these cloud compute nodes reach the state of `UP`, they can start to process the jobs in the queue. The queue activity then would show something like:

## Example

when the dynamic pool nodes are being readied for job execution:

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ squeue | head -5 ; squeue | tail -4
JOBID PARTITION      NAME      USER ST      TIME   NODES NODELIST(REASON)
  1      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Resources)
  2      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Resources)
  3      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Resources)
  4      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Resources)
3556      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Resources)
3557      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Resources)
3558      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Resources)
3559      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Resources)
```

then later:

```
JOBID PARTITION      NAME      USER ST      TIME   NODES NODELIST(REASON)
 11      defq slurmhel    fred CF      0:00     1 eu-west-1-cnode001
 12      defq slurmhel    fred CF      0:00     1 eu-west-1-cnode002
 13      defq slurmhel    fred CF      0:00     1 (priority)
 14      defq slurmhel    fred CG      0:00     1 (priority)
3556      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Priority)
3557      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Priority)
3558      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Priority)
3559      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Priority)
```

then later, when cm-scale sees all of the dynamic pool is used up, the lower priority static pool gets started up:

```
JOBID PARTITION      NAME      USER ST      TIME   NODES NODELIST(REASON)
 165      defq slurmhel    fred CF      0:00     1 eu-west-1-cnode001
 166      defq slurmhel    fred CF      0:00     1 node001
 168      defq slurmhel    fred CG      0:00     1 node002
3556      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Priority)
3557      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Priority)
3558      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Priority)
3559      defq slurmhel    fred PD      0:00     1 (Priority)
 167      defq slurmhel    fred R       0:00     1 eu-west-1-cnode002
```

In cmsh, the priority can be checked with:

### Example

```
[basecm11 ->device[basecm11]->roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders] % list
Name (key)      Priority      Enabled
-----
on-premises-nodes 1          yes
pool2            2          yes
```

Also in cmsh, the jobs can be listed via the jobs submode:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs] % list | head -5 ; list | tail -4
Type  Job ID User  Queue Running time Status      Nodes
-----
Slurm 334    fred  defq  1s      COMPLETED  eu-west-1-cnode001
Slurm 336    fred  defq  1s      COMPLETED  node001
Slurm 3556   fred  defq  0s      PENDING
Slurm 3557   fred  defq  0s      PENDING
```

```
Slurm 3558 fred defq 0s PENDING
Slurm 3559 fred defq 0s PENDING
Slurm 335 fred defq 1s RUNNING eu-west-1-cnode002
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]%
```

Eventually, when the queue has been fully processed, the jobs are all gone:

### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ squeue
JOBID PARTITION      NAME      USER ST      TIME   NODES NODELIST(REASON)
```

With the current configuration the cloud compute nodes in the dynamic pool pool12 are powered up before the regular compute nodes in the static pool on-premises-nodes. That is because the cloud compute nodes have been set by the administrator in this example to have a higher priority. This is typically sub-optimal, and is actually configured this way just for illustrative purposes. In a real production cluster, the priority of regular nodes is typically going to be set higher than that for cloud compute nodes, because using on-premises nodes is likely to be cheaper.

The administrator can also check on the job status via the job metrics of cmsh too, using the options to the filter command, such as --pending or --running:

Initially, before the jobs are being run, something like this will show up:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "wlm use slurm; jobs ; watch filter --running -u fred"
Every 2.0s: filter --running -u fred                                         Wed Nov 22 16:03:18 2017
No jobs found
```

Then, eventually, when the jobs are being run, the cloud nodes, which have a higher priority, start job execution, so that the output looks like:

### Example

```
Every 2.0s: filter --running -u fred                                         Wed Nov 22 16:50:35 2017
Job ID Job name      User Queue Submit time Start time End time Nodes      Exit code
----- -----
406    slurmhello.sh fred defq 16:16:56    16:27:21  N/A    eu-west1-cnode001 0
407    slurmhello.sh fred defq 16:16:56    16:27:21  N/A    eu-west1-cnode002 0
```

and eventually the regular on-site nodes which are originally down are started up by the ScaleServer and are also listed.

## 8.4 Further cm-scale Configuration And Examples

### 8.4.1 Dynamic Nodes Re-purposing

Sometimes it is useful to share the same nodes among several queues, and reuse the nodes for jobs from other queues. This can be done by dynamically assigning node categories in cm-scale. Different settings, or a different software image, then run on the re-assigned node after re-provisioning.

The feature is enabled by setting Assign Category parameter in the tracker settings.

For example, the following case uses Slurm as the workload engine, and sets up two queues chem\_q and phys\_q. Assuming in this example that jobs that are to go to chem\_q require chemistry software on the node, but jobs for phys\_q require physics software on the node, and that for some reason the softwares cannot run on the node at the same time. Then, the nodes can be re-purposed dynamically. That is, the same node can be used for chemistry or physics jobs by setting up the appropriate configuration for it. In this case the same node can be used by jobs that require a different configuration, software, or even operating system. The trackers configuration may then look as follows:

## Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[scaleserver]->engines[slurm]->trackers[chem]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Type              ScaleHpcQueueTracker
Name              chem
Queue             chem_q
Enabled           yes
Assign Category   chem_cat
Primary Overlays
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[scaleserver]->engines[slurm]->trackers[chem]]% use phys
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[scaleserver]->engines[slurm]->trackers[phys]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Type              ScaleHpcQueueTracker
Name              chem
Queue             chem_q
Enabled           yes
Assign Category   phys_cat
Primary Overlays
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[scaleserver]->engines[slurm]->trackers[phys]]%
```

Assuming that initially there are two nodes, node001 and node002, both in category chem\_cat. Then, when cm-scale finds a pending job in queue phys\_q, it may decide to assign category phys\_cat to either node001, or to node002. In this way the number of nodes serving queue phys\_q increases and number of nodes serving chem\_q decreases, in order to handle the current workload. When the job is finished, the old node category is not assigned back to the node, until a new job appears in chem\_q and requires this node to have the old category.

### 8.4.2 Pending Reasons

This section is related only to HPC engines (workload managers). In this section, the term job is used instead of workload.

If cm-scale makes a decision on how many nodes should be started for a job, then it checks the status of the job first. If the job status is pending, then it checks the list of *pending reasons* for that job. The checks are to find pending reasons that prevent the job from starting when more free nodes become available.

A pending reason can be one of the following 3 types:

**Type 1:** allows a job to start when new free nodes become available

**Type 2:** prevents a job from starting on particular nodes only

**Type 3:** prevents a job from starting anywhere

Each pending reason has a text associated with it. The text is usually printed by the workload manager job statistics utilities. The list of pending reasons texts of types 1 and 2 can be found in the pending reasons exclude file, /cm/local/apps/cm-scale/lib/python3.12/site-packages/cmscale/trackers/hpc\_queue/pending\_reasons/WLM.exclude, where WLM is a name of workload manager specified in the configuration of the engine in ScaleServer role.

In the pending reasons exclude file, the pending reason texts are listed as one reason per line. The reasons are grouped in two sublists, with headers:

- [IGNORE\_ALWAYS]
- [IGNORE\_NO\_NODE]

The [IGNORE\_ALWAYS] sublist lists the type 1 pending reason texts. If a job has only this group of reasons, then cm-scale considers the job as ready to start, and attempts to create or boot compute nodes for it.

The [IGNORE\_NO\_NODE] sublist lists the type 2 pending reason texts. If the reason does not specify the hostname of a new free node at the end of a pending reason after the colon (“：“), then the job can start on the node. If the reason does specify the hostname of a new free node after the colon, and if the hostname is owned by one of the managed nodes—nodes that can be stopped/started/created by cm-scale—then the job is considered as one that is not to start, when nodes become available.

If a job has a pending reason text that is not in the pending reasons exclude file, then it is assumed to be a type 3 reason. New free nodes for such a job do not get the job started.

If there are several pending reason texts for a job, then cm-scale checks all the pending reasons one by one. If all reasons are from the IGNORE\_ALWAYS or IGNORE\_NO\_NODE sublists, and if a pending reason text matched in the IGNORE\_NO\_NODE sublist does not include hostnames for the managed nodes, only then will the job be considered as one that can be started just with new nodes.

### Custom Pending Reasons

If the workload manager supports them, then custom pending reason texts are also supported. The administrator can add a pending reason text to one of the sections in the pending reasons exclude file.

The cm-scale service checks only if the pending reason text for the job starts with a text from the pending reasons file. It is therefore enough to specify just a part of the text of the reason in order to make cm-scale take it into account. Regular expressions are also supported. For example, the next two pending reason expressions are equivalent when used to match the pending reason text `Not enough job slot(s)`:

#### Example

- `Not enough`
- `Not enough [a-z]* slot(s)`

The workload manager statistics utility can be used to find out what custom pending reason texts there are, and to add them to the pending reasons file. To do this, some test job can be forced to have such a pending reason, and the output of the job statistics utility can then be copy-pasted. For example, LSF shows custom pending reasons that look like this:

#### Example

```
Customized pending reason number <integer>
```

Here, `<integer>` is an identifier (an unsigned integer) for the pending reason, as defined by the administrator.

### 8.4.3 Locations

Sometimes it makes sense to restrict the workload manager to run jobs only on a defined subset of nodes. For example, if a user submits a multi-node job, then it is typically better to run all the job processes either on the on-premises nodes, or on the cloud nodes. That is, without mixing the node types used for the job. The *locations* feature of cm-scale allows this kind of restriction for HPC workload managers.

The cm-scale configuration allows one of these two modes to be selected:

1. *forced location*: when the workload is forced to use one of the locations chosen by cm-scale,
2. *unforced location*: when workloads are free to run on any of the compute nodes that are already managed (running, freed or started) by cm-scale. This is the default if Auto Scaler is set up.

In NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11, for a forced location, cm-scale supports these two different locations:

1. local: on-premises nodes,
2. cloud: AWS instances (Chapter 3 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*) or Azure instances (Chapter 5 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*)

To restrict the WLM location—that is to choose a forced location—the mixlocations advanced setting in the scaleserver role for the node must be set to no

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[scaleserver]->advancedsettings]# set mixlocations no
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->advancedsettings*]# commit
```

The location is automatically configured by BCM when the node is added to the workload manager. Details per workload manager are described next.

### Slurm

Slurm does not allow the assignment of node properties—features, in Slurm terminology—to jobs if no node exists that is labeled by this property. Thus any property used must be added to some node. This can be the template node if a dynamic resource provider is used, or it can be an appropriate off-premises node if a static resource provider is used. If the slurmclient role is assigned to a node—for example, a template node—then the location value for this node is automatically configured by BCM.

The current location value can be found using the scontrol command. For example, for node001:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load slurm
[root@basecm11 ~]# scontrol show node node001 | grep AvailableFeatures
```

### PBS

A new generic resource, resources\_available.location, lets the administrator decide the locations where cm-scale can run PBS jobs.

If the pbsproclient role is assigned to a node, then the location value for this node is automatically configured by BCM.

The current location value for a node can be found using the qmgr command. For example, for node001:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load openpbs
[root@basecm11 ~]# qmgr -c "print node node001" | grep location
set node node001 resources_available.location = local
```

### LSF

In order to allow cm-scale to restrict LSF jobs, BCM configures a generic resource called location per node. The resource is added as a string resource in lsf.cluster.<CLUSTER\_NAME> configuration file.

The location value for this node is automatically configured by BCM.

To verify that the resource is added, the lshosts -s command can be run:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# lshosts -s location | head -1;           lshosts -s location | grep node001
RESOURCE          VALUE      LOCATION
location          local     node001.cm.cluster
```

#### 8.4.4 Azure Storage Accounts Assignment

If an Azure node is cloned manually from some node or node template, then the Azure node gets the same storage account as the node it has been cloned from. This may slow the nodes down if too many nodes use the same storage account. The `cm-scale` utility can therefore assign different storage accounts to nodes that are cloned like this.

The maximum number of nodes for such a storage account is defined by the `AZURE_DISK_ACCOUNT_NODES` parameter. This parameter has a value of 20 by default, and can be changed in the configuration file `/cm/local/apps/cm-scale/lib/python3.12/site-packages/cmscale/config.py`. The `cm-scale` utility must be restarted after the change.

The newly-cloned-by-`cm-scale` Azure node gets a randomly-generated storage account name if other storage accounts already have enough nodes associated with them. That is, if other storage accounts have `AZURE_DISK_ACCOUNT_NODES` or more nodes.

The storage account name is assigned in the node cloud settings in storage submode. For example, in `cmsh`, the assigned storage accounts can be viewed as follows:

##### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use cnode001
[basecm11->device[cnode001]]% cloudsettings
[basecm11->device[cnode001]->cloudsettings]% storage
[basecm11->...[cnode001]->cloudsettings->storage]% get root-disk storageaccountname
azurepaclogzjus1
[basecm11->...[cnode001]->cloudsettings->storage]% get node-installer-disk storageaccountname
azurepaclogzjus1
[basecm11->device[cnode001]->cloudsettings->storage]% ..
[basecm11->device[cnode001]->cloudsettings]% get bootiagnosticsstorageaccountname
azurepaclogzjus1
[basecm11->device[cnode001]->cloudsettings]%
```

If a node is terminated and removed from the BCM configuration, then the storage account remains in Azure. It has to be explicitly manually removed by the administrator.

#### 8.4.5 Uptake of HPC Jobs By Particular Types Of Nodes

By default, `cm-scale` assumes that an HPC job submitted to a particular queue can take a node from outside the queue. This is because by assigning a category, or moving the node to a configuration overlay, the node will be moved to the appropriate queue eventually. From this point of view, the nodes form a single resource pool, and the nodes in the pool are re-purposed on demand.

In some scenarios there is a need for certain types of HPC jobs run only on particular types of nodes, without the nodes being re-purposed. A typical example: jobs with GPU code require cloud nodes that have access to GPU accelerators, while jobs that do not have GPU code can use the less expensive non-GPU cloud nodes. For this case then, the GPU cloud node is started when the GPU job requires a node, and otherwise a non-GPU node is started.

Job segregation is achieved in `cm-scale` as follows:

1. The `Pin Queues` setting, which is an advanced setting in the `scaleserver` role for the node, is enabled:

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles[scaleserver]->advancedsettings]% set pinqueues yes
[basecm11->device*[basecm11*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->advancedsettings*]%
```

2. A new queue is created, or an existing one is used. The queue is used for the jobs that require a particular node type.

3. The particular node type is added to this queue. If the node is already defined in BCM, then the administrator can assign the queue to the node in the workload manager client role. For example, if the workload manager is Slurm, then the queue is assigned to the nodes in the `slurmclient` role. If the node has not been defined yet and will be cloned on demand (according to the dynamic resource provider settings, page 460), then its template node is assigned to the queue. When a new node is cloned from the template, the queue is then inherited from the template node.

4. The previous two steps are repeated for each job type.

After that, if a user submits a job to one of the queues, then cm-scale starts or clones a node that is linked with the job queue.

The following cmsh session snippet shows a configuration example:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device roles master
[basecm11->device[basecm11]->roles]% use scaleserver
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]]% resourceproviders
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders]% add dynamic rp1
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders*[rp1*]]% set templatenode tnode1
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders*[rp1*]]% set noderange cnode001..cnode100
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders*[rp1*]]% commit
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders[rp1]]% clone rp2
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders*[rp2*]]% set templatenode tnode2
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders*[rp2*]]% set noderange cnode101..cnode200
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders*[rp2*]]% commit
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders[rp2]]% ...;...
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]]% engines
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->engines]% add hpc s1
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->engines*[e1*]]% set workloadmanager slurm
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->engines*[e1*]]% trackers
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->engines*[e1*]->trackers]]% add queue tr1
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->engines*[e1*]->trackers*[tr1*]]% set queue q1
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->engines*[e1*]->trackers*[tr1*]]% commit
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->engines[e1]->trackers[tr1]]% clone tr2
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->engines*[e1*]->trackers*[tr2*]]% set queue q2
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->engines*[e1*]->trackers*[tr2*]]% commit
[basecm11->...roles[scaleserver]->engines[e1]->trackers[tr2]]% category
[basecm11->category]% clone default cat1
[basecm11->category*[cat1*]]% roles
[basecm11->category*[cat1*]->roles*]% assign slurmclient
[basecm11->category*[cat1*]->roles*[slurmclient*]]% set queues q1
[basecm11->category*[cat1*]->roles*[slurmclient*]]% commit
[basecm11->category[cat1]->roles[slurmclient]]% category clone cat1 cat2
[basecm11->category*[cat2*]->roles*[slurmclient*]]% set queues q2
[basecm11->category*[cat2*]->roles*[slurmclient*]]% commit
[basecm11->category[cat2]->roles[slurmclient]]% device use tnode1
[basecm11->device[tnode1]]% set category cat1
[basecm11->device*[tnode1*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[tnode1]]% device use tnode2
[basecm11->device[tnode2]]% set category cat2
[basecm11->device*[tnode2*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[tnode2]]%
```

Using the preceding configuration, the user may submit a job with a regular workload manager

submission utility specifying the queue q1 or q2, depending on whether the job requires nodes that should be cloned from tnode1 or from tnode2.

#### 8.4.6 How To Exclude Unused Nodes From Being Stopped

If a node is idle, then by default cm-scale automatically stops or terminates the node.

However, in some cases there may be a need to start a node on demand, and when it becomes idle, there may be a need to keep the node running. This can be useful if the administrator would like to investigate the performance of an application, or to debug some issues. After completing the investigation or debug session, the administrator can stop the node manually.

The parameter KEEP\_RUNNING\_RANGES keeps such nodes from being stopped or terminated. The parameter should be added to the configuration file /cm/local/apps/cm-scale/lib/python3.12/site-packages/cmscale/config.py. To have the changed setting take effect, the cm-scale service must be restarted.

KEEP\_RUNNING\_RANGES defines a map of resource provider names to node name ranges.

Extra nodes can be added to the range of the nodes. However, if the extra node must not be stopped or terminated by cm-scale, then for each resource provider that has such an extra node, the value of extranodestop must be set to yes.

In the following example, nodes cnode002, cnode003, cnode004, and cnode010, are associated with the azurenodes1 resource provider. They are therefore never stopped or terminated by cm-scale. They are only started on demand by cm-scale.

The nodes cnode012 and cnode014 are associated with the azurenodes2 resource provider. They are therefore also not stopped or terminated by cm-scale.

#### Example

```
opts = {
    [...]
    "KEEP_RUNNING_RANGES": {
        "azurenodes1": "cnode002..cnode004,cnode010",
        "azurenodes2": "cnode012,cnode014"
    }
}
```

#### 8.4.7 Prolog And Epilog Scripts With Auto Scaler

Sometimes the administrator would like some actions to be performed for a workload when the Auto Scaler allocates and starts using a node, or when the Auto Scaler deallocates and stops using a node. The administrator can arrange such actions by configuring prolog and epilog scripts (section 7.3.4) in the resource provider. The scripts are then executed on the nodes running the Auto Scaler service, i.e. with the ScaleServer role.

Both the dynamic and the static resource providers (section 8.2.2) support the following options:

1. allocationProlog: path to a shell script that is executed just before a node is started up by Auto Scaler
2. allocationEpilog: path to a shell script that is executed just before a node is powered off by Auto Scaler
3. allocationScriptsTimeout: the prolog and epilog scripts timeout (the script that is running is killed if the timeout is exceeded).

The prolog script runs when an existing node is about to start, and also runs when a node has just been cloned and is also about start.

The epilog script runs when a node is stopped or when a cloud node is terminated.

The prolog and epilog scripts are run per node, and can run in parallel. Thus if synchronization between them is needed, then it should be implemented by the scripts themselves.

The standard output and error messages of the executed scripts are mixed and added to the Auto Scaler as debug2 log messages (the debug2 logs can be enabled in the AdvancedSettings submode of the ScaleServer role). It therefore makes sense to keep the output reasonably small, informative, and human readable.

When the scripts are run, Auto Scaler passes environment variables that can be used inside the scripts in order to decide what to do. These environment variables are:

1. AS\_NODE: node short hostname which the script started for;
2. AS\_SCRIPT\_TYPE: either "epilog" or "prolog";
3. AS\_RESOURCE\_PROVIDER: name of the resource provider where this script is configured;
4. AS\_ENGINE: workload engine name, which workload requires the node ("unknown" if no workload requires the node).

By default the scripts are not defined, and therefore nothing is executed by default when nodes are stopped, terminated or started.

#### 8.4.8 Queue Node Placeholders

A queue node placeholder is a node that does not yet exist, but has a corresponding object that exists, and the object has queues defined, amongst other properties. It can be used to plan resource use.

##### Job Rejection For Exceeding Total Cluster Resources

At the time of job submission, the workload manager checks the total available number of slots (used and unused) in a queue. This is the sum of the available slots (used and unused) provided by each node in that queue.

- Jobs that require less than the total number of slots are normally made to wait until more slots become available.
- Jobs that require more than this total number of slots are normally rejected outright by the workload manager, without being put into a wait state. This is because workload managers normally follow a logic that relies on the assumption that if the job demands more slots than can exist on the cluster as it is configured at present, then the cluster will never have enough slots to allow a job to run.

##### Assuming The Resources Can Never Be Provided

The latter assumption, that a cluster will never have enough slots to allow a job to run, is not true when the number of slots is dynamic, as is the case when cm-scale is used. When cm-scale starts up nodes, it adds them to a job queue, and the workload manager is automatically configured to allow users to submit jobs to the enlarged queue. That is, the newly available slots are configured as soon as possible so that waiting jobs are dealt with as soon as possible. For jobs that have already been rejected, and are not waiting, this is irrelevant, and users would have to submit the jobs once again.

Ideally, in this case, the workload manager should be configured to know about the number of nodes and slots that can be started up in the future, even if they do not exist yet. Based on that, jobs that would normally be rejected, could then also get told to wait until the resources are available, if it turns out that configured future resources will be enough to run the job.

##### Slurm Resources Planning With Placeholders

Slurm allows nodes that do not exist yet to be defined. These are nodes with hostnames that do not resolve, and have the Slurm setting of state=CL0UD for cloud nodes, and state=FUTURE for other nodes.

BCM allows Slurm to add such “fake” nodes to Slurm queues dynamically, when not enough real nodes have yet been added. BCM supports this feature only for Slurm at present.

This feature is not yet implemented for the other workload managers because they require the host-name of nodes that have been added to the workload manager configuration to be resolved.

Within the Slurm WLM instance it is possible to set a list of placeholder objects. In `cmsh` this can be done within the main `wlm` mode, selecting the Slurm instance, and then going into the `placeholders` submode. Each placeholder allows the following values to be set:

- `queue`: the queue name, used as key
- `maxnodes`: the maximum number of nodes that this queue allows
- `basenodename`: the base node name that is used when a new node name is generated
- `templatenode`: a template node that is used to provide user properties taken from its `slurmclient` role when new fake nodes are added.

For example, the following `cmsh` session uses the head node with an existing `slurm` instance to illustrate how the Slurm queue `defq` could be configured so that it always has a maximum of 32 nodes, with the nodes being like `node001`:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# scontrol show part defq | grep " Nodes="
Nodes=node001
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% wlm use slurm
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% placeholders
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->placeholders]% add defq
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]->placeholders*[defq*]]% set maxnodes 32
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]->placeholders*[defq*]]% set basenodename placeholder
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]->placeholders*[defq*]]% set templatenode node001
[basecm11->wlm*[slurm*]->placeholders*[defq*]]% commit
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->placeholders[defq]]%
[root@basecm11 ~]# scontrol show part defq | grep " Nodes="
Nodes=node001,placeholder[01-31]
```

If a new real node is added to the queue, then the number of placeholder nodes is decreased by one.

The placeholders can also be configured in Base View via the HPC resource, using the navigation path:

`HPC > Workload Management Clusters > <Slurm instance> > JUMP TO Placeholders`

### Preventing `slurmctld` From Restarting

If the number of nodes is changed, or if their names are changed in `slurm.conf`, then CMDDaemon restarts the Slurm server daemon, `slurmctld`, to apply the changes. If the administrator needs to prevent `slurmctld` from restarting each time that a new node is added to Slurm, then the nodes can be added, or cloned, to the BCM configuration manually, even if they do not have any IP address assigned yet. This is assuming that they get their IP addresses assigned over DHCP later on.

If the nodes are added to the configuration manually, then CMDDaemon restarts `slurmctld` only once. This means that, when `cm-scale` starts the nodes, CMDDaemon does not restart `slurmctld`.

### 8.4.9 Auto Scaling A Job On-premises To A Workload Manager And Kubernetes

In the session for this section, a cluster with 4 nodes is assumed. A workload manager such as Slurm is assumed to be already set as the engine ([Use Case: Workload Manager \(On-premises\)](#), page 450).

If the cluster administrator now would also like to make a Kubernetes engine available to jobs, as suggested in the use case 2 on page 443, then it can be added within the `scaleserver` role as follows:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[autoscaler]->roles[scaleserver]->engines]%
Name (key)      Priority
-----
slurm          0
[basecm11->configurationoverlay...->engines]%
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*...->engines*[k8s*]]% set cluster default
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*...->engines*[k8s*]]% trackers
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*...->engines*[k8s*]->trackers]%
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*...->engines*[k8s*]->trackers* [default*]]% add namespace default
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*...->engines*[k8s*]->trackers* [default*]]% set controllernamespace default
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*...->engines*[k8s*]->trackers* [default*]]% commit
[basecm11->configurationoverlay...->engines[k8s]->trackers [default]]%
```

In the trackers for each engine, the overlay to move to must be specified:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay...->engines[k8s]->trackers [default]]% set primaryoverlays kube-default-worker
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*...->engines*[k8s*]->trackers* [default*]]% commit
[basecm11->configurationoverlay...->engines[k8s]->trackers [default]]% ..
[basecm11->configurationoverlay...->engines[k8s]->trackers]%
[basecm11->configurationoverlay...->engines[k8s]]% ..
[basecm11->configurationoverlay...->engines]%
[basecm11->configurationoverlay...->engines*[slurm]]% trackers
[basecm11->configurationoverlay...->engines*[slurm]->trackers]%
[basecm11->configurationoverlay...->engines*[slurm]->trackers* [defq]]% set primaryoverlays slurm-client
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*...->engines*[slurm*]->trackers* [defq*]]% commit
[basecm11->configurationoverlay...->engines*[slurm]->trackers* [defq]]%
```

Since the cluster is entirely on-premises, and no cloud nodes are to be used, there is no need to configure a dynamic provider (section 8.3.2).

To allow movement of jobs from one queue to another, queue pinning must be disabled:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[autoscaler]->roles[scaleserver]->advancedsettings]%
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*[autoscaler*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->advancedsettings*]]% commit
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[autoscaler]->roles[scaleserver]->advancedsettings]%
```

Auto scaler normally takes the amount of memory into account from the workload manager. However, Slurm does not know about the memory of nodes that are not managed by it. A default memory size should therefore be set for when a job requirement is matched to Slurm, using the default resources specification (page 446):

**Example**

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay...->resourceproviders[static]]% set defaultresources "mem_free:slurm=7GB"
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*[autoscaler*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->resourceproviders*[static*]]% commit
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[autoscaler]->roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders[static]]%
```

The nodes reboot when a job requires it:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[autoscaler]->roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders[static]]%
Tue Aug 16 11:43:40 2022 [notice] basecm11: node003 [      BOOTING      ] (ldlinux.c32 from basecm11)
Tue Aug 16 11:43:40 2022 [notice] basecm11: node004 [      BOOTING      ] (ldlinux.c32 from basecm11)
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[autoscaler]->roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders[static]]%
Tue Aug 16 11:44:22 2022 [notice] basecm11: node004 [      INSTALLING     ] (node installer started)
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[autoscaler]->roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders[static]]%
Tue Aug 16 11:44:24 2022 [notice] basecm11: node003 [      INSTALLING     ] (node installer started)
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[autoscaler]->roles[scaleserver]->resourceproviders[static]]%
```

#### 8.4.10 AWS Spot Instances And Availability Zones

Amazon cloud regions consist of multiple, isolated, *availability zones*. The number of spot instances that can be started in each zone is limited by the capacity of a zone. If the spot instances are configured to start in several different availability zones, then Auto Scaler detects this and tries to start nodes in those various different availability zones. At the start of each iteration of `cm-scale`, if `cm-scale` sees that the capacity of a zone is exhausted, then all nodes in that zone are considered to be unavailable for starting up by `cm-scale`.

Configuring several sets of spot instances in availability zones allows running nodes to be started up, even if the capacity in one or more zones is exhausted. For this configuration, the cluster administrator has two options:

1. Configuring the nodes from different availability zones in one workload manager job queue or Kubernetes namespace.
2. Having the nodes in different queues/namespaces, and letting users submit the jobs to multiple queues at the same time, so that `cm-scale` goes through the queues when selecting a node to start. This option requires multi-queue support in the workload manager. In this case, the `allowedresourceproviders` parameter should not be set within the `trackers` submode (section 8.2.6) for the engine.

If cloud nodes (spot instances) from different availability zones are added to the `scaleserver` role, then the lack of capacity is recognized by `cm-scale` automatically, and no additional configuration is needed.

The cluster administrator can however still override the availability zones information for `cm-scale`. This can be carried out by modifying the `cm-scale` configuration file:

`/cm/local/apps/cm-scale/lib/*site-packages/cmscale/config.py`

In the file, a new parameter `AVAILABILITY_ZONES` must be added to the `opts` dictionary. The format the parameter takes is as follows:

#### Example

```
{"AVAILABILITY_ZONES" : {<provider name> : {<availability zone name> : <node list in node range format>}}
```

For example, for the `us-west-*` availability zones:

#### Example

```
"AVAILABILITY_ZONES": {
    "aws": {
        "us-west-2a": "cpu-001..cpu-005, cpu-spot-a-001..cpu-spot-a-010",
        "us-west-2c": "cpu-spot-c-001..cpu-spot-c-010",
        "us-west-2d": "cpu-spot-d-001..cpu-spot-d-010",
    },
},
```

Currently, availability zones are supported by Auto Scaler only for AWS. Auto Scaler ignores any lack of capacity in the availability zones of other cloud providers.

### 8.4.11 Auto Scaler Statistics

Internal Auto Scaler metrics can be collected and visualized with BCM monitoring. The metrics can be used to help debug some issues, or can be used to analyze how Auto Scaler works over longer periods of time.

When statistics collection is enabled, Auto Scaler pushes its metrics to CMDaemon. The metric data values are then accessible using cmsh and Base View.

Statistics collection can be enabled

- by enabling the option during Auto Scaler setup with `cm-auto-scaler-setup`. The option can be enabled in the Auto Scaler base options screen (figure 8.3)  
or
- by setting the `collectstatistics` parameter within the advanced settings of the `scaleserver` role.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[autoscaler]->roles[scaleserver]->advancedsettings]# set collectstatistics yes
[basecm11->configurationoverlay*[autoscaler*]->roles*[scaleserver*]->advancedsettings*]# commit
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[autoscaler]->roles[scaleserver]->advancedsettings]#
```

During Auto Scaler setup with `cm-auto-scaler-setup`, the `AutoScaler` standalone monitoring entity is added. This is what is used for metrics aggregation and viewing:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring]# standalone
[basecm11->monitoring->standalone]# use autoscaler
[basecm11->monitoring->standalone[AutoScaler]]# latestmetricdata
Measurable          Parameter   Type     Value    Age      State   Info
-----
no_resources_workloads        Workloads  4       24.1s
pending_workloads            Workload   4       24.1s
pre_iteration_down_nodes     Nodes      16      24.1s
pre_iteration_completely_up_nodes  Nodes      16      24.1s
running_workloads           Workload   2       24.1s
no_capacity_spot_requests   eu-west-2a  Nodes    2       24.1s
no_capacity_availability_zones        Nodes    1       24.1s
[basecm11->monitoring->standalone[AutoScaler]]#
```

In Base View, the Auto Scaler metrics can be found, after collection has started, via the navigation path:

Monitoring > Auto Scaler

The statistic metrics are divided into three classes: Actions, Nodes and Workloads:

##### 1. Actions:

- `assigned_categories`: number of node category assignments performed by Auto Scaler
- `cloned_nodes`: number of nodes cloned by Auto Scaler
- `terminated_nodes`: number of nodes terminated by Auto Scaler
- `spot_requests_terminations`: number of spot instance requests terminated by Auto Scaler
- `removed_nodes`: number of nodes removed by Auto Scaler
- `moved_to_overlays_nodes`: number of nodes moved to overlays by Auto Scaler
- `deleted_from_overlays_nodes`: number of nodes deleted from overlays by Auto Scaler

- `drained_nodes`: number of nodes drained by Auto Scaler
- `undrained_nodes`: number of nodes undrained by Auto Scaler
- `started_nodes`: number of nodes started (powered on) by Auto Scaler
- `stopped_nodes`: number of nodes stopped (powered off) by Auto Scaler
- `shutdown_nodes`: number of nodes shut down by Auto Scaler
- `executed_prologs`: number of prologs executed by Auto Scaler
- `executed_epilogs`: number of epilogs executed by Auto Scaler
- `constrained_workloads`: number of workloads (jobs, pods, ...) constrained by Auto Scaler

## 2. Nodes:

- `pre_iteration_completely_up_nodes`: number of nodes running (completely up) at the beginning of each iteration
- `pre_iteration_down_nodes`: number of nodes in state down at the beginning of each iteration
- `pre_iteration_pending_nodes`: number of pending nodes at the beginning of each iteration
- `no_capacity_spot_requests`: number of pending spot instance requests that could not be fulfilled due to the lack of capacity per availability zone
- `no_capacity_availability_zones`: number of availability zones that nodes could not start due to the lack of capacity

## 3. Workloads:

- `not_allowed_workloads`: number of workloads for which a start was not allowed
- `no_resources_workloads`: number of workloads for which a resources request could not be satisfied
- `pending_workloads`: number of pending workloads
- `running_workloads`: number of running workloads
- `failed_workloads`: number of failed workloads
- `unknown_workloads`: number of workloads in an unknown state

# 9

# Post-installation Software Management

## **Introduction: What Is Post-installation Software Management?**

After NVIDIA Base Command Manager has been installed, administrators are expected to manage and update the distribution software and the cluster software as updates are packaged and made available by the distribution and by the BCM software development team. Managing and updating means carrying out software management actions such as installation, removal, updating, version checking, and so on.

## **Security And Hardening**

For security vulnerabilities in BCM packages, BCM support can be contacted directly (section 14.2). Vulnerabilities that are part of the underlying distribution are dealt with by the distribution itself.

By default, BCM aims to keep the distribution unchanged from its original release.

**Security updates:** Security updates are normally handled by package managers.

- Security updates that the distributions provide as package updates are handled by updating the distribution that underlies BCM.
- Security updates that BCM provides as package updates are handled by updating the BCM packages as usual.

In both cases the package managers (one of yum, zypper, or apt) are used to update the distribution (one of RHEL/Rocky, SUSE, or Ubuntu) that underlies BCM, or to update the BCM packages.

Security changes outside of BCM package management are normally outside the scope of BCM support.

**Hardening:** Hardening the distribution can include the following actions:

- removing packages
- blocking off ports
- disabling input hardware (USB ports, keyboards, mice...) in software
- adding disk encryption
- configuring SELinux
- adding binaries hardened in some way

Hardening is often possible but is not performed by default because BCM aims to keep the distribution as close to standard as possible.

Hardening can have unexpected side effects, including impacts on performance. Since hardening always involves balancing performance, usability, and security, it is the cluster administrator's responsibility to decide what to harden. Any hardening measures outside of BCM software typically fall outside the scope of BCM support.

### An Aside About Upgrading The OS Or BCM

Upgrading from an earlier major release of the OS upon which BCM runs, to the next major release of the OS (for example, RHEL8 to RHEL9) while keeping BCM as it is, is not supported due to the OS dependencies that BCM has. If the OS is to be upgraded, then the recommendation is to install BCM once again from scratch on the upgraded OS.

Upgrading packages is only possible within the existing major OS release or existing BCM release.

Upgrading and updating are often ambiguously used as synonyms:

- When the OS upgrades to the next major release—for example, when the operating system is upgraded from RHEL8 to RHEL9—and the package is updated as part of that release, then updating the package is called a *package upgrade* or a *release upgrade*.
- Within an operating system major release—for example, when the operating system is still at a particular major version such as RHEL8 or RHEL9—updating a package is called a *package update*, or somewhat confusingly, also called a *package upgrade*, with the latter term being used in the context of it being the complement of a release upgrade.

Release upgrade packages are typically incompatible with packages from other releases, as many system administrators typically discover early on in their careers when they try to put a package update into a release upgrade, or the other way round. Even minor version package differences can be incompatible, as shown by the documentation and policies explaining compatibility levels (<https://access.redhat.com/articles/rhel8-abi-compatibility>, <https://access.redhat.com/articles/rhel9-abi-compatibility>). Letting the package manager sort it all out is what the sensible cluster administrator does.

### Post-installation Software Management Typically Uses The Default Package Managers

Since BCM is built on top of an existing Linux distribution, the administrator should use the package utilities that are specific for the distribution (such as YUM and rpm, APT and dpkg, or YaST and Zypper) for software package management.

Packages managed by the distribution are hosted by distribution repositories. SUSE and RHEL distributions require the purchase of their license in order to access their repositories. The other distributions do not.

DGX OS, which is Ubuntu-based, relies on Ubuntu repositories. While BCM manuals cover much of DGX OS management, package and release upgrades for DGX OS are covered in the dedicated DGX OS documentation at

- <https://docs.nvidia.com/dgx/dgx-os-7-user-guide/upgrading-the-os.html> which covers upgrading an existing DGX OS 7.
- [https://docs.nvidia.com/dgx/dgx-os-7-user-guide/additional\\_software.html](https://docs.nvidia.com/dgx/dgx-os-7-user-guide/additional_software.html) which covers upgrading other software on DGX OS 7.

Packages managed by BCM are hosted by the BCM repository. Access to the BCM repositories also requires a license (Chapter 4 of the *Installation Manual*). Available packages for a particular BCM version and distribution can be viewed via the *package dashboard* at <https://support.brightcomputing.com/packages-dashboard/>.

### Software Outside Of Default Package Management

There may also be software that the administrator would like to install that is outside the default packages collection. These could be source files that need compilation, or packages in other repositories.

### Software Image Management

A software image (section 2.1.2) is a filesystem that a node picks up from a provisioner (a head node or a provisioning node) during provisioning so that the node can run as a linux system after provisioning. A subtopic of software management on a cluster is software image management—the management of software on a software image. By default, a node uses the same distribution as the head node for its base image along with necessary minimal, cluster-mandated changes. A node may however deviate from the default, and be customized by having software added to it in several ways.

### Techniques Of Software Management Covered

This chapter covers the techniques of software management for the cluster.

Section 9.1 describes the naming convention for a BCM RPM or .deb package.

Section 9.2 describes how an RPM or .deb package is managed for the head node.

Section 9.3 describes how an RPM or .deb kernel package can be managed on a head node or image.

Section 9.4 describes how an RPM or .deb package can be managed on a software image.

Section 9.5 describes how a software other than an RPM or .deb package can be managed on a software image.

Section 9.6 describes how custom software images are created that are completely independent of the existing software image distribution and version.

Section 9.7 describes how multi-architecture and multi-distribution images can be created.

## 9.1 NVIDIA Base Command Manager Packages, Their Naming Convention And Version

Like the distributions it runs on top of, BCM uses

- either .rpm packages, managed by RPM (RPM Package Manager) or Zypper (ZYpp package manager)
- or .deb (Debian) packages, managed by APT (Advanced Package Tool)

For example, the cmdaemon package built by BCM has the following .rpm and .deb packages:

```
cmdaemon-HEAD-152061_cmHEAD_ec0ea0f4d1.x86_64.rpm      # for Rocky8 and SUSE  
cmdaemon_HEAD-152061-cmHEAD-ec0ea0f4d1_amd64.deb      # for Ubuntu BCM9.2
```

The file name has the following structure:

*package-version-revision\_cmx.y\_hash\_architecture.rpm*

and

*package\_version-revision-cmx.y-hash\_architecture.deb*

where:

- *package* (cmdaemon) is the name of the package
- *version* (HEAD) is the version number of the package
- *revision* (152061) is the revision number of the package
- *cm* is used to indicate it is a package built by BCM for the cluster manager

- *x.y* (HEAD) is the version of BCM for which the RPM was built
- *hash* (ec0ea0f4d1) is a hash, and is only present for BCM packages. It is used for reference by the developers of BCM.
- *architecture* (x86\_64 for RPMs or amd64 for APT) is the architecture for which the package was built. The architecture name of x86\_64 or amd64 refers to the same 64-bit x86 physical hardware in either case.

The differences in .rpm versus .deb package names are just some underbar/hyphen (\_/-) changes, the hash (only for BCM packages), and the architecture naming convention.

Among the distributions supported by BCM, only Ubuntu uses .deb packages. The rest of the distributions use .rpm packages.

### Querying The Packages

To check whether BCM or the distribution has provided a file that is already installed on the system, the package it has come from can be found.

**For RPM-based systems:** rpm -qf can be used with the full path of the file:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# rpm -qf /usr/bin/zless
gzip-1.9-9.el8.x86_64
[root@basecm11 ~]# rpm -qf /cm/local/apps/cmd/sbin/cmd
cmddaemon-HEAD-146965_cmHEAD_e6f593b676.x86_64
```

In the example, /usr/bin/zless is supplied by the distribution, while /cm/local/apps/cmd/sbin/cmd is supplied by BCM, as indicated by the “\_cm” in the nomenclature.

**For APT-based systems:** A similar check can be done using dpkg -S to find the .deb package that provided the file, and then dpkg -s on the package name to reveal further information:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11:~# dpkg -S /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.env
cmddaemon: /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.env
[root@basecm11:~# dpkg -s cmddaemon
Package: cmddaemon
Status: install ok installed
Priority: optional
Section: devel
Installed-Size: 78631
Maintainer: Cluster Manager Development <dev@brightcomputing.com>
Architecture: amd64
Version: HEAD-152061-cmHEAD-ec0ea0f4d1
Provides: cmddaemon
...
...
```

As an aside, system administrators should be aware that the BCM version of a package is provided and used instead of a distribution-provided version for various technical reasons. The most important one is that it is tested and supported by BCM. Replacing the BCM version with a distribution-provided version can result in subtle and hard-to-trace problems in the cluster, and support cannot be provided for a cluster that is in such a state, although some guidance may be given in special cases.

More information about the RPM Package Manager is available at <http://www.rpm.org>, while APT is documented for Ubuntu at <http://manpages.ubuntu.com/manpages/>.

### 9.1.1 The packages Command

BCM also provides the packages command in the device mode of cmsh. This should not be confused with the packages command used by zypper. The packages command used by cmsh displays an overview of the installed packages, independent of rpm or deb package management.

The -a|--all option can be used to list all the packages installed on a particular node:

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% packages -a
Node      Type     Name          Version      Arch      Size   Install date
-----
node001    deb      accountsservice  0.6.45-1ubuntu1  amd64    440kB  2019/02/14 10:51:06
node001    deb      acl            2.2.52-3build1   amd64    200kB  2019/02/14 10:51:19
node001    deb      acpid         1:2.0.28-1ubuntu1  amd64    139kB  2019/02/14 10:51:19
node001    deb      adduser        3.116ubuntu1       all      624kB  2019/02/14 10:49:53
...
...
```

The -c|--category option can be used to list all the packages installed in a node category:

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% packages -a -c default
Node      Type     Name          Version      Arch      Size   Install date
-----
node001    deb      accountsservice  0.6.45-1ubuntu1  amd64    440kB  2019/02/14 10:51:06
node001    deb      acl            2.2.52-3build1   amd64    200kB  2019/02/14 10:51:19
...
node002    deb      accountsservice  0.6.45-1ubuntu1  amd64    440kB  2019/02/14 10:51:06
node002    deb      acl            2.2.52-3build1   amd64    200kB  2019/02/14 10:51:19
...
...
```

Running the -a option for many nodes can be user-unfriendly. That is because per node this command typically returns about 100KB of data. So, for a 1000 nodes this would output about 100MB and a table with nearly a million lines.

When checking packages for many nodes, it is best to request the package by name. Multiple -f|--find options can be used in the command line to display several packages.

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% packages -c default -f cmdaemon
Node      Type     Name      Version  Release      Arch      Size   ... Install date
-----
node001    rpm      cmdaemon  10.0    157349_cm10.0_5f6db110aa  x86_64  85MiB  2024/03/28 07:28:36
...
...
```

Further options, and examples, can be listed by running the help packages command within the device mode of cmsh.

### 9.1.2 BCM Package Point Release Versions And The cm-package-release-info Command

The cm-package-release-info command displays a precise package release version (package version) for each BCM package used in the cluster, and shows the BCM point release versions that should use that package version.

### Background Information On BCM Version Nomenclature

The *cluster manager version* is a *release number* with one decimal point—10.0 in the preceding example. This is recorded in the file /etc/cm-release, and can also be seen in the output of the *versioninfo* command:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "main; versioninfo"
Version Information
-----
Cluster Manager      10.0
...
```

The release number is the main way to refer to the software release version. It is a tag that is associated with the whole collection of packages that is released as BCM. Using the release number for this avoids confusion with the *point release number*. A point release number based on 10.0 is a numbering sequence with two decimal points, and might look like:

10.23.09

Point releases are interim releases, based on the main release version, but with fixes and updates. A point release based on 10.0 takes the format:

10.<YY>.<MM>

For example, for 10.23.09 of earlier, the .0 from 10.0 is dropped for convenience, the year 2023 is indicated by 23, and the month of September is indicated by 09. Release numbers prior to 10.0 had other point release formats.

One more addition to the point release number is a letter suffix, in lower case, alphabetical order. This is typically for a “hotfix” release, where an existing point release is deemed to need an important fix right away, instead of having the fix wait until it goes into the next point release. For example, if the 10.23.09 point release needs a new fix a day after its initial release, then the release is given the label:

10.23.09a

**Using a package manager means knowing about point releases is typically unnecessary:** Point releases and other fixes for the release number may have dependencies. The package manager typically resolves these issues by keeping BCM packages correctly updated within the major release number, so that typically a cluster administrator does not need to track the exact point release. Referring to a point release during regular cluster administration is therefore typically avoided. Indeed, referring to a specific point release is often inappropriate, as discussed in <https://kb.brightcomputing.com/knowledge-base/how-to-tell-what-bcm-version-are-you-running/>, where it is pointed out that different packages may be updated to different point releases.

### Using The *cm-package-release-info* Command To Get A BCM Package Point Release Version

Yet, on some occasions it may be necessary to know the exact point release versions available for BCM packages. For example, in order to override dependencies if customizing a cluster in a non-standard way. Usually the point release information is needed for the main package, *cmdaemon*. Running the *cm-package-release-info* command displays the version of a BCM package, and for which point releases it is available for the current release number of the cluster.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-package-release-info
Name          Version   Release(s)
-----
Lmod          100094   10.24.03, 10.24.01, 10.23.09a, 10.23.10, 10.23.11, 10.23.12, 10.23.09
atftp-server  619      10.24.03
base-view     106987   10.24.03
```

```
blacs-openmpi-gcc-64    116      10.24.03, 10.24.01, 10.23.09a, 10.23.10, 10.23.11, 10.23.12, 10.23.09  
blas-gcc-64             87       10.24.03, 10.24.01, 10.23.09a, 10.23.10, 10.23.11, 10.23.12, 10.23.09  
bonnie++                83       10.24.03, 10.24.01, 10.23.09a, 10.23.10, 10.23.11, 10.23.12, 10.23.09  
...
```

A package can be specified with the -f option:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-package-release-info -f cmdaemon,cluster-tools  
Name          Version   Release(s)  
-----  -----  
cluster-tools 119838    10.23.11  
cmdaemon      156713    10.23.10
```

## 9.2 Managing Packages On The Head Node

### 9.2.1 Managing RPM Or .deb Packages On The Head Node

Once BCM has been installed, distribution packages and BCM software packages are conveniently managed using the yum, zypper or apt repository and package managers. The zypper tool is recommended for use with the SUSE distribution, the apt utility is recommended for use with Ubuntu, and yum is recommended for use with the other distributions that BCM supports. YUM is not set up by default in SUSE, and it is better not to install and use it with SUSE unless the administrator is familiar with configuring YUM.

#### Listing Packages On The Head Node With YUM and Zypper

For YUM and zypper, the following commands list all available packages:

```
yum list  
or  
zypper refresh; zypper packages
```

For zypper, the short command option pa can also be used instead of packages.

#### Listing Packages On The Head Node With APT

For Ubuntu, the apt-cache command is used to view available packages. To generate the cache used by the command, the command:

```
apt-cache gencaches
```

can be run.

A verbose list of available packages can then be seen by running:

```
apt-cache dumpavail
```

It is usually more useful to use the search option to apt-cache to search for the package with a regex:

```
apt-cache search <regex>
```

A similar, but slightly more verbose option is the search option for apt:

```
apt search <regex>
```

### Updating/Installing Packages On The Head Node

To install a new package called *<package name>* into a distribution, the corresponding package managers are used as follows:

```
yum install <package name>
zypper in <package name>      #for SLES
apt install <package name>   #for Ubuntu
```

Installed packages can be updated to the latest by the corresponding package manager as follows:

```
yum update
zypper refresh; zypper up      #refresh recommended to update package metadata
apt update; apt upgrade        #update recommended to update package metadata
```

**An aside on the differences between the update, refresh/up, and update/upgrade options of the package managers:** The update option in YUM by default installs any new packages. On the other hand, the refresh option in zypper, and the update option in APT only update the meta-data (the repository indices). Only if the meta-data is up-to-date will an update via zypper, or an upgrade via apt install any newly-known packages. For convenience, in the BCM manuals, the term update is used in the YUM sense in general—that is, to mean including the installation of new packages—unless otherwise stated.

The BCM repository has YUM and zypper repositories of its packages at:

<http://updates.brightcomputing.com/yum>

and updates are fetched by YUM and zypper for BCM packages from there by default, to overwrite older package versions by default.

For Ubuntu, the BCM .deb package repositories are at:

<http://updates.brightcomputing.com/deb>

Accessing the repositories manually (i.e. not using yum, zypper, or apt) requires a username and password. Authentication credentials can be provided upon request by opening a support ticket (section 14.2).

### Cleaning Package Caches On The Head Node

The repository managers use caches to speed up their operations. Occasionally these caches may need flushing to clean up the index files associated with the repository. This can be done by the appropriate package manager with:

```
yum clean all
zypper clean -a    #for SUSE
apt-get clean     #for Ubuntu
```

### Signed Package Verification

As an extra protection to prevent BCM installations from receiving malicious updates, all BCM packages are signed with the Bright Computing GPG public key (0x5D849C16), installed by default in /etc/pki/rpm-gpg/RPM-GPG-KEY-cm for Red Hat and derivatives. The Bright Computing public key is also listed in Appendix B.

The first time YUM or zypper are used to install updates, the user is asked whether the Bright Computing public key should be imported into the local repository packages database. Before answering with a “Y”, yum users may choose to compare the contents of /etc/pki/rpm-gpg/RPM-GPG-KEY-cm with the key listed in Appendix B to verify its integrity. Alternatively, the key may be imported into the local RPM database directly, using the following command:

```
rpm --import /etc/pki/rpm-gpg/RPM-GPG-KEY-cm
```

With APT, the BCM keyring is already imported into /etc/apt/trusted.gpg.d/brightcomputing-archive-cm.gpg if the cm-config-apt package, provided by the Bright Computing repository, has been installed. The cm-config-apt package is installed by default for the Ubuntu edition of BCM.

### Third Party Packages

The third party packages in the following list may be repackaged for BCM for installation purposes. The packages are described in Chapter 7 of the *Installation Manual*:

- Modules (section 7.1)
- Shorewall (section 7.2)
- GCC (section 7.3)

Exclusion of packages on the head node can be carried out as explained in section 9.3.2, where the kernel package is used as an example for exclusion.

#### 9.2.2 Installation Of Packages On The Head Node That Are Not .deb And Not .rpm Packages

Sometimes a package is not packaged as an RPM or .deb package for BCM or for the distribution. In that case, the software can usually be treated as for installation onto a standard distribution. There may be special considerations on placement of components that the administrator may feel appropriate due to the particulars of a cluster configuration.

For example, for compilation and installation of the software, some consideration may be made of the options available on where to install parts of the software within the default shared filesystem. A software may have a compile option, say `--prefix`, that places an application `<application>` in a directory specified by the administrator. If the administrator decides that `<application>` should be placed in the shared directory, so that everyone can access it, the option could then be specified as: `--prefix=/cm/shared/apps/<application>`.

Other commonly provided components of software for the applications that are placed in shared may be documentation, licenses, configuration settings, and examples. These may be placed in the directories /cm/shared/docs, /cm/shared/licenses, /cm/shared/etc, and /cm/shared/examples. The placement may be done with a compiler option, or, if that is not done or not possible, it could be done by modifying the placement by hand later. It is not obligatory to do the change of placement, but it helps with cluster administration to stay consistent as packages are added.

Module files (section 2.2 of this manual, and 7.1 of the *Installation Manual*) may sometimes be provided by the software, or created by the administrator to make the application work for users easily with the right components. The directory /cm/shared/modulefiles is recommended for module files to do with such software.

To summarize the above considerations on where to place software components, the directories under /cm/shared that can be used for these components are:

```
/cm/shared/
| -- apps
| -- docs
| -- etc
| -- examples
| -- licenses
`-- modulefiles
```

## 9.3 Kernel Management On A Head Node Or Image

Care should be taken when updating a head node or a software image. This is particularly true when custom kernel modules compiled against a particular kernel version are being used.

A package can be managed in a software image and the image deployed to nodes. A careful administrator typically clones a copy of a working image that is known to work, before modifying the image.

### 9.3.1 Installing A Standard Distribution Kernel Into An Image Or On A Head Node

A standard distribution kernel is treated almost like any other package in a distribution.

This means that:

- For head nodes, installing a standard kernel is done according to the normal procedures of managing a package on a head node (section 9.2).
- For regular nodes, installing a standard distribution kernel is done according to the normal procedures of managing a package inside an image, via a changed root (chroot) directory (section 9.4), but with some special aspects that are discussed in this section.

When a kernel is updated or reinstalled (section 9.3.3), kernel-specific drivers, such as OFED drivers may need to be updated or reinstalled. OFED driver installation details are given in Chapter 10 of the *Installation Manual*.

#### Kernel Package Name Formats

For RHEL, individual kernel package names take a form such as:

```
kernel-3.10.0-327.3.1.el7.x86_64.rpm
```

The actual one suited to a cluster varies according to the distribution used. RPM Packages with names that begin with “kernel-devel-” are development packages that can be used to compile custom kernels, and are not required when installing standard distribution kernels.

For Ubuntu, individual Linux kernel image package names take a form such as:

```
linux-image-*.deb
```

or

```
linux-signed-image-*.deb
```

Running `apt-cache search linux | grep 'kernel image'` shows the various packaged kernel images in the distribution.

#### Other Extra Considerations

When installing a kernel, besides the chroot steps of section 9.4, extra considerations for kernel packages are:

- The kernel must also be explicitly set in CMDDaemon (section 9.3.3) before it may be used by the regular nodes.
- If using the chroot method to install the kernel rather than the cm-chroot-sw-img method (section 9.4.1), some other warnings to do with missing /proc paths may appear. For RHEL and derivatives, these warnings can be ignored.
- The ramdisk of a regular node must be regenerated using the `createramdisk` command (section 9.4.3).
- If the cluster is in a high availability configuration, then installing a new kernel on to the active head node may in some edge cases stop its network interface, and trigger a failover. It is therefore usually wiser to make the change on the passive head node first, or to disable automatic failover, before carrying out a change that could initiate a failover.

As is standard for Linux, both head or regular nodes must be rebooted to use the new kernel.

### 9.3.2 Excluding Kernels And Other Packages From Updates

#### Specifying A Kernel Or Other Package For Update Exclusion

Sometimes it may be desirable to exclude the kernel from updates on the head node.

- When using yum, to prevent an automatic update of a package, the package is listed after using the --exclude flag. So, to exclude the kernel from the list of packages that should be updated, the following command can be used:

```
yum --exclude kernel update
```

To exclude a package such as kernel permanently from all YUM updates, without having to specify it on the command line each time, the package can instead be excluded inside the repository configuration file. YUM repository configuration files are located in the /etc/yum.repos.d directory, and the packages to be excluded are specified with a space-separated format like this:

```
exclude = <package 1> <package 2> ...
```

- The zypper command can also carry out the task of excluding the kernel package from getting updated when updating. To do this, the kernel package is first locked (prevented from change) using the addlock command, and the update command is run. Optionally, the kernel package is unlocked again using the removelock command:

```
zypper addlock kernel
zypper update
zypper removelock kernel      #optional
```

- One APT way to upgrade the software while excluding the kernel image package is to first update the system, then to mark the kernel as a package that is to be held, and then to upgrade the system. Optionally, after the upgrade, the hold mark can be removed:

```
apt update
apt-mark hold <linux-image-version>
apt upgrade
apt-mark unhold <linux-image-version>      #optional
```

The complementary way to carry out an upgrade in APT while holding the kernel back, is to use *pinning*. Pinning can be used to set dependency priorities during upgrades. Once set, it can hold a particular package back while the rest of the system upgrades.

#### Specifying A Repository For Update Exclusion

Sometimes it is useful to exclude an entire repository from an update on the head node. For example, the administrator may wish to exclude updates to the parent distribution, and only want updates for the cluster manager to be pulled in. In that case, in RHEL-derivatives a construction such as the following may be used to specify that only the repository IDs matching the glob cm\* are used, from the repositories in /etc/yum.repos.d/:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# yum repolist
...
122 packages excluded due to repository priority protections
repo id          repo name                  status
base/7/x86_64    CentOS-7 - Base           10,067+30
cm-rhel7-HEAD/x86_64   CM HEAD for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7   10,949+56
epel/x86_64      Extra Packages for Enterprise Linux 7 - x86_64  13,324+92
extras/7/x86_64   CentOS-7 - Extras          301+3
updates/7/x86_64  CentOS-7 - Updates         332
repolist: 34,973

[root@basecm11 ~]# yum --disablerepo=* --enablerepo=cm* update
```

In Ubuntu, repositories can be added or removed by editing the repository sources under `/etc/apt/sources.list.d/`. There is also the `apt edit-sources` command, which, unsurprisingly, also edits the repository sources. The `add-apt-repository` command (`man add-apt-repository.1`) edits the repository sources by line. Running `add-apt-repository -h` shows options and examples.

### 9.3.3 Updating A Kernel In A Software Image

A kernel is typically updated in the software image by carrying out a package installation using the `chroot` environment (section 9.4), or specifying a relative root directory setting.

Package dependencies can sometimes prevent the package manager from carrying out the update, for example in the case of OFED packages (Chapter 10 of the *Installation Manual*). In such cases, the administrator can specify how the dependency should be resolved.

Parent distributions are by default configured, by the distribution itself, so that only up to 3 kernel images are kept when installing a new kernel with the package manager. However, in a BCM cluster, this default distribution value is overridden by a default BCM value, so that kernel images are never removed during YUM updates, or `apt upgrade`, by default.

For a software image, if the kernel is updated by the package manager, then the kernel is not used on reboot until it is explicitly enabled with either Base View or cmsh.

- To enable it using Base View, the `Kernel version` entry for the software image should be set. This can be accessed via the navigation path `Provisioning > Software images > Edit > Settings > Kernel version` (figure 9.1).

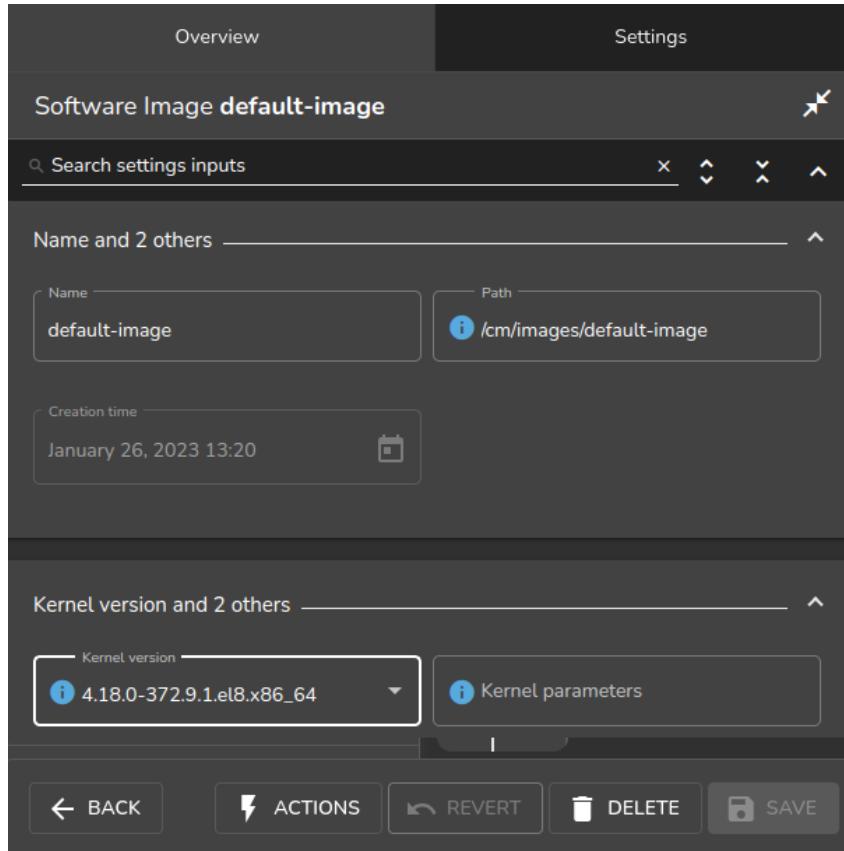


Figure 9.1: Updating A Software Image Kernel With Base View

- To enable the updated kernel from cmsh, the `softwareimage` mode is used. The `kernelversion` property of a specified software image is then set and committed:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% softwareimage
[basecm11->softwareimage% use default-image
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]]% set kernelversion 3.10.0-327.3.1.el7.x86_64
[basecm11->softwareimage*[default-image*]]% commit -w
```

Tab-completion suggestions for the `set kernelversion` command will display the available values for the kernel version.

**9.3.4 Setting Kernel Options For Software Images**

A standard kernel can be booted with special options that alter its functionality. For example, a kernel can boot with `apm=off`, to disable Advanced Power Management, which is sometimes useful as a workaround for nodes with a buggy BIOS that may crash occasionally when it remains enabled.

In Base View, to enable booting with this kernel option setting, the navigation path Provisioning > Software images > Edit > Settings > Kernel parameters (figure 9.1) is used to set the kernel parameter to `apm=off` for that particular image.

In cmsh, the equivalent method is to modify the value of “kernel parameters” in `softwareimage` mode for the selected image:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% softwareimage
[basecm11->softwareimage% use default-image
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image]]% append kernelparameters " apm=off"
[basecm11->softwareimage*[default-image*]]% commit
```

Often kernel options load up modules and their parameters. Making module loading persist after reboot and setting module loading order is covered in section 5.3.2

Some kernel options may require changes to be made in the BIOS settings in order to function.

**9.3.5 Kernel Driver Modules**

BCM provides some packages which install new kernel drivers or update kernel drivers. In RPM-based distributions, such packages generally require the `kernel-devel` package. In this section, the `kernel-devel-check` utility is first described, followed by the various drivers that BCM provides.

**Kernel Driver Modules: `kernel-devel-check` Compilation Check**

For RPM, the distribution’s `kernel-devel` package is required to compile kernel drivers for its kernel. It must be the same version and release as the kernel running on the node. For APT, the `linux-header` package corresponding to the kernel image is used.

In RPM-based distributions, to check the head node and software images for the installation status of the `kernel-devel` package, the BCM utility `kernel-devel-check` is run from the head node:

**Example**

```
[root@mycluster ~]# kernel-devel-check
Head node: mycluster
No kernel development directories found, probably no kernel development package installed.
package kernel-devel-3.10.0-957.1.3.el7.x86_64 is not installed
Kernel development package kernel-devel-3.10.0-957.1.3.el7.x86_64 not found
If needed, try to install the kernel development package with:
# yum install kernel-devel-3.10.0-957.1.3.el7.x86_64
```

```
Software image: default-image
No kernel development directories found, probably no kernel development package installed.
package kernel-devel-3.10.0-957.1.3.el7.x86_64 is not installed
Kernel development package kernel-devel-3.10.0-957.1.3.el7.x86_64 not found
If needed, try to install the kernel development package with:
# chroot /cm/images/default-image1 yum install kernel-devel-3.10.0-957.1.3.el7.x86_64
```

As suggested by the output of `kernel-devel-check`, running a command on the head node such as:

```
[root@mycluster ~]# chroot /cm/images/default-image1 yum install \
kernel-devel-3.10.0-957.1.3.el7.x86_64
```

installs a `kernel-devel` package, to the software image called `default-image1` in this case. The package version suggested corresponds to the kernel version set for the image, rather than necessarily the latest one that the distribution provides.

### Kernel Driver Modules: Improved Intel Wired Ethernet Drivers

**Improved Intel wired Ethernet drivers—what they are:** The standard RHEL and SLES distributions provide Intel wired Ethernet driver modules as part of the kernel they provide. BCM provides an improved version of the drivers with its own `intel-wired-ethernet-drivers` package. The package contains more recent versions of the Intel wired Ethernet kernel drivers: `e1000`, `e1000e`, `igb`, `igbvf`, `ixgbe` and `ixgbefv`. They often work better than standard distribution modules when it comes to performance, features, or stability.

**Improved Intel wired Ethernet drivers—replacement mechanism:** The improved drivers can be installed on all nodes.

For head nodes, the standard Intel wired Ethernet driver modules on the hard drive are overwritten by the improved versions during package installation. Backing up the standard driver modules before installation is recommended, because it may be that some particular hardware configurations are unable to cope with the changes, in which case reverting to the standard drivers may be needed.

For regular nodes, the standard distribution wired Ethernet drivers are not overwritten into the provisioner's software image during installation of the improved drivers package. Instead, the standard driver modules are removed from the kernel and the improved modules are loaded to the kernel during the `init` stage of boot.

For regular nodes in this “unwritten” state, removing the improved drivers package from the software image restores the state of the regular node, so that subsequent boots end up with a kernel running the standard distribution drivers from on the image once again. This is useful because it allows a very close-to-standard distribution to be maintained on the nodes, thus allowing better distribution support to be provided for the nodes.

If the software running on a fully-booted regular node is copied over to the software image, for example using the “Grab to image” button (section 9.5.2), this will write the improved driver module into the software image. Restoring to the standard version is then no longer possible with simply removing the improved drivers packages. This makes the image less close-to-standard, and distribution support is then less easily obtained for the node.

Thus, after the installation of the package is done on a head or regular node, for every boot from the next boot onward, the standard distribution Intel wired Ethernet drivers are replaced by the improved versions for fully-booted kernels. This replacement occurs before the network and network services start. The head node simply boots from its drive with the new drivers, while a regular node initially starts with the kernel using the driver on the software image, but then if the driver differs from the improved one, the driver is unloaded and the improved one is compiled and loaded.

**Improved Intel wired Ethernet drivers—installation:** The drivers are compiled on the fly on the regular nodes, so a check should first be done that the `kernel-devel` package is installed on the regular nodes (section 9.3.5).

If the regular nodes have the `kernel-devel` package installed, then the following `yum` commands are issued on the head node, to install the package on the head node and in the `default-image`:

#### Example

```
[root@mycluster ~]# yum install intel-wired-ethernet-drivers  
[root@mycluster ~]# chroot /cm/images/default-image  
[root@mycluster /]# yum install intel-wired-ethernet-drivers
```

For SUSE, the equivalent `zypper` commands are used (“`zypper in`” instead of “`yum install`”).

#### Kernel Driver Modules: CUDA Driver Installation

CUDA drivers are drivers the kernel uses to manage GPUs. These are compiled on the fly for nodes with GPUs in BCM. The details of how this is done is covered in the CUDA software section (Chapter 9 of the *Installation Manual*).

#### Kernel Driver Modules: OFED Stack Installation

By default, the distribution provides the OFED stack used by the kernel to manage the InfiniBand or RDMA interconnect. Installing an NVIDIA DOCA OFED stack to replace the distribution version is covered in Chapter 10 of the *Installation Manual*. Some guidance on placement into `initrd` for the purpose of optional InfiniBand-based node provisioning is given in section 5.3.3.

## 9.4 Managing A Package In A Software Image And Running It On Nodes

A package can be managed in a software image and the image deployed to nodes. A careful administrator typically clones a copy of a working image that is known to work, before modifying the image.

### 9.4.1 Installing From Head Into The Image: Changing The Root Directory Into Which The Packages Are Deployed

Managing packages (including the kernel) inside a software image is most easily done while on the head node, using a “change root” (`chroot`) mechanism. The easiest way to carry out the `chroot` mechanism in BCM is to use a wrapper provided by BCM, `cm-chroot-sw-img`, which works with all distributions.

The same can be carried out more laboriously using the distribution package managers, such as `rpm`, `yum`, `zypper`, or `apt`, by using the associated `chroot` package manager option, or invoking `chroot` as a standalone command.

#### Change Root As An Option In The Package Manager Command

**Using the `rpm` command:** The `rpm` command supports the `--root` flag. To install an RPM package inside the default software image while in the head node environment, using the repositories of the head node, the command can be used as follows:

#### Example

```
rpm --root /cm/images/default-image -ivh /tmp/libxml2-2.6.16-6.x86_64.rpm
```

**Using the `yum` command:** The `yum` command allows more general updates with a change root option. For example, all packages in the default image can be updated using `yum` for RHEL and derivatives with:

#### Example

```
yum --installroot=/cm/images/default-image update      #for RHEL variants
```

A useful option to restrict the version to which an image is updated, is to use the option `--releasever`. For example, to allow only updates up to RHEL9.1, the command in the preceding example would have `--releasever=9.1` appended to it.

**Using the zypper command:** For SLES, zypper can be used as follows to update the image:

#### Example

```
zypper --root /cm/images/default-image up           #for SLES
```

#### Change Root With chroot, Then Running The Package Manager Commands

If the repositories used by the software image are the same as the repositories used by the head node, then the chroot command can be used instead of the --installroot/--root options to get the same result as the package manager options. That is, the same result is accomplished by first chrooting into an image, and subsequently executing the rpm, yum, or zypper commands without --root or --installroot arguments. Thus:

**For RHEL and derivatives:** For YUM-based update, running yum update is recommended to update the image, after using the chroot command to reach the root of the image:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# chroot /cm/images/default-image
[root@basecm11 /]# yum update      #for RHEL variants
...updates happen...
[root@basecm11 /]# exit          #get out of chroot
```

**For SLES:** For SLES, running zypper up is recommended to update the image, after using the chroot command to reach the root of the image:

#### Example

```
basecm11:~# chroot /cm/images/default-image
basecm11.cm.cluster:/ # zypper up           #for SLES
...updates happen...
basecm11.cm.cluster:/ # exit                #get out of chroot
```

**For Ubuntu:** For Ubuntu and APT, for package installation into the software image, there is often a need for the /proc, /sys, /dev, and perhaps other directories to be available within the chroot jail. Additionally, the /proc namespace used should not be that of the head node due to namespace issues that affect decision-making in some of the pre- and post-installation script bundled with the package.

Pre-configuring all this with bind mounting before going into the chrooted filesystem is a little tedious. Therefore the BCM utility, cm-chroot-sw-img, is strongly recommended to take care of this.

Thus, for Ubuntu, if the cluster administrator would like to run apt update; apt upgrade to update the image, then the recommended way to do it is to start the process with the cm-chroot-sw-img command:

#### Example

```
root@basecm11:~# cm-chroot-sw-img /cm/images/default-image
...messages indicate that the special directories have been mounted automatically, and a chroot jail has been entered...
root@basecm11:/# apt update; apt upgrade #for Ubuntu
...An upgrade session runs in the image root. Some administrator inputs may be needed...
root@basecm11:/# exit    #get out of chroot
...messages indicate that the special directories have been unmounted automatically...
```

The cm-chroot-sw-img wrapper is less needed in other distributions, with yum and zypper instead of apt. This is because the namespace issues are not so serious in with those other distributions. However even in those other distributions, it is cleaner to use the wrapper.

### Excluding Packages And Repositories From The Image

Sometimes it may be desirable to exclude a package or a repository from an image.

- If using yum --installroot, then to prevent an automatic update of a package, the package is listed after using the --exclude flag. For example, to exclude the kernel from the list of packages that should be updated, the following command can be used:

```
yum --installroot=/cm/images/default-image --exclude kernel update
```

To exclude a package such as kernel permanently from all YUM updates, without having to specify it on the command line each time, the package can instead be excluded inside the repository configuration file of the image. YUM repository configuration files are located in the /cm/images/default-image/etc/yum.repos.d directory, and the packages to be excluded are specified with a space-separated format like this:

```
exclude = <package 1> <package 2> ...
```

- The zypper command can also carry out the task of excluding a package from getting updated when during update. To do this, the package is first locked (prevented from change) using the addlock command, then the update command is run, and finally the package is unlocked again using the removelock command. For example, for the kernel package:

```
zypper --root /cm/images/default-image addlock kernel
zypper --root /cm/images/default-image update
zypper --root /cm/images/default-image removelock kernel
```

- For Ubuntu, the apt-mark hold command can be used to exclude a package. This is described in the particular case of excluding the kernel package earlier on, in section 9.3.2.
- Sometimes it is useful to exclude an entire repository from an update to the image. For example, the administrator may wish to exclude updates to the base distribution (the distribution packages used on the node, without the BCM packages), and only want BCM updates to be pulled into the image. In that case, a construction like the following may be used to specify that, for example, from the repositories listed in /cm/images/default-image/etc/yum.repos.d/, only the repositories matching the pattern cm\* are used:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cd /cm/images/default-image/etc/yum.repos.d/
[root@basecm11 yum.repos.d]# yum --installroot=/cm/images/default-image --disablerepo=* --enablerepo=cm* update
```

- For Ubuntu, excluding a repository can be carried out by removing the repository under /etc/apt/sources.list.d/. Slightly handier may be to use the add-apt-repository command, or the apt edit-sources command.

### 9.4.2 Installing From Head Into The Image: Updating The Node

If the images are in place, then the nodes that use those images cannot run those images until they have the changes placed on the nodes. Rebooting the nodes that use the software images is a straightforward way to have those nodes start up with the new images. Alternatively, the nodes can usually simply be updated without a reboot, using imageupdate (section 5.6), if no reboot is required by the underlying Linux distribution.

### 9.4.3 Installing From Head Into The Image: Possible Issues When Using `rpm --root`, `yum --installroot` Or `chroot`

- The update process on an image, when using YUM, zypper, or APT, will fail to start if the image is being provisioned by a provisioner at the time. The administrator can either wait for provisioning requests to finish, or can ensure no provisioning happens by locking the image (section 5.4.7), before running the update process. The image can then be updated. The administrator normally unlocks the image after the update, to allow image maintenance by the provisioners again.

#### Example

```
[root@base cm11 ~]# cmsh -c "softwareimage lock default-image"
[root@base cm11 ~]# yum --installroot /cm/images/default-image update
[root@base cm11 ~]# cmsh -c "softwareimage unlock default-image"
```

- The `rpm --root` or `yum --installroot` command can fail if the versions between the head node and the version in the software image differ significantly. For example, installation from a RHEL8 head node to a RHEL9 software image is not possible with those commands, and can only be carried out with `chroot`.
- While installing software into a software image with an `rpm --root`, `yum --installroot` or with a `chroot` method is convenient, there can be issues if daemons start up in the image, or if the distribution installation scripts exit with errors due to being in an image environment rather than a real instance.

For example, installation scripts that stop and re-start a system service during a package installation may successfully start that service within the image's `chroot` jail and thereby cause related, unexpected changes in the image. Pre- and post- (un)install scriptlets that are part of RPM or APT packages may cause similar problems.

BCM's RPM and .deb packages are designed to install under `chroot` without issues. However packages from other repositories may cause the issues described. To deal with that, the cluster manager runs the `chrootprocess` health check, which alerts the administrator if there is a daemon process running in the image. The `chrootprocess` also checks and kills the process if it is a `crond` process.

- For some package updates, the distribution package management system attempts to modify the ramdisk image. This is true for kernel updates, many kernel module updates, and some other packages. Such a modification is designed to work on a normal machine. For a regular node on a cluster, which uses an extended ramdisk, the attempt does nothing.

In such cases, a new ramdisk image must nonetheless be generated for the regular nodes, or the nodes will fail during the ramdisk loading stage during start-up (section 5.8.4).

The ramdisk image for the regular nodes can be regenerated manually, using the `createramdisk` command (section 5.3.2).

- Trying to work out what is in the image from under `chroot` must be done with some care.

For example, under `chroot`, running “`uname -a`” returns the kernel that is currently running—that is the kernel outside the `chroot`. This is typically not the same as the kernel that will load on the node from the filesystem under `chroot`. It is the kernel in the filesystem under `chroot` that an unwary administrator may wrongly expect to detect on running the `uname` command under `chroot`.

To find the kernel version that is to load from the image, the software image kernel version property (section 9.3.3) can be inspected using the cluster manager with:

#### Example

```
cmsh -c "softwareimage; use default-image; get kernelversion"
```

#### 9.4.4 Managing A Package In The Node-Installer Image

A special software image is the node-installer image. The node-installer image was introduced in NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 9.0, to make multiarch (section 9.7) possible.

The node-installer image is an image that, unsurprisingly, contains the node-installer (section 5.4). The default /cm/node-installer tree is a standalone image for that architecture. It requires updating just like the regular software image. So, for example, in YUM, the entire tree can be updated with:

```
chroot /cm/node-installer yum update
```

or

```
yum --installroot=/cm/node-installer update
```

while a particular package inside the image, such as util-linux, could be installed with:

```
yum --installroot=/cm/node-installer install util-linux
```

Updating the node-installer is recommended whenever there are updates available, in order to fix possible bugs that might affect the node-installer operations.

## 9.5 Managing Non-RPM Software In A Software Image And Running It On Nodes

Sometimes, packaged software is not available for a software image, but non-packaged software is. This section describes the installation of non-packaged software onto a software image in these two cases:

1. copying only the software over to the software image (section 9.5.1)
2. placing the software onto the node directly, configuring it until it is working as required, and syncing that back to the software image using BCM's special utilities (section 9.5.2)

In both cases, before making changes, a careful administrator typically clones a copy of a working image that is known to work, before modifying the image.

As a somewhat related aside, completely overhauling the software image, including changing the base files that distinguish the distribution and version of the image is also possible. How to manage that kind of extreme change is covered separately in section 9.6.

However, this current section (9.5) is about modifying the software image with non-RPM software while staying within the framework of an existing distribution and version.

In all cases of installing software to a software image, it is recommended that software components be placed under appropriate directories under /cm/shared (which is actually outside the software image).

So, just as in the case for installing software to the head node in section 9.2.2, appropriate software components go under:

```
/cm/shared/  
|--- apps  
|--- docs  
|--- examples  
|--- licenses  
`--- modulefiles
```

### 9.5.1 Managing The Software Directly On An Image

The administrator may choose to manage the non-packaged software directly in the correct location on the image.

For example, the administrator may wish to install a particular software to all nodes. If the software has already been prepared elsewhere and is known to work on the nodes without problems, such as for

example library dependency or path problems, then the required files can simply be copied directly into the right places on the software image.

The chroot command may also be used to install non-packaged software into a software image. This is analogous to the chroot technique for installing packages in section 9.4:

### Example

```
cd /cm/images/default-image/usr/src
tar -xvzf /tmp/app-4.5.6.tar.gz
chroot /cm/images/default-image
cd /usr/src/app-4.5.6
./configure --prefix=/usr
make install
```

Whatever method is used to install the software, after it is placed in the software image, the change can be implemented on all running nodes by running the updateprovisioners (section 5.2.4) and imageupdate (section 5.6.2) commands.

## 9.5.2 Managing The Software Directly On A Node, Then Syncing Node-To-Image

### Why Sync Node-To-Image?

Sometimes, typically if the software to be managed is more complex and needs more care and testing than might be the case in section 9.5.1, the administrator manages it directly on a node itself, and then makes an updated image from the node after it is configured, to the provisioner.

For example, the administrator may wish to install and test an application from a node first before placing it in the image. Many files may be altered during installation in order to make the node work with the application. Eventually, when the node is in a satisfactory state, and possibly after removing any temporary installation-related files on the node, a new image can be created, or an existing image updated.

Administrators should be aware that until the new image is saved, the node loses its alterations and reverts back to the old image on reboot.

The node-to-image sync can be seen as the converse of the image-to-node sync that is done using imageupdate (section 5.6.2).

The node-to-image sync discussed in this section is done using the Grab to image menu option from Base View, or using the “grabimage” command with appropriate options in cmsh. The sync automatically excludes network mounts and parallel filesystems such as Lustre and GPFS, but includes any regular disk mounted on the node itself.

Some words of advice and a warning are in order here

- The cleanest, and recommended way, to change an image is to change it directly in the node image, typically via changes within a chroot environment (section 9.5.1).
- Changing the deployed image running on the node can lead to unwanted changes that are not obvious. While many unwanted changes are excluded because of the excludelistgrab\* lists during a node-to-image sync, there is a chance that some unwanted changes do get captured. These changes can lead to unwanted or even buggy behavior. The changes from the original deployed image should therefore be scrutinized with care before using the new image.
- For scrutiny, the bash command:

```
vimdiff <(cd image1; find . | sort) <(cd image2; find . | sort)
```

run from /cm/images/ shows the changed files for image directories image1 and image2, with uninteresting parts folded away. The <(commands) construction is called *process substitution*, for administrators unfamiliar with this somewhat obscure technique.

### Node-To-Image Sync Using Base View

In Base View, the software on the running node can be saved to an image. To do this for a particular node, for example, node001, the Grab to image screen options can be navigated to via: Devices > Nodes [node001] > Actions > Software image > Grab to image > options (figures 9.2 and 9.3):

	HOSTNAME ↑	STATE	MAC	CATEGORY	IP	Metrics
<input type="checkbox"/>	node001	↑	FA:16:3E:7D:3F:B2	default	10.141.0.10	Monitored state
<input type="checkbox"/>	node002	↑	FA:16:3E:23:0A:6E	default	10.141.0.11	OS

Update node  
 Reinstall node  
**Grab to image**  
 Connect  
 Packages  
 Monitoring pickup intervals  
 Connectivity  
 Workload  
 Software image  
 Kernel

Figure 9.2: Synchronizing node-to-image: accessing Grab to image

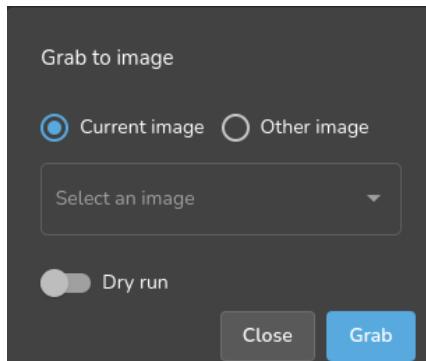


Figure 9.3: Synchronizing node-to-image: screen options for Grab to image

In the Grab to image screen (figure 9.3):

1. Current image can be selected. This is the image that the running node was provisioned from. Setting it synchronizes from the node back to the software image, using evaluation based on file change detection between the node and the image. It is thus a synchronization to the already existing software image that is currently in use by the node.  
The items that it excludes from the synchronization are specified in the `Exclude list image grab` block, navigated to via Grouping > Node categories[default-image] > Edit > Settings > Exclude list grab. This exclude list is known as `excludelistgrab` (page 517) in cmsh.
2. Other image can be selected. The image selected must already exist, and may be other than the image that the running node was provisioned from. Selection grabs what is to go to the image

from the node. It wipes out whatever (if anything) is in the selected image, except for a list of excluded items.

The excluded items are specified in the `Exclude list grab new` block, navigated to via `Grouping > Node categories[default-image] > Settings > Exclude list grab new`. This exclude list is known as `excludelistgrabnew` (page 517) in cmsh.

The synchronization carried out when using the current image is a bit more “gentle” in carrying out the node-to-image sync, compared to the what is done when using the other image. That is, it carries out a “gentler sync” to avoid wiping out existing files, versus a “violent grab” to another image that can wipe out existing files. This means that there is a difference between using `Current image` and using `Other image` when both destination software images are the same.

The exclude lists are there to ensure, among other things, that the configuration differences between nodes are left alone for different nodes with the same image. The exclude lists are simple by default, but they conform in structure and patterns syntax in the same way that the exclude lists detailed in section 5.4.7 do, and can therefore be quite powerful.

If existing images are known to work well with nodes, then overwriting them with a new image on a production system may be reckless. A wise administrator who has prepared a node that is to write an image would therefore follow a process similar to the following instead of simply overwriting an existing image:

1. A new image can be cloned from the old image via the navigation path `Provisioning > Software images > Clone`, and setting a name for the new image, for example: `newimage`. The node state with the software installed on it would then be saved using the `Grab to image` option, and choosing the image name `newimage` as the image to save it to.
2. A new category is then cloned from the old category via the navigation path `Grouping > Categories > Clone`, and setting a name for the new category, for example `newcategory`. The old image in `newcategory` is changed to the new image `newimage` via the navigation path `Grouping > Categories > Edit > Settings > Software image > newimage`.
3. A newly-cloned category has no nodes initially. Some nodes are set to the new category so that their behavior with the new image can be tested. The chosen nodes can be made members of the new category from within the `Settings` option of each node, and saving the change. The navigation path for this is `Devices > Nodes > Edit > Settings > Category > newcategory`
4. The nodes that have been placed in the new category are now made to pick up and run their new images. This can be done with a reboot of those nodes.
5. After sufficient testing, all the remaining nodes can be moved to using the new image. The old image is removed if no longer needed, or perhaps kept around just in case for reference.

#### **Node-To-Image Sync Using cmsh**

The preceding Base View method can alternatively be carried out using cmsh commands. The cmsh equivalent to the `Grab to image` with the `Current image` option is the `grabimage` command, available from device mode. The cmsh equivalent to the `Grab to image` with the `Other image` option is the `grabimage -i` command, where the `-i` option specifies the image it will write to. As before, that image must be created or cloned beforehand.

The following cmsh session shows how a image is cloned, how a category is set for nodes that are to use the image, and how the running node with the new software on it is synchronized to the provisioning node that has the new image:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% softwareimage
[basecm11->softwareimage]% clone default-image default-image1
```

```
[basecm11->softwareimage*[default-image1]]% commit
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-image1]]% category
[basecm11->category]% clone default default1
[basecm11->category*[default1*]]% commit
[basecm11->category[default1]]% set softwareimage default-image1
[basecm11->category*[default1*]]% commit
[basecm11->category[default1]]% device
[basecm11->device]% grabimage -w -i default-image1 node001
[basecm11->device]%
Mon Jul 18 16:13:00 2011 [notice] basecm11: Provisioning started on node node001
[basecm11->device]%
Mon Jul 18 16:13:04 2011 [notice] basecm11: Provisioning completed on node node001
```

The `grabimage` command without the `-w` option simply does a dry-run so that the user can see in the provisioning logs what should be grabbed, without having the changes actually carried out. Running `grabimage -w` instructs CMDaemon to really write the image.

When writing out the image, two exclude lists may be used:

- `excludelistgrabnew`: This is used with `grabimage` command run with the `-i` option. The list can be accessed and edited via

```
cmsh>category[image]>set excludelistgrabnew
```

It corresponds to the `Exclude list grab new` exclusion list associated with `Grab to image` when using the `Other image` option (figure 9.3) in Base View.

- `excludelistgrab`: This is used with the `grabimage` command, run without the `-i` option. The list can be accessed and edited via

```
cmsh>category[image]>set excludelistgrab
```

It corresponds to the `Exclude list image grab` exclusion list associated with `Grab to image` with the `Current image` option (figure 9.3) in Base View.

## 9.6 Creating A Custom Software Image

By default, the software image used to boot non-head nodes is based on the same version and release of the Linux distribution as used by the head node. However, sometimes an image based on a different distribution or a different release from that on the head node may be needed.

A custom software image is created typically by building an entire filesystem image from a regular node. The node, which is never a head node, is then called the *base host*, with the term “base” used to indicate that it has no additional cluster manager packages installed. The distribution on the base host, is called the *base distribution* and is a selection of packages derived from the *parent distribution* (Red Hat, Scientific Linux etc.). A *base distribution package* is a package or rpm that is directly provided by the vendor of the parent distribution which the base distribution is based on, and is not provided by BCM.

Creating a custom software image consists of two steps. The first step (section 9.6.1) is to create a *base (distribution) archive* from an installed base host. The second step (section 9.6.2) is to create the image from the base archive using a special utility, `cm-create-image`.

An alternative to these steps is to use the `cm-image` tool (section 9.7.1), which is a wrapper to `cm-create-image`.

### 9.6.1 Creating A Base Distribution Archive From A Base Host

#### Structure Of The Base Distribution Archive

The step of creating the base distribution archive is done by creating an archive structure containing the files that are needed by the non-head node.

The filesystem that is archived in this way can differ from the special way that a Linux distribution unpacks and installs its filesystem on to a machine. This is because the distribution installer often carries

out extra changes, for example in GRUB boot configuration. The creation of the base distribution archive is therefore a convenience to avoid working with the special logic of a distribution installer, which will vary across distributions and versions. Instead, the filesystem and contents of a node on which this parent distribution is installed—i.e. the end product of that logic—is what is dealt with.

The archive can be a convenient and standard `.tar.gz` file archive (sometimes called the “base tar”), or, taking the step a little further towards the end result, the archive can be a fully expanded archive file tree. For convenience, a base tar is provided in the cluster installation ISO. For Ubuntu 24.04, the path on the ISO is `/data/UBUNTU2404.tar.gz`:

### Example

```
joe@sandbox:~$ isoinfo -R -l -i bcm-11.0-ubuntu2404.iso | grep -A6 'Directory listing of /data/$'
Directory listing of /data/
drwxr-xr-x 1 0 0 2048 May 7 2025 [ 22 02] .
drwxr-xr-x 1 0 0 2048 May 7 2025 [ 19 02] ..
-rw-r--r-- 1 0 0 370628239 May 7 2025 [ 198034 00] bcminstallerfiles.tgz
-r--r--r-- 1 0 0 147845120 May 7 2025 [ 379005 00] filesystem.squashfs
drwxr-xr-x 1 0 0 2048 May 7 2025 [ 23 02] packages
-rw-r--r-- 1 0 0 1182483439 May 7 2025 [5278054 00] UBUNTU2404.tar.gz
joe@sandbox:~$
```

### Repository Access Considerations When Intending To Build A Base Distribution Archive

For convenience, the archive should be up-to-date. So, the base host used to generate the base distribution archive should ideally have updated files. If, as is usual, the base host is a regular node, then it should ideally be up to date with the repositories that it uses. Therefore running `yum update` or `zypper up` on the base host image, and then provisioning the image to the base host, is recommended in order to allow the creation of an up-to-date base distribution archive.

However sometimes updates are not possible or desirable for the base host. This means that the base host archive that is put together from the base host filesystem is an un-updated archive. The custom image that is to be created from the archive must then be also be created without accessing the repositories, in order to avoid dependency problems with the package versions. Exclusion of access to the repositories is possible by specifying options to the `cm-create-image` command, and is described in section 9.6.2.

### Examples Of How To Build A Base Distribution Archive

In the following example, a base distribution `.tar.gz` archive `/tmp/BASEDIST.tar.gz` is created from the base host `basehost64`. The archive that is created should normally have access control lists and extended attributes preserved too:

### Example

```
ssh root@basehost64 \
"tar -cz \
--exclude /etc/HOSTNAME --exclude /etc/localtime \
--exclude /proc --exclude /lost+found --exclude /sys \
--exclude /root/.ssh --exclude /var/lib/dhpcd/* \
--exclude /media/floppy --exclude /etc/motd \
--exclude /root/.bash_history --exclude /root/CHANGES \
--exclude /etc/udev/rules.d/*persistent*.rules \
--exclude /var/spool/mail/* --exclude /rhn \
--exclude /etc/sysconfig/rhn/systemid --exclude /tmp/* \
--exclude /var/spool/up2date/* --exclude /var/log/* \
--exclude /etc/sysconfig/rhn/systemid.save \
--exclude /root/mbox --exclude /var/cache/yum/* \
--exclude /etc/cron.daily/rhn-updates /" > /tmp/BASEDIST.tar.gz
```

Or alternatively, a fully expanded archive file tree can be created from `basehost64` by rsyncing to an existing directory (here it is `/cm/images/new-image`):

### Example

```
rsync -av --hard-links --numeric-ids \
--exclude=/etc/HOSTNAME --exclude=/etc/localtime --exclude=/proc \
--exclude=/lost+found --exclude=/sys --exclude=/root/.ssh \
--exclude=/var/lib/dhcpd/* --exclude=/media/floppy \
--exclude=/etc/motd --exclude=/root/.bash_history \
--exclude=/root/CHANGES --exclude=/var/spool/mail/* \
--exclude=/etc/udev/rules.d/*persistent*.rules \
--exclude=/rhn --exclude=/etc/sysconfig/rhn/systemid \
--exclude=/etc/sysconfig/rhn/systemid.save --exclude=/tmp/* \
--exclude=/var/spool/up2date/* --exclude=/var/log/* \
--exclude=/root/mbox --exclude=/var/cache/yum/* \
--exclude=/etc/cron.daily/rhn-updates \
root@basehost64:/ /cm/images/new-image/
```

**SELinux and file attributes:** To use SELinux on compute nodes, extended attributes must not be used.

The defaults can be modified, if needed, by adjusting attributes for partitions via `cmsh`, in `fspart` mode:

### Example

```
[basecm11->fspart]% foreach * (set rsyncxattr no)
[basecm11->fspart*]% list -f path:0,rsyncxattr
path (key)          rsyncxattr
-----
/cm/images/default-image    no
/cm/images/default-image/boot no
/cm/node-installer          no
/cm/shared                   no
/tftpboot                    no
/var/spool/cmd/monitoring   no
```

Having built the archive by following the examples suggested, the first step in creating the software image is now complete.

### 9.6.2 Creating The Software Image With `cm-create-image`

The second step, that of creating the image from the base archive, now needs to be done. This uses the `cm-create-image` utility, which is part of the `cluster-tools` package.

The `cm-create-image` utility uses the base archive as the base for creating the image. By default, it expects that the base distribution repositories be accessible just in case files need to be fetched from a repository package.

Thus, when the `cm-create-image` utility is run with no options, the image created mostly picks up the software only from the base archive. However, the image picks up software from the repository packages:

- if it is required as part of a dependency, or
- if it is specified as part of the package selection file (page 521).

If a repository package file is used, then it should be noted that the repository package files may be more recent compared with the files in the base archive. This can result in an image with files that are perhaps unexpectedly more recent in version than what might be expected from the base archive, which

may cause compatibility issues. To prevent this situation, the `--exclude` option (section 9.2) can be used to exclude updates for the packages that are not to be updated.

Repository access can be directly to the online repositories provided by the distribution, or it can be to a local copy. For RHEL, online repository access can be activated by registering with the Red Hat Network (section 5.1 of the *Installation Manual*). Similarly, for SUSE, online repository access can be activated by registering with Novell (section 5.2 of the *Installation Manual*). An offline repository can be constructed as described in section 9.6.3 of this manual.

### Usage Of The `cm-create-image` Command

The usage information for `cm-create-image` is:

```
[root@head ~]# cm-create-image -h
usage: cm-create-image [-a FROMARCHIVE | -d FROMDIR | -h FROMHOST | --fromfb FROMFB | -k]
                      [--cmdvd CMDDVD] [--add-only] [--arch IMAGE_ARCH] [--os IMAGE_OS]
                      [-c CMREPO] [-b BASEDISTREPO] [-e] [-f] [-g ENABLEEXTRAREPO] [--help]
                      [-i IMAGEDIR] [-j EXCLUDEDIST] [--holdpackages HOLDPACKAGES]
                      [--no-holdpackages] [-l RESOLVCONF] [-m] [-n IMAGENAME] [-o EXCLUDE_FROM]
                      [-q EXCLUDEHWVENDOR] [-r] [-s] [-t {node-installer,cmshared}] [-u] [-v]
                      [-w HWVENDOR] [-x EXCLUDECM] [-y] [-z CUSTOM_PRE_INSTALL_SCRIPT]
                      [--no-progress] [-L LOGFILE] [--sles-allow-vendor-change]
                      [--skip-connectivity-check] [--tar-options ...] [--no-cm-repo-extra]
                      [--cmshared-reinstall]
```

### Examples In Usage Of `cm-create-image`

Explanations of the usage text follow:

1. In the following, a base distribution archive file, `/tmp/ROCKY9.tar.gz`, is written out to a software image named `rocky9-image`:

```
cm-create-image --fromarchive /tmp/ROCKY9.tar.gz --imagename rocky9-image
```

The image with the name `rocky9-image` is created in the CMDaemon database, making it available for use by `cmsh` and Base View. If an image with the above name already exists, then `/cm/create-image` will exit and advise the administrator to provide an alternate name.

By default, the image name specified sets the directory into which the software image is installed. Thus here the directory is `/cm/images/rocky9-image/`.

2. Instead of the image getting written into the default directory as in the previous item, an alternative directory can be specified with the `--imagedir` option. Thus, in the following, the base distribution archive file, `/tmp/ROCKY9.tar.gz` is written out to the `/cm/images/test-image` directory. The software image is given the name `rocky9-image`:

```
cm-create-image --fromarchive /tmp/ROCKY9.tar.gz --imagename rocky9-image --imagedir \
/cm/images/test-image
```

3. If the contents of the base distribution file tree have been transferred to a directory, then no extraction is needed. The `--fromdir` option can then be used with that directory. Thus, in the following, the archive has already been transferred to the directory `/cm/images/SLES15-image`, and it is that directory which is then used to place the image under a directory named `/cm/images/sles15-image/`. Also, the software image is given the name `sles15-image`:

```
cm-create-image --fromdir /cm/images/SLES15-image --imagename sles15-image
```

- **skipping:** Sometimes the installation of additional base distribution packages may need to be skipped. For example, if the target image already has the required base distribution packages, as in DGX OS., then the `--skipdist` option must be used to skip package installation:

```
cm-create-image --fromdir /cm/images/dgx-image --imagename dgx-image --skipdist
```

- **updating:** If the software image already exists in CMDaemon, and if the target directory contents need to be updated, then the `--updateimage` option can be used:

```
cm-create-image --fromdir /cm/images/dgx-image --imagename dgx-image --updateimage
```

- **skipping and updating:** Applying both options means skipping the installation of additional base distribution packages, and then updating the software image, which can be an efficient way to set up an up-to-date DGX image:

```
cm-create-image --fromdir /cm/images/login-image-a100-test --imagename \
login-image-a100-test --updateimage --skipdist
```

4. A software image can be created from a running node using the `--fromhost` option. This option makes `cm-create-image` behave in a similar manner to `grabimage` (section 9.5.2) in `cmsh`. It requires passwordless access to the node in order to work. Generic nodes, that is nodes that are not managed by BCM, can also be used. An image named `node001-image` can then be created from a running node named `node001` as follows:

```
cm-create-image --fromhost node001 --imagename node001-image
```

By default the image goes under the `/cm/images/node001-image/` directory.

5. The `--basedistrepo` flag is used together with a `.repo` file. The file defines the base distribution repository for the image. The file is copied over into the repository directory of the image, (`/etc/yum.repos.d/` for Red Hat and similar, or `/etc/zypp/repos.d/` for SLES).
6. The `--cmrepo` flag is used together with a `.repo` file. The file defines the cluster manager repository for the image. The file is copied over into the repository directory of the image, (`/etc/yum.repos.d/` for Red Hat and similar, or `/etc/zypp/repos.d/` for SLES).
7. A default node software image can be created with:

```
cm-create-image --imagename default-image --fromarchive <path to base archive> ...
```

8. A default node-installer image can be created with:

```
cm-create-image --imagename node-installer --image-type node-installer --fromarchive \
<path to base archive> ...
```

9. A default DGX platform image can be created from a vanilla Ubuntu 24.04 basetar with:

```
cm-create-image --fromarchive=/mnt/install/UBUNTU2404.tar.gz --imagedir=/cm/images/dgxos-image \
--imagename=ubuntu2404 --dgx
```

#### Package Selection Files In `cm-create-image`

In the preceding explanations text, the selection of packages on the head node is done using a *package selection file*.

Package selection files are available in `/cm/local/apps/cluster-tools/config/`. For example, if the base distribution of the software image being created is Rocky Linux 8, then the configuration file used is:

```
/cm/local/apps/cluster-tools/config/ROCKY8-config-dist.xml
```

The package selection file is made up of a list of XML elements, specifying the image type of the package, its name, and architecture. For example:

```
...
<package image="master" name="adwaita-cursor-theme" arch="noarch" platforms="x86_64 aarch64" />
<package image="master" name="adwaita-gtk2-theme" arch="platform" platforms="x86_64" />
<package image="master" name="adwaita-icon-theme" arch="noarch" platforms="x86_64 aarch64" />
<package image="master" name="alsa-lib" arch="platform" platforms="x86_64 aarch64" />
...
...
```

The minimal set of packages in the list defines the minimal distribution that works with BCM, and is the base-distribution set of packages, which may not work with some features of the distribution or BCM. To this minimal set the following packages may be added to create the custom image:

- Packages from the standard repository of the parent distribution. These can be added to enhance the custom image or to resolve a dependency of BCM. For example, in the (parent) Red Hat distribution, packages can be added from the (standard) main Red Hat channel to the base-distribution.
- Packages from outside the standard repository, but still from inside the parent distribution. These can be added to enhance the custom image or to resolve a dependency of BCM. For example, outside the main Red Hat channel, but still within the parent distribution of RHEL7, there is an extra, supplementary, and an optional packages channel. Packages from these channels can be added to the base-distribution to enhance the capabilities of the image or resolve dependencies of BCM. Section 9.1 of the *Installation Manual* considers an example of such a dependency for the CUDA package.

Unless the required distribution packages and dependencies are installed and configured, particular features of BCM, such as CUDA, cannot work correctly or cannot work at all.

The package selection file also contains entries for the packages that can be installed on the head (`image="master"`) node. Therefore non-head node packages must have the `image="slave"` attribute.

### **Kernel Module Selection By cm-create-image**

For an image created by `cm-create-image`, with a distribution `<dist>`, the default list of kernel modules to be loaded during boot are read from the file `/cm/local/apps/cluster-tools/config/<dist>-slav kern modules`.

`<dist>` can take the value RHEL8U7, RHEL8U8, RHEL8U9, RHEL9U1, RHEL9U2, RHEL9U3, ROCKY8U7, ROCKY8U8, ROCKY8U9, ROCKY9U1, ROCKY9U2, ROCKY9U3, SLES15, SLES15SP4, SLES15SP5, SLES15SP6, UBUNTU1804, UBUNTU2004, UBUNTU2204, UBUNTU2404.

If custom kernel modules are to be added to the image, they can be added to this file.

### **Output And Logging During A cm-create-image Run**

The `cm-create-image` run goes through several stages: validation, sanity checks, finalizing the base distribution, copying the BCM repository files, installing distribution packages, finalizing image services, and installing the BCM packages. An indication is given if any of these stages fail.

Further detail is available in the logs of the `cm-create-image` run, which are kept in logs of the form `/var/log/cm-create-image-<image name>.log`, where `<image name>` is the name of the built image.

### **Default Image Location**

The default image is at `/cm/images/default-image`, so the image directory can simply be kept as `/cm/images/`.

During a `cm-create-image` run, the `--imagedir` option allows an image directory for the image to be specified. This must exist before the option is used.

More generally, the full path for each image can be set:

- Using Base View via the navigation path Provisioning > Software Images > Settings > Path
- In cmsh within softwareimage mode, for example:

```
[basecm11->softwareimage] % set new-image path /cm/higgs/new-images
```

- At the system level, the images or image directory can be symlinked to other locations for organizational convenience

### 9.6.3 Configuring Local Repositories For Linux Distributions, And For The BCM Package Repository, For A Software Image

Using local instead of remote repositories can be useful in the following cases:

- for clusters that have restricted or no internet access.
- for the RHEL and SUSE Linux distributions, which are based on a subscription and support model, and therefore do not have free access to their repositories.
- for creating a custom image with the cm-create-image command introduced in section 9.6.2, using local base distribution repositories.

The administrator can choose to access an online repository provided by the distribution itself via a subscription as described in Chapter 5 of the *Installation Manual*. Another way to set up a repository is to set it up as a local repository, which may be offline, or perhaps set up as a locally-controlled proxy with occasional, restricted, updates from the distribution repository.

In the three procedures that follow, the first two procedures explain how to create and configure a local offline SLES zypper or RHEL YUM repository for the subscription-based base distribution packages. These first two procedures assume that the corresponding ISO/DVD has been purchased/downloaded from the appropriate vendors. The third procedure then explains how to create a local offline YUM repository from the BCM ISO for CentOS so that a cluster that is completely offline still has a complete and consistent repository access.

Thus, a summary list of what these procedures are about is:

- Setting up a local repository for SLES (page 523)
- Setting up a local repository for RHEL (page 524)
- Setting up a local repository for CentOS and BCM from the BCM ISO for CentOS (page 524)

#### Configuring Local Repositories For SLES For A Software Image

For SLES11 SP0, SLES11 SP1, and SLES11 SP2, the required packages are spread across two DVDs, and hence two repositories must be created. Assuming the image directory is /cm/images/sles11sp1-image, while the names of the DVDs are SLES-11-SP1-SDK-DVD-x86\_64-GM-DVD1.iso and SLES-11-SP1-DVD-x86\_64-GM-DVD1.iso, then the contents of the DVDs can be copied as follows:

```
mkdir /mnt1 /mnt2
mkdir /cm/images/sles11sp1-image/root/repo1
mkdir /cm/images/sles11sp1-image/root/repo2
mount -o loop,ro SLES-11-SP1-SDK-DVD-x86_64-GM-DVD1.iso /mnt1
cp -ar /mnt1/* /cm/images/sles11sp1-image/root/repo1/
mount -o loop,ro SLES-11-SP1-DVD-x86_64-GM-DVD1.iso /mnt2
cp -ar /mnt2/* /cm/images/sles11sp1-image/root/repo2/
```

The two repositories can be added for use by zypper in the image, as follows:

```
chroot /cm/images/sles11sp1-image
zypper addrepo /root/repo1 "SLES11SP1-SDK"
zypper addrepo /root/repo2 "SLES11SP1"
exit (chroot)
```

### Configuring Local Repositories For RHEL For A Software Image

For RHEL distributions, the procedure is almost the same. The required packages are contained in one DVD.

```
mkdir /mnt1
mkdir /cm/images/rhel-image/root/repo1
mount -o loop,ro RHEL-DVD1.iso /mnt1
cp -ar /mnt1/* /cm/images/rhel-image/root/repo1/
```

The repository is added to YUM in the image, by creating the repository file /cm/images/rhel-image/etc/yum.repos.d/rhel-base.repo with the following contents:

```
[base]
name=Red Hat Enterprise Linux $releasever - $basearch - Base
baseurl=file:///root/repo1/Server
gpgcheck=0
enabled=1
```

### Configuring Local Repositories For CentOS And BCM For A Software Image

**Mounting the ISOs** The variable \$imagedir is assigned as a shortcut for the software image that is to be configured to use a local repository:

```
imagedir=/cm/images/default-image
```

If the ISO is called basecom-centos.iso, then its filesystem can be mounted by the root user on a new mount, /mnt1, as follows:

```
mkdir /mnt1
mount -o loop basecom-centos.iso /mnt1
```

The head node can then access the ISO filesystem.

The same mounted filesystem can also be mounted with the bind option into the software image. This can be done (from outside the chroot jail) inside the software image by the root user, in the same relative position as for the head node, as follows:

```
mkdir $imagedir/mnt1
mount -o bind /mnt1 $imagedir/mnt1
```

This allows an operation run under the \$imagedir in a chroot environment to access the ISO filesystem too.

**Creating YUM repository configuration files:** YUM repository configuration files can be created:

- **for the head node:** A repository configuration file

```
/etc/yum.repos.d/cmHEAD-dvd.repo
```

can be created, for example, for a release tagged with a <subminor> number tag, with the content:

```
[BCM-repo]
name=NVIDIA Base Command Manager DVD Repo
baseurl=file:///mnt1/data/packages/HEAD-<subminor>
enabled=1
gpgcheck=1
exclude = slurm* pbspro* cm-hwloc
```

- **for the regular node image:** A repository configuration file

```
$imagedir/etc/yum.repos.d/cmHEAD-dvd.repo
```

can be created. This file is in the image directory, but it has the same content as the previous head node yum repository configuration file.

**Verifying that the repository files are set up right:** To verify the repositories are usable on the head node, the YUM cache can be cleaned, and the available repositories listed:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# yum clean all
[root@basecm11 ~]# yum repolist -v
BCM-repo          NVIDIA Base Command Manager DVD Repo
...
```

To carry out the same verification on the image, these commands can be run with `yum --installroot=$imagedir` substituted in place of just `yum`.

The ISO repository should show up, along with any others that are accessible. Connection attempts that fail to reach a network-based or local repositories display errors. If those repositories are not needed, they can be disabled from within their configuration files.

#### 9.6.4 Creating A Custom Image From The Local Repository

After having created the local repositories for SLES, RHEL or CentOS/Rocky (section 9.6.3), a custom software image based on one of these can be created. For example, for CentOS, in a directory given the arbitrary name `offlineimage`:

```
cm-create-image -d $imagedir -n offlineimage -e -s
```

The `-e` option prevents copying the default cluster manager repository files on top of the image being created, since they may have been changed by the administrator from their default status. The `-s` option prevents installing additional base distribution packages that might not be required.

## 9.7 Creating Images For Other Distributions And Architectures (Multidistro And Multiarch)

NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 9.0 onward makes it easier to mix distributions in the cluster. This ability is called *multidistro*. However, it is often also loosely called *multiOS*.

NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 9.0 also introduced the ability to run on certain mixed architecture combinations. The ability to run on multiple architectures is called *multiarch*. For BCM, multiarch means that the node hardware can be based on either the x86-64 CPU architecture, or the ARMv8 CPU architecture, or on a mixture of both.

The Linux distributions and the hardware architectures supported by NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11.0 are shown in the following table 9.1:

Head				
	RHEL8 (x86-64, aarch64)	RHEL9 (x86-64, aarch64)	Ubuntu 22.04, 24.04 (x86-64, aarch64)	SLES15 (x86-64)
Image	RHEL8	x86-64, aarch64	x86-64, aarch64	x86-64
	RHEL9	x86-64, aarch64	x86-64, aarch64	x86-64
	Ubuntu 22.04	x86-64, aarch64	x86-64, aarch64	x86-64
	Ubuntu 24.04	x86-64, aarch64	x86-64, aarch64	x86-64
	SLES15	x86-64	x86-64	x86-64

Table 9.1: Images generated by `cm-image` that work with head nodes, per architecture and distribution

For example, a head node running Ubuntu 22.04, on x86-64 or ARMv8 hardware, can support an Ubuntu 22.04, Ubuntu 24.04, RHEL8, RHEL9 distribution running on x86-64 and on ARMv8 hardware

for the compute nodes. In addition, that same head node supports running SLES15 on the compute nodes, but only for x86-64 hardware.

### The `nodearchosinfo` Command

The `nodearchosinfo` command helps the cluster administrator see what architectures and distributions are configured and reported on the nodes:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11->device]% device nodearchosinfo
Hostname  Reported arch  Reported OS      Reported timestamp  Configured arch  Configured OS
-----
basecm11  x86_64        ubuntu2204       Wed Nov 13 07:12:37  x86_64        ubuntu2204
node001   x86_64        ubuntu2204       Wed Nov 13 07:18:07  x86_64        ubuntu2204
node002   x86_64        ubuntu2204       Wed Nov 13 07:17:01  x86_64        ubuntu2204
node003   x86_64        ubuntu2204       Wed Nov 13 07:17:01  x86_64        ubuntu2204
...
...
```

For the reported fields, attention should be paid to the timestamps. A reported state is only updated when CMDaemon on the node reports the OS and architecture. Until that event, the reported state reports the last known value. This means that if the node fails to run after a reboot attempt is made, then the reported states are not updated, and the timestamps do not change.

To configure multiarch and multidistro, the `cm-image` tool is used.

#### 9.7.1 The `cm-image` Tool

The `cm-image` tool is essentially a wrapper for the `cm-create-image` (section 9.6) tool. The `cm-image` tool however has some extra features, including allowing the cluster administrator

- to create a separate node-installer image as well as a separate software image
- to create a directory under `/cm/shared` for each image
- to select the architecture
- to manage packages in an image more easily

When used to enable a distribution for the first time, multiple changes are made to critical files and paths that may put the regular nodes into an unstable state. This means that all regular nodes should be rebooted after its first use.

The command options of `cm-image` are illustrated by the following modes and options tree:

```
cm-image
|----- shell
|     -h|--help
|     -i|--image <image>
|
|----- create
|     |----- all
|     |     -h|--help
|     |     -f|--force
|     |     -z|--custom-pre-install-script <custom pre-install script>
|     |     --source <archive|directory|host>
|     |     --bootstrap
|     |     --add-only
|     |     --add-archos
|     |     -b|--baserepo <base repository>
```

```
|      -c|--cmrepo <cluster manager repository>
|      -x|--excludedcm <BCM packages to exclude from installation>
|      -j|--excludedist <distribution packages to exclude from installation>
|      --sles-baseurl <SLES base distribution repository URL>
|      --sles-extraurl <SLES extra repository URL>
|      --air-gapped
|      -a|--arch <architecture>
|      -d|--distro <distribution>
|      --dgx
|
|----- node-installer
|      -h|--help
|      -f|--force
|      -z|--custom-pre-install-script <custom pre-install script>
|      --source <archive|directory|host>
|      --bootstrap
|      --add-only
|      --add-archos
|      -b|--baserepo <base repository>
|      -c|--cmrepo <cluster manager repository>
|      -x|--excludedcm <BCM packages to exclude from installation>
|      -j|--excludedist <distribution packages to exclude from installation>
|      --sles-baseurl <SLES base distribution repository URL>
|      --sles-extraurl <SLES extra repository URL>
|      --air-gapped
|      -a|--arch <architecture>
|      -d|--distro <distribution>
|      --dgx
|      --default
|
|----- swimage
|      -h|--help
|      -f|--force
|      -z|--custom-pre-install-script <custom pre-install script>
|      --source <archive|directory|host>
|      --bootstrap
|      --add-only
|      --add-archos
|      -b|--baserepo <base repository>
|      -c|--cmrepo <cluster manager repository>
|      -x|--excludedcm <BCM packages to exclude from installation>
|      -j|--excludedist <distribution packages to exclude from installation>
|      --sles-baseurl <SLES base distribution repository URL>
|      --sles-extraurl <SLES extra repository URL>
|      --air-gapped
|      -a|--arch <architecture>
|      -d|--distro <distribution>
|      --dgx
|
|----- fromfile <JSON input file>
|      -h|--help
|
'----- cmshared
|      -h|--help
|      -f|--force
```

```

|           -i|--image <image>
|           -b|--baserepo <base repository>
|           -c|--cmrepo <cluster manager repository>
|           -x|--excludedcm <BCM packages to exclude from installation>
|           -j|--excludedist <distribution packages to exclude from installation>
|           --sles-baseurl <SLES base distribution repository URL>
|           --sles-extraurl <SLES extra repository URL>
|           --air-gapped
|           -a|--arch <architecture>
|           -d|--distro <distribution>
|           --default
|           --add-only
|           --source <ISO or DVD package source>
|
|----- remove
|           -h|--help
|           -f|--force
|           -a|--arch <architecture>
|           -d|--distro <distribution>
|           --erase
|
|----- package
|           -h|--help
|           -i|--image <image>
|           --install <package(s) to install>
|           --remove <package(s) to remove>
|           --list
|           --update <package to update>
|           --update-all
|           --update-cm

```

Values that can be set are:

- <*architecture*>: aarch64, x86\_64
- <*distribution*>: this can be one of the distributions indicated in the following list:
  - rhel8u0, rhel8u1, rhel8u2, rhel8u3, rhel8u4, rhel8u5, rhel8u6, rhel8u7, rhel8u8, rhel8u9, rhel8u10
  - rhel9u0, rhel9u1, rhel9u2, rhel9u3, rhel9u4, rhel9u5
  - sles15sp1, sles15sp2, sles15sp3, sles15sp4, sles15sp5, sles15sp6
  - ubuntu2004, ubuntu2204, ubuntu2404

For rhel in the preceding list:

- centos is automatically substituted in the case of CentOS distributions
- rocky is automatically substituted in the case of Rocky Linux distributions
- <*archive*>: path to a base tar file (section 9.6.1), eg:/root/basetar/data/UBUNTU2004.tar.gz
- <*directory*>: path to a filesystem, eg: /root/basetar/data/untarred/
- <*host*>: URL to a host, eg: http://10.141.255.254/x86-iso/data/packages/dist
- <*base repository*>: repository file for base tar, eg: /root/bright9.2-rocky8u5-iso.repo

- <base distribution repository url>: URL for base distribution repository, eg:  
`http://dl.rockylinux.org/$contentdir/$releasever/BaseOS/$basearch/os/`
- <cluster manager repository>: repository file for cluster manager, eg: `/root/cm-bright9.2-rocky8u5-iso.repo`
- <image>: image to operate on when managing packages, eg: `/cm/images/default-image-rhel8-aarch64` or `/cm/node-installer-centos7-x86`
- <package to install>: eg: `cluster-tools`
- <package to remove>: eg: `cluster-tools`
- <package to update>: eg: `cluster-tools`

## 9.7.2 Multidistro Examples: Provisioning From Rocky 8 Head Node To Ubuntu 24.04 Regular Nodes

### Using ISO For Cluster Without Network Access

A base tar (section 9.6.1) can be used

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load cm-image
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-image --verbose create all -a x86_64 -d ubuntu2404 --source \
/root/basetar/data/UBUNTU2404.tar.gz
Creating software image default-image-ubuntu2404-x86_64
...
Do you want to continue?(y/n): y
...
Creating software image default-image-ubuntu2404-x86_64.....[ OK ]
...
Creating node installer image.....[ OK ]
...
Creating cm-shared image at /cm/shared-ubuntu2404-x86_64...
Unmounting /cm/images/default-image-ubuntu2404-x86_64/cm/shared
...
Adding cm-shared image entities.....[ OK ]
...
Updating cmd entities
Changing fspart /cm/shared to /cm/shared-rocky8-x86_64
Changing fspart /cm/node-installer to /cm/node-installer-rocky8-x86_64
...
Creating ramdisk.....[ OK ]
Added new category: default-ubuntu2404-x86_64
Use this category for adding nodes
Completed
```

As suggested by the output, a new category, `default-ubuntu2404-x86_64`, appears.

A node can be placed in the new category and restarted:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set category <TAB><TAB>
default-rocky8-x86_64    default-ubuntu2404-x86_64
[basecm11->device*[node001*]]% commit
[basecm11->device[node001]]%

...15:30:57 2024 [notice] basecm11: node001 [    UP    ], restart required (category)
[basecm11->device[node001]]%
```

```
...15:31:06 2024 [notice] basecm11: Service dhcpcd was restarted
[basecm11->device[node001]]% reboot
node001: Reboot in progress ...
```

### Adding Several Update Versions Alongside Each Other

In the following session, a Rocky9u3 x86 archived base tar is being added with cm-image. A Rocky9u2 software image is then being added with cm-create-image, using the same node-installer and /cm/shared/images directory:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load cm-image
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-image --verbose create all -a x86_64 -d rocky9u3 --source \
/root/basetar/data/ROCKY9u3.tar.gz
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-create-image -a /run/ROCKY9u2.tar.gz -f -n \
default-image-rocky9u2-x86_64 -i /cm/images/default-image-rocky9u2-x86_64 -g public
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set category default-rocky9u3-x86_64
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set softwareimage default-rocky9u2-x86_64
```

### Configuring CMDaemon With The Software Image, Node-installer, Or Shared Filesystem

The cm-image tool can be used to add a CMDaemon configuration for a software image, node-installer, or shared filesystem to a CMDaemon database.

If a cm-image-generated image directory, for example default-image-ubuntu2404-x86\_64, has been copied over from another cluster:

```
[root@basecm11 images]# pwd; ls -l
/cm/images
total 0
dr-xr-xr-x 21 root root 295 Mar 20 23:47 default-image
drwxr-xr-x 23 root root 247 Mar 25 12:56 default-image-ubuntu2404-x86_64
```

then the local CMDaemon can be configured for it with the --add-only option:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load cm-image
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-image create swimage -a x86_64 -d ubuntu2404 --add-only
```

### 9.7.3 Multiarch Example: Creating An Image From A Centos 8 Head Node For ARMv8 Architecture Regular Nodes

This section explains how to configure a software image for a regular node that runs on ARMv8 hardware, assuming BCM is installed on a head node (Chapter 3 of the *Installation Manual*).

Assuming an ARMv8 ISO bright91-rhel8u2.aarch64.iso has been picked up, it can be mounted for web access with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# mkdir /var/www/html/aarch64-iso
[root@basecm11 ~]# mount -o loop /root/bright91-rhel8u2.aarch64.iso /var/www/html/aarch64-iso
```

A repository file can be created with the following content:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /root/rhel8-aarch64-cm-iso.repo
[dist-packages-rhel8-aarch64]
name=Dist packages rhel8 aarch64
baseurl=http://10.141.255.254/aarch64-iso/data/packages/dist
enabled=1
gpgcheck=0
```

```
[cm-packages-rhel8-aarch64]
name=CM packages rhel8 aarch64
baseurl=http://10.141.255.254/aarch64-iso/data/packages/9.1
enabled=1
gpgcheck=0

[cm-packages-rhel8-aarch64-hpc]
name=CM packages rhel8 aarch64 HPC
baseurl=http://10.141.255.254/aarch64-iso/data/packages/packagegroups/hpc
enabled=1
gpgcheck=0
```

This assumes that the head node has the IP address 10.141.255.254. It should be changed if needed.

It also assumes the HEAD packages are in the HEAD packages directory of the ISO. If it is not, then the corresponding baseurl string should be changed if needed. Thus, if, for example, after inspecting the loop-mounted paths under /var/www/html/, the relative path data/packages/9.1 has changed to data/packages/9.1-6, then the baseurl should be changed to end in 9.1-6 instead of 9.1 too.

The images can then be created with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load cm-image
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-image --verbose create all -a aarch64 -d rhel8 --source \
/var/www/html/aarch64-iso/data/RHEL8u2.tar.gz -b /root/rhel8-aarch64-cm-iso.repo -c \
/root/rhel8-aarch64-cm-iso.repo
```

This takes a while to complete. At the end of the process the following ARMv8 images and entities are created by default:

- The node-installer image: /cm/node-installer-rhel8-aarch64
- The /cm/shared-... directory: /cm/shared-rhel8-aarch64
- The node image: /cm/images/default-image-rhel8-aarch64
- The node category: default-rhel8-aarch64

The preceding can be verified via cmsh:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% category list
Name (key)          Software image           Nodes
-----
default-centos8-x86_64    default-image           1
default-rhel8-aarch64     default-image-rhel8-aarch64   1
[basecm11]% softwareimage list
Name (key)          Path
...
default-image          /cm/images/default-image      ...
default-image-rhel8-aarch64 /cm/images/default-image-rhel8-aarch64 ...
[basecm11]% partition archos base; list
Arch    OS      Primary image           Shared           Installer
-----
x86_64   rhel8  default-image          /cm/shared-centos8-x86_64 /cm/node-installer-centos8-x86_64
aarch64   rhel8  default-image-rhel8-aarch64 /cm/shared-rhel8-aarch64  /cm/node-installer-rhel8-aarch64
```

The node settings should be updated. The new category can be assigned to any ARMv8 nodes:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use arm-node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set category default-rhel8-aarch64
[basecm11->device*[node001*]]% commit
```

**Carrying out changes to primaryimage requires an associated category:** The value defined for the property primaryimage decides the software image used to boot new nodes. The image also tracks what packages are used under its associated shared directory, via the RPM or APT database. The image for primaryimage and the associated shared directory can be set with cmsh from within the archos submode, under the top-level partition mode.

### Example

```
[basecm11->partition[base]->archos]# list
Arch   OS          Primary image           Shared           Installer
-----
aarch64 ubuntu1804  default-image-ubuntu1804-aarch64 /cm/shared-ubuntu1804-aarch64 /cm/n....
x86_64  rhel8       default-image           /cm/shared-centos8-x86_64      /cm/n....
[basecm11->partition[base]->archos]# use aarch64/ubuntu1804
[basecm11->partition[base]->archos[aarch64/ubuntu1804]]% set primaryimage
default-image      default-image-ubuntu1804-aarch64 new-image-ubuntu1804-aarch64
[basecm11->...->archos[aarch64/ubuntu1804]]% set primaryimage new-image-ubuntu1804-aarch64
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->archos*[aarch64/ubuntu1804*]]% commit
```

If cm-image is used to generate a new architecture and operating system, then the primary image is automatically set. Otherwise, by default, the value of primaryimage is not set.

If the value of primaryimage is set, then it is strongly recommended that a category that has that image must exist.

If such a category does not exist, then CMDaemon uses the RPM or APT database of the new image to decide what the packages are on the shared directory.

If the value of primaryimage is set and multiple categories use the image, then the first category that is found is used.

**Setting the bootloaderprotocol for ARMv8 hardware:** The bootloaderprotocol should be set to tftp to work with ARMv8 hardware:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]# category use default-rhel8-aarch64
[basecm11->category[default-rhel8-aarch64]]% set bootloaderprotocol tftp
[basecm11->category*[default-rhel8-aarch64*]]% commit
```

**Setting the kernelconsoleoutput for ARMv8 hardware:** The kernelconsoleoutput should be changed to ttyAMA0 to work with the image running on the ARMv8 hardware:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]# softwareimage use default-rhel8-aarch64
[basecm11->softwareimage[default-rhel8-aarch64]]% set kerneloutputconsole ttyAMA0
[basecm11->softwareimage*[default-rhel8-aarch64*]]% commit
```

The settings configured so far are for generic ARMv8 hardware.

### Fujitsu ARMv8 Hardware Configuration

Nodes using Fujitsu ARMv8 hardware can have their configuration options modified further.

The BMC settings of the nodes should be updated with extra arguments:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use arm-node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% bmcsettings; set extraarguments "-L USER -t 0x30"
[basecm11->device*[node001*]]% commit
```

The configuration for fetching environmental metrics should also be updated. The ipmitool monitoring resource available for Fujitsu ARMv8 hardware is run via the a64fx resource.

The existence of the a64fx monitoring resource can be checked for on the ARMv8 node:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device monitoringresources arm-node001 | grep a64fx
a64fx
```

The monitoring settings for IPMI via the a64fx object can be enabled as follows:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% monitoring setup; use ipmi
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[ipmi]]% set script /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/metrics/sample_ipmitool.py
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[ipmi*]]% executionmultiplexers
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[ipmi*]->executionmultiplexers]% remove ipmi
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[ipmi*]->executionmultiplexers*]% add resource a64fx
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[ipmi*]->executionmultiplexers*[a64fx*]]% set resources a64fx
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[ipmi*]->executionmultiplexers*[a64fx*]]% commit
```



# 10

## Monitoring: Monitoring Cluster Devices

BCM monitoring allows a cluster administrator to monitor anything that can be monitored in the cluster. Much of the monitoring consists of pre-defined sampling configurations. If there is anything that is not configured, but the data on which it is based can be sampled, then monitoring can be configured for it too, by the administrator.

The monitoring data can be viewed historically, as well as on demand. The historical monitoring data can be stored raw, and optionally also as consolidated data—a way of summarizing data.

The data can be handled raw and processed externally, or it can be visualized within Base View in the form of customizable charts. Visualization helps the administrator spot trends and abnormal behavior, and is helpful in providing summary reports for managers.

Monitoring can be configured to set off alerts based on triggers, and pre-defined or custom actions can be carried out automatically, depending on triggers. The triggers can be customized according to user-defined conditional expressions.

Carrying out such actions automatically after having set up triggers for them means that the monitoring system can free the administrator from having to carry out these chores.

In this chapter, the monitoring system is explained with the following approach:

1. A basic example is first presented in which processes are run on a node. These processes are monitored, and trigger an action when a threshold is exceeded.
2. With this easy-to-understand example as a basic model, the various features and associated functionality of the BCM monitoring system are then described and discussed in further depth. These include visualization of data, concepts, configuration, monitoring customization and cmsh use.

### 10.1 A Basic Monitoring Example And Action

#### 10.1.1 Synopsis Of Basic Monitoring Example

In section 10.1, after an overview (section 10.1.1), a minimal basic example of monitoring a process is set up (section 10.1.2) and used (section 10.1.3). The example is contrived, with the aim being to present a basic example that covers a part of what the monitoring system is capable of handling. The basic example gives the reader a structure to keep in mind, around which further details are fitted and filled in during the coverage in the rest of this chapter.

In the basic example, a user runs a large number of pointless CPU-intensive processes on a head node which is normally very lightly loaded. An administrator who is monitoring user mode CPU load usage throughout the cluster, notices this usage spike. After getting the user to stop wasting CPU cycles, the administrator may decide that putting a stop to such processes automatically is a good idea. The administrator can set that up with an action that is triggered when a high load is detected. The action that is taken after triggering, is to stop the processes (figure 10.1).

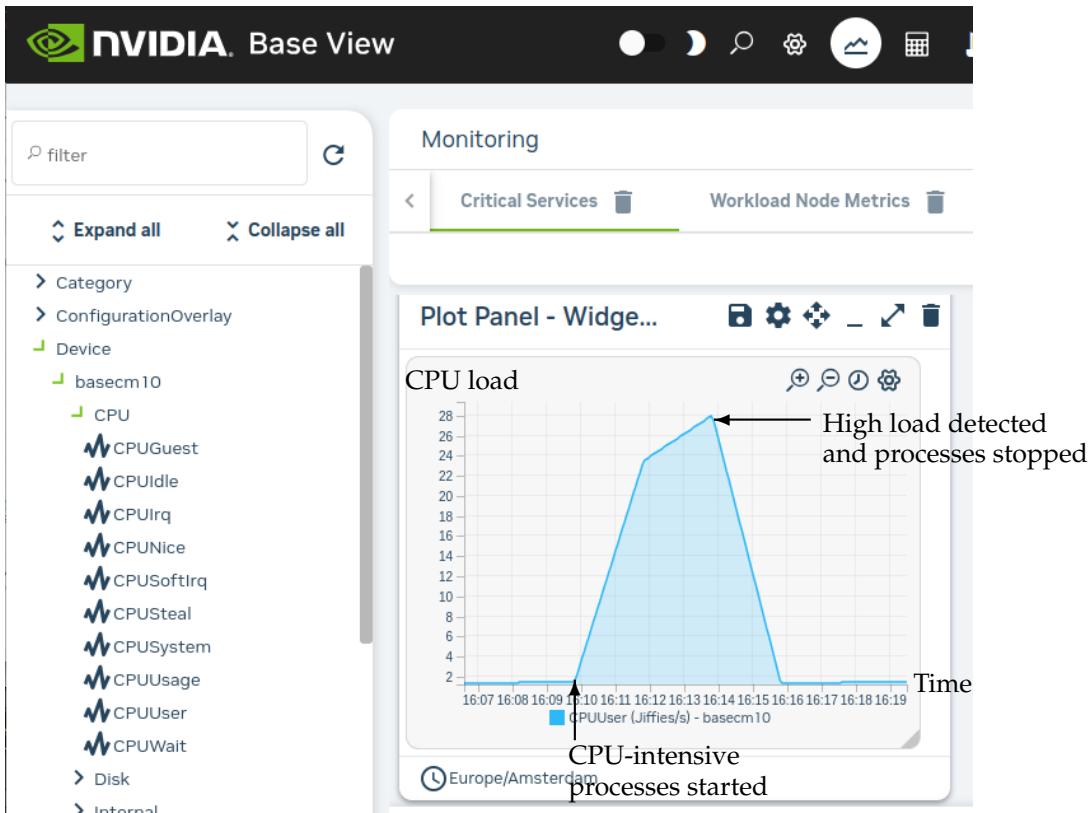


Figure 10.1: Monitoring Basic Example: CPU-intensive Processes Started, Detected And Stopped

The basic example thus illustrates how BCM monitoring can be used to detect something on the cluster and how an action can be set up and triggered based on that detection.

### 10.1.2 Before Using The Basic Monitoring Example—Setting Up The Pieces

#### Running A Large Number Of Pointless CPU-Intensive Processes

One way to simulate a user running pointless CPU-intensive processes is to run several instances of the standard unix utility, yes. The yes command sends out an endless number of lines of "y" texts. It is typically used in scripts to answer dialog prompts for confirmation.

The administrator can run 8 subshell processes in the background from the command line on the head node, with yes output sent to /dev/null, as follows:

```
for i in {1..8}; do ( yes > /dev/null &); done
```

Running "mpstat 2" shows usage statistics for each processor, updating every 2 seconds. It shows that %usr, which is user mode CPU usage percentage, is close to 90% on an 8-core or less head node when the 8 subshell processes are running.

#### Setting Up The Kill Action

To stop the pointless CPU-intensive yes processes, the command killall yes can be used. The administrator can make it a part of a script killallyes:

```
#!/bin/bash
killall yes
```

and make the script executable with a chmod 700 killallyes. For convenience, it may be placed in the /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions directory where some other action scripts also reside.

### 10.1.3 Using The Basic Monitoring Example

Now that the pieces are in place, the administrator can use Base View to add the `killallyesaction` action to its action list, and then set up a trigger for the action:

#### Adding The Action To The Actions List

In Base View:

- The navigation path

Monitoring > Actions > Monitoring Actions > killprocess > Clone

is used to clone the object structure of an existing action. The `killprocess` action is convenient choice of existing action to clone because it is expected to function in a similar way to `killallyes`, which means that the values in the cloned object should not have to be modified much. However, any action could be cloned and the clone modified in appropriate places.

- The name of the cloned action is changed. That is, the administrator sets Name to `killallyesaction`. This is just a sensible label—the name can be arbitrary.
- Script is set to the path `/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions/killallyes`, which is where the script was placed earlier (page 536).

After saving, the `killallyesaction` action becomes part of the list of monitoring actions (figure 10.2):

Type	Name	Actions
<input type="checkbox"/>	PowerOff	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <span>⋮</span>
<input type="checkbox"/>	PowerOn	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <span>⋮</span>
<input type="checkbox"/>	PowerReset	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <span>⋮</span>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Reboot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <span>⋮</span>
<input type="checkbox"/>	killallyesaction	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <span>⋮</span>

Figure 10.2: Base View Monitoring Configuration: Adding An Action

#### Setting Up A Trigger Using CPUUser On The Head Node(s)

The navigation path

Monitoring > Triggers > Failing health checks > Clone

can be used to configure a monitoring trigger, by cloning an existing trigger. A trigger is a condition that is set on the state of sample, which runs an action when that condition is met. In this case, the

sample state condition may be that the metric (section 10.2.3) CPUUser must not exceed 50. If it does, then an action (`killallyesaction`) is run, which should kill the yes processes.

- CPUUser is a measure of the time spent in user mode CPU usage per second, and is measured in jiffy intervals per second.
- A jiffy interval is a somewhat arbitrary time interval that is predefined for kernel developers per platform. It is the minimum amount of time that a process has access to the CPU before the kernel can switch to another task.

The jiffy interval per second of CPUUser is a quantity rather than a percentage. It should not be confused with the closely related measurable CPUUsage, which is a percentage. CPUUsage is used for %user monitoring, where %user is the user time as defined and measured for the top command.

To configure triggering for CPUUser, the trigger attributes can be modified as follows (figure 10.3):

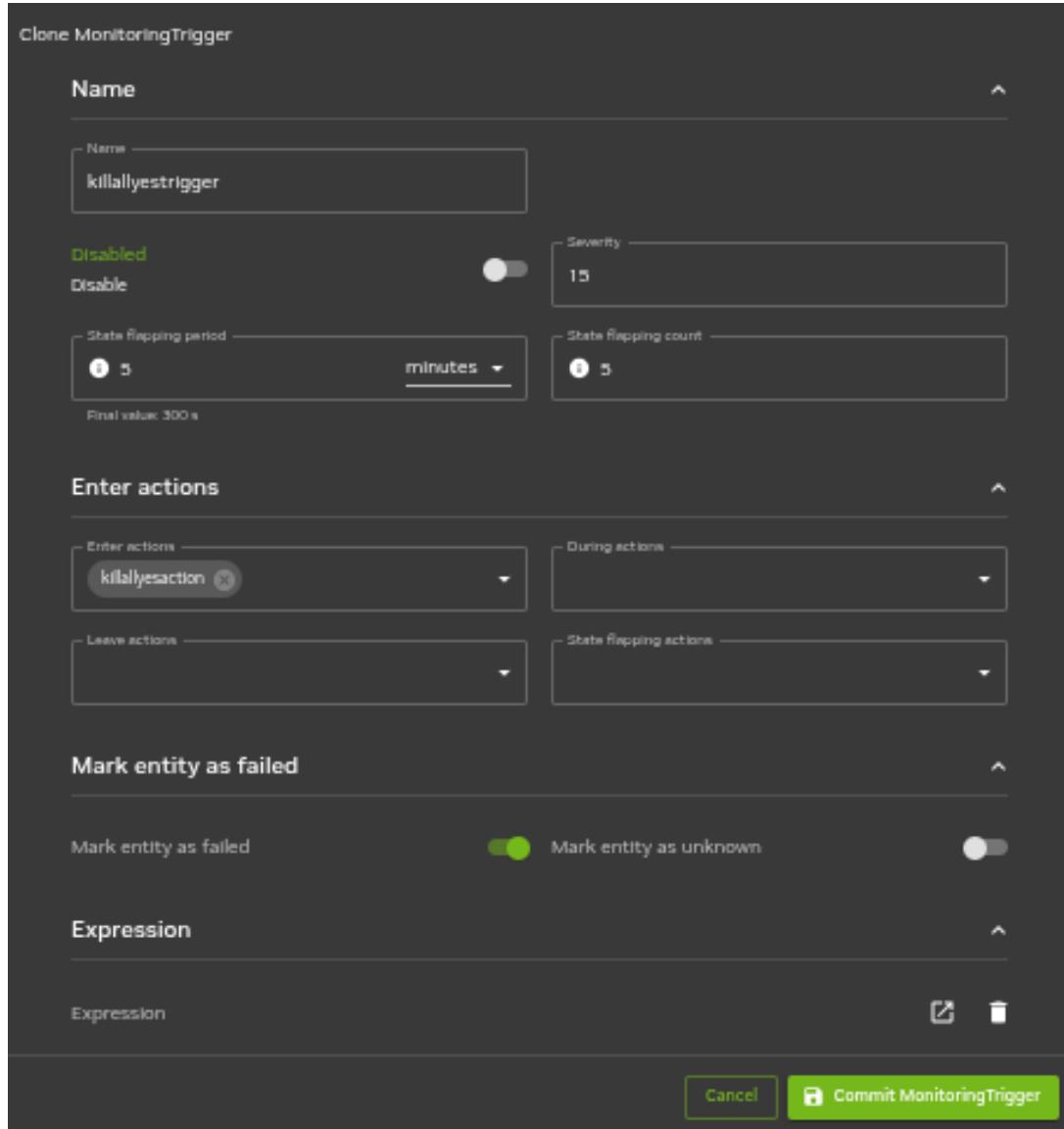


Figure 10.3: Base View Monitoring Configuration: Setting A Trigger

- A name is set for the trigger. The name can be arbitrary, and `killallyestrigger` is used in this example.

- The trigger is enabled (that is: the Disabled toggle is not enabled).
- The Enter actions field is filled with the `killallyesaction`, which is the action defined earlier.
- The trigger is saved by clicking on the Commit MonitoringTrigger button.
- the trigger can be set to run an action script if the sample state crosses over into a state that meets the trigger condition. That is, Enter actions is configured for a particular condition.

The condition under which the Enter actions action script is run in the example, can simply be when CPUUser on the head node is above 50. Such a condition can be set by setting an expression in a subwindow. The subwindow to do this is opened with the Expression box icon seen at the bottom of the screen in figure 10.3 Clicking the button brings up the Monitoring Expression subwindow (figure 10.4):

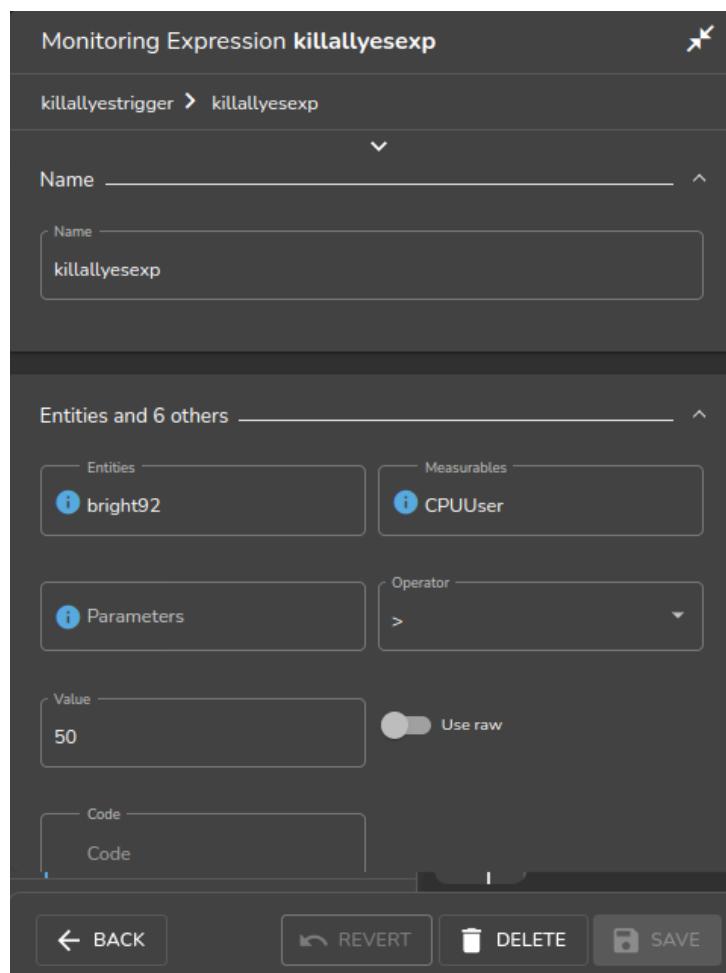


Figure 10.4: Base View Monitoring Configuration: Setting An Expression

Within the expression subwindow:

- A name is set for the expression. The name can be arbitrary, and `killallyesexp` is used for Name in this example.
- An entity is set. In this case, the entity being monitored is the head node. If the head node is called `basecm11` in this example, then `basecm11` is the value set for Entities. An entity is often simply a device, but it can be any object that CMDaemon stores.
- A measurable is set. In this case, Measurables is set to CPUUser.

- An operator and threshold value are set. In this case `>`, which is the greater than operator, and 50 which is a significant amount of CPUUser time in jiffies/s, are set for Operator and Value.

After saving the configuration, the `killallyesexp` expression evaluates the data being sampled for the `killallyestrigger` trigger. If the expression is TRUE, then the trigger launches the `killallyesaction` action.

### The Result

In the preceding section, an action was added, and a trigger was set up with a monitoring expression.

With a default installation on a newly installed cluster, the measurement of CPUUser is done every 120s (the period can be modified in the Data Producer window of Base View, as seen in figure 10.10). The basic example configured with the defaults thus monitors if CPUUser on the head node has crossed the bound of 50 jiffies/s every 120s.

If CPUUser is found to have entered—that is: crossed over from below the value and gone into the zone beyond 50 jiffies/s—then the `killallyesexp` expression notices that. Then, the trigger it is configured for, `killallyestrigger` trigger, runs the `killallyesaction` action, which runs the `killallyes` script. The `killallyes` script kills all the running yes processes. Assuming the system is trivially loaded apart from these yes processes, the CPUUser metric value then drops to below 50 jiffies/s.

To clarify what “found to have entered” means in the previous paragraph:

After an Enter trigger condition has been met for a sample, the first sample immediately after that does not ever meet the Enter trigger condition, because an Enter threshold crossing condition requires the previous sample to be below the threshold.

The second sample can only launch an action if the Enter trigger condition is met and if the preceding sample is below the threshold.

Other non-yes CPU-intensive processes running on the head node can also trigger the `killallyes` script. Since the script only kills yes processes, leaving any non-yes processes alone, it would in such a case run unnecessarily. This is a deficiency due to the contrived and simple nature of the basic example which is being illustrated here. In a production case the action script is expected to have a more sophisticated design.

At this point, having gone through section 10.1, the reader is expected to have a rough idea of how monitoring, triggers, trigger conditional expressions, and actions work. The following sections in this chapter cover the concepts and features for BCM monitoring in greater detail.

## 10.2 Monitoring Concepts And Definitions

A discussion of the concepts of monitoring, along with definitions of terms used, is appropriate at this point. The features of the monitoring system in BCM covered later on in this chapter will then be understood more clearly.

### 10.2.1 Measurables

Measurables are measurements (sample values) that are obtained via data producers (section 10.2.10) in CMDaemon’s monitoring system. The measurements can be made for nodes, head nodes, other devices, or other *entities*.

#### Types Of Measurables

Measurables can be:

- *enummetrics*: measurements with a small number of states. The states can be pre-defined, or user-defined. Further details on enummetrics are given in section 10.2.2.
- *metrics*: measurements with number values, and no data, as possible values. For example, values such as: -13113143234.5, 24, 9234131299. Further details on metrics are given in section 10.2.3.

- *health checks*: measurements with the states PASS, FAIL, and UNKNOWN as possible states, and no data as another possible state, when none of the other states are set. Further details on health checks are given in section 10.2.4.

### no data And Measurables

If no measurements are carried out, but a sample value needs to be saved, then the sample value is set to no data for a measurable. This is a defined value, not a null data value. metrics and enummetrics can therefore also take the no data value.

### Entities And Measurables

An entity is a concept introduced in BCM version 8.0.

Normally, a device, or a category or some similar grouping is a convenient idea to keep in mind as an entity, for concreteness.

The default entities in a new installation of BCM are the following:

```
device category partition[base] softwareimages
```

However, more generally, an entity can be an object from the following modes of cmsh:

```
category cloud configurationoverlay device edgesite etcd fspart group jobqueue jobs
kubernetes network nodegroup partition profile rack softwareimage user
```

For example, a software image object that is to be provisioned to a node is an entity, with some of the possible attributes of the entity being the name, kernelversion, creationtime, or locked attributes of the image:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "softwareimage use default-image; show"
Parameter          Value
-----
Creation time      Thu, 08 Jun 2017 18:15:13 CEST
Enable SOL         no
Kernel modules     <44 in submode>
Kernel parameters
Kernel version    3.10.0-327.3.1.el7.x86_64
Locked             no
Name               default-image
...
```

Because measurements can be carried out on such a variety of entities, it means that the monitoring and conditional actions that can be carried out on a BCM cluster can be very diverse. This makes entities a powerful and versatile concept in BCM's monitoring system for managing clusters.

### Listing Measurables Used By An Entity

In cmsh, for an entity, such as a device within device mode, a list of the measurables used by that device can be viewed with the `measurables` command.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% measurables node001
Type      Name           Parameter  Class      Producer
-----
Enum      DeviceStatus   Internal   DeviceState
HealthCheck ManagedServicesOk Internal   CMDDaemonState
HealthCheck defaultgateway Network   defaultgateway
HealthCheck diskSpace    Disk      diskSpace
HealthCheck dmesg        OS       dmesg
...
...
```

The subsets of these measurables—enummetrics, metrics, and health checks—can be listed with the `enummetrics` (section 10.2.2), `metrics` (section 10.2.3), or `healthchecks` (section 10.2.4) command.

In Base View, all the entities that are using health checks can be viewed via the navigation path:

Monitoring > All Health Checks (figure 10.22 section 10.4.7)

### **Listing Entities That Use A Measurable**

The entities using a specific measurable can be listed with the `usage` command:

#### **Example**

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]# usage nfs_v3_server_total
Measurable      Count  Entities
-----
nfs_v3_server_total  1      basecm11
```

If the number of measurables is too large to view on the screen:

#### **Example**

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]# usage devicestatus
Measurable      Count  Entities
-----
DeviceStatus    21      node001,node002,node003,node004,node005,node006,node007,node008,node009,node010+
```

then the `-v` option can be used to list the entities over multiple lines:

#### **Example**

```
basecm11->monitoring->measurable]# usage -v devicestatus
Measurable      Count  Entities
-----
DeviceStatus    21      node001,node002,node003,node004,node005,node006,node007,node008,node009,node010,
                      node011,node012,node013,node014,node015,node016,node017,node018,node019,node020,
                      basecm11
```

### **Listing Measurables From monitoring Mode**

Similarly, under monitoring mode, within the measurable submode, the list of measurable objects that can be used can be viewed with a `list` command:

#### **Example**

```
[basecm11->monitoring]# measurable list
Type      Name (key)      Parameter  Class          Producer
-----
Enum      DeviceStatus      Internal   DeviceState
HealthCheck ManagedServicesOk  Internal   CMDaemonState
HealthCheck Mon::Storage     Internal   Internal/Monitoring/Storage MonitoringSystem
HealthCheck chrootprocess    OS        chrootprocess
HealthCheck cmsh             Internal   cmsh
...
...
```

The subsets of these measurables—enummetrics, metrics, and health checks—can be listed with: `list enum` (section 10.2.2), `list metric` (section 10.2.3), or `list healthcheck` (section 10.2.4).

In Base View, the equivalent to listing the measurables can be carried out via the navigation path:

Monitoring > Measurables (figure 10.11, section 10.4.2)

### Viewing Parameters For A Particular Measurable From monitoring Mode

Within the measurable submode, parameters for a particular measurable can be viewed with the show command for that particular measurable:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]% use devicestatus
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable[DeviceStatus]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Class              Internal
Consolidator      none
Description        The device status
Disabled           no (DeviceState)
Maximal age        0s (DeviceState)
Maximal samples   4,096 (DeviceState)
Name               DeviceStatus
Parameter
Producer           DeviceState
Revision
Type               Enum
```

#### 10.2.2 Enummetrics

An *enummetric* is a measurable for an entity that can only take a limited set of values. At the time of writing of this section (August 2024), DeviceStatus and wlm\_slurm\_state are the only enummetrics. This may change in future versions of BCM.

The full list of possible values for the enummetric DeviceStatus is:

up, down, closed, installing, installer\_failed, installer\_rebooting, installer\_callinginit, installer\_unreachable, installer\_burning, burning, unknown, opening, going\_down, pending, and no data.

The full list of possible values for the enummetric wlm\_slurm\_state is:

allocated, completing, down, drain, draining, fail, failing, idle, maint, and mixed.

The enummetrics available for use can be listed from within the measurable submode of the monitoring mode:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]% list enum
Type    Name (key)          Parameter          Class      Producer
-----  -----
Enum    DeviceStatus        -                  Internal   DeviceState
Enum    wlm_slurm_state     -                  Workload   slurm-state-count
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]%
```

The list of enummetrics that is configured to be used by an entity, such as a device, can be viewed with the enummetrics command for that entity:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% enummetrics node001
Type    Name          Parameter          Class      Producer
-----  -----
Enum    DeviceStatus -                  Internal   DeviceState
[basecm11->device]%
```

The states that the entity has been through can be viewed with a `dumpmonitoringdata` command (section 10.6.4):

### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % dumpmonitoringdata -99d now devicestatus node001
Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
2017/07/03 16:07:00.001    down
2017/07/03 16:09:00.001    installing
2017/07/03 16:09:29.655    no data
2017/07/03 16:11:00        up
2017/07/12 16:05:00        up
```

The parameters of an enummetric such as `devicestatus` can be viewed and set from monitoring mode, from within the `measurable` submode (page 543).

### 10.2.3 Metrics

A *metric* for an entity is typically a numeric value for an entity. The value can have units associated with it.

In the basic example of section 10.1, the metric value considered was `CPUUser`, measured at the default regular time intervals of 120s.

The value can also be defined as `no data`. `no data` is substituted for a null value when there is no response for a sample. `no data` is not a null value once it has been set. This means that there are no null values stored for monitored data.

Other examples for metrics are:

- `LoadOne` (value is a number, for example: 1.23)
- `WriteTime` (value in ms/s, for example: 5 ms/s)
- `MemoryFree` (value in readable units, for example: 930 MiB, or 10.0 GiB)

A metric can be a built-in, which means it comes with BCM as integrated code within CMDaemon. This is based on c++ and is therefore much faster than the alternative. The alternative is that a metric can be a standalone script, which means that it typically can be modified more easily by an administrator with scripting skills.

The word metric is often used to mean the script or object associated with a metric as well as a metric value. The context makes it clear which is meant.

A list of metrics in use can be viewed in `cmsh` using the `list` command from monitoring mode:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring] % measurable list metric
Type      Name (key)          Parameter      Class      Producer
-----
Metric    AlertLevel           count         Internal    AlertLevel
Metric    AlertLevel           maximum       Internal    AlertLevel
...

```

In Base View, the metrics can be viewed with the navigation path:

`Monitoring > Measurables`      (figure 10.11, section 10.4.2)

A list of metrics in use by an entity can be viewed in `cmsh` using the `metrics` command for that entity. For example, for the entity `node001` in mode `devices`:

### Example

```
[basecm11->devices]# metrics node001
Type      Name           Parameter      Class      Producer
-----
Metric    AlertLevel     count         Internal   AlertLevel
Metric    AlertLevel     maximum       Internal   AlertLevel
...

```

The parameters of a metric such as AlertLevel:count can be viewed and set from monitoring mode, from within the measurable submode, just as for the other measurables:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]# use alertlevel:count
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable[AlertLevel:count]]# show
Parameter          Value
-----
Class              Internal
Consolidator      default
Cumulative        no
Description        Number of active triggers
Disabled          no
Maximal age       0s
Maximal samples   0
Maximum            0
Minimum            0
Name               AlertLevel
Parameter          count
Producer           AlertLevel
Revision
Type               Metric
```

The equivalent Base View navigation path to edit the parameters is:

Monitoring > Measurables>Edit

#### 10.2.4 Health Check

A *health check* value is a response to a check carried out on an entity. The response indicates the health of the entity for the check that is being carried out.

For example, the ssh2node health check, which runs on the head node to check if the SSH port 22 passwordless access to regular nodes is reachable.

A health check is run at a regular time interval, and can have the following possible values:

- **PASS:** The health check succeeded. For example, if ssh2node is successful, which suggests that an ssh connection to the node is fine.
- **FAIL:** The health check failed. For example, if ssh2node was rejected. This suggests that the ssh connection to the node is failing.
- **UNKNOWN:** The health check did not succeed, did not fail, but had an unknown response. For example, if ssh2node has a timeout, for example due to routing or other issues. It means that it is unknown whether the connection is fine or failing, because the response that came in is unknown. Typically the administrator should investigate this further.

- `no data`: The health check did not run, so no data was obtained. For example, if `ssh2node` is disabled for some time, then no data values were obtained during this time. Since the health check is disabled, it means that `no data` cannot be recorded during this time by `ssh2node`. However, because having a `no data` value in the monitoring data for this situation is a good idea—explicitly knowing about having no data is helpful for various reasons—then `no data` values can be set, by CMDaemon, for samples that have no data.

Other examples of health checks are:

- `diskspace`: check if the hard drive still has enough space left on it
- `mounts`: check mounts are accessible
- `mysql`: check status and configuration of MySQL is correct
- `hraid`: check RAID and health status for certain HP RAID hardware

These and others can be seen in the directory: `/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks`.

### **Health Checks**

In Base View, the health checks that can be configured for all entities can be seen with the navigation path:

Monitoring > Measurables (figure 10.11, section 10.4.2)

Options can be set for each health check by clicking through via the `Edit` button.

### **All Configured Health Checks**

In Base View, health checks that have been configured for all entities can be seen with the navigation path:

Monitoring > All Health Checks (section 10.4.7)

The view can be filtered per column.

### **Configured Health Checks For An Entity**

An overview can be seen for a particular entity `<entity>` via the navigation path:

Monitoring > Health status>`<entity>`>Show

### **Severity Levels For Health Checks, And Overriding Them**

A health check has a settable severity (section 10.2.7) associated with its response defined in the trigger options.

For standalone healthchecks, the severity level defined by the script overrides the value in the trigger. For example, `FAIL 40` or `UNKNOWN 10`, as is set in the `hraid` health check (`/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/hraid`).

Severity values are processed for the `AlertLevel` metric (section 10.2.8) when the health check runs.

### **Default Templates For Health Checks And Triggers**

A health check can also launch an action based on any of the response values.

Monitoring triggers have the following default templates:

- `Failing health checks`: With a default severity of 15
- `Passing health checks`: With a default severity of 0

- Unknown health checks: With a default severity of 10

The severity level is one of the default parameters for the corresponding health checks. These defaults can also be modified to allow an action to be launched when the trigger runs, for example, sending an e-mail notification whenever any health check fails.

With the default templates, the actions are by default set for all health checks. However, specific actions that are launched for a particular measurable instead of for all health checks can be configured. To do this, one of the templates can be cloned, the trigger can be renamed, and an action can be set to launch from a trigger. The reader should be able to recognize that in the basic example of section 10.1 this is how, when the metric measurable CPUUser crosses 50 jiffies/s, the killallyestrigger is activated, and the killallyes action script is run.

### 10.2.5 Trigger

A *trigger* is a threshold condition set for a sampled measurable. When a sample crosses the threshold condition, it enters or leaves a zone that is demarcated by the threshold.

A trigger zone also has a settable severity (section 10.2.7) associated with it. This value is processed for the AlertLevel metric (section 10.2.8) when an action is triggered by a threshold event.

Triggers are discussed further in section 10.4.5.

### 10.2.6 Action

In the basic example of section 10.1, the action script is the script added to the monitoring system to kill all yes processes. The script runs when the condition is met that CPUUser crosses 50 jiffies/s.

An *action* is a standalone script or a built-in command that is executed when a condition is met, and has exit code 0 on success. The condition that is met can be:

- A FAIL, PASS, UNKNOWN, or no data from a health check
- A trigger condition. This can be a FAIL or PASS for conditional expressions.
- State flapping (section 10.2.9).

The actions that can be run are listed from within the action submode of the monitoring mode.

#### Example

[basecm11->monitoring->action] % list			
Type	Name (key)	Run on	Action
<hr/>			
Drain	Drain	Active	Drain node from all WLM
Email	Send e-mail	Active	Send e-mail
Event	Event	Active	Send an event to users with connected client
ImageUpdate	ImageUpdate	Active	Update the image on the node
PowerOff	PowerOff	Active	Power off a device
PowerOn	PowerOn	Active	Power on a device
PowerReset	PowerReset	Active	Power reset a device
Reboot	Reboot	Node	Reboot a node
Script	killallyesaction	Node	/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions/killallyes
Script	killprocess	Node	/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions/killprocess.pl
Script	remount	Node	/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions/remount
Script	testaction	Node	/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions/testaction
Shutdown	Shutdown	Node	Shutdown a node
Undrain	Undrain	Active	Undrain node from all WLM

The Base View equivalent is accessible via the navigation path:

Monitoring &gt; Actions

(figure 10.17, section 10.4.4)

Configuration of monitoring actions is discussed further in section 10.4.4.

### 10.2.7 Severity

*Severity* is a positive integer value that the administrator assigns for a trigger. It takes one of these 6 suggested values:

Value	Name	Icon	Description
0	debug		debug message
0	info		informational message
10	notice		normal, but significant, condition
20	warning		warning conditions
30	error		error conditions
40	alert		action must be taken immediately

Severity levels are used in the `AlertLevel` metric (section 10.2.8). They can also be set by the administrator in the return values of health check scripts (section 10.2.4).

By default the severity value is 15 for a health check FAIL response, 10 for a health check UNKNOWN response, and 0 for a health check PASS response (section 10.2.4).

### 10.2.8 AlertLevel

`AlertLevel` is a special metric. It is sampled and re-calculated when an event with an associated `Severity` (section 10.2.7) occurs. There are three types of `AlertLevel` metrics:

1. `AlertLevel (count)`: the *number* of events that are at `notice` level and *higher*. The aim of this metric is to alert the administrator to the *number* of issues.
2. `AlertLevel (max)`: simply the maximum severity of the latest value of all the events. The aim of this metric is to alert the administrator to the severity of the *most important* issue.
3. `AlertLevel (sum)`: the *sum* of the latest severity values of all the events. The aim of this metric is to alert the administrator to the *overall severity* of issues.

### 10.2.9 Flapping

*Flapping*, or *State Flapping*, is when a measurable trigger is detecting changes (section 10.4.5) that are too frequent. That is, the measurable goes in and out of the zone too many times over a number of samples. In the basic example of section 10.1, if the `CPUUser` metric crossed the threshold zone 5 times within 5 minutes (the default values for flap detection), then it would by default be detected as flapping. A flapping alert would then be recorded in the event viewer, and a flapping action could also be launched if configured to do so.

### 10.2.10 Data Producer

A data producer produces measurables. Sometimes it can be a group of measurables, as in the measurables provided by a data producer that is being used:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]# list -f name:25,producer:15 | grep ProcStat
BlockedProcesses          ProcStat
CPUGuest                  ProcStat
CPUIdle                   ProcStat
```

CPUIrq	ProcStat
CPUNice	ProcStat
CPUSoftIrq	ProcStat
CPUSteal	ProcStat
CPUSystem	ProcStat
CPUUser	ProcStat
CPUWait	ProcStat
CtxtSwitches	ProcStat
Forks	ProcStat
Interrupts	ProcStat
RunningProcesses	ProcStat

Sometimes it may just be one measurable, as provided by a used data producer:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]# list -f name:25,producer:15 | grep ssh2node
ssh2node          ssh2node
```

It can even have no measurables, and just be an empty container for measurables that are not in use yet.

In cmsh all possible data producers (used and unused) can be listed as follows:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]# list
```

The equivalent in Base View is via the navigation path:

Monitoring > Data Producers

The data producers configured for an entity, such as a head node basecm11, can be listed with the monitoringproducers command:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]# monitoringproducers
Type           Name        Arguments   Measurables Node execution filters
-----        -----
AlertLevel     AlertLevel
CMDaemonState CMDaemonState
ClusterTotal   ClusterTotal
Collection    NFS
Collection    sdt
DeviceState   DeviceState
HealthCheckScript chrootprocess
HealthCheckScript cmsh
HealthCheckScript defaultgateway
HealthCheckScript diskspace
HealthCheckScript dmesg
HealthCheckScript exports
HealthCheckScript failedprejob
HealthCheckScript hardware-profile
HealthCheckScript ib
HealthCheckScript interfaces
HealthCheckScript ldap
```

HealthCheckScript	lustre	1 / 231	<0 in submode>
HealthCheckScript	mounts	1 / 231	<0 in submode>
HealthCheckScript	mysql	1 / 231	<1 in submode>
HealthCheckScript	ntp	1 / 231	<0 in submode>
HealthCheckScript	oomkiller	1 / 231	<0 in submode>
HealthCheckScript	opalinkhealth	1 / 231	<0 in submode>
HealthCheckScript	rogueprocess	1 / 231	<1 in submode>
HealthCheckScript	schedulers	1 / 231	<0 in submode>
HealthCheckScript	smart	1 / 231	<0 in submode>
HealthCheckScript	ssh2node	1 / 231	<1 in submode>
Job	JobSampler	0 / 231	<1 in submode>
JobQueue	JobQueueSampler	7 / 231	<1 in submode>
MonitoringSystem	MonitoringSystem	36 / 231	<1 in submode>
ProcMemInfo	ProcMemInfo	10 / 231	<0 in submode>
ProcMount	ProcMounts	2 / 231	<0 in submode>
ProcNetDev	ProcNetDev	18 / 231	<0 in submode>
ProcNetSnmp	ProcNetSnmp	21 / 231	<0 in submode>
ProcPidStat	ProcPidStat	5 / 231	<0 in submode>
ProcStat	ProcStat	14 / 231	<0 in submode>
ProcVMStat	ProcVMStat	6 / 231	<0 in submode>
Smart	SmartDisk	0 / 231	<0 in submode>
SysBlockStat	SysBlockStat	20 / 231	<0 in submode>
SysInfo	SysInfo	5 / 231	<0 in submode>
UserCount	UserCount	3 / 231	<1 in submode>

The displayed data producers are the ones configured for the entity, even if there are no measurables used by the entity.

Data producer configuration in Base View is discussed further in section 10.4.1.

### Access Control For Monitoring Data

**Access control to data producers:** An access control setting for a data producer determines who can plot (via the measurables monitoring interface used by Base View and the User Portal), or view data (using the text-based interface of cmsh or pythoncm) from the measurables generated by a data producer. Thus, for example, the charts in the user portal (section 10.8) can be restricted according to the data producer that generates them.

There are three possible settings for access control for data producers. If the data producer is set to:

1. **Public:** then it means any user can, by default, plot/view data derived from that data producer. This is because by default a user has the token PLOT\_TOKEN in their profile.
2. **Private:** then it means that a non-root user cannot, by default, plot/view data derived from that data producer. This is because, by default, non-root users do not have the token PRIVATE\_MONITORING\_TOKEN in their profile. If that token is in the profile, then the user has an elevated privilege, and can plot/view data, just like root.
3. **Individual:** then it means that a non-root user, by default, can plot/view the data only if the job associated with that data was run by that same non-root user. More verbosely, with the default user settings: the user who ran a job for which job measurables are produced by a data producer, must be the same as the user that wants to plot/view the data, or else the data cannot be plotted/viewed.<sup>1</sup> The exception to this is, as already suggested, if the user that wants to plot/view

<sup>1</sup>Even more verbosely: Individual access control is meant for job-based measurables, and works like this:  
All monitoring data is stored per (entity, measurable) pair.

If the measurable has an access control value of individual, then a user check is performed. If the login name is the same as the user that owns the entity, then data can be plotted/viewed. If the user check does not match, then no data is returned.

Jobs—which are entities—are owned by the user that ran the job. Similarly Prometheus (entities) can have a ‘user=“Alice”’ label set, to define ownership. No other entity managed by BCM is owned by a user.

For all unowned entities, individual access is equivalent to private access.

the data is root, or has a user profile with the token PRIVATE\_MONITORING\_TOKEN. In that case the data can be plotted/viewed.

On a regular BCM cluster, only a few low level data producers are set to private. An administrator can decide to set a data producer access control value to one of the three possible values, by using the setup submode of monitoring mode:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% monitoring setup
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% use mounts
[basecm11->... [mounts]]% set access private
[basecm11->...* [mounts*]]% commit
```

If a data producer is newly added, then by default its access control value is set to public. Changing this to private at a later time means that access to past and future data values from that data producer are affected by the private setting. If access is changed once more back to public, then it means that access to past and future data values are once again viewable and plottable by all users.

The current settings for access control for the data producers can be seen with:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "monitoring setup; list -f name:40,access"
name (key)                                access
-----
AggregateNode                            Public
AlertLevel                               Public
BigDataTools                             Public
CMDaemonState                           Public
Cassandra                               Public
ClusterTotal                            Public
...
...
```

**Access control to measurables:** Measurables can also have access controls.

Access control for measurables is by default inherited from the data producer that generates it. It can be overwritten:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% monitoring measurable
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]% use loadone
[basecm11->... [LoadOne]]% get access
Public (SysInfo)
[basecm11->... [LoadOne]]% set access private
[basecm11->...* [LoadOne*]]% commit
```

A measurable can thus take an access control value of Public, Private, or Individual. It can also explicitly be set to a value of inherit, which sets it to the value of its data producer. The inheritance is indicated in cmsh by enclosing the parent data producer in parentheses, as shown in the preceding example.

The current settings for access control for the measurables can be seen with:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "monitoring measurable; list -f name:40,access"
name (key) access
-----
AlertLevel Public
AlertLevel Public
AlertLevel Public
AvgJobDuration Public
BlockedProcesses Public
...
...
```

### 10.2.11 Conceptual Overview: The Main Monitoring Interfaces Of Base View

Base View, besides having the default settings mode, has some other display modes and logging view modes that can be selected via the 11 icons in the top right corner of the Base View standard display (figure 10.5):

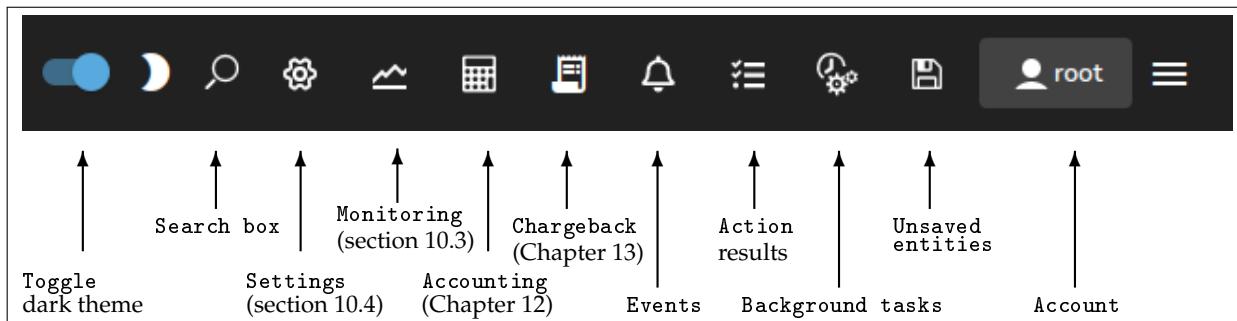


Figure 10.5: Base View: Top Right Corner Icons

The 11 icons are described from left to right next:

1. `Toggle dark theme` option allows the display of Base View to be toggled to a darker theme.
2. `Search box` allows resource to be searched for, with predictive text suggestions.
3. `Settings` mode is active when Base View first starts up.

The `Settings` mode has a navigation panel to the left of it, showing the resources of the cluster as expandable items. One of the resources is `Monitoring`. This resource should not be confused with the Base View `Monitoring` mode, which is launched by the next icon in figure 10.5. The `Monitoring` resource is about configuring how items are monitored and how their data values are collected, and is discussed further in section 10.4.

4. The `Monitoring` mode allows visualization of the data values collected according to the specifications of the Base View `Monitoring` resource. The visualization allows graphs to be configured, and is discussed further in section 10.3.
5. The `Accounting` mode typically allows visualization of job resources used by users, although it can be used to visualize job resources used by other entities that are used as a classifier. This is helpful tracking resources consumed by users. Job accounting is discussed further in Chapter 12.
6. The `Chargeback` mode allows the monitoring of resources requested over a period for jobs run by selected groups (Chapter 13).
7. The `Events` icon allows logs of events (section 10.10) to be viewed.
8. The `Action results` icon allows the logs of the results of actions to be viewed.
9. The `Background tasks` icon allows background tasks to be viewed.

10. The `Unsaved entities` icon allows entities that have not yet been saved to be viewed.
11. The `Account handling` icon allows account settings to be managed for the Base View user.

The monitoring aspects of the first two icons are discussed in greater detail in the sections indicated.

## 10.3 Monitoring Visualization With Base View

The `Monitoring` icon in the menu bar of Base View (item 4 in figure 10.5) launches an intuitive visualization tool that is the main GUI tool for getting a feel of the system's behavior over periods of time. With this tool the measurements and states of the system can be viewed as resizable and overlayable graphs. The graphs can be zoomed in and out on over a particular time period, the graphs can be laid out on top of each other or the graphs can be laid out as a giant grid. The graph scale settings can also be adjusted, stored and recalled for use the next time a session is started.

An alternative to Base View's visualization tool is the command-line `cmsh`. This has the same functionality in the sense that data values can be selected and studied according to configurable parameters with it (section 10.6). The data values can even be plotted and displayed on graphs with `cmsh` with the help of unix pipes and graphing utilities. However, the strengths of monitoring with `cmsh` lie elsewhere: `cmsh` is more useful for scripting or for examining pre-decided metrics and health checks rather than a quick visual check over the system. This is because `cmsh` needs more familiarity with options, and is designed for text output instead of interactive graphs. Monitoring with `cmsh` is discussed in sections 10.5 and 10.6.

Visualization of monitoring graphs with Base View is now described.

### 10.3.1 The Monitoring Window

If the `Monitoring` icon is clicked on from the menu bar of Base View (figure 10.5), then a monitoring window for visualizing data opens up. By default, this displays a dashboard called `Critical Services` which has two plots panels. The plot panels are graph axes with a time scale going back some time on the *x*-axis, and with a *y*-axis that allows measurable data values plotted against time (figure 10.6).

By default, the data values that are plotted are for the `ManagedServicesOK` health check. The first panel displays the plots for the head node, the second panel displays the plots for all the regular nodes in the default category..

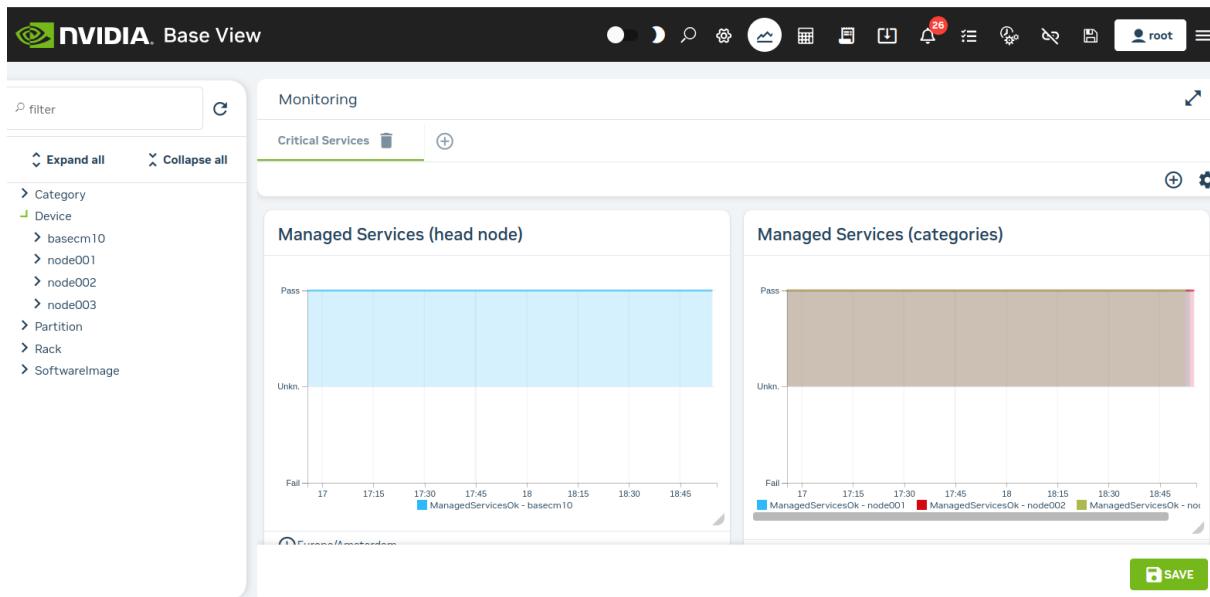


Figure 10.6: Base View Monitoring Window: Default Plot Panels

### Finding And Selecting The Measurable To Be Plotted

To plot measurables, the entity which it belongs to should be selected from the navigation menu on the left-hand side. Once that has been selected, a class for that measurable can be chosen, and then the measurable itself can be selected. For example, to plot the measurable CPUUser for a head node basecm11, it can be selected from the navigation navigation path:

*Menu bar > Monitoring icon > Device > basecm11 > CPU > CPUUser*

Sometimes, finding a measurable is easier if the **Expand all** widget is used, together with the **Search** box. Typing in CPUUser in the search box then shows all the measurables with that text (figure 10.7). The search is case-insensitive.

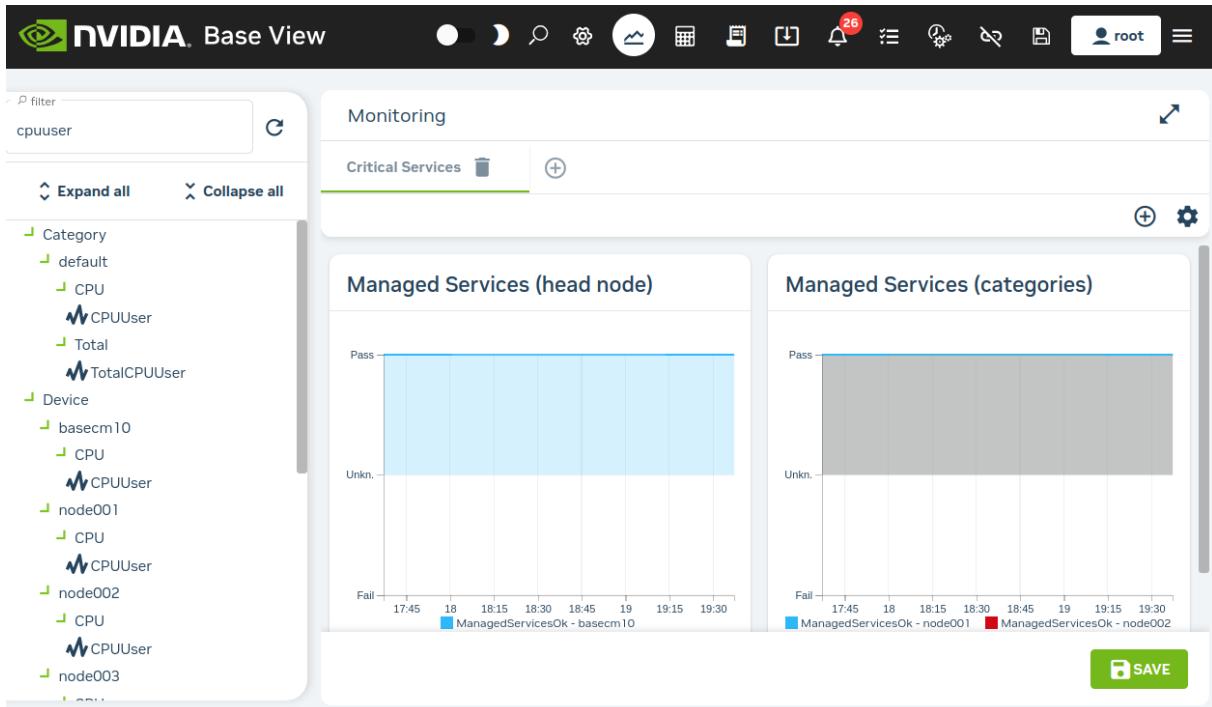


Figure 10.7: Base View Monitoring Window: Search Box In Navigation

The search box can handle some simple regexes too, with `.` `*` and `|` taking their usual meaning:

#### Example

- `node001.*cpuuser`: select a measurable with a data path that starts with `node001` and ends with `cpuuser`, with 0 or more characters of any kind in between.
- `(node001|node002).*cpuuser`: as for preceding example, but including `node002` as an alternative to `node001`.

The `/` (forward slash) allows filtering according to the data path. It corresponds to the navigation depth in the tree hierarchy:

#### Example

- `node001/cpu/cpuuser`: search for a measurable with a data path that matches `node001/cpu/cpuuser`

### Plotting The Measurable

Once the measurable is selected, it can be drag-and-dropped into a plot panel. This causes the data values to be plotted.

When a measurable is plotted into a panel, two graph plots are displayed. The smaller, bottom plot, represents the polled value as a bar chart. The larger, upper plot, represents an interpolated line graph. Different kinds of interpolations can be set. To get a quick idea of the effect of different kinds of interpolations, <https://bl.ocks.org/mbostock/4342190> is an interactive overview that shows how they work on a small set of values.

The time axes can be expanded or shrunk using the mouse wheel in the graphing area of the plot panel. The resizing is carried out centered around the position of the mouse pointer.

## 10.4 Monitoring Configuration With Base View

This section is about the configuration of monitoring for measurables, and about setting up trigger actions.

If Base View is running in the standard Settings mode, which is the gear icon in figure 10.5, page 552, then selecting Monitoring from the navigation menu resources makes the following menu items available for managing or viewing:

- Data Producers (section 10.4.1)
- Measurables (section 10.4.2)
- Consolidators (section 10.4.3)
- Actions (section 10.4.4)
- Triggers (section 10.4.5)
- Health status (section 10.4.6)
- All Health checks (section 10.4.7)
- Standalone Monitored Entities (section 10.4.8)
- PromQL Queries (section 10.4.9)
- Resources (section 10.4.10)
- Types (section 10.4.11)

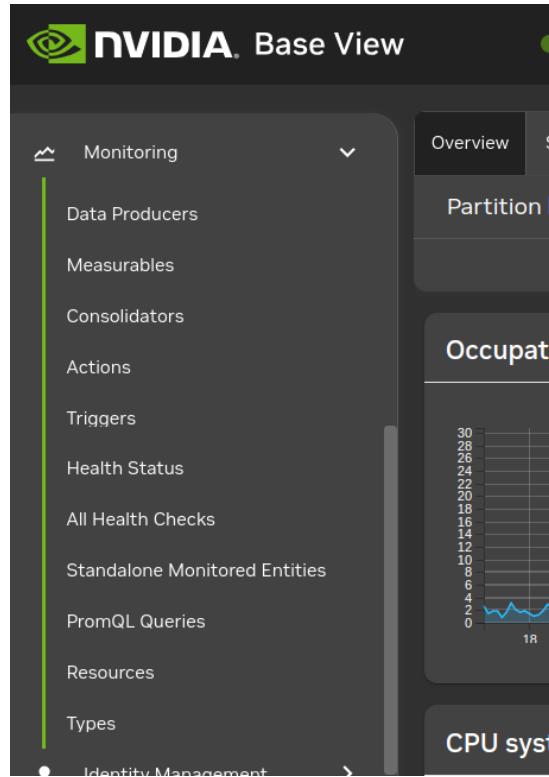


Figure 10.8: Base View Monitoring Configuration Settings

These settings (figure 10.8) are now discussed in detail.

#### 10.4.1 Monitoring Configuration: Data Producers

The navigation path:

Monitoring > Dataproducers

opens up the Monitoring Data Producer list screen, which lists all the data producers (figure 10.9).

Monitoring Data Producer list			
	NAME ↑	TYPE	
<input type="checkbox"/>	AggregateNode	Monitoring Data Producer Aggregate Node	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	AggregatePDU	Monitoring Data Producer Aggregate PDU	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	AlertLevel	Monitoring Data Producer Alert Level	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	CMDaemonState	Monitoring Data Producer CMDaemon State	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	ClusterTotal	Monitoring Data Producer Cluster Total	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	DeviceState	Monitoring Data Producer Device State	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	Docker	Monitoring Data Producer Single Line Health Check Script	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	DockerRegistry	Monitoring Data Producer Single Line Health Check Script	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	EC2SpotPrices	Monitoring Data Producer EC2 Spot Prices	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	Etcd	Monitoring Data Producer Single Line Health Check Script	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	EthernetSwitch	Monitoring Data Producer Ethernet Switch	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	FabricTotal	Monitoring Data Producer Fabric Total	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	GPI ISampler	Monitoring Data Producer GPU I	<input type="checkbox"/> ▾

Figure 10.9: Base View Monitoring Configuration Data Producers

Data producers are introduced in section 10.2.10.

Each data producer can have its settings edited within a subwindow. For example, the ProcStat data producer, which produces data for several measurables, including CPUUser, has the settings shown in figure 10.10:

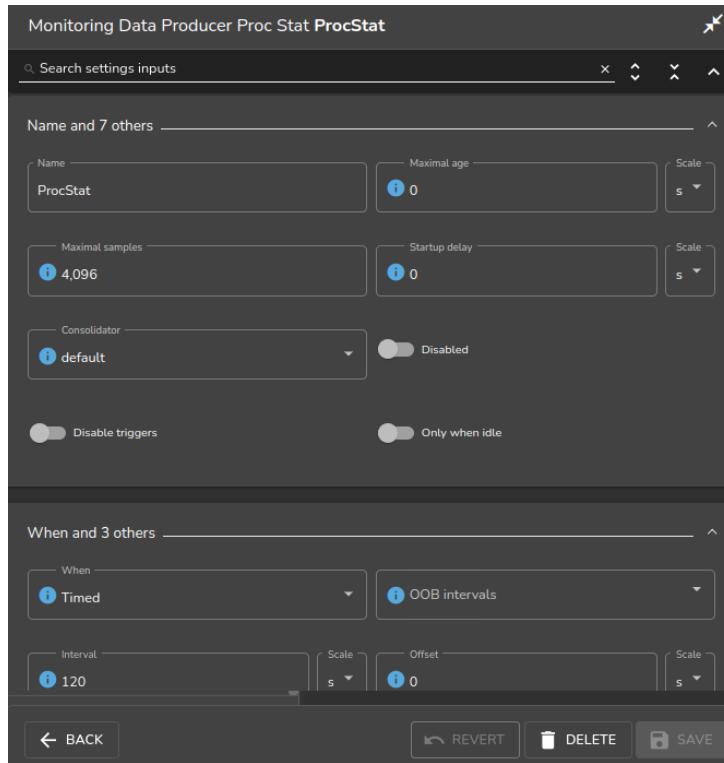


Figure 10.10: Base View Monitoring Configuration Data Producer: ProcStat

When the data producer takes samples to produce data, run length encoding (RLE) is used to compress the number of samples that are stored as data. Consolidation is carried out on the RLE samples. Consolidation in BCM means gathering several data values, and making one value from them over time periods. Consolidation is done as data values are gathered. The point at which data values are discarded, if ever, is thus not dependent on consolidation.

The data producer settings that are seen in the subwindow of figure 10.10 include the following:

- **Maximal samples:** the maximum number of RLE samples that are kept. If set to 0, then the number of samples is not considered.
- **Maximal Age:** the maximum age of RLE samples that are kept. If **Maximal Age** is set to 0 then the sample age is not considered.

With **Maximal samples** and **Maximal Age**, the first of the rules that is reached is the one that causes the exceeding RLE samples to be dropped.

Samples are kept forever if **Maximal samples** and **Maximal Age** are both set to 0. This is discouraged due to the risk of exceeding the available data storage space.

- **Interval:** the interval between sampling, in seconds.
- **Offset:** A time offset from start of sampling. Some sampling depends on other sampling to be carried out first. This is used, for example, by data producers that rely on sampling from other data producers. For example, the **AggregateNode** data producer, which has measurables such as **TotalCPUIdle** and **TotalMemoryFree**. The samples for **AggregateNode** depend upon the **ProcStat**

data producer, which produces the `CPUIdle` measurable; and the `ProcMemInfo` data producer, which produces the `MemoryFree` measurable.

- **Fuzzy offset:** a multiplier in the range from 0 to 1. It is multiplied against the sampling time interval to fix a maximum value for the time offset for when the sampling takes place. The actual offset used per node is spread out reasonably evenly within the range up to that maximum time offset.

For example, for a sampling time interval of 120s:

If the offset is 0, then there is no offset, and the sampling is attempted for all nodes at time instant when the interval restarts. This can lead to an overload at the time of sampling.

If, on the other hand, the offset is 0.25, then the sampling is done within a range offset from the time of sampling by a maximum of  $0.25 \times 120\text{s} = 30\text{s}$ . So, each node is sampled at a time that is offset by up to 30s from when the 120s interval restarts. From the time the change in value of the fuzzy offset starts working, the offset is set for each node. The instant at which sampling is carried out on a node then differs from the other nodes, even though each node still has an interval of 120s between sampling. An algorithm is used that tends to even out the spread of the instants at which sampling is carried out within the 30s range. The spreading of sampling has the effect of reducing the chance of overload at the time of sampling.

- **Consolidator:** By default, set to the `default` group. The `default` group consolidates (summarizes) the RLE samples over periods of an hour, a day, and a week. Consolidators are explained further in section 10.4.3.
- **Node execution filters:** A way to filter execution (restrict execution) of the data producer. It tells BCM where the data producer runs. If not set, then the data producer runs on all nodes managed by CMDaemon. Filters can be for nodes, types, overlays, resources, and categories.
- **Execution multiplexer:** A way to multiplex execution (have execution work elsewhere) for a data producer. It tells BCM about the entities that the data producer is sampling for. A data producer gathers data at the nodes defined by the node execution filter, and with multiplex execution the data producer gathers samples from other entities. These entities can be nodes, types, overlays, and resources. The entities from which it can sample are defined into groups called execution multiplexers. Execution multiplexers can thus be node multiplexers, type multiplexers, overlay multiplexers, or resource multiplexers.
- **When:** This has 4 possible values:
  1. **Timed:** Data producer is run at a periodic Interval. This is the default.
  2. **On demand:** Data producer is only run on demand, and not at a periodic Interval.
  3. **Out of band:** Data producer is only run on out of band connections.
  4. **On start:** Data producer is only run on start and not at a periodic Interval.
- **Only when idle:** By default a data producer runs regardless of how busy the nodes are. However, if the `Only when idle` setting is enabled, then the data producer runs only when the node is idle. Idle is a condition that is defined by the metric condition `LoadOne>1` (page 930).

#### 10.4.2 Monitoring Configuration: Measurables

The `Measurables` window lists the available measurables (figure 10.11):

Monitoring Measurable list				
	NAME ↑	TYPE	PARAMETER	TYPE CLASS
<input type="checkbox"/>	AlertLevel	Monitoring Measurable Metric	count	Internal 
<input type="checkbox"/>	AlertLevel	Monitoring Measurable Metric	maximum	Internal 
<input type="checkbox"/>	AlertLevel	Monitoring Measurable Metric	sum	Internal 
<input type="checkbox"/>	BlockedProcesses	Monitoring Measurable Metric		OS 
<input type="checkbox"/>	BufferMemory	Monitoring Measurable Metric		Memory 
<input type="checkbox"/>	BytesRecv	Monitoring Measurable Metric	eth0	Network 
<input type="checkbox"/>	BytesRecv	Monitoring Measurable Metric	eth1	Network 
<input type="checkbox"/>	BytesRecv	Monitoring Measurable Metric	ens3	Network 
<input type="checkbox"/>	BytesSent	Monitoring Measurable Metric	eth0	Network 
<input type="checkbox"/>	BytesSent	Monitoring Measurable Metric	eth1	Network 
<input type="checkbox"/>	BytesSent	Monitoring Measurable Metric	ens3	Network 
<input type="checkbox"/>	CPUGuest	Monitoring Measurable Metric		CPU 
<input type="checkbox"/>	CPUIdle	Monitoring Measurable Metric		CPU 
<input type="checkbox"/>	CPUIRQ	Monitoring Measurable Metric		CPU 
<input type="checkbox"/>	CPUNice	Monitoring Measurable Metric		CPU 
<input type="checkbox"/>	CPUSoftIRQ	Monitoring Measurable Metric		CPU 
<input type="checkbox"/>	CPUSteal	Monitoring Measurable Metric		CPU 

Figure 10.11: Base View Monitoring Configuration Measurables

There are many measurables, so using the search box in the menu bar (item 2 in list describing figure 10.5) can be handy.

From the measurables window, a subwindow can be opened with the Edit button for a measurable. This accesses the options for a particular measurable (figure 10.12):

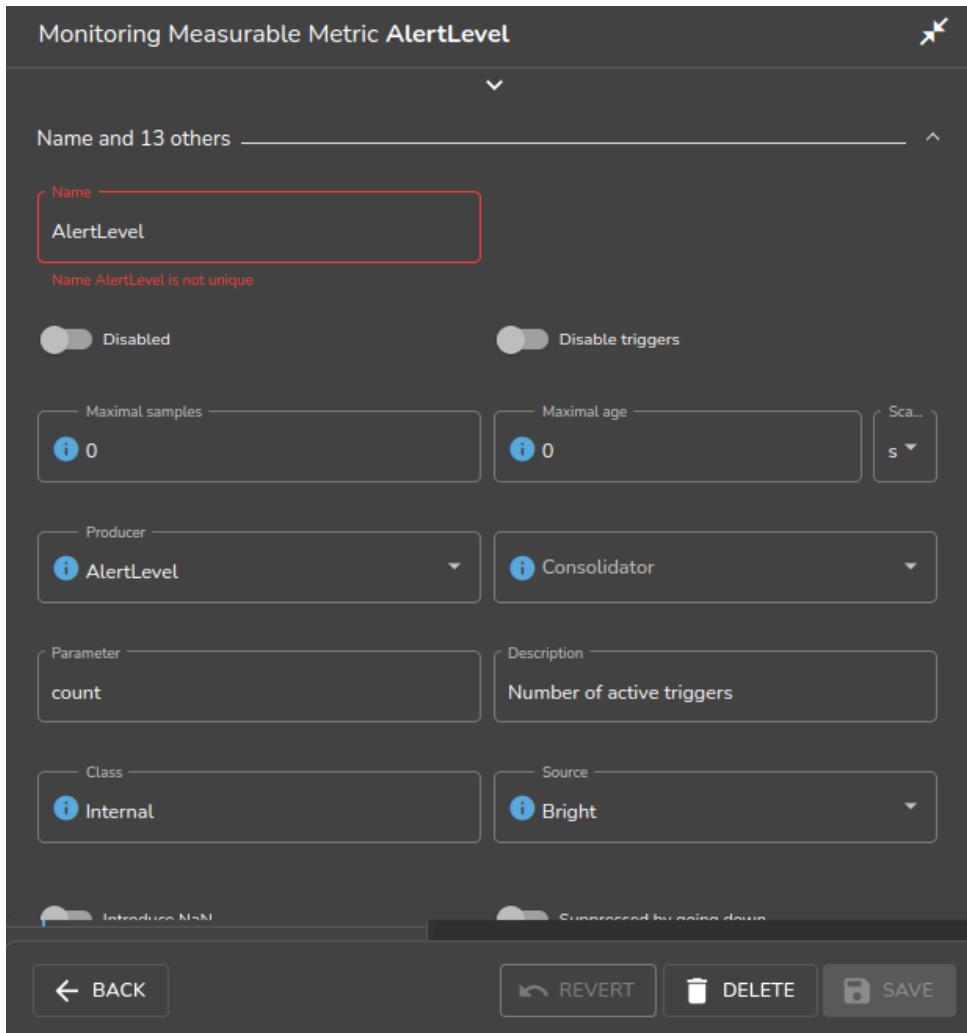


Figure 10.12: Base View Monitoring Configuration Measurables Options Subwindow

The options shown include the sampling options: Maximal age, Maximal samples, and Consolidator. The sampling options work as described for data producers (section 10.4.1).

Other options for a metric are setting the Maximum and Minimum values, the Unit used, and whether the metric is Cumulative.

If a metric is cumulative, then it is monotonic. Monotonic means that the metric only increments (is cumulative), as time passes. In other words, if the metric is plotted as a graph against time, with time on the  $x$ -axis, then the metric never descends. Normally the increments are from the time of boot onward, and the metric resets at boot. For example, the number of bytes received at an interface is cumulative, and resets at boot time.

Usually the cluster administrator is only interested in the differential value of the metric per sample interval. That is, the change in the value of the current sample, from its value in the preceding sample. For example, bytes/second, rather than total number of bytes up to that time from boot.

### 10.4.3 Monitoring Configuration: Consolidators

#### Introduction To Consolidators

The concept of consolidators is explained using simple ascii graphics in Appendix K, while the cmsh interface to the consolidators submode is discussed in section 10.5.2.

In this current section, the Base View interface to consolidators is discussed.

In Base View, the Monitoring Consolidator list window lists all consolidator groups (fig-

ure 10.13). There are two pre-existing consolidator groups: `default` and `none`.

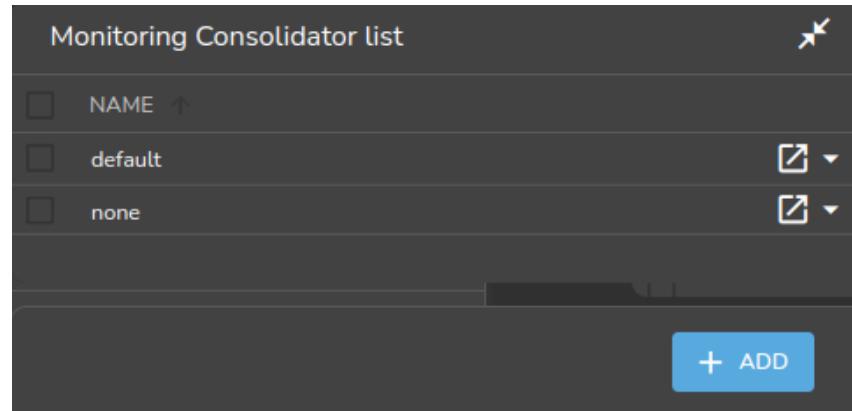


Figure 10.13: Base View Monitoring Consolidator list

Subwindows allow the consolidator components (consolidator items) to be created or modified (figure 10.14).

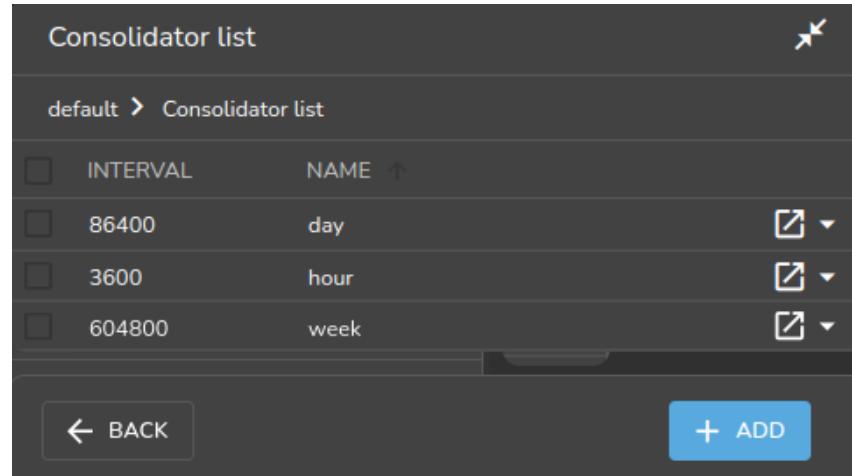


Figure 10.14: Base View Monitoring Configuration Consolidator Items

### The `none` Consolidator Group

The `none` consolidator group has no consolidators. Using a consolidator group of `none` for a measurable or data producer means that samples are not consolidated. This can be dangerous if the cluster is more likely to run out of space due to unrestrained sampling. Unrestrained sampling can occur, for example, if `Maximal Age` and `Maximal samples` (section 10.4.1) for data producers are both set to 0.

### The `default` Consolidator Group

The `default` consolidator group consists of the consolidators `hour`, `day`, and `week`. These are, unsurprisingly, defined to consolidate the samples in intervals of an hour, day, or week.

A consolidated value is generated on-the-fly. So, for example, during the hour that samples of a measurable come in, the `hour` consolidator uses the samples to readjust the consolidated value for that hour. When the hour is over, the consolidated value is stored for that hour as the data value for that hour, and a new consolidation for the next hour begins.

Consolidator values are kept, as for sample values, until the `Maximal Age` and `Maximal sample` settings prevent data values being kept.

### Other Consolidator Group Possibilities

Other sets of custom intervals can also be defined. For example, instead of the default consolidator group, consisting of consolidators of an hour, a day, and a week; a similar group called the decimalminutes consolidator group, consisting of consolidators of 1min, 10min, 100min, 1000min, 10000min, could be created with the appropriate intervals (figure 10.15):

The screenshot shows the Grafana monitoring configuration interface. On the left, there is a sidebar with a tree structure. In the center, there are two main panels: 'Monitoring Consolidator list' and 'Consolidator list'. The 'Monitoring Consolidator list' panel contains four items: 'NAME ↑', 'decimalminutes' (selected), 'default', and 'none'. The 'Consolidator list' panel shows a list of intervals and their corresponding names:

INTERVAL	NAME ↑
600000	10000min
60000	1000min
6000	100min
600	10min
60	1min

At the bottom, there are buttons for '+ ADD' and 'BACK'.

Figure 10.15: Base View Monitoring Configuration Consolidators: decimalminutes Consolidator Group

### Consolidator Item Settings

Consolidator items (consolidator components) are the component members of the consolidator groups. The items have settings as properties, which can be managed (figure 10.16).

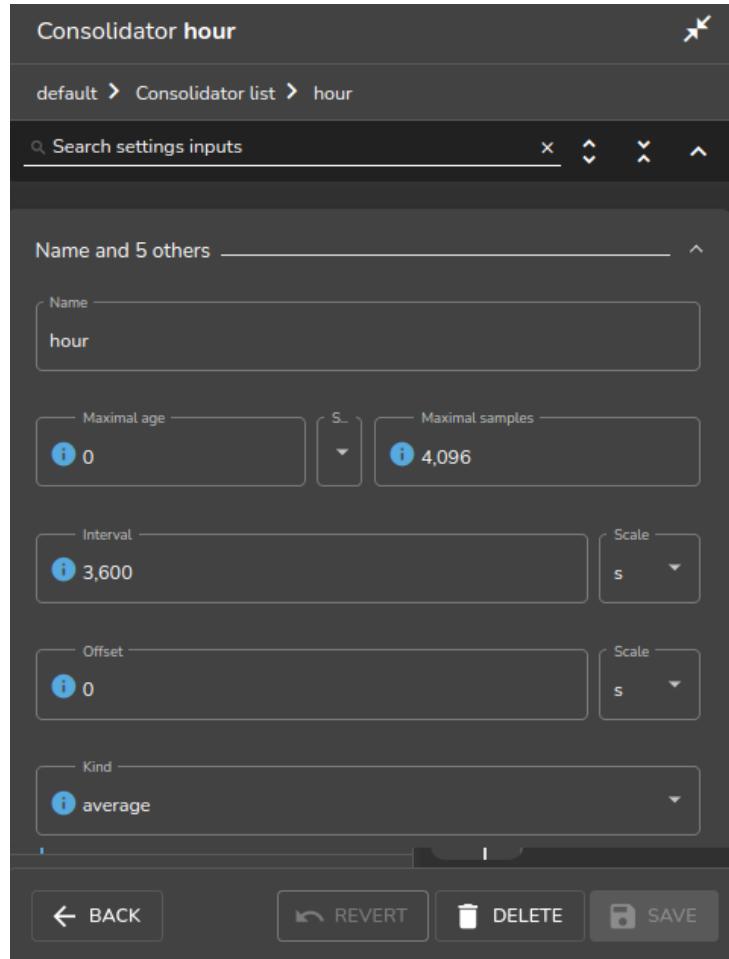


Figure 10.16: Base View Monitoring Configuration Consolidators: Consolidator Item Settings

The consolidator item `hour`, which is within the `default` consolidators group, can have its properties edited using the navigation path:

Monitoring > Consolidators[`default`] > Edit > Consolidator[`hour`] > Edit

The properties that can be set for a consolidator item are:

- **Name:** The name of the consolidator item. By default, for the consolidator group `default`, the consolidator items with names of Day, Hour, and Month are already set up, with appropriate values for their corresponding fields.
- **Maximal samples:** The maximum number of samples that are stored for that consolidator item. This should not be confused with the `Maximal samples` of the measurable being consolidated.
- **Interval:** The time period (in seconds) covered by the consolidator sample. For example, the consolidator with the name `Hour` has a value of 3600. The property should not be confused with the time period between samples of the measurable being consolidated.
- **Offset:** The time offset from the default consolidation time, explained in more detail shortly.
- **Kind:** The kind of consolidation that is done on the raw data samples. The value of `kind` is set to `average` by default. The output result for a processed set of raw data—the consolidated data point—is an average, a maximum or a minimum of the input raw data values. `Kind` can thus have the value `Average`, `Maximum`, or `Minimum`. The value of `kind` is set to `average` by default.

For a given consolidator, when one Kind is changed to another, the historically processed data values become inconsistent with the newer data values being consolidated. Previous consolidated data values for that consolidator are therefore discarded during such a change.

To understand what Offset means, the Maximal samples of the measurable being consolidated can be considered. This is the maximum number of raw data points that the measurable stores. When this maximum is reached, the oldest data point is removed from the measurable data when a new data point is added. Each removed data point is gathered and used for data consolidation purposes.

For a measurable that adds a new data point every Interval seconds, the time  $t_{raw\ gone}$ , which is how many seconds into the past the raw data point is removed, is given by:

$$t_{raw\ gone} = (\text{Maximal samples})_{measurable} \times (\text{Interval})_{measurable}$$

This value is also the default consolidation time, because the consolidated data values are normally presented from  $t_{raw\ gone}$  seconds ago, to further into the past. The default consolidation time occurs when the Offset has its default, zero value.

If however the Offset period is non-zero, then the consolidation time is offset, because the time into the past from which consolidation is presented to the user,  $t_{consolidation}$ , is then given by:

$$t_{consolidation} = t_{raw\ gone} + \text{Offset}$$

The monitoring visualization graphs then show consolidated data from  $t_{consolidation}$  seconds into the past, to further into the past<sup>2</sup>.

#### 10.4.4 Monitoring Configuration: Actions

Actions are introduced in section 10.2.6. The Actions window (figure 10.17) displays actions that BCM provides by default, and also displays any custom actions that have been created:

---

<sup>2</sup>For completeness: the time  $t_{consolidation\ gone}$ , which is how many seconds into the past the consolidated data goes and is viewable, is given by an analogous equation to that of the equation defining  $t_{raw\ gone}$ :

$$t_{consolidation\ gone} = (\text{Maximalsamples})_{consolidation} \times (\text{Interval})_{consolidation}$$

The screenshot shows the 'Monitoring Action list' in the Base View interface. On the left, there's a sidebar with navigation links: Cloud, Containers, Storage, Jupyter, Configuration Overlays, Monitoring (which is expanded to show Data Producers, Measurables, Consolidators, Actions, Triggers, Health Status, All Health Checks, and Standalone Monitored Entities), and a Hide button. The main area is titled 'Monitoring Action list' and contains a table with 15 rows. Each row has a checkbox, a name, a type, and a dropdown menu. The actions listed are: Drain, Monitoring Drain Action; Event, Monitoring Event Action; ImageUpdate, Monitoring Image Update Action; PowerOff, Monitoring Power Off Action; PowerOn, Monitoring Power On Action; PowerReset, Monitoring Power Reset Action; Reboot, Monitoring Reboot Action; Send e-mail to adminis..., Monitoring Email Action; Shutdown, Monitoring Shutdown Action; Undrain, Monitoring Undrain Action; killallyesaction, Monitoring Script Action; killprocess, Monitoring Script Action; remount, Monitoring Script Action; and testaction, Monitoring Script Action. A blue '+ ADD' button is located at the bottom right of the list.

	NAME ↑	TYPE	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Drain	Monitoring Drain Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	Event	Monitoring Event Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	ImageUpdate	Monitoring Image Update Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	PowerOff	Monitoring Power Off Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	PowerOn	Monitoring Power On Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	PowerReset	Monitoring Power Reset Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	Reboot	Monitoring Reboot Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	Send e-mail to adminis...	Monitoring Email Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	Shutdown	Monitoring Shutdown Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	Undrain	Monitoring Undrain Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	killallyesaction	Monitoring Script Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	killprocess	Monitoring Script Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	remount	Monitoring Script Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	testaction	Monitoring Script Action	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾

Figure 10.17: Base View Monitoring Configuration: Actions

The `killallyes` script from the basic example of section 10.1 would show up here if it has been implemented.

Actions are triggered by triggers (section 10.4.5).

By default, the following actions exist:

- `PowerOn`: Powers on the node
- `PowerOff`: Powers off the node
- `PowerReset`: Hard resets the node
- `Drain`: Drains the node (does not allow new jobs on that node)
- `Undrain`: Undrains the node (allows new jobs on that node)
- `Reboot`: Reboots node via the operating system
- `Shutdown`: Shuts the node down via the operating system
- `ImageUpdate`: Updates the node from the software image
- `Event`: Sends an event to users connected with cmsh or Base View
- `killprocess`: A script to kill a process
- `remount`: A script to remount all devices
- `testaction`: A test script

- **Send e-mail to administrators:** Sends an e-mail out

The preceding actions show their options when the associated **Edit** button is clicked. A subwindow with options opens up. The following options are among those then displayed:

- **Run on:** What nodes the action should run on. Choices are:

- **Active head node:** the action runs on the active node only
- **Node:** the action runs on the triggering node
- **Monitoring node:** the action runs on the monitoring node

- **Allowed time:** The time interval in the 24 hour clock cycle that the action is allowed to start running. The interval can be restricted further to run within certain days of the week, months of the year, or dates of the month. Days and months must be specified in lower case.

The Base View interface for setting the time can be used to set the allowed times.

The allowed times have a format that is also used in cmsh. Rather than defining a formal syntax, some cmsh examples are given of possible formats, with explanations:

- november-march: November to March. The months April to October are forbidden.
- november-march{monday-saturday}: As in the preceding, but all Sundays are also forbidden.
- november-march{monday-saturday{13:00-17:00}}: Restricted to the period defined in the preceding example, and with the additional restriction that the action can start running only during the time 13:00-17:00.
- 09:00-17:00: All year long, but during 09:00-17:00 only.
- monday-friday{9:00-17:00}: All year long, but during 9:00-17:00 only, and not on Saturdays or Sundays.
- november-march{monday-saturday{13:00-17:00}}: Not in April to October. In the other months, only on Mondays to Saturdays, from 13:00-17:00.
- may-september{monday-friday{09:00-18:00}}; saturday-sunday{13:00-17:00}: May to September, with: Monday to Friday 09:00-18:00, and Saturday to Sunday 13:00-17:00.
- may{1-31}: All of May.
- may, september{1-15}: All of May, and only September 1-15.
- may, september{1-15{monday-friday}}: All of May. And only September 1-15 Monday to Friday.

A BNF grammar for allowed times is given in section 3.2.1 of the *Developer Manual*.

The following action scripts have some additional options:

- **Send e-mail to administrators:** Additional options here are:

- **Info:** body of text inserted into the default e-mail message text, before the line beginning "Please take action". The default text can be managed in the file /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions/sendemail.py
- **Recipients:** a list of recipients
- **All administrators:** uses the list of users in the Administrator e-mail setting in partition[base] mode

- **killprocess, and testaction:** Additional options for these are:

- **Arguments:** text that can be used by the script.
- **Script:** The location of the script on the file system.

### 10.4.5 Monitoring Configuration: Triggers

Triggers are introduced in section 10.2.5. The Triggers window (figure 10.18) allows actions (section 10.2.6) to be triggered based on conditions defined by the cluster administrator.

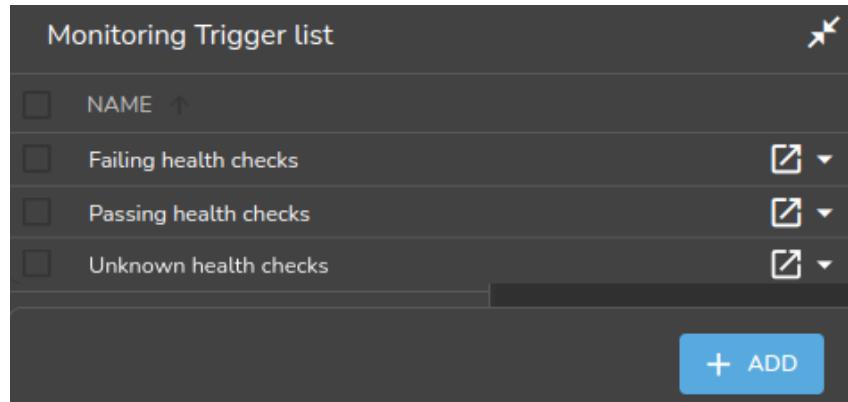


Figure 10.18: Base View Monitoring Configuration: Triggers

#### Change Detection For Triggers

Triggers launch actions by detecting changes in the data of configured measurables. The detection of these changes can happen:

- When a threshold is crossed. That is: the latest sample value means that either the value has entered a zone when it was not in the zone in the preceding sample, or the latest sample means that the value has left a zone when it was in the zone in the preceding sample
- When the zone remains crossed. That is: the latest sample as well as the preceding sample are both within the zone of a crossed threshold.
- When state flapping is detected. This is when the threshold is crossed repeatedly (5 times by default) within a certain time period (5 minutes by default).

The monitoring configuration dialog triggers have four possible action launch configuration options to cover these cases:

1. Enter actions: if the sample has entered into the zone and the previous sample was not in the zone. This is a threshold-crossing change.
2. Leave actions: if the sample has left the zone and the previous sample was in the zone. This is also a threshold-crossing change.
3. During actions: if the sample is in the zone, and the previous sample was also in the zone.
4. State flapping actions: if the sample is entering and leaving the zone within a particular period (State flapping period, 5 minutes by default) a set number of times (State flapping count, 5 by default).

#### Pre-defined Triggers: Passing, Failing, And Unknown Health Checks

By default, the only triggers that are pre-defined are the following three health check triggers, which use the Enter actions launch configuration option, and which have the following default behavior:

- **Failing health checks:** If a health check fails, then on entering the state of the health check failing, an event is triggered as the action, and a severity of 15 is set for that health check.
- **Passing health checks:** If a health check passes, then on entering the state of the health check passing, an event is triggered as the action, and a severity of 0 is set for that health check.

- Unknown health checks: If a health check has an unknown response, then on entering the state of the health check returning an unknown response, an event is triggered as the action, and a severity of 10 is set for that health check.

**Example: carry out a triggered action:** cmsh or Base View can be used for the configuration of carrying out an e-mail alert action (that is: sending out an e-mail) that is triggered by failing health checks.

- A cmsh way to configure it is:

The e-mail action (`send\ e-mail\ to\ administrators`) is first configured so that the right recipients get a useful e-mail.

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% monitoring action
[basecm11->monitoring->action]% use send\ e-mail\ to\ administrators
[basecm11->...[send e-mail to administrators]]% append recipients user1@example.com
[basecm11->...*[send e-mail to administrators*]]% commit
```

Here, email alerts would go to `user1@example.com`, as well as to anyone already configured in `administratore-mail`. Additional text can be set in the body of the e-mail by setting a value for `info`.

The trigger can be configured to run the action when the health check enters a state where its value is true:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->action[use send e-mail to administrators]]% monitoring trigger
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger]% use failing\ health\ checks
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger[Failing health checks]]% append enteractions send\ e-mail\ to\ administrators
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger*[Failing health checks*]]% commit
```

The settings can be viewed with the `show` command. TAB-completion prompting can be used to suggest possible values for the settings.

- A Base View way to carry out the configuration is using the navigation path:

`Monitoring > Actions > Send e-mail to administrators > Edit`

This can be used to set the recipients and other items, and the configuration can then be saved.

The email action can then be configured in Base View via the navigation path:

`Monitoring > Triggers > Failing Health Checks > Edit > Enter Actions > Send E-mail to Administrators`

The checkbox for the "Send E-mail to Administrators" action should be ticked and the configuration saved.

### Carrying Out Post-Drain Actions

A special, and hidden, setting for a triggered drain is post-drain-actions. This allows one or more actions to be triggered after a node has reached a fully-drained state after a drain action.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring]% trigger
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger]% add mydrain
[basecm11->...->trigger*[mydrain*]]% set enteractions drain
[basecm11->...->trigger*[mydrain*]]% set -e -v post-drain-actions send\ e-mail\ to\ administrators poweroff
[basecm11->...->trigger*[mydrain*]]% commit
```

In the preceding example, nodes that enter a drained state, after they are fully-drained, send an e-mail to the administrator and are powered off (page 566 and section G.4.1).

The syntax of the post-drain action is:

```
set -e -v post-drain-actions <action name> [<action name> ...]
```

### Adding Custom Triggers: Any Measurable, Any Action

More triggers can be added. The `killallyesttrigger` example from the basic example of section 10.1, seen in figures 10.3 and 10.4, is one such example.

The idea is that actions are launched from triggers, and the action for the trigger can be set to a predefined action, or to a custom action.

### The Expression Subwindow For A Trigger

One of the options presented when editing a trigger listed in figure 10.18 is the Expression button. Clicking on it opens up the expression subwindow. The expression for the trigger can then be configured by setting the entity, measurable, parameters, (comparison) operator, and measurable value, as shown in figure 10.19:

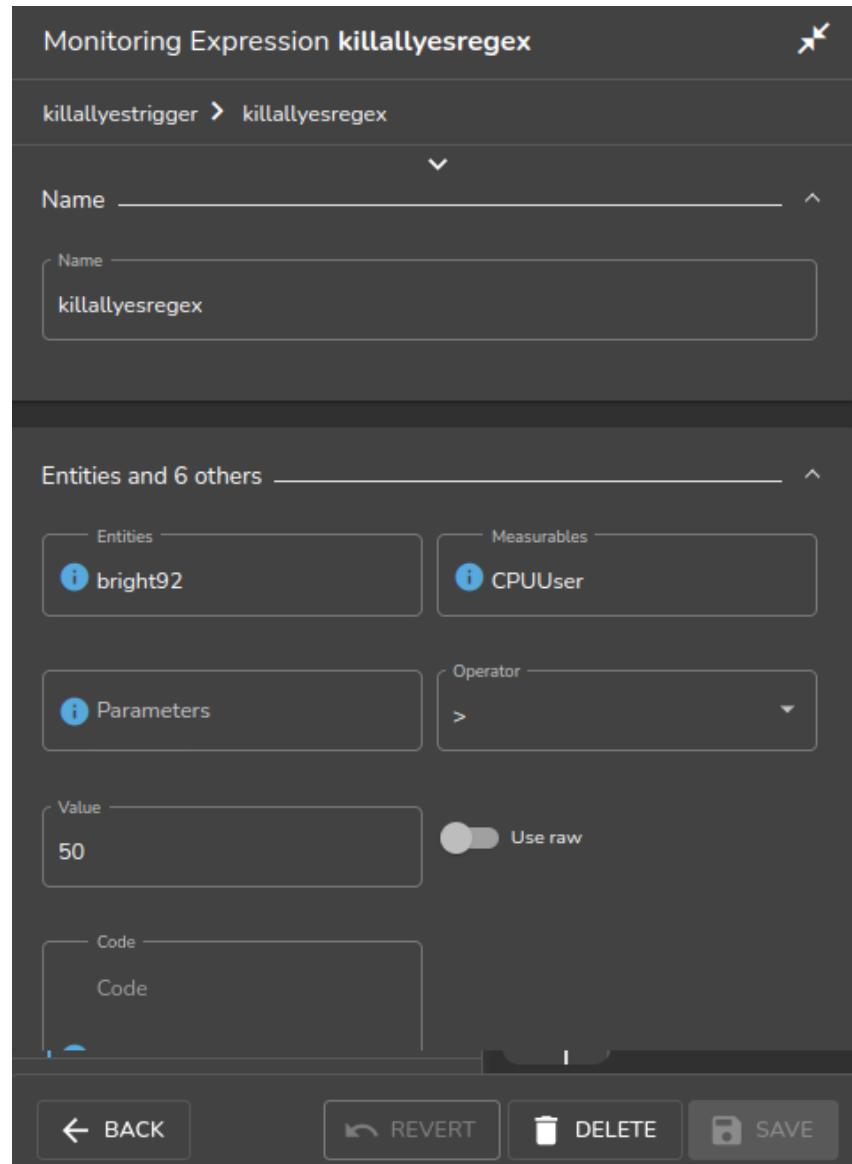


Figure 10.19: Base View Monitoring Configuration: Triggers Expression

The trigger launch is carried out when, during sampling, CMdaemon evaluates the expression as being true.

An example cmsh session to set up an expression for a custom trigger might be as follows, where the

administrator is setting up the configuration so that an e-mail is sent by the monitoring system when a node is detected as having gone down:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% monitoring trigger add nodedown
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [nodedown*]]% expression
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [nodedown*]->expression [compare]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name              compare
Revision
Type              MonitoringCompareExpression
Entities
Measurables
Parameters
Operator          ==
Value             FAIL
Use raw           no
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [nodedown*]->expression* [compare*]]% set value down
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [nodedown*]->expression* [compare*]]% set operator eq
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [nodedown*]->expression* [compare*]]% set measurables devicestate
```

To add a touch of realism, a deliberate mistake is set here—the use of devicestate (the data producer) instead of devicestatus (the measurable). The validate command (page 58) gives a helpful warning here, so that the cluster administrator can fix the setting:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [nodedown*]->expression* [compare*]]% validate
Field      Message
-----
actions    Warning: No actions were set
measurables/  Warning: No known measurable matches the specified regexes ('devicestate', '')
parameters
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [nodedown*]->expression* [compare*]]% set measurables devicestatus
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [nodedown*]->expression* [compare*]]% ...;...
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [nodedown*]]% set interactions send e-mail to administrators
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [nodedown*]]% commit
```

### 10.4.6 Monitoring Configuration: Health status

The Health status window (figure 10.20) displays all the nodes, and summarizes the results of all the health checks that have been run against them over time, by presenting a table of the associated severity levels (section 10.2.7):

Monitoring Health Overview list			
ENTITY	MAXIMAL SEVERITY OF ALL FAILED TRIGGERS	TOTAL SEVERITY OF ALL FAILED TRIGGERS	TOTAL COUNT OF ALL FAILED TRIGGERS
bright92	0	0	0
mon001	0	0	0
node001	0	0	0
node002	15	15	1

Figure 10.20: Base View Monitoring Configuration: Health Status

In the example shown in figure 10.20 the last entity shows a severity issue, while the other devices are fine. Details of the individual health checks per entity can be viewed in a subwindow using the

Show button for that entity. Clicking on the show button for the last entity in this example opens up a subwindow (figure 10.21). For this example the issue turns out to be due to a FAIL status in the ssh2node measurable.

Monitoring Health Overview					
A ↑	STATE	ENTITY	MEASURABLE	TYPE	VALUE
43s	Active	node002	oomkiller	OS	PASS
47s	Active	node002	ib	OS	PASS
50s	Active	node002	dmesg	OS	PASS
54s	Active	node002	opalinkhealth	Network	PASS
58s	Active	node002	interfaces	Network	PASS
1m 55s	Active	node002	ssh2node	network	FAIL ?
1m 59s	Active	node002	defaultgateway	Network	PASS
2m 8s	Active	node002	schedulers	Workload	PASS

[← BACK](#)

Figure 10.21: Base View Monitoring Configuration: Health Status For An Entity

#### 10.4.7 Monitoring Configuration: All Health Checks

Latest Monitoring Data list					
	STATE	ENTITY	MEASURABLE	TYPE	VALUE
1s	Active	bright92	oomkiller	OS	PASS
4s	Active	bright92	ib	OS	PASS
8s	Active	bright92	dmesg	OS	PASS
12s	Active	bright92	opalinkhealth	Network	PASS
16s	Active	bright92	interfaces	Network	PASS
27s	Active	Loading...	Loading...	Loading...	Loading...
27s	Active	node002	ssh2node	network	FAIL ?
27s	Active	Loading...	Loading...	Loading...	Loading...
27s	Active	bright92	ssh2node	network	PASS
27s	Active	Loading...	Loading...	Loading...	Loading...
27s	Active	Loading...	Loading...	Loading...	Loading...

[+ ADD](#)

Figure 10.22: Base View Monitoring Configuration: All Health Checks For All Entities

The All Health checks window shows all the running health checks for all entities. The Group by Entity option at the top of the ENTITY column can be used to show the results for per entity only. The results for one entity are then similar to what the Show button for the entity produces in section 10.4.6, figure 10.21.

#### 10.4.8 Monitoring Configuration: Standalone Monitored Entities

The Standalone Monitored Entities window allows the cluster administrator to define a standalone entity. A standalone entity is one that is not managed by BCM—which means that no CMDaemon is running on it to gather data and for managing it—but the entity can still be monitored. For example, a workstation that is running the Base View browser could be the standalone entity. This could have its connectivity monitored by pinging it from the head node with a custom script.

#### 10.4.9 Monitoring Configuration: PromQL Queries

The Prometheus Query list window displays the list of PromQL job-related queries, and allows query properties to be edited. Drilldowns can also be viewed.

Prometheus Query list			
	NAME ↑	QUERY	
<input type="checkbox"/>	account_job_effective_cpu_seconds	sum by(account) ( max_over_time(job_cpuacct_usage_seconds[\$period]) * on(wlm, job_id, hostname) group_right() ... )	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	account_job_io_bytes	sum by(account) ( max_over_time(job_blkio_io_service_bytes_total[\$period]) )	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	account_job_memory_usage_bytes	sum by(account) ( max_over_time(job_memory_usage_bytes[\$period]) )	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	account_job_running_count	sum by(account) ( max_over_time(job_metadata_num_nodes[\$period]) ^ 0 )	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	account_job_waiting_seconds	sum by(account) ( max_over_time(job_metadata_waiting_seconds[\$period]) )	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	account_job_wall_clock_seconds	sum by(account) ( max_over_time(job_metadata_running_seconds[\$period]) * on(wlm, job_id) group_right() ... )	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾
<input type="checkbox"/>	account_job_wasted_cpu_seconds	sum by(account) ( max_over_time(job_metadata_running_seconds[\$period]) * on(wlm, job_id) group_right() ... )	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ▾

+ ADD

Figure 10.23: Base View Monitoring Configuration: PromQL Queries

PromQL job queries are discussed further in section 12.3.

#### 10.4.10 Monitoring Configuration: Resources

The Monitoring Resource list window displays a view-only list of resources.

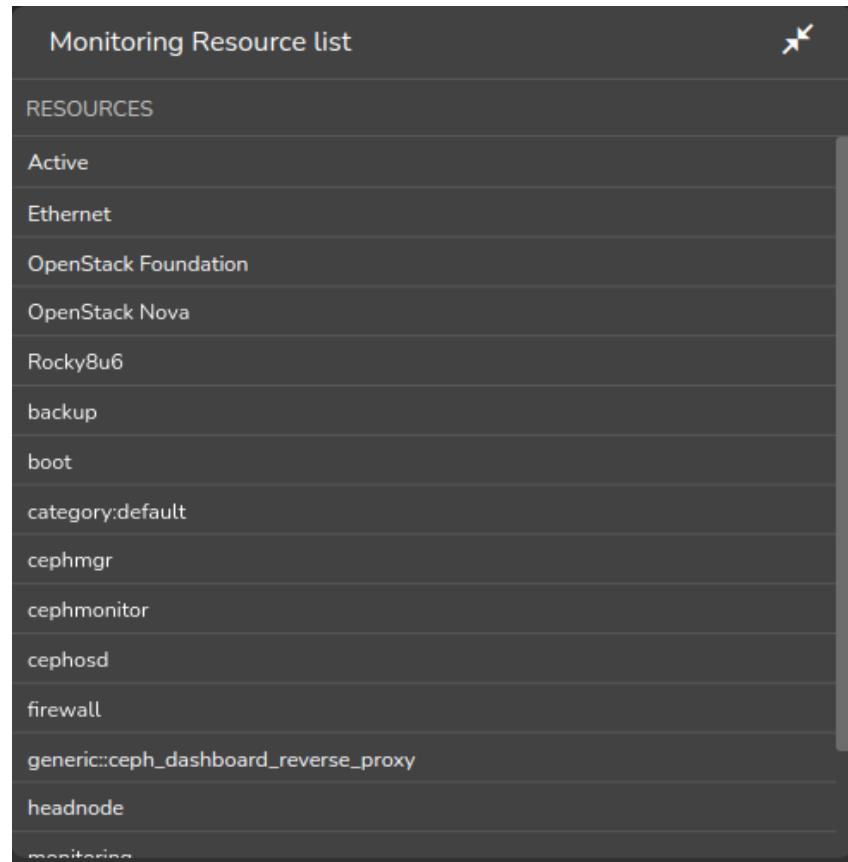


Figure 10.24: Base View Monitoring Configuration: Resources

#### 10.4.11 Monitoring Configuration: Types

The Monitoring Types list window displays a view-only list of types.

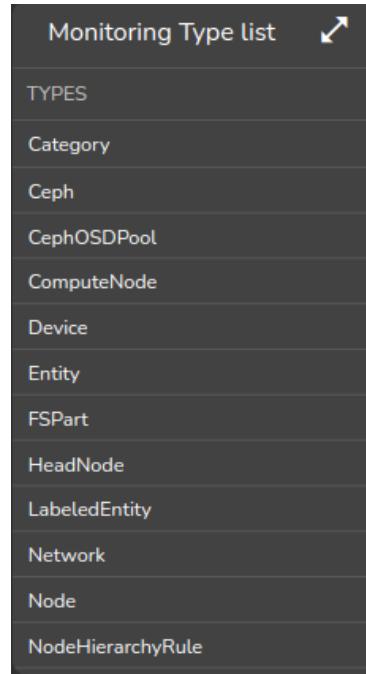


Figure 10.25: Base View Monitoring Configuration: Types

## 10.5 The monitoring Mode Of cmsh

This section covers how to use cmsh to configure monitoring. The monitoring mode in cmsh corresponds generally to the Monitoring resource of Base View in section 10.4. Similarly to how monitoring subwindows are accessed in Base View, the monitoring mode of cmsh is itself is not used directly, except as a way to access the monitoring configuration submodes of cmsh.

For this section some familiarity is assumed with handling of objects as described in the introduction to working with objects (section 2.5.3). When using cmsh's monitoring mode, the properties of objects in the submodes are how monitoring settings are carried out.

The monitoring mode of cmsh gives access to 9 modes under it:

### Example

```
[root@myheadnode ~]# cmsh
[myheadnode]% monitoring help | tail -11
=====
action ..... Enter action mode
consolidator ..... Enter consolidator mode
labeledentity ..... Enter labeled entity mode
measurable ..... Enter measurable mode
query ..... Enter monitoring query mode
report ..... Enter report mode
setup ..... Enter monitoring configuration setup mode
standalone ..... Enter standalone entity mode
trigger ..... Enter trigger mode
```

For convenience, a tree of modes for monitoring submodes is shown in figure 10.26.

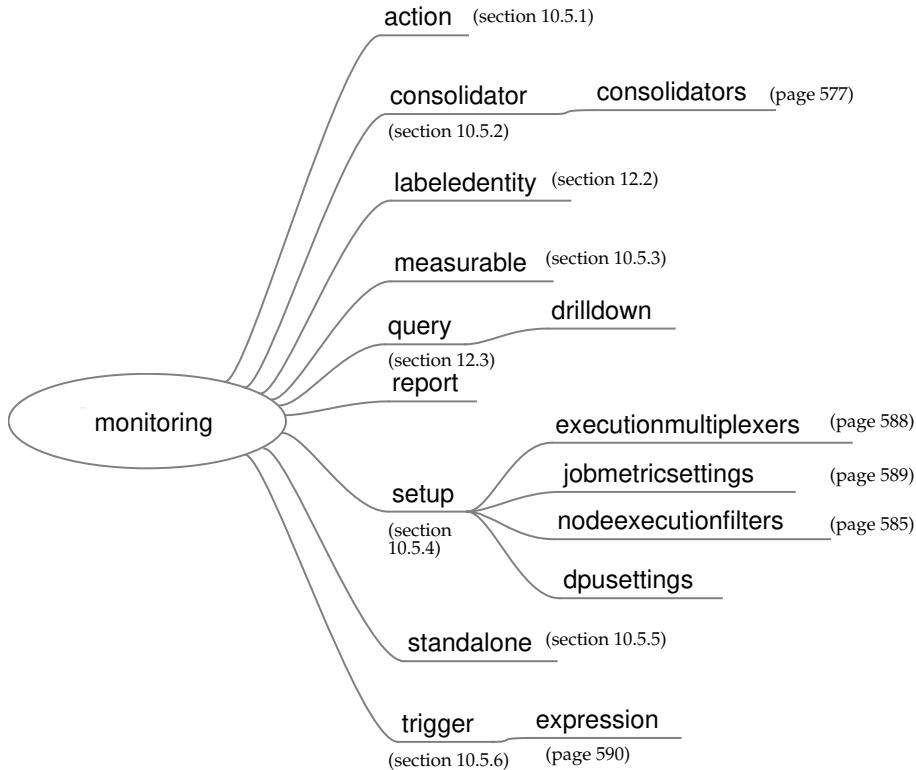


Figure 10.26: Submodes Under monitoring Mode

Sections 10.5.1–10.5.6 give examples of how objects are handled under these monitoring modes. To avoid repeating similar descriptions, section 10.5.1 is relatively detailed, and is often referred to by the other sections.

### 10.5.1 The action Submode

The action submode under the monitoring mode of cmsh allows monitoring actions to be configured. This mode in cmsh corresponds to the Base View navigation path:

Monitoring > Actions

described earlier in section 10.4.4:

The action mode handles action objects in the way described in the introduction to working with objects (section 2.5.3). A typical reason to handle action objects—the properties associated with an action script or action built-in—might be to view the actions available, or to add a custom action for use by, for example, a metric or health check.

Some examples of how the action mode is used are now give.

#### **The action Submode:** list, show, And get

The list command by default lists the names and properties of actions available from action mode in a table:

#### Example

```
[myheadnode]% monitoring action
[myheadnode->monitoring->action]% list
Type      Name (key)      Run on   Action
-----
```

Drain	Drain	Active	Drain node from all WLM
Email	Send e-mail to administrators	Active	Send e-mail
Event	Event	Active	Send an event to users with connected client
ImageUpdate	ImageUpdate	Active	Update the image on the node
PowerOff	PowerOff	Active	Power off a device
PowerOn	PowerOn	Active	Power on a device
PowerReset	PowerReset	Active	Power reset a device
Reboot	Reboot	Node	Reboot a node
Script	killprocess	Node	/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions/killprocess.pl
Script	remount	Node	/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions/remount
Script	testaction	Node	/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions/testaction
Shutdown	Shutdown	Node	Shutdown a node
Undrain	Undrain	Active	Undrain node from all WLM (node accepts new WLM jobs)

The preceding shows the actions available on a newly installed system.

The show command of cmsh displays the individual parameters and values of a specified action:

### Example

```
[myheadnode->monitoring->action]# show poweroff
Parameter          Value
-----
Action             Power off a device
Allowed time
Disable            no
Name               PowerOff
Revision
Run on             Active
Type               PowerOff
```

Instead of using list, a convenient way to view the possible actions is to use the show command with tab-completion suggestions:

### Example

```
[myheadnode->monitoring->action]# show<TAB><TAB>
drain      killprocess    powerreset   send\ e-mail\ to\ administrators      undrain
event       poweroff       reboot        shutdown
imageupdate poweron        remount      testaction
```

The get command returns the value of an individual parameter of the action object:

### Example

```
[myheadnode->monitoring->action]# get poweroff runon
active
```

**The action Submode:** add, use, remove, commit, refresh, modified, set, clear, **And** validate  
In the basic example of section 10.1, in section 10.1.2, the killallyes action was cloned from a similar script using a clone option in Base View.

The equivalent can be done with a clone command in cmsh. However, using the add command instead, while it requires more steps, makes it clearer what is going on. This section therefore covers adding the killallyes script of section 10.1.2 using the add command.

When add is used: an object is added, the object is made the current object, and the name of the object is set, all at the same time. After that, set can be used to set values for the parameters within the object, such as a path for the value of the parameter command.

Adding an action requires that the type of action be defined. Just as tab-completion with show comes up with action suggestions, in the same way, using tab-completion with add comes up with type suggestions.

Running the command help add in the action mode also lists the possible types. These types are drain, e-mail, event, imageupdate, poweroff, poweron, powerreset, reboot, script, servicerestart, servicesstart, servicesstop, shutdown, undrain.

The syntax for the add command takes the form:

```
add <type> <action>
```

If there is no killallyes action already, then the name is added in the action mode with the add command, and the script type, as follows:

#### Example

```
[myheadnode->monitoring->action]# add script killallyes
[myheadnode->monitoring->action*[killallyes*]]#
```

Using the add command drops the administrator into the killallyes object level, where its properties can be set. A successful commit means that the action is stored in CMDaemon.

The converse to the add command is the remove command, which removes an action that has had the commit command successfully run on it.

The refresh command can be run from outside the object level, and it removes the action if it has not yet been committed.

The use command is the usual way of "using" an object, where "using" means that the object being used is referred to by default by any command run. So if the killallyes object already exists, then use killallyes drops into the context of an already existing object (i.e. it "uses" the object).

The set command sets the value of each individual parameter displayed by a show command for that action. The individual parameter script can thus be set to the path of the killallyes script:

#### Example

```
[...oring->action*[killallyes*]]# set script /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions/killallyes
```

The clear command can be used to clear the value that has been set for script.

The validate command checks if the object has all required values set to sensible values. So, for example, commit only succeeds if the killallyes object passes validation.

Validation does not check if the script itself exists. It only does a sanity check on the values of the parameters of the object, which is another matter. If the killallyes script does not yet exist in the location given by the parameter, it can be created as suggested in the basic example of section 10.1, in section 10.1.2. In the basic example used in this chapter, the script is run only on the head node. If it were to run on regular nodes, then the script should be copied into the disk image.

The modified command lists changes that have not yet been committed.

#### 10.5.2 The consolidator Submode

Consolidators are introduced in section 10.4.3. Consolidators can be managed in cmsh via the consolidator mode, which is the equivalent of the consolidators window (section 10.4.3) in Base View.

The consolidator mode deals with groups of consolidators. One such pre-defined group is default, while the other is none, as discussed earlier in section 10.4.3:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->consolidator]# list
Name (key)          Consolidators
-----
default            hour, day, week
none               <0 in submode>
```

Each consolidators entry can have its parameters accessed and adjusted.

For example, the parameters can be viewed with:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->consolidator]# use default
[basecm11->monitoring->consolidator[default]]# show
Parameter          Value
-----
Consolidators      hour, day, week
Name               default
Revision
[basecm11->monitoring->consolidator[default]]# consolidators
[basecm11->monitoring->consolidator[default]->consolidators]# list
Name (key)         Interval
-----
day               1d
hour              1h
week              1w
[basecm11->monitoring->consolidator[default]->consolidators]# use day
[basecm11->monitoring->consolidator[default]->consolidators[day]]# show
Parameter          Value
-----
Interval          1d
Kind              AVERAGE
Maximal age       0s
Maximal samples   4096
Name              day
Offset             0s
Revision
[basecm11->monitoring->consolidator[default]->consolidators[day]]#
```

For the day consolidator shown in the preceding example, the number of samples saved per day can be doubled with:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->consolidator[default]->consolidators[day]]# set maximalsamples 8192
[basecm11->monitoring->consolidator*[default*]->consolidators*[day*]]# commit
```

Previously consolidated data is discarded with this type of change, if the number of samples is reduced. Changing parameters should therefore be done with some care.

A new consolidators group can be created if needed.

A Base View way, where a decimalminutes group is created, is discussed in the example in section 10.4.3, page 562.

A cmsh way, where a max-per-day group is created, is discussed in the following section:

### Creation Of A Consolidator In cmsh

A new consolidator group, max-per-day, can be added to the default consolidator groups of default and none, with:

### Example

```
[basecm11]# monitoring consolidator
[basecm11->monitoring->consolidator]# add max-per-day
[... [max-per-day*]]#
```

Within this new group, a new consolidator item, max-per-day can also be defined. The item can be defined so that it only calculates the maximum value per day, using the kind setting. Another setting is interval, which defines the interval with which the old data is compressed:

#### Example

```
[... [max-per-day*]]% consolidators
[... [max-per-day*] ->consolidators]]% add max-per-day
[... [max-per-day*]]% set interval 1d
[... [max-per-day*]]% set kind maximum
[... [max-per-day*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Interval          1d
Kind              maximum
Maximal age      0s
Maximal samples  4096
Name              max-per-day
Offset            0s
Revision
[... [max-per-day*]]% commit
```

#### 10.5.3 The measurable Submode

The measurable submode under the monitoring mode of cmsh handles measurable objects, that is: metrics, health checks, and enummetrics. This mode corresponds to the Base View navigation path:

Monitoring > Measurables

covered earlier in section 10.4.2.

Measurable objects represent the configuration of scripts or built-ins. The properties of the objects are handled in cmsh in the way described in the introduction to working with objects (section 2.5.3).

A typical reason to handle measurable objects might be to view the measurables already available, or to remove a measurable that is in use by an entity.

Measurables cannot be added from this mode. To add a measurable, its associated data producer must be added from monitoring setup mode (section 10.5.4).

This section goes through a cmsh session giving some examples of how this mode is used.

#### The measurable Submode: list, show, And get

In measurable mode, the list command by default lists the names of all measurable objects along with parameters, their class, and data producer.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]]% list
type        name (key)           parameter   class                  producer
-----
Enum        DeviceStatus         Internal     Internal
HealthCheck ManagedServicesOk  Internal     Internal
HealthCheck Mon::Storage       Internal/Monitoring/Storage MonitoringSystem
Metric      nfs_v3_server_total Disk        NFS
Metric      nfs_v3_server_write Disk        NFS
...
...
```

The above example illustrates a list with some of the measurables that can be set for sampling on a newly installed system. A full list typically contains over two hundred items.

The list command in measurable submode can be run as:

- `list metric`: to display only metrics
- `list healthcheck`: to display only health checks
- `list enum`: to display only enummetrics

The `show` command of the `measurable` submode of monitoring mode displays the parameters and values of a specified measurable, such as, for example `CPUUser`, `devicestatus`, or `diskspace`:

### Example

#### Example

```
[myheadnode->monitoring->measurable]%
```

Parameter	Value
Class	CPU
Consolidator	default (ProcStat)
Cumulative	yes
Description	CPU time spent in user mode
Disabled	no (ProcStat)
Gap	0 (ProcStat)
Maximal age	0s (ProcStat)
Maximal samples	4,096 (ProcStat)
Maximum	0
Minimum	0
Name	CPUUser
Parameter	
Producer	ProcStat
Revision	
Type	Metric
Unit	Jiffies/s

```
[myheadnode->monitoring->measurable]%
```

Parameter	Value
Class	Internal
Consolidator	none
Description	The device status
Disabled	no (DeviceState)
Gap	0 (DeviceState)
Maximal age	0s (DeviceState)
Maximal samples	4,096 (DeviceState)
Name	DeviceStatus
Parameter	
Producer	DeviceState
Revision	
Type	Enum

```
[myheadnode->monitoring->measurable]%
```

Parameter	Value
Class	Disk
Consolidator	- (diskspace)
Description	checks free disk space
Disabled	no (diskspace)
Gap	0 (diskspace)
Maximal age	0s (diskspace)
Maximal samples	4,096 (diskspace)

Name	diskspace
Parameter	
Producer	diskspace
Revision	
Type	HealthCheck

The Gap setting here is a number. It sets how many samples are allowed to be missed before a value of NaN is set for the value of the metric.

As detailed in section 10.5.1, tab-completion suggestions for the show command suggest the names of objects that can be used, with the use command in this mode. For show in measurable mode, tab-completion suggestions suggests over 200 possible objects:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]% show
Display all 221 possibilities? (y or n)
alertlevel:count      iotime:vda          mon::storage::engine::elements    oomkiller
alertlevel:maximum    iotime:vdb          mon::storage::engine::size        opalinkhealth
alertlevel:sum         ipforwdatagrams   mon::storage::engine::usage       packetsrecv:eth0
blockedprocesses     ipfragcreates     mon::storage::message::elements  packetsrecv:eth1
buffermemory         ipfragfails      mon::storage::message::size      packetssent:eth0
bytesrecv:eth0        ipfragok       mon::storage::message::usage    packetssent:eth1
...
...
```

The single colon (“：“) indicates an extra parameter for that measurable.

Because there are a large number of metrics, it means that grepping a metrics list is sometimes handy.

When listing and grepping, it is usually a good idea to allow for case, and be aware of the existence of the parameter column. For example, the AlertLevel metric shown in the first lines of the tab-completion suggestions of the show command of the previous example, shows up as alertlevel. However the list command displays it as AlertLevel. There are also several parameters associated with the AlertLevel command. So using the case-insensitive -i option of grep, and using the head command to display the headers is handy:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]% list | head -2 ; list metric | grep -i alertlevel
type      name (key)           parameter class      producer
-----
Metric    AlertLevel           count     Internal   AlertLevel
Metric    AlertLevel           maximum   Internal   AlertLevel
Metric    AlertLevel           sum      Internal   AlertLevel
```

The get command returns the value of an individual parameter of a particular health check object:

### Example

```
[myheadnode->monitoring->measurable]% get oomkiller description
Checks whether oomkiller has come into action (then this check returns FAIL)
[myheadnode->monitoring->measurable]%
```

### The measurable Submode: The has Command

The has command is used with a measurable to list the entities that use the measurable. Typically these are nodes, but it can also be other entities, such as the base partition.

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]# has alertlevel:sum
basecm11
node001
node002
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]# use devicesup
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable[DevicesUp]]# has
base
```

The remaining commands in measurable mode, such as use, remove, commit, refresh, modified, set, clear, and validate; all work as outlined in the introduction to working with objects (section 2.5.3). More detailed usage examples of these commands within a monitoring mode are given in the earlier section covering the action submode (section 10.5.1).

### **The measurable Submode: An Example Session On Viewing And Configuring A Measurable**

A typical reason to look at metrics and health check objects—the properties associated with the script or built-in—might be, for example, to view the operating sampling configuration for an entity.

This section goes through a cmsh example session under monitoring mode, where the setup submode (page 583) is used to set up a health check. The healthcheck can then be viewed from the measurable submode.

In the basic example of section 10.1, a trigger was set up from Base View to check if the CPUUser metric was above 50 jiffies/s, and if so, to launch an action.

A functionally equivalent task can be set up by creating and configuring a health check, because metrics and health checks are so similar in concept. This is done here to illustrate how cmsh can be used to do something similar to what was done with Base View in the basic example. A start is made on the task by creating a health check data producer, and configuring its measurable properties. using the setup mode under the monitoring mode of cmsh. The task is completed in the section on the setup mode in section 10.5.4.

To start the task, cmsh's add command is used, and the type is specified, to create the new object:

#### **Example**

```
[root@myheadnode ~]# cmsh
[myheadnode]# monitoring setup
[myheadnode->monitoring->setup]# add healthcheck cpucheck
[myheadnode->monitoring->setup*[cpucheck*]]#
```

The show command shows the parameters.

The values for description, runinbash, script, and class should be set:

#### **Example**

```
[...->setup*[cpucheck*]]# set script /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/cpucheck
[...->setup*[cpucheck*]]# set description "CPUUser under 50%?"
[...->setup*[cpucheck*]]# set runinbash yes
[...->setup*[cpucheck*]]# set class OS
[...->setup*[cpucheck*]]# commit
[myheadnode->monitoring->setup[cpucheck]]#
```

On running commit, the data producer cpucheck is created:

#### **Example**

```
[myheadnode->monitoring->setup[cpucheck]]# exit; exit
[myheadnode->monitoring]# setup list | grep -i cpucheck
HealthCheckScript      cpucheck          1 / 222      <0 in submode>
```

The measurable submode shows that a measurable cpucheck is also created:

### Example

```
[myheadnode->monitoring] % measurable list | grep -i cpucheck
HealthCheck cpucheck OS cpucheck
```

Since the cpucheck script does not yet exist in the location given by the parameter script, it needs to be created. One ugly bash script that can do a health check is:

```
#!/bin/bash

## echo PASS if CPUUser < 50
## cpu is a %, ie: between 0 and 100

cpu=`mpstat 1 1 | tail -1 | awk '{print $3}'` 
comparisonstring="$cpu"" < 50"

if (( $(bc <<< "$comparisonstring") )); then
    echo PASS
else
    echo FAIL
fi
```

The script should be placed in the location suggested by the object, /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/cpucheck, and made executable with a chmod 700.

The cpucheck object is handled further within the cmsh monitoring setup mode in section 10.5.4 to produce a fully configured health check.

#### 10.5.4 The setup Submode

##### The setup Submode: Introduction

The setup submode under the monitoring mode of cmsh allows access to all the data producers. This mode in cmsh corresponds to the Base View navigation path:

Monitoring > Data Producers

covered earlier in section 10.4.1.

##### The setup Submode: Data Producers And Their Associated Measurables

The list of data producers in setup mode should not be confused with the list of measurables in measurable mode. Data producers are not the same as measurables. Data producers produce measurables, although it is true that the measurables are often named the same as, or similar to, their data producer.

In cmsh, data producers are in the Name (key) column when the list command is run from the setup submode:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup] % list
Type          Name (key)      Arguments   Measurables  Node execution filters
-----        -----        -----
AggregateNode AggregateNode
AlertLevel    AlertLevel
CMDaemonState CMDaemonState
ClusterTotal  ClusterTotal
Collection    BigDataTools
```

```
Collection      Cassandra          0 / 222      <1 in submode>
...

```

In the preceding example, the AlertLevel data producer has 3 / 222 as the value for measurables. This means that this AlertLevel data producer provides 3 measurables out of the 222 configured measurables. They may be enabled or disabled, depending on whether the data producer is enabled or disabled, but they are provided in any case.

To clarify this point: if the list command is run from setup mode to list producers, then the producers that have configured measurables are the ones that have 1 or more as the numerator value in the Measurables column. Conversely, the data producers with 0 in the numerator of the Measurables column have no configured measurables, whether enabled or disabled, and are effectively just placeholders until the software for the data producers is installed.

So, comparing the list of producers in setup mode with the measurables in measurable mode:

### Example

In measurable mode, the three AlertLevel measurables (the 3 out of 222) produced by the AlertLevel producer can be seen with:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable]% list | head -2; list | grep AlertLevel
Type      Name (key)    Parameter   Class      Producer
-----
Metric    AlertLevel    count       Internal   AlertLevel
Metric    AlertLevel    maximum    Internal   AlertLevel
Metric    AlertLevel    sum        Internal   AlertLevel
```

On the other hand, in measurable mode, there are no measurables seen for BigDataTools (the 0 out of 222) produced by the BigDataTools producer, when running, for example: list | head -2; list | grep BigDataTools.

### The setup Submode: Listing Nodes That Use A Data Producer

The nodes command can be used to list the nodes on which a data producer <*data producer*> runs. It is run in the setup submode level of the monitoring mode as:

```
nodes <data producer>
```

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% list | head -2; list | grep mount
Type              Name (key)    Arguments   Measurables Node execution filters
-----
HealthCheckScript mounts           1 / 229      <0 in submode>
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% nodes mounts
node001..node003,basecm11
```

### The setup Submode: Data Producers Properties

Any data producer from the full list in setup mode can, if suitable, be used to provide a measurable for any entity.

An example is the data producer AlertLevel. Its properties can be seen using the show command:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% show alertlevel
Parameter      Value
-----
Automatic reinitialize yes
```

```

Consolidator           default
Description           Alert level as function of all trigger severities
Disabled              no
Execution multiplexer <1 in submode>
Fuzzy offset          0
Gap                   0
Interval              2m
Maximal age           0s
Maximal samples       4096
Measurables          3 / 222
Name                  AlertLevel
Node execution filters <1 in submode>
Notes                <0 bytes>
Offset                1m
Only when idle        no
Revision
Type                 AlertLevel
When                Timed

```

These properties are described in section 10.4.1. Most of these properties are inherited by the measurables associated with the data producer, which in the AlertLevel data producer case are alertlevel:count, alertlevel:maximum, and alertlevel:sum.

### The setup Submode: Deeper Submodes

One level under the setup submode of monitoring mode are 3 further submodes (modes deeper than submodes are normally also just called submodes for convenience, rather than sub-submodes):

- nodeexecutionfilters
- executionmultiplexers
- jobmetricsettings

**Node execution filters:** A way to filter execution (restrict execution) of the data producer.

If no node execution filter is set for that data producer, then the data producer runs on all nodes of the cluster. Filters are of type node, category, overlay, resource, and lua. The type is set when the filter is created.

- **The nodes command for listing the execution nodes**

Running the nodes command for a data producer lists which nodes the execution of the data producer is run on.

#### Example

```

[myhost->monitoring->setup]% nodes procmeminfo
mon001..mon003,myhost,osd001,osd002,node001,node002
[myhost->monitoring->setup]% nodes ssh2node
myhost
[myhost->monitoring->setup]% nodes devicestate
myhost
[myhost->monitoring->setup]% foreach * ( get name; nodes) | paste -- | sort
AggregateCDU      myhost
AggregateNode     myhost
AggregatePDU      myhost
... [so far the data producers run only on the head node, but eventually see other nodes]...

```

```
CMDdaemonState    node001..node006,myhost
cmha-status       Not used
cmsh              myhost
CPUSampler        node001..node006,myhost
cuda-dcgm         node001..node006,myhost
...
...
```

Most of the default data producers that are used by the cluster run on an active head node, and often on the regular nodes.

- **nodeexecutionfilters to restrict data producer execution**

The rogueprocess (page 975) data producer is one of the few that by default runs on a regular node. Restricting a data producer to run on a particular list of nodes can be carried out as follows on a cluster that is originally in its default state:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[rogueprocess]]% nodeexecutionfilters
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[rogueprocess]->nodeexecutionfilters]% add<TAB><TAB>
category lua      node      overlay   resource type
[...tup[rogueprocess]->nodeexecutionfilters]% add node justthese
[...tup*[rogueprocess*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[justthese*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Filter operation   Include
Name               justthese
Nodes
Revision
Type               Node
[...tup*[rogueprocess*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[justthese*]]% set nodes node001,node002
[...tup*[rogueprocess*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[justthese*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Filter operation   Include
Name               justthese
Nodes              node001,node002
Revision
Type               Node
[...tup*[rogueprocess*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[justthese*]]% commit
```

This way, the rogueprocess health check runs on just those nodes (node001, node002), and none of the others.

- **Restricting a data producer execution to the head node—monitoring a process on the head node**

Another example of data producer restriction is as follows: an administrator may wish to monitor the slapd process on the head nodes. In cmsh, a session to achieve this could be:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% add procpidstat slapd
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[slapd*]]% set process slapd
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[slapd*]]% set consolidator none
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[slapd*]]% nodeexecutionfilters
```

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[slapd*]->nodeexecutionfilters] % add type headnodes
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[slapd*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[headnodes*]] % set headnode yes
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[slapd*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[headnodes*]] % commit
```

An equivalent to the preceding, starting from the nodeexecutionfilters mode, but using a different name for the type, is:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[slapd*]->nodeexecutionfilters] % add type headnode
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[slapd*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[headnode*]] % commit
```

The value for headnode attribute within the headnode object is automatically matched to its name, and so its value is automatically set to yes just as in the earlier session.

The preceding sessions set the filter to work on all head nodes. To have it work on only the active head node, the active command can be used instead, at nodeexecutionfilter mode level:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[slapd*]] % nodeexecutionfilters
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[slapd*]->nodeexecutionfilters] % active
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[slapd*]->nodeexecutionfilters*] % commit
```

The newly-defined slapd metric can now have its output displayed or plotted just like any other metric:

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]] % latestmetricdata | grep slapd
MemoryUsed      slapd    Process   739 MiB     28.6s
SystemTime       slapd    Process   2m 35s     28.6s
ThreadsUsed     slapd    Process   50          28.6s
UserTime         slapd    Process   1h 36m     28.6s
VirtualMemoryUsed  slapd    Process   4.77 GiB   28.6s
```

- **Filtering a data producer by resource**

A data producer can also be set up so that it is run on a particular list of nodes filtered by resource. The resources that are available to a node can be viewed using the command monitoringresources for that device:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]] % monitoringresources
Active
Docker::Host
Ethernet
Kubernetes::ApiServer
Kubernetes::ApiServerProxy
Kubernetes::Controller
kubelet
kubernetes-control-plane
overlay:kube-default-etcd
overlay:kube-default-master
RDO
boot
...
```

An example of where running a node execution filter by resource is useful, is for data producers that are intended to run on the active head node. Most data producers that are used by the cluster run on an active head node (besides often running on the regular nodes too).

Thus, for example, the cpucheck health check from page 582 can be set to run on the active head node, by creating an arbitrary resource called myactive:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[cpuchek]]% nodeexecutionfilters
[...tup[cpuchek]->nodeexecutionfilters]%
[...tup*[cpuchek*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[myactive*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Filter            Include
Name              myactive
Operator          OR
Resources
Revision
Type              Resource
```

and then setting the Resources parameter to Active:

```
[...tup*[cpuchek*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[myactive*]]% set resources Active
[...tup*[cpuchek*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[myactive*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Filter            Include
Name              myactive
Operator          OR
Resources          Active
Revision
Type              Resource
[...tup*[cpuchek*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[myactive*]]% commit
```

The cpuchek health check then runs on the active head node, whichever head node it is.

When node execution filtering is carried out, the filtered data is not dropped by default. Filtered data can be dropped for a measurable or an entity with the monitoringdrop command (section 10.6.7).

**Execution multiplexer:** A way to multiplex execution (have execution work elsewhere) for a data producer. It tells BCM about the entities that the data producer is sampling for. A data producer runs and gathers data at the entity (node, category, lua, overlay, resource type) defined by the node execution filter, and with multiplex execution the data producer gathers samples from other entities. These entities can be nodes, categories, lua scripts, overlays, resources, and types. The entities from which it can sample are defined into groups called execution multiplexers. Execution multiplexers can thus be node multiplexers, category multiplexers, lua multiplexers, type multiplexers, overlay multiplexers, or resource multiplexers.

The executionmultiplexers mode can be entered for a data producer dmesg with:

**Example**

```
root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% monitoring setup executionmultiplexers dmesg
```

Running the commands: help add, or help set, can be used to show the valid syntax in this submode.

Most data producers run on a head node, but sample from the regular nodes. So, for example, the dmesg health check from Appendix G.2.1 can be set to sample from the regular nodes by setting it to carry out execution multiplexing to specified node entities using a node multiplexer with the arbitrary name of nodes as follows:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[dmesg]->executionmultiplexers] % add<TAB><TAB>
category lua      node      overlay   resource type
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[dmesg]->executionmultiplexers] % add node nodes
[basecm11->...*[dmesg*]->executionmultiplexers*[nodes*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Filter operation    Include
Name               nodes
Nodes
Revision
Type              Node

[basecm11->...*[dmesg*]->executionmultiplexers*[nodes*]]% set nodes node001,node002
[basecm11->...*[dmesg*]->executionmultiplexers*[nodes*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Filter operation    Include
Name               nodes
Nodes              node001,node002
Revision
Type              Node
```

The concepts and expected behavior of node execution filters and execution multiplexers is covered in more explicit detail in Appendix L.

**Job Metrics Settings:** Job metrics settings are a submode for setting job metric collection options for the JobSampler data producer (section 11.4).

### 10.5.5 The standalone Submode

The standalone submode under the monitoring mode of cmsh allows entities that are not managed by BCM to be configured for monitoring. This mode in cmsh corresponds to the Base View navigation path:

Monitoring > Standalone Monitored Entities

covered earlier in section 10.4.8.

The monitoring for such entities has to avoid relying on a CMDaemon that is running on the entity. An example might be a chassis that is monitored via a ping script running on the BCM head node.

### 10.5.6 The trigger Submode

The trigger submode under the monitoring mode of cmsh allows actions to be configured according to the result of a measurable.

This mode in cmsh corresponds to the Base View navigation path:

Monitoring > Triggers

covered earlier in section 10.4.5.

By default, there are 3 triggers:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger] % list
Name (key)          Expression          Enter actions During actions Leave actions
-----
Failing health checks  (*, *, *) == FAIL      Event
```

```
Passing health checks      (*, *, *) == PASS          Event
Unknown health checks     (*, *, *) == UNKNOWN        Event
```

Thus, for a passing, failing, or unknown health check, an event action takes place if entering a state change. The default severity level of a passing health check does not affect the AlertLevel value. However, if the failing or unknown health checks are triggered on entering a state change, then these will affect the AlertLevel value.

### The trigger Submode: Setting An Expression

In the basic example of section 10.1, a trigger to run the killallyes script was configured using Base View.

The expression that was set for the killallyes script in the basic example using Base View can also be set in cmsh. For example:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger]# add killallyestrigger
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [killallyestrigger*]]% show
Parameter           Value
-----
Disabled            no
During actions
Enter actions
Leave actions
Mark entity as failed   yes
Mark entity as unknown  no
Name                killallyestrigger
Revision
Severity            10
State flapping actions
State flapping count  5
State flapping period 5m
expression          (*, *, *) == FAIL
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [killallyestrigger*]]% expression
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [killallyestrigger*]->expression[]]%
show
Parameter           Value
-----
Entities
Measurables
Name
Operator            EQ
Parameters
Revision
Type                MonitoringCompareExpression
Use raw             no
Value               FAIL
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [killallyestrigger*]->expression[]]%
set entities basecm11
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [killallyestrigger*]->expression*[*]]%
set measurables CPUUser
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [killallyestrigger*]->expression*[*]]%
set operator GT
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [killallyestrigger*]->expression*[*]]%
set value 50
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [killallyestrigger*]->expression*[*]]%
commit
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger* [killallyestrigger*]->expression*[*]]%
set name killallyesexp
Field               Message
-----
actions            Warning: No actions were set
===== killallyestrigger =====
```

```
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger[killallyesttrigger]->expression[killallyesexp]]% exit
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger[killallyesttrigger]->expression]]% exit
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger[killallyesttrigger]]% set enteractions killallyesname
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger*[killallyesttrigger*]]% commit
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger[killallyesttrigger]]%
```

The expression format is shown in cmsh as:

*(<entity>, <measurable>, <parameter>) <comparison operator> <value>*

Here:

- an entity, as described in section 10.2.1, can be, for example, a node, category, device, or software image. To include more than one entity for the comparison, the alternation (pipe, |) symbol can be used, with double quotes to enclose the expression.

### Example

```
...[killallyesttrigger*]->expression[]]]% set entities "basecm11|node001|compute|gpuimage"
```

In the preceding example, the entity compute could be a category, and the entity gpuimage could be a software image.

- a measurable (section 10.2.1) can be a health check, a metric, or an enummetric. For example: CPUUsage. Alternation works for *<measurable>* in a similar way to that for *<entity>*.
- a parameter is a further option to a measurable. For example, the FreeSpace metric can take a mount point as a parameter. Alternation works for *<parameter>* in a similar way to that for *<entity>*.
- the comparison operator can be:

EQ: equivalent to, displayed as ==

NE: not equivalent to, displayed as !=

GT: greater than, displayed as >

LT: less than, displayed as <

If the user uses an arithmetic symbol such as > in cmsh as an unescaped entry, then the entry may unintentionally be interpreted by the shell. That is why the two-letter entries are recommended instead for entry, even though when displayed they display like the arithmetic symbols for easier recognition.

- the value can be a string, or a number.

The regex evaluates to TRUE or FALSE. The trigger runs its associated action in the case of TRUE.

The wildcard \* implies any entity, measurable, or parameter when used with the appropriate position according to the syntax of the expression format.

Using .\* is also possible to match zero or more of any characters.

Some further expression matching examples:

### Example

True for any failing health check:

```
(*, *, *) == FAIL
```

### Example

True for any nearly full local disk (less than 10MB left):

```
(*, FreeSpace, sd[a-z]) < 10MB
```

### Example

True for any cloud node that is too expensive (price more than 10\$):

```
(.*cnode.*, Price, *) > 10$
```

### Example

Excluding node agw001:

```
(^(?!.*agw001).*$, *, *) == FAIL
```

### Example

True for any node in the data, gpu, or hpc categories, that has a nearly full local disk (less than 10MB left):

```
(!resource=category:data|category:gpu|category:hpc, FreeSpace, sd[a-z]) < 10MB
```

The unusual syntax in the preceding example is liable to change in future versions.

At the end of section 10.5.3 a script called cpucheck was built. This script was part of a task to use health checks instead of metrics to set up the functional equivalent of the behavior of the basic example of section 10.1. In this section the task is continued and completed as follows:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->trigger] % expression killallyesttrigger
[...trigger[killallyesttrigger]->expression[killallyesexp]]% get measurables
CPUUser
[...trigger[killallyesttrigger]->expression[killallyesexp]]% set measurables cpucheck
[...trigger*[killallyesttrigger*]->expression*[killallyesexp*]]% commit
```

## 10.6 Obtaining Monitoring Data Values

The monitoring data values that are logged by devices can be used to generate graphs using the methods in section 10.3. However, sometimes an administrator would like to have the data values that generate the graphs instead, perhaps to import them into a spreadsheet for further direct manipulation, or to pipe them into a utility such as gnuplot.

### 10.6.1 Getting The List Of Measurables For An Entity: The `measurables`, `metrics`, `healthchecks` And `enummetrics` Commands

The measurables for a specified entity can be seen with the `measurables` command, and the measurable subtypes can be seen with the corresponding measurable subset commands: `metrics`, `healthchecks` and `enummetrics`. The results look quite similar to the results of the `measurable` submode of the monitoring mode (section 10.5.3). However, for entities, the measurables are a sublist of the full number of measurables listed in the `measurable` submode, which in turn are only the list of measurables for the data producers that have been enabled.

For example, within device mode where the entities are typically the head node and regular nodes, running `metrics` with a specified entity shows only the metrics that are configured for that entity. Thus if the entity is a head node, then only head node metrics are shown; and if the entity is a regular node, only regular node metrics are shown:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% enummetrics node001
Type      Name          Parameter  Class           Producer
-----
Enum      DeviceStatus   Internal
[basecm11->device]% use basecm11
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% measurables
Type      Name          Parameter  Class           Producer
-----
Enum      DeviceStatus   Internal
HealthCheck ManagedServicesOk Internal
HealthCheck Mon::Storage  Internal/Monitoring/Storage MonitoringSystem
...
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% exit
[basecm11->device]% metrics node001
Type      Name          Parameter  Class           Producer
-----
Metric    AlertLevel     count      Internal
Metric    AlertLevel     maximum   Internal
Metric    AlertLevel     sum       Internal
Metric    BlockedProcesses OS
...

```

Typically the number of metrics listed on the head node will differ from those listed on a regular node. Whatever each number is, it cannot be more than the number of metrics seen in the number of metrics listed in the measurable submode of section 10.5.3.

The preceding example shows the measurables listing commands being carried out on head nodes and regular nodes. These commands can be used on other entities too. For example, the base partition in partition mode, where the measurables can be listed with:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% partition use base
[basecm11->partition[base]]% measurables
Type      Name          Parameter  Class           Producer
-----
Metric    CoresTotal    Total
Metric    CoresUp       Total
Metric    DevicesClosed Total
Metric    DevicesDown   Total
...

```

The values for metric samples and health checks can be obtained from within device mode in various ways, and are explained next.

## 10.6.2 On-Demand Metric Sampling And Health Checks

### The samplenow Command For On-Demand Measurable Samples

An administrator can do live sampling, or sampling on-demand, for specified entities by using the samplenow command. The command has the following syntax:

```
samplenow [OPTIONS] [<entity>] [<measurable> ...]
```

The command can be run without options when an entity object, such as a node is used (output truncated):

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% use basecm11
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% samplenow
Measurable      Parameter Type      Value      Age      Info
-----
AlertLevel      count     Internal  0          2.01s
AlertLevel      maximum   Internal  0          2.01s
AlertLevel      sum       Internal  0          2.01s
BlockedProcesses          OS        0 processes 2.01s
BufferMemory           Memory    847 KiB    2.01s
...
...
```

The entity used can also be in other modes that have measurables, such as the base partition (output truncated):

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% partition use base
[basecm11->partition[base]]% samplenow
Measurable      Parameter Type      Value      Age      Info
-----
CoresTotal      Total     24         0.001s
CoresUp        Total     24         0.001s
DevicesClosed   Total     0          0.001s
DevicesDown    Total     0          0.001s
DevicesTotal   Total     0          0.001s
DevicesUp      Total     0          0.001s
...
...
```

### The -n|--nodes Option

The -n option is used to sample specified nodes or node ranges:

### Example

```
[basecm11->partition[base]]% device
[basecm11->device]% samplenow -n node001..node002 loadone
Entity      Measurable      Parameter Type      Value      Age      Info
-----
node001     LoadOne        OS        0.04      0.08s
node002     LoadOne        OS        0          0.077s
```

### The --metrics And --checks Option

For a particular entity:

- All metrics can be sampled on demand with the --metrics option
- All health checks can be sampled on demand with the --checks option

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% samplenow --metrics loadone loadfifteen --n node001,node002
Entity      Measurable      Parameter Type      Value      Age      Info
-----
node001     LoadOne        OS        0.04      0.08s
node002     LoadOne        OS        0          0.077s
[basecm11->device]% samplenow --checks -n node001..node002
Entity      Measurable      Parameter Type      Value      Age      Info
-----
node001     ManagedServicesOk  Internal  PASS      0.177s
```

```

node001      defaultgateway          Network    PASS    0.145s
node001      diskspace              Disk       PASS    0.16s
node001      dmesg                 OS        PASS    0.177s
[basecm11->device]% samplenow --checks diskspace -n node001..node002
Entity      Measurable            Parameter Type   Value   Age    Info
-----
node001      diskspace             Disk       PASS    0.095s
node002      diskspace             Disk       PASS    0.097s
[basecm11->device]%

```

### The --debug Option

The --debug option passes CMD\_DEBUG=1 to the script environment. This can be used to provide extra information on what is happening during sampling.

#### Example

```

[basecm11->device[node001]]% samplenow ntp
Measurable  Type      Value     Age      Info
-----
ntp         Internal  PASS     0.51s
[basecm11->device[node001]]% samplenow --debug ntp
Measurable  Type      Value     Age      Info
-----
ntp         Internal  PASS     0.524s   command: "ps -e"+
[basecm11->device[node001]]% samplenow --debug -v ntp
Measurable  Type      Value     Age      Info
-----
ntp         Internal  PASS     0.543s   command: "ps -e"
                                         ntpd process found, pid: 11226
                                         command: "/sbin/ntpq -pn"
                                         found time syspeer: 10.141.255.254
                                         send time request to 10.141.255.254
                                         received a reply from 10.141.255.254
                                         time from 10.141.255.254 : 1586171027.783
                                         time on node                : 1586171027.771
                                         time difference           : 0.012
                                         execution time 0.06

[basecm11->device[node001]]% !systemctl stop ntpd
[basecm11->device[node001]] samplenow --debug -v ntp
measurable  Type      Value     Age      Info
-----
ntp         Internal  UNKNOWN  10s     timed out after: 10s

```

Many scripts under /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/ can have their debug output inspected with samplenow --debug.

A recursive grep on the head node, similar to the following, should show which scripts have a settable debug environment:

```
grep -r CMD_DEBUG /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/
```

### The -s|--status Option

Nodes in device mode which have a status of UP, as seen by the status command, can be sampled with the -s|--status option:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % samplenow -s UP
Entity      Measurable      Parameter Type      Value      Age      Info
-----
basecm11    AlertLevel      count      Internal   0          4.67s
basecm11    AlertLevel      maximum    Internal   0          4.67s
basecm11    AlertLevel      sum        Internal   0          4.67s
basecm11    BlockedProcesses OS         0 processes 4.67s
basecm11    BufferMemory    Memory     847 KiB    4.67s
basecm11    BytesRecv      eth0       Network    357 MiB   4.67s
basecm11    BytesRecv      eth1       Network    78.7 MiB  4.67s
...

```

The preceding example is truncated because it is quite lengthy. However, on the screen, for the device mode, it shows all the sample values for the measurables for all the entities—head node and regular nodes—that are up.

To restrict the results to node001 only, it can be run as:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % samplenow -s UP -n node001
Measurable      Parameter Type      Value      Age      Info
-----
AlertLevel      count      Internal   0          0.081s
AlertLevel      maximum    Internal   0          0.081s
AlertLevel      sum        Internal   0          0.081s
...

```

Sampling according to a device status value other than UP is also possible.

The help text for the `samplenow` command gives further details on its possible options.

The `latestmetricdata` and `latesthealthdata` commands (section 10.6.3) display the results from the latest metric and health samples that have been gathered by the cluster, rather than sampling on demand.

The `dumpmonitoringdata` command (section 10.6.4) displays monitoring data gathered over a period of time in a variety of formats.

### 10.6.3 The Latest Data And Counter Values—The `latest*data` And `latestmetriccounters` Commands

Within device mode, the values obtained by the latest measurable sampling run can be displayed for a specified entity with the `latestmonitoringdata`, `latestmetricdata` and `latesthealthdata` commands:

- `latestmetricdata`: The `latestmetricdata` command for a specified entity displays the most recent metric value that has been obtained by the monitoring system for each metric used by the entity. For displaying metrics on-demand in `cmsh`, the `samplenow --metrics` command (page 594) can be used for a specified entity.
- `latesthealthdata`: The `latesthealthdata` command for a specified entity displays the most recent value that has been obtained by the monitoring system for each health check used by the entity. For displaying health check responses on demand in `cmsh`, the `samplenow --checks` command (page 594) can be used for a specified entity.
- `latestmonitoringdata`: The `latestmonitoringdata` command for a specified entity combines the output of the `latesthealthdata` and `latestmetricdata` commands, i.e. it displays the latest samples of the measurables for that entity. For displaying measurables on-demand in `cmsh`, the `samplenow` command (page 593) can be run without options, for a specified entity.

The `latestmetriccounters` command, on the other hand, displays the latest cumulative counter values of the cumulative metrics in use by the entity.

### Using The `latest*data` Commands

When using the `latest*data` commands, the entity must be specified (some output elided):

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% latestmetricdata
Measurable      Parameter   Type     Value      Age      Info
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
AlertLevel      count      Internal  0          1m 12s  FAIL schedulers
AlertLevel      maximum    Internal  0          1m 12s  FAIL schedulers
AlertLevel      sum        Internal  0          1m 12s
BlockedProcesses OS         0 processes 1m 12s
BufferMemory    Memory     847 KiB   1m 12s
BytesRecv       eth0       Network   311.611 B/s 1m 12s
BytesRecv       eth1       Network   0 B/s    1m 12s
BytesSent       eth0       Network   349.953 B/s 1m 12s
BytesSent       eth1       Network   0 B/s    1m 12s
CPUGuest        CPU        0 Jiffies/s 1m 12s
...
...
```

Valid entity grouping options and other options can be seen in the help text for the `latestmetricdata` and `latesthealthdata` commands.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% help latestmetricdata
Name: Latestmetricdata - Display the latest metric data

Usage: latestmetricdata [OPTIONS] [<entity>]

Options:
  -v, --verbose
    Be more verbose

  -n, --nodes <node>
    List of nodes, e.g. node001..node015,node020..node028,node030
    or ^/some/file/containing/hostnames

  -g, --group <group>
    Include all nodes that belong to the node group, e.g. testnodes
    or test01,test03
...
```

The commands are mode-sensitive. That means, for example for a nodegroup consisting of, for example, node001 and node002, that there is a difference in the entities that are displayed from `device` mode:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% latestmetricdata -g mynodegroup
Entity      Measurable      Parameter   Type     Value      Age      State  Info
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
node001    AlertLevel      count      Internal  0          15.4s
```

```

node001 AlertLevel maximum Internal 0 15.4s
node001 AlertLevel sum Internal 0 15.4s
node001 BlockedProcesses OS 0 processes 1m 41s
node001 BufferMemory Memory 27.3 KiB 41s
node001 BytesRecv ens3 Network 622.722 B/s 56s
node001 BytesSent ens3 Network 580.088 B/s 56s
...
node002 AlertLevel count Internal 0 15.4s
node002 AlertLevel maximum Internal 0 15.4s
node002 AlertLevel sum Internal 0 15.4s
node002 BlockedProcesses OS 0 processes 1m 20s
node002 BufferMemory Memory 39 KiB 2m 20s
node002 BytesRecv ens3 Network 696.364 B/s 35.6s
node002 BytesSent ens3 Network 574.08 B/s 35.6s
...

```

and the entities that are displayed, for example, in nodegroup mode:

### Example

```
[basecm11->nodegroup]% latestmetricdata mynodegroup
Measurable Parameter Type Value Age State Info
----- -----
CoresTotal Total 4 31.8s
CoresUp Total 4 31.8s
FPGAsTotal Total 0 31.8s
FPGAsUp Total 0 31.8s
GPUsTotal Total 0 31.8s
GPUsUp Total 0 31.8s
NodesClosed Total 0 31.8s
NodesDown Total 0 31.8s
NodesTotal Total 2 31.8s
NodesUp Total 2 31.8s
```

The metrics displayed in device mode are individual device metrics, while the metrics displayed in nodegroup mode are totalling metrics.

By default the data values are shown with human-friendly units. The --raw option displays the data values as raw units.

### Using The latestmetriccounter Command

The latestmetriccounter is quite similar to the latestmetricdata command, except that it displays only cumulative metrics, and displays their accumulated counts since boot. The latestmonitoringcounter command is an alias for this command.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% latestmonitoringcounters node001
Measurable Parameter Type Value Age Info
----- -----
BytesRecv eth0 Network 286 MiB 11.7s
BytesRecv eth1 Network 0 B 11.7s
BytesSent eth0 Network 217 MiB 11.7s
BytesSent eth1 Network 0 B 11.7s
CPUGuest CPU 0 Jiffies/s 11.7s
CPUIdle CPU 60.1 Jiffies/s 11.7s
CPUIRQ CPU 0 Jiffies/s 11.7s
CPUNice CPU 66 Jiffies/s 11.7s
...
```

The reader can compare the preceding example output against the example output of the latestmetricdata command (page 597) to become familiar with the meaning of cumulative output.

#### 10.6.4 Data Values Over A Period—The `dumpmonitoringdata` Command

The `dumpmonitoringdata` command displays monitoring data values over a specified period. This is for an entity, such as:

- a node in device mode
- the base partition in partition mode
- an image in softwareimage mode
- a job in the jobs submode. The jobs submode is under the path `cmsh>wlm[<workload manager>]>jobs`, and using `dumpmonitoringdata` with it is covered on page 641.

#### Using The `dumpmonitoringdata` Command

A concise overview of the `dumpmonitoringdata` command can be displayed by typing in “`help dumpmonitoringdata`” in a `cmsh` mode that has entities.

The usage of the `dumpmonitoringdata` command consists of the following options and mandatory arguments:

```
dumpmonitoringdata [OPTIONS] <start-time> <end-time> <measurable> [entity]
```

**The mandatory arguments:** The mandatory arguments for the times, the measurables being dumped, and the entities being sampled, have values that are specified as follows:

- The measurable `<measurable>` for which the data values are being gathered must always be given. Measurables currently in use can conveniently be listed by running the `measurables` command (section 10.6.1).
- If `[entity]` is not specified when running the `dumpmonitoringdata` command, then it must be set by specifying the entity object from its parent mode of `cmsh` (for example, with `use node001` in device mode). If the mode is device mode, then the entity can also be specified via the options as a list, a group, an overlay, or a category of nodes.
- The time pair `<start-time>` or `<end-time>` can be specified as follows:
  - *Fixed time format:* The format for the times that make up the time pair can be:
    - \* `[YY/MM/DD] HH:MM[:SS]`  
(If YY/MM/DD is used, then each time must be enclosed in double quotes)
    - \* The unix epoch time (seconds since 00:00:00 1 January 1970)
  - *now:* For the `<end-time>`, a value of `now` can be set. The time at which the `dumpmonitoringdata` command is run is then used.
  - *Relative time format:* One item in the time pair can be set to a fixed time format. The other item in the time pair can then have its time set relative to the fixed time item. The format for the non-fixed time item (the relative time item) can then be specified as follows:
    - \* For the `<start-time>`, a number prefixed with “`-`” is used. It indicates a time that much earlier than the fixed end time.
    - \* For the `<end-time>`, a number prefixed with “`+`” is used. It indicates a time that much later than the fixed start time.
    - \* The number values also have suffix values indicating the units of time, as seconds (`s`), minutes (`m`), hours (`h`), or days (`d`).

The relative time format is summarized in the following table:

Unit	<i>&lt;start-time&gt;</i>	<i>&lt;end-time&gt;</i>
seconds:	-<number>s	+<number>s
minutes:	-<number>m	+<number>m
hours:	-<number>h	+<number>h
days:	-<number>d	+<number>d

- Both *<start-time>* and *<end-time>* can have their values prefixed with a “-”. In this case, the range over which the monitored values are seen is in the past, relative to the current time. If the end time for the range is specified as further in the past than the starting time, then the time values are swapped over so that the end time becomes more recent than the starting time.

**The options:** The options applied to the samples are specified as follows:

Option	Argument(s)	Description
-v, --verbose		show the rest of the line on a new line instead of cutting it off
-d, --delimiter	"<string>"	set the delimiter to a character
-i, --intervals	<number>	number of samples to show -i --intervals <number> is mandatory if using one of the following four options: --sum --max --min --avg
-u, --unix-epoch		use a unix timestamp instead of using the default date format
--raw		show the raw value, without units
--human		show the human-friendly value, with appropriate units (default)
--consolidationinterval		retrieve data from the consolidator with specified interval
--consolidationoffset		retrieve data from the consolidator with specified (interval, offset)
--timeaverage		calculate the average for the entire interval for specified devices
--timesum		calculate the sum for the entire interval for specified devices
--timecount		calculate the number of data points for the entire interval for specified devices
--timemaximum		calculate the maximum for the entire interval for specified devices
--timeminimum		calculate the minimum for the entire interval for specified devices
--timegroup		group data points for the entire interval for specified devices, intended for health checks and enummetrics
--delta		display change relative to previous value
--clip		clip data samples to the requested interval
--uncompress		uncompress data samples to the current sampling interval (shows intermediate values that are the same as the preceding value ("un-RLE" operation))

The following options are valid only for device mode:

-n, --nodes	<list>	for list of nodes
-g, --groups	<list>	for list of groups
-c, --categories	<list>	for list of categories
-r, --racks	<list>	for list of racks
-h, --chassis	<list>	for list of chassis
-e, --overlay	<list>	Include all nodes in list of overlays
--union		calculate the union of specified devices

...continues

*...continued*

Option	Argument(s)	Description
--intersection		calculate the intersection of the specified devices
-l, --role	<role>	Filter all nodes in role
-s, --status	<state>	for nodes in state UP, OPENING, DOWN, and so on

### Notes And Examples Of dumpmonitoringdata Command Use

Notes and examples of how the dumpmonitoringdata command can be used now follow:

**Fixed time formats:** Time pairs can be specified for fixed times:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% dumpmonitoringdata 18:00:00 18:02:00 loadone
Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
2017/08/30 17:58:00    0.02
2017/08/30 18:00:00    0.01
2017/08/30 18:02:00    0.02
```

Double quotes are needed for times with a YY/MM/DD specification:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% dumpmonitoringdata "17/08/30 18:00" "17/08/30 18:02" loadone
Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
2017/08/30 17:58:00    0.02
2017/08/30 18:00:00    0.01
2017/08/30 18:02:00    0.02
```

Unix epoch time can also be set:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% !date -d "Aug 30 18:00:00 2017" +%s
1504108800
[basecm11->device[node001]]% dumpmonitoringdata 1504108800 1504108920 loadone
Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
2017/08/30 17:58:00    0.02
2017/08/30 18:00:00    0.01
2017/08/30 18:02:00    0.02
```

**Intervals and interpolation:** The `-i|--intervals` option interpolates the data values that are to be displayed. The option needs `<number>` samples to be specified. This then becomes the number of interpolated samples across the given time range. Using “`-i 0`” outputs only the non-interpolated stored samples—the raw data—and is the default.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % dumpmonitoringdata -i 0 -10m now loadone node001
Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
2017/07/21 14:56:00 0.01
2017/07/21 14:58:00 0.14
2017/07/21 15:00:00 0.04
2017/07/21 15:02:00 0.04
2017/07/21 15:04:00 0.08
2017/07/21 15:06:00 0.08
```

If the number of intervals is set to a non-zero value, then the last value is always no data, since it cannot be interpolated.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % dumpmonitoringdata -i 3 -10m now loadone node001
Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
2017/07/21 21:49:36 0
2017/07/21 21:54:36 0.0419998
2017/07/21 21:59:36 no data
```

A set of nodes can be specified for the dump:

```
[basecm11->device] % dumpmonitoringdata -n node001..node002 -5m now cpuidle
Entity    Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
node001   2017/07/20 20:14:00 99.8258 Jiffies/s
node001   2017/07/20 20:16:00 99.8233 Jiffies/s
node001   2017/07/20 20:18:00 99.8192 Jiffies/s
node001   2017/07/20 20:20:00 99.8475 Jiffies/s
node002   2017/07/20 20:14:00 99.7917 Jiffies/s
node002   2017/07/20 20:16:00 99.8083 Jiffies/s
node002   2017/07/20 20:18:00 99.7992 Jiffies/s
node002   2017/07/20 20:20:00 99.815 Jiffies/s
[basecm11->device] %
```

**Summing values:** The --sum option sums a specified metric for specified devices, for a set of specified times. For 2 nodes, over a period from 2 hours ago until now, with values interpolated over 3 time intervals, the option can be used as follows:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % dumpmonitoringdata -2h now -i 3 loadone -n node00[1-2] --sum
Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
2017/07/20 18:30:27 0.0292462
2017/07/20 19:30:27 0
2017/07/20 20:30:27 no data
```

Each entry in the values column in the preceding table is the sum of loadone displayed by node001, and by node002, at that time, as can be seen from the following corresponding table:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % dumpmonitoringdata -2h now -i 3 loadone -n node00[1-2]
Entity      Timestamp          Value    Info
-----
node001     2017/07/20 18:30:27  0
node001     2017/07/20 19:30:27  0
node001     2017/07/20 20:30:27  no data
node002     2017/07/20 18:30:27  0.0292462
node002     2017/07/20 19:30:27  0
node002     2017/07/20 20:30:27  no data
```

Each loadone value shown by a node at a time shown in the preceding table, is in turn an average interpolated value, based on actual data values sampled for that node around that time.

**Maximum and minimum values:** The --max option takes the maximum of a specified metric for specified devices, for a set of specified times. For 2 nodes, over a period from 2 hours ago until now, with values interpolated over 3 time intervals, the option can be run as follows:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % dumpmonitoringdata -2h now -i 3 loadone -n node00[1-2] --max
# Start  - Tue Nov 3 09:56:05 2020 (1604393765)
# End    - Tue Nov 3 11:56:05 2020 (1604400965)
# LoadOne - Load average on 1 minute
Entity      Timestamp          Value    Info
-----
2020/11/03 09:56:05   0.010954
2020/11/03 10:56:05   0.000000
2020/11/03 11:56:05   nan
```

Each entry in the values column in the preceding table is the maximum of loadone displayed by node001, and by node002, at that time, as can be seen from the following corresponding table:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % dumpmonitoringdata -2h now -i 3 loadone -n node00[1-2]
# Start  - Tue Nov 3 09:56:05 2020 (1604393765)
# End    - Tue Nov 3 11:56:05 2020 (1604400965)
# LoadOne - Load average on 1 minute
Entity      Timestamp          Value    Info
-----
node001     2020/11/03 09:56:05  0.0109537
node001     2020/11/03 10:56:05  0
node001     2020/11/03 11:56:05  no data
node002     2020/11/03 09:56:05  0
node002     2020/11/03 10:56:05  0
node002     2020/11/03 11:56:05  no data
```

Similarly, for the preceding table, if the --min option is used instead, then the result would be:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % dumpmonitoringdata -2h now -i 3 loadone -n node00[1-2] --min
# Start  - Tue Nov 3 09:56:05 2020 (1604393765)
# End    - Tue Nov 3 11:56:05 2020 (1604400965)
# LoadOne - Load average on 1 minute
Entity      Timestamp          Value    Info
-----
2020/11/03 09:56:05   0.000000
2020/11/03 10:56:05   0.000000
2020/11/03 11:56:05   nan
```

**Displaying values during a specified time period, with --clip:** The --clip option is used with a specified time period. If there are raw values within the period, these are displayed.

A value is displayed for the start of the period, either by selection of a raw value if it exists at the exact starting time, or via interpolation if there is no raw value at the exact starting time. Similarly, at the end of the period a raw value is shown if it exists, or an interpolated value is shown if it does not.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% dumpmonitoringdata -5m now bytessent:eth0 --clip
# Start : 1552400295 / Tue Mar 12 14:18:15 2019
# End   : 1552400595 / Tue Mar 12 14:23:15 2019
Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
2019/03/12 14:18:15    201.942 B/s
2019/03/12 14:20:15    217.883 B/s
2019/03/12 14:22:15    233.058 B/s
2019/03/12 14:23:15    235.831 B/s
```

In the preceding example, the first 3 samples are raw samples, the last sample is an interpolated value, over a time period evaluated as being from 14:18:15 to 14:23:15. The epoch times for this period, and corresponding human-readable values are shown in the heading to the output table.

**Displaying according to status:** The -s|--status option selects only for nodes with the specified state. A state is one of the values output by the cmsh command ds or device status. It is also one of the values returned by the enummetric DeviceStatus (section 10.2.2).

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]]% dumpmonitoringdata -2m now loadone -s up
Entity      Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
basecm11    2017/07/21 15:00:00  0.35
basecm11    2017/07/21 15:02:00  0.53
node001     2017/07/21 14:12:00  0.04
node001     2017/07/21 15:02:00  0.04
node002     2017/07/21 15:00:00  0.22
node002     2017/07/21 15:02:00  0.21
[basecm11->device]]%
```

The argument to -s|--status can be specified with simple regexes, which are case insensitive. For example, inst.\* covers the states installing, installer\_failed, installer\_rebooting, installer\_callinginit, installer\_unreachable, installer\_burning.

**Displaying deltas:** The --delta option lists the difference between successive monitoring data values. It subtracts the previous data value from the current data value, and divides the result by the time interval between the two values.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% dumpmonitoringdata --delta -6m now pageout
Timestamp          Value      Delta      Info
-----
2018/09/10 17:49:28    1015.46 B/s  nan
2018/09/10 17:51:28     1.35 KiB/s  2.7 B/s/s
2018/09/10 17:53:28     1.34 KiB/s -0.083 B/s/s
```

Deltas are useful for seeing patterns in rates of change. For example, to check an experimental version of CMDaemon for a memory leak, an administrator may run:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% dumpmonitoringdata -2h now memoryused:cmd -n node001 --delta
Timestamp          Value      Delta      Info
-----
2018/08/15 10:00:00.812 68.4 MiB  nan
2018/08/15 10:02:00.812 68.4 MiB  0.0341333 B/s
2018/08/15 12:10:00.812 68.4 MiB  0 B/s
```

The roughly 0B/s increase over 2 hours in the preceding output is a good sign.

**Displaying union and intersection sets:** The --union option displays the union of a set of specified devices. The devices can be specified by the device grouping options (the options that are used to group <lists>, such as -c, -r and so on).

For example:

if the overlay galeranodes has the node mon001  
and  
the overlay openstackhypervisors has the nodes node001, and node002  
then an example of a union of the set of these two overlays is:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% dumpmonitoringdata --union -3m now pageout -e galeranodes,openstackhypervisors
Entity      Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
mon001     2018/09/11 11:31:56.198 192 KiB/s
mon001     2018/09/11 11:33:56.198 17.8 KiB/s
node001    2018/09/11 11:31:28.996 1.37 KiB/s
node001    2018/09/11 11:33:28.996 1.22 KiB/s
node002    2018/09/11 11:32:04.509 1.54 KiB/s
node002    2018/09/11 11:34:04.509 1.30 KiB/s
[basecm11->device]%
```

A union of sets in the same grouping option can be carried out using comma-separation for the list of sets. In the preceding example, the same grouping option is -e|--overlay.

For a union of different grouping options however, the syntax is different. For example, for a union of the galeranodes overlay, and a node001 node, a similar example is:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% dumpmonitoringdata --union -3m now pageout -u -e galeranodes -n node001
Entity      Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
mon001     1536659036.198 17.3 KiB/s
mon001     1536659156.198 116 KiB/s
node001    1536659008.997 1023.99 B/s
node001    1536659128.996 1.26 KiB/s
[basecm11->device]%
```

For an intersection of sets, the only syntax allowed is one that uses different grouping options:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% dumpmonitoringdata --intersection -3m now pageout -e galeranodes -n node001
No remaining entities
```

For intersection, comma-separation within one grouping option is pointless, and is not supported.

**Displaying percentages of a particular value across a time interval (the `--timegroup` option):** The `--timegroup` option for a measurable displays the percentage of appearances of each sampled value of the measurable during the interval. The percentage is displayed in the row alongside the start time of the interval. The end time of the interval is displayed in the row that follows:

An example with `devicestatus` showing the percentages of times in the various provisioning states (section 5.5.3):

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% dumpmonitoringdata -8h now devicestatus --timegroup
# Start      - Mon May 13 07:43:13 2024 (1715578993)
# End       - Mon May 13 15:43:13 2024 (1715607793)
# DeviceStatus - The device status
Timestamp          Value           Info
-----
2024/05/13 07:43:13 up             72.8%
2024/05/13 15:43:13 up
2024/05/13 07:43:13 down           24.1%
2024/05/13 15:43:13 down
2024/05/13 07:43:13 installing     1.46%
2024/05/13 15:43:13 installing
2024/05/13 07:43:13 installer_calling_init 0.31%
2024/05/13 15:43:13 installer_calling_init
2024/05/13 07:43:13 going_down      0.57%
2024/05/13 15:43:13 going_down
2024/05/13 07:43:13 booting         0.73%
2024/05/13 15:43:13 booting
```

Another example is with `wlm_slurm_state`, an enum that shows the state of nodes that can be allocated to the Slurm workload manager:

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% dumpmonitoringdata -8h now wlm_slurm_state --timegroup
# Start      - Mon May 13 07:42:34 2024 (1715578954)
# End       - Mon May 13 15:42:34 2024 (1715607754)
# wlm_slurm_state - The state of the nodes
Timestamp          Value           Info
-----
2024/05/13 07:42:34 allocated      4.27%
2024/05/13 15:42:34 allocated
2024/05/13 07:42:34 drain          0.50%
2024/05/13 15:42:34 drain
2024/05/13 07:42:34 idle           90.9%
2024/05/13 15:42:34 idle
2024/05/13 07:42:34 maint          1.76%
2024/05/13 15:42:34 maint
2024/05/13 07:42:34 mixed          2.55%
2024/05/13 15:42:34 mixed
```

The percentage total is 100% in the output. The `--timegroup` option tends to be useful and meaningful for health checks and enummetrics, rather than for metrics.

**Some non-interpolating RLE quirks:** When a sample measurement is carried out, if the sample has the same value as the two preceding it in the records, then the “middle” sample is discarded from storage.

Thus, when viewing the sequence of output of non-interpolated samples, identical values do not exceed two entries one after the other. This is a common compression technique known as Run Length Encoding (RLE). It can have some implications in the output of the `dumpmonitoringdata` command.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% dumpmonitoringdata -10m now threadsused:cmd
Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
2017/07/21 11:16:00    42
2017/07/21 11:20:00    42
2017/07/21 11:22:00    41
2017/07/21 11:24:00    42
2017/07/21 11:26:00    42
```

In the preceding example, data values for the number of threads used by CMDaemon are dumped for the last 10 minutes.

Because of RLE, the value entry around 11:18:00 in the preceding example is skipped. It also means that at most only 2 of the same values are seen sequentially in the Value column. This means that 42 is not the answer to everything.

For a non-interpolated value, the nearest value in the past, relative to the time of sampling, is used as the sample value for the time of sampling. This means that for non-interpolated values, some care may need to be taken due to another aspect of the RLE behavior: The time over which the samples are presented may not be what a naive administrator may expect when specifying the time range. For example, if the administrator specifies a 10 minute time range as follows:

### Example

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]]% dumpmonitoringdata -10m now nodesup default-image
Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
2017/07/13 16:43:00    2
2017/07/20 17:37:00    2
[basecm11->softwareimage]]%
```

then here, because the dump is for non-interpolated values, it means that the nearest value in the past, relative to the time of sampling, is used as the sample value. For values that are unlikely to change much, it means that rather than 10 minutes as the time period within which the samples are taken, the time period can be much longer. Here it turns out to be about 7 days because the nodes happened to be booted then.

### 10.6.5 Monitoring Data Health Overview—The `healthoverview` Command

In figure 10.20, section 10.4.6, the Base View navigation path

Monitoring > Health Status

showed an overview of the health status of all nodes.

The cmsh equivalent is the `healthoverview` command, which is run from within device mode. If run without using a device, then it provides a summary of the alert levels for all nodes.

The help text in cmsh explains the options for the `healthoverview` command. The command can be run with options to restrict the display to specified nodes, and also to display according to the sort order of the alert level values.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]]% healthoverview -n node00[1-3]
Device        Sum      Maximum     Count      Age      Info
-----
node001       30       15          2          50.7s    hot, fan high
node002       30       15          2          50.7s    hot, fan high
node003       15       15          1          50.7s    hot
```

### 10.6.6 Monitoring Data About The Monitoring System—The monitoringinfo Command

The monitoringinfo command provides information for specified head nodes or regular nodes about the monitoring subsystem. The help text shows the options for the command. Besides options to specify the nodes, there are options to specify what monitoring information aspect is shown, such as storage, cache, or services.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % monitoringinfo -n node001
Service          Queued Handled Cache miss Stopped Suspended Last operation
-----
Mon::CacheGather    0      0      0      yes   no     -
Mon::DataProcessor   0      0      0      yes   no     -
Mon::DataTranslator  0      932,257 0      no    no     Mon Jul 24 11:34:00
Mon::EntityMeasurableCache 0      0      0      no    no     Thu Jul 13 16:39:52
Mon::MeasurableBroker 0      0      0      no    no     -
Mon::Replicate::Collector 0      0      0      yes   yes   -
Mon::Replicate::Combiner  0      0      0      yes   yes   -
Mon::RepositoryAllocator 0      0      0      yes   no    -
Mon::RepositoryTrim     0      0      0      yes   no    -
Mon::TaskInitializer    0      30     0      no    no     Thu Jul 13 16:39:52
Mon::TaskSampler        30     233,039 0      no    no     Mon Jul 24 11:34:00
Mon::Trigger::Actuator   0      0      0      yes   no    -
Mon::Trigger::Dispatcher 0      0      0      yes   no    -

Cache           Size       Updates      Requests
-----
ConsolidatorCache 0          17          0
EntityCache        10         17          935,280
GlobalLastRawDataCache 87         17          0
LastRawDataCache   142        17          427,301
MeasurableCache    231        17          935,230

Cache           Up        Down        Closed
-----
DeviceStateCache  3          0          0

Replicator        First      Last       Requests Samples Sources
-----
ReplicateRequestHandler -         -          0          0

Cache           Queued     Delivered   Handled   Pickup
-----
Cache           0          120        932,257   7,766

Plotter          First      Last       Count     Samples Sources Requests
-----
RequestDispatcher -         -          0          0          0     -
RequestHandler   -         -          0          0          0     -

Storage          Elements   Disk size Usage     Free disk
-----
Mon::Storage::Engine 0          0 B       0.0%     -
Mon::Storage::Message 0          0 B       0.0%     -
Mon::Storage::RepositoryId 0          0 B       0.0%     -
```

### 10.6.7 Dropping Monitoring Data With The `monitoringdrop` Command

Monitoring data gathering can be restricted to certain nodes using node execution filtering and execution multiplexers. Entire data producers can also be disabled with the `disable` option in monitoring mode. However, restricting or disabling leaves historical samples in storage—the existing monitoring data values do not automatically get removed. So, in `cmsh` and Base View the latest known monitoring data values then still show up, with a forever-increasing age.

If a data producer is removed, then the associated data values for its measurable or measurables are removed.

Alternatively, if adding execution filters to a monitoring data producer is intended to be a permanent change, then all previously collected data can be dropped for filtered nodes.

For example, if the ssh connectivity to only cloud nodes is to be checked:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% monitoring setup use ssh2node
[...->monitoring->setup[ssh2node]]% executionmultiplexers
[...->executionmultiplexers]% show
Type           None
[...->executionmultiplexers]% use all nodes
[...->executionmultiplexers[All nodes]]% get types
Node
[...->executionmultiplexers[All nodes]]% set types CloudNode
[...->executionmultiplexers*[All nodes*]]% commit
```

After this is set, the monitoring data values for a non-cloud node can be checked. The `ssh2node` health check data values are then seen to be getting older, without any more updates being added. These health check data values can then be dropped using the `monitoringdrop` command from within the device mode of `cmsh` command.

It is wise to run a dry-run operation first, in order to make sure that no data values are unintentionally removed:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use node001
[...->device[node001]]% latestmonitoringdata | grep ssh2node
ssh2node  Network      PASS      43m 38s      filtered
[...->device[node001]]% monitoringdrop --dry-run --filtered
Entity      Measurable
-----
node001      ssh2node
[...->device[node001]]% monitoringdrop --filtered
Removed 1 entity, measurable pairs
[...->device[node001]]% latestmonitoringdata | grep ssh2node
[...->device[node001]]%
```

The `--force` option can be used to remove non-filtered old data, such as data from a disabled measurable. This is also useful when correcting a bad metric script. After fixing the script, the old (incorrect) data can be dropped.

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device
[...->device]% monitoringdrop --category default my-metric --force
Removed 32 entity, measurable pairs
```

A reboot or CMDaemon restart is required for the node to start collecting data again on a non-filtered metric which has been dropped with the --force option.

### 10.6.8 Monitoring Suspension And Resumption—The `monitoringsuspend` And `monitoringresume` Commands

The `monitoringsuspend` command suspends monitoring. The `monitoringresume` command resumes monitoring.

When suspension is applied to a head node, the regular nodes simply continue sampling data up to a maximum of 1 million samples per node. The available backlog is fetched upon resumption.

Suspension can be used during benchmarking to measure the results of benchmarking runs without having monitoring get in the way.

Suspension can also be used as a quick sanity check during regular cluster operation, as a way for an administrator to see if it is monitoring that is consuming excessive resources, in comparison with the other processes on the system. For example, running it on a head node (some output omitted or elided):

#### Example

```
[root@head1 ~]# sar -b 1
Linux 3.10.0-957.1.3.el7.x86_64 (head1) 10/14/2019 _x86_64_ (28 CPU)

04:41:00 PM tps rtps wtps bread/s bwrtn/s
04:41:02 PM 1481.82 0.00 1481.82 0.00 24355.56
04:41:03 PM 849.49 0.00 849.49 0.00 10367.68
04:41:04 PM 509.00 0.00 509.00 0.00 4440.00
04:41:05 PM 709.90 0.00 709.90 0.00 5853.47
04:41:06 PM 1209.00 0.00 1209.00 0.00 18168.00
^C

[root@head1 ~]# cmsh
[head1]%
[head1]% device use master
[head1->device[head1]]% monitoringsuspend
suspend 14 on head1
[head1->device[head1]]% monitoringinfo
-----  

Service          Queued      Handled    Cache miss  Stopped  Suspended
-----  

Mon::CacheGather   425        39,857     0           no       yes
Mon::DataConverter  0          0           0           no       yes
Mon::DataProcessor  0          6,609,369   0           no       yes
Mon::DataTranslator 0          311,658    0           no       yes
Mon::EntityMeasurableCache 0        0           0           no       yes
Mon::MeasurableBroker 0        0           0           no       yes
Mon::PerpetualTaskManager 0        0           0           no       yes
Mon::Replicate::Collector 0        0           0           yes      yes
Mon::Replicate::Combiner  0        0           0           yes      yes
...
[head1->device[head1]]% quit
[root@head1 ~]# sar -b 1
Linux 3.10.0-957.1.3.el7.x86_64 (head1) 10/14/2019 _x86_64_ (28 CPU)

04:41:58 PM tps rtps wtps bread/s bwrtn/s
04:41:59 PM 4.04 0.00 4.04 0.00 96.97
04:42:00 PM 3.00 0.00 3.00 0.00 96.00
04:42:01 PM 4.04 0.00 4.04 0.00 96.97
04:42:02 PM 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
04:42:03 PM 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
04:42:04 PM 43.00 0.00 43.00 0.00 528.00
```

```
04:42:05 PM 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
04:42:06 PM 3.06 0.00 3.06 0.00 130.61
04:42:07 PM 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
```

In the preceding example monitoring is seen to be consuming significant resources.

After running `monitoringsuspend`, resuming monitoring should not be forgotten, and it should be done soon enough after suspension. If that is not done, then backlogged samples that exceed the limit of 1 million samples per node on the regular nodes would be lost. Resumption is carried out with:

#### Example

```
[root@head1 ~]# cmsh
[head1]% device use master
[head1->device[head1]]% monitoringresume
resume 14 on head1
```

#### CMDaemon Directive Settings To Reduce Monitoring Resource Consumption

The following CMDaemon directive changes may reduce the resource consumption due to monitoring:

**Increasing the job account collection interval:** by increasing the value of the `JobsSamplingMetricsInterval` directive (page 867).

**Disabling job information collection completely:** by setting the value of the `JobInformationDisabled` directive to 0 (page 870).

**For the Slurm workload manager only, disabling job accounting:** by setting the value of the `SlurmDisableAccountingParsing` directive to 0 (page 866).

**Reducing the duration for which job data is stored:** by reducing the value of the `JobInformationKeepDuration` (page 871).

#### 10.6.9 Monitoring Pickup Intervals

All nodes cache their monitoring data. This cached data gets picked up by the active head node at a regular pickup interval.

It is possible to alter the pickup interval using the `monitoringpickup` command covered in this section. The command is run from device mode.

The current pickup intervals can be listed with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% monitoringpickup
Hostname      Interval    Times    Priority
-----
basecm11      2m          -        0
node001       2m          -        0
node002       2m          -        0
```

An interval can be set for one or more nodes. For example, a 1-minute pickup interval can be set as follows:

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% monitoringpickup --interval 1m
Changed 1 pickup intervals
[basecm11->device[node001]]% monitoringpickup
Hostname      Interval     Times     Priority
-----
node001        1m          1         100
```

The pickup interval is carried out only once by default, unless otherwise specified.

The **--times** option allows the number of times to be specified:

### Example

```
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% monitoringpickup --interval 1m --times 10
Changed 1 pickup intervals
[basecm11->device[node001]]% monitoringpickup
Hostname      Interval     Times     Priority
-----
node001        1m          10        100
```

The **--forever** option lets the pickup be carried out “forever”<sup>3</sup>.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% monitoringpickup --interval 30s --forever
Changed 1 pickup intervals
[basecm11->device[node001]]% monitoringpickup
Hostname      Interval     Times     Priority
-----
node001        30s         -         100
```

The **--priority** option applies the priority to equal or lower priority settings:

### Example

```
[basecm11]% device
[basecm11->device]% monitoringpickup -n node00[1-2]
Hostname      Interval     Times     Priority
-----
node001        1m          12        80
node002        1m          17        20
[basecm11->device]% monitoringpickup -n node00[1-2] --interval 5s --priority 50
Changed 1 pickup intervals
[basecm11->device]% monitoringpickup -n node00[1-2]
Hostname      Interval     Times     Priority
-----
node001        1m          12        80
node002        5s          1         50
```

In the preceding example, parameters for node002 only were changed, as the priority setting for node001 was higher than the applied priority option that was requested. Thus, the Interval value became 5s, as specified, the Times value defaulted to 1, and the specified Priority value of 50 was applied to node002 only.

The further behavior of the pickup from node002 is as follows:

After picking up data once from node002, five seconds from the change, the interval becomes the default of 2 minutes once again:

---

<sup>3</sup>Strictly speaking, “forever” means  $(2^{64} - 1)$  times on the 64-bit architecture that BCM runs on. For comparison,  $(2^{64} - 1)$  seconds is about 585 billion years.

```
[basecm11->device]% monitoringpickup -n node00[1-2]
Hostname      Interval    Times   Priority
-----
node001        1m          12      80
node002        2m          0       0
```

The yet further behavior of the pickup, during the next pickup event, is then as follows:

The Times value of 0 becomes unset. The unset value is represented by -, and is equivalent to --forever.

In other words, if a monitoring interval is changed, and the change is not specified as “forever”, then after the Times value has decremented to zero, the monitoring interval reverts to the default value of 2 minutes. The Times value then becomes a value of -, which implies forever, when the next pickup occurs.

The job metric sampler can also automatically modify the pickup interval for nodes. Every time a new job is started, all the nodes that are used by the job are assigned a modified pickup interval. The new values for the pickup can be managed in the jobmetricsettings mode of cmsh.

```
[basecm11->...->jobmetricsettings]% show
Parameter      Value
-----
...
Pickup interval  5s
Pickup priority  50
Pickup times     12
```

## 10.7 Offloaded Monitoring

*Offloaded monitoring* is a feature introduced in NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 9.1.

Traditional BCM monitoring uses a single (active) head node to manage monitoring. That is, to carry out sampling and to store results for measurables. Traditional monitoring can be used for clusters of thousands of nodes, assuming the default number measurables are running.

Offloaded monitoring in BCM is designed to share the more resource-intensive parts of monitoring across nodes so that the head node is not overloaded by monitoring. In practice, offloaded monitoring needs only to be considered for clusters that are greater than about 1000 nodes in size, assuming the clusters have the default number of measurables running.

There are some mandatory requirements, and some recommended settings, which are discussed later on in section 10.7.3.

### 10.7.1 Why Offloaded Monitoring?

Traditional monitoring is highly optimized, and with some care is typically able to deal with clusters of around 10,000 nodes with the default metrics. While it has the virtue of simplicity, it also has the following possible issues:

- there is a single point of failure, since monitoring runs on the active head node
- the head node performance as the number of nodes increases may not be sufficient. To get around this, monitoring may rely on increasingly expensive hardware, or on reducing the sampling that is carried out. With the default monitoring in place, with typical server hardware available at the time of writing of this section (2020), a limit is reached at around 20000 nodes.

These issues may not be acceptable, in which case it makes sense to consider offloaded monitoring.

The advantages of offloaded monitoring are:

- no single point of failure
- the ability to scale with the size of the cluster

A disadvantage is that offloaded monitoring is more complicated than single head monitoring. However, BCM simply implements it as a role that is assigned to nodes. The BCM backend then manages the details of offloaded monitoring.

### 10.7.2 Implementing Offloaded Monitoring

In cmsh offloaded monitoring is implemented via role assignment. The assignment can be carried out at the level of device, category, or configuration overlay:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% roles
[basecm11->device[node001]->roles]% assign monitoring
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->roles*[monitoring*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name              monitoring
Revision
Type              MonitoringRole
Add services      yes
Provisioning associations <0 internally used>
Number of backups 2
Backup ring        automatic
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->roles*[monitoring*]]%
```

If offloaded monitoring is to run in a highly available way, so that a failure of one monitoring node does not halt the monitoring system, then offloaded monitoring must be assigned to two or more nodes.

### 10.7.3 Background Details

A description of how offloaded monitoring works in the backend follows, because it should help the cluster administrator in understanding how and when to implement it.

Offloaded monitoring uses nodes that are assigned a monitoring role.

If there are N regular (non-head) nodes in a cluster that are being monitored, and if there are M monitoring nodes, then the idea of offloading is that each monitoring node covers N/M of the total monitoring storage, and N/M of the sampling scripts.

In other words, the cluster manager aims to evenly spread the total storage and sampling needed for all the regular nodes, over the nodes with a monitoring role.

BCM in the default state with no high availability does not run offloaded monitoring.

#### High Availability And Offloaded Monitoring With Just The Head Nodes Running As Monitoring Nodes

The simplest offloaded monitoring configuration is when high availability is configured. That is, when BCM is configured with two head nodes as described in Chapter 15. By default, a monitoring role is then assigned to both the head nodes.

This has the effect of doubling the monitoring capacity of the head node pair in NVIDIA Base Command Manager 9.1, in comparison with a head node pair in NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 9.0 and earlier.

The head nodes then carry out storage and sampling for the regular nodes as well as for themselves.

#### Offloaded Monitoring With Regular Compute Nodes Running As Monitoring Nodes

It is possible to run a compute node with a monitoring role assigned to them. This means that the compute node carries out storage and sampling as part of its monitoring role.

During a SYNC install—the default node provisioning for a healthy node—monitoring data persists.

Monitoring data would be wiped out during a FULL install (section 5.4.4). To provide a check on this, the node can be set up with the datanode setting (page 261), which requires a confirmation from

the cluster administrator before carrying out a FULL install. However, if the monitoring data values are that important, then the cluster administrator should consider backup solutions for it anyway.

### Offloaded Monitoring With Dedicated Nodes Running As Monitoring Nodes

For large clusters of around 10,000 or more nodes, a recommended practice is to have dedicated monitoring nodes. These are then regular nodes that are typically set up with the datanode setting, and are not used for other purposes such as HPC use. The dedicated monitoring nodes then carry out monitoring sampling and monitoring data storage for the regular nodes. Each of the M dedicated monitoring nodes takes on N/M of the regular nodes for itself, and records monitoring data from those N/M nodes.

This is illustrated by the following schematic, with arrows indicating the monitoring sampling flow for the head nodes (H1, H2), dedicated monitoring nodes (M1 to M3), and regular nodes (N1 to N6):

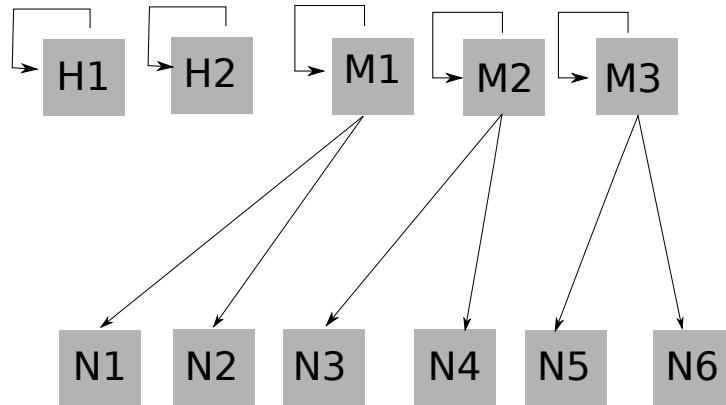


Figure 10.27: Monitoring Sampling Flow For Offloaded Monitoring With Dedicated Monitoring Nodes

A monitoring node in this configuration also copies backups of its monitoring data to other monitoring nodes. Number of backups for the monitoring role (section 10.7.2) is used to configure the number of backups. In the following schematic, two neighboring monitoring nodes are used as backup:

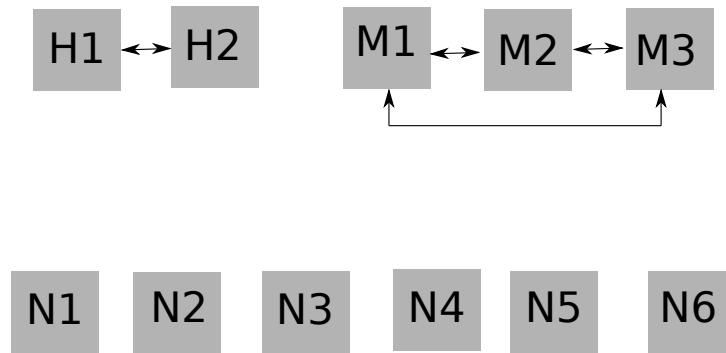


Figure 10.28: A Simple Backup Flow For Offloaded Monitoring With Dedicated Monitoring Nodes

The backups need not be on the same local network. For example, edge directors can be backed up to the head node.

If a monitoring node fails, then its monitoring data can be extracted from its backup nodes, and a new distribution of nodes to be monitored is allocated to the remaining monitoring nodes.

A backup is carried out using what the BCM developers call a *provisioning grab*. This is similar to grabimage (section 5.6), but this time designed for grabbing monitoring data. Like grabimage, provisioning grab also works on the basis of an rsync. This means that the first copy can take a while, but that subsequent copies are much faster.

Provisioning grabs are staggered to reduce bandwidth consumption and to reduce the likely amount

of monitoring data that goes out of date during an outage.

Dedicated monitoring nodes can cope with short outages of monitoring nodes, such as are caused by a CMDaemon restart on that monitoring node, or by a reboot of that monitoring node. These outages are not expected to take longer than a few minutes, and the monitoring nodes just continue on as normal, with some missing data samples. However, if an outage is greater than about 15 minutes, such as may happen if a monitoring node crashes, then a fully automated rebalancing of the loads on the monitoring nodes can only take place with the aid of backups.

The head nodes in this configuration are configured as HA, and without the monitoring role, and thus do not carry out monitoring data storage for the regular nodes. They do however still sample and store data for themselves, and carry out backups to each other.

**Backup nodes:** In addition, for larger clusters, another recommended practice is to have backup nodes (B1, B2 in the following schematic) for the dedicated monitoring nodes:

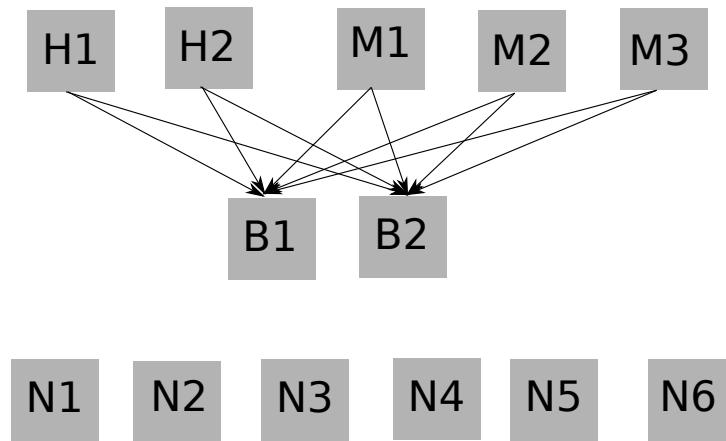


Figure 10.29: A More Sophisticated Backup Flow For Offloaded Monitoring With Dedicated Monitoring Nodes And Dedicated Backup Nodes

Backup nodes for the monitoring nodes take away the monitoring data backup task from the monitoring nodes. This frees up the monitoring nodes so that they can take on even more monitoring.

**Provisioning role on monitoring nodes:** If there is enough capacity on the dedicated monitoring nodes, and the cluster spends most of its time in a relatively steady state where its nodes do not reboot frequently, then adding a provisioning role to the monitoring nodes can be an efficient use of resources. In this case the monitoring nodes are obviously not so dedicated, but the advantage is that rebooting the entire cluster is then faster, at the cost of perhaps some extra load on the monitoring nodes during such a reboot.

#### Offloaded Monitoring Sampling And Backup Flows For Edge Computing

For a cluster with edge configured, the edge director flows in the edge network are analogous to head node flows in the local network. Thus, monitoring is carried out by the directors on the edge nodes, and the directors also sample themselves.

Thus, edge directors, not in a high-availability configuration, have the monitoring sampling data flow shown by the following schematic (figure 10.30):

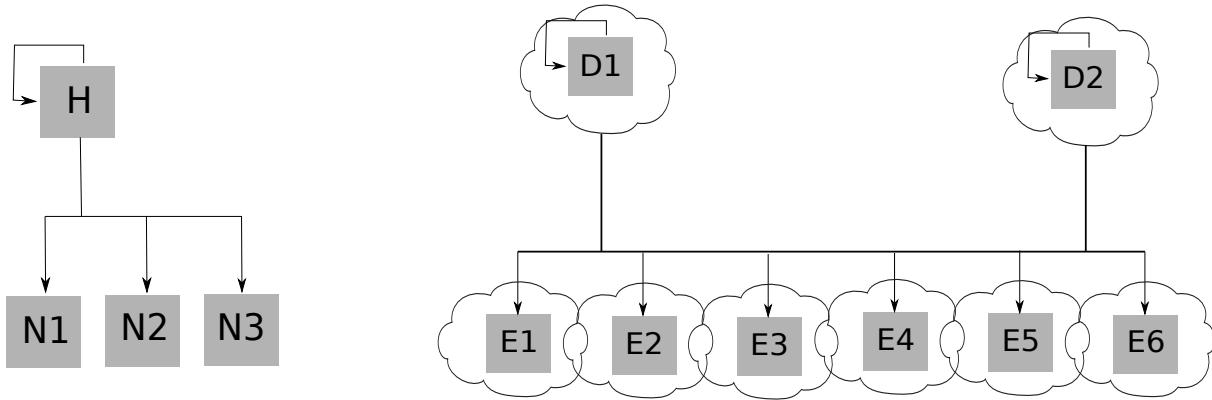


Figure 10.30: Sampling Flow For Offloaded Monitoring With Non-HA Edge Director Nodes

For edge directors that have been set up in an HA configuration (section 2.1.1 of the *Edge Manual*) the monitoring sampling data flow in the edge network is split up between directors, so that each director takes half of the edge nodes. This is analogous to how head nodes in an HA configuration take half of the regular nodes each (figure 10.31):

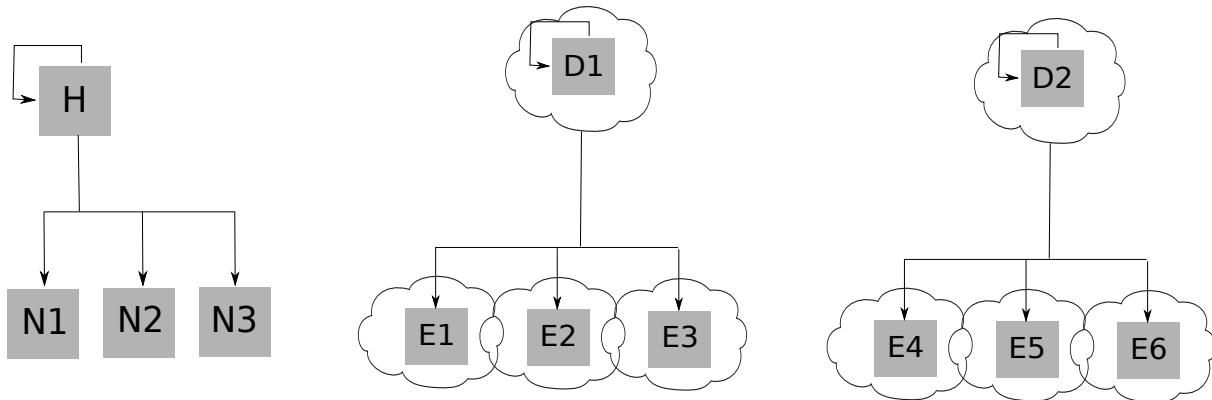


Figure 10.31: Sampling Flow For Offloaded Monitoring With HA Edge Director Nodes

The backup data flow for a non-HA configuration would then be as follows for an edge director (figure 10.32):

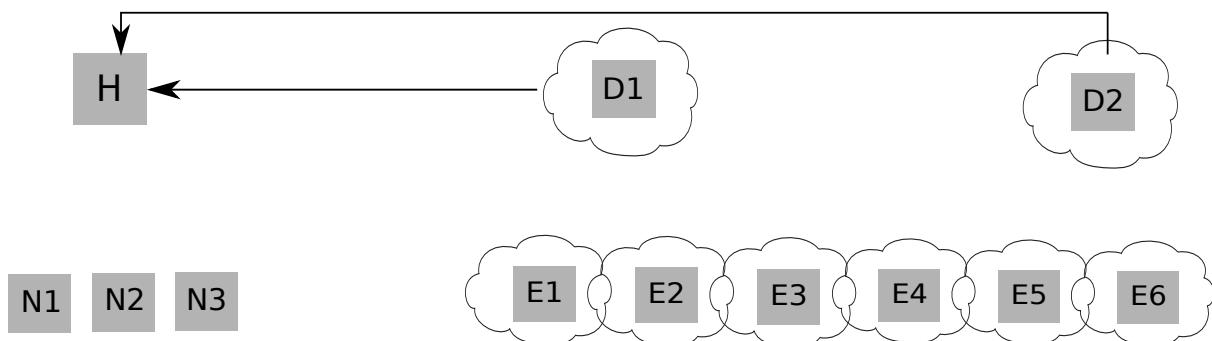


Figure 10.32: Backup Flow For Offloaded Monitoring With Non-HA Edge Director Nodes

Backing up to the head node is possible for an edge director. But it is usually unwise because one of the usual reasons to have a segregation of local and edge networks is to reduce data flow between the local and edge network.

With edge directors in an HA configuration, a big advantage is that backing up to the other edge director is possible and configured by default, rather than backing up to the head node (figure 10.33):

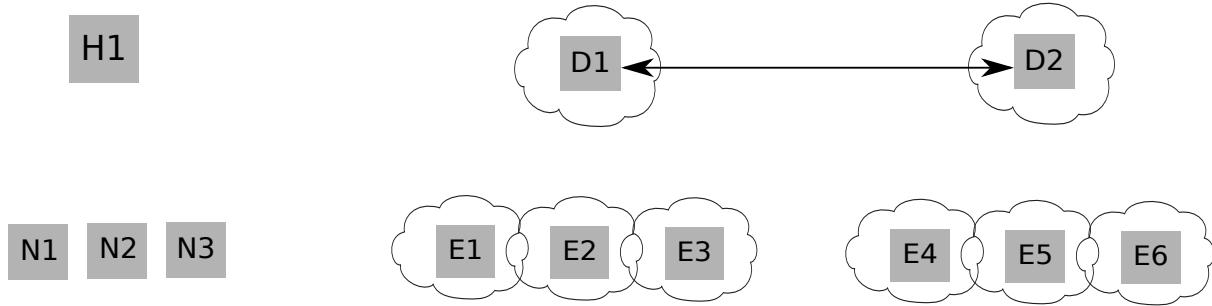


Figure 10.33: Backup Flow For Offloaded Monitoring With HA Edge Director Nodes

### Default Backups Configurations

The default backup configurations for monitoring data are:

- Head node HA : head nodes back up each other
- Edge node HA : directors back up each other
- edge directors: directors back up to (both) head nodes
- cloud directors: directors back up to (both) head nodes

#### 10.7.4 Examining Offloaded Monitoring With `monitoringoffloadinformation`

The `monitoringoffloadinformation` displays the monitoring relations between nodes. In a small HA cluster with a default configuration, with only two HA head nodes `basecm11-ha-a` and `basecm11-ha-b` in a monitoring role, the output of the command for node001 is:

```
[basecm11-ha-a->device[node001]]% monitoringoffloadinformation
Node      Selected Monitoring node   Viable Monitoring nodes
-----
node001  basecm11-ha-b           basecm11-ha-a,basecm11-ha-b
```

Here, node001 is seen as having its monitoring data going to one selected head node.

Viable in this context means a node that is capable of being used for monitoring, even if it may not be available now, for example due to a temporary outage such as a reboot. Both head nodes are thus capable of doing monitoring.

For one of the head nodes in the cluster, the output is:

```
[basecm11-ha-a->device[basecm11-ha-a]]% monitoringoffloadinformation
Node      Selected Monitoring node   Viable Monitoring nodes
-----
basecm11-ha-a  basecm11-ha-a           basecm11-ha-a
```

## 10.8 The User Portal

The user portal is a restricted version of Base View that allows non-root users to view some cluster manager data.

With a browser:

- If the head node landing page (figure 2.1) shows a greytoned user portal block with a  $\oplus$  within it, then it means that the user portal is not installed.

- If the head node landing page shows a colored user portal block with a chain link icon within it, then the user portal can be accessed via the icon.

The user portal can be added or removed from the cluster manager by adding or removing the `cm-webportal` package.

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# yum install cm-webportal
...
Is this ok [y/N]: y
Downloading Packages:
...
Complete!
```

#### 10.8.1 Accessing The User Portal

The user portal is compatible with most browsers using reasonable settings, and is supported for the same browsers that Base View supports (section 2.4).

The user portal is located by default on the head node, and can then be accessed in two ways:

- From the aforementioned link icon within the colored user portal block of the head node landing page.
- More directly using a URL of the form:

`https://<host name or IP address>:8081/userportal`

Both of these access routes lead to a user login page. The state of the cluster can then be viewed by the users via an interactive interface.

The first time a browser is used to log in to the portal, a prominent warning about the site certificate being untrusted appears.

The certificate is a self-signed certificate (the X509v3 certificate of Chapter 4 of the *Installation Manual*), generated and signed by Bright Computing, and the attributes of the cluster owner are part of the certificate. However, Bright Computing is not a recognized Certificate Authority (CA) like the CAs that are recognized by a browser, which is why the warning appears.

For a portal that is not accessible from the outside world, such as the internet, the warning about Bright Computing not being a recognized Certificate Authority is not an issue, and the user can simply accept the “untrusted” certificate, and the browser used then no longer displays such a prominent warning about the issue.

For a portal that is accessible via the internet, some administrators may regard it as more secure to ask users to trust the self-signed certificate rather than external certificate authorities. Alternatively the administrator can replace the self-signed certificate with one obtained by a trusted recognized CA, for example the one at `https://letsencrypt.org`, if that is preferred.

The user portal certificate discussed here is a webserver certificate, similar to that of the landing page, but served by CMDaemon rather than Apache.

#### 10.8.2 Setting A Common Username/Password For The User Portal

By default, each user has their own username/password login to the portal. Removing the login is not possible, because the portal is provided by CMDaemon, and users must connect to CMDaemon.

A shared (common) username/password for all users can be set in the configuration file, `common-credentials.json`. The default username/password settings are blank, which means that common access is not enabled:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/userportal/assets/config/common-credentials.json
{
  "username": "",
  "password": ""
}
```

To enable common access:

- the common username and password must be added via cmsh or Base View

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% user
[basecm11->user]% add forrestgump
[basecm11->user[forrestgump]]% set password
enter new password:
retype new password:
[basecm11->user*[forrestgump*]]% commit
[basecm11->user[forrestgump]]% quit
```

- the common username and password should be set in the appropriate place in the configuration file, common-credentials.json:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/userportal/assets/config/common-credentials.json
{
  "username": "forrestgump",
  "password": "1forrest1"
}
```

A minor stumbling block for the unwary administrator is:

If using Base View, then if the password for the username has already been saved in the browser's password manager before changing it in the configuration file, then the password saved in the browser's password manager may need to be changed to the new one explicitly.

### 10.8.3 User Portal Access

By default, the user profile (section 6.4) is set to readonly, which allows viewing of the information presented in the user portal, without allowing it to be altered.

### 10.8.4 User Portal Home Page

#### User Portal Overview Page

The default user portal home page is the Overview page. This allows a quick glance to convey the most important cluster-related information for users (figure 10.34):

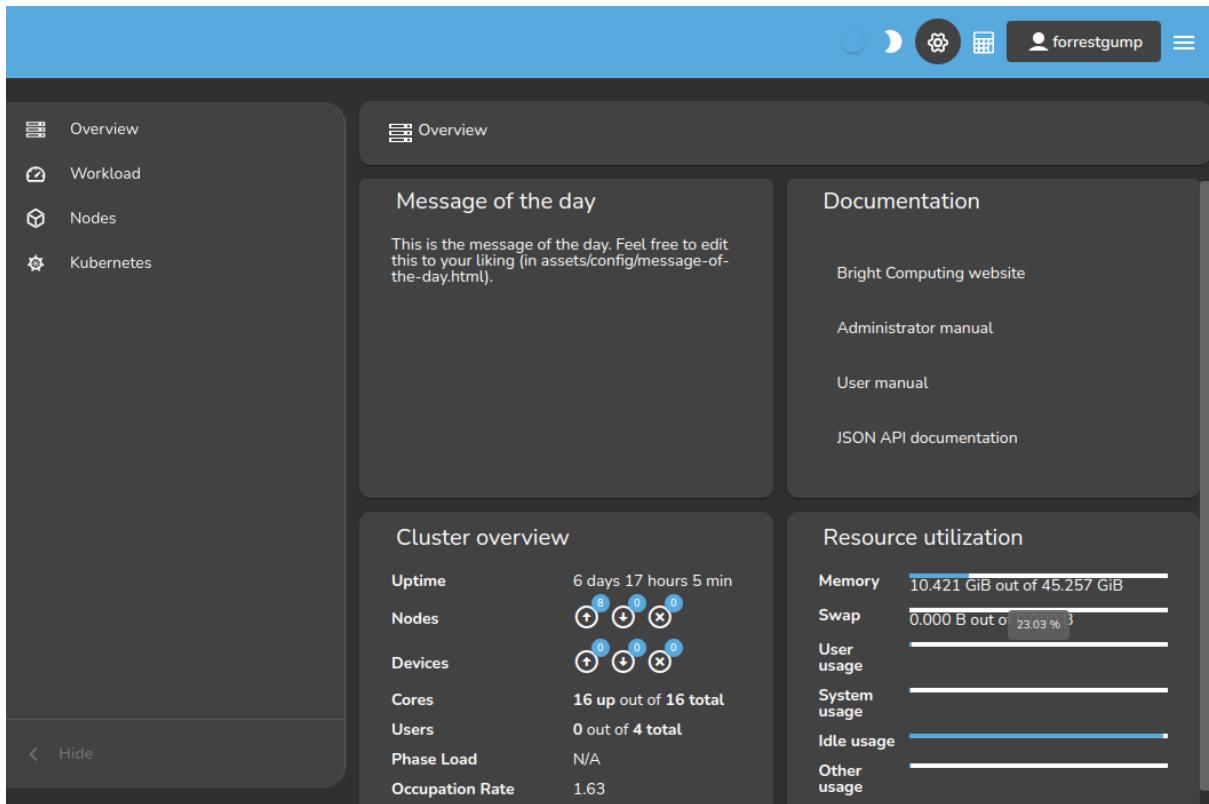


Figure 10.34: User Portal: Overview Page

The following items are displayed on the overview page:

- a Message Of The Day. This can be edited in `/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/userportal/assets/config/message-of-the-day.html`
- links to the documentation for the cluster
- an overview of the cluster state, displaying some cluster parameters. By default, it is refreshed every 10s.

The user portal is designed to serve files only, and will not run executables such as PHP or similar CGI scripts.

### User Portal Job Accounting Page

Job accounting charts can be viewed on clicking upon the associated icon, at the top right corner of the user portal page. The user portal's Accounting and reporting page for Base View is then displayed.

The accounting and reporting page allows job accounting to be viewed in an accounting panel in a very similar manner to how it is done in section 12.5.

## 10.9 Cloud Job Tagging

*Cloud job tagging* is about the ability for cloud job instances to have their associated cloud resources tagged. This is only possible for AWS at the time of writing (February 2020). Enabling cloud job tagging via NVIDIA Base Command Manager was introduced in version 9.0.

Tags are key-value pairs for AWS resources, and can be *applied* to resources. Typically, tags that are applied are set by the user via the Tag Editor of the Amazon Management Console, and up to 50 tags can be applied per resource.

Cloud job tagging should not be confused with the tagging of job metrics for job accounting (section 12.2). AWS cloud resource tagging is only active and handled within AWS.

Cloud job tags allow the time span between tag creation and removal to be associated with a particular workload on the node.

In cmsh, for a cloud node, cloud job tagging can be enabled within `cloud` mode by setting the `cloudjobtagging` parameter for the EC2Provider entity to yes

### Example

```
cmsh -c 'cloud; use amazon; set cloudjobtagging yes; commit'
```

If it is set to yes, then every job running on a cloud node using that specific provider is tagged according to the applied tags.

A subset of the tags for cloud jobs are *cost allocation tags*. Cloud job cost allocation tags allow AWS costs to be tracked for jobs. A cost allocation tag can be:

- an AWS generated tag: defined, created, and applied by AWS
- a user-defined tag: defined, created, and applied by the user

By default, BCM provides the following tag names when the cloud job tagging feature is enabled:

- `BCM_JOB_ID`
- `BCM_JOB_ACCOUNT`
- `BCM_JOB_USER`
- `BCM_JOB_NAME`

When CMDaemon sees that a job has started, the resources of that job are then tagged with the job ID, the job account, the job user, and the job name. When CMDaemon detects that the job has stopped, it removes the tags.

The AWS Cost Explorer can be used to view the AWS costs for a billing period according to tags.

Further information on tagging can be found at:

[https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/Using\\_Tags.html](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/Using_Tags.html).

Further information on using the Cost Explorer with cost allocation tags can be found at:

<https://docs.aws.amazon.com/awsaccountbilling/latest/aboutv2/cost-alloc-tags.html>

## 10.10 Event Viewer

Monitoring in BCM is normally taken by developers to mean how sampling with data producers is handled. However, cluster administrators using this manual typically consider watching and handling events in BCM to also be a part of a more general concept of monitoring. This manual is aimed at cluster administrators, and therefore this section on event viewing and handling is also placed in the current monitoring chapter.

BCM events can be handled and viewed in several ways. Event logging is enabled by default by the `EventLogger` directive (page 853).

### 10.10.1 Viewing Events In Base View

In Base View, events can be viewed by clicking on the Events icon of figure 10.5. This opens up a window with a sortable set of columns listing the events in the events log, and with by default with the most recent events showing up first.

### 10.10.2 Viewing Events In cmsh

The events command is a global cmsh command. It allows events to be viewed at several severity levels (section 10.2.7), and allows old events to be displayed. The usage and synopsis of the events command is:

```
Usage:   events
         events on [broadcast|private]
         events off [broadcast|private]
         events level <level>
         events clear
         events details <id> [<id>]
         events <number> [level]
         events follow
```

Arguments:

```
level info,notice,warning,error,alert
```

Running the command without any option shows event settings, and displays any event messages that have not been displayed yet in the session:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% events
Private events:    off
Broadcast events: on
Level:             notice
custom .....[    RESET    ] node001
```

Running the command with options allows the viewing and setting of events as follows:

- **on [broadcast|private]**: event messages are displayed as they happen in a session, with cmsh prompts showing in between messages:
  - If only `on` is set, then all event messages are displayed as they happen:
    - \* either to all open cmsh sessions, and also in Base View event viewer panes, if the event or its trigger has the “broadcast” property.
    - \* or only in the cmsh session that is running the command, if the event or its trigger has the “private” property.
  - If the further option `broadcast` is set, then the event message is displayed as it happens in all open cmsh sessions, and also in all Base View event viewer panes, if the event or its trigger has the “broadcast” property.
  - If the further option `private` is set, then the event message is displayed as it happens only in the cmsh session that ran the command, if the event or its trigger has the “private” property.
- **off [broadcast|private]**: disallows viewing of event messages as they happen in a session. Event messages that have not been displayed due to being forbidden with these options, are displayed when the `events` command is run without any options in the same session.
  - If only `off` is set, then no event message is displayed as it happens in the session. This is regardless of the “broadcast” or “private” property of the event or its trigger.
  - If the further option `broadcast` is set, then the event message is not displayed as it happens, if the event or its trigger has the “broadcast” property.
  - If the further option `private` is set, then the event message is not displayed as it happens, if the event or its trigger has the “private” property.

- `level <info|notice|warning|error|alert>`: sets a level. Messages are then displayed for this and higher levels.
- `clear`: clears the local cmsh event message cache. The cache indexes some of the events.
- `details <id>`: shows details for a specific event with the index value of `<id>`, which is a number that refers to an event.
- `<number> [info|notice|warning|error|alert]`: shows a specified `<number>` of past lines of events. If an optional level (info, notice,...) is also specified, then only that level and higher (more urgent) levels are displayed.
- `follow`: follows event messages in a cmsh session, similar to `tail -f /var/log/messages`. This is useful, for example, in tracking a series of events in a session without having the cmsh prompt showing. The output can also be filtered with the standard unix text utilities, for example: `events follow | grep node001`

A common example of events that send private messages as they happen are events triggered by the `updateprovisioners` command, which has the “private” property. The following example illustrates how setting the event viewing option to `private` controls what is sent to the cmsh session. Some of the output has been elided or truncated for clarity:

### Example

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]% events on private
Private events:    on
[basecm11->softwareimage]% updateprovisioners
Provisioning nodes will be updated in the background.
[basecm11->softwareimage]%
Tue Apr 29 01:19:12 2014 [notice] basecm11: Provisioning started: sendi...
[basecm11->softwareimage]%
Tue Apr 29 01:19:52 2014 [notice] basecm11: Provisioning completed: sen...
updateprovisioners [ COMPLETED ]
[basecm11->softwareimage]% !#events were indeed seen in cmsh session
[basecm11->softwareimage]% !#now block the events and rerun update:
[basecm11->softwareimage]% events off private
Private events:    off
[basecm11->softwareimage]% updateprovisioners
Provisioning nodes will be updated in the background.
[basecm11->softwareimage]% !#let this 2nd update run for a while
[basecm11->softwareimage]% !(time passes)
[basecm11->softwareimage]% !#nothing seen in cmsh session.
[basecm11->softwareimage]% !#show a 2nd update did happen:
[basecm11->softwareimage]% events 4 | grep -i provisioning
Tue Apr 29 01:19:12 2014 [notice] basecm11: Provisioning started: sendi...
Tue Apr 29 01:19:52 2014 [notice] basecm11: Provisioning completed: sen...
Tue Apr 29 01:25:37 2014 [notice] basecm11: Provisioning started: sendi...
Tue Apr 29 01:26:01 2014 [notice] basecm11: Provisioning completed: sen...
```

### 10.10.3 Using The Event Bucket From The Shell For Events And For Tagging Device States

#### Event Bucket Default Behavior

The BCM *event bucket* accepts input piped to it, somewhat like the traditional unix “bit bucket”, `/dev/null`. However, while the bit bucket simply accepts any input and discards it, the event bucket accepts a line of text and makes an event of it. Since the event bucket is essentially an event processing tool, the volumes that are processed by it are obviously less than that which `/dev/null` can handle.

By default, the location of the event bucket is at `/var/spool/cmd/eventbucket`, and a message can be written to the event pane like this:

## Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# echo "Some text" > /var/spool/cmd/eventbucket
```

This adds an event with, by default, the `info` severity level, to the event pane, with the `InfoMessage` "Some text".

### 10.10.4 InfoMessages

`InfoMessages` are optional messages that inform the administrator of the reason for the status change of a measurable, or an event in the cluster.

Measurable scripts can use file descriptor 3 within their scripts to write an `InfoMessage`:

## Example

```
echo "Drive speed unknown: Reverse polarity" >&3
```

### Event Bucket Severity Levels

To write events at specific severity levels (section 10.2.7), and not just at the `info` level, the appropriate text can be prepended from the following to the text that is to be displayed:

```
EVENT_SEVERITY_DEBUG:  
EVENT_SEVERITY_INFO:  
EVENT_SEVERITY_NOTICE:  
EVENT_SEVERITY_WARNING:  
EVENT_SEVERITY_ERROR:  
EVENT_SEVERITY_ALERT:
```

## Example

```
echo "EVENT_SEVERITY_ERROR:An error line" > /var/spool/cmd/eventbucket
```

The preceding example displays an output notification in the Base View event viewer as shown in figure 10.35:

CREATION TIME	MESSAGE	SEVERITY	SOURCE DEVICE
⚠ Mon Jul 03 2017 17:45:...	An error line	error	bright80
ⓘ Mon Jul 03 2017 17:45:...	Some text	notice	bright80
ⓘ Mon Jul 03 2017 17:34:...	The trigger 'Passing health checks' is active because the measurable '.schedulers' is PASS	notice	node001
ⓘ Mon Jul 03 2017 17:34:...	The trigger 'Passing health checks' is active because the measurable 'ntp' is PASS	notice	node001

Figure 10.35: Base View Monitoring: Event Bucket Message Example

### Event Bucket Filter

Regex expressions can be used to conveniently filter out the user-defined messages that are about to go into the event bucket from the shell. The filters used are placed in the event bucket filter, located by default at `/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/eventbucket.filter`.

### Event Bucket CMDaemon Directives

The name and location of the event bucket file and the event bucket filter file can be set using the `EventBucket` and `EventBucketFilter` directives from the CMDaemon configuration file directives (Appendix C).

### Adding A User-Defined Message To A Device State With The Event Bucket

While the event bucket is normally used to send a message to the event viewer, it can instead be used to add a message to the state of a device. The line passed to the echo command then has the message and device specified in the following format:

```
STATE.USERMESSAGE[.device]:[message].
```

The device can be anything with a status property, such as, for example, a node, a switch, or a chassis.

#### Example

```
echo "STATE.USERMESSAGE.node001:just right" > /var/spool/cmd/eventbucket
```

The state then shows as:

```
cmsh -c "device ; status node001"  
node001 ..... (just right) [ UP ]
```

If the device is not specified, then the current host of the shell that is executing the echo command is used. For example, running these commands from the head node, basecm11, as follows:

#### Example

```
echo "STATE.USERMESSAGE:too hot" > /var/spool/cmd/eventbucket  
ssh node001 'echo "STATE.USERMESSAGE:too cold" > /var/spool/cmd/eventbucket'
```

yields these states:

```
cmsh -c "device ; status basecm11"  
basecm11 ..... (too hot) [ UP ]  
cmsh -c "device ; status node001"  
node001 ..... (too cold) [ UP ]
```

The added text can be cleared with echoing a blank message to that device. For example, for node001 that could be:

```
echo "STATE.USERMESSAGE.node001:" > /var/spool/cmd/eventbucket
```

### Reloading CMDaemon Logging Configuration With Event Bucket

CMDaemon logging configuration is reloaded when CMDaemon is restarted (`systemctl restart cmd`). The logging configuration can also be reloaded without restarting CMDaemon by triggering the event bucket:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 etc]# echo LOGGING.RELOAD.CONFIG > /var/spool/cmd/eventbucket
```

### Using An Event Bucket During The Node-installer Stage

The node-installer runs before systemd is up on the node that is being provisioned. This means that CMDaemon is also not yet running on that node, so that the regular event bucket features are not available during that time. However, a simplified event bucket—the node-installer event bucket—is available during this stage.

The node-installer event bucket can be particularly useful if debugging larger initialize and finalize scripts (Appendix E).

To use it, text is echoed to `/tmp/eventbucket` within the node or category scripts. The text will show up (if permitted) within the sessions of cmsh, and within the events viewer of Base View.

There are two different modes for the node-installer event bucket:

1. Device status info-message updater mode:

**Example**

```
echo "info-message: this text will be shown in the device status" > /tmp/eventbucket
```

2. Warning event mode:

**Example**

```
echo "Some text that will become an event" > /tmp/eventbucket
```

**An Alternative To InfoMessages With The REST API**

A cleaner alternative to InfoMessages for status messages is the Status REST API call (section 4.2.1 of the *Developer Manual*).

**10.11 Monitoring Location With GNSS**

GNSS (Global Navigation Satellite System) is the term given to GPS and similar systems. GNSS can be used to allow devices with the appropriate GNSS hardware to work out their location. The hardware is commonly implemented as a PCI-X card. A use case for this is to allow an engineer to walk to a node with a mobile phone, or to determine a sensible provisioning host.

The hardware requires the ability to receive satellite signals via an antenna. From the signals, the time of receipt and location can be worked out. BCM makes the results available in the locations submode of the base partition of cmsh:

**Example**

[basecm11->partition[base]]% locations						
Type	Entity	Age	Latitude	Longitude	Height	Message
EdgeSite	Amsterdam West	2d 17h	52.1904	4.939	0	Amsterdam-South
EdgeSite	Fort-Collins	6d 7h	40.5538	-105.0849	0	Fort-Collins
HeadNode	rima	57m 3s	52.3927	4.8361	0	Amsterdam
PhysicalNode	bright-office-director	2d 16h	52.1903	4.9163	0	Amsterdam-South
PhysicalNode	bright-office-node001	2d 17h	52.1904	4.9617	0	Amsterdam-South
PhysicalNode	fort-collins-director	6d 7h	40.5538	-105.0849	0	Fort-Collins

```
[basecm11->partition[base]]%
```

In practice, due to environmental interference, a minimum resolution of 5m is common for longitude and latitude. The height determination is typically 1.5x more inaccurate. Vendor specifications should be referred to for details on obtaining greater accuracy, since there are technology enhancements that can improve the accuracy.

The location is determined at start up and on demand.

**10.12 Monitoring Report Queries****10.12.1 Monitoring Report Queries In cmsh**

There are usually several hundred sources of data in BCM, and they are often of different types. An administrator would sometimes like to see the output of the data sources grouped by particular nodes. The variety of types means that examining the data output according to grouping choices would normally be awkward.

The data output can be viewed in BCM with the help of a simple query language from within the monitoring report submode. The query language can be used to filter by grouping choices and data values.

### Data Sources For Monitoring Reports

The sources of data can be listed in report mode with the `fields` command:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->report]% fields | head -30
Name          Type      Values
-----
AlertLevel     METRIC
BIOS Date     SYSINFO   04/01/2014
BIOS Vendor   SYSINFO   SeaBIOS
BIOS Version  SYSINFO   SeaBIOS
BlockedProcesses METRIC
BufferMemory   METRIC
BytesRecv      COUNTER
BytesSent      COUNTER
...
...
```

### Filtering And Grouping For Monitoring Reports

A filter can be executed using the `execute` command on a specified field, and applying a filter grouping to it using an operator.

For example, in report mode, the already-existing "Dual cpu" object by default has the query property:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->report]% get dual cpu query
filter processors == 2 group_by cores "processor vendor"
```

With this, the operator `==` checks for dual CPU cores using a filter grouping on the field `cores`. An existing query can be executed with the `execute -q` option:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->report]% execute -q dualcpu
cores processor vendor Hostnames
-----
2 GenuineIntel nas,basecm11-a,basecm11-b
```

Similarly, the field `ssh2node` can have the filter grouping category applied to it using the operator `==` for all nodes that are up. This could then be executed.

If the `ssh2node` field output is a PASS for nodes that are in a category `gpu`, and `ssh2node` is also a PASS for `node001` and `node002`, but is a FAIL for `node003` and `node004`, then the report from the query for this, showing the non-empty groupings of hostnames, would be as indicated by the following session:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->report]% execute filter status == up group_by ssh2node category
ssh2node category Hostnames
-----
PASS    default  node001,node002
FAIL    default  node003,node004
PASS    gpu      gpu01..gpu20
[basecm11->monitoring->report]%
```

Alternatively, the query can be saved and run as follows:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->report]%
```

`add ssh2node-category`

```
[basecm11->monitoring->report*[ssh2node-category*]]%
```

`set query`

*the editor opens up and the line  
execute filter status == up group\_by ssh2node category  
is entered*

```
[basecm11->monitoring->report*[ssh2node-category*]]%
```

`commit`

```
[basecm11->monitoring->report*[ssh2node-category*]]%
```

`execute`
`ssh2node category Hostnames`

```
-----
```

`PASS default node001,node002`
`FAIL default node003,node004`
`PASS gpu gpu01..gpu20`

```
[basecm11->monitoring->report*[ssh2node-category*]]%
```

**Saving the list of nodes that the filter is applied to:** The --save option takes a file base name as its argument, and saves the list of nodes that the filter applies to. Suffixes appended to the file base name are taken from the filter that is used and from the grouping values.

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->report]%
```

`execute filter status == up group_by ssh2node category --save /tmp/test`

```
[basecm11->monitoring->report]%
```

`!cat /tmp/test-default-up.lst`
`node001`
`node002`

The file name thus takes the form: <basename>-<grouping value>-<filter value>.lst  
The file can be read within cmsh by using the operator ^

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->report]%
```

`device power status -n ^/tmp/PASS-default.lst`
`custom ..... [ ON ] node001`
`custom ..... [ ON ] node002`

## 10.13 Monitoring With nvsm

The `nvsm` command in the device mode of `cmsh` is a BCM wrapper for the NVIDIA System Management (NVSM) software stack.

- The NVSM stack provides a CLI and API for the end user to monitor NVIDIA DGX hardware. These are documented in detail at <https://docs.nvidia.com/datacenter/nvsm/latest/pdf/nvsm-user-guide.pdf>.
- The `nvsm` wrapper command of `cmsh` is a front-end to some parts of the NVSM stack.

The `nvsm` CLI can be run directly on a node with an NVSM software stack. That CLI should not be confused with the `nvsm` wrapper command that is run from within the device mode of `cmsh`, and which is what is described in the rest of this section (section 10.13).

Running `nvsm` without any arguments displays the `nvsm` help text:

```
[basecm11->device]% nvsm
Name:
nvsm - NVSM management

Usage:
nvsm [OPTIONS] versions
nvsm [OPTIONS] list

Options:
-n, --nodes <node>
List of nodes, e.g. node001..node015,node020..node028,node030 or ~/some/file/containing/hostnames

... many options skipped...

Examples:
```

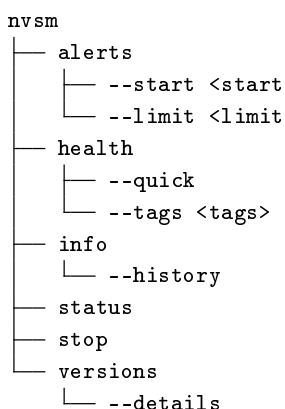
nvsm versions	Show versions reported by NVSM for this or all nodes
nvsm versions -c dgx-h100	Show versions reported by NVSM for the specified category of nodes
nvsm info	List the most recent health dumps information
nvsm alerts	List the alerts for this or all nodes
nvsm health -n dgx-[001-002]	Run the NVSM dump on the specified nodes
nvsm status -n dgx-[001-002]	Get the NVSM dump status on the specified nodes
nvsm stop -n dgx-001	Stop the NVSM dump status on the specified nodes

Tab-completion prompts to nvsm suggest nvsm-specific options:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% nvsm<TAB><TAB>
alerts    health    info      status    stop      versions
```

The nvsm-specific parts for this command are indicated by the following cmsh tree:



The preceding tree is discussed further next:

- **alerts:** Presents a list of the alerts that NVSM detects.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% nvsm alerts
Node      component_id description          event_time   message           message_details ...
-----  -----
node001    0          NVLink-C2C is reporti+ 1737722655  System entered degrad+ Unexpected Link Count...
node001    1          NVLink-C2C is reporti+ 1737722655  System entered degrad+ Unexpected Link Count...
```

```

node001 GPU0      GPU is reporting an e+ 1737722589 GPU0 is reporting NV GPU 0's NvLink link 0...
node001 GPU1      GPU is reporting an e+ 1737722589 GPU1 is reporting NV GPU 1's NvLink link 0...
node001 NVME0     PCI sub-system is rep+ 1737722589 System entered degrad Device is missing on ...
node001 StorageSub+ Storage Drive config+ 1737722595 Unsupported drive con+ Drive(s) missing or D...

```

It has the options:

- --start <start>: Sets the first index of the alert to list.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% nvsm alerts --start 5
```

This skips the first 4 alerts received, and displays the rest. The alerts are not necessarily received in same order as displayed by the nvsm alerts command.

- --limit <limit>: Sets a limit of <limit> alerts to be displayed.

- **health**: carries out a dump to a .tar.xz file for the specified node. The dump for a node named node001 is stored in /cm/shared/nvsm/node001 by default. It can take about 15 minutes to complete.
  - --quick: does a quick dump. This completes faster, but uses more memory and CPU.
  - --tags <tags>: a comma-separated list of tags for the dump.
- **info**: Lists the most recent health dump information.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% nvsm info
Node      Filename                      Size
-----
node001   /cm/shared/nvsm/node001_2025-01-24-04-51-31.tar.xz  417MiB
```

The file name for a node named node001 takes a timestamped format of:

```
node001_YYYY-MM-DD-HH-MM-SS.tar.xz
```

- --history: Lists historical dumps.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]]% nvsm info --history
Node      Filename                      Size
-----
node001   /cm/shared/nvsm/node001_2025-01-24-04-51-31.tar.xz  417MiB
node001   /cm/shared/nvsm/node001_2025-02-14-00-25-24.tar.xz  5.9MiB
```

- **status**: Shows the dump status of the node.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% nvsm status
Node      duration  log                                         status  success  Result  Error
-----
node001   748       Jan 25 02:53:16 node001 systemd[1]: Stopping cm-nv+ active    yes      good
```

- **stop**: Aborts the dump creation for the specified nodes. With stop, the dump that has been created until then remains available as a directory rather than a .tar.xz file

- **versions:** Lists the versions of various components used by NVSM.
  - **--details:** May provide some more details on the component.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% nvsm versions
Component           Version          Nodes
-----
FW_BMC_0            Version Unavailable    node001
FW_CPLD_0            Version Unavailable    node001
...many entries skipped...
cuda-driver          12.8             node001
datacenter-gpu-manager 1:4.0.0~10338    node001
datacenter-gpu-manager-fabricmanager 570.59-1   node001
dgx-release          7.0.0             node001
kernel               6.8.0-31-generic-64k  node001
nvidia-driver        570.59            node001
nvsm                 24.09.05          node001
os-release           Ubuntu 24.04 LTS (Noble Numbat) node001
platform              PG548            node001
sbios                02.03.13          node001
vBIOS 0              97.00.6c.00.03    node001
vBIOS 1              97.00.6c.00.03    node001
vBIOS 2              97.00.6c.00.03    node001
vBIOS 3              97.00.6c.00.03    node001
```

The `nvsm alert` command can inform the cluster administrator about hardware issues more conveniently than diving into the NVSM CLI. Viewing the output of the alert may be enough to get on with solving the issue.

If that is not enough, then examining the dump file produced by `nvsm health` allows for further troubleshooting by experienced administrators and developers.

The dump file can be extracted with:

### Example

```
root@basecm11:/cm/shared/nvsm # tar xvJf node001_2025-01-24-04-51-31.tar.xz
```

The extracted directories and files have the following layout if viewed at a two-level depth with `tree -L2`:

```

└── boot
    ├── System.map-6.8.0-31-generic-64k
    └── System.map-6.8.0-51-generic-64k
└── etc
    ├── apt
    ├── cm-release
    ├── debian_version
    ├── dgx-release
    ├── environment
    ├── issue
    ├── lsb-release
    ├── network
    └── nvsm
```

```
└── os-release
├── nvsmhealth_commands
│   ├── bash_-c_ulimit_-a_
│   ├── bash__version
│   ├── cat_sys_devices_virtual_dmi_id_bios_version
│   └── cat_sys_devices_virtual_dmi_id_product_name
```

*... hundreds of health commands skipped ...*

```
└── top_-b_-n_5
    ├── uname_-a
    ├── uptime_-p
    ├── _usr_bin_nv-disk-encrypt_info
    ├── virsh_list__all
    ├── xl_info
    ├── xrandr__verbose
    └── xset_-q
├── nvsm_resources.json
└── nvsm_show_health.json
├── proc
│   ├── cmdline
│   ├── cpuinfo
│   ├── driver
│   ├── fs
│   ├── interrupts
│   ├── iomem
│   ├── loadavg
│   ├── mdstat
│   ├── meminfo
│   ├── modules
│   └── version
├── result.json
└── usr
    └── share
└── var
    ├── crash
    └── log
```

# 11

# Monitoring: Job Monitoring

## 11.1 Job Metrics Introduction

Most HPC administrators set up device-centric monitoring to keep track of cluster node resource use. This means that metrics are selected for devices, and the results can then be seen over a period of time. The results can be viewed as a graph or data table, according to the viewing option chosen. This is covered in Chapter 10.

The administrator can also select a job that is currently running, or that has recently run, and get metrics for nodes, memory, CPU, storage, and other resource use for the job. This is known as *job monitoring*, which is, as the term suggests, about job-centric rather than device-centric monitoring. Job monitoring is covered in this chapter, and uses *job metrics*.

For perspective, monitoring as discussed until now has been based on using devices or jobs as the buckets for which resource use values are gathered. Administrators can also gather, for resources consumed by jobs, the resources used by users (or any other classifier entity) as the buckets for the values, with the help of promQL-based queries. This is typically useful for watching over the resources used by a user (or other classifier entity) when jobs are run on the cluster. User-centric monitoring—or more generally, PromQL-based classifier-centric monitoring—for jobs is termed *job accounting* and is covered in Chapter 12.

## 11.2 Job Metrics With Cgroups

Job metrics collection uses control groups (cgroups), (section 7.10). Each job is associated with a specific cgroup that is created in each of the three base cgroups that are associated with particular cgroup controllers. The cgroup controllers are kernel components that allow metrics to be collected for processes. The PIDs of these processes are in the cgroups tasks file.

NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11 uses the following cgroup controllers:

- `blkio`: provides block device metrics,
- `cpuacct`: provides CPU usage metrics,
- `memory`: provides memory usage metrics.

In NVIDIA Base Command Manager before version 9.1, each job had to be put by a workload manager into a unique cgroup. However, from NVIDIA Base Command Manager 9.1 onward, this is no longer necessary. By default, BCM still configures all supported workload managers to run jobs in cgroups, but it is now CMDaemon that manages the cgroup life cycle. Thus, CMDaemon ensures that:

- the necessary cgroups are created per job
- ensures that the cgroups are removed after the job is finished
- and that the last values of the metrics are collected.

Even if the administrator completely disables cgroups management in the workload manager, CMDaemon can still create and remove the three cgroups associated with the job, with each of those cgroups associated with one of the three previously-mentioned cgroup controllers.

If the workload manager creates some (or all three) cgroups for a job, then CMDaemon does not try to recreate the cgroup, but does take charge of the removal of cgroups.

In NVIDIA Base Command Manager before version 9.1, `cm-wlm-setup` configured `systemd` to use a joined cgroup with the following parameter settings:

### Example

```
[root@node001 ~]# grep JoinControllers /etc/systemd/system.conf
JoinControllers=blkio,cpuacct,memory,freezer
[root@node01 ~]#
```

Currently this is not needed. However, if this setting remains, then CMDaemon can still collect job metrics. In order to reset the cgroup layout to the default one, the administrator can run:

```
cm-wlm-setup --reset-cgroups
```

This command removes the `JoinControllers` parameter and regenerates `initrd`. A reboot of the nodes is required after this.

When a job is started CMDaemon detects all the job processes. CMDaemon then ensures that the required cgroups are created, and allocates the detected processes to those cgroups. CMDaemon does not configure the cgroups in any way—this is the responsibility of the workload manager.

The tables in Appendix G.1.8 list the job metrics that BCM can monitor and visualize.

If job metrics are set up (section 11.4), then:

1. on virtual machines, block device metrics may be unavailable because of virtualization.
2. for now, the metrics are retrieved from cgroups created by the workload manager for each job. When the job is finished the cgroup is removed from the filesystem along with all the collected data. Retrieving the jobs metric data therefore means that CMDaemon must sample the cgroup metrics before the job is finished. If CMDaemon is not running during a time period for any reason, then the metrics for that time period cannot be collected, even if CMDaemon starts later.
3. block device metrics are collected for each block device by default. Thus, if there are  $N$  block devices, then there are  $N$  collected block device metrics. The monitored block devices can be excluded by configuration as indicated in section 11.4.

## 11.3 Job Information Retention

Each job adds a set of metric values to the monitoring data. The longer a job runs, the more data is added to the data. By default, old values are cleaned up from the database in order to limit its size. In NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11 there are several advanced configuration directives to control the job data retention, with names and default values as follows:

Advanced Configuration Directive	Default value	Unit
<code>JobInformationDisabled</code>	0	
<code>JobInformationKeepDuration</code>	2419200	s
<code>JobInformationKeepCount</code>	8192	
<code>JobInformationMinimalJobDuration</code>	0	s
<code>JobInformationFlushInterval</code>	600	s

These directives are described in detail in Appendix C, page 870.

## 11.4 Job Metrics Sampling Configuration

Job metrics sampling can be configured to varying degrees. For clusters where hundreds of thousands of jobs are run in a day it often makes little sense to monitor jobs, and it is often helpful to disable the JobSampler and JobMetadataSampler data producers:

### Example

```
[basecm11]# monitoring setup
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]# set jobsampler disabled yes
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]# set jobmetadatasampler disabled yes
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]# commit
```

An alternative is to use the equivalent CMDaemon directive `JobInformationDisabled`, as explained on page 612.

If however CMDaemon is to keep the monitoring data, then the collection of job metrics is carried out from the cgroups in which a job runs. The administrator can tune some low level metric collection options for the JobSampler data producer in the `jobmetricsettings` submode:

### Example

```
[basecm11]# monitoring setup
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]# use jobsampler
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[JobSampler]]# jobmetricsettings
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[JobSampler]->jobmetricsettings]# show
Parameter          Value
-----
Revision
Exclude devices      loop,sr
Include devices
Enable advanced metrics   no
Exclude metrics
Include metrics
Sampling Type        Both
Map jobs to GPUs     yes
CGroup base directory /sys/fs/cgroup
Keep alive sleep     8w
Pickup interval      5s
Pickup times         12
Pickup priority      50
```

The configuration parameters are:

Parameter Name	Description
Exclude devices	Block devices for which job metrics will not collect metrics
Include devices	If the list is not empty then only block device metrics for these devices will be collected, while for other devices the metrics will be skipped

*...continues*

*...continued*

Parameter Name	Description
Enable advanced metrics	Indicates whether advanced job metrics should be enabled (default: no)
Exclude metrics	List of metric names that should not be collected
Include metrics	List of metric names that should be added to metric collection
Sampling Type	Type of metric sampling (default: both). The value can be bright, prometheus, or both. Setting it to bright disables Prometheus sampling, while setting it to prometheus disables sampling by BCM metrics
Map jobs to GPUs	Associate the job with GPUs where the job processes run, where possible (default: yes)
CGroup base directory	Cgroup base directory (default: /sys/fs/cgroup)
Keep alive sleep	Time the cgroup keepalive process sleeps (default: 8 weeks)
Pickup interval	Initially higher pickup interval (default: 5s). By default this settles down to the normal pickup interval (with a default of 120s) after the value of Pickup times has been exceeded.
Pickup times	Number of times to apply the initially higher pickup interval (default: 12)
Pickup priority	Priority of the pickup interval change (default: 50)

The amount of monitoring data gathered can also be reduced by reducing the Maximal age and Maximal samples for data producers (section 10.4.1) to smaller, but still non-zero values. A way to do this is described in section 14.8.4.

#### 11.4.1 The Job Metrics Collection Processing Mechanism

##### The cm-cgroup-job-keepalive Process

From NVIDIA Base Command Manager 9.0 onward, when a WLM job starts, CMDDaemon tracks the moment it starts and finishes, and is able to collect metrics for it. As part of this enhanced jobs metrics collection, a keepalive process, cm-cgroup-job-keepalive, is run for each job. Each keepalive process is a temporary process, and is added by CMDDaemon to the same cgroup that the original job was placed in by the WLM.

The process cm-cgroup-job-keepalive itself does no work. It sleeps, and by existing it prevents its cgroup being deleted.

After a job is finished, the workload manager would normally remove the related cgroup. However

the existence of the `cm-cgroup-job-keepalive` process prevents the deletion. This allows CMDaemon to collect the very last metrics data for the job from the cgroup when the job finishes. The CMDaemon then stops the `cm-cgroup-job-keepalive` process, and the cgroup is then removed because it is no longer needed.

When CMDaemon starts the `cm-cgroup-job-keepalive` process for a job, it passes the appropriate job ID, and how long it can run, in its command line options. Those values are not used by the `cm-cgroup-job-keepalive` process itself, but they are convenient for seeing what job the process is running for, and how long the job has run since it was started. For example, for a Slurm job with id 2 the running cgroup keeper process could look like:

### Example

```
[root@node001 ~]# ps auxf | tail -n 10 | cut -b18-45 --complement
root      1954  0  S1   18:12  0:03  _ /cm/local/apps/cmd/sbin/cmd -s -n -P /var/run/cmd.pid
root      2632  0  Ss   18:15  0:00      _ /cm/local/apps/cmd/sbin/cm-cgroup-job-keepalive --job 2 8w
root      2241  0  S    18:13  0:00  /cm/shared/apps/slurm/18.08.4/sbin/slurmd
root      2627  0  S1   18:15  0:00 slurmstepd: [2.batch]
cmsuppo+ 2631  0  S    18:15  0:00  _ /bin/bash /cm/local/apps/slurm/var/spool/job00002/slurm_script
cmsuppo+ 2642  0  S    18:15  0:00      _ /cm/shared/apps/stresscpu/current/stresscpu
cmsuppo+ 2643  0  S    18:15  0:00      _ /cm/shared/apps/stresscpu/current/stresscpu2
cmsuppo+ 2644  98  R    18:15  4:46      _ /cm/shared/apps/stresscpu/current/stresscpu2
[root@node001 ~]#
```

(The `cut` command is just used in the example to cut out the middle bits of the output so that it fits the page format well).

### The Keep Alive Sleep Time

By default the cgroup keeper process stops after 8 weeks. This value should be increased if the jobs that are expected to run will take longer than 8 weeks. The value can be set in the `Keep Alive Sleep` parameter of the job metrics settings. If a job runs for longer than the value of `Keep Alive Sleep`, then CMDaemon cannot collect the very last metrics (from around the time that the job has finished). However all other metrics will be collected for the job as expected, even if the job running time exceeds the `Keep Alive Sleep` time.

### The OOB intervals Parameter

When metric collection for a new job has just started, CMDaemon samples more frequently than later on. This more frequent sampling behaviour is defined by the parameter `OOB intervals` (out of band sampling interval) in the data producer configuration. In the case of job metrics collection this more frequent sampling behaviour is in `JobSampler`.

By default, the sampling interval retuns to the standard `Interval` value (with a default value of 120s), as defined in the data producer settings, after the value of `Pickup times` (with a default value of 12) has been exceeded.

The parameter `Exclude Metrics` can be used to exclude metrics that are currently enabled. For example, if advanced metrics collection is enabled then `Exclude Metrics` allows either default or advanced metrics to be excluded by name.

## 11.5 Job Monitoring In cmsh

The following commands are associated with monitoring job measurables within jobs submode (`cmsh > wlm<[workload manager]> > jobs`, section 7.7):

### The `measurables` Command

A list of job-associated measurables can be seen in the jobs submode (`cmsh > [<workload manager>]> > jobs`) using the `measurables` command with a job ID. For example (much output elided):

**Example**

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]% measurables 26
blkio.io_service_bytes_total
...
memory.usage
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]%
```

A list of node-associated measurables can also be seen if the -n option is used (much output elided):

**Example**

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]% measurables -n 26
...
gpu_power_usage:gpu0
...
memory.usage
```

**The filter Command**

The filter command uses options to provide filtered historic job-related information. It does not provide measurables data. The command and its options can be used to:

- retrieve running, pending, failed or finished jobs information
- select job data using regular expressions to filter by job ID
- list jobs by user name, user group, or workload manager

Running filter without options simply lists an unfiltered list.

Filtering on a job name can be done with the -n | --name option, and the --limit option can be used to limit the number of results displayed:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]% filter -n mgbench --ended --limit 2
Job ID Job name User Queue Submit time Start time End time Nodes Exit code
-----
26 mgbench alice defq May 14 11:21:41 May 14 11:36:36 May 14 11:50:24 node001 0
27 sleep bob defq May 14 11:23:00 May 14 11:50:24 May 14 12:00:25 node001 0
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]%
```

The data shown is retrieved from the running workload manager, as well as from the accounting file or database maintained by the workload manager.

Further details on the options to filter can be seen by running help filter.

**The info Command**

A handy command to obtain job information is info, followed by the job number:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]% info 25
Parameter Value
-----
Job ID 25
Revision stdin:/dev/null+
Job name data-transfer
User frank
Group frank
```

```

Account
Parent ID
WlmCluster          slurm
Queue               defq
Nodes               node002
Submit time         09/02/2023 12:06:56
Start time          09/02/2023 12:16:57
End time            09/02/2023 12:16:57
Persistent          no
Exit code           0
Status              COMPLETED
Requested CPUs      1
Requested CPU cores 0
Requested GPU        0
Requested memory    976KiB
Requested slots     0
Monitoring          yes
Comment
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]%

```

### The dumpmonitoringdata Command

The `dumpmonitoringdata` command displays data for measurables in the jobs submode (`cmsh > [<workload manager>] > jobs`). It is a very similar to the `dumpmonitoringdata` command for measurables in device mode (section 10.6.4). The main difference in the behavior of `dumpmonitoringdata` for these modes is that:

- In the jobs submode it shows monitoring data over a period of time for a specified job ID
- In device mode (`cmsh > device`) it shows monitoring data over a period of time for a specified device.

A less obvious difference is that:

- In the jobs submode the start and end time for the monitoring data for the job does not need to be specified. By default the start and end time of the job is assumed.
- In device mode the start and end time for the monitoring data for the device must be specified

The usage of the `dumpmonitoringdata` command for job measurables is:

```
dumpmonitoringdata [OPTIONS] [<start-time> <end-time>] <measurable> <job ID>
```

Options allow measurables to be retrieved and presented in various ways, including by maximum value, raw or interpolated data, and human-friendly forms. The user can also specify custom periods for the options.

For example, a historical job with job ID 4 that uses nodes node001 and node002 might display output for the job-associated measurable `memory.usage` as follows:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]% dumpmonitoringdata memory.usage 4
Start: Wed Feb  8 20:07:54 2023
End:   Wed Feb  8 20:07:55 2023
Nodes: node001,node002
Entity      Timestamp          Value      Info
-----      -----          -----      -----

```

```
node001    2023/02/08 20:07:54.586    0 B
node001    2023/02/08 20:07:55      621 KiB
node002    2023/02/08 20:07:54.888    160 KiB
node002    2023/02/08 20:07:55      632 KiB
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]%
```

The start and end times are optional, so specifying them is typically unnecessary. If they are not specified, then the data values that were found over the entire period of the job run are displayed.

That job with ID 26, for the example used in this section 11.5, happens to be `mgbench`, a GPU benchmarking program that runs on nodes. So displaying output for the node-associated measurable, `gpu_power_usage`, during the job run can also be useful:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]% dumpmonitoringdata gpu_power_usage:gpu0 26
Start: Thu May 14 11:36:36 2020
End:   Thu May 14 11:50:24 2020
Nodes: node001
Timestamp          Value      Info
-----
2020/05/14 11:36:36    no data
2020/05/14 11:37:03.883 195.58 W
...
2020/05/14 11:50:23.887 22.224 W
2020/05/14 11:50:24      22.2241 W
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]%
```

The data is shown per node if the job uses several nodes.

Further details of the options to `dumpmonitoringdata` for job metrics can be seen by running `help dumpmonitoringdata` within `jobs` mode.

### The statistics Command

The `statistics` command shows basic statistics for historical job information. It allows statistics to be filtered per user or user group, and workload manager. The statistics can be grouped by hour, day, week or a custom interval.

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]% statistics
Queued     Running    Finished    Error      Nodes
-----
24         1          25          4          34
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]%
```

Further details of the options to `statistics` can be seen by running `help statistics`.

# 12

## Monitoring: Job Accounting

### 12.1 Introduction

In addition to the concept of metrics for devices (Chapter 10), or the concept of metrics for jobs (Chapter 11), there is also the concept of metrics gathered for a classifier entity, for resources used during jobs. This last one is typically metrics gathered per user, for resources used during jobs.

Classifier-based metrics gathering for jobs can use classification done with PromQL queries on labeled entities (sections 12.2- 12.8), or it can be done with CMDBase database queries (section 12.9).

Classifier-based metrics gathering for jobs is more conveniently called *job accounting*, partly because it resembles the idea of an accountant watching over users to track their resource use while they carry out their jobs.

The concept, implementation, analysis, and visualization of job accounting are described in this Chapter.

For example, in BCM jobs resource usage can be presented per user. Thus, if there are jobs in a queue that are being processed, then the jobs can be listed:

#### Example

[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs]%						
Type	Job ID	User	Queue	Running time	Status	Nodes
Slurm	1325	tim	defq	1m 2s	COMPLETED	node001..node003
Slurm	1326	tim	defq	1m 1s	COMPLETED	node001..node003
Slurm	1327	tim	defq	1m 2s	COMPLETED	node001..node003
Slurm	1328	tim	defq	32s	RUNNING	node001..node003
Slurm	1329	tim	defq	0s	PENDING	

The resource usage statistics gathered per user, for example for a user `tim`, can then be analyzed and visualized using the job accounting interface of Base View (section 12.5).

### 12.2 Labeled Entities

In job accounting, job metrics during a run are tagged with extra labels, such as the job ID, host name, and the user running the job. The modified job metrics object that is tagged in this way then becomes a job accounting-related object, called a labeled entity.

Administrators interested in using job accounting can simply skip ahead and start reading about the Base View job accounting interface in 12.5, and just explore it directly. Those who would prefer some background on how job accounting is integrated with BCM and PromQL, can continue reading this section (12.2) and the next one ( 12.3).

### 12.2.1 Dataproducers For Labeled Entities

To view labeled entities in cmsh, the path to the `labeledentity` submode is:

```
cmsh > monitoring > labeledentity
```

The `labeledentity` submode allows job accounting-related objects, called labeled entities, to be viewed. The labels are in the form `<key>=<value>`, for example: `hostname="node001"`, or `user="alice"`.

The default, existing labeled entities are created from the built-in `JobSampler` and `JobMetadataSampler` dataproducers when a job is run. Custom samplers, of type `prometheus`, can be used to create further custom labeled entities. A custom sampler dataproducer, for example `customsamplerextras`, can be created from the `monitoring` setup mode of `cmsh` as follows:

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% monitoring setup
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% add prometheus customsamplerextras
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[customsamplerextras*]]%
```

The `customsamplerextras` dataproducer can now have its properties configured and committed as described in section 10.5.4.

### 12.2.2 PromQL And Labeled Entities

Labeled entities can be used by administrators to help create and debug job-related queries in the Prometheus query language, PromQL. PromQL is a part of the Prometheus monitoring and alerting toolkit (<https://prometheus.io>). Basic PromQL documentation is available at <https://prometheus.io/docs/prometheus/latest/querying/basics/>.

### 12.2.3 Job IDs And Labeled Entities

Each job ID has a number of labeled entities associated with it. Since the number of labeled entities scales with the number of nodes and jobs, the number of labeled entities can be very large. Therefore, if examining these entities using the CMDaemon front ends such as `cmsh` or Base View, then filtering or sorting the output is useful. For example, labeled entities associated with `node001`, and with the `JobSampler` data producer, and with job 1329 from the preceding output, could be viewed by filtering the full list of labeled entities as follows (output truncated and ellipsized):

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]% list|head -2; list|grep 'job_id="1329"' |grep node001 |grep JobSampler
Index  Name (key)
...
45446  hostname="node001",job="JobSampler",job_id="1329",wlm="slurm"
45447  device="vda",hostname="node001",job="JobSampler",job_id="1329",wlm="slurm"
45448  device="vda",hostname="node001",job="JobSampler",job_id="1329",mode="read",wlm="slurm"...
...
```

### 12.2.4 Measurables And Labeled Entities

The measurables (metrics) for an entity can be listed with the `measurables` (or `metrics`) command. For a particular entity with a `JobSampler` property and index value of 45447, the command can be run as follows:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]% measurables 45447
Type      Name                      Parameter          Class        Producer
...
Metric    job_blkio_sectors           Prometheus       JobSampler
Metric    job_blkio_time_seconds     Prometheus       JobSampler
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]%
```

In the `labeledentity` mode of `cmsh`, the `measurables` listing command, which lists the measurables for labeled entities, should not be confused with the `measurable` navigation command, which brings the administrator to the measurable submode under the main monitoring mode.

## 12.3 PromQL Queries

### 12.3.1 The Default PromQL Queries...

By default there are several predefined PromQL queries already available. The queries can be listed from the query submode:

#### Example

Name (key)	Start time	End time	Interval	Class
account_job_effective_cpu_seconds	now		0s	accounting
account_job_io_bytes	now		0s	accounting
account_job_memory_usage_bytes	now		0s	accounting
account_job_running_count	now		0s	accounting
account_job_waiting_seconds	now		0s	accounting
account_job_wall_clock_seconds	now		0s	accounting
account_job_wasted_cpu_seconds	now		0s	accounting
accounts_usage_gpu	now		0s	accounting
accounts_used_gpu	now		0s	accounting
accounts_wasted_memory	now		0s	accounting
cluster_cpu_usage_percent	now-1d	now	15m	cluster
container_memory_usage_bytes	now-1d	now	1h	container
container_network_received_bytes	now-1d	now	1h	container
container_total_cpu_usage_secs	now-1d	now	1h	container
container_total_fs_usage_bytes	now-1d	now	1h	container
cpu_usage_by_cluster	now-1d	now	1h	kubernetes
cpu_usage_by_deployment	now-1d	now	1h	kubernetes
cpu_usage_by_namespace	now-1d	now	1h	kubernetes
fs_usage_by_cluster	now-1d	now	1h	kubernetes
fs_usage_by_deployment	now-1d	now	1h	kubernetes
fs_usage_by_namespace	now-1d	now	1h	kubernetes
groups_job_allocated_nodes	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
groups_job_cpu_usage	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
groups_job_io_bytes_per_second	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
groups_job_memory_bytes	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
groups_job_waiting	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
groups_usage_gpu	now		0s	accounting
groups_used_gpu	now		0s	accounting
job_effective_cpu_seconds_job_name_for_user	now		0s	accounting/level/1
job_information_by_account	now		0s	drilldown/level/0
job_information_by_job_id_for_account_and_user_and_job_name	now		0s	drilldown/level/3
job_information_by_job_id_for_user	now		0s	drilldown/level/1
job_information_by_job_id_for_user_and_job_name	now		0s	drilldown/level/2
job_information_by_job_name_for_account	now		0s	drilldown/level/1
job_information_by_job_name_for_account_and_user	now		0s	drilldown/level/2
job_information_by_job_name_for_user	now		0s	drilldown/level/1
job_information_by_user	now		0s	drilldown/level/0
job_information_by_user_for_account	now		0s	drilldown/level/1
job_information_by_user_for_account_and_job_name	now		0s	drilldown/level/2
job_io_bytes_per_job_name_for_user	now		0s	accounting/level/1
job_memory_usage_bytes_per_job_name_for_user	now		0s	accounting/level/1

job_names_job_allocated_nodes	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
job_names_job_cpu_usage	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
job_names_job_io_bytes_per_second	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
job_names_job_memory_bytes	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
job_names_job_waiting	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
job_names_usage_gpu	now		0s	accounting
job_names_used_gpu	now		0s	accounting
job_running_count_job_name_for_user	now		0s	accounting/level/1
job_waiting_seconds_job_name_for_user	now		0s	accounting/level/1
job_wall_clock_seconds_job_name_for_user	now		0s	accounting/level/1
job_wasted_cpu_seconds_job_name_for_user	now		0s	accounting/level/1
jobs_wasted_allocated_gpus	now		0s	accounting
memory_usage_by_cluster	now-1d	now	1h	kubernetes
memory_usage_by_deployment	now-1d	now	1h	kubernetes
memory_usage_by_namespace	now-1d	now	1h	kubernetes
net_usage_by_cluster	now-1d	now	1h	kubernetes
net_usage_by_deployment	now-1d	now	1h	kubernetes
net_usage_by_namespace	now-1d	now	1h	kubernetes
unused_gpu_job_name_for_user	now		0s	accounting/level/1
used_gpu_job_name_for_user	now		0s	accounting/level/1
users_job_allocated_nodes	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
users_job_cpu_usage	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
users_job_effective_cpu_seconds	now		0s	accounting
users_job_io_bytes	now		0s	accounting
users_job_io_bytes_per_second	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
users_job_memory_bytes	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
users_job_memory_usage_bytes	now		0s	accounting
users_job_running_count	now		0s	accounting
users_job_waiting	now-1d	now	15m	jobs
users_job_waiting_seconds	now		0s	accounting
users_job_wall_clock_seconds	now		0s	accounting
users_job_wasted_cpu_seconds	now		0s	accounting
users_unused_gpu	now		0s	accounting
users_usage_gpu	now		0s	accounting
users_used_gpu	now		0s	accounting
users_wasted_allocated_gpus	now		0s	accounting
users_wasted_memory	now		0s	accounting
wasted_allocated_gpus_for_user	now		0s	accounting/level/1
wasted_memory_job_name_for_account	now		0s	accounting/level/1
wasted_memory_job_name_for_user	now		0s	accounting/level/1

The queries can be conceptually divided into their classes, which at the time of writing (May 2023) are: accounting, cluster, container, jobs, kubernetes, along with various drilldown levels which classifies the queries according to various groups. The grouping for drilldown levels can be confusing, and the drilldownoverview command (section 12.8.1) can be helpful in clarifying the query intention for these.

By default, queries of all classes are sampled over a period, except for the accounting and drilldown metrics.

A metric in the accounting class query is evaluated (interpolated) from existing values. These existing values are raw samples gathered over the period, up to the time when the query is evaluated.

### 12.3.2 ...And A Short Description Of Them

The description of each query can be listed with a little cmsh and unix text utility juggling:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->query] % foreach * (get name; get description) | paste - - | expand -t 60
```

This yields the following table:

Table 12.3: PromQL Query Descriptions

Name	Description
account_job_effective_cpu_seconds	CPU seconds effectively used by account for the last period
account_job_io_bytes	Total I/O by account during the last period in Bytes
account_job_memory_usage_bytes	Total memory usage by account during the last period in Byte seconds
account_job_running_count	Number of jobs running by account during the last period
account_job_waiting_seconds	Total waiting time for account jobs in seconds during the last period
account_job_wall_clock_seconds	Wall clock time used by account for the last period
account_job_wasted_cpu_seconds	CPU seconds allocated but not used by account for the last period
accounts_usage_gpu	Total used GPU time grouped by account for the specified period
accounts_used_gpu	Used GPUs, for values of use greater than or equal to 0.1%, averaged and grouped by account using them in the specified period
accounts_wasted_memory	The sum of the minimal wasted memory over all nodes per account for the last period
cluster_cpu_usage_percent	CPU usage percentage over all nodes up
container_memory_usage_bytes	Containers' memory usage in bytes
container_network_received_bytes	Containers' total Received bytes
container_total_cpu_usage_secs	Containers' total CPU Usage in seconds
container_total_fs_usage_bytes	Containers' total filesystem usage in bytes
cpu_usage_by_cluster	CPU usage by cluster in nr. of cores
cpu_usage_by_deployment	CPU usage by deployment in nr. of cores
cpu_usage_by_namespace	CPU usage by namespace in nr. of cores
fs_usage_by_cluster	Current FS I/O by cluster in Bytes
fs_usage_by_deployment	Current FS I/O by deployment in Bytes
fs_usage_by_namespace	Current FS I/O by namespace in Bytes

...continues

Table 12.3: PromQL Query Descriptions...continued

Name	Description
groups_job_allocated_nodes	Number of nodes allocated by groups
groups_job_cpu_usage	Effective CPU usage by groups
groups_job_io_bytes_per_second	Current I/O for group jobs in B/s
groups_job_memory_bytes	Current memory consumption for group jobs in Bytes
groups_job_waiting	Number of jobs currently waiting for every group
groups_usage_gpu	Total used GPU time grouped by group for the specified period
groups_used_gpu	Used GPUs, for values of use greater than or equal to 0.1%, averaged and grouped by groups using them in the specified period
job_effective_cpu_seconds_job_name_for_user	CPU seconds effectively used by job_name for a user for the last period
job_information_by_account	Generic job information drill down query grouped by account
job_information_by_job_id_for_account_and_user_and_job_name	Generic job information drill down query grouped by wlm and job_id for a specific account, user and job_name
job_information_by_job_id_for_user	Generic job information drill down query grouped by wlm and job_id for a specific user
job_information_by_job_id_for_user_and_job_name	Generic job information drill down query grouped by wlm and job_id for a specific user and job_name
job_information_by_job_name_for_account	Generic job information drill down query grouped by job_name for a specific account
job_information_by_job_name_for_account_and_user	Generic job information drill down query grouped by job_name for a specific account and user
job_information_by_job_name_for_user	Generic job information drill down query grouped by job_name for a specific user
job_information_by_user	Generic job information drill down query grouped by user
job_information_by_user_for_account	Generic job information drill down query grouped by user for a specific account
job_information_by_user_for_account_and_job_name	Generic job information drill down query grouped by user for a specific account and job_name
job_io_bytes_per_job_name_for_user	Total I/O by job_name for a user during the last period in Bytes
job_memory_usage_bytes_per_job_name_for_user	Total memory usage by job_name for a user during the last period in Byte seconds

...continues

Table 12.3: PromQL Query Descriptions...continued

Name	Description
job_names_job_allocated_nodes	Number of nodes allocated by job name
job_names_job_cpu_usage	Effective CPU usage by job name
job_names_job_io_bytes_per_second	Current I/O for jobs in B/s
job_names_job_memory_bytes	Current memory consumption for jobs in Bytes
job_names_job_waiting	Number of jobs currently waiting for every job_name
job_names_usage_gpu	Total used GPU time grouped by job name for the specified period
job_names_used_gpu	Used GPUs, for values of use greater than or equal to 0.1%, averaged and grouped by job name using them in the specified period
job_running_count_job_name_for_user	Number of jobs running by job_name for a user during the last period
job_waiting_seconds_job_name_for_user	Total waiting time for jobs by job_name for a user in seconds during the last period
job_wall_clock_seconds_job_name_for_user	Wall clock time used by job_name for a user for the last period
job_wasted_cpu_seconds_job_name_for_user	CPU seconds allocated but not used by job_name for a user for the last period
jobs_wasted_allocated_gpus	Average % of allocated GPUs wasted for jobs that ran in the specified period, averaged and grouped by job_id
memory_usage_by_cluster	Total memory usage by cluster during the last week in Bytes per second
memory_usage_by_deployment	Total memory usage by deployment during the last week in Bytes per second
memory_usage_by_namespace	Total memory usage by namespace during the last week in Bytes per second
net_usage_by_cluster	Network usage by cluster in Bytes per second
net_usage_by_deployment	Network usage by deployment in Bytes per second
net_usage_by_namespace	Network usage by namespace in Bytes per second
unused_gpu_job_name_for_user	Unused GPUs, for values of use less than 0.1%, averaged and grouped by job names using them in the specified period, for a particular user
used_gpu_job_name_for_user	Used GPUs, for values of use greater than or equal to 0.1%, averaged and grouped by job names that ran on them in the specified period, for a particular user

...continues

Table 12.3: PromQL Query Descriptions...continued

Name	Description
users_job_allocated_nodes	Number of nodes allocated by users
users_job_cpu_usage	Effective CPU usage by users
users_job_effective_cpu_seconds	CPU seconds effectively used by users for the last period
users_job_io_bytes	Total I/O by users during the last period in Bytes
users_job_io_bytes_per_second	Current I/O for user jobs in B/s
users_job_memory_bytes	Current memory consumption for user jobs in Bytes
users_job_memory_usage_bytes	Total memory usage by users during the last period in Byte seconds
users_job_running_count	Number of jobs running by users during the last period
users_job_waiting	Number of jobs currently waiting for every user
users_job_waiting_seconds	Total waiting time for users jobs in seconds during the last period
users_job_wall_clock_seconds	Wall clock time used by users for the last period
users_job_wasted_cpu_seconds	CPU seconds allocated but not used by users for the last period
users_unused_gpu	Unused GPUs, for values of use less than 0.1%, averaged and grouped by users using them in the specified period
users_usage_gpu	Total used GPU time grouped by user for the specified period
users_used_gpu	Used GPUs, for values of use greater than or equal to 0.1%, averaged and grouped by users using them in the specified period
users_wasted_allocated_gpus	Average % of allocated GPUs wasted for jobs that ran in the specified period, averaged and grouped by user
users_wasted_memory	The sum of the minimal wasted memory over all nodes per user for the last period
wasted_allocated_gpus_for_user	Average % of allocated GPUs wasted for jobs that ran in the specified period, averaged and grouped by job_id, for a particular user
wasted_memory_job_name_for_account	The sum of the minimal wasted memory over all nodes by job_name for a account for the last period
wasted_memory_job_name_for_user	The sum of the minimal wasted memory over all nodes by job_name for a user for the last period

The listings give an idea of what the query does.

For example, for the `users_job_cpu_usage` utility, the idea is that it shows the CPU usage for jobs for each user.

### 12.3.3 Modifying The Default PromQL Query Properties

The properties of a particular query can be shown and modified:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->query] % use users_job_cpu_usage
[basecm11->monitoring->query[users_job_cpu_usage]] % show
Parameter          Value
```

```

Name           users_job_cpu_usage
Revision
Class          jobs
Alias
Start time    now-1d
End time      now
Interval       15m
Description    Effective CPU usage by users
PromQL Query  <136B>
Access         Public
Unit           CPU
Price          0.000000
Currency       $
Preference     0
Drill down    <0 in submode>
Notes          <0B>

```

The PromQL query code itself is typically a few lines long, and can also be viewed and modified using get, and set.

#### 12.3.4 An Example PromQL Query, Properties, And Disassembly

The users\_job\_cpu\_usage query is a standard predefined query, and is used as an example here. The query shows the CPU usage by a user around the time the sample was taken. It is sometimes called an “instantaneous” value. However it is not that instantaneous, because its value is calculated by taking samples of the CPU usage over the last 10 minutes of the job run rather than at the query time. The code for the query can be viewed with:

##### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->query] % get users_job_cpu_usage promqlquery
sum by(user) (
  irate(job_cpuacct_usage_seconds[10m])
  * on(wlm, job_id, hostname) group_right()
  (job_metadata_is_running)
)
```

For those unfamiliar with PromQL, some disassembly of the users\_job\_cpu\_usage query is helpful.

Terminology used by PromQL and BCM, for the pieces used to build the query, is listed in the following table:

PromQL Terminology	Example	BCM Terminology
Query	users_job_cpu_usage	PromQL query
Instant query	job_cpuacct_usage_seconds	Metric (from JobSampler dataproducer, belonging to the Prometheus class)
Range vector	job_cpuacct_usage_seconds[10m]	Metric samples over a time span

As was mentioned before: job account metrics, unlike traditional metrics, are not directly associated with the device-related objects. For such metrics, the monitoring data command dumpmonitoringdata is therefore not accessed in cmsh from device mode or category mode.

Instead, the Prometheus metric job\_cpuacct\_usage\_seconds, for example, is accessed via the labeledentities mode.

The properties and interpolated values at a particular instant of time for the metric can be accessed via an instantquery such as (some output excised for clarity):

**Example**

```
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]% instantquery job_cpuacct_usage_seconds
Name          hostname job      job_id user   wlm   Timestamp Value
-----
job_cpaacct_usage_seconds node001 JobSampler 623     tony   slurm 15:52:15 129
job_cpaacct_usage_seconds node002 JobSampler 624     tony   slurm 15:52:15 71
...
```

The properties and interpolated values of the metric over a range of time can be accessed via a rangequery such as (some output excised for clarity):

**Example**

```
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]% rangequery --start now-2h --end now job_cpaacct_usage_seconds
Name          hostname job      job_id user   wlm   Timestamp Value
-----
job_cpaacct_usage_seconds node001 JobSampler 623     tony   slurm 13:52:15 82
job_cpaacct_usage_seconds node001 JobSampler 623     tony   slurm 14:52:15 97
job_cpaacct_usage_seconds node001 JobSampler 623     tony   slurm 15:52:15 129
job_cpaacct_usage_seconds node002 JobSampler 624     tony   slurm 13:52:15 46
job_cpaacct_usage_seconds node002 JobSampler 624     tony   slurm 14:52:15 23
...
```

The association of the instantquery and rangequery output with job accounts is because its data producer is JobSampler.

Further options for the instantquery and rangequery commands can be found in their help texts within cmsh.

**12.3.5 Aside: Getting Raw Values For A Prometheus Class Metric**

The PromQL language is aimed at providing an overall view of jobs and resource usage. The actual individual raw values that Prometheus metrics are built on—the entries in the Time Series Database (TSDB)—are not regarded as being important for the end user. The emphasis in PromQL is on seeing the values as seen by statistical reworking.

This section, which is about the raw TSDB values, is thus provided as background information for administrators who would anyway like to see what the raw values look like.

Raw values of the metric for a job ID can be accessed by using the index of the labeled identity that is associated with that job ID. For example, job ID 624 can have its index found with some grepping (some output elided or excised for clarity):

**Example**

```
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]% list|head -2; list|grep 'hostname='| grep 'job_id="624"'
Index  Name (key)                                Introduction Last used
-----
4060  hostname="node001",job="JobSampler",job_id="624", ... 13:30:03    16:00:03
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]%
```

The index for the job ID 624 is 4060. The job ID can be used by the dumpmonitoringdata command to show the series raw values along with their time stamps:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]% dumpmonitoringdata -24h now job_cpaacct_usage_seconds 4060
Timestamp      Value      Info
-----
```

```

2019/08/01 16:08:03.255    10s
2019/08/01 16:10:03.255    2m 10s
2019/08/01 16:12:03.255    4m 9s
2019/08/01 16:14:03.255    6m 9s
2019/08/01 16:16:03.255    8m 8s
2019/08/01 16:18:03.255    10m 8s
2019/08/01 16:20:03.255    12m 7s
2019/08/01 16:22:03.255    14m 6s
2019/08/01 16:24:03.255    16m 6s
2019/08/01 16:26:03.255    18m 5s
2019/08/01 16:28:03.255    20m 5s
2019/08/01 16:30:03.255    no data
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]%

```

These raw values are the values that are used for interpolation during PromQL queries.

The label names for job samples can be seen using the index:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]% show 4060
Parameter      Value
-----
Index          4060
Introduction   Thu, 01 Aug 2019 16:08:03 CEST
Last used     Thu, 01 Aug 2019 16:30:03 CEST
Name           hostname="node001",job="JobSampler",job_id="624",uid="1002",user="tony",wlm="slurm"
Permanent      no
Revision
```

### 12.3.6 ...An Example PromQL Query, Properties, And Disassembly (Continued)

Getting back from the aside about raw values, and continuing on with the example PromQL query from the start of this section (page 651), the query code for the query `users_job_cpu_usage` was:

```
sum by(user) (
  irate(job_cpuacct_usage_seconds[10m])
  * on(wlm, job_id, hostname) group_right()
  (job_metadata_is_running)
)
```

With the necessary background explanations having been carried out, the disassembly of this query can now be done:

The core of the query is built around the job sampler metric `job_cpuacct_usage_seconds`.

The `irate` measurement in this case calculates the rate of change based on the last two most recent values in the Prometheus range vector.

The Prometheus range vector is formed from the Prometheus instant query by using the square brackets with a time value enclosed (`job_cpuacct_usage_seconds[10m]`). The Prometheus instant query is, as the terminology table earlier pointed out, the Prometheus version of the job sampler metric.

Getting back to the range vector, a range vector in general is a series of values formed from the corresponding Prometheus instant query. With the instant query being `job_cpuacct_usage_seconds` here, the range vector is formed over a span of 10 minutes.

After the `irate` function has taken the average, the resultant is what in PromQL is called an instant vector value. This consists of data in the form {CPU seconds consumed during period, timestamp associated with time period sample}. The instant vector value is then joined against each vector element of the pair `job_id,hostname` to generate the labeled identifier for the job running on the node. The `group_right` of the result uses the `wlm, job_id` and `hostname` as the leading labels in the label identifiers.

The `job_metadata_is_running` function means that values are generated only while `job_metadata` is running. The `sum by(user)` function means that the metric is aggregated over all raw data and grouped by user.

Visualisation based on the result is most easily carried out by plotting job CPU usage for each user against time in the period specified, which can be done in a more user-friendly way with Base View.

The `users_job_wall_clock_seconds` query, is similar, and can be used to plot wall clock seconds consumed by a user over the last period:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->query]% get users_job_wall_clock_seconds promqlquery
sum by(user) (
  max_over_time(job_metadata_running_seconds[$period])
    * on(wlm, job_id) group_right()
  max_over_time(job_metadata_num_cpus[$period])
)
[basecm11->monitoring->query]%
```

Predefined queries can be executed in the labeledentity mode with the `-q` option:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]% instantquery -q users_job_wall_clock_seconds
# using default parameter: period=1w
Name          user      Timestamp           Value        Unit
-----
users_job_wall_clock_seconds  alice   Fri Feb 10 16:05:01 2023  17896.886001110077  s
users_job_wall_clock_seconds  bob     Fri Feb 10 16:05:01 2023  20670.46400117874   s
users_job_wall_clock_seconds  charlie Fri Feb 10 16:05:01 2023  10947.136002540588  s
```

If no period is specified with the `-p | --parameter` option, then the default period is `1w` as the output indicates.

If Base View is used instead of `cmsh`, then Prometheus queries can be selected via the navigation path:

*Menu bar > Accounting and reporting icon > Monitoring > PromQL Queries > Show/Hide query selection*

For example the `users_job_wall_clock_seconds` query can be selected, its query parameter can be set to 1 week, the change saved, and the query run.

## 12.4 Parameterized PromQL Queries

It is also possible to create parameterized queries using the `<key>=<value>` labels in the labeled entities mode.

This is handy for running the same query with different parameters or other drilldown options.

For example, an existing unparameterized query

```
users_job_wall_clock_seconds
```

can be used as a starting point:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->query]% get users_job_wall_clock_seconds promqlquery
sum by(user) (
  max_over_time(job_metadata_running_seconds[$period])
    * on(wlm, job_id) group_right()
  max_over_time(job_metadata_num_cpus[$period])
)
```

For convenience, the original query can be cloned over to a new, soon-to-be-parameterized, query called

```
users_job_wall_clock_per_account_seconds
using
```

```
[basecm11->monitoring->query]% clone users_job_wall_clock_seconds users_job_wall_clock_per_account_seconds
```

The idea is that Slurm accounts become a parameter in the new query.

Parameter fields can now be added to the query. All fields in `users_job_wall_clock_per_account_seconds` can be replaced verbatim. So any part of the query can be made into a parameter.

```
[basecm11->monitoring->query]% get users_job_wall_clock_per_account_seconds promqlquery
sum by(user) (
    max_over_time(job_metadata_running_seconds{account="${account}"}[$period])
    * on(wlm, job_id) group_right()
    max_over_time(job_metadata_num_cpus{account="${account}"}[$period])
)
```

Some further adjustments are:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->query]% use users_job_wall_clock_per_account_seconds
[basecm11->monitoring->query][use users_job_wall_clock_per_account_seconds]%
[basecm11->..._seconds*]%
[basecm11->monitoring->query*[use users_job_wall_clock_per_account_seconds]*]%
[basecm11->monitoring->query*[use users_job_wall_clock_per_account_seconds]*]%
[basecm11->monitoring->query*[use users_job_wall_clock_per_account_seconds]*]%
[basecm11->monitoring->query*[use users_job_wall_clock_per_account_seconds]*]%
[basecm11->monitoring->query*[use users_job_wall_clock_per_account_seconds]*]%
```

The new query can then be run by the administrator on demand.

The original query sums over all accounts:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]%
instantquery -q users_job_wall_clock_seconds
user      Timestamp          Value
-----
alice    Mon Jun 24 10:25:20 2019  28.787
bob     Mon Jun 24 10:25:20 2019  26.787
charline Mon Jun 24 10:25:20 2019 102.83
eve     Mon Jun 24 10:25:20 2019  58.574
frank   Mon Jun 24 10:25:20 2019  85.362
```

The parameterized query lets the administrator run the same query for specific accounts.

If Slurm accounts for physics `phys` and mathematics `math` have been created with

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# sacctmgr add account phys,math
```

then `account=phys` and `account=math`, are the `<key>=<value>` format options. The query can then be run with the `-p | --parameter` option as follows:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]%
instantquery -q users_job_wall_clock_per_account_second \
s -p account=phys -p period=1w
user      Timestamp          Value
-----
alice    Mon Jun 24 10:25:22 2019  28.787
charline Mon Jun 24 10:25:22 2019  29.787
frank   Mon Jun 24 10:25:22 2019  30.788
[basecm11->monitoring->labeledentity]%
instantquery -q users_job_wall_clock_per_account_second \
s -p account=math -p period=1w
user      Timestamp          Value
-----
bob     Mon Jun 24 10:25:37 2019  26.787
charline Mon Jun 24 10:25:37 2019  73.049
eve    Mon Jun 24 10:25:37 2019  30.787
```

### 12.4.1 Two Job GPU Metrics Used In PromQL Queries

There are two important job GPU metrics (section G.1.8) that are used in several PromQL queries. These two are:

1. The `job_gpu_utilization` GPU metric:

This is based on the `gpu_utilization` metric collected on GPU nodes via the DCGM library. The values it takes are in the interval [0, 1]. In DCGM the name of the metric is `DCGM_FI_DEV_GPU_UTIL`, and it represents the total GPU utilization.

The `gpu_utilization` metric values collected on the GPU are mapped to the job that uses the GPU at the time of the collection.

`job_gpu_utilization` is a labeled entity, tagged with a label representing a job. This allows the person carrying out PromQL queries to use such parameters as `job_id`, `job_user`, and so on. It is assumed that one GPU is used only by processes of a single job, but there can be several GPUs, each used by different jobs simultaneously. Each of the GPUs on the node has independent values of `job_gpu_utilization`.

One example of a PromQL query that uses the `job_gpu_utilization` GPU metric is `job_names_usage_gpu`, which has the query expansion:

```
sum by(job_name) (
  sum_over_time(job_gpu_utilization[${period}])
)
```

2. The `job_gpu_wasted` GPU metric:

The `job_gpu_wasted` metric is a labeled entity (tagged metric) and is based on the `job_gpu_utilization` metric. The `job_gpu_wasted` metric shows what fraction, out of 1, of the GPUs on the node were unused by a job despite being allocated by the workload manager for that job. It can take values in the interval [0, 1].

It is calculated as follows:

$$1 - \frac{\text{all\_gpus\_utilization}}{\text{requested\_gpus}}$$

where

- `all_gpus_utilization` is the average utilization for all `gpu_utilization` metric values collected in the interval [-1; +1] from the time of the metric calculation for all GPUs requested by the job on the node
- `requested_gpus` is the number of GPUs allocated for the job in the workload manager

For example:

If a job requests two GPUs on a node, and the job does not use any of those GPUs at all, then `job_gpu_wasted` takes the value 1.

If the same job uses half of the first GPU and does not use the second one, then the metric value is calculated as:

$$1 - \frac{(0.5+0)}{2} = 0.75$$

One example of a PromQL query that uses `job_gpu_wasted` is `jobs_wasted_allocated_gpus`, which has the query expansion:

```
avg by(job_id) (
  round(100 * avg_over_time(job_gpu_wasted[${period}])))
)
```

## 12.5 Job Accounting In Base View

Job accounting in Base View is designed to present accounts of jobs without having to construct command lines with syntaxes that can be tricky to deal with. One useful output format is as basic Excel-format spreadsheets.

Job accounting can be viewed within Base View's accounting mode by clicking on the calculator icon (≡) at the top right hand corner of the Base View standard display (figure 10.5).

By default, job accounting opens up with a dashboard report called K8S Container Metrics, which provides some Kubernetes container metrics panels (figure 12.1).

If Kubernetes containers have been running jobs that have been sampled, then pre-selected container-related queries can be run from these panels, and the data samples can be displayed as tables or plots. If Kubernetes containers have not been running jobs, then the pre-selected container-related queries have no data samples to display (figure 12.1):

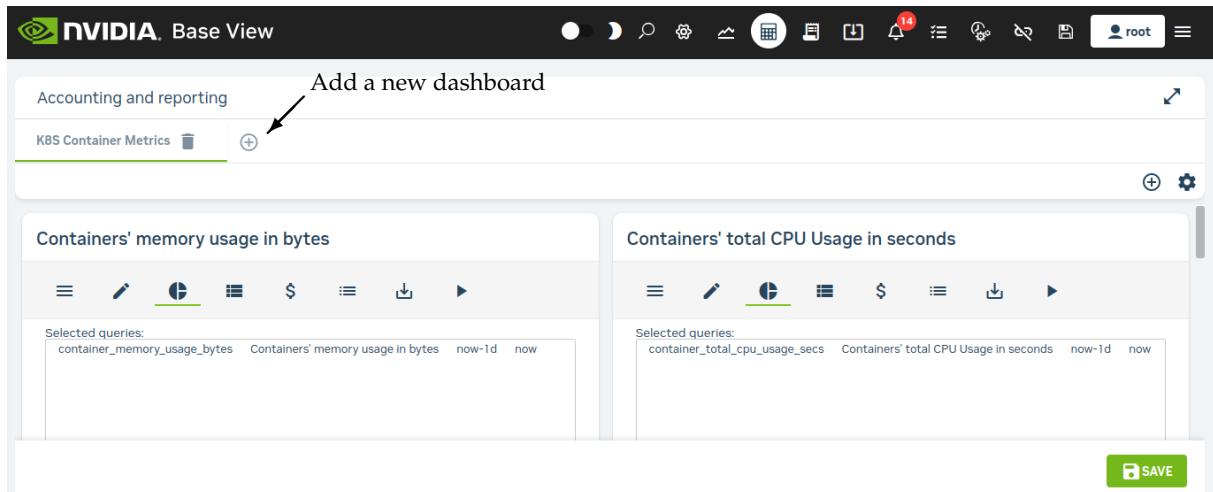


Figure 12.1: Job accounting: K8S container metrics panels

If the + icon next to the K8S Container Metrics tab is clicked, then a new dashboard report can be created. With the default options it displays a dashboard report with n accounting panel that has some pre-selected queries related to user jobs over the last period (figure 12.2):

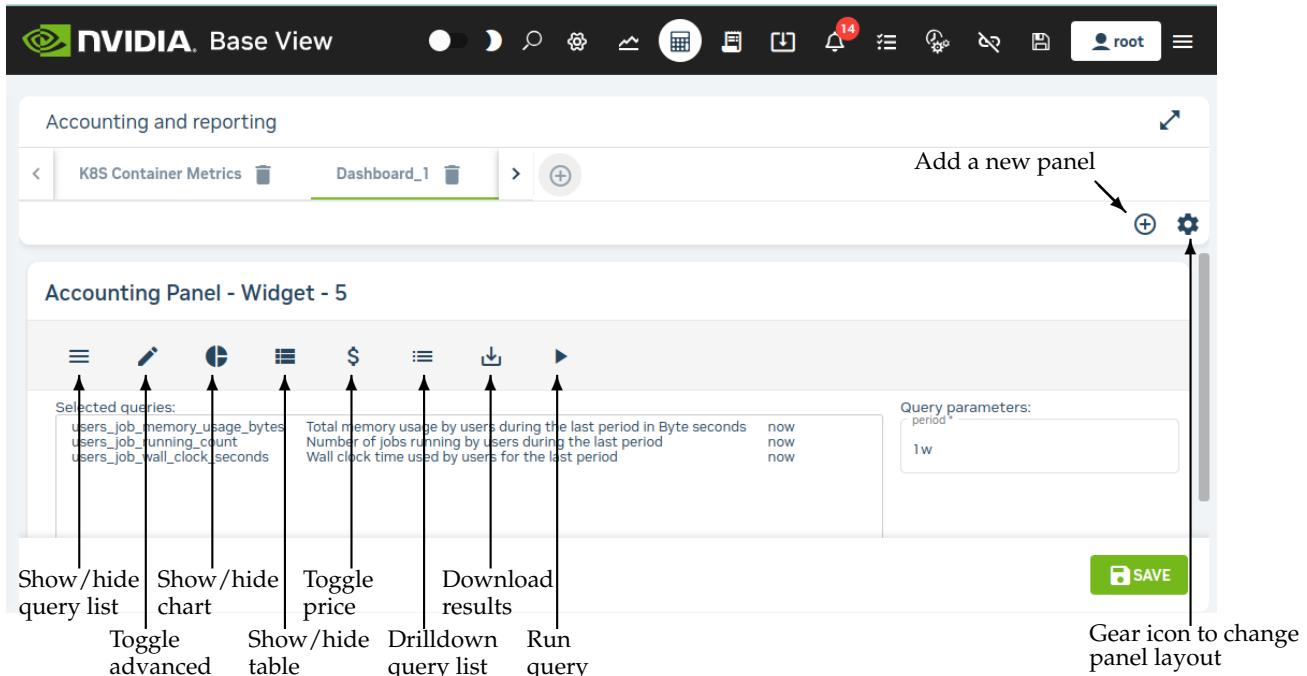


Figure 12.2: Job Accounting: Panel

### 12.5.1 Management And Use Of The Accounting Panel

The following description is illustrated by figure 12.2:

A Base View job accounting dashboard is made up of collections of Base View job accounting panels.

- To add a new dashboard, the  $\oplus$  button can be clicked in the dashboard menu bar. An existing dashboard can be removed by clicking on the trash icon in the menu bar associated with that existing dashboard.
- To add a new panel, the  $\oplus$  button can be clicked in the panel menu bar. An existing panel can be removed by clicking on the trash icon in the menu bar associated with that existing panel.

Job accounting is intended to present accounts of jobs. So, when a new dashboard is created, a dialog asks for inputs such as the time period over which the report is to be carried out, and the report name.

When the new dashboard is created, several predefined PromQL queries are selected by default. These can be modified using selection checkboxes within the query list. The query list can be shown or hidden by clicking on the Show/hide query list icon ( $\equiv$ ).

By default, when the new dashboard is saved, the selected queries are run and a table can be seen of the results.

How to run and view PromQL queries in the Base View accounting panel is described in this section (12.5). The PromQL query specification itself in Base View is described in more detail in section 12.6.

#### PromQL Queries Input In The Accounting Panel

The PromQL queries (page 645) that are to be used can be managed in the query list associated with the Show/hide query list icon ( $\equiv$ ).

Checkboxes can be ticked to select multiple queries, as long as the query classes allow it. The class restrictions are dynamically enforced by Base View by graying out the queries that cannot be checkboxed as query checkboxes are ticked.

To tick a new class of query in the same panel, all the queries that do not match the new class must first be unticked.

PromQL queries can be run in two modes: basic or advanced, by toggling the advanced icon (💡) of figure 12.2. In basic mode, several instant queries can be run. In advanced mode, only one instant query or a single range query can be run per panel.

### Display Of The Results Of PromQL Query Runs In The Accounting Panel: Rows, Pie Charts, And Plots

The display of a run result can be managed by clicking on the Show/Hide table icon (☰), or clicking on the Show/Hide chart icon (⊕).

- The table option toggles the display of the result as rows of data per classifier (user) (figure 12.3):

Drag here to set row groups				
NAME	USER	TIME	VALUE	UNIT
users_job_effective_cpu_seconds...	edgar	February 22, 2023 19:08	746.6	CPU*s
users_job_effective_cpu_seconds...	frank	February 22, 2023 19:08	652.3	CPU*s
users_job_effective_cpu_seconds...	alice	February 22, 2023 19:08	965.8	CPU*s
users_job_effective_cpu_seconds...	bob	February 22, 2023 19:08	833.5	CPU*s
users_job_effective_cpu_seconds...	charlie	February 22, 2023 19:08	665	CPU*s
users_job_effective_cpu_seconds...	david	February 22, 2023 19:08	647.7	CPU*s

Figure 12.3: Job accounting: PromQL query instant mode table display

The classifier can be a user, a cluster, an account, or any other key in the labeled entity.

- The chart option toggle toggles the display of the result as a chart.
  - For a PromQL instant mode query, the chart can be a pie or doughnut chart (figure 12.4), or an x-y plot if the x-axis values are time.

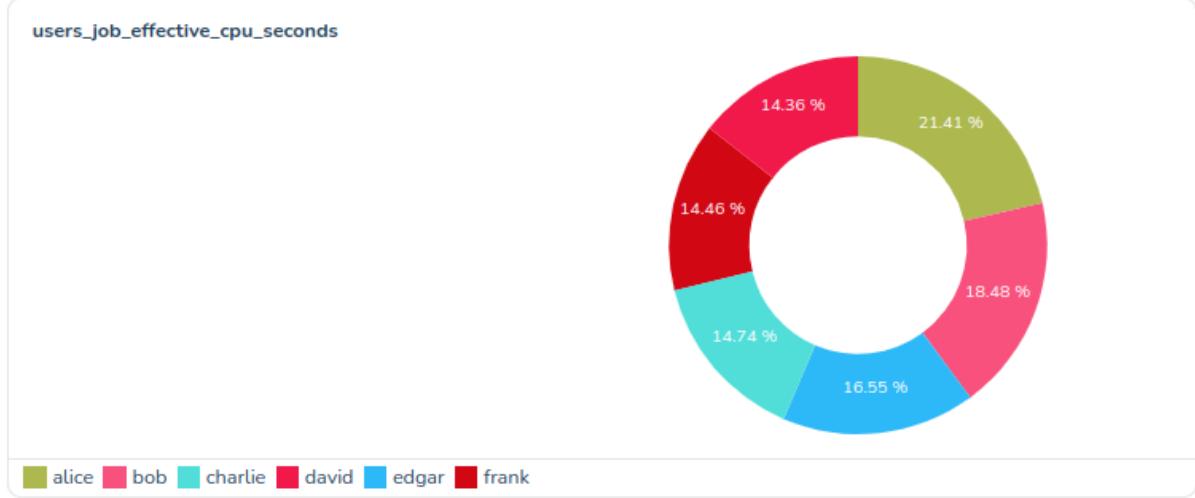


Figure 12.4: Job accounting: PromQL query instant mode pie chart display

The pie chart shows how much of the resource is used at that instant per user, per cluster, per account, or per other classifier.

How much of the resource is used can be displayed upon the pie chart in figures, either as the amount itself, or as a percentage of the total classifier amount.

The pie chart can display classifiers using a maximum of 10 slices, by default. If needed, the right amount of the smallest extra slices are grouped together as one slice, others, so that the maximum number is not exceeded

- For a PromQL range mode query, the chart is an x-y plot, with the x-axis being time (figure 12.5):

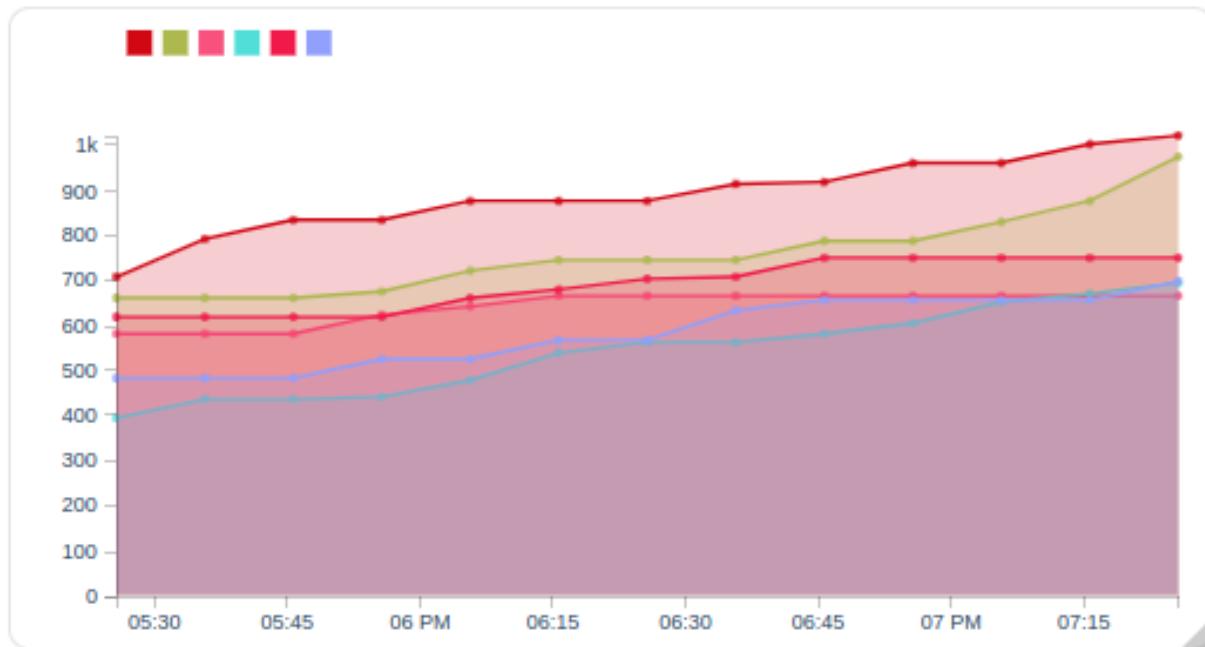


Figure 12.5: Job accounting: PromQL query instant mode x-y plot display

To have it display, the plot requires that

- \* the advanced mode (>Edit) be active
- \* the chart mode (Chart) be active
- \* the range query mode (Range) be active
- \* the query state be saved (Save), and then run (Run)

The plot shows resource use versus time. The plot can be per user, cluster, account, or other classifier.

A particular user or other classifier can be highlighted on the plot by placing the mouse pointer over the appropriate legend color icon.

How Base View is used to take PromQL query run inputs, and present PromQL query run results, has been covered in this section without going into much detail on PromQL specification itself for the run. PromQL specification is covered in more detail in the next section.

## 12.6 PromQL Query Modes And Specification In Base View

The advanced mode of Base View's PromQL query mode specification is essentially a superset of the basic mode specification. The options that are described next for advanced mode therefore essentially include descriptions for the options for basic mode.

Advanced mode has the following options:

- the PromQL Query: Advanced mode allows the PromQL query itself to be edited in an editing box.
- the Query Mode: This can be either Instant query mode (Instant), which deals with instant query types, or it can be Range query mode (Range), which deals with range query types. Only advanced mode handles both query modes—basic mode only deals with instant query mode.

- An Instant Query Type is executed at a particular instant. The instant at which it is executed is now by default, but it can be set to a time earlier on. It outputs a single number for each entity (for example, a user). The number for the entity is the interpolated data value for the PromQL query at that time. The data values obtained by the PromQL query are typically a list of the data values for each entity (for example, a list of memory consumed for each user) over a preceding time period, where the preceding time period is defined in the PromQL query.

The single number obtained by the query for each entity is typically used to summarize a value at that instant for that entity.

An example of the Instant query type is `users_job_waiting_seconds`. This provides the total waiting time, in seconds, for each user, for the jobs the users ran during the past period. The past period is a time period, such as a week, defined for the query. Thus, the waiting time is calculated at the instant of time (Time) specified for the query, over the past period.

If the Time parameter for the query is kept as the default value of now, then the query provides the latest value for each user.

If the Time parameter is set to a time earlier on, then the query picks up the value at that earlier time in the past, or provides an interpolated value at that earlier time, for each user, and bases the calculation on a past period going further back from that earlier time.

The display can be presented in rows of {user, value} pairs using the Show/Hide table icon (≡). The display can also be presented as a pie chart using the Show/Hide chart option (⊕). In the chart each slice is proportional to the value for the particular user, compared with the total value for all the users. Instead of a pie chart, the visualization can instead be a ring (or doughnut) chart, which is really just a pie chart with a hole in the centre.

Basic mode does have an advantage over advanced mode in that it allows multiple instant queries to be run in an account pannel. Correspondingly, multiple results are displayed in the form of multiple sets of table entries and multiple pie charts. An advanced mode instant query run, in contrast, only allows one instant query to be run, with a corresponding result of one set of table entries, and one pie chart.

PromQL allows a variety of time specifications. The interface validates whatever the interface user types in, and there is a calendar widget that allows an absolute time to be specified. Some useful time specifications are:

### Example

Time specification	What time is meant
now	at the time it is run
now-30m	30 minutes ago
now-1h	one hour ago
now-1h/h	an hour ago, starting at the start of that hour
now-2d	48 hours ago
now-0d/d	today's midnight (the most recently-passed midnight)*
now-1d/d	yesterday's midnight**
now-2d/d	day before yesterday's midnight
Thursday, July 11, 2019 17:00:00	an absolute time (as set by the calendar widget)

\*The meaning can be understood by looking at how /d operates. It rounds off the day by truncation, which in the case of `now-0d/d` means the midnight prior to now.

\*\*Similarly, yesterday's midnight is the midnight immediately prior to 24 hours ago.

The time units for PromQL are (<https://prometheus.io/docs/prometheus/latest/querying/basics/#range-vector-selectors>):

- \* s - seconds
- \* m - minutes
- \* h - hour
- \* d - day
- \* w - week
- \* M - month (31 days). M is not a PromQL unit, so it cannot be used inside a query. But it is a handy alias in BCM for an invariant time of 31 days.
- \* y - year

The - operator in Prometheus is an offset operator, used only after now in the time specification field. The /*<time unit>* syntax implies a start at that unit of time.

Thus if, for example, now-1d/d is set as the end time, then when the query runs, it picks up the values at “yesterday’s midnight.” For each user, the value is the number of seconds the job of the user was in a wait state for the week prior to yesterday’s midnight. It rounds off the day by truncation, which in the case of now-1d/d means the midnight prior to 24 hours ago. Varying the user means that the number of seconds varies accordingly.

The results of a run can be

- \* displayed in rows as values in Base View itself (figure 12.3)
- \* downloaded as a CSV file
- \* downloaded as an Excel spreadsheet.

The last two options are convenient for plotting graphs that are more sophisticated than what Base View offers.

#### - A Range Query Type

The Range query mode can only be accessed from advanced mode, and allows the range query type to be executed.

This range query type is executed over a time period. It fetches a value for each interval within that time range, and then plots these values.

An example of the Range query type is `users_job_memory_usage_bytes`. This fetches the total memory usage for jobs over intervals, grouped per user during that interval (figure 12.6). The query submitter can set Start time and End time parameters. However, very long ranges can be computationally expensive.

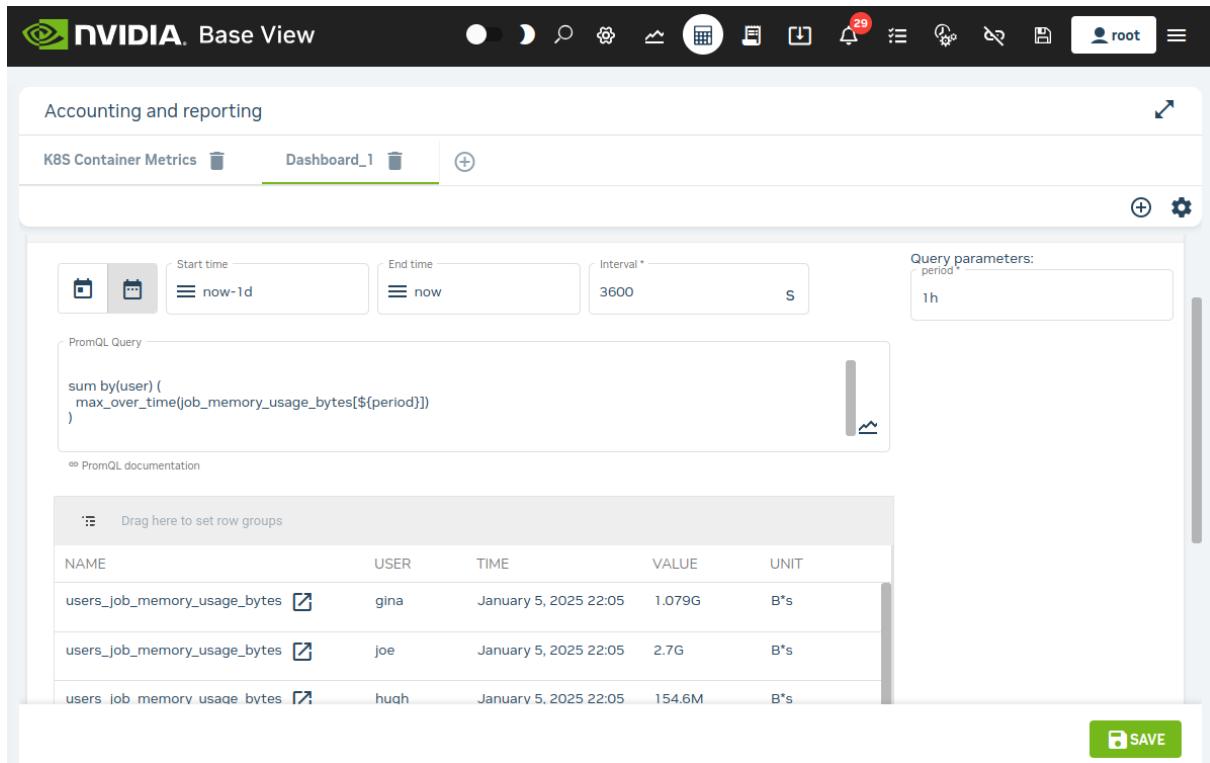


Figure 12.6: Job Accounting: User Values Over A Range

- the **Interval**: The interval is the plot interval along the time axis. When editing a range query type, the interval for a range query run is set when the Save button is clicked. Lower numbers lead to smaller intervals, hence higher resolution and higher query execution times. A value of 0 means that a reasonable default interval is attempted. Choosing an interval that is less than the sampling time of the metric is a bit pointless, and tends to lead to data values that display non-smooth behaviour.

## 12.7 Access Control For Workload Accounting And Reporting

The ability to view jobs is controlled by four tokens defined in a user's profile:

1. **GET\_JOB\_TOKEN**: Allows all running jobs to be seen.
2. **GET\_OWN\_JOB\_TOKEN**: Allows owned running jobs to be seen.
3. **GET\_JOBINFO\_TOKEN**: Allows all cached historic and running jobs to be seen.
4. **GET\_OWN\_JOBINFO\_TOKEN**: Allows owned cached historic and running jobs to be seen.

To retrieve monitoring data for the job, the token **PLOT\_TOKEN** must also be defined for the profile.

A job is always owned by the user that runs it. Ownership of a job can also be shared with other users by defining *project managers*. This establishes a 2-level hierarchy, with project managers above the *subordinates*, who are users that are assigned to the project manager. One or more *accounts*, can be assigned to project managers.

### 12.7.1 Defining Project Managers Using Internal User Management

Any user can be turned into a project manager. If the BCM LDAP server is being used, then the project manager can be configured via cmsh.

#### Example

alice can be made the project manager of bob and charlie. This allows her access to the job data of her subordinates:

```
[basecm11->user]% projectmanager alice
[basecm11->user*[alice*]->projectmanager*]%
[basecm11->user*[alice*]->projectmanager*]%
[basecm11->user*[alice*]->projectmanager*]%
[basecm11->user*[alice*]->projectmanager*]%
```

### Example

albert can be made the manager of the physics account. This gives him access to all jobs running under that account:

```
[basecm11->user]% projectmanager albert
[basecm11->user*[albert*]->projectmanager*]%
[basecm11->user*[albert*]->projectmanager*]%
```

Both mechanisms, users and accounts, can be combined to provide access control.

### Example

To limit access to jobs that are running under the physics account to a specific set of users:

```
[basecm11->user]% projectmanager albert
[basecm11->user*[albert*]->projectmanager*]%
[basecm11->user*[albert*]->projectmanager*]%
[basecm11->user*[albert*]->projectmanager*]%
[basecm11->user*[albert*]->projectmanager*]%
[basecm11->user*[albert*]->projectmanager*]%
```

## 12.7.2 Defining Project Managers Using External User Management

If an external user management server is used instead of the BCM LDAP server, then project managers cannot be defined in cmsh. Instead, a script has to be written that provides the definitions for project managers in the form of a JSON object.

The full path of the script, for example /path/to/the/script, has to be set as a value to the ProjectManagerScript parameter in cmd.conf. This is done by adding it to the AdvancedConfig directive (page 862):

### Example

```
AdvancedConfig = { "ProjectManagerScript=/path/to/the/script" }
```

The directive becomes active after restarting CMDaemon.

An example of a project manager script can be found at /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/cm-project-managers.py. It gives users access to each other's jobs if they share at least one group.

The easiest way to use the script is use a mapping to inform CMDaemon which of the other user's jobs each user has access to.

### Example

So if frank can access data belonging to bob and dennis, while bob can access data belonging to dennis, while dennis can only access his own data, then the project manager configurations can be set up as:

```
{
  "frank": ["bob", "dennis"],
  "bob": ["dennis"],
  "dennis": []
}
```

Account access control can also be included in the output of the script, by setting values for the users, accounts, and the boolean operator (and, or) options:

#### Example

```
{  
    "alice": {  
        "users": ["charline", "eve"],  
        "accounts": ["math", "chem"],  
        "and": True  
    },  
    "eve": {  
        "accounts": ["chem"]  
    }  
}
```

After restarting CMDaemon, it automatically runs this script when committing a change for a device or data producer. It is also possible to manually trigger the script to be run on the active head, by executing:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# echo "PROJECT.MANAGERS.UPDATE" > /var/spool/cmd/eventbucket
```

The script must not take more than a few seconds to process.

#### Workaround For Project Manager Script That Takes Too Long

If the script takes longer to run, then it must be run outside of CMDaemon, and its output should be saved as a file. If the output file is located at /path/to/the/file, then its path can be set as an input to the ProjectManagerFile parameter in cmd.conf. This is done by adding it to the AdvancedConfig directive (page 862):

#### Example

```
AdvancedConfig = { "ProjectManagerFile=/path/to/the/file" }
```

The project manager definitions become active after CMDaemon is restarted.

## 12.8 Drilldown Queries For Workload Accounting And Reporting

Metrics can be classified in various ways. Common ways are by:

- device: A typical hardware device is a node. Each node can then have its metrics, which are CPU usage, memory, storage, and other resource use, displayed over time. Device metrics are largely covered in this chapter in the sections up to and including section 10.8.
- job: With this classifier, each job that is run by a workload manager can have its metrics, which are CPU usage, memory, storage and other resource use, displayed over time. Job metrics are covered in Chapter 11.

Other ways of classifying metrics are part of workload accounting. With workload accounting, a workload manager runs jobs, and a job metric can be classified by:

- user
- job (job ID)
- account
- job name

The classification can be carried out singly. However, it can also be carried out at the same time, like filters. For example:

- each user could be classified for a particular job metric  
or
- a particular user could be classified for a particular job metric  
or
- a particular user could be classified for a particular job metric for a particular job ID only  
or
- a particular user could be classified for a particular job metric for that particular job ID only for a particular account only

A cluster administrator that uses several filters to get to the “bottom” of how resources are being used, functions in a manner reminiscent of someone drilling to the bottom to find something. This type of filtering is therefore called *drilldown*. Each filter corresponds to a *level* of drilldown.

Drilldown is a bit like how in cmsh the use of the `filter` command within `jobs` mode can narrow down what is displayed:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->jobs] % filter -n iozone -u edgar -a projecty
Job ID  Job name  User   Queue  Submit time  Start time  End time  Nodes   Exit code
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
15      iozone    edgar  defq   14:22:05   14:50:22   15:00:24   node001  0
19      iozone    edgar  defq   14:26:07   15:10:25   15:20:19   node001  0
25      iozone    edgar  defq   14:34:57   15:30:20   15:40:39   node001  0
36      iozone    edgar  defq   14:43:54   16:10:15   16:19:57   node001  0
41      iozone    edgar  defq   14:47:24   16:19:57   16:29:42   node001  0
```

except that in cmsh the value of the job metric is not specified or shown by the `filter` command.

Drilldown is also rather similar in concept to how pivot tables are used in Excel spreadsheets. Pivot tables are particular selections (like the filtered choices in drilldown). The selections are applied to a great deal of raw data. A function (like the metric in drilldown) is applied to the selection, to present the information more clearly to the end viewer.

In contrast with the `filter` output of cmsh, in Base View the job metric value is made visible in a table or in graphs over the period.

### 12.8.1 The `drilldownoverview` Command

The list of predefined drilldown queries of section 12.3.1 can be listed with the `drilldownoverview` command. This can be run from the `query` submode of the monitoring mode. The output, with some columns cut out for convenience, looks like:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->query] % drilldownoverview | cut -b1-54,80-143
Query                                         Drill down query
-----
accounts_wasted_memory                      wasted_memory_job_name_for_account (1)
job_information_by_account (0)              job_information_by_job_name_for_account (1)
job_information_by_account (0)              job_information_by_user_for_account (1)
job_information_by_job_name_for_account (1) job_information_by_user_for_account_and_job_name (2)
job_information_by_job_name_for_account_and_user (2) job_information_by_job_id_for_account_and_user_and_job\
```

```

job_information_by_job_name_for_user (1)          _name (3)
job_information_by_user (0)                      job_information_by_job_id_for_user_and_job_name (2)
job_information_by_user (0)                      job_information_by_job_id_for_user (1)
job_information_by_user_for_account (1)          job_information_by_job_name_for_user (1)
job_information_by_user_for_account_and_job_name (2) job_information_by_job_name_for_account_and_user (2)
                                                    job_information_by_job_id_for_account_and_user_and_job\
                                                    _name (3)

users_job_effective_cpu_seconds
users_job_io_bytes
users_job_memory_usage_bytes
users_job_running_count
users_job_waiting_seconds
users_job_wall_clock_seconds
users_unused_gpu
users_used_gpu
users_wasted_allocated_gpus
users_wasted_memory

```

[basecm11->monitoring->query]%

The queries have drilldown options. For example, the job\_information\_by\_account:

```

[basecm11->monitoring->query]% use job_information_by_account
[basecm11->monitoring->query[job_information_by_account]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name               job_information_by_account
Revision
Class              drilldown/level/0
Alias
Start time         now
End time
Interval           0s
Description        Generic job information drill down query grouped by account
PromQL Query      <61B>
Access             Public
Unit
Price              0.000000
Currency            $
Preference          0
Drill down         <2 in submode>
Notes              <0B>
[basecm11->monitoring->query[job_information_by_account]]%
[basecm11->monitoring->query[job_information_by_account]]% drilldown
[basecm11->monitoring->query[job_information_by_account]->drilldown]% list
Name (key)  Parameters   Query
-----
job_name    account      job_information_by_job_name_for_account
user        account      job_information_by_user_for_account
[basecm11->monitoring->query[job_information_by_account]->drilldown]% use job_name
[basecm11->monitoring->query[job_information_by_account]->drilldown[job_name]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name               job_name
Revision
Parameters         account
Query              job_information_by_job_name_for_account

```

## 12.9 The grid Command For Job Accounting

A way to carry out job accounting without relying on PromQL queries is the grid command of cmsh. The grid command can be accessed from within wlm mode for a workload manager. The command displays the nodes in a grid.

An example of grid output can be seen in the session of page 669.

As seen in that output, the nodes are displayed in a sequence of rows. For each row, the following row of nodes has the same sequence of nodes, but after an interval of time. Each node in the grid is displayed as a colored block called a *timeblock*. The timeblock displays a value for the classifier entity that the grid command associates with that node. The value for the timeblock is indicated by either its color, or by text superimposed on that timeblock, or both.

### 12.9.1 The grid Command Help Text

The command options to grid can be looked up in the help text:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% help grid
Name:
    grid - Show a grid of historic job information

Usage:
    grid [options]

Options:
    -n, --nodes node(list)
        List of nodes, e.g. node001..node015,node020..node028,node030 or ~/some/file/containing/hostnames

...
The classifier entity shown by grid can be called its mode, and it can be set with the --mode option. By default the mode is set to used, which means the classifier entity value displayed for the node is either that it is being used to run a job, or not being used to run a job.
```

A help text to describe modes available for a timeblock can be seen with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% grid --mode x
Mode x is not implemented
Valid modes:

used:      the node was used in this timeblock
count:     the number of jobs using the node in this timeblock
average:   the averaged time jobs used the node in this timeblock
user:      the user that used the node the most in this timeblock
group:     the group that used the node the most in this timeblock
account:   the account that used the node the most in this timeblock
job-name:  the job-name that used the node the most in this timeblock
job-id:    the job-name that used the node the most in this timeblock
count-cpu: the number of requested CPUs on the node in this timeblock
average-cpu: the time averaged of requested CPUs on the node in this timeblock
count-gpu:  the number of requested GPUs on the node in this timeblock
average-gpu: the time averaged of requested GPUs on the node in this timeblock
```

### 12.9.2 Some grid Command Examples

With the grid command, the timeblock value is given a color, and can also be indicated by an associated text value.

### Displaying Nodes Used

For example: over intervals of 10 minutes (600 seconds), from 28 hours ago to 27 hours ago, for nodes node001, node002, node003, the used mode for nodes can be displayed with the command:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% grid --after -28h --before -27h --interval 600 -n node001..node003 --text --legend
node001
node002
node003
```

Thu Nov 23 16:04:05 2023		
1.000000	0.000000	0.000000
0.000000	0.000000	1.000000
1.000000	1.000000	1.000000
1.000000	1.000000	1.000000
1.000000	1.000000	1.000000
1.000000	1.000000	1.000000
0.000000	0.000000	0.000000
Thu Nov 23 17:04:05 2023		

Not running a job	Running a job
-------------------	---------------

The --legend option provides a color legend after the display, and the --text option for this mode overwrites the timeblock with an associated value of 1.00000 or 0.00000.

The time specification is explained in detail in section 12.9.3.

### Displaying Users Usage Of Nodes

Another example, which displays users that used the node the most, and their usage as a percentage, per timeblock of 600s, over a time from 5370 minutes in the past to 5350 minutes in the past:

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% grid --mode user --after -5370m --before -5350m -n node001..node003 --interval 600 \
--text --legend
node001
node002
node003
```

Thu Nov 23 16:23:59 2023		
bob (10%)	joe (9%)	carol (9%)
bob (7%)	joe (9%)	eve (20%)
dennis (11%)	dennis (5%)	hugh (9%)
Thu Nov 23 16:43:59 2023		

joe	eve	bob	carol	hugh	dennis
-----	-----	-----	-------	------	--------

The display percentage can be disabled with the --no-percent option.

### Displaying Larger Numbers Of Nodes

For larger clusters, the administrator can view the grid output over a larger monitor, or over several monitors, and perhaps using higher resolutions to get a colour map. Figure 12.7 shows an output for 128 nodes:

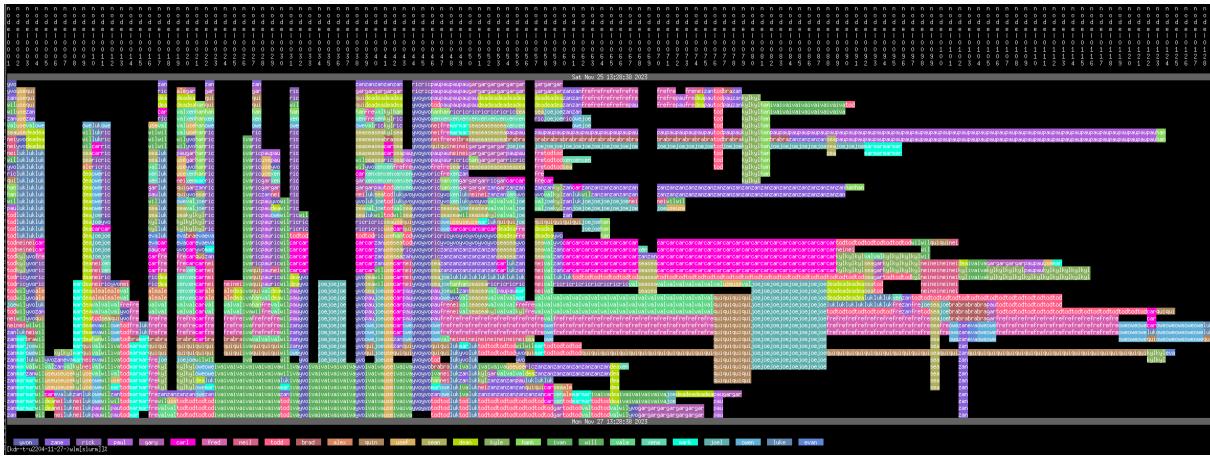


Figure 12.7: Job Accounting: Grid account output for 128 nodes

The `watch` command of `cmsh` can be used to display updates as the cluster is used during the day, without requiring input from the cluster administrator. Patterns of use may be viewed in this manner.

For example, the black parts of node rows in figure 12.7 are a visual indication of times when those nodes were not used.

### 12.9.3 The `grid` Command Time Specification

The `grid` command time specification is identical to that of the `dumpmonitoringdata` command (section 10.6.4), except that `dumpmonitoringdata` has implicit mandatory arguments. The time specifications for `grid` are, on the other hand, done explicitly, and use the time options and arguments:

- `--before <end-time>`  
and
- `--after <start-time>`

The syntax for the time specifications of `grid` is also used by the `statistics` and `filter` commands.

The time options `--after` (mnemonic: aFTter=From Time) and `--before` (mnemonic: befOre=tO) can have their arguments specified as follows:

- *Fixed time format:* The format for the times that make up the time pair can be:
  - [YY/MM/DD] HH:MM[:SS]  
(If YY/MM/DD is used, then each time must be enclosed in double quotes)
  - The unix epoch time (seconds since 00:00:00 1 January 1970)
- *now:* For the `--before` option, a value of `now` can be set. The time at which the `grid` command is run is then used.
- *Relative time format:* One item in the time pair can be set to a fixed time format. The other item in the time pair can then have its time set relative to the fixed time item. The format for the non-fixed time item (the relative time item) can then be specified as follows:
  - For the `<start-time>`, a number prefixed with “-” is used. It indicates a time that much earlier than the fixed end time.
  - For the `<end-time>`, a number prefixed with “+” is used. It indicates a time that much later than the fixed start time.
  - The number values also have suffix values indicating the units of time, as seconds (s), minutes (m), hours (h), or days (d).

The relative time format is summarized in the following table:

Unit	<i>&lt;start-time&gt;</i>	<i>&lt;end-time&gt;</i>
seconds:	-<number>s	+<number>s
minutes:	-<number>m	+<number>m
hours:	-<number>h	+<number>h
days:	-<number>d	+<number>d

- Both *<start-time>* and *<end-time>* can have their values prefixed with a “-”. In this case, the range over which the monitored values are seen is in the past, relative to the current time. If the end time for the range is specified as further in the past than the starting time, then the time values are swapped over so that the end time becomes more recent than the starting time.



# 13

## Monitoring: Job Chargeback

### 13.1 Introduction

#### 13.1.1 The Word “Chargeback”

In a non-IT context, the term chargeback is commonly used with credit cards, in a situation where a cardholder disputes a payment that was made to a merchant. When the credit card company pays back the disputed payment to the card holder, that is called a chargeback.

In an IT context, the term chargeback still has to do with money, and the idea of getting money back. However, in practice the intention ideally is not about disputing costs, but rather about measuring what the costs are of the IT resources that have been requested. Measurement of requested resources means that there is a potential to charge back the users or groups of users who requested these resources.

So, for example, an IT department for an organization may be allocated a budget to run a cluster, meant for the benefit of the organization. The IT department may make the cluster available to many other departments. These other departments request cluster resources. The IT department measures the requested resources and charges back the associated costs.

If a cluster is used by several different departments in the organization, then a simple way to pay for resource requests is to spread the entire cost as a general overhead expense over all departments equally. That may make matters easy for the cluster administrator, but can be harmful to the organization, because without a fair resource request management, there is a tendency for resource request abuse.

If however the resource requests per department are measured, it means that department managers can be kept aware of how resource requests are being divided up. Being able to measure requested resources per department, and thus being able to charge back the department for the requested resources, means that the organization using the cluster can plan and manage resource request budgets efficiently and fairly.

#### 13.1.2 Comparison Of Job Chargeback Monitoring Measurement With Other Monitoring Measurements

Monitoring measurements in BCM in general can be considered to be:

- Monitoring of devices (Chapter 10), which is about monitoring devices in a cluster.
- Job monitoring (Chapter 11), which is about using monitoring to measure the resources used by jobs that actually run.
- Job accounting (Chapter 12), which is about using monitoring to measure the resources used by a user, a group, or other classifier entity.
- Job chargeback (this chapter), which is about using monitoring to measure the resources requested for a job, whether the resources are used or not. This allows the requester to be charged the costs of requesting those resources.

The difference between actual resource use and requested resource use can be illustrated by a thought experiment:

First, a job is run that runs the CPU at 100% for 10 minutes. After that job is completed, a second job is run that runs a `sleep` command that lasts 10 minutes.

If these two jobs are considered from the point of view of CPU resource usage, then according to the workload manager:

The first job actually uses the CPU for 10 minutes, and the administrator can work out from the job monitoring system what user that ran that job, and charge the user for CPU usage.

For the second job, the administrator cannot use the job monitoring system to charge the user for the CPU usage because there was no significant usage measured. However, resources were used up during this time, because the request for the job blocked the availability of that CPU during this period for other users. The administrator would like to charge the user for preventing others from accessing the resources during that period. To do that requires measuring the resources requested during that period, rather than resources that were really used.

Thus, the aim of job chargeback monitoring is to provide a way to track resource requests, which typically differs a little from resource usage.

## 13.2 Job Chargeback Measurement

### 13.2.1 Predefined Job Chargebacks

Some predefined chargebacks can be listed and configured under the chargeback submode of the `wlm` mode.

The predefined list is short:

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]]% chargeback
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->chargeback]% list
Name (key)          Group by user Group by account Price per CPU second
-----
Jobs completed last month grouped by user yes      no        8.64$/d
Jobs completed this month grouped by user   yes      no        8.64$/d
Jobs completed this year grouped by user   yes      no        8.64$/d
```

### Setting A Price For Resource Requests

The pricing can be set per resource requests over a specified time period. In the preceding list, the period is a month or a year. The resource and associated resource request consumption can be the following pairs:

Resource And Resource Request Consumption Pairs	
Resource	Resource Request Consumption
CPU	CPU second
GPU	GPU second
CPU core	CPU core second
slot	slot second
memory bytes	byte-second

Different workload managers use different resources for resource measurement, which is why there is a variety in the resources that can be used for pricing.

### 13.2.2 Setting A Custom Job Chargeback

In addition to the predefined job chargebacks, more chargebacks can be added. For example, the number of jobs completed so far today can be set up as follows:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->chargeback]# add "Jobs completed this day grouped by user"
[basecm11->...ck*[Jobs completed this day grouped by user*]]# show
Parameter          Value
-----
Name              Jobs completed this day grouped by user
Revision
Notes             <OB>
Group by user     no
Group by group    no
Group by account  no
Group by job name no
Group by job ID   no
Group by parent ID no
Users
Groups
Accounts
Job names
Job IDs
Parent IDs
Price per CPU second      0.00$/s
Price per CPU core second  0.00$/s
Price per GPU second       0.00$/s
Price per memory byte-second 0$/B*s
Price per slot second      0$/slot*s
Currency                 $
Start time
End time
UTC                     no
Include running          no
Calculate prediction      no

[basecm11->...ck*[Jobs completed this day grouped by user*]]# set pricepercpuusecond 0.0001$/s
[basecm11->...ck*[Jobs completed this day grouped by user*]]# set groupbyuser yes
[basecm11->...ck*[Jobs completed this day grouped by user*]]# set starttime now/d
[basecm11->...ck*[Jobs completed this day grouped by user*]]# set endtime now/d
[basecm11->...ck*[Jobs completed this day grouped by user*]]# commit
```

#### Chargeback Groupings

The grouping for the new chargeback `Jobs completed this day grouped by user` is set to be `Group by user`. Grouping by user is a common grouping, because finding resource use by an individual user is typically the most useful case. Grouping is possible by:

- user
- group
- account
- job name
- job ID

- parent ID

After setting up chargebacks to suit the needs of the cluster administrator, queries can be made and reports can be generated using chargebacks. The report and request commands (section 13.2.3) are used for this.

### 13.2.3 The report And request Commands

Continuing on with the chargeback jobs completed this day grouped by user created in section 13.2.2, the report and request commands can be used after CPU request data values have been gathered on the jobs being run.

#### The report Command And Its Options

The report command displays a table of the number of jobs that were run per grouping for a chargeback, alongside the resource use and cost for each grouping.

Thus, some time after running jobs in Slurm, the report output for the chargeback created earlier, jobs completed this day grouped by user, might look as follows (some columns elided for clarity):

#### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->chargeback[jobs completed this day grouped by user]]% report
# Start - Tue Sep  8 00:00:00 2020 CEST (1599516000)
# End   - Tue Sep  8 23:59:59 2020 CEST (1599602399)
User      Jobs       Runtime (s)    CPU (s)     CPU ($)    ...  Price ($)
-----
alice     17        7,806        7,806      0.78      ...  0.78
bob       20        8,775        8,775      0.88      ...  0.88
charlie   19        7,007        7,007      0.7       ...  0.7
david     10        5,122        5,122      0.51      ...  0.51
edgar     25        10,502       10,502     1.05      ...  1.05
frank     21        8,289        8,289      0.83      ...  0.83
```

The help text for report command lists formatting options:

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->chargeback]% help report
Name:
    report - Create charge back report

Usage:
    report [options] <name>

Options:
    -d, --delimiter
        Set default row separator

    -v, --verbose
        Be more verbose: multiline table

    --start
        Pagination start offset

    --limit
        Pagination result limit
```

#### The request Command And Its Options

The request command lists the chargeback resources requested for a workload manager.

The request command can be run without options. In that case the output shows the resource request consumption for the chargeback, for the jobs over the period associated with that chargeback:

### Example

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->chargeback[jobs completed this day grouped by user]]% request
# Start - Sun Sep 13 00:00:00 2020 CEST (1599948000)
# End   - Sun Sep 13 23:59:59 2020 CEST (1600034399)
Jobs      Runtime (s)  CPU (s)    Core (s)    GPU (s)  Slots (s)  Memory (B*s)
-----
5          1,765       1,765       0           0         0           0
```

The help text for `request` lists formatting, grouping, pricing, and filtering options:

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->chargeback]% help request
Name:
    request - Chargeback report for workload
```

Usage:

```
request [options]
```

Options:

```
-u, --group-by-user
    group by username

--filter-user <user>[,<user>,...]
    filter on specified users

-g, --group-by-group
    group by group name

--filter-group <group>[,<group>,...]
    filter on specified groups

-a, --group-by-account
    group by account

--filter-account <account>[,<account>,...]
    filter on specified accounts

-j, --group-by-job-name
    group by job name

--filter-job-name <job-name>[,<job-name>,...]
    filter on specified job names

-i, --group-by-job-id
    group by job id

--filter-job-id <job-id>[,<job-id>,...]
    filter on specified job ids

-p, --group-by-parentid
    group by parent id

--filter-parent-id <parent-id>[,<parent-id>,...]
    filter on specified parent-ids

--price-per-cpu-second
```

```

Price per CPU second

--price-per-cpu-core-second
    Price per CPU core second

--price-per-gpu-second
    Price per GPU second

--price-per-gpu-second
    Price per GPU second

--price-per-memory-byte-second
    Price per memory byte * second

--price-per-slot-second
    Price per slot second

--currency
    Change the currency in which the price is displayed (default $)

--include-running
    include running jobs in charge back report (prices will not be final)

--calculate-prediction
    calculate a prediction for an incomplete time frame

-d, --delimiter
    Set default row separator

--sort <field1>[,<field2>,...]
    Override default sort order

--start-time, -s <time>
    Start time in Prometheus format

--end-time, -e <time>
    End time in Prometheus format, falls back to start-time if not specified

--utc
    Use UTC instead of local time

--start
    Pagination start offset

--limit
    Pagination result limit

-v, --verbose
    Be more verbose

```

**Examples:**

request	Chargeback report for workload for the current WLM
request default	Chargeback report for workload for default

For example, using epoch times to specify the start and end times, and grouping by user:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->chargeback[jobs completed this day grouped by user]]% request -s \
1599948000 -e 1600034399 -u
# Start - Sun Sep 13 00:00:00 2020 CEST (1599948000)
# End   - Sun Sep 13 23:59:59 2020 CEST (1600034399)
User      Jobs    Runtime (s)    CPU (s)     Core (s)    GPU (s)    Slots (s)    Memory (B*s)
-----
alice      1        398          398          0            0            0            0
david      2       1,041         1,041         0            0            0            0
edgar      1        325          325          0            0            0            0
frank      1         1            1            0            0            0            0
```

Another way of duplicating the output of `request` without options, is to explicitly specify the default values. For the chargeback jobs completed this day grouped by user, which was set up in section 13.2.2. it corresponds to a start time of `now/d` and an end time of `now/d`:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->...eback[jobs completed this day grouped by user]]% request
# Start - Tue Sep 15 00:00:00 2020 CEST (1600120800)
# End   - Tue Sep 15 23:59:59 2020 CEST (1600207199)
Jobs      Runtime (s)    CPU (s)     Core (s)    GPU (s)    Slots (s)    Memory (B*s)
-----
56        72,374        72,374        0            0            0            0
[basecm11->...eback[jobs completed this day grouped by user]]% request -s now/d -e now/d
# Start - Tue Sep 15 00:00:00 2020 CEST (1600120800)
# End   - Tue Sep 15 23:59:59 2020 CEST (1600207199)
Jobs      Runtime (s)    CPU (s)     Core (s)    GPU (s)    Slots (s)    Memory (B*s)
-----
56        72,374        72,374        0            0            0            0
```

Users can be added to the table with the `-u` option (some output is truncated here for clarity in the examples that follow):

**Example**

```
[basecm11->...eback[jobs completed this day grouped by user]]% request -u
# Start - Tue Sep 15 00:00:00 2020 CEST (1600120800)
# End   - Tue Sep 15 23:59:59 2020 CEST (1600207199)
User      Jobs    Runtime (s)    CPU (s)     Core (s)    GPU (s)
-----
alice     16      19,538        19,538        0            0
bob       7       15,158        15,158        0            0
charlie   6       6,056         6,056         0            0
david     3       1,636         1,636         0            0
edgar     15      16,475        16,475        0            0
frank     9       13,511        13,511        0            0
```

A jobs drilldown can be carried out with `-j`.

**Example**

```
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->chargeback[jobs completed this day grouped by user]]% request -j
# Start - Tue Sep 15 00:00:00 2020 CEST (1600120800)
# End   - Tue Sep 15 23:59:59 2020 CEST (1600207199)
Job name    Jobs    Runtime (s)    CPU (s)     Core (s)    GPU (s)
```

```
-----  
data-transfer 15      49,248    49,248    0        0  
iozone         19      9,918     9,918    0        0  
sleep          22     13,208   13,208    0        0
```

The jobs drilldown can be carried out for a particular user, `alice`, using the filter option:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->...grouped by user]]% request -j --filter-user alice  
# Start - Tue Sep 15 00:00:00 2020 CEST (1600120800)  
# End   - Tue Sep 15 23:59:59 2020 CEST (1600207199)  
Job name      Jobs      Runtime (s)  CPU (s)  Core (s)  GPU (s)  
-----  
data-transfer  5       13,404    13,404    0        0  
iozone        6       3,132     3,132    0        0  
sleep          5       3,002     3,002    0        0
```

This can have the user fields added for the case when several users are specified, as follows:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->...grouped by user]]% request -s now/d -e now/d -u -j --filter-user alice,bob,charlie  
# Start - Tue Sep 15 00:00:00 2020 CEST (1600120800)  
# End   - Tue Sep 15 23:59:59 2020 CEST (1600207199)  
User      Job name      Jobs      Runtime (s)  CPU (s)  Core (s)  GPU (s)  
-----  
alice    data-transfer  5       13,404    13,404    0        0  
alice    iozone        6       3,132     3,132    0        0  
alice    sleep          5       3,002     3,002    0        0  
bob     data-transfer  3       12,842    12,842    0        0  
bob     iozone        1       516      516     0        0  
bob     sleep          3       1,800    1,800    0        0  
charlie data-transfer  1       3,212    3,212    0        0  
charlie iozone        2       1,044    1,044    0        0  
charlie sleep          3       1,800    1,800    0        0  
[basecm11->wlm[slurm]->chargeback[jobs completed this day grouped by user]]%
```

As the help text for `request` suggests, there are many more combinations possible.

### 13.3 Job Chargeback Background Information

Because users can run large numbers of jobs per day, the storage requirement for chargeback records can be very large indeed. For this reason, a cache is kept in memory, and flushed to storage in a MySQL database.

CMDaemon AdvancedConfig directives for configuring the MySQL storage for chargebacks are:

- [JobInformationChargeBackKeepDuration](#) (page 871)
- [JobInformationChargeBackKeepCount](#) (page 871)
- [JobInformationChargeBackRemoveInterval](#) (page 872)

# 14

## Day-to-day Administration

Just as for regular Linux system administration, it is a best practice for cluster administration procedures to be documented as they are carried out.

Updating software packages for bug fixes or for security fixes is a substantial and important part of the tasks carried out in daily cluster administration. It has its own chapter (Chapter 9).

This chapter discusses other tasks that may come up in day-to-day cluster administration with NVIDIA Base Command Manager.

Section 14.1 discusses running shell commands in parallel over the cluster.

Section 14.2 discusses how a cluster administrator can ask the help of the BCM support team for guidance with an issue in an optimum manner.

Section 14.3 discusses how backups can be implemented for BCM.

Section 14.4 discusses revision control for images.

Section 14.5 discusses BIOS configuration with BCM.

Section 14.6 discusses checking hardware matching across the nodes of the cluster.

Section 14.7 discusses Serial Over LAN console access.

Section 14.8 discusses administrative aspects of handling the large amounts of raw monitoring data.

Section 14.9 discusses node replacement.

Section 14.10 discusses using Ansible to configure the cluster via Ansible collections and playbooks.

### 14.1 Parallel Shells: pdsh And pexec

#### What pdsh And pexec Do

The cluster management tools include two parallel shell execution commands:

- `pdsh` (parallel distributed shell, section 14.1.1), runs from within the OS shell. That is, `pdsh` executes its commands from within `bash` by default.
- `pexec` (parallel execute, section 14.1.2, runs from within CMDDaemon. That is, `pexec` executes its commands from within the `cmsh` front end.

A one-time execution of `pdsh` or `pexec` can run one or more shell commands on a group of nodes in parallel.

#### A Warning About Power Surge Risks With pdsh And pexec

Some care is needed when running `pdsh` or `pexec` with commands that affect power consumption. For example, running commands that power-cycle devices in parallel over a large number of nodes can be risky because it can put unacceptable surge demands on the power supplies.

Within `cmsh`, executing a `power reset` command from device mode to power cycle a large group of nodes is much safer than running a parallel command to do a reset using `pdsh` or `pexec`. This is because the CMDDaemon power reset powers up nodes after a deliberate delay between nodes (section 4.2).

### Which Command To Use Out Of pdsh And pexec

The choice of using pdsh or pexec commands is mostly up to the administrator. The only time that running pdsh from bash is currently required instead of running pexec from within cmsh, is when stopping and restarting CMDaemon on a large number of regular nodes (section 2.6.1). This is because a command to stop CMDaemon on a regular node, that itself relies on being run from a running CMDaemon on a regular node, can obviously give unexpected results.

#### 14.1.1 pdsh In The OS Shell

##### Packages Required For pdsh

By default, the following packages must be installed from the BCM repositories to the head node for pdsh to function fully:

- pdsh
- genders
- pdsh-mod-cmupdown
- pdsh-mod-genders
- pdsh-rcmd-exec
- pdsh-ssh

The pdsh utility is modular, that is, it gets extra functionality through the addition of modules.

The genders package is used to generate a default /etc/genders configuration file. The file is used to decide what and how nodes are to be used or excluded by default, when used with pdsh. Configuration details can be found in `man pdsh(1)`. The configuration can probably best be understood by viewing the file itself and noting that BCM in the default configuration associates the following *genders* with a list of nodes:

- `all`: all the nodes in the cluster, head and regular nodes.
- `category=default`: the nodes that are in the default category
- `computenode`: regular nodes
- `headnode`: node or nodes that are head nodes.

In a newly-installed cluster using default settings, the genders `category=default` and `computenode` have the same list of nodes to begin with.

The default /etc/genders file has a section that is generated and maintained by CMDaemon, but the file can be altered by the administrator outside the CMDaemon-maintained section. However, it is not recommended to change the file manually frequently. For example, tracking node states with this file is not recommended. Instead, the package pdsh-mod-cmupdown provides the `-v` option for node state tracking functionality, and how to use this and other pdsh options is described in the next section.

##### pdsh Options

In the OS shell, running `pdsh -h` displays the following help text:

```
Usage: pdsh [-options] command ...
-S          return largest of remote command return values
-h          output usage menu and quit
-V          output version information and quit
-q          list the option settings and quit
-b          disable ^C status feature (batch mode)
-d          enable extra debug information from ^C status
```

```

-l user          execute remote commands as user
-t seconds      set connect timeout (default is 10 sec)
-u seconds      set command timeout (no default)
-f n            use fanout of n nodes
-w host,host,... set target node list on command line
-x host,host,... set node exclusion list on command line
-R name         set rcmd module to name
-M name,...    select one or more misc modules to initialize first
-N              disable hostname: labels on output lines
-L              list info on all loaded modules and exit
-v              exclude targets if they are down
-g query,...   target nodes using genders query
-X query,...   exclude nodes using genders query
-F file         use alternate genders file `file'
-i              request alternate or canonical hostnames if applicable
-a              target all nodes except those with "pdsh_all_skip" attribute
-A              target all nodes listed in genders database
available rcmd modules: ssh,exec (default: ssh)

```

Further options and details are given in man `pdsh(1)`.

### Examples Of pdsh Use

For the examples in this section, a cluster can be considered that is set up with two nodes, with the state of node001 being UP and that of node002 being DOWN:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "device status"
node001 ..... [ UP ]
node002 ..... [ DOWN ]
basecm11 ..... [ UP ]
```

In the examples, the outputs for pdsh could be as follows for the pdsh options considered:

**-A:** With this pdsh option an attempt is made to run the command on all nodes, regardless of the node state:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# pdsh -A hostname
node001: node001
node002: ssh: connect to host node002 port 22: No route to host
pdsh@basecm11: node002: ssh exited with exit code 255
basecm11: basecm11
```

**-v:** With this option an attempt is made to run the command only on nodes nodes that are in the state UP:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# pdsh -A -v hostname
node001: node001
basecm11: basecm11
```

**-g:** With this option, and using, for example, computenode as the genders query, only nodes within computenode in the /etc/genders file are considered for the command. The `-v` option then further ensures that the command runs only on a node in computenode that is up. In a newly-installed cluster, regular nodes are assigned to computenode by default, so the command runs on all regular nodes that are up in a newly-installed cluster:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# pdsh -v -g computenode hostname
node001: node001
```

**-w:** This option allows a node list (`man pdsh(1)`) to be specified on the command line itself:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# pdsh -w node00[1-2] hostname
node001: node001
node002: ssh: connect to host node002 port 22: No route to host
pdsh@basecm11: node002: ssh exited with exit code 255
```

**-x:** This option is the converse of `-w`, and excludes a node list that is specified on the command line itself:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# pdsh -x node002 -w node00[1-2] hostname
node001: node001
```

### The dshbak Command

The `dshbak` (distributed shell backend formatting filter) command is a filter that reformats `pdsh` output. It comes with the `pdsh` package.

Running `dshbak` with the `-h` option displays:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# dshbak -h
Usage: dshbak [OPTION]...
-h      Display this help message
-c      Coalesce identical output from hosts
-d DIR  Send output to files in DIR, one file per host
-f      With -d, force creation of DIR
```

Further details can be found in `man dshbak(1)`.

For the examples in this section, it is assumed that all the nodes in the cluster are now up. That is, `node002` used in the examples of the preceding section is now also up. Some examples to illustrate how `dshbak` works are then the following:

### Without dshbak:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# pdsh -A ls /etc/services /etc/yp.conf
basecm11: /etc/services
basecm11: /etc/yp.conf
node001: /etc/services
node001: ls: cannot access /etc/yp.conf: No such file or directory
pdsh@basecm11: node001: ssh exited with exit code 2
node002: /etc/services
node002: /etc/yp.conf
```

With dshbak, with no dshbak options:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# pdsh -A ls /etc/services /etc/yp.conf | dshbak
node001: ls: cannot access /etc/yp.conf: No such file or directory
pdsh@basecm11: node001: ssh exited with exit code 2
-----
basecm11
-----
/etc/services
/etc/yp.conf
-----
node001
-----
/etc/services
-----
node002
-----
/etc/services
/etc/yp.conf
[root@basecm11 ~]#
```

With dshbak, with the -c (coalesce) option:

**Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# pdsh -A ls /etc/services /etc/yp.conf | dshbak -c
node001: ls: cannot access /etc/yp.conf: No such file or directory
pdsh@basecm11: node001: ssh exited with exit code 2
-----
node002,basecm11
-----
/etc/services
/etc/yp.conf
-----
node001
-----
/etc/services
[root@basecm11 ~]#
```

The dshbak utility is useful for creating human-friendly output in clusters with larger numbers of nodes.

### 14.1.2 pexec In cmsh

In cmsh, the pexec command is run from device mode:

**Example**

```
[basecm11->device]% pexec -n node001,node002 "cd ; ls"
[node001] :
anaconda-ks.cfg
install.log
install.log.syslog
```

```
[node002] :
anaconda-ks.cfg
install.log
install.log.syslog
```

### 14.1.3 pexec In Base View

In Base View, pexec is hidden, but executed in a GUI wrapper, using the navigation path Cluster > Run command.

For large numbers of nodes, rendering the output into the node subpanes (little boxes) can take a long time. To improve the Base View experience, selecting the Single text view icon instead of the Grouped view icon speeds up the rendering significantly, but at the cost of removing the borders of the subpanes.

Ticking the Join output checkbox places output that is the same for particular nodes, into the same subpane.

Running parallel shell commands from cmsh instead of in Base View is faster in most cases, due to less graphics rendering overhead.

### 14.1.4 Using The -j | --join Option Of pexec In cmsh

The output of the pexec command by default can come out in a sequence depending on node response time. To make it more useful for an administrator, order can be imposed on the output. Checking consistency across nodes is then easier.

For example, in a cluster with 2 nodes, the /etc/resolv.conf files for each node could be displayed as:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% pexec -c default "cat /etc/resolv.conf"

[node001] :
# This file was generated by the Node Installer.
search cm.cluster eth.cluster brightcomputing.com
nameserver 10.141.255.254

[node002] :
# This file was generated by the Node Installer.
search cm.cluster eth.cluster brightcomputing.com
nameserver 10.141.255.254
```

More order can be imposed on the preceding output by using the -j | --join option. This joins identical fields together in a way similar to the standard unix text utility, join, which makes the result easier to view:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% pexec -j -c default "cat /etc/resolv.conf"
[node001,node002]
# This file was generated by the Node Installer.
search cm.cluster eth.cluster brightcomputing.com
nameserver 10.141.255.254
```

In the following example, a cluster with 10 nodes is inspected. In the cluster, node002 is down, and the idea is to see if the remaining nodes have the same mounts:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % pexec -j -c default "mount|sort"
Nodes down:          node002
[node002]
Node down

[node001,node003..node010]
/dev/hda1 on / type ext3 (rw,noatime,nodiratime)
/dev/hda2 on /var type ext3 (rw,noatime,nodiratime)
/dev/hda3 on /tmp type ext3 (rw,nosuid,nodev,noatime,nodiratime)
/dev/hda6 on /local type ext3 (rw,noatime,nodiratime)
master:/cm/shared on /cm/shared type nfs
(rw,rsize=32768,wsize=32768,hard,intr,addr=10.141.255.254)
master:/home on /home type nfs
(rw,rsize=32768,wsize=32768,hard,intr,addr=10.141.255.254)
none on /dev/pts type devpts (rw,gid=5,mode=620)
none on /dev/shm type tmpfs (rw)
none on /proc/sys/fs/binfmt_misc type binfmt_misc (rw)
none on /proc type proc (rw,nosuid)
none on /sys type sysfs (rw)
```

Here, even more order is imposed by sorting the output of each mount command within bash before the `-j` option operates from cmsh. The `-c` option executes the command on the default category of nodes.

#### 14.1.5 Other Parallel Commands

Besides pexec, CMDaemon has several other parallel commands:

**pkill:** parallel kill

Synopsis:

```
pkill [OPTIONS] <tracker> [<tracker> ... ]
```

**plist:** List the parallel commands that are currently running, with their tracker ID

Synopsis:

```
plist
```

**pping:** ping nodes in parallel

Synopsis:

```
pping [OPTIONS]
```

**pwait:** wait for parallel commands that are running to complete

Synopsis:

```
pwait [OPTIONS] <tracker> [<tracker> ... ]
```

Details on these parallel commands, including examples, can be seen by executing the `help` command within the device mode of cmsh for a parallel command, `<pcommand>`, as follows:

```
[basecm11->device] %help <pcommand>
```

## 14.2 Getting Support With BCM Issues, And Notifications For Release Updates

The scope of BCM technical support is described in Appendix D of the *Installation Manual*.

### 14.2.1 The Support Portal For BCM

Support requests can be sent in via the support portal at

<https://enterprise-support.nvidia.com/s/create-case>

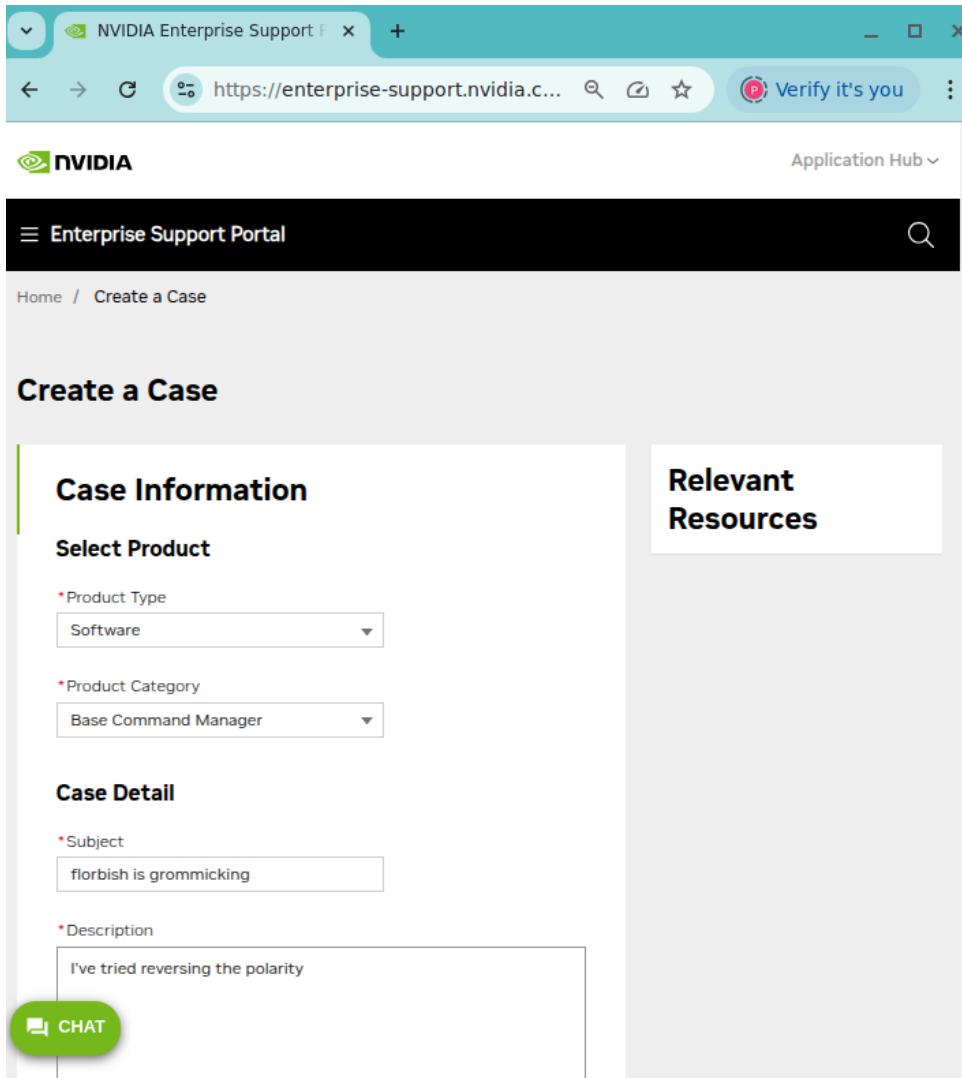


Figure 14.1: Customer support portal: submitting a support request

When creating a BCM support case at that URL:

- the Product Type that must be selected is Software.
- the Product Category that must be selected is:
  - Bright Cluster Manager for issues related to versions of BCM prior to BCM version 10.
  - Base Command Manager for issues related to BCM version 10 and beyond.
- Registered users are advised to log in to the support portal. It makes the user experience better because cluster-related data values are already filled in for a logged-in user.
- Unregistered users can also create a case via the same URL, to deal with registration issues.

The Enterprise Support Portal User Guide at

<https://enterprise-support.nvidia.com/s/article/NVIDIA-Enterprise-Support-Guide-for-New-Users>

has further details on how users can submit support requests.

BCM support as implemented via the support portal is carried out primarily via e-mail. As a supplement to that, the `cm-diagnose` (section 14.2.2) and the `request-remote-assistance` (section 14.2.3) utilities are provided to help resolve issues. These are discussed next.

### 14.2.2 Reporting Cluster Manager Diagnostics With `cm-diagnose`

The diagnostic utility `cm-diagnose` is run from the head node. It gathers data on the cluster that may help diagnose issues. Running it as

```
cm-diagnose --help  
displays its options, capabilities, and defaults.
```

For particular issues it may be helpful to change some of the default values to gather data in a more targeted way. For example, for larger clusters, the log file limit and the timeout values can both be increased to avoid logs being cropped and commands being killed during the gathering of diagnostic data:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-diagnose --limit 100 --timeout 240
```

The preceding command increases the log limit from its default of 50MB to 100MB, and the timeout value from its default of 60s to 240s.

When carrying out a run to pick up diagnostic data, `cm-diagnose` runs interactively by default. The administrator can send the resultant diagnostics file to BCM support directly. The output of a `cm-diagnose` session looks something like the following (the output has been made less verbose for easy viewing):

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-diagnose  
To be able to contact you about the issue, please provide  
your e-mail address (or support ticket number, if applicable):  
frankfurter@example.com
```

```
Please enter the related Support Request (SR) or NVIDIA Enterprise Support number and any other  
related additional information: [SR-XXXXXX] or [XXXXXXXX]
```

```
End input with ctrl-d
```

```
This has to do with SR-999999 that I submitted just now. In short:  
I tried X, Y, and Z on the S2464 motherboard. When that didn't work, I  
tried A, B, and C, but the floribish is grommicking.  
Thank you.
```

```
Support Request number: SR-999999
```

```
Thank you.
```

```
If issues are suspected in the cmdaemon process, a gdb trace of that process  
is useful. In general such trace is only needed if Bright Support asks for this.  
Do you want to create a gdb trace of the running CMDaemon? [y/N]
```

```
Proceed to collect information? [Y/n]
```

```
Processing master
```

```

Processing commands
/bin/uname -a
/usr/bin/top -b -n 1
/sbin/ifconfig -a
...
Processing file contents
...
Processing large files and log files
...
Collecting process information for CMDaemon
gdb -p 1334
Executing CMSh commands
...
Finished executing CMSh commands

Processing default-image
Processing commands
...
Processing file contents
...
Creating log file: /root/SR-999999-basecm11_1234.tar.gz

Cleaning up

Automatically submit diagnostics file to http://support.brightcomputing.com/cm-diagnose/ ? [Y/n]

Uploaded file: SR-999999-basecm11_1234.tar.gz
Remove log file (/root/SR-999999-basecm11_1234.tar.gz)? [y/N] y
[root@basecm11 ~]#

```

### 14.2.3 Requesting Remote Support With `request-remote-assistance`

The life-cycle of solving a ticket begins with opening a ticket via the support portal (section 14.2.1), and then establishing that both the cluster administrator and the support engineer have a basic grasp of the issue at hand. This is best done via an e-mail exchange.

From this stage onward there are many possible paths. The support engineer may offer a solution, or ask for more details, or may ask for some tests to be run. Most of the time, e-mail remains the most efficient way to troubleshoot an issue.

However at times it may be more appropriate for the cluster administrator to allow remote support from the BCM support engineer in order to resolve the issue. The support engineer may in that case suggest that the `request-remote-assistance` utility be run.

The `request-remote-assistance` utility allows a BCM engineer to securely tunnel into the cluster, often without a change in firewall or ssh settings of the cluster.

With `request-remote-assistance`:

- It must be allowed to access the www and ssh ports of the internet servers used by BCM support.
- For some problems, the engineer may wish to power cycle a node. In that case, indicating what node the engineer can power cycle should be added to the option for entering additional information.
- Administrators familiar with screen may wish to run it within a screen session and detach it so that they can resume the session from another machine. A very short reminder of the basics of how to run a screen session is:
  - run the `screen` command to open the screen session

- run the `request-remote-assistance` command within the screen session
- `ctrl-a d` to detach the session (session remains open)
- `screen -r` to resume the session
- exit to exit (closes the session)

The `request-remote-assistance` command itself is run as follows:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# request-remote-assistance
```

This tool helps securely set up a temporary ssh tunnel to  
`sandbox.brightcomputing.com`.

Allow an NVIDIA engineer ssh access to the cluster? [Y/n]

This tool uses ICMP ping. Skip ping if your firewall does not allow it? [y/N]

Please enter the related Support Request (SR) or NVIDIA Enterprise Support number and any other related additional information: [SR-XXXXXX] or [XXXXXXXXXX]

End input with `ctrl-d`

`SR-1234567` - the florbish is grommicking

Thank you.

Added temporary NVIDIA public key.

After the administrator has responded to the ...additional information... entry, and has typed in the `ctrl-d`, the utility tries to establish the connection. The screen clears, and the secure tunnel opens up, displaying the following notice:

```
REMOTE ASSISTANCE REQUEST
#####
A connection has been opened to Bright Computing Support.
Closing this window will terminate the remote assistance
session.
```

---

```
Hostname: basecm11.NOFQDN
Connected on port: 7000
```

`ctrl-c` to terminate this session

BCM support automatically receives an e-mail alert that an engineer can now securely tunnel into the cluster. The session activity is not explicitly visible to the administrator. Whether an engineer is logged in can be viewed with the `w` command, which shows a user running the ssh tunnel, and—if the engineer is logged in—another user session, along with whatever other sessions the administrator may be running:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# w
13:35:00 up 97 days, 17 min, 2 users, load average: 0.28, 0.50, 0.52
USER TTY      FROM          LOGIN@    IDLE   JCPU   PCPU WHAT
root pts/0 10.2.37.101    12:24  1:10m 0.14s 0.05s ssh -q -R :7013:127.0.0.1:22 \
remote@sandbox.brightcomputing.com basecm11
root pts/1 localhost.localdomain 12:54   4.00s 0.03s 0.03s -bash
```

When the engineer has ended the session, the administrator may remove the secure tunnel with a `ctrl-c`, and the display then shows:

```
Tunnel to sandbox.brightcomputing.com terminated.  
Removed temporary NVIDIA public key.  
[root@basecm11 ~]#
```

The BCM engineer is then no longer able to access the cluster.

The preceding tunnel termination output may also show up automatically, without a `ctrl-c` from the administrator, within seconds after the connection session starts. In that case, it typically means that a firewall is blocking access to SSH and WWW to BCM's internet servers.

#### 14.2.4 Getting Notified About Updates

Updates for the various NVIDIA Base Command Manager releases continue for some time after the initial release is made public. The updates typically have bugfixes and improvements, and an administrator may wish to install an update when it becomes publicly available.

The release notes for BCM can be found online at:

<https://docs.nvidia.com/base-command-manager/#release-notes>

### 14.3 Backups

#### 14.3.1 Cluster Installation Backup

BCM does not include facilities to create backups of a cluster installation. The cluster administrator is responsible for deciding on the best way to back up the cluster, out of the many possible choices.

A backup method is strongly recommended, and checking that restoration from backup actually works is also strongly recommended.

One option that may be appropriate for some cases is simply cloning the head node. A clone can be created by PXE booting the new head node, and following the procedure in section 15.4.8.

When setting up a backup mechanism, it is recommended that the full filesystem of the head node (i.e. including all software images) is backed up. Unless the regular node hard drives are used to store important data, it is not necessary to back them up.

If no backup infrastructure is already in place at the cluster site, the following open source (GPL) software packages may be used to maintain regular backups:

- **Bacula:** Bacula is a mature network based backup program that can be used to backup to a remote storage location. If desired, it is also possible to use Bacula on nodes to back up relevant data that is stored on the local hard drives. More information is available at <http://www.bacula.org>

Bacula requires ports 9101-9103 to be accessible on the head node. Including the following lines in the Shorewall rules file for the head node allows access via those ports from an IP address of 93.184.216.34 on the external network:

#### Example

```
ACCEPT net:93.184.216.34      fw      tcp      9101  
ACCEPT net:93.184.216.34      fw      tcp      9102  
ACCEPT net:93.184.216.34      fw      tcp      9103
```

The Shorewall service should then be restarted to enforce the added rules.

- **rsnapshot:** rsnapshot allows periodic incremental filesystem snapshots to be written to a local or remote filesystem. Despite its simplicity, it can be a very effective tool to maintain frequent backups of a system. More information is available at <http://www.rsnapshot.org>.

Rsnapshot requires access to port 22 on the head node.

### 14.3.2 Local Database And Data Backups And Restoration

The CMDaemon database is stored in the MySQL cmdaemon database, and contains most of the stored settings of the cluster.

Monitoring data values are stored as binaries in the filesystem, under /var/spool/cmd/monitoring.

The administrator is expected to run a regular backup mechanism for the cluster to allow restores of all files from a recent snapshot. As an additional, separate, convenience:

- For the CMDaemon database:

- the entire database is, by default, also backed up nightly on the cluster filesystem itself (“local rotating backup”) for the last 7 days:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ls -1t /var/spool/cmd/backup/
backup-Wed.sql.gz
backup-Tue.sql.gz
backup-Mon.sql.gz
backup-Sun.sql.gz
backup-Sat.sql.gz
backup-Fri.sql.gz
backup-Thu.sql.gz
```

- the CMDaemon database can also be manually backed up with the cmdaemon-backup command. This can be useful if the administrator would like to carry out an extensive change on the cluster and would like the reassuring possibility of getting back the old configuration. If no argument is supplied to cmdaemon-backup, then any existing default backup of the day is overwritten. If a string is supplied, then the default backup- prefix is replaced. The replacement becomes the supplied string concatenated with a timestamp. This is most easily illustrated with an example:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmdaemon-backup manual
[root@basecm11 ~]# ls /var/spool/cmd/backup/manual*
manual-24-08-28_13-19-59_Wed.sql.gz
```

The time stamp in the preceding example is of the form:

*-<two-digit year>-<month>-<date>\_<hour>-<minute>-<seconds>-*

- For the monitoring data, the raw data records are not backed up locally, since these can get very large. However, the configuration of the monitoring data, which is stored in the CMDaemon database, is backed up for the last 7 days too.

### Database Corruption Messages

A corrupted MySQL database is commonly caused by an improper shutdown of the node. To deal with this, when starting up, MySQL checks itself for corrupted tables, and tries to repair itself.

- If MySQL cannot start, then CMDaemon on the head node cannot start.
- If MySQL can start, but corruption is detected in the database later on, then it keeps running in read-only mode. The mysql health check on the head node fails, and an info message (section 10.10.4) with an indication of the issue is seen. More details can be found in /var/log/cmdaemon and using service status mysql.service or journalctl -xeu mysql.service.

The journalctl output might show something similar to the following output extract, if corruption is detected in the data (some output ellipsized):

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# journalctl -xeu mysql.service
...
mysqld[179281]:...546 [ERROR] [MY-012224] [InnoDB] Checksum mismatch in datafile: ./cmddaemon/....
mysqld[179281]:...546 [ERROR] [MY-012592] [InnoDB] Operating system error number 22 in a file....
mysqld[179281]:...546 [ERROR] [MY-012596] [InnoDB] Error number 22 means 'Invalid argument' ...
mysqld[179281]:...546 [ERROR] [MY-012131] [InnoDB] Could not find a valid tablespace file for....
mysqld[179281]:...546 [Warning] [MY-012049] [InnoDB] Cannot calculate statistics for table `c....
mysqld[179281]:...1192 [Warning] [MY-012049] [InnoDB] Cannot calculate statistics for table `.....
mysqld[179281]:...1838 [ERROR] [MY-012224] [InnoDB] Checksum mismatch in datafile: ./cmddaemon....
mysqld[179281]:...1838 [ERROR] [MY-012592] [InnoDB] Operating system error number 22 in a fil....
mysqld[179281]:...1838 [ERROR] [MY-012596] [InnoDB] Error number 22 means 'Invalid argument' ...
mysqld[179281]:...1838 [ERROR] [MY-012131] [InnoDB] Could not find a valid tablespace file fo....
mysqld[179281]:...1838 [Warning] [MY-012049] [InnoDB] Cannot calculate statistics for table `.....
mysqld[179281]:...2485 [Warning] [MY-012049] [InnoDB] Cannot calculate statistics for table `.....
mysqld[179281]:...3131 [Warning] [MY-012049] [InnoDB] Cannot calculate statistics for table `.....
mysqld[179281]:...3778 [ERROR] [MY-012224] [InnoDB] Checksum mismatch in datafile: ./cmddaemon....
mysqld[179281]:...3778 [ERROR] [MY-012592] [InnoDB] Operating system error number 22 in a fil....
```

A corrupt database can continue to run for a while, as write attempts pile up in cache. However, eventually the database crashes and then BCM and other systems that rely on the database cannot carry on. Preventing a database crash is therefore important, which is why automatic checks and repairs are carried out when a database starts up.

To fix a corrupted database, a restoration from backup can be carried out, as explained in the next section.

### Restoring From The Local Backup

If the MySQL InnoDB repair tools do not automatically fix the problem, then the issue can normally be resolved with some manual intervention for a failover or non-failover configuration.

If the head node is a part of a failover configuration, the dbreclone option (section 15.4.2) should normally provide a CMDaemon and Slurm database that is current. The dbreclone option does not clone the monitoring data.

**Cloning extra databases:** The file /cm/local/apps/cluster-tools/ha/conf/extradbcclone.xml.template can be used as a template to create a file extradbcclone.xml in the same directory. The extradbcclone.xml file can then be used to define an additional database to be cloned.

The /etc/my.cnf file can then be updated with a new database by adding the lines:

```
replicate-do-db=<name of database>
binlog-do-db=<name of database>
```

The database can then be cloned with this new MySQL configuration by running

```
cmha dbreclone <passive>
```

where <passive> is the hostname of the passive head node.

If the head node is not part of a failover configuration, then a restoration from local backup can be done. The local backup directory is /var/spool/cmd/backup, with contents that look like (some text elided):

### Example

```
[root@solaris ~]# cd /var/spool/cmd/backup/
[root@solaris backup]# ls -l
```

```
total 280
...
-rw----- 1 root root 33804 Oct 10 04:02 backup-Mon.sql.gz
-rw----- 1 root root 33805 Oct  9 04:02 backup-Sun.sql.gz
-rw----- 1 root root 33805 Oct 11 04:02 backup-Tue.sql.gz
...
```

The CMDaemon database snapshots are stored as `backup-<day of week>.sql.gz`. In the example, the latest backup available in the listing for CMDaemon turns out to be `backup-Tue.sql.gz`.

The latest backup can then be unzipped and piped into the MySQL database for the user `cmddaemon`. The password, `<password>`, can be retrieved from `/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf`, where it is configured in the `DBPass` directive (Appendix C).

### Example

```
gunzip backup-Tue.sql.gz
systemctl stop cmd #(just to make sure)
mysql -u cmddaemon -p<password> cmddaemon < backup-Tue.sql
```

Running “`systemctl start cmd`” should have CMDaemon running again, this time with a restored database from the time the snapshot was taken. That means, that any changes that were done to BCM after the time the snapshot was taken are no longer implemented.

Monitoring data values are not kept in a database, but in files (section 14.8).

## 14.4 Revision Control For Images

BCM version 7 introduced support for the implementations of Btrfs provided by the distributions. Btrfs makes it possible to carry out revision control for images efficiently.

### 14.4.1 Btrfs: The Concept And Why It Works Well In Revision Control For Images

Btrfs, often pronounced “butter FS”, is a Linux implementation of a copy-on-write (COW) filesystem.

A COW design for a filesystem follows the principle that, when blocks of old data are to be modified, then the new data blocks are written in a new location (the COW action), leaving the old, now superseded, copy of the data blocks still in place. Metadata is written to keep track of the event so that, for example, the new data blocks can be used seamlessly with the contiguous old data blocks that have not been superseded.

This is in contrast to the simple overwriting of old data that a non-COW filesystem such as Ext3fs carries out.

A result of the COW design means that the old data can still be accessed with the right tools, and that rollback and modification become a natural possible feature.

“Cheap” *revision control* is thus possible.

Revision control for the filesystem is the idea that changes in the file system are tracked and can be rolled back as needed. “Cheap” here means that COW makes tracking changes convenient, take up very little space, and quick. For an administrator of BCM, cheap revision control is interesting for the purpose of managing software images.

This is because for a non-COW filesystem such as Ext3fs, image variations take a large amount of space, even if the variation in the filesystem inside the image is very little. On the other hand, image variations in a COW filesystem such as Btrfs take up near-minimum space.

Thus, for example, the technique of using initialize and finalize scripts to generate such image variations on the fly (section 3.19.4) in order to save space, can be avoided by using a Btrfs partition to save the full image variations instead.

“Expensive” revision control on non-COW filesystems is also possible. It is merely not recommended, since each disk image takes up completely new blocks, and hence uses up more space. The administrator will then have to consider that the filesystem may become full much earlier. The degree of restraint on revision control caused by this, as well as the extra consumption of resources, means that revision control on non-COW filesystems is best implemented on test clusters only, rather than on production clusters.

#### 14.4.2 Btrfs Availability And Distribution Support

Btrfs has been part of the Linux kernel since kernel 2.6.29-rc1. Depending on which Linux distribution is being used on a cluster, it may or may not be a good idea to use Btrfs in a production environment, as in the worst case it could lead to data loss.

Btrfs has been officially removed from RHEL distributions since RHEL8.

Btrfs features are supported in SLES15, as described at [https://www.suse.com/releasenotes/x86\\_64/SUSE-SLES/15-SP1/index.html#TechInfo.Filesystems](https://www.suse.com/releasenotes/x86_64/SUSE-SLES/15-SP1/index.html#TechInfo.Filesystems).

While no problems have been noticed with storing software images on Btrfs using BCM, it is highly advisable to keep backups of important software images on a non-Btrfs filesystem when Btrfs is used.

An issue with using `cm-clone-install` with Btrfs is described on page 766.

#### 14.4.3 Installing Btrfs To Work With Revision Control Of Images In BCM

##### Installation Of `btrfs-progs`

To install a Btrfs filesystem, the `btrfs-progs` packages must be installed from the distribution repository first (some lines elided):

##### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# yum install btrfs-progs
...
Resolving Dependencies
--> Running transaction check
---> Package btrfs-progs.x86_64 0:4.9.1-1.el7 will be installed
...
Total download size: 678 k
Installed size: 4.0 M
...
Complete!
```

##### Creating A Btrfs Filesystem

The original images directory can be moved aside first, and a new images directory created to serve as a future mount point for Btrfs:

##### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cd /cm/
[root@basecm11 cm]# mv images images2
[root@basecm11 cm]# mkdir images
```

A block device can be formatted as a Btrfs filesystem in the usual way by using the `mkfs.btrfs` command on a partition, and then mounted to the new images directory:

##### Example

```
[root@basecm11 cm]# mkfs.btrfs /dev/sdc1
[root@basecm11 cm]# mount /dev/sdc1 /cm/images
```

If there is no spare block device, then, alternatively, a file with zeroed data can be created, formatted as a Btrfs filesystem, and mounted as a loop device like this:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 cm]# dd if=/dev/zero of=butter.img bs=1G count=20
20+0 records in
20+0 records out
21474836480 bytes (21 GB) copied, 916.415 s, 23.4 MB/s
[root@basecm11 cm]# mkfs.btrfs butter.img

WARNING! - Btrfs Btrfs v0.20-rc1 IS EXPERIMENTAL
WARNING! - see http://btrfs.wiki.kernel.org before using

fs created label (null) on butter.img
      nodesize 4096 leafsize 4096 sectorsize 4096 size 20.00GB
Btrfs Btrfs v0.20-rc1
[root@basecm11 cm]# mount -t btrfs butter.img images -o loop
[root@basecm11 cm]# mount
...
/cm/butter.img on /cm/images type btrfs (rw,loop=/dev/loop0)
```

### Migrating Images With cm-migrate-images

The entries inside the /cm/images/ directory are the software images (file trees) used to provision nodes.

Revision tracking of images in a Btrfs filesystem can be done by making the directory of a specific image a *subvolume*. Subvolumes in Btrfs are an extension of standard unix directories with versioning. The files in a subvolume are tracked with special internal Btrfs markers.

To have this kind of version tracking of images work, image migration cannot simply be done with a `cp -a` or a `mv` command. That is, moving images from the `images2` directory in the traditional filesystem, over to `images` in the `images` directory in the Btrfs filesystem command with the standard `cp` or `mv` command is not appropriate. This is because the images are to be tracked once they are in the Btrfs system, and are therefore not standard files any more, but instead extended, and made into subvolumes.

The migration for BCM software images can be carried out with the utility `cm-migrate-image`, which has the usage:

```
cm-migrate-image <path to old image> <path to new image>
```

where the old image is a traditional directory, and the new image is a subvolume.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 cm]# cm-migrate-image /cm/images2/default-image /cm/images/default-image
```

The `default-image` directory, or more exactly, subvolume, must not exist in the Btrfs filesystem before the migration. The subvolume is created only for the image basename that is migrated, which is `default-image` in the preceding example.

In the OS, the `btrfs` utility is used to manage Btrfs. Details on what it can do can be seen in the `btrfs(8)` man page. The state of the loop filesystem can be seen, for example, with:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 cm]# btrfs filesystem show /dev/loop0
Label: none  uuid: 6f94de75-2e8d-45d2-886b-f87326b73474
          Total devices 1 FS bytes used 3.42GB
          devid      1 size 20.00GB used 6.04GB path /dev/loop0

Btrfs Btrfs v0.20-rc1
[root@basecm11 cm]# btrfs subvolume list /cm/images
ID 257 gen 482 top level 5 path default-image
```

The filesystem can be modified as well as merely viewed with btrfs. However, instead of using the utility to modify image revisions directly, it is recommended that the administrator use BCM to manage image version tracking, since the necessary functionality has been integrated into cmsh and Base View.

#### 14.4.4 Using cmsh For Revision Control Of Images

##### Revision Control Of Images Within softwareimage Mode

The following commands and extensions can be used for revision control in the softwareimage mode of cmsh:

- `newrevision <parent software image name> "textual description"`  
Creates a new revision of a specified software image. For that new revision, a revision number is automatically generated and saved along with time and date. The new revision receives a name of the form:

`<parent software image name>@<revision number>`

A new Btrfs subvolume:

`/cm/images/<parent software image name>-<revision number>`

is created automatically for the revision. From now on, this revision is a self-contained software image and can be used as such.

- `revisions [-a|--all] <parent software image name>`  
Lists all revisions of specified parent software image in the order they were created, and associates the revision with the revision number under the header ID. The option -a | --all also lists revisions that have been removed.
- `list [-r|--revisions]`  
The option -r | --revisions has been added to the list command. It lists all revisions with their name, path, and kernel version. A parent image is the one at the head of the list of revisions, and does not have @<revision number> in its name.
- `setparent [parent software image name] <revision name>`  
Sets a revision as a new parent. The action first saves the image directory of the current, possibly altered, parent directory or subvolume, and then attempts to copy or snapshot the directory or subvolume of the revision into the directory or subvolume of the parent. If the attempt fails, then it tries to revert all the changes in order to get the directory or subvolume of the parent back to the state it was in before the attempt.
- `remove [-a|--all] [-d|--data] <parent software image name>`  
Running remove without options removes the parent software image. The option -a | --all removes the parent and all its revisions. The option -d | --data removes the actual data. To run the remove command, any images being removed should not be in use.

##### Revision Control Of Images Within category Mode

The category mode of cmsh also supports revision control.

Revision control can function in 3 kinds of ways when set for the softwareimage property at category level.

To explain the settings, an example can be prepared as follows: It assumes a newly-installed cluster with Btrfs configured and /cm/images migrated as explained in section 14.4.3. The cluster has a default software image default-image, and two revisions of the parent image are made from it. These are automatically given the paths default-image@01 and default-image@02. A category called storage is then created:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]%
```

- newrevision default-image "some changes"
- newrevision default-image "more changes"
- revisions default-image

ID	Date	Description
1	Fri, 04 Oct 2019 11:19:33 CEST	some changes
2	Fri, 04 Oct 2019 11:19:52 CEST	more changes

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]%
```

- list -r

Name (key)	Path	Kernel version
default-image	/cm/images/default-image	3.10.0-957.1.3.el7.x86_64
default-image@1	/cm/images/default-image-1	3.10.0-957.1.3.el7.x86_64
default-image@2	/cm/images/default-image-2	3.10.0-957.1.3.el7.x86_64

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]%
```

- category add storage; commit

With the cluster set up like that, the 3 kinds of revision control functionalities in category mode can be explained as follows:

1. Category revision control functionality is defined as unset

If the administrator sets the `softwareimage` property for the category to an image without any revision tags:

## Example

```
[basecm11->category]% set storage softwareimage default-image
```

then nodes in the storage category take no notice of the revision setting for the image set at category level.

## 2. Category revision control sets a specified revision as default

If the administrator sets the `softwareimage` property for the category to a specific image, with a revision tag, such as `default-image@1`:

## Example

```
[basecm11->category]# set storage softwareimage default-image@1
```

then nodes in the storage category use the image default-image@1 as their image if nothing is set at node level.

3. Category revision control sets the latest available revision by default

If the administrator sets the `softwareimage` property for the category to a parent image, but tagged with the reserved keyword tag `latest`:

## Example

```
[basecm11->category] % set storage softwareimage default-image@latest
```

then nodes in the storage category use the image default-image@2 if nothing is set at node level. If a new revision of default-image is created later on, with a later tag (@3, @4, @5...) then the property takes the new value for the revision, so that nodes in the category will use the new revision as their image.

## Revision Control For Images—An Example Session

This section uses a session to illustrate how image revision control is commonly used, with commentary along the way. It assumes a newly installed cluster with Btrfs configured and /cm/images migrated as explained in section 14.4.3.

First, a revision of the image is made to save its initial state:

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]# newrevision default-image "Initial state"
```

A new image default-image@1 is automatically created with a path /cm/images/default-image-1. The path is also a subvolume, since it is on a Btrfs partition.

The administrator then makes some modifications to the parent image /cm/images/default-image, which can be regarded as a “trunk” revision, for those familiar with SVN or similar revision control systems. For example, the administrator could install some new packages, edit some configuration files, and so on. When finished, a new revision is created by the administrator:

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]# newrevision default-image "Some modifications"
```

This image is then automatically called default-image@2 and has the path /cm/images/default-image-2. If the administrator then wants to test the latest revision on nodes in the default category, then this new image can be set at category level, without having to specify it for every node in that category individually:

```
[basecm11->category]# set default softwareimage default-image@2
```

At this point, the content of default-image is identical to default-image@2. But changes done in default-image will not affect what is stored in revision default-image@2.

After continuing on with the parent image based on the revision default-image@2, the administrator might conclude that the modifications tried are incorrect or not wanted. In that case, the administrator can roll back the state of the parent image default-image back to the state that was previously saved as the revision default-image@1:

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]# setparent default-image default-image@1
```

The administrator can thus continue experimenting, making new revisions, and trying them out by setting the softwareimage property of a category accordingly. Previously created revisions default-image@1 and default-image@2 will not be affected by these changes. If the administrator would like to completely purge a specific unused revision, such as default-image@2 for example, then it can be done with the -d|--data option:

```
[basecm11->softwareimage]# remove -d default-image@2
```

The -d does a forced recursive removal of the default-image-2 directory, while a plain remove without the -d option would simply remove the object from CMDaemon, but leave default-image-2 alone. This CMDaemon behavior is not unique for Btrfs—it is true for traditional filesystems too. It is however usually very wasteful of storage to do this with non-COW systems.

## 14.5 BIOS And Firmware Management

### 14.5.1 Introduction

The main PC BIOS firmware is nowadays a subset of the more general firmware of a system. In older versions of BCM, BIOS and firmware management relied on proprietary vendor implementations. While such legacy implementations are still in use at the time of writing of this section (December 2023), the modern way of managing BIOS and firmware is with the Redfish standard.

The Redfish standard is an industry API standard intended for RESTful management of large numbers of nodes. It is supported by Dell, HPE, Intel, and others.

Redfish uses a pluggable framework architecture with JSON. This makes adding new properties easier, and also makes isolating, debugging, and fixing issues easier.

The CMDeamon front ends of cmsh and Base View provide a front end for BIOS and firmware management via Redfish.

### 14.5.2 BIOS Management With BCM JSON Configuration Templates In Redfish

For BIOS management via Redfish, the JSON configuration is specified per vendor. In BCM the files are kept under:

```
/cm/local/apps/cm-bios-tools/templates/
```

By default, BCM ships with the following configuration file templates:

- dell\_14g.json
- dell\_15g-amd.json
- dell\_15g-intel.json
- dell\_r730.json
- hpe\_dl110.json
- hpe\_dl380g10.json

#### Example

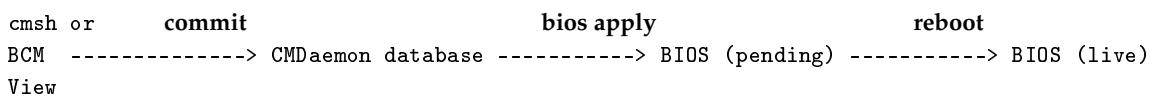
```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ls -al /cm/local/apps/cm-bios-tools/templates/
total 280
drwxr-xr-x 2 root root    148 Nov 15 08:24 .
drwxr-xr-x 6 root root     64 Nov 15 08:24 ..
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root   5008 Oct 25 19:24 dell_14g.json
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root   6411 Oct 25 19:24 dell_15g-amd.json
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root  20493 Oct 25 19:24 dell_15g-intel.json
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root   7052 Oct 25 19:24 dell_r730.json
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 211366 Oct 25 19:24 hpe_dl110.json
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root  24448 Oct 25 19:24 hpe_dl380g10.json
[root@basecm11 templates]# cat dell_r730.json
{
  "displayName": "Dell Inc. - PowerEdge R730",
  "description": "Dell Inc. - PowerEdge R730 - BIOS settings template - v1.0.0",
  "properties": [
    {
      "name": "BootMode",
      "displayName": "Boot Mode",
      "description": "This field determines the boot mode of the system.\n\nSelecting 'UEFI' enables booting to Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI) capable operating systems.\n\nSelecting 'BIOS' (the default) ensures compatibility with operating systems that do not support UEFI.",
      "type": "Enumeration",
      "options": [
        {
          "displayName": "BIOS",
          "value": "Bios"
        },
        {
          "displayName": "UEFI",
          "value": "Uefi"
        }
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

```
        "value": "Uefi"
    }
],
{
  "pos": {
    "g": 0,
    "r": 0,
    "o": 0,
    "w": 6
  }
},
{
  "name": "NodeInterleave",
  "displayName": "Node Interleaving",
  "description": "When set to Enabled, memory interleaving is supported if a symmetric memory\\ configuration is installed. When set to Disabled, the system supports Non-Uniform Memory Access\\ (NUMA) (asymmetric) memory configurations.\\n\\nOperating Systems that are NUMA-aware understand the\\ distribution of memory in a particular system and can intelligently allocate memory in an optimal\\ manner. Operating Systems that are not NUMA aware could allocate memory to a processor that is not\\ local resulting in a loss of performance. Node Interleaving should only be enabled for Operating\\ Systems that are not NUMA aware.\\n\\nDefault: Disabled",
  "type": "Enumeration",
  "options": [
    {
      "displayName": "Enabled",
      "value": "Enabled"
    },
    {
      "displayName": "Disabled",
      "value": "Disabled"
    }
  ],
  "pos": {
    "g": 0,
    "r": 0,
    "o": 1,
    "w": 6
  }
},
{
  "name": "SnoopMode",
  "displayName": "Snoop Mode",
  "description": "Allows tuning of memory performances under different memory bandwidths. The optimal\\ Snoop Mode setting is highly dependent on workload type.\\n\\nEarly Snoop is best used for latency sensitive\\ workloads. This setting offers the best balance between workload effects.\\n\\nHome Snoop is best used for\\ NUMA workloads that need maximum local and remote memory bandwidth.\\n\\nCluster on Die is best used for\\ highly NUMA optimized workloads. This setting offers the best case local memory latency, but worst case\\ remote latency.\\n\\nCluster On Die is only available when Node Interleaving is Disabled.\\n\\nOpportunistic\\ Snoop Broadcast, available on select processor models, works well for workloads of mixed NUMA optimization.\\ It offers a good balance of latency and bandwidth.\\n\\nDefault: Early Snoop",
  "type": "Enumeration",
  "options": [
    {
      "displayName": "Early Snoop",
      "value": "EarlySnoop"
    },
    {
      "displayName": "Home Snoop",
      "value": "HomeSnoop"
    },
    {
      "displayName": "Cluster On Die",
      "value": "ClusterOnDie"
    },
    {
      "displayName": "Opportunistic Snoop Broadcast",
      "value": "OpportunisticSnoopBroadcast"
    }
  ]
}
```

...

### BCM BIOS Configuration States And Operations Overview

In BCM, a BIOS configuration of a node or category can be thought of as being in one of 4 possible states, with 3 possible operations that apply the changes to the states. This is shown by the following schematic:



For example, the cluster administrator might adjust the BIOS configuration for the node or category in cmsh. The state set within cmsh then becomes a state stored within the CMDaemon database after the commit operation of cmsh is carried out.

The cluster administrator can then apply the BIOS configuration that is stored in the CMDaemon database by running the bios apply operation from within cmsh. The BIOS configuration is then taken up as the "BIOS (pending)" state stored in the BIOS firmware of the node (or category).

Finally, the cluster administrator can implement the BIOS, so that it runs on the live node (or category). This happens when carrying out a reboot operation for that node (or category). The BIOS configuration that was a pending BIOS setting then becomes a live BIOS setting.

The details of how these changes can be carried out are explained in the following sections.

#### Example BIOS Configuration Session In cmsh

In cmsh, the BIOS settings can be viewed, compared, and applied at the device mode level or category mode level.

The BIOS settings for the various states can alternatively be managed using the cm-bios-manage utility (page 706). However the cmsh or Base View front ends to cm-bios-manage are easier to use.

**Model:** The model must be set for the BIOS settings before other BIOS settings can be managed. If it is not set, then the status command in biossettings displays an error, as indicated by the following cmsh session:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node002]->biossettings]% status
Parameter           Configured Pending Live
-----
Pending errors:
No model defined
```

It can be set with the help of tab-completion:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node002]->biossettings]% set model<tab><tab>
dell_r730 hpe_dl380
[basecm11->device[node002]->biossettings]% set model hpe_dl380
[basecm11->device*[node002*]->biossettings*]%
```

**Viewing BIOS Parameters:** Each BIOS parameter can now have its value listed and compared by state.

The status command shows a list of the parameters, and their values are displayed for each state. So, the state columns show:

1. the BIOS parameter as stored in the CMDDaemon database (the Configured column),
2. the BIOS parameter as stored on the node itself (the Pending column),
3. the BIOS parameter as implemented on the node itself (the Live column)

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node002]]% biossettings
[basecm11->device[node002]->biossettings]# status
```

Parameter	Configured	Pending	Live
High Precision Event Timer (HPET) ACPI Support	< default >	-	Enabled
Adjacent Sector Prefetch	< default >	-	Enabled
Boot Mode	< default >	-	UEFI Mode
Boot Order Policy	< default >	-	Retry Boot Order Indefinitely
Channel Interleaving	< default >	-	Enabled
Collaborative Power Control	< default >	-	Enabled
Consistent Device Naming	< default >	-	CDN Support for LOMs and Slots
Custom POST Message	< default >	-	
LLC Prefetch	< default >	-	Disabled
Local/Remote Threshold	< default >	-	Auto
Maximum Memory Bus Frequency	< default >	-	Auto
Maximum PCI Express Speed	< default >	-	Per Port Control
Memory Mirroring Mode	< default >	-	Full Mirror
Memory Patrol Scrubbing	< default >	-	Enabled
Memory Refresh Rate	< default >	-	1x Refresh
Minimum Processor Idle Power Package C-State	< default >	-	Package C6 (retention) State
Minimum Processor Idle Power Core C-State	< default >	-	C6 State
Mixed Power Supply Reporting	< default >	-	Enabled
Network Boot Retry Support	< default >	-	Enabled
Node Interleaving	< default >	-	Disabled
NUMA Group Size Optimization	< default >	-	Flat
Embedded NVM Express Option ROM	< default >	-	Enabled
NVMe PCIe Resource Padding	< default >	-	Normal
Persistent Memory Address Range Scrub	< default >	-	Enabled
POST Verbose Boot Progress	< default >	-	Disabled
Power-On Delay	< default >	-	No Delay
Server Asset Tag	< default >	-	
Network Boot Retry Count	< default >	-	20

In the preceding example, each parameter of the configured column has a setting of < default >. This means that the value for the configured setting is a null value, as achieved by running the clear command for that setting. A BIOS setting configured with < default > as a value does nothing based on that configuration setting when doing BIOS management operations. Thus, for example, the setting for Boot Mode in the Configured column can only be made to cause a change in the Pending or Live columns if it takes a value that is not default.

**Changing And Checking Changes For BIOS Parameters:** Thus, if the states for a node are as follows for the Boot Mode parameter:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node002]->biossettings]%
Parameter          Configured      Pending      Live
-----
Boot Mode           < default >   -           UEFI Mode
```

then have the Live state value change from UEFI Mode to Legacy BIOS Mode:

- the first step is to change the Configured state:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node002]->biossettings]%
set boot mode<tab><tab>
legacy bios mode uefi mode
[basecm11->device[node002]->biossettings]%
set boot mode legacy bios mode
[basecm11->device*[node002]->biossettings*]%
commit
[basecm11->device[node002]->biossettings]%
status |head -2 ; status |grep "Boot Mode"
Parameter          Configured      Pending      Live
-----
Boot Mode           Legacy BIOS Mode -           UEFI Mode
```

- Beside using the status command within the biossettings submode, the existing BIOS states that are configured (in CMDaemon) and detected (on the live node) can also be checked with the bios check command at node or category level:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node002]->biossettings]%
[basecm11->device[node002]]%
bios check
Result      Parameter          Configured      Detected
-----
different  BootMode           LegacyBios      Uefi
```

The bios check command shows a result if there is a difference between the configured (CMDaemon) and detected (live) configuration.

- The next step is to apply the configuration change to the Pending BIOS state:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node002]]%
bios apply
Node      Result      Output      Error
-----
node002    good
[basecm11->device[node002]]%
biosettings
[basecm11->device[node002]->biossettings]%
status |head -2 ; status |grep "Boot Mode"
Parameter          Configured      Pending      Live
-----
Boot Mode           Legacy BIOS Mode Legacy BIOS Mode UEFI Mode
```

- Finally, a reboot causes the Pending value to be made live:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node002]->biossettings]%
[basecm11->device[node002]]%
reboot
[cluster administrator waits for the node to finish rebooting]
```

The BIOS change to the Live state is then complete. The Pending and Configured state values are cleared automatically too, so that the states for the Boot Mode parameter now show:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node002]->biossettings]# status |head -2 ; status |grep "Boot Mode"
Parameter          Configured      Pending      Live
-----
Boot Mode          < default >    -           Legacy BIOS Mode
```

### BIOS Configuration Via cm-bios-manage

This section can usually be skipped because the administrator is not expected to use the `cm-bios-manage` utility directly.

This is because it is relatively low-level, and because the easiest way for a cluster administrator to manage the BIOS of a cluster via Redfish is usually via the `cmsh` (page 703) or Base View front ends.

The `cm-bios-manage` help text is:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# /cm/local/apps/cm-bios-tools/bin/cm-bios-manage -h
usage: cm-bios-manage [-h]
                      [-a | -c | -f VENDOR_MODEL | -p VENDOR_MODEL | -P VENDOR_MODEL PROFILE | -t |
                      -T VENDOR_MODEL] [-l] [-d]

Script used by cmd to manage BIOS settings.

optional arguments:
  -h, --help            show this help message and exit
  -a, --apply           apply settings.
  -c, --check           check defined settings.
  -f VENDOR_MODEL, --fetch VENDOR_MODEL
                        fetch settings based on JSON template of specified model.
  -p VENDOR_MODEL, --profiles VENDOR_MODEL
                        list all profiles for the specified model.
  -P VENDOR_MODEL PROFILE, --profile VENDOR_MODEL PROFILE
                        display profile for the specified model and specified profile.
  -t, -m, --vendor-types, --models
                        list all supported HW models.
  -T VENDOR_MODEL, --template VENDOR_MODEL
                        display JSON template of specified HW model.
  -l, --live            fetch live settings, instead of pending settings.
                        used with --fetch and --check options.
  -d, --debug           enable debug messages.
```

A session with options might run as follows:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# /cm/local/apps/cm-bios-tools/python/cm-bios-manage -t
[
  "dell_r730",
  "hpe_dl380"
]
[root@basecm11 ~]# /cm/local/apps/cm-bios-tools/python/cm-bios-manage -p hpe_dl380
[
  "test"
]
[root@basecm11 ~]# /cm/local/apps/cm-bios-tools/python/cm-bios-manage -P hpe_dl380 test
```

```
{
  "test": "xyz"
}
[root@basecm11 ~]# /cm/local/apps/cm-bios-tools/python/cm-bios-manage -T hpe_dl380
[
  {
    "displayName": "High Precision Event Timer (HPET) ACPI Support",
    "name": "AcpiHpet",
    "pos": {
      "w": 12,
      "r": 0,
      "o": 0,
      "g": 0
    },
    ...
  }
]
```

### 14.5.3 Updating BIOS And Firmware Versions

There are two ways that the firmware can be updated. A legacy way based on DOS tools (page 707), and a more recent way, based on CMDDaemon and Redfish (page 708).

#### Updating A BIOS Via DOS Tools

The legacy way of upgrading a BIOS to a new version involves using the DOS tools that were supplied with the BIOS to flash a new BIOS. The flash tool and the BIOS image must be copied to a DOS image. The file autoexec.bat should be altered to invoke the flash utility with the correct parameters. In case of doubt, it can be useful to boot the DOS image and invoke the BIOS flash tool manually. Once the correct parameters have been determined, they can be added to the autoexec.bat.

After a BIOS upgrade, the contents of the NVRAM may no longer represent a valid BIOS configuration because different BIOS versions may store a configuration in different formats. It is therefore recommended to also write updated NVRAM settings immediately after flashing a BIOS image.

The next section describes how to boot the DOS image.

**Booting the DOS image:** To boot the DOS image over the network, it first needs to be copied to software image's /boot directory, and must be world-readable.

#### Example

```
cp flash.img /cm/images/default-image/boot/bios/flash.img
chmod 644 /cm/images/default-image/boot/bios/flash.img
```

An entry is added to the PXE boot menu to allow the DOS image to be selected. This can easily be achieved by modifying the contents of /cm/images/default-image/boot/bios/menu.conf, which is by default included automatically in the PXE menu. By default, one entry Example is included in the PXE menu, which is however invisible as a result of the MENU HIDE option. Removing the MENU HIDE line will make the BIOS flash option selectable. Optionally the LABEL and MENU LABEL may be set to an appropriate description.

The option MENU DEFAULT may be added to make the BIOS flash image the default boot option. This is convenient when flashing the BIOS of many nodes.

#### Example

```
LABEL FLASHBIOS
KERNEL memdisk
APPEND initrd=bios/flash.img
MENU LABEL ^Flash BIOS
# MENU HIDE
MENU DEFAULT
```

The `bios/menu.conf` file may contain multiple entries corresponding to several DOS images to allow for flashing of multiple BIOS versions or configurations.

### Firmware Configuration And Updates Via CMDDaemon

For systems that support the Redfish protocol, such as HPE iLO5 and DGX H100, firmware management requires setting `firmwaremanagemode`, within a `bmcsettings` submode.

In addition, for DGX hardware, after the firmware has been flashed over to it, an activation based on an AC power cycle is required. Details on this are given (page 714) as part of the DGX installation example later on (page 710).

**Setting `firmwaremanagemode`:** The value of `firmwaremanagemode` is selected appropriately by the administrator according to the node hardware:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->bmcsettings*] % set firmwaremanagemode <TAB><TAB>
auto      b200      gb200     gb200sw   h100      ilo       none
```

The `bmcsettings` submode can be accessed and set within an instance of the `device`, `category`, or `partition` modes.

**Running firmware operations and options:** After `firmwaremanagemode` has been set, the `firmware` command can be run under the `device` mode of `cmsh` to carry out Redfish protocol updates. Firmware updated via Redfish need not be just the PC main system BIOS, but can also be the flashable software of subsystems, for example: NICs.

The `help firmware` command provides a help page covering the operations and options for the `firmware` command. Some of them are described next:

- The `firmware` command includes the following operations:
  - `info`: provides information on the firmwares available on the head node, available for uploading to nodes. By default these are files that the cluster administrator has picked up from the vendor and has placed under `/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/bios/firmware/`.
  - `list`: (only for iLO) provides a list of firmware states on specified nodes.
  - `upload`: (only for iLO) takes a specified firmware from the files listed by the `info` option, and copies it over to the specified nodes. For an HPE iLO system, the upload is carried out to a special flash storage, only visible to the BIOS and Redfish queries. After it is in that special flash location, it can be flashed to where the firmware is actually run.
  - `remove`: (only for iLO) removes a specified firmware from the special flash storage of specified nodes
  - `flash` : carries out the flashing of the firmware from the flash storage to the location where the firmware runs, for the specified nodes
  - `status`: shows the status of the flash operation. A table is displayed with rows listing the component, version, and state, among other items. The State column of the output can show the following values:
    - \* `pending`: the flash operation is pending
    - \* `exception`: the flash operation failed during execution
    - \* `flashing`: the flash operation is being executed
    - \* `completed`: the flash operation succeeded
    - \* `current`: the firmware of the listed component with the listed version is activated

- The `firmware` command also includes the following options:
  - `--targets`: (only for DGX hosts) specifies names for particular component firmware targets. Without this option, the default is that updates are carried out automatically only for newer firmware components from the firmware package files. Overriding the default should not be needed, and is typically not recommended. Specifying `--targets list -v` lists the possible components.
  - `--force`: (only for DGX hosts) needed to carry out a downgrade, and also needed for some other DGX firmware cases as described in <https://docs.nvidia.com/dgx/dgxh100-fw-update-guide/sequence.html#update-steps>
  - `--dry-run`: (only for DGX hosts) pretends to carry out an installation, so that the administrator can get an idea of what components are affected from the output of the mock installation run

**An HP iLO5 firmware upgrade example:** The following session shows node001 getting uploaded and flashed with a firmware, and then having the firmware removed.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% firmware info
Device   Filename   Component   Version   State   Progress   Result   Size   Date
----- -----
basecm11 iL05-2.42   iL05       2.42      undefined  N/A        8.6MiB    02/28/2022, 11:22:55
basecm11 iL05-2.43   iL05       2.43      undefined  N/A        8.7MiB    02/28/2022, 11:22:55
basecm11 iL05-2.44   iL05       2.44      undefined  N/A        8.8MiB    02/28/2022, 11:22:55
basecm11 iL05-2.45   iL05       2.45      undefined  N/A        8.9MiB    02/28/2022, 11:22:55

[basecm11->device]% firmware list -n node001

[basecm11->device]% firmware upload iL05-2.42 -n node001
Device   Result   Output   Error
----- -----
node001  good     uploading: iL05-2.42

[basecm11->device]% firmware list -n node001
Device   Filename   Component   Version   State   Progress   Result   Size   Date
----- -----
node001  iL05-2.42   iL05       2.42      completed  N/A        8.6MiB    02/28/2022, 11:23:31

[basecm11->device]% firmware flash iL05-2.42 -n node001
Device   Result   Output   Error
----- -----
node001  good     flashing: iL05-2.42

[basecm11->device]% firmware status -n node001
Device   Filename   Component   Version   State   Progress   Result   Size   Date
----- -----
node001           iL05       2.42      flashing  35.6%      N/A        02/28/2022, 11:27:27

[basecm11->device]% firmware status -n node001
Device   Filename   Component   Version   State   Progress   Result   Size   Date
----- -----
node001           iL05       2.42      completed  N/A        N/A        02/28/2022, 11:27:27

[basecm11->device]% firmware remove iL05-2.42 -n node001
```

```

Device   Result    Output          Error
-----
node001  good      removed: iL05-2.42

[basecm11->device]% firmware list -n node001

```

### A GPU tray upgrade example on the DGX H100:

**Obtaining and placing the firmware packages on the cluster:** Firmware for the DGX H100 is available for the motherboard tray (chassis) components, and for the GPU tray components.

Firmware packages for the DGX H100 can be obtained via the DGX support portal, which can be reached from:

<https://docs.nvidia.com/dgx/dgxhr-fw-update-guide/about.html#firmware-update-prerequisites>.  
The packages are available as .fwpkg packages. They should be placed in the head node directory at  
/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/bios/firmware/  
under the appropriate existing subdirectory for the platform type:

### Example

```
[basecm11 ~]# ls -l /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/bios/firmware/h100
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 135723563 Dec 12 14:27 nvfw_DGX-H100_0003_230817.1.1_custom_prod-signed.fwpkg
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 135723563 Dec 12 14:27 nvfw_DGX-H100_0003_230905.1.0_custom_prod-signed.fwpkg
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 135723563 Dec 12 14:27 nvfw_DGX-H100_0003_230920.1.0_custom_prod-signed.fwpkg
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 106091440 Dec 12 14:27 nvfw_DGX-H100x8_0002_230705.1.1_prod-signed.fwpkg
```

**Configuring BMC settings in BCM:** The BMC interface and settings should be configured for the DGX H100. Typically this requires:

- adding a BMC network (section 3.2.2)
- configuring its BMC settings (section 3.7.2) to be able to carry out the Redfish protocol. This means setting the:
  - username
  - userid
  - password
  - firmware mode for Redfish
- adding an interface to the network for the node (section 3.7.1).

### Example

```
[basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]%
[basecm11->network]%
[basecm11->network]# add bmcnet
[basecm11->network*[bmcnet*]]% set baseaddress 10.148.0.0
[basecm11->network*[bmcnet*]]% set domainname bmc.cluster
[basecm11->network*[bmcnet*]]% commit
[basecm11->network[bmcnet]]% partition
[basecm11->partition[base]]% bmcsettings
[basecm11->partition[base]->bmcsettings]% set username admin
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->bmcsettings*]% set userid 0
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->bmcsettings*]% set password <password>
```

```
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->bmcsettings*] % set firmware managemode <TAB><TAB>
auto b200 gb200 gb200sw h100 ilo none
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->bmcsettings*] % set firmware managemode h100
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->bmcsettings*] % commit
[basecm11->partition[base]->bmcsettings] % device
[basecm11->device] % interfaces node001
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces] % add bmc
[basecm11->device[node001]->interfaces] % add bmc ipmi0
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->interfaces*[ipmi0*]] % set network bmcnet
[basecm11->device*[node001*]->interfaces*[ipmi0*]] % set ip 10.148.0.1
```

**Managing, installing and updating the firmware package in BCM:** BCM can then display information about the files in that head node firmware directory with the `firmware info` command:

### Example

[basecm11->device] % firmware info						
Device	Filename	Component	Version	State	Progress	...
basecm11	nvfw_DGX-H100....fwpkg	DGX-H100-Chassis	DGX-H100_0003_2...	available	N/A	
basecm11	nvfw_DGX-H100....fwpkg	DGX-H100-Chassis	DGX-H100_0003_2...	available	N/A	
basecm11	nvfw_DGX-HGX-H100x8....fwpkg	DGX-H100-GPU	DGX-HGX-H100x8_...	available	N/A	

The `firmware status` command displays information on the state of the firmware components running on the node:

### Example

[basecm11->device] % firmware status -n node001						
Device	Filename	Component	Version	State	Progress	Result Size Date
node001	CPLDMB_0	0.2.1.0	current	N/A		N/A
node001	CPLDMID_0	0.2.1.0	current	N/A		N/A
node001	EROT_BIOS_0	00.04.0020.0000_n00	current	N/A		N/A
node001	EROT_BMC_0	00.04.0020.0000_n00	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_BMC_0	HGX-22.10-1-rc1	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_ERoT_BMC_0	00.02.0100.0000_n00	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_ERoT_FPGA_0	00.02.0100.0000_n00	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_0	00.02.0100.0000_n00	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_1	00.02.0100.0000_n00	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_2	00.02.0100.0000_n00	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_3	00.02.0100.0000_n00	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_ERoT_PCIESwitch_0	00.02.0100.0000_n00	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_FPGA_0	2.0A	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_1	96.00.70.00.01	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_2	96.00.70.00.01	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_3	96.00.70.00.01	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_4	96.00.70.00.01	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_5	96.00.70.00.01	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_6	96.00.70.00.01	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_7	96.00.70.00.01	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_8	96.00.70.00.01	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_NVSwitch_0	96.00.3F.00.01	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_NVSwitch_1	96.00.3F.00.01	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_NVSwitch_2	96.00.3F.00.01	current	N/A		N/A
node001	HGX_FW_NVSwitch_3	96.00.3F.00.01	current	N/A		N/A

node001	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_0	2.7.0	current	N/A	N/A
node001	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_1	2.7.0	current	N/A	N/A
node001	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_2	2.7.0	current	N/A	N/A
node001	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_3	2.7.0	current	N/A	N/A
node001	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_4	2.7.0	current	N/A	N/A
node001	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_5	2.7.0	current	N/A	N/A
node001	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_6	2.7.0	current	N/A	N/A
node001	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_7	2.7.0	current	N/A	N/A
node001	HGX_FW_PCIESwitch_0	1.7.5A	current	N/A	N/A
node001	HostBIOS_0	01.00.00	current	N/A	N/A
node001	HostBMC_0	23.00.00	current	N/A	N/A
node001	PCIeRetimer_0	1.30.0	current	N/A	N/A
node001	PCIeRetimer_1	1.30.0	current	N/A	N/A
node001	PCIeSwitch_0	0.0.1	current	N/A	N/A
node001	PCIeSwitch_1	1.0.1	current	N/A	N/A
node001	PSU_0	0202.0200.0200	current	N/A	N/A
node001	PSU_1	0202.0200.0200	current	N/A	N/A
node001	PSU_2	0202.0200.0200	current	N/A	N/A
node001	PSU_3	0202.0201.0202	current	N/A	N/A
node001	PSU_4	0202.0201.0203	current	N/A	N/A
node001	PSU_5	0202.0200.0200	current	N/A	N/A

Components can be updated by installing associated firmware packages with the `firmware flash` command. For example, the GPU tray firmware can be installed with one of the `nvfw_dgx-hgx-h100x8*` packages:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% firmware flash <TAB><TAB>
nvfw_dgx-h100_0003_230817.1.1.fwpkg
nvfw_dgx-h100_0003_230920.1.0.fwpkg
nvfw_dgx-hgx-h100x8_0002_230705.1.1.fwpkg
[basecm11->device[node001]]% firmware flash nvfw_dgx-hgx-h100x8_0002_230705.1.1.fwpkg
Device      flashing          Result   Error
-----
node001     nvfw_DGX-HGX-H100x8_0002_230705.1.1.fwpkg  good
```

The `firmware status` command then shows the installation progress for the GPU tray components during flashing:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]]% firmware -n node001 status
Device  Filename        Component      Version       State    Progress...
-----
node001      CPLDMB_0      0.2.1.0      current      N/A
node001      CPLDMID_0     0.2.1.0      current      N/A
node001      EROT_BIOS_0   00.04.0020.0000_n00  current      N/A
node001      EROT_BMC_0    00.04.0020.0000_n00  current      N/A
node001      HostBIOS_0   01.00.00      current      N/A
node001      HostBMC_0    23.00.00      current      N/A
node001      PCIeRetimer_0 1.30.0       current      N/A
node001      PCIeRetimer_1 1.30.0       current      N/A
node001      PCIeSwitch_0  0.0.1        current      N/A
node001      PCIeSwitch_1  1.0.1        current      N/A
node001      PSU_0         0202.0200.0200  current      N/A
```

node001	PSU_1	0202.0200.0200	current	N/A
node001	PSU_2	0202.0200.0200	current	N/A
node001	PSU_3	0202.0201.0202	current	N/A
node001	PSU_4	0202.0201.0203	current	N/A
node001	PSU_5	0202.0200.0200	current	N/A
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_BMC_0	HGX-22.10-1-rc1	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_BMC_0	00.02.0100.0000_n00	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_FPGA_0	00.02.0100.0000_n00	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_0	00.02.0100.0000_n00	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_1	00.02.0100.0000_n00	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_2	00.02.0100.0000_n00	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_3	00.02.0100.0000_n00	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_PCIESwitch_0	00.02.0100.0000_n00	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_FPGA_0	2.0A	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_1	96.00.70.00.01	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_2	96.00.70.00.01	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_3	96.00.70.00.01	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_4	96.00.70.00.01	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_5	96.00.70.00.01	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_6	96.00.70.00.01	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_7	96.00.70.00.01	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_8	96.00.70.00.01	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_NVSwitch_0	96.00.3F.00.01	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_NVSwitch_1	96.00.3F.00.01	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_NVSwitch_2	96.00.3F.00.01	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_NVSwitch_3	96.00.3F.00.01	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_0	2.7.0	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_1	2.7.0	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_2	2.7.0	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_3	2.7.0	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_4	2.7.0	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_5	2.7.0	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_6	2.7.0	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_7	2.7.0	flashing	39.1%
node001 nvfw_DGX-HG...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIESwitch_0	1.7.5A	flashing	39.1%

The non-GPU-related firmware components are not updated.

If the `firmware flash` command stage has completed its run, then when the `firmware status` command is run, the Component and Version columns show output indicating that the firmware version is transitioning. The rows that have to do with the GPU firmware status are the rows with the string `nvfw_DGX-HG` in the Filename column. Those GPU firmware rows have Component and Version column entries such as:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% firmware status| head -2| cut -b66-133; firmware status| grep nvfw| cut -b66-133
Component          Version
-----
HGX_FW_BMC_0      HGX-22.10-1-rc1 -> HGX-22.10-1-rc44
HGX_FW_ERoT_BMC_0 00.02.0100.0000_n00 -> 00.02.0134.0000_n00
HGX_FW_ERoT_FPGA_0 00.02.0100.0000_n00 -> 00.02.0134.0000_n00
HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_0 00.02.0100.0000_n00 -> 00.02.0134.0000_n00
HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_1 00.02.0100.0000_n00 -> 00.02.0134.0000_n00
HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_2 00.02.0100.0000_n00 -> 00.02.0134.0000_n00
HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_3 00.02.0100.0000_n00 -> 00.02.0134.0000_n00
HGX_FW_ERoT_PCIESwitch_0 00.02.0100.0000_n00 -> 00.02.0134.0000_n00
```

```

HGX_FW_FPGA_0          2.0A -> 2.2C
HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_1        96.00.70.00.01 -> 96.00.74.00.01
HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_2        96.00.70.00.01 -> 96.00.74.00.01
HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_3        96.00.70.00.01 -> 96.00.74.00.01
HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_4        96.00.70.00.01 -> 96.00.74.00.01
HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_5        96.00.70.00.01 -> 96.00.74.00.01
HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_6        96.00.70.00.01 -> 96.00.74.00.01
HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_7        96.00.70.00.01 -> 96.00.74.00.01
HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_8        96.00.70.00.01 -> 96.00.74.00.01
HGX_FW_NVSwitch_0       96.00.3F.00.01 -> 96.10.3F.00.01
HGX_FW_NVSwitch_1       96.00.3F.00.01 -> 96.10.3F.00.01
HGX_FW_NVSwitch_2       96.00.3F.00.01 -> 96.10.3F.00.01
HGX_FW_NVSwitch_3       96.00.3F.00.01 -> 96.10.3F.00.01
HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_0    2.7.0 -> 2.7.9
HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_1    2.7.0 -> 2.7.9
HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_2    2.7.0 -> 2.7.9
HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_3    2.7.0 -> 2.7.9
HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_4    2.7.0 -> 2.7.9
HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_5    2.7.0 -> 2.7.9
HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_6    2.7.0 -> 2.7.9
HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_7    2.7.0 -> 2.7.9
HGX_FW_PCIESwitch_0     1.7.5A -> 1.7.5F

```

In the preceding, the `grep` command is to select just the GPU-related rows, and the `cut` commands are used to remove some columns, to make the output clearer to the reader.

The `firmware status` GPU firmware rows also have the following output columns:

- the **State** column, which shows `Pending` if there are activation steps still required to complete the firmware update
- the **Result** column, which suggests the recommended action to take to activate the firmware

### Example

```

[basecm11->device[node001]]% firmware status      #other rows and columns omitted for readability
State   Progress Result                                Size     Date
-----  -----
pending  N/A      success: AC power cycle to activate 1.22KiB
pending  N/A      success: AC power cycle to activate 1.22KiB
pending  N/A      success: AC power cycle to activate 1.22KiB
...

```

**AC and DC power cycling:** As suggested in the **Result** column in the preceding example, an `AC power cycle` must then be carried out on the node to activate the GPU firmware with the new versions. The `AC power cycle` tag is a part of Redfish terminology, and it implies that all the AC power inputs need to be cut off. This can be carried out via a PDU powering off the entire system, or it can be done physically, by hand, by pulling out all the mains (AC) power leads to the system.

A regular `power reset` command run from the `device` mode of `cmsh`, which is a board level (DC) power cycle by default, is not enough to initialize some of the components for the DGX H100.

Details on firmware activation for the DGX H100 can be found at <https://docs.nvidia.com/dgx/dgxh100-fw-update-guide/about.html#firmware-update-activation>.

**Successful activation and completed state confirmations:** After the power cycle, the output from `firmware status` indicates that the firmware now active on the node matches that of the `.fwpkg` file version.

It does this by displaying a value of success: activated in the Result column.

The output also now shows the new version value for the firmware component in the Version column, and indicates the firmware transition is now over with a value of completed in the State column:

[basecm11->device] % firmware -n node001 status					
Device	Filename	Component	Version	State	Progress Result
node001		CPLDMB_0	0.2.1.0	current	N/A
node001		CPLDMID_0	0.2.1.0	current	N/A
node001		EROT_BIOS_0	00.04.0020.0000_n00	current	N/A
node001		EROT_BMC_0	00.04.0020.0000_n00	current	N/A
node001		HostBIOS_0	01.00.00	current	N/A
node001		HostBMC_0	23.00.00	current	N/A
node001		PCIeRetimer_0	1.30.0	current	N/A
node001		PCIeRetimer_1	1.30.0	current	N/A
node001		PCIeSwitch_0	0.0.1	current	N/A
node001		PCIeSwitch_1	1.0.1	current	N/A
node001		PSU_0	0202.0200.0200	current	N/A
node001		PSU_1	0202.0200.0200	current	N/A
node001		PSU_2	0202.0200.0200	current	N/A
node001		PSU_3	0202.0201.0202	current	N/A
node001		PSU_4	0202.0201.0203	current	N/A
node001		PSU_5	0202.0200.0200	current	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_BMC_0	HGX-22.10-1-rc44	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_BMC_0	00.02.0134.0000_n00	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_FPGA_0	00.02.0134.0000_n00	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_0	00.02.0134.0000_n00	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_1	00.02.0134.0000_n00	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_2	00.02.0134.0000_n00	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_NVSwitch_3	00.02.0134.0000_n00	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_ERoT_PCIESwitch_0	00.02.0134.0000_n00	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_FPGA_0	2.2C	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_1	96.00.74.00.01	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_2	96.00.74.00.01	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_3	96.00.74.00.01	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_4	96.00.74.00.01	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_5	96.00.74.00.01	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_6	96.00.74.00.01	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_7	96.00.74.00.01	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_GPU_SXM_8	96.00.74.00.01	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_NVSwitch_0	96.10.3F.00.01	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_NVSwitch_1	96.10.3F.00.01	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_NVSwitch_2	96.10.3F.00.01	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_NVSwitch_3	96.10.3F.00.01	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_0	2.7.9	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_1	2.7.9	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_2	2.7.9	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_3	2.7.9	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_4	2.7.9	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_5	2.7.9	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_6	2.7.9	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIERetimer_7	2.7.9	completed	N/A
node001	nfv...fwpkg	HGX_FW_PCIESwitch_0	1.7.5F	completed	N/A

## 14.6 Hardware Match Check With The hardware-profile Data Producer

Often a large number of identical nodes may be added to a cluster. In such a case it is a good practice to check that the hardware matches what is expected. This can be done easily as follows:

1. The new nodes, say node129 to node255, are committed to a newly-created category newbunch as follows (output truncated):

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "category add newbunch; commit"
[root@basecm11 ~]# for i in {129..255}
> do
> cmsh -c "device; set node00$i category newbunch; commit"
> done
Successfully committed 1 Devices
Successfully committed 1 Devices
```

The preceding loop is easy to construct, and works, but it is quite slow for larger clusters, due to the time wasted in opening up cmsh and carrying out a commit command during each iteration of the for loop.

For larger clusters the offending for loop can be replaced with a more elegant, but slightly trickier:

```
(echo device;
for i in {129..255}; do
echo "set node00$i category newbunch"
done
echo "commit") | cmsh
```

2. The hardware profile of one of the new nodes, say node129, is saved into the category newbunch. This is done using the node-hardware-profile health check script:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/node-hardware-profile -n node129 -s newbunch
```

The profile is intended to be the reference hardware against which all the other nodes should match, and is saved under the directory /cm/shared/apps/cmd/hardware-profiles/, and further under the directory name specified by the -s option, which in this case is newbunch.

3. The hardware-profile data producer (section 10.2.10) can then be enabled, and the sampling frequency set as follows:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% monitoring setup use hardware-profile
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[hardware-profile]]% set interval 600; set disabled no; commit
```

The hardware-profile data producer should also be set to the category newbunch created in the earlier step. This can be done by creating a category group within the nodeexecutionfilters submode. Within that group, categories can be set for where the hardware check is to run. For the example, it is just run on one category, newbunch:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[hardware-profile]]% nodeexecutionfilters
[basecm11->...-profile]->nodeexecutionfilters% add category filterhwp
[basecm11->...-profile]->nodeexecutionfilters*[filterhwp*]]% set categories newbunch
[basecm11->...-profile]->nodeexecutionfilters*[filterhwp*]]% commit
```

4. CMDaemon then automatically alerts the administrator if one of the nodes does not match the hardware of that category during the first automated check. In the unlikely case that the reference node is itself faulty, then that will also be obvious because all—or almost all, if more nodes are faulty—of the other nodes in that category will then be reported “faulty” during the first check.

## 14.7 Serial Over LAN Console Access

Direct console access to nodes is not always possible. Other possibilities to access the node are:

1. **SSH access via an ssh client.** This requires that an ssh server runs on the node and that it is accessible via the network. Access can be via one of the following options:
  - a regular SSH client, run from a bash shell
  - via an ssh command run from the device mode of cmsh
  - via an ssh terminal launched from Base View via the navigation path:  
Devices > Nodes > *node* > Connect > ssh.
2. **Remote shell via CMDaemon.** This is possible if CMDaemon is running on the node and accessible via Base View or cmsh.
  - In Base View, An interactive root shell session can be started up on a node via the navigation path:  
Devices > Nodes > *node* > Connect > Root shell.  
This session is connected to the node via CMDaemon, and runs bash by default.
  - For cmsh, in device mode, running the command rshell node001 launches an interactive bash session connected to node001 via CMDaemon.
3. **Connecting via a serial over LAN console.** If a serial console is configured, then a serial over LAN (SOL) console can be accessed from cmsh (rconsole).

Item 3 in the preceding list, SOL access, is a useful low-level access method that is covered next more thoroughly with:

- some background notes on serial over LAN console access (section 14.7.1)
- the configuration of SOL with Base View (section 14.7.2)
- the configuration of SOL with cmsh (section 14.7.3)
- the conman SOL logger and viewer (section 14.7.4)

### 14.7.1 Background Notes On Serial Console And SOL

Serial ports are data ports that can usually be enabled or disabled for nodes in the BIOS.

If the serial port of a node is enabled, it can be configured in the node kernel to redirect a console to the port. The serial port can thus provide what is called serial console access. That is, the console can be viewed using a terminal software such as minicom (in Linux) or Hyperterminal (in Windows) on another machine to communicate with the node via the serial port, using a null-modem serial cable. This has traditionally been used by system administrators when remote access is otherwise disabled, for example if ssh access is not possible, or if the TCP/IP network parameters are not set up right.

While traditional serial port console access as just described can be useful, it is inconvenient, because of having to set arcane serial connection parameters, use the relatively slow serial port and use a special serial cable. Serial Over LAN (SOL) is a more recent development of serial port console access, which uses well-known TCP/IP networking over a faster Ethernet port, and uses a standard Ethernet cable. SOL is thus generally more convenient than traditional serial port console access. The serial port DB-9 or DB-25 connector and its associated 16550 UART chip rarely exist on modern servers that support SOL, but they are nonetheless usually implied to exist in the BIOS, and can be “enabled” or “disabled” there, thus enabling or disabling SOL.

SOL is a feature of the BMC (Baseboard Management Controller) for IPMI 2.0 and iLO. For DRAC, CIMC, and Redfish, SOL via IPMI is used. SOL is enabled by configuring the BMC BIOS. When enabled,

data that is going to the BMC serial port is sent to the BMC LAN port. SOL clients can then process the LAN data to display the console. As far as the node kernel is concerned, the serial port is still just behaving like a serial port, so no change needs to be made in kernel configuration in doing whatever is traditionally done to configure serial connectivity. However, the console is now accessible to the administrator using the SOL client on the LAN.

SOL thus allows SOL clients on the LAN to access the Linux serial console if

1. SOL is enabled and configured in the BMC BIOS
2. the serial console is enabled and configured in the node kernel
3. the serial port is enabled and configured in the node BIOS

The BMC BIOS, node kernel, and node BIOS therefore all need to be configured to implement SOL console access.

#### **Background Notes: BMC BIOS Configuration**

The BMC BIOS SOL values are usually enabled and configured as a submenu or pop-up menu of the node BIOS. These settings must be manually made to match the values in BCM, or vice versa.

During a factory reset of the node, it is likely that a SOL configuration in BCM will no longer match the configuration on the node BIOS after the node boots. This is because BCM cannot configure these. This is in contrast to the IP address and user authentication settings of the BMC (section 3.7), which BCM is able to configure on reboot.

#### **Background Notes: Node Kernel Configuration**

Sections 14.7.2 and 14.7.3 explain how SOL access configuration is set up for the node kernel using Base View or cmsh. SOL access configuration on the node kernel is serial access configuration on the node kernel as far as the system administrator is concerned; the only difference is that the word “serial” is replaced by “SOL” in BCM’s Base View and cmsh front ends to give a cluster perspective on the configuration.

#### **Background Notes: Node BIOS Configuration**

Since BIOS implementations vary, and serial port access is linked with SOL access in various ways by the BIOS designers, it is not possible to give short and precise details on how to enable and configure them. The following rules-of-thumb, if followed carefully, should allow most BMCs to be configured for SOL access with BCM:

- Serial access, or remote access via serial ports, should be enabled in the BIOS, if such a setting exists.
- The node BIOS serial port settings should match the node configuration SOL settings (section 14.7.3). That means, items such as “SOL speed”, “SOL Flow Control”, and “SOL port” in the node configuration must match the equivalent in the node BIOS. Reasonable values are:
  - SOL speed: 115200bps. Higher speeds are sometimes possible, but are more likely to have problems.
  - SOL flow control: On. It is however unlikely to cause problems if flow control is off in both.
  - SOL port: COM1 (in the BIOS serial port configuration), corresponding to ttyS0 (in the node kernel serial port configuration). Alternatively, COM2, corresponding to ttyS1. Sometimes, the BIOS configuration display indicates SOL options with options such as: “COM1 as SOL”, in which case such an option should be selected for SOL connectivity.
  - Terminal type: VT100 or ANSI.
- If there is an option for BIOS console redirection after BIOS POST, it should be disabled.

- If there is an option for BIOS console redirection before or during BIOS POST, it should be enabled.
- The administrator should be aware that the BMC LAN traffic, which includes SOL traffic, can typically run over a dedicated NIC or over a shared NIC. The choice of dedicated or shared is toggled, either in the BIOS, or via a physical toggle, or both. If BMC LAN traffic is configured to run on the shared NIC, then just connecting a SOL client with an Ethernet cable to the dedicated BMC NIC port shows no console.
- The node BIOS values should manually be made to match the values in BCM, or vice versa.

### 14.7.2 SOL Console Configuration With Base View

In Base View, SOL configuration settings can be carried out per image via the navigation path Provisioning > Software Images > *image* > Edit > Settings

If the Enable SOL option is set to Yes then the kernel option to make the Linux serial console accessible is used after the node is rebooted.

This means that if the serial port and SOL are enabled for the node hardware, then after the node reboots the Linux serial console is accessible over the LAN via an SOL client.

If SOL is correctly configured in the BIOS and in the image, then access to the Linux serial console is possible via the minicom serial client running on the computer (from a bash shell for example), or via the rconsole serial client running in cmsh.

### 14.7.3 SOL Console Configuration And Access With cmsh

In cmsh, the serial console kernel option for a software image can be enabled within the softwareimage mode of cmsh. For the default image of default-image, this can be done as follows:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% softwareimage use default-image

[basecm11->softwareimage [default-image]]% set enablesol yes
[basecm11->softwareimage*[default-image*]]% commit
```

The SOL settings for a particular image can be seen with the show command:

```
[basecm11->softwareimage [default-image]]% show | grep SOL
Parameter          Value
-----
Enable SOL          yes
SOL Flow Control    yes
SOL Port            ttyS1
SOL Speed           115200
```

Values can be adjusted if needed with the set command.

On rebooting the node, the new values are used.

To access a node via an SOL client, the node can be specified from within the device mode of cmsh, and the rconsole command run on cmsh on the head node:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]% rconsole
screen cleared and the following conman output is displayed:
=====
conman
```

```
To exit IPMI SOL, type <ENTER> "&" "."
=====
<ConMan> Connection to console [node001] opened.
```

If at this point, there is no further response in conman on the console after pressing the <ENTER> key, then there is a communication failure, probably due to a misconfigured communication parameter. This could happen, for example, if the serial port ttyS1 has been set, but the node is connected on ttyS0. Setting the value of SOL Port to ttyS0 and rebooting the node to pick up the new value, would solve that issue, so that pressing the <ENTER> key, would display the node console:

#### Example

```
Ubuntu 18.04.2 LTS node001 ttyS0

node001 login:
```

#### 14.7.4 The conman Serial Console Logger And Viewer

In BCM, the console viewer and logger service conman is used to connect to an SOL console and log the console output.

If the “Enable SOL” option in Base View, or if the `enablesol` parameter in cmsh is enabled for the software image, then the conman configuration is written out and the conman service is started.

#### Logging The Serial Console

The data seen at the serial console is then logged via SOL to the head node after reboot. For each node that has logging enabled, a log file is kept on the head node. For example, for node001 the log file would be at `/var/log/conman/node001.log`. To view the logged console output without destroying terminal settings, using less with the `-R` option is recommended, as in: `less -R /var/log/conman/node001.log`.

#### Using The Serial Console Interactively

**Viewing quirk during boot:** In contrast to the logs, the console viewer shows the initial booting stages of the node as it happens. There is however a quirk the system administrator should be aware of:

Normally the display on the physical console is a copy of the remote console. However, during boot, after the remote console has started up and been displaying the physical console for a while, the physical console display freezes. For the Linux 2.6 kernel series, the freeze occurs just before the ramdisk is run, and means that the display of the output of the launching `init.d` services is not seen on the physical console (figure 14.2).

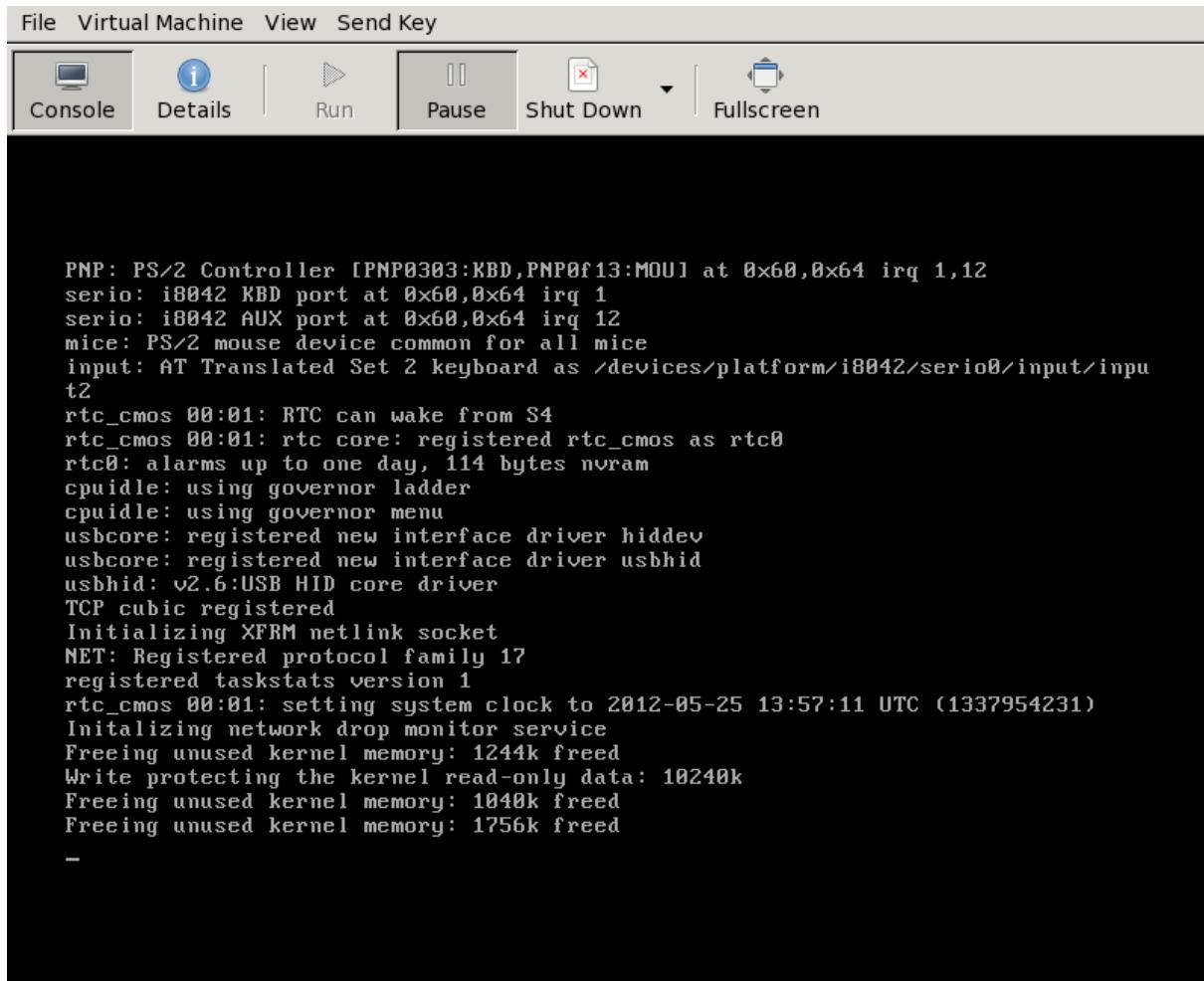
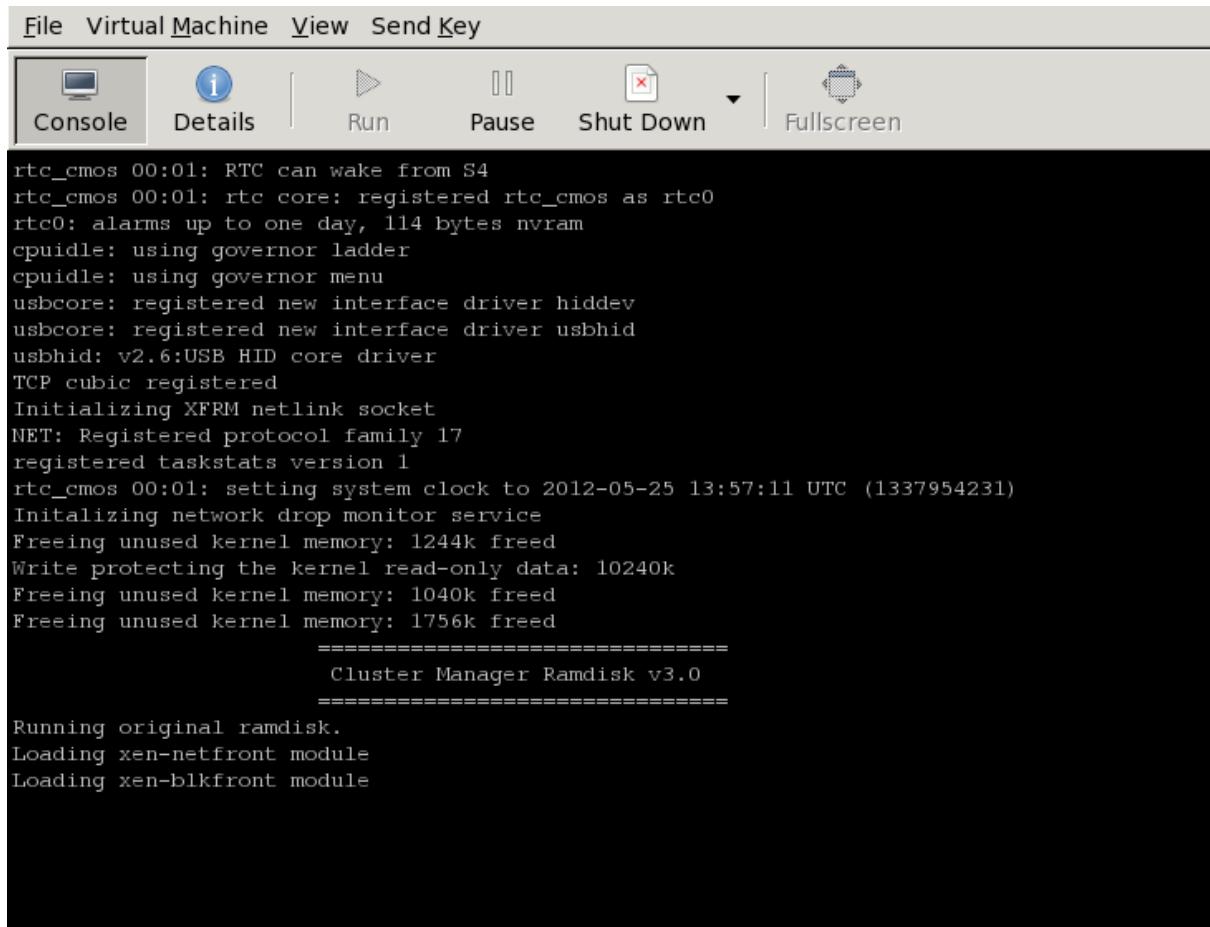


Figure 14.2: Physical Console Freeze During SOL Access

The freeze is only a freeze of the display, and should not be mistaken for a system freeze. It occurs because the kernel is configured during that stage to send to only one console, and that console is the remote console. The remote console continues to display its progress (figure 14.3) during the freeze of the physical console display.



The screenshot shows a virtual machine console window with a dark background. At the top, there is a menu bar with options: File, Virtual Machine, View, Send Key. Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for Console (selected), Details, Run, Pause, Shut Down, and Fullscreen. The main area of the window displays the kernel boot logs. The logs show the system booting up, including messages from rtc\_cmos, usbcore, and the TCP cubic driver. It also shows the setting of the system clock to UTC, the initialization of network drop monitor service, and the protection of kernel read-only data. The logs conclude with the loading of xen-netfront and xen-blkfront modules.

```
rtc_cmos 00:01: RTC can wake from S4
rtc_cmos 00:01: rtc core: registered rtc_cmos as rtc0
rtc0: alarms up to one day, 114 bytes nvram
cpuidle: using governor ladder
cpuidle: using governor menu
usbcore: registered new interface driver hiddev
usbcore: registered new interface driver usbhid
usbhid: v2.6:USB HID core driver
TCP cubic registered
Initializing XFRM netlink socket
NET: Registered protocol family 17
registered taskstats version 1
rtc_cmos 00:01: setting system clock to 2012-05-25 13:57:11 UTC (1337954231)
Initialzing network drop monitor service
Freeing unused kernel memory: 1244k freed
Write protecting the kernel read-only data: 10240k
Freeing unused kernel memory: 1040k freed
Freeing unused kernel memory: 1756k freed
=====
          Cluster Manager Ramdisk v3.0
=====
Running original ramdisk.
Loading xen-netfront module
Loading xen-blkfront module
```

Figure 14.3: Remote Console Continues During SOL Access During Physical Console Freeze

Finally, just before login is displayed, the physical console once more (figure 14.4) starts to display what is on the remote console (figure 14.5).

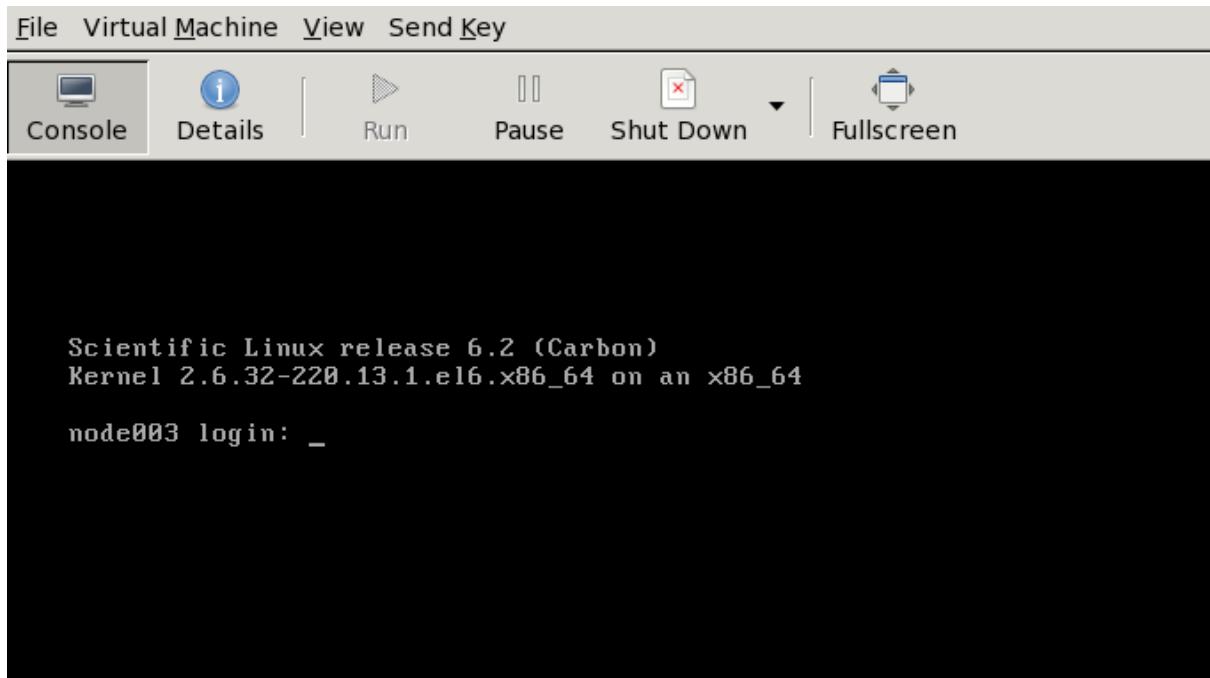


Figure 14.4: Physical Console Resumes After Freeze During SOL Access

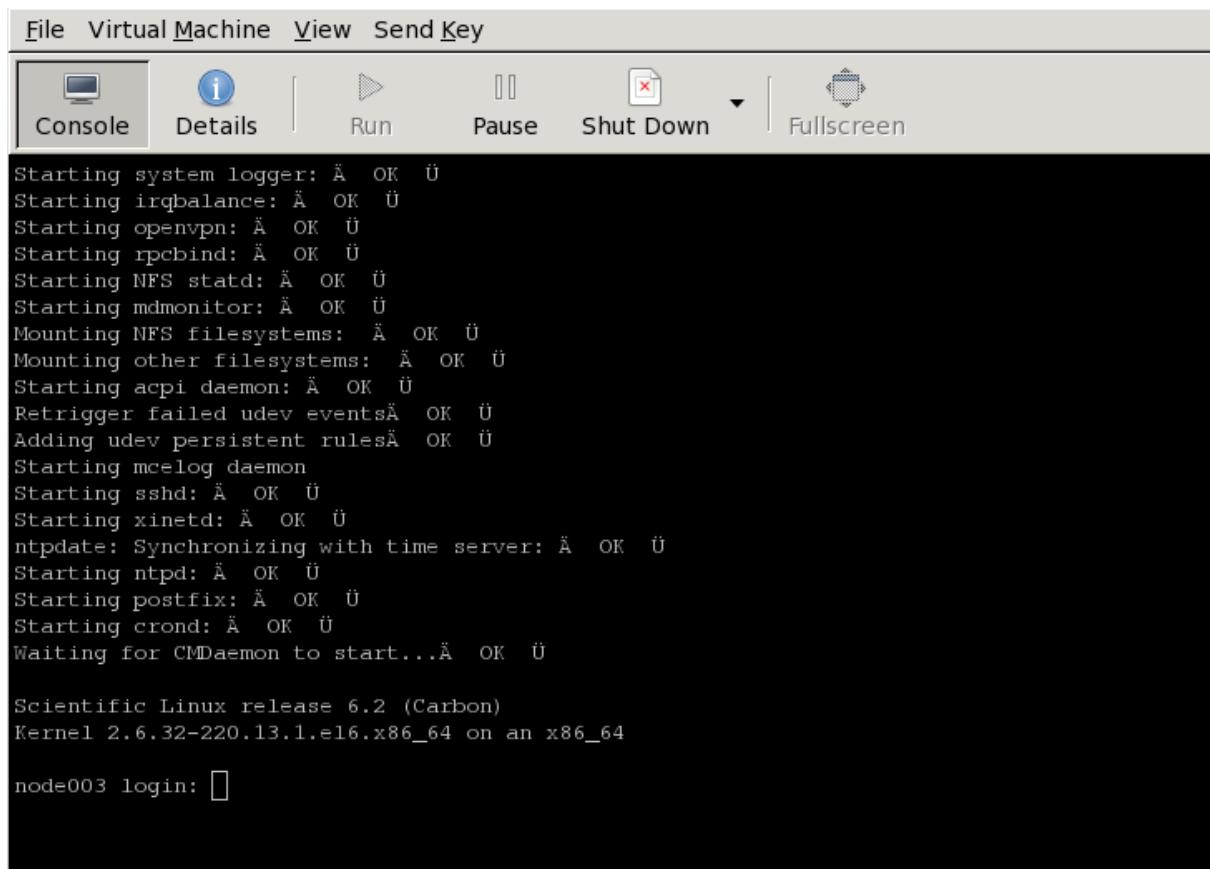


Figure 14.5: Remote Console End Display After Boot

The physical console thus misses displaying several parts of the boot progress.

**Exit sequence:** The conman console viewer session can be exited with the sequence &. (the last entry in the sequence being a period). Strictly speaking, the &. sequence must actually be preceded by an <ENTER>.

**The console buffer issue when accessing the remote console:** A feature of SOL console clients is that the administrator is not presented with any text prompt from the node that is being accessed. This is useful in some cases, and can be a problem in others.

An example of the issue is the case where the administrator has already logged into the console and typed in a command in the console shell, but has no intention of pressing the <ENTER> key until some other tasks are first carried out. If the connection breaks at this point, then the command typed in is held in the console shell command buffer, but is not displayed when a remote serial connection is re-established to the console—the previously entered text is invisible to the client making the connection. A subsequent <ENTER> would then attempt to execute the command. This is why an <ENTER> is not sent as the last key sequence during automated SOL access, and it is left to the administrator to enter the appropriate key strokes.

To avoid commands in the console shell buffer inadvertently being run when taking over the console remotely, the administrator can start the session with a <CTRL>-u to clear out text in the shell before pressing <ENTER>.

## 14.8 Managing Raw Monitoring Data

From NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 8.0 onward, the raw monitoring data values are stored as binary data under /var/spool/cmd/monitoring instead of as binary data within MySQL or MariaDB. The reason behind this change was to significantly increase performance. The monitoring subsystem in BCM was thoroughly rewritten for this change.

### 14.8.1 Monitoring Subsystem Disk Usage With The `monitoringinfo --storage` Option

The disk usage by the monitoring subsystem can be viewed using the `monitoringinfo` command with the `--storage` option:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % monitoringinfo master --storage
Storage           Elements   Disk size    Usage     Free disk
-----
Mon::Storage::Engine      1,523     1.00 GiB   1.28%    14.1 GiB
Mon::Storage::Message      1         16.0 MiB  0.000%   -
Mon::Storage::RepositoryId 1,528     47.7 KiB  100.0%   -
```

The Engine component stores the raw monitoring data. It grows in 1GB increments each time its usage reaches 100%.

### 14.8.2 Estimating The Required Size Of The Storage Device

The final size of the monitoring directory can be estimated with the script `cm-monitoring-disk-usage.py`.

The size estimate assumes that there are no changes in configuration, such as enabling advanced metrics for jobs, or increasing the maximum number of labeled entities, or large numbers of running jobs.

The size estimate value is the maximum value it will take if the cluster runs forever. It is therefore an over-estimate in practice.

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/monitoring/cm-monitoring-disk-usage.py
Number of used entities:      10
Number of used measurables:   286
Number of measurables:        286
Number of data producers:     98
Number of consolidators:      2

Current monitoring directory: /var/spool/cmd/monitoring
Monitoring directory size:    1.024 GB
Maximal directory size:       1.409 GB
```

### 14.8.3 Moving Monitoring Data Elsewhere

A procedure to move monitoring data from the default `/var/spool/cmd/monitoring/` directory to a new directory is as follows:

1. A new directory in which monitoring should be saved is picked.

The block storage device for the directory should not be a shared DAS (Direct Attached Storage, such as a locally attached drive) or a NAS (Network Attached Storage, such as NFS or Lustre which work over a network connection). That is because if there is an outage, then:

- If such a DAS storage becomes unavailable at some time, then CMDaemon assumes that no monitoring data values exist, and creates an empty data file on the local storage. If the DAS storage comes back and is mounted again, then it hides the underlying files, which would lead to discontinuous values and related issues.
- If such a NAS storage is used, then an outage of the NAS can make CMDaemon unresponsive as it waits for input and output. In addition, when CMDaemon starts with a NAS storage, and if the NAS is unavailable for some reason, then an inappropriate mount may happen as in the DAS storage case, leading to discontinuous values and related issues.

2. The `MonitoringPath` directive (page 864) is given the new directory as its value.
3. CMDaemon is stopped (`systemctl stop cmd`).
4. The `/var/spool/cmd/monitoring/` directory is moved to the new directory.
5. CMDaemon is restarted (`systemctl start cmd`).

### 14.8.4 Reducing Monitoring Data By Reducing Samples

Options to reduce the amount of monitoring data gathered include reducing the `Maximal age` and `Maximal samples` for data producers (section 10.4.1) to smaller, but still non-zero values. After re-initializing the monitoring data collection, so that existing data is removed, the values reported by the `cm-monitoring-disk-usage.py` script (section 14.8.2) then show the new storage estimates for the monitoring data.

### 14.8.5 Deleting All Monitoring Data

A procedure to delete all monitoring data from the default `/var/spool/cmd/monitoring/` directory is as follows:

1. The CMDaemon service on all nodes can be stopped by running the following on the active head node:  
`pdsh -g all systemctl stop cmd`
2. On both head nodes, the monitoring data is removed with:

```
rm -f /var/spool/cmd/monitoring/*
rm -f /var/spool/cmd/backup/* /var/spool/cmd/monitoring/*
```

3. On both head nodes, the associated database tables for the CMDaemon user are cleared with a MySQL session run on each head node.

The CMDaemon database user is cmdaemon by default, but the value can be checked with a grep on the cmd.conf file:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# grep ^DBUser /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf
DBUser = "cmdaemon"
```

Similarly, the password for the cmdaemon user can be found with a grep as follows:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# grep ^DBPass /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf
DBPass = "slarti8813bartfahrt"
```

The monitoring measurables can then be deleted by running a session on each head node as follows:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# mysql -ucmdaemon -p
Enter password:
Welcome to the MariaDB monitor.  Commands end with ; or \g.
Your MariaDB connection id is 2909
Server version: 5.5.56-MariaDB MariaDB Server

Copyright (c) 2000, 2017, Oracle, MariaDB Corporation Ab and others.

Type 'help;' or '\h' for help. Type '\c' to clear the current input statement.

MariaDB [(none)]> use cmdaemon;
Database changed
MariaDB [cmdaemon]> truncate MonitoringMeasurables;
MariaDB [cmdaemon]> truncate MonitoringMeasurableMetrics;
MariaDB [cmdaemon]> truncate MonitoringMeasurableHealthChecks;
MariaDB [cmdaemon]> truncate MonitoringMeasurableEnums;
MariaDB [cmdaemon]> truncate EntityMeasurables;
MariaDB [cmdaemon]> truncate EnumMetricValues;
MariaDB [cmdaemon]> truncate LabeledEntities;
MariaDB [cmdaemon]> truncate JobInformation;
MariaDB [cmdaemon]> exit
repeat on other head node
```

4. On both head nodes, CMDaemon can then be restarted with:

```
systemctl start cmd
```

5. On the active head node, after the command:

```
cmha status
```

shows all is OK, the CMDaemon service can be started on all regular nodes again. The OK state should be achieved in about 15 seconds.

The CMDaemon service is started with, for example:

```
pdsh -g computenode systemctl start cmd
```

## 14.9 Node Replacement

To replace an existing node with a new node, the node information can be updated via cmsh.

If the new MAC address is known, then it can set that for the node. If the MAC address is not known, then the existing entry can be cleared.

If the MAC address is not known ahead of time, then the node name for the machine should be selected when it is provisioning for the first time. The steps for a new node node031 would be as follows:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% device use node0031
if new mac address is known, then:
[basecm11->device[node031]]% set mac <new mac address>
else if new mac address is not known:
[basecm11->device[node031]]% clear mac
the changed setting in either case must be committed:
[basecm11->device[node031]]% commit
```

If the disk is the same size as the one that is being replaced, and everything else matches up, then this should be all that needs to be done

There is more information on the node installing system in section 5.4. How to add a large number of nodes at a time efficiently is described in that section. The methods used can include the `newnodes` command of cmsh (page 251) and the `Nodes` Identification resource of Base View (page 255).

## 14.10 Ansible And NVIDIA Base Command Manager

This section describes using Ansible with BCM. Using Ansible to install NVIDIA Base Command Manager is described in section 3.4 of the *Installation Manual*.

### 14.10.1 An Overview Of Ansible

Ansible is a popular automated configuration management software.

The BCM administrator is expected to have some experience already with Ansible. The basic concepts are covered in the official Ansible documentation at [https://docs.ansible.com/ansible/latest/user\\_guide/basic\\_concepts.html](https://docs.ansible.com/ansible/latest/user_guide/basic_concepts.html), and further details are accessible from that site too.

As a reminder:

- Ansible is designed to administer groups of machines from an *inventory* of machines.
- An Ansible *module* is code, usually in Python, that is executed by Ansible to carry out Ansible *tasks*, usually on a remote node. The module returns values.
- An Ansible *playbook* is a YAML file. The file declares a configuration that is to be executed (“the playbook is followed”) on selected machines. The execution is usually carried out over SSH, by placing modules on the remote machine.
- Traditionally, official Ansible content was obtained as a part of milestone releases of Ansible Engine, (the Red Hat version of Ansible for the enterprise).
- Since Ansible version 2.10, the official way to distribute content is via Ansible content *collections*. Collections are composed of Ansible playbooks, modules, module utilities and plugins. The collection is a formatted set of tools used to achieve automation with Ansible.
- The official Ansible list of collections is at <https://docs.ansible.com/ansible/latest/collections/index.html#list-of-collections>. At the time of writing of this section (March 2022) there were 100 collections.
- Community-supported collections are also available, at [galaxy.ansible.com](https://galaxy.ansible.com).

## Picking Up The BCM Ansible Collections

In particular, the web interface at <https://galaxy.ansible.com/brightcomputing> shows the updated list of BCM Ansible collections.

From version 9.1 onward of BCM, the BCM Ansible collection naming scheme has been changed so that the name now indicates the BCM version number. This now makes it simpler for the cluster administrator to choose the right Ansible collection.

For example, to install the latest version of the BCM Ansible collection for a NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11 cluster, the following command can now be run:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ansible-galaxy collection install brightcomputing.bcm110
```

### 14.10.2 A Simple Playbook Example

In this section, a playbook from the BCM collection is run.

#### Preparations

To start with, Python is loaded, and Ansible installed:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load python3
[root@basecm11 ~]# pip install ansible
```

#### Running A Simple Playbook

The directory /cm/local/examples/cmd/ansible has several BCM Ansible playbook examples.

The Ansible playbook to add a user can be run. The playbook is simply:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /cm/local/examples/cmd/ansible/add-user.yaml
---
- hosts: all
  gather_facts: false
  tasks:
    collections:
      - brightcomputing.bcm110
    tasks:
      - name: create test-user
        user:
          name: test-user
          password: test-user-password
          profile: readonly
```

The latest NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11-compatible version of the BCM Ansible collection is at <https://galaxy.ansible.com/brightcomputing/bcm110>. It can be installed with the `ansible-galaxy` tool from the `galaxy.ansible.com` repository directly with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ansible-galaxy collection install brightcomputing.bcm110
```

#### Documentation For The BCM Collection

The `brightcomputing.bcm110` documentation for modules can be explored using `ansible-doc` in the usual way, using the namespace. For example, for the `user` module in the `brightcomputing.bcm110` namespace, this would be (output truncated):

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ansible-doc brightcomputing.bcm110.user
> BRIGHTCOMPUTING.BCM110.USER
> (/root/.ansible/collections/ansible_collections/brightcomputing/bcm110/plugins/modules/user.py)
```

User

ADDED IN: version 9.2.0 of `brightcomputing.bcm110`

```
* note: This module has a corresponding action plugin.

OPTIONS (= is mandatory):

- ID
    User ID number
    [Default: (null)]
    type: str

- cloneFrom
    The id or name of the entity that the new entity will be cloned from.
    (take effect only at entity creation)
    [Default: ]
    type: str

- email
...

```

The list of modules in the `brightcomputing.bcm110` collection can be viewed with `ansible-doc -l brightcomputing.bcm110`.

Almost all the modules are available as a pair. For such a pair, one module out of the pair is to query the attributes of the entity being dealt with by the pair, while the other module is to set the attributes.

## Running The Ansible Playbook

The add-user playbook can now be run with:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ansible-playbook -ilocalhost, /cm/local/examples/cmd/ansible/add-user.yaml

PLAY [all]
*****
TASK [create test-user]
*****
changed: [localhost]

PLAY RECAP
*****
localhost : ok=1    changed=1    unreachable=0    failed=0    skipped=0
rescued=0   ignored=0
```

The YAML code shows a user should be created after execution of the playbook. If unsure, the playbook can be run again. This should do no harm since well-formed playbooks are idempotent.

The new list of users can be verified with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "user list"
Name (key)      ID (key)      Primary group      Secondary groups
-----
cmsupport      1000          cmsupport
test-user       1001          test-user
```

### 14.10.3 An Intermediate Playbook Example: Setting Up A Cluster For Demonstration Purposes

The simple playbook in the preceding section has the advantage of being a quick way for the administrator to be reasonably sure that Ansible is running as it should be.

An administrator who is intending to use Ansible is typically going to need to be more familiar with how Ansible playbooks can be used to define BCM infrastructure.

This section (14.10.3) and the next (14.10.4) aim to provide this familiarity. They should be a guide for users when they go about defining their own BCM infrastructure with Ansible, as well as a model for how to carry out Ansible tasks for BCM.

The example session in this section (section 14.10.3) is about a cluster administrator who wishes to prepare a playbook so that the default image is updated, and then have the cluster set up some new objects with default values. This is useful for testing out changes in the new objects. The idea being that the administrator has up-to-date nodes with default settings in the new objects, and which work to begin with. That makes the new objects suitable for demonstrations and for making changes to see how it affects the standard settings. It also provides the convenience of being able to refer back to the working defaults in the original objects if things go wrong with the demonstration objects.

The tasks to bring the cluster to the “demo” state are described next.

#### Cloning The Image

The administrator now clones the default image. The idea being that further changes can be made on the cloned image later on, with the default image instance remaining unchanged, and available for comparison.

The YAML example `clone-software-image.yaml` provided with BCM can be displayed and used to carry out the cloning as shown in the following session:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /cm/local/examples/cmd/ansible/clone-software-image.yaml
---
- hosts: all
  gather_facts: false
  tasks:
    - name: clone a software image
      brightcomputingbcm110.software_image:
        name: cloned-image
        cloneFrom: default-image
        path: /cm/images/cloned-image

[root@basecm11 ~] ansible-playbook -i localhost, /cm/local/examples/cmd/ansible/clone-software-image.yaml
```

#### Cloning The Category

A clone of the default category, `democategory`, can be built with the `brightcomputingbcm110.category` module:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat clonedefaultcat.yaml
- hosts: all
  gather_facts: false

  tasks:
    - name: clone category
      brightcomputingbcm110.category:
        name: democategory
        cloneFrom: default

[root@basecm11 ~] ansible-playbook -i localhost, clonedefaultcat.yaml
```

### Setting The Software Image In The Cloned Category To Be The Cloned Image

The software image in the cloned category can then be set to the cloned-image from earlier with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat setimageincat.yaml
- hosts: all
  gather_facts: false

  tasks:
    - name: set image in category
      brightcomputingbcm110.category:
        name: democategory
        softwareImageProxy:
          parentSoftwareImage: cloned-image
[root@basecm11 ~] ansible-playbook -i localhost, setimageincat.yaml
```

### Setting The Regular Nodes To Be In The Cloned Category

The regular nodes node001 and node002 can be placed in the cloned category with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat setcatofnodes.yaml
- hosts: all
  gather_facts: false

  tasks:
    - name: list all nodes
      brightcomputingbcm110.node_info:
        format: dict
        include_id: false
        for_update: true
      register: result

    - name: set head_node
      set_fact:
        all_nodes: "{{ result.nodes }}"

    - name: assign compute nodes to cloned category
      brightcomputingbcm110.physical_node:
        hostname: "{{ item }}"
        mac: "{{ all_nodes[item].mac }}"
        category: democategory
      loop:
        - node001
        - node002
[root@basecm11 ~] ansible-playbook -i localhost, setcatofnodes.yaml
```

Without using Ansible, and using cmsh directly instead, the preceding placement could be carried out with:

```
[root@basecm11 ~] for i in {001..002}
do cmsh -c "device use node$i; set category democategory; commit"
done
```

### 14.10.4 A More Complicated Playbook Example: Creating An Edge Site And Related Properties

This section provides a more complicated BCM Ansible collection-based playbook, and elaborates upon how it is used.

The collection is first shown as a whole in the following section. Then less obvious portions from it are explained, with the help of number labels, in the sections after that, starting on page 734.

## The Collection

The full collection is as follows:

```
---
```

```
- hosts: all
  gather_facts: false
  vars:
    site:
      name: test-site
      secret: SECRET

    director:
      hostname: test-site-director
      mac: 00:11:22:33:44:55
      eth0_ip: 10.152.0.254
      eth1_ip: 10.161.0.254

    nodes:
      - hostname: edge-node-01
        mac: 00:11:22:33:44:01
        eth0_ip: 10.161.0.1

      - hostname: edge-node-02
        mac: 00:11:22:33:44:02
        eth0_ip: 10.161.0.2

      - hostname: edge-node-03
        mac: 00:11:22:33:44:03
        eth0_ip: 10.161.0.3

  pre_tasks:
    - name: set compute nodes for site
      set_fact:
        site_compute_nodes: "{{nodes | map(attribute='hostname') | list}}"

    - name: set nodes for site
      set_fact:
        site_nodes: "{{[director.hostname] + site_compute_nodes}}"

  tasks:
    # Network creation
    - name: create an external network
      brightcomputing.bcm110.network:
        state: present
        name: test-site-external_network
        type: EDGE_EXTERNAL
        baseAddress: 10.152.0.0
        broadcastAddress: 10.152.255.255
        netmaskBits: 16
        domainName: test-site-external_network
        management: true

    - name: create an internal network
      brightcomputing.bcm110.network:
        state: present
```

```
type: EDGE_INTERNAL
name: test-site-internal_network
baseAddress: 10.161.0.0
broadcastAddress: 10.161.255.255
dynamicRangeStart: 10.161.16.0
dynamicRangeEnd: 10.161.19.255
netmaskBits: 16
domainName: test-site-internal_network
management: true
bootable: true

- name: create edge site software image
  brightcomputing.bcm110.software_image:
    name: my-software-image
    path: /cm/images/my-software-image
    cloneFrom: default-image

- name: create edge director category
  brightcomputing.bcm110.category:
    name: edge_director_category
    softwareImageProxy:
      parentSoftwareImage: my-software-image
    fsmounts:
      - device: $localnfsserver:/cm/shared
        mountpoint: /cm/shared
        filesystem: nfs
      - device: $localnfsserver:/home
        mountpoint: /home
        filesystem: nfs
    state: present

# Edge Director
- name: create director physical node
  brightcomputing.bcm110.physical_node:
    state: present
    hostname: "{{director.hostname}}"
    partition: base
    interfaces_NetworkPhysicalInterface:
      - name: eth0
        ip: "{{ director.eth0_ip }}"
        network: test-site-external_network
      - name: eth1
        ip: "{{ director.eth1_ip }}"
        network: test-site-internal_network

    category: edge_director_category
    mac: "{{director.mac}}"
    managementNetwork: test-site-external_network
    provisioningInterface: eth0
    installBootRecord: true
    roles_EdgeDirectorRole:
      - name: edge_director_role
        openTCPPortsOnHeadNode: [636]
        externallyVisibleIp: 0.0.0.0
        externallyVisibleHeadNodeIp: 0.0.0.0
```

```

roles_BootRole:
  - name: boot_role
    allowRamdiskCreation: true
roles_StorageRole:
  - name: storage_role
roles_ProvisioningRole:
  - name: provisioning_role
    allImages: LOCALDISK

# Edge Nodes
- name: create edge nodes
  brightcomputing.bcm10.physical_node:
    hostname: "{{item.hostname}}"
    softwareImageProxy:
      parentSoftwareImage: default-image
    interfaces_NetworkPhysicalInterface:
      - name: eth0
        ip: "{{item.eth0_ip}}"
        network: test-site-internal_network
    category: default
    mac: "{{item.mac}}"
    managementNetwork: test-site-internal_network
    installBootRecord: false
    provisioningInterface: eth0
    partition: base
    loop: "{{ nodes }}"
  - name: add test edge site
    brightcomputing.bcm10.edge_site:
      name: "{{site.name}}"
      secret: "{{site.secret}}"
      address: Springfield
      adminEmail: admin-west@email.com
      city: San Francisco
      contact: Admin
      country: USA
      notes: Note about the site
      state: present
      nodes: "{{site_nodes}}"

```

### Topmost Part

```

- hosts: all #(1)
  gather_facts: false #(2)

```

1. This is a standard Ansible playbook configuration item. It defines the group or host that the playbook is run on.
2. Fact gathering is skipped here, because there is no need to use any facts that Ansible usually gathers pre-playbook-run. As a bonus, skipping it makes execution faster.

### Pre\_tasks Part

The `pre_tasks` section could have been made a part of the `tasks` section. However, making it a separate section has the benefit of separating real action from simple fact definition:

```

- name: set compute nodes for site
  set_fact:

```

```

site_compute_nodes: "{{nodes | map(attribute='hostname') | list}}" #(1)

- name: set nodes for site
  set_fact:
    site_nodes: "{{[director.hostname] + site_compute_nodes}}" #(2)

```

1. In the preceding code, the Ansible templating capability is used to get the list of `compute_nodes` for the site that is to be created. The `hostname` attribute is extracted from every element of the `nodes` variable and then transformed into a list, and assigned to the `site_compute_nodes` variable.
2. The list that is created has all the nodes that are part of the site, which means the compute nodes as well as the director.

### The Tasks Part

**External and internal networks configuration:** The tasks section starts with networking definitions (tagged here with (1) and (2)). These are the external and internal networks that are needed for the edge site that is to be created.

```

- name: create an external network      #(1)
  brightcomputing.bcm110.network:
    state: present
    name: test-site-external_network
    type: EDGE_EXTERNAL
    baseAddress: 10.152.0.0
    broadcastAddress: 10.152.255.255
    netmaskBits: 16
    domainName: test-site-external_network
    management: true

- name: create an internal network      #(2)
  brightcomputing.bcm110.network:
    state: present
    type: EDGE_INTERNAL
    name: test-site-internal_network
    baseAddress: 10.161.0.0
    broadcastAddress: 10.161.255.255
    dynamicRangeStart: 10.161.16.0
    dynamicRangeEnd: 10.161.19.255
    netmaskBits: 16
    domainName: test-site-internal_network
    management: true
    bootable: true

```

The possible values for each entity attribute can be seen by running the `ansible-doc` command:

### Example

```
$ ansible-doc brightcomputing.bcm110.network
```

**Director creation:** A category must exist for the edge director, or must be created before the director can be created. The following snippet takes care of that:

```

- name: create edge site software image
  brightcomputing.bcm110.software_image:
    name: my-software-image
    path: /cm/images/my-software-image

```

```

cloneFrom: default-image    #(1)

- name: create edge director category
  brightcomputing.bcm110.category:
    name: edge_director_category
    softwareImageProxy:
      parentSoftwareImage: my-software-image    #(2)
    fsmounts:      #(3)
      - device: $localnfsserver:/cm/shared
        mountpoint: /cm/shared
        filesystem: nfs
      - device: $localnfsserver:/home
        mountpoint: /home
        filesystem: nfs
    state: present    #(4)

```

1. The `cloneFrom` attribute is used to create the new software image from the existing one, to avoid copying over all the values that are part of the original image. The `default-image` is used here, since it is guaranteed to be defined in a new cluster.

The `cloneFrom` attribute only takes effect when the resource is not defined. This means that if the software image is already present, then using `cloneFrom` has no effect. Removing the image allows it to be re-created again using the `cloneFrom` attribute.

2. The declared software image (here it is `my-software-image`) is then used to define the director category.
3. The edge directory category attributes in the snippet are standard values that are normally assigned to a director category that is to be used by director nodes.
4. The default value for `state` is `present`, so the task has the same behavior if the `state` field is left out.

**Values for the director node:** The edge director node values can now be set

```

- name: create director physical node
  brightcomputing.bcm110.physical_node:
    state: present
    hostname: "{{director.hostname}}"
    partition: base
    interfaces_NetworkPhysicalInterface:
      - name: eth0
        ip: "{{ director.eth0_ip }}"
        network: test-site-external_network
      - name: eth1
        ip: "{{ director.eth1_ip }}"
        network: test-site-internal_network

    category: edge_director_category
    mac: "{{director.mac}}"
    managementNetwork: test-site-external_network
    provisioningInterface: eth0
    installBootRecord: true
    roles_EdgeDirectorRole: # (1)
      - name: edge_director_role
        openTCPPortsOnHeadNode: [636]

```

```

externallyVisibleIp: 0.0.0.0
externallyVisibleHeadNodeIp: 0.0.0.0
roles_BootRole:
  - name: boot_role
    allowRamdiskCreation: true
roles_StorageRole:
  - name: storage_role
roles_ProvisioningRole:
  - name: provisioning_role
    allImages: LOCALDISK

```

In the preceding snippet, values are set for the physical node so that it functions correctly as a director on an edge site.

1. The director, just like the edge nodes, is just a physical node, with the role EdgeDirectorRole assigned to it, along with other relevant roles.

#### The edge (compute) nodes definition:

1. In the following snippet, the looping mechanism defines a physical node that corresponds to each declared compute node.

Each edge node belongs to the correct network.

```

- name: create edge nodes
  brightcomputing.bcm110.physical_node:
    hostname: "{{item.hostname}}"
    softwareImageProxy:
      parentSoftwareImage: default-image
    interfaces_NetworkPhysicalInterface:
      - name: eth0
        ip: "{{item.eth0_ip}}"
        network: test-site-internal_network
    category: default
    mac: "{{item.mac}}"
    managementNetwork: test-site-internal_network
    installBootRecord: false
    provisioningInterface: eth0
    partition: base
  loop: "{{nodes}}" #(1)

```

**Edge site object creation:** The last part of the playbook creates the edge site object.

```

- name: add test edge site
  brightcomputing.bcm110.edge_site:
    name: "{{site.name}}"
    secret: "{{site.secret}}"
    address: Springfield
    adminEmail: admin-west@email.com
    city: San Francisco
    contact: Admin
    country: USA
    notes: Note about the site
    state: present
    nodes: "{{site_nodes}}" #(1)

```

The `site_nodes` variable, defined by the `set_fact` task, is assigned to the `nodes` attribute of an `edge_site` action.

Running this playbook on a fresh cluster should be enough to create a new edge site with the declared properties, even if the nodes are not physically present.

The state of the edge site can be checked with `cmsh` queries. It should be noted that the image creation step may take a few minutes, depending on how big `default-image` is.

# 15

# High Availability

## 15.0 Introduction

### 15.0.1 Why Have High Availability?

In a cluster with a single head node, the head node is a single point of failure for the entire cluster. It is often unacceptable that the failure of a single machine can disrupt the daily operations of a cluster.

High availability configuration for a head node is about configuring an extra head node to provide the head node services in a redundant manner. If one head node fails, then the other head node can take over, thus providing the same services with a minimum of downtime.

High availability can be set up for other types of nodes too.

### 15.0.2 High Availability—For What Nodes?

By default, in this and other chapters, HA is about a head node failover configuration. When it is otherwise, then it is made explicitly clear in the manuals that it is regular node HA, or edge director HA, or COD head node HA that is being discussed.

#### High Availability For Head Nodes

By default, the head node usually runs the most services. The high availability (HA) feature of BCM therefore allows clusters to be set up with two head nodes configured as a failover pair, with one member of the pair being the active head. The purpose of this design is to increase availability to beyond that provided by a single head node.

#### High Availability For Regular Nodes

Especially with smaller clusters, it is often convenient to run all services on the head node. However, an administrator may want or need to run a service on a regular node instead. For example, a workload manager, or NFS could be run on a regular node. If a service disruption is unacceptable here, too, then HA can be configured for regular nodes too (section 15.5). HA for regular nodes is a more recent feature in BCM, and is done differently compared with head nodes.

#### High Availability For Edge Directors

Edge directors manage edge nodes and manage them in a similar way to how head nodes manage regular nodes. Also similar to head nodes is that edge directors can also be configured for HA (section 2.1.1 of the *Edge Manual*). However, their HA design is based on that of HA for regular nodes.

#### High Availability For COD Head Nodes

Cluster On Demand (COD) head nodes are head nodes that run on a cloud service provider. COD HA head nodes are very similar to standard cluster HA (on-premises) head nodes. COD HA is discussed separately in section 2.14 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*.

### 15.0.3 High Availability Usually Uses Shared Storage

HA is typically configured using shared storage (section 15.1.5), such as from an NFS service, which typically provides the /home directory on the active (section 15.1.1) head, and on the regular nodes.

### 15.0.4 Organization Of This Chapter

The remaining sections of this chapter are organized as follows:

- **HA On Head Nodes**

- Section 15.1 describes the concepts behind HA, keeping the BCM configuration in mind.
- Section 15.2 describes the normal user-interactive way in which the BCM implementation of a failover setup is configured.
- Section 15.3 describes the implementation of the BCM failover setup in a less user-interactive way, which avoids using the ncurses dialogs of section 15.2
- Section 15.4 describes how HA is managed with BCM after it has been set up.

- **HA On Regular Nodes**

- Section 15.5 describes the concepts behind HA for regular nodes, and how to configure HA for them.

- **HA And Workload Manager Jobs**

- Section 15.6 describes the support for workload manager job continuation during HA failover.

## 15.1 HA Concepts

### 15.1.1 Primary, Secondary, Active, Passive

**Naming:** In a cluster with an HA setup, one of the head nodes is named the *primary* head node and the other head node is named the *secondary* head node.

**Mode:** Under normal operation, one of the two head nodes is in *active* mode, whereas the other is in *passive* mode.

The difference between naming versus mode is illustrated by realizing that while a head node which is primary always remains primary, the mode that the node is in may change. Thus, the primary head node can be in passive mode when the secondary is in active mode. Similarly the primary head node may be in active mode while the secondary head node is in passive mode. As an aside: the definition for primary in HA for NVIDIA Base Command Manager should not be confused with the definition for primary that is used by workload managers such as Slurm and PBS Professional when a failover mechanism is configured by the workload manager (section 7.2.4).

The difference between active and passive is that the active head takes the lead in cluster-related activity, while the passive follows it. Thus, for example, with MySQL transactions, CMDaemon carries them out with MySQL running on the active, while the passive trails the changes. This naturally means that the active corresponds to the master, and the passive to the slave, in the MySQL master-slave replication mode that MySQL is run as.

### 15.1.2 Monitoring The Active Head Node, Initiating Failover

In HA the passive head node continuously monitors the active head node. If the passive finds that the active is no longer operational, it will initiate a *failover sequence*. A failover sequence involves taking over resources, services and network addresses from the active head node. The goal is to continue providing services to compute nodes, so that jobs running on these nodes keep running.

### 15.1.3 Services In BCM HA Setups

There are several services being offered by a head node to the cluster and its users.

#### Services Running On Both Head Nodes

One of the design features of the HA implementation in BCM is that whenever possible, services are offered on both the active as well as the passive head node. This allows the capacity of both machines to be used for certain tasks (e.g. provisioning), but it also means that there are fewer services to move in the event of a failover sequence.

On a default HA setup, the following key services for cluster operations are always running on both head nodes:

- **CMDaemon**: providing certain functionality on both head nodes (e.g. provisioning)
- **DHCP**: load balanced setup
- **TFTP**: requests answered on demand, under xinetd
- **LDAP**: running in replication mode (the active head node LDAP database is pulled by the passive)
- **MySQL**: running in master-slave replication mode (the active head node MySQL database is pulled by the passive)
- **NTP**
- **DNS**
- **Workload Management**: For each of the Slurm, PBS, LSF services, one WLM is fully active on one head node, while the other head node has WLM components on a passive standby

When an HA setup is created from a single head node setup, the above services are automatically reconfigured to run in the HA environment over two head nodes.

**Provisioning role runs on both head nodes** In addition, both head nodes also take up the *provisioning role*, which means that nodes can be provisioned from both head nodes. As the passive head node is then also provisioned from the active, and the active can switch between primary and secondary, it means both heads are also given a value for `provisioninginterface` (section 5.4.7).

For a head node in a single-headed setup, there is no value set by default. For head nodes in an HA setup, the value of `provisioninginterface` for each head node is automatically set up by default to the interface device name over which the image can be received when the head node is passive.

The implications of running a cluster with multiple provisioning nodes are described in detail in section 5.2. One important aspect described in that section is how to make provisioning nodes aware of image changes.

From the administrator's point of view, achieving awareness of image changes for provisioning nodes in HA clusters is dealt with in the same way as for single-headed clusters. Thus, if using `cmsh`, the `updateprovisioners` command from within `softwareimage` mode is used, whereas if Base View is used, then the navigation path `Provisioning > Provisioning requests > Update provisioning nodes` can be followed (section 5.2.4).

#### Services That Migrate To The Active Node

Although it is possible to configure any service to migrate (become active) from one head node to another in the event of a failover, in a typical HA setup only the following services migrate:

- NFS
- The User Portal

- Workload management:
  - The Slurm DBD accounting daemon (`slurmdbd`)
  - The PBS dataservice and PBS scheduler (`pbs_ds_monitor` and `pbs_sched`)
  - The LSF management batch daemon (`mbatchd`), external load information managers (`elim.*`), external authentication (`eauth`), and batch scheduling manager (`mbschd`)

#### 15.1.4 Failover Network Topology

A two-head failover network layout is illustrated in figure 15.1.

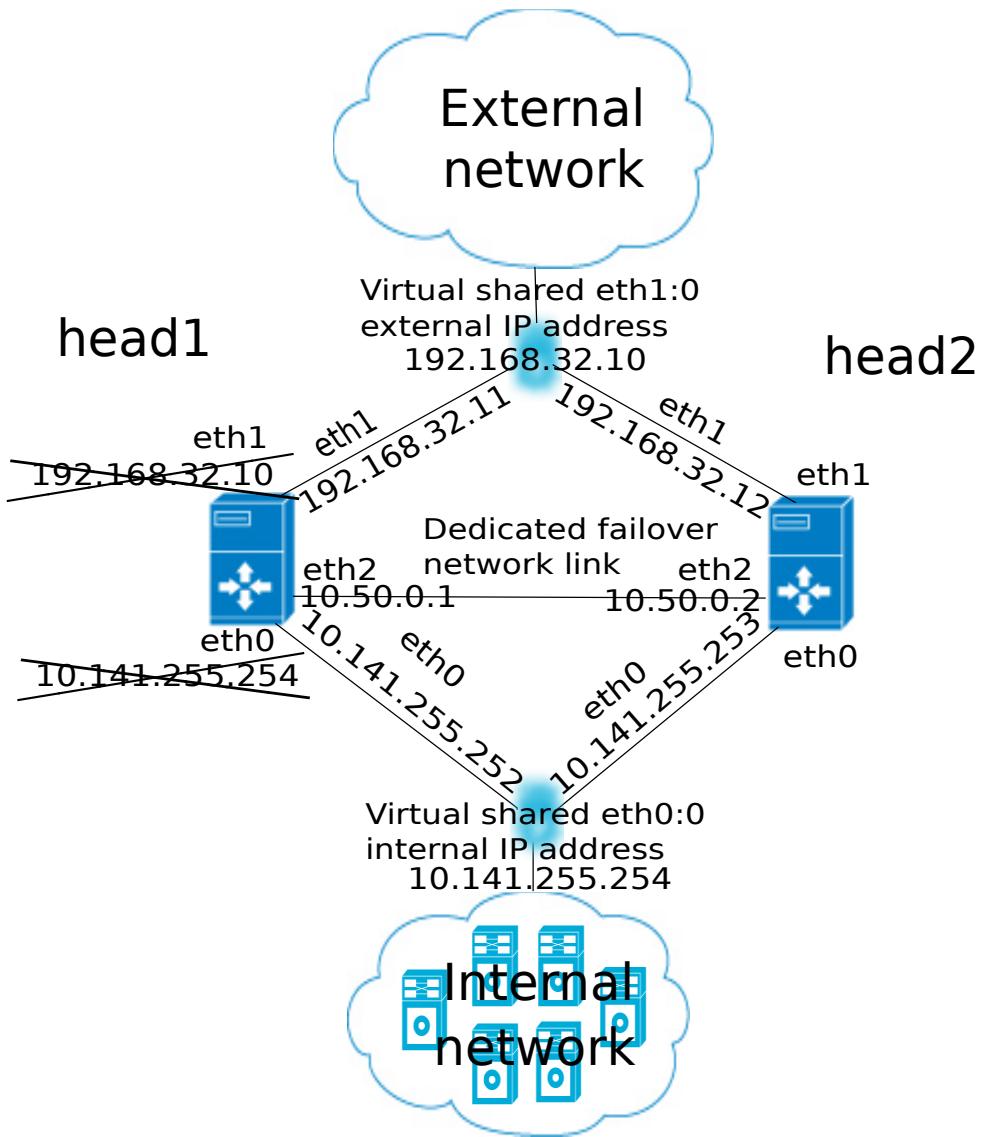


Figure 15.1: High Availability: Two-Head Failover Network Topology

In the illustration, the primary `head1` is originally a head node before the failover design is implemented. It is originally set up as part of a Type 1 network (section 3.3.9 of the *Installation Manual*), with an internal interface `eth0`, and an external interface `eth1`.

When the secondary head is connected up to help form the failover system, several changes are made.

## HA: Network Interfaces

Each head node in an HA setup typically has at least an external and an internal network interface, each configured with an IP address.

In addition, an HA setup uses two virtual IP interfaces, each of which has an associated virtual IP address: the external shared IP address and the internal shared IP address. These are shared between the head nodes, but only one head node can host the address and its interface at any time.

In a normal HA setup, a shared IP address has its interface hosted on the head node that is operating in active mode. On failover, the interface migrates and is hosted on the head node that then becomes active.

When head nodes are also being used as login nodes, users outside of the cluster are encouraged to use the shared external IP address for connecting to the cluster. This ensures that they always reach whichever head node is active. Similarly, inside the cluster, nodes use the shared internal IP address wherever possible for referring to the head node. For example, nodes mount NFS filesystems on the shared internal IP interface so that the imported filesystems continue to be accessible in the event of a failover.

Shared interfaces are implemented as alias interfaces on the physical interfaces (e.g. `eth0:0`). They are activated when a head node becomes active, and deactivated when a head node becomes passive.

## HA: Dedicated Failover Network

In addition to the normal internal and external network interfaces on both head nodes, the two head nodes are usually also connected using a direct dedicated network connection, `eth2` in figure 15.1. This connection is used between the two head nodes to monitor their counterpart's availability. It is called a *heartbeat* connection because the monitoring is usually done with a regular heartbeat-like signal between the nodes such as a ping, and if the signal is not detected, it suggests a head node is dead.

To set up a failover network, it is highly recommended to simply run a UTP cable directly from the NIC of one head node to the NIC of the other, because not using a switch means there is no disruption of the connection in the event of a switch reset.

### 15.1.5 Shared Storage

Almost any HA setup also involves some form of shared storage between two head nodes to preserve state after a failover sequence. For example, user home directories must always be available to the cluster in the event of a failover.

In the most common HA setup, the following two directories are shared:

- `/home`, the user home directories
- `/cm/shared`, the shared tree containing applications and libraries that are made available to the nodes

The shared filesystems are only available on the active head node. For this reason, it is generally recommended that users log in via the shared IP address, rather than ever using the direct primary or secondary IP address. End-users logging into the passive head node by direct login may run into confusing behavior due to unmounted filesystems.

BCM versions 11.0 and beyond use NAS (Network Attached Storage) for shared storage. Versions prior to 11.0 also allowed DAS (Direct Attached Storage) for shared storage. However, DAS by its very nature has drawbacks that make it significantly more fragile for shared storage purposes. DAS is therefore no longer suggested as a possible shared storage option for BCM.

## NAS

In a Network Attached Storage (NAS) setup, both head nodes mount a shared volume from an external network attached storage device. In the most common situation this would be an NFS server either inside or outside of the cluster. Lustre or GPFS storage are other popular choices.

Because imported mounts can typically not be re-exported (which is true at least for NFS), nodes typically mount filesystems directly from the NAS device.

### Custom Shared Storage With Mount And Unmount Scripts

The cluster management daemon on the two head nodes deals with shared storage through a *mount script* and an *unmount script*. When a head node is moving to active mode, it must acquire the shared filesystems. To accomplish this, the other head node first needs to relinquish any shared filesystems that may still be mounted. After this has been done, the head node that is moving to active mode invokes the *mount script* which has been configured during the HA setup procedure. When an active head node is requested to become *passive* (e.g. because the administrator wants to take it down for maintenance without disrupting jobs), the *unmount script* is invoked to release all shared filesystems.

By customizing the *mount* and *unmount* scripts, an administrator has full control over the form of shared storage that is used. Also an administrator can control which filesystems are shared.

Mount scripts paths can be set via cmsh or Base View (section 15.4.6).

#### 15.1.6 Guaranteeing One Active Head At All Times

Because of the risks involved in accessing a shared filesystem simultaneously from two head nodes, it is vital that only one head node is in active mode at any time. To guarantee that a head node that is about to switch to active mode will be the only head node in active mode, it must either receive confirmation from the other head node that it is in passive mode, or it must make sure that the other head node is powered off.

##### What Is A Split Brain?

When the passive head node determines that the active head node is no longer reachable, it must also take into consideration that there could be a communication disruption between the two head nodes. Because the “brains” of the cluster are communicatively “split” from each other, this is called a *split brain* situation.

Since the normal communication channel between the passive and active may not be working correctly, it is not possible to use only that channel to determine either an inactive head or a split brain with certainty. It can only be suspected.

Thus, on the one hand, it is possible that the head node has, for example, completely crashed, becoming totally inactive and thereby causing the lack of response. On the other hand, it is also possible that, for example, a switch between both head nodes is malfunctioning, and that the active head node is still up and running, looking after the cluster as usual, and that the head node in turn observes that the passive head node seems to have split away from the network.

Further supporting evidence from the dedicated failover network channel is therefore helpful. Some administrators find this supporting evidence an acceptable level of certainty, and configure the cluster to decide to automatically proceed with the failover sequence, while others may instead wish to examine the situation first before manually proceeding with the failover sequence. The implementation of automatic vs manual failover is described in section 15.1.7. In either implementation, *fencing*, described next, takes place until the formerly active node is powered off.

##### Going Into Fencing Mode

To deal with a suspected inactive head or split brain, a passive head node that notices that its active counterpart is no longer responding, first goes into *fencing* mode from that time onward. While a node is fencing, it will try to obtain proof via another method that its counterpart is indeed inactive.

Fencing, incidentally, does not refer to a thrust-and-parry imagery derived from fencing swordplay. Instead, it refers to the way all subsequent actions are tagged and effectively fenced-off as a backlog of actions to be carried out later. If the head nodes are able to communicate with each other before the passive decides that its counterpart is now inactive, then the fenced-off backlog is compared and synced until the head nodes are once again consistent.

##### Ensuring That The Unresponsive Active Is Indeed Inactive

There are two ways in which “proof” can be obtained that an unresponsive active is inactive:

1. By asking the administrator to manually confirm that the active head node is indeed powered off

2. By performing a power-off operation on the active head node, and then checking that the power is indeed off to the server. This is also referred to as a STONITH (Shoot The Other Node In The Head) procedure

It should be noted that just pulling out the power cable is not the same as a power-off operation (section 15.2.4).

Once a guarantee has been obtained that the active head node is powered off, the fencing head node (i.e. the previously passive head node) moves to active mode.

### Improving The Decision To Initiate A Failover With A Quorum Process

While the preceding approach guarantees one active head, a problem remains.

In situations where the passive head node loses its connectivity to the active head node, but the active head node is communicating without a problem to the entire cluster, there is no reason to initiate a failover. It can even result in undesirable situations where the cluster is rendered unusable if, for example, a passive head node decides to power down an active head node just because the passive head node is unable to communicate with any of the outside world (except for the PDU feeding the active head node).

One technique used by BCM to reduce the chances of a passive head node powering off an active head node unnecessarily is to have the passive head node carry out a quorum procedure. All nodes in the cluster are asked by the passive node to confirm that they also cannot communicate with the active head node. If more than half of the total number of nodes confirm that they are also unable to communicate with the active head node, then the passive head node initiates the STONITH procedure and moves to active mode.

#### 15.1.7 Automatic Vs Manual Failover

Administrators have a choice between creating an HA setup with automatic or manual failover.

- In the case of an automatic failover, an active head node is powered off when it is no longer responding at all, and a failover sequence is initiated automatically.
- In the case of a manual failover, the administrator is responsible for initiating the failover when the active head node is no longer responding. No automatic power off is done, so the administrator is asked to confirm that the previously active node is powered off.

For automatic failover to be possible, power control must be defined for both head nodes. If power control is defined for the head nodes, then automatic failover is attempted by default.

The administrator may disable automatic failover. In cmsh this is done by setting the `disableautomaticfailover` property, which is a part of the HA-related parameters (section 15.4.6):

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% partition failover base
[basecm11->partition[base]->failover]% set disableautomaticfailover yes
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->failover*]% commit
```

With Base View it is carried out via the navigation path Cluster > Partition[base] > Settings > Failover > Disable automatic failover

If no power control has been defined, or if automatic failover has been disabled, or if the power control mechanism is not working (for example due to inappropriate, broken or missing electronics or hardware), then a failover sequence must always be initiated manually by the administrator.

Sometimes, if automatic failover is enabled, but the active head is still slightly responsive (the so-called *mostly dead* state, described in section 15.4.2), then the failover sequence must also be initiated manually by the administrator.

### 15.1.8 HA And Cloud Nodes

As far as the administrator is concerned, HA setup remains the same whether a Cluster Extension (Chapter 3 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*) is configured or not, and whether a Cluster On Demand (Chapter 2 of the *Cloudbursting Manual*) is configured or not. Behind the scenes, on failover, any networks associated with the cloud requirements are taken care of by BCM.

### 15.1.9 HA Using Virtual Head Nodes

Two physical servers are typically used for HA configurations. However, each head node can also be a virtual machine (VM). The use case for this might be to gain experience with an HA configuration.

#### Failover Network Considerations With HA VMs

With physical head nodes in an HA configuration, the failover network, used for HA heartbeats, is typically provided by running a network cable directly between the ethernet port on each machine. Not having even a switch in between is a best practice. Since the head nodes are typically in the same, or adjacent racks, setting this up is usually straightforward.

With VMs as head nodes in an HA configuration, however, setting up the failover network can be more complex:

- The cluster administrator may need to consider if HA is truly improved by, for example, connecting the failover network of the physical node to a switch.
- Often a virtual switch would be used between the virtual head nodes, just because it is often easier.
- Not using a failover network is also an option, just as in the physical case.
- If one head node is on one hypervisor, and another is on a second hypervisor, then a standard BCM setup cannot have one head node carry out an automated failover STONITH because it cannot contact the other hypervisor. So powering off the VM in the other hypervisor would have to be done manually. An alternative to this, if automated failover is required, is to create custom power scripts.

There are no specific guidelines for the network configuration of HA with VMs in BCM. The process of configuration is however essentially the same as for a physical node.

#### Size Considerations With HA VMs

A virtual head node in practice may be configured with fewer CPUs and memory than a physical head node, just because such configurations are more common options in a VM setup than for a physical setup, and cheaper to run. However, the storage requirement is the same as for a physical node. The important requirement is that the head nodes should have sufficient resources for the cluster.

## 15.2 HA Setup Procedure Using `cmha-setup`

After installation (Chapter 3 of the *Installation Manual*) and license activation (Chapter 4 of the *Installation Manual*) an administrator may wish to add a new head node, and convert BCM from managing an existing single-headed cluster to managing an HA cluster.

#### Is An HA-Enabled License Required?

To convert a single-headed cluster to an HA cluster, the existing cluster license should first be checked to see if it allows HA. The `verify-license` command run with the `info` option can reveal this in the MAC address field:

#### Example

```
verify-license info | grep ^MAC
```

HA-enabled clusters display two MAC addresses in the output. Single-headed clusters show only one.

If an HA license is not present, it should be obtained from a BCM reseller, and then be activated and installed (Chapter 4 of the *Installation Manual*).

### Existing User Certificates Become Invalid

Installing the new license means that any existing user certificates will lose their validity (page 64 of the *Installation Manual*) on Base View session logout. This means:

- If LDAP is managed by BCM, then on logout, new user certificates are generated, and a new Base View login session picks up the new certificates automatically.
- For LDAPs other than that of BCM, the user certificates need to be regenerated.

It is therefore generally good practice to have an HA-enabled license in place before creating user certificates and profiles if there is an intention of moving from a single-headed to an HA-enabled cluster later on.

### The cmha-setup Utility For Configuring HA

The cmha-setup utility is a special tool that guides the administrator in building an HA setup from a single head cluster. It is not part of the cluster manager itself, but is a cluster manager tool that interacts with the cluster management environment by using cmsh to create an HA setup. Although it is in theory also possible to create an HA setup manually, using either Base View or cmsh along with additional steps, this is not supported, and should not be attempted as it is error-prone.

A basic HA setup is created in three stages:

1. **Preparation** (section 15.2.1): the configuration parameters are set for the shared interface and for the secondary head node that is about to be installed.
2. **Cloning** (section 15.2.2): the secondary head node is installed by cloning it from the primary head node.
3. **Shared Storage Setup** (section 15.2.3): the method for shared storage is chosen and set up.

An optional extra stage is:

4. **Automated Failover Setup** (section 15.2.4): Power control to allow automated failover is set up.

#### 15.2.1 Preparation

The following steps prepare the primary head node for the cloning of the secondary. The preparation is done only on the primary, so that the presence of the secondary is not actually needed during this stage.

0. It is recommended that all nodes except for the primary head node are powered off, in order to simplify matters. The nodes should in any case be power cycled or powered back on after the basic HA setup stages (sections 15.2.1-15.2.3, and possibly section 15.2.4) are complete.
1. If bonding (section 3.5) is to be used on the head node used in an HA setup, then it is recommended to configure and test out bonding properly before carrying out the HA setup.
2. To start the HA setup, the cmha-setup command is run from a root shell on the primary head node.
3. Setup is selected from the main menu (figure 15.2).
4. Configure is selected from the Setup menu.
5. A license check is done. Only if successful does the setup proceed further. If the cluster has no HA-enabled license, a new HA-enabled license must first be obtained from the NVIDIA Base Command Manager reseller, and activated (section 4.3 of the *Installation Manual*).

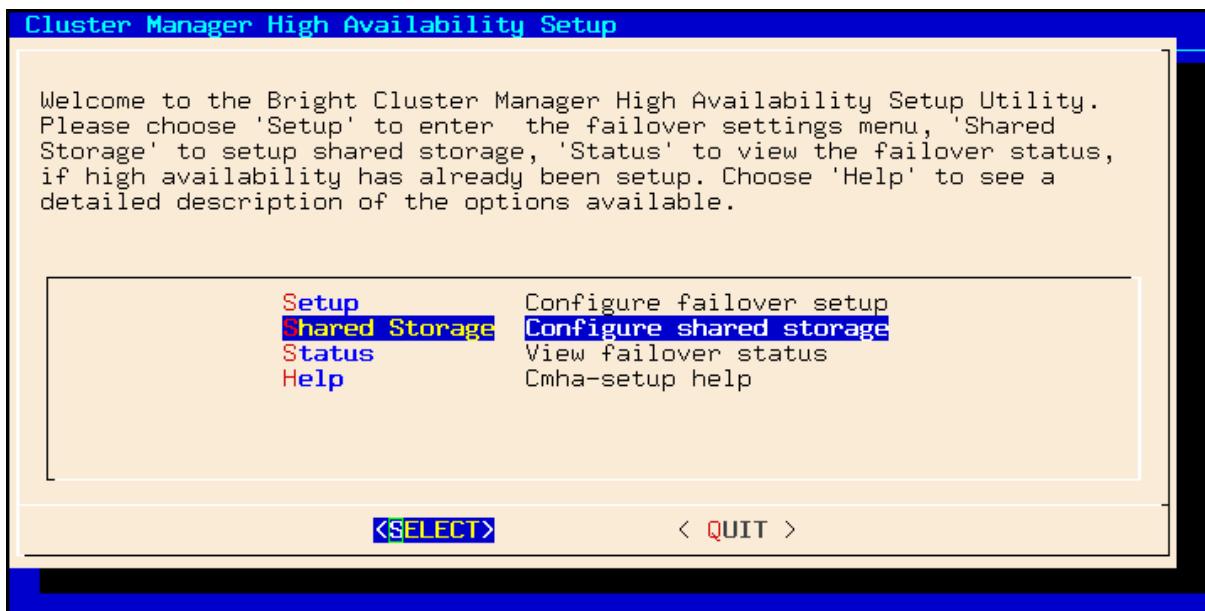


Figure 15.2: cmha-setup Main menu

6. The virtual shared internal alias interface name and virtual shared internal IP alias address are set.
7. The virtual shared external alias interface name and virtual shared external IP alias address are set. For the external shared virtual IP address as well as for the external regular IP addresses, each head node external interface address must be a static IP addresses for the HA configuration. Attempting to use DHCP for external addresses in HA is not going to work.
8. The host name of the passive is set.
9. Failover network parameters are set. The failover network physical interface should exist, but the interface need not be up. The network name, its base address, its netmask, and domain name are set. This is the network used for optional heartbeat monitoring.
10. Failover network interfaces have their name and IP address set for the active and passive nodes.
11. The primary head node may have other network interfaces (e.g. InfiniBand interfaces, a BMC interface, alias interface on the BMC network). These interfaces are also created on the secondary head node, but the IP address of the interfaces still need to be configured. For each such interface, when prompted, a unique IP address for the secondary head node is configured.
12. The network interfaces of the secondary head node are reviewed and can be adjusted as required. DHCP assignments on external interfaces can be set by setting the value DHCP. If the primary head node has a DHCP-assigned IP address, then the input field for the secondary head node is set by default to the value DHCP.
13. A summary screen displays the planned failover configuration. If alterations need to be made, they can be done via the next step.
14. The administrator is prompted to set the planned failover configuration. If it is not set, the main menu of cmha-setup is re-displayed.
15. If the option to set the planned failover configuration is chosen, then a password for the MySQL root user is requested. The procedure continues further after the password is entered.
16. Setup progress for the planned configuration is displayed (figure 15.3).

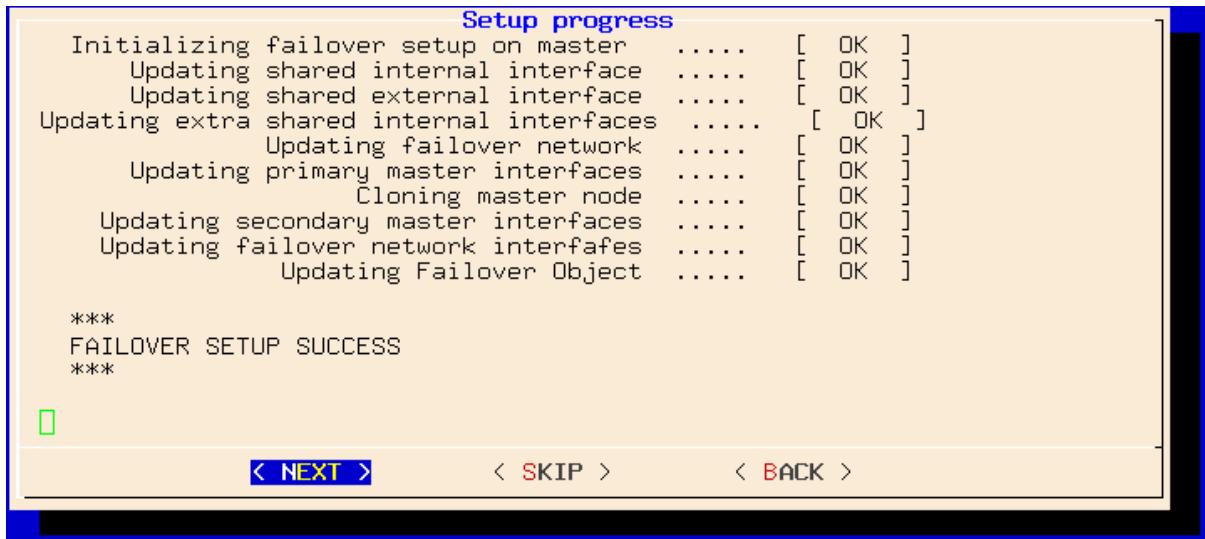


Figure 15.3: cmha-setup Setup Progress For Planned Configuration

17. Instructions on what to run on the secondary to clone it from the primary are displayed (figure 15.4).

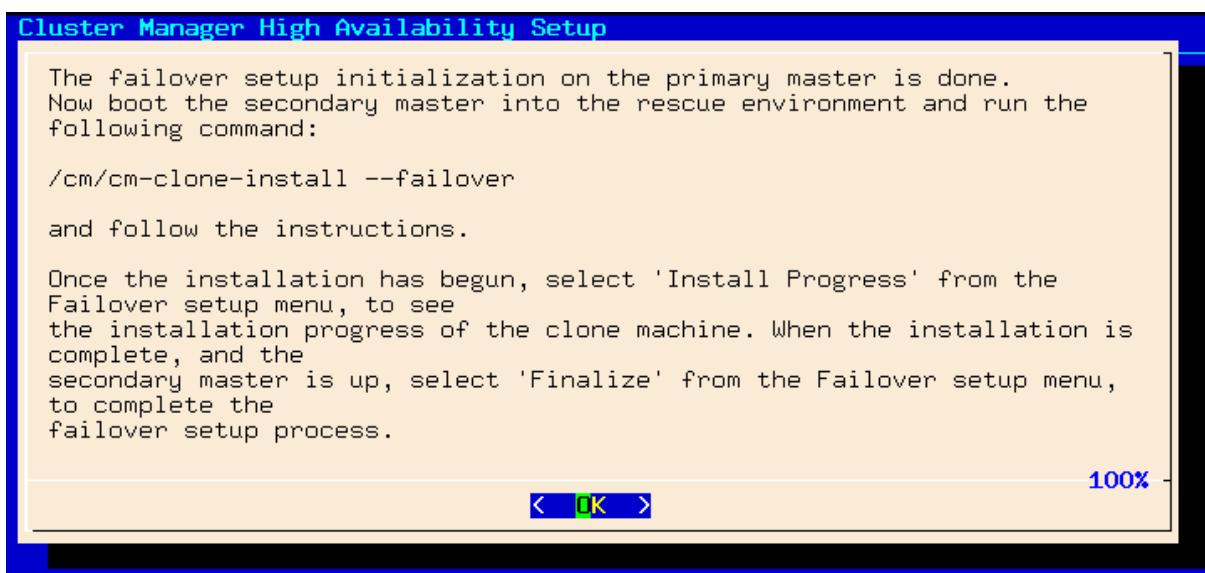


Figure 15.4: cmha-setup Instructions To Run On Secondary For Cloning

### 15.2.2 Failover Cloning (Replacing A Passive Head)

In the IT industry, if an image is made of a computer, then it means making a copy of the drive. In BCM the word “image” is normally used for the software that can be placed on regular nodes. So, BCM uses the word “cloning” to describe making a very similar, or even identical, copy of a head node, using the `/cm/cm-clone-install` command.

There are actually two kinds of cloning possible with the `/cm/cm-clone-install` command:

- **Failover cloning:** With this, a passive head node can be created from the active head node. This uses the `--failover` option to create a copy that is very similar to the active head node, but with changes to make it a passive head, ready for failover purposes, and replacing a head that has just failed.

- **Re-cloning:** An active head node can be created from the active head node. This uses the `--clone` option to create an exact copy (re-clone) of the head node. This might be useful if for some reason the administrator would like to take a snapshot of the head node at that moment. Using this snapshot to have a plug-in replacement head node—that is, a head node kept aside, and ready to replace a failed production head node later on—is not recommended, due to how impractical it is to update the snapshot.

The process described in this section PXE boots the passive from the active, thereby loading a special rescue image from the active that allows cloning from the active to the passive to take place. This section is therefore about failover cloning. How to carry out re-cloning is described in section 15.4.8.

After the preparation has been done by configuring parameters as outlined in section 15.2.1, the failover cloning of the head nodes is carried out. In the cloning instructions that follow, the active node refers to the primary node and the passive node refers to the secondary node. However this correlation is only true for when an HA setup is created for the first time, and it is not necessarily true if head nodes are replaced later on by cloning.

These cloning instructions may also be repeated later on if a passive head node ever needs to be replaced, for example, if the hardware is defective (section 15.4.8). In that case the active head node can be either the primary or secondary.

1. The passive head node is PXE booted off the internal cluster network, from the active head node. It is highly recommended that the active and passive head nodes have identical hardware configurations. The BIOS clock of the head nodes should match and be set to the local time. Typically, the BIOS of both head nodes is also configured so that a hard disk boot is attempted first, and a PXE boot is attempted after a hard disk boot failure, leading to the Cluster Manager PXE Environment menu of options. This menu has a 5s time-out.
2. In the Cluster Manager PXE Environment menu of the node that is to become a clone, before the 5s time-out, “Start Rescue Environment” is selected to boot the node into a Linux ramdisk environment.
3. Once the rescue environment has finished booting, a login as root is done. No password is required (figure 15.5).

```
*Welcome to the Cluster Manager rescue environment*

Creating failover/clone nodes:

# /cm/cm-clone-install --failover
# /cm/cm-clone-install --clone --hostname=new-hostname [--reboot]
# /cm/cm-clone-install --failover [--reboot]

Other useful commands:

# pdmenu      "Menu frontend to programs!"
# dhcpcup dhcpcd   "Setup wired network connection!"
# wificonfig    "Setup wireless network connection!"
# mnsetup       "Setup mail and news!"
# lynx (or) links "WWW browsers!" # rtin (or) slrn  "Newsreaders!"

You can use 'backup-mbr' to backup/restore the MBR.

login: root
```

ClusterManager login: root

Figure 15.5: Login Screen After Booting Passive Into Rescue Mode From Active

4. The following command is executed (figure 15.6) on the node that is to become a failover clone:

```
/cm/cm-clone-install --failover
```

When doing a re-clone as in section 15.4.8, instead of a failover clone, then it is the --clone option that is used instead of the --failover option.

```
ClusterManager login: root
Welcome to Linux 2.6.32-220.23.1.el6.x86_64.
No mail.
# /cm/cm-clone-install --failover
Network interface to use [default: eth0]:
Please wait while authentication is being set up....
root@Master's password:
Please wait while installation begins...
Verifying license ..... [ OK ]
Getting build config ..... [ OK ]
Getting disk layout ..... [ OK ]
The head node disk layout is saved in /cm/_Masterdisksetup.xml
[v - view, e - edit, c - continue ]: c
The contents of the following disks will be erased.
/dev/sda
Do you want to continue [yes/no]? yes
Getting mount points ..... [ OK ]
Partitioning hard drive ..... [ OK ]
Syncing hard drive ..... [ OK ]
Finalizing installation ..... [ OK ]
Do you want to reboot[y/n]:_
```

Figure 15.6: Cloning The Passive From The Active Via A Rescue Mode Session

5. When prompted to enter a network interface to use, the interface that was used to boot from the internal cluster network (e.g. eth0, eth1, ...) is entered. There is often uncertainty about what interface name corresponds to what physical port. This can be resolved by switching to another console and using “ethtool -p <interface>”, which makes the NIC corresponding to

- the interface blink.
6. If the provided network interface is correct, a `root@master`'s password prompt appears. The administrator should enter the root password.
  7. An opportunity to view or edit the master disk layout is offered.
  8. A confirmation that the contents of the specified disk are to be erased is asked for.
  9. The cloning takes place. The “syncing” stage usually takes the most time. Cloning progress can also be viewed on the active by selecting the “Install Progress” option from the Setup menu. When viewing progress using this option, the display is automatically updated as changes occur.
  10. After the cloning process has finished, a prompt at the console of the passive asks if a reboot is to be carried out. A “y” is typed in response to this. The passive node should be set to reboot off its hard drive. This may require an interrupt during reboot, to enter a change in the BIOS setting, if for example, the passive node is set to network boot first.
  11. Continuing on now on the active head node, `Finalize` is selected from the Setup menu of `cmha-setup`.
  12. The MySQL root password is requested. After entering the MySQL password, the progress of the `Finalize` procedure is displayed, and the cloning procedure continues.
  13. The cloning procedure of `cmha-setup` pauses to offer the option to reboot the passive. The administrator should accept the reboot option. After reboot, the cloning procedure is complete. The administrator can then go to the `main` menu and `quit` from there or go on to configure “Shared Storage” (section 15.2.3) from there.

A check can already be done at this stage on the failover status of the head nodes with the `cmha` command, run from either head node:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmha status
Node Status: running in active master mode

Failover status:
basecm11* -> master2
  failoverping [ OK ]
  mysql       [ OK ]
  ping        [ OK ]
  status      [ OK ]

master2 -> basecm11*
  failoverping [ OK ]
  mysql       [ OK ]
  ping        [ OK ]
  status      [ OK ]
```

Here, the asterisk indicates the active node, and the arrow direction indicates which node was carrying out the status check on the other. The [OK] states for `mysql`, `ping` and `status` indicate that HA setup completed successfully. The `failoverping` state uses the dedicated failover network route for its checks, and starts working as soon as the passive head node has been rebooted.

### 15.2.3 Shared Storage Setup

After cloning the head node (section 15.2.2), the last basic stage of creating an HA setup is setting up shared storage.

## NAS

1. In the cmha-setup main menu, the “Shared Storage” option is selected.
2. NAS is selected.
3. The parts of the head node filesystem that are to be copied to the NAS filesystems are selected. By default, these are /home and /cm/shared as suggested in section 15.1.5. The point in the filesystem where the copying is done is the future mount path to where the NAS will share the shared filesystem.

An already-configured export that is not shared is disabled in /etc/exports by cmha-setup. This is done to prevent the creation of stale NFS file handles during a failover. Sharing already-existing exports is therefore recommended. Storage can however be dealt with in a customized manner with mount and umount scripts (page 744).

4. The NFS host name is configured. Also, for each head node filesystem that is to be copied to the NAS filesystem, there is an associated path on the NAS filesystem where the share is to be served from. These NFS volume paths are now configured.
5. If the configured NFS filesystems can be correctly mounted from the NAS server, the process of copying the local filesystems onto the NAS server begins.

### 15.2.4 Automated Failover And Relevant Testing

A power-off operation on the active head node server does not mean the same as just pulling out the power cable to the active head node. These actions typically have different effects, and should therefore not be confused with each other. During the power-off operation, the BMC remains up. However, in the case of pulling out the power cable, the BMC is typically turned off too. If the BMC is not reachable, then it means that verifying that the active head has been terminated is uncertain. This is because the data that CMDaemon can access implies a logical possibility that there is a network failure rather than a head node failure. CMDaemon therefore does not carry out an automatic failover if the power cable is pulled out.

For automatic failover to work, the two head nodes must be able to power off their counterpart. This is done by setting up power control (Chapter 4).

#### Testing If Power Control Is Working

The “device power status” command in cmsh can be used to verify that power control is functional:

#### Example

```
[master1]% device power status -n mycluster1,mycluster2
apc03:21 ..... [ ON ] mycluster1
apc04:18 ..... [ ON ] mycluster2
```

#### Testing The BMC Interface Is Working

If a BMC (Baseboard Management Controller, section 3.7) such as IPMI or iLO is used for power control, it is possible that a head node is not able to reach its own BMC interface over the network. This is especially true when no dedicated BMC network port is used. In this case, cmsh -c "device power status" reports a failure for the active head node. This does not necessarily mean that the head nodes cannot reach the BMC interface of their counterpart. Pinging a BMC interface can be used to verify that the BMC interface of a head node is reachable from its counterpart.

#### Example

Verifying that the BMC interface of mycluster2 is reachable from mycluster1:

```
[root@mycluster1 ~]# ping -c 1 mycluster2.bmc.cluster
PING mycluster2.bmc.cluster (10.148.255.253) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from mycluster2.bmc.cluster (10.148.255.253): icmp_seq=1
ttl=64 time=0.033 ms
```

Verifying that the BMC interface of mycluster1 is reachable from mycluster2:

```
[root@mycluster2 ~]# ping -c 1 mycluster1.bmc.cluster
PING mycluster1.bmc.cluster (10.148.255.254) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from mycluster1.bmc.cluster (10.148.255.254): icmp_seq=1
ttl=64 time=0.028 ms
```

### Testing Automated Failover Against A Simulated Crash

A normal (graceful) shutdown of an active head node, does not cause the passive to become active, because HA assumes a graceful failover means there is no intention to trigger a failover. To carry out testing of an HA setup with automated failover, it is therefore useful to simulate a kernel crash on one of the head nodes. The following command crashes a head node instantly:

```
echo c > /proc/sysrq-trigger
```

After the active head node freezes as a result of the crash, the passive head node powers off the machine that has frozen and switches to active mode. A hard crash like this can cause a database replication inconsistency when the crashed head node is brought back up and running again, this time passively, alongside the node that took over. This is normally indicated by a FAILED status for the output of cmha status for MySQL (section 15.4). Database administration with the dbreclone command (section 15.4) may therefore be needed to synchronize the databases on both head nodes to a consistent state. Because dbreclone is a resource-intensive utility, it is best used during a period when there are few or no users. It is generally only used by administrators when they are instructed to do so by BCM support.

A passive node can also be made active without a crash of the active-until-then node, by using the “cmha makeactive” command on the passive (section 15.4.2). Manually running this is not needed in the case of a head node crash in a cluster where power management has been set up for the head nodes, and the automatic failover setting is not disabled.

## 15.3 Running cmha-setup Without ncurses, Using An XML Specification

### 15.3.1 Why Run It Without ncurses?

The ncurses-based TUI for cmha-setup is normally how administrators should set up a failover configuration.

The express mode of cmha-setup is the command-line interface (CLI) that allows an administrator to skip the TUI. This is useful, for example, for scripting purposes and speeding deployment. A further convenience is that this mode uses a human-editable XML file to specify the network and storage definitions for failover.

Running cmha-setup without the TUI still requires some user intervention, such as entering the root password for MySQL. The intervention required is scriptable with, for example, Expect, and is minimized if relevant options are specified for cmha-setup from the -x options.

### 15.3.2 The Syntax Of cmha-setup Without ncurses

The express mode (-x) options are displayed when “cmha-setup -h” is run. The syntax of the -x options is indicated by:

```
cmha-setup [ -x -c <configfile> [-s <type>] <-i|-f[-r]> [-p <mysqlrootpassword>] ]
```

The -x options are:

- **-c|--config <configfile>**: specifies the location of *<configfile>*, which is the failover configuration XML file for cmha-setup. The file stores the values to be used for setting up a failover head node. The recommended location is at /cm/local/apps/cluster-tools/ha/conf/failoverconf.xml.
- **-i|--initialize**: prepares a failover setup by setting values in the CMDaemon database to the values specified in the configuration file. This corresponds to section 15.2.1. The administrator is prompted for the MySQL root password unless the -p option is used. The -i option of the script then updates the interfaces in the database, and clones the head node in the CMDaemon database. After this option in the script is done, the administrator normally carries clones the passive node from the active, as described in steps 1 to 10 of section 15.2.2.
- **-f|--finalize**: After the passive node is cloned as described in steps 1 to 10 of section 15.2.2, the finalize option is run on the active node to run the non-TUI finalize procedure. This is the non-TUI version of steps 11 to 13 of section 15.2.2.
  - **-r|--finalizereboot**: makes the passive reboot after the finalize step completes.
- **-p|--pass <mysqlrootpassword>**: specifies the MySQL root password. Leaving this out means the administrator is prompted to type in the password during a run of the cmha-setup script when using the -x options.

There is little attempt at validation with the express mode, and invalid entries can cause the command to hang.

### 15.3.3 Example cmha-setup Run Without ncurses

#### Preparation And Initialization:

After shutting down all nodes except for the active head node, a configuration is prepared by the administrator in /cm/local/apps/cluster-tools/ha/conf/failoverconf.xml. The administrator then runs cmha-setup with the initialization option on the active:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cd /cm/local/apps/cluster-tools/ha/conf
[root@basecm11 conf]# cmha-setup -x -c failoverconf.xml -i
Please enter the mysql root password:
    Initializing failover setup on master ..... [ OK ]
    Updating shared internal interface ..... [ OK ]
    Updating shared external interface ..... [ OK ]
Updating extra shared internal interfaces ..... [ OK ]
    Updating failover network ..... [ OK ]
    Updating primary master interfaces ..... [ OK ]
    Cloning master node ..... [ OK ]
    Updating secondary master interfaces ..... [ OK ]
    Updating failover network interfaces ..... [ OK ]
    Updating Failover Object ..... [ OK ]
```

The preceding corresponds to the steps in section 15.2.1.

#### PXE Booting And Cloning The Passive:

The passive head node is then booted up via PXE and cloned as described in steps 1 to 10 of section 15.2.2.

#### Finalizing On The Active And Rebooting The Passive:

Then, back on the active head node the administrator continues the session there, by running the finalization option with a reboot option:

```
[root@basecm11 conf]# cmha-setup -x -c failoverconf.xml -f -r
Please enter the mysql root password:
```

```

Updating secondary master mac address ..... [ OK ]
Initializing failover setup on master2 ..... [ OK ]
    Cloning database ..... [ OK ]
        Update DB permissions ..... [ OK ]
Checking for dedicated failover network ..... [ OK ]
A reboot has been issued on master2

```

The preceding corresponds to steps 11 to 13 of section 15.2.2.

#### **Adding Storage:**

Continuing with the session on the active, setting up a shared storage could be done with:

```
[root@basecm11 conf]# cmha-setup -x -c failoverconf.xml -s nas
```

The preceding corresponds to carrying out the NAS procedure of section 15.2.3.

## 15.4 Managing HA

Once an HA setup has been created, the tools in this section can be used to manage the HA aspects of the cluster.

### 15.4.1 Changing An Existing Failover Configuration

Changing an existing failover configuration is usually done most simply by running through the HA setup procedure of section 15.2 again, with one exception. The exception is that the existing failover configuration must be removed by using the “Undo Failover” menu option between steps 3 and 4 of the procedure described in section 15.2.1.

### 15.4.2 cmha Utility

A major command-line utility for interacting with the HA subsystem, for regular nodes as well as for head nodes, is cmha. It is part of the BCM cluster-tools package. Its usage information is:

```

[root@mycluster1 ~]# cmha
Usage: cmha < status | makeactive [node] | dbreclone <host> |
       nodestatus [name] >

status           Retrieve and print high availability status
                  of head nodes.

nodestatus [groups] Retrieve and print high availability status
                  of failover [groups] (comma separated list of group
                  names. If no argument is given, then the status of
                  all available failover groups is printed.

makeactive [node] Make the current head node the active head node. If
                  [node] is specified, then make [node] the active
                  node in the failover group that [node] is part of.

dbreclone <host>  Clone MySQL database from this head node to
                  <host> (hostname of failover head node).

```

Some of the information and functions of cmha can also be carried out via CMDaemon:

- For cmsh, the following commands can be run from within the base object in partition mode:
  - For the head node, the status and makeactive commands are run from within the failover submode.

- For regular nodes the `nodestatus` and `makeactive [node]` commands are run from within the `failovergroups` submode.

The `dbreclone` option cannot be carried out in Base View or `cmsh` because it requires stopping CM-Daemon.

The `cmha` options `status`, `makeactive`, and `dbreclone` are looked at in greater detail next:

#### `cmha status: Querying HA Status`

Information on the failover status is displayed thus:

#### Example

```
[root@mycluster1 ~]# cmha status
Node Status: running in active master mode

Failover status:
mycluster1* -> mycluster2
  failoverping [ OK ]
  mysql       [ OK ]
  ping        [ OK ]
  status      [ OK ]
mycluster2 -> mycluster1*
  failoverping [ OK ]
  mysql       [ OK ]
  ping        [ OK ]
  status      [ OK ]
```

The \* in the output indicates the head node which is currently active. The `status` output shows 4 aspects of the HA subsystem from the perspective of each head node:

HA Status	Description
<code>failoverping</code>	the other head node is reachable via the dedicated failover network. This failover ping uses the failover route instead of the internal net route. It uses ICMP ping
<code>mysql</code>	MySQL replication status
<code>ping</code>	the other head node is reachable over the primary management network. It uses ICMP ping.
<code>status</code>	CMDaemon running on the other head node responds to REST calls

By default, BCM prepares to carry out the failover sequence (the sequence that includes a STONITH) when all three of `ping`, `failoverping` and `status` are not OK on a head node. If these three are not OK, then the active node is *all dead* according to `cmha`. One way of initiating failover is thus by causing a system crash (section 15.2.4).

It can typically take about 30s for the `cmha status` command to output its findings in the case of a recently crashed head node.

#### `cmha makeactive: Initiate Failover`

If automatic failover is enabled (section 15.1.7), then the failover sequence attempts to complete automatically if power management is working properly, and the `cmha status` shows `ping`, `failoverping` and `status` as failed.

If automatic failover is disabled, then a manual failover operation must be executed to have a failover operation take place. A manual failover operation can be carried out with the “`cmha makeactive`” command:

## Example

To initiate a failover manually:

```
[root@mycluster2 ~]# cmha makeactive
Proceeding will initiate a failover sequence which will make this node
(mycluster2) the active master.

Are you sure ? [Y/N]
y
Your session ended because: CMDaemon failover, no longer master
mycluster2 became active master, reconnecting your cmsh ...
```

On successful execution of the command, the former active head node simply continues to run as a passive head node.

The `cmha makeactive` command assumes both head nodes have no problems preventing the execution of the command.

One possible problem that can halt manual failover is if nodes are being provisioned by the provisioning subsystem at that time (section 5.2.4). In that case, provisioning should be cancelled by the cluster administrator before the `cmha makeactive` command can continue, for example, with `cmsh -c "softwareimage cancelprovisioningrequest -a"` (page 268).

For automatic failover no such intervention takes place—provisioning requests are killed when the active head node is powered off.

Another slightly similar problem that can occur for automatic failover, as well as manual failover, is the “mostly dead” edge case. This case requires careful consideration before the `Are you sure ?` prompt is answered by the cluster administrator.

### `cmha makeactive` edge case—the mostly dead active:

- For a manual failover operation, if the execution of the `cmha makeactive` command has problems, then it can mean that there is a problem with the initially active head node being in a sluggish state. That is, neither fully functioning, nor all dead. The active head node is thus in a state that is still powered on, but what can be called *mostly dead*. There is a big difference between mostly dead and *all dead*. Mostly dead means slightly alive (not all of ping, failoverping, and status are FAILED), while all dead means there is only one thing that can sensibly be done to make sure the cluster keeps running—that is, to make the old passive the new active.

Making an old passive the new active is only safe if the old active is guaranteed to not come back as an active head node. This guarantee is set by a STONITH (page 745) for the old active head node, and results in a former active that is now all dead. STONITH thus guarantees that head nodes are not in conflict about their active and passive states. STONITH can however still fail in achieving a clean shutdown when acting on a mostly dead active head node, which can result in unclean filesystem or database states.

Thus, the mostly dead active head node may still be in the middle of a transaction, so that shutting it down may cause filesystem or database corruption. Making the passive node also active then in this case carries risks such as mounting filesystems accidentally on both head nodes, or carrying out database transactions on both nodes. This can also result in filesystem and database corruption.

It is therefore left to the administrator to examine the situation for corruption risk. The decision is either to power off a mostly dead head node, i.e. STONITH to make sure it is all dead, or whether to wait for a recovery to take place. When carrying out a STONITH on the mostly dead active head node, the administrator must power it off *before* the passive becomes active for a manual failover to take place with minimal errors. The `cmha dbreclone` option may still be needed to restore a corrupted database after such a power off, after bringing the system back up.

- For an automated failover configuration, powering off the mostly dead active head node is not carried out automatically due to the risk of filesystem and database corruption. A mostly dead active node with automatic failover configuration therefore stays mostly dead either until it recovers, or until the administrator decides to do a STONITH manually to ensure it is all dead. Here, too, the cmha dbreclone option may still be needed to restore a corrupted database after such a power off, after bringing the system back up.

### **cmha dbreclone: Cloning The CMDaemon Database**

The dbreclone option of cmha clones the CMDaemon state database from the head node on which cmha runs to the head node specified after the option. It is normally run in order to clone the database from the active head node to the passive—running it from the passive to the active can cause a loss of database entries. Running the dbreclone option can be used to retrieve the MySQL CMDaemon state database tables, if they are, for example, unsalvageably corrupted on the destination node, and the source node has a known good database state. Because it is resource intensive, it is best run when there are few or no users. It is typically only used by administrators after being instructed to do so by BCM support.

#### **Example**

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmha status
Node Status: running in active master mode

Failover status:
basecm11* -> head2
 failoverping [ OK ]
 mysql      [ OK ]
 ping       [ OK ]
 status     [ OK ]

head2 -> basecm11*
 failoverping [ OK ]
 mysql      [FAILED] (11)
 ping       [ OK ]
 status     [ OK ]

[root@basecm11 ~]# cmha dbreclone head2
Proceeding will cause the contents of the cmdaemon state database on he\
ad2 to be resynchronized from this node (i.e. basecm11 -> head2)

Are you sure ? [Y/N]
Y
Waiting for CMDaemon (3113) to terminate...
[ OK ]
Waiting for CMDaemon (7967) to terminate...
[ OK ]
cmdaemon.dump.8853.sql          100%  253KB 252.9KB/s  00:00
slurmacctdb.dump.8853.sql       100%   11KB 10.7KB/s  00:00
Waiting for CMDaemon to start... [ OK ]
Waiting for CMDaemon to start... [ OK ]
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmha status
Node Status: running in active master mode

Failover status:
basecm11* -> head2
 failoverping [ OK ]
 mysql      [ OK ]
 ping       [ OK ]
 status     [ OK ]
```

```
head2 -> basecm11*
failoverping [ OK ]
mysql      [ OK ]
ping       [ OK ]
status     [ OK ]
```

### 15.4.3 States

The state a head node is in can be determined in three different ways:

- 1 By looking at the message being displayed at login time.

#### Example

---

```
Node Status: running in active master mode
```

---

- 2 By executing `cmha status`.

#### Example

```
[root@mycluster ~]# cmha status
Node Status: running in active master mode
...
```

- 3 By examining `/var/spool/cmd/state`.

There are a number of possible states that a head node can be in:

State	Description
INIT	Head node is initializing
FENCING	Head node is trying to determine whether it should try to become active
ACTIVE	Head node is in active mode
PASSIVE	Head node is in passive mode
BECOMEACTIVE	Head node is in the process of becoming active
BECOMEPASSIVE	Head node is in the process of becoming passive
UNABLETOBECOMEACTIVE	Head node tried to become active but failed
ERROR	Head node is in error state due to unknown problem

Especially when developing custom mount and unmount scripts, it is quite possible for a head node to go into the `UNABLETOBECOMEACTIVE` state. This generally means that the mount and/or unmount script are not working properly or are returning incorrect exit codes. To debug these situations, it is helpful to examine the output in `/var/log/cmdaemon`. The “`cmha makeactive`” shell command can be used to instruct a head node to become active again.

### 15.4.4 Failover Action Decisions

A table summarizing the scenarios that decide when a passive head should take over is helpful:

Event on active	Reaction on passive	Reason
Reboot	Nothing	Event is usually an administrator action. To make the passive turn active, an administrator would run “cmha makeactive” on it.
Shutdown	Nothing	As above.
Unusably sluggish or freezing system by state pingable with ICMP packets	Nothing	1. Active may still unfreeze. 2. Shared filesystems may still be in use by the active. Concurrent use by the passive taking over therefore risks corruption. 3. Mostly dead head can be powered off by administrator after examining situation (section 15.4.2).
Become passive in response to “cmha makeactive” run on passive	Become active when former active becomes passive	As ordered by administrator
Active dies	Quorum called, may lead to passive becoming new active	Confirms if active head is dead according to other nodes too. If so, then a “power off” command is sent to it. If the command is successful, the passive head becomes the new active head.

### 15.4.5 Keeping Head Nodes In Sync

#### What Should Be Kept In Sync?

- It is a best practice to carry out a manual updateprovisioners command on the active head node, immediately after a regular node software image change has been made.

A successful run of the updateprovisioners command means that in the event of a failover, the formerly passive head node already has up-to-date regular node software images, which makes further administration simpler.

The background behind why it is done can be skipped, but it is as follows:

An image on the passive head node, which is a node with a provisioning role, is treated as an image on any other provisioning node. This means that it eventually synchronizes to a changed image on the active head node. By default the synchronization happens at midnight, which means images may remain out-of-date for up to 24 hours. The images being in an out-of-date state should be viewed as normal, because the timeout period associated with being in an updated state is only 5 minutes by default.

Since the passive head is a provisioning node, it also means that an attempt to provision regular nodes from it with the changed image will not succeed if it happens too soon after the image change event on the active head. “Too soon” means within the autoupdate period defined by the parameter dirtyautoupdatetimeout (page 235).

If on the other hand the autoupdate timeout is exceeded, then by itself this does not lead to the image on the passive head node becoming synchronized with an image from the active head node. Such synchronization only takes place as part of regular housekeeping (at midnight by default).

Or it takes place if a regular node sends a provisioning request to the passive head node, which can take place during the reboot of the regular node.

This means that the `provisioningstatus` command commonly shows that the passive head node image is “out of date”. This may sound alarming to a cluster administrator. However, before the image gets to be used, it is synced, so in practice the “out of date” warning is not something to be concerned about.

The synchronization logic just described is followed to reduce the load on the head node. The only pitfall in this is the case when an administrator changes an image on the active head node, and then soon after that the passive head node becomes active as part of a failover, without the images having had enough time to synchronize. In that case the formerly passive node ends up with out-of-date software images. That is why it is a best practice to carry out a manual `updateprovisioners` command on the active head immediately after a regular node software image change has been made.

- Changes controlled by CMDaemon are synchronized automatically between the CMDaemon databases to the required extent during failover to the active node.

If the output of `cmha status` is not `OK`, then it typically means that the CMDaemon databases of the active head node and the passive head node are not synchronized. This situation may be resolved by waiting, typically for several minutes. If the status does not resolve on its own, then this indicates a more serious problem which should be investigated further.

- By default, software images are not stored on shared storage, and are synchronized between the head nodes by CMDaemon.

However, if images are kept on shared storage, then, within the provisioning role (section 5.2.1), the image-related parameters such as `allimages`, `localimages`, and `sharedimages`, must be adjusted according to the configuration used.

- If filesystem changes are made on an active head node without using CMDaemon (`cmsh` or Base View), and if the changes are outside the shared filesystem, then these changes should normally also be made by the administrator on the passive head node. For example:

- RPM installations/updates (section 9.2)
- Applications installed locally
- Files (such as drivers or values) placed in the `/cm/node-installer/` directory and referred to by `initialize` (section 5.4.5) and `finalize` scripts (section 5.4.11)
- Any other configuration file changes outside of the shared filesystems

The reason behind not syncing everything automatically is to guarantee that a change that breaks a head node is not accidentally propagated to the passive. This way there is always a running head node. Otherwise, if automated syncing is used, there is a risk of ending up with two broken head nodes at the same time.

If the cluster is being built on bare metal, then a sensible way to minimize the amount of work to be done is to install a single head cluster first. All packages and applications should then be placed, updated and configured on that single head node until it is in a satisfactory state. Only then should HA be set up as described in section 15.2, where the cloning of data from the initial head node to the secondary is described. The result is then that the secondary node gets a well-prepared system with the effort to prepare it having only been carried out once.

### Avoiding Encounters With The Old Filesystems

It should be noted that when the shared storage setup is made, the contents of the shared directories (at that time) are copied over from the local filesystem to the newly created shared filesystems. The shared

filesystems are then mounted on the mountpoints on the active head node, effectively hiding the local contents.

Since the shared filesystems are only mounted on the active machine, the old filesystem contents remain visible when a head node is operating in passive mode. Logging into the passive head node may thus confuse users and is therefore best avoided.

### Updating Services On The Head Nodes And Associated Syncing

The services running on the head nodes described in section 15.1.3 should also have their packages updated on both head nodes.

For the services that run simultaneously on the head nodes, such as CMDaemon, DHCP, LDAP, MySQL, NTP and DNS, their packages should be updated on both head nodes at about the same time. A suggested procedure is to stop the service on both nodes around the same time, update the service and ensure that it is restarted.

The provisioning node service is part of the CMDaemon package. The service updates images from the active head node to all provisioning nodes, including the passive head node, if the administrator runs the command to update provisioners. How to update provisioners is described in section 15.1.3.

For services that migrate across head nodes during failover, such as NFS, or the sgemaster it is recommended (but not mandated) to carry out this procedure: the package on the passive node (called the secondary for the sake of this example) is updated to check for any broken package behavior. The secondary is then made active with cmha makeactive (section 15.4.2), which automatically migrates users cleanly off from being serviced by the active to the secondary. The package is then updated on the primary. If desired, the primary can then be made active again. The reason for recommending this procedure for services that migrate is that, in case the update has issues, the situation can be inspected somewhat better with this procedure.

#### 15.4.6 High Availability Parameters

There are several HA-related parameters that can be tuned. Accessing these via Base View is described in section 15.4.6. In cmsh the settings can be accessed in the failover submode of the base partition.

##### Example

```
[mycluster1]# partition failover base
[mycluster1->partition[base]->failover]# show
Parameter          Value
-----
Dead time          10
Disable automatic failover  no
Failover network   failovernet
Init dead          30
Keep alive         1
Mount script
Postfailover script
Prefailover script
Quorum time        60
Revision
Secondary headnode
Unmount script
Warn time          5

Dead time
```

When a passive head node determines that the active head node is not responding to any of the periodic checks for a period longer than the Dead time seconds, the active head node is considered dead and a quorum procedure starts. Depending on the outcome of the quorum, a failover sequence may be initiated.

**Disable automatic failover**

Setting this to yes disables automated failover. Section 15.1.7 covers this further.

**Failover network**

The Failover network setting determines which network is used as a dedicated network for the failoverping heartbeat check. The heartbeat connection is normally a direct cable from a NIC on one head node to a NIC on the other head node. The network can be selected via tab-completion suggestions. By default, without a dedicated failover network, the possibilities are nothing, externalnet and internalnet.

**Init dead**

When head nodes are booted simultaneously, the standard Dead time might be too strict if one head node requires a bit more time for booting than the other. For this reason, when a head node boots (or more exactly, when the cluster management daemon is starting), a time of Init dead seconds is used rather than the Dead time to determine whether the other node is alive.

**Keep alive**

The Keep alive value is the time interval, in seconds, over which the passive head node carries out a check that the active head node is still up. If a dedicated failover network is used, 3 separate heartbeat checks are carried out to determine if a head node is reachable.

**Mount script**

The script pointed to by the Mount script setting is responsible for bringing up and mounting the shared filesystems.

**Postfailover script**

The script pointed to by the Postfailover script setting is run by cmdaemon on both head nodes. The script first runs on the head that is now passive, then on the head that is now active. It runs as soon as the former passive has become active. It is typically used by scripts mounting an NFS shared storage so that no more than one head node exports a filesystem to NFS clients at a time.

**Prefailover script**

The script pointed to by the Prefailover script setting is run by cmdaemon on both head nodes. The script first runs on the (still) active head, then on the (still) passive head. It runs as soon as the decision for the passive to become active has been made, but before the changes are implemented. It is typically used by scripts unmounting an NFS shared storage so that no more than one head node exports a filesystem to NFS clients at a time. When unmounting shared storage, it is very important to ensure that a non-zero exit code is returned if unmounting has problems, or the storage may become mounted twice during the Postfailover script stage, resulting in data corruption.

**Quorum time**

When a node is asked what head nodes it is able to reach over the network, the node has Quorum time seconds to respond. If a node does not respond to a call for quorum within that time, it is no longer considered for the results of the quorum check.

**Secondary headnode**

The Secondary headnode setting is used to define the secondary head node to the cluster.

**Unmount script**

The script pointed to by the Unmount script setting is responsible for bringing down and unmounting the shared filesystems.

**Warn time**

When a passive head node determines that the active head node is not responding to any of the periodic checks for a period longer than `Warn time` seconds, a warning is logged that the active head node might become unreachable soon.

### 15.4.7 Viewing Failover Via Base View

#### Accessing cmsh HA Parameters (partition failover base) Via Base View

The Base View equivalents of the cmsh HA parameters in section 15.4.6 are accessed from the navigation path `Cluster > Partition[base] > Settings > Failover`

### 15.4.8 Re-cloning A Head Node

Some time after an HA setup has gone into production, it may become necessary to re-install one of the head nodes, for example if one of the head nodes were replaced due to hardware failure.

To re-clone a head node from an existing active head node, the head node hardware that is going to become the clone can be PXE-booted into the rescue environment, as described in section 15.2.2. Instead of running the `cm-clone-install --failover` command as in that section, the following command can be run:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# /cm/cm-clone-install --clone --hostname=<new host name>
```

The new host name can be the same as the original, because the clone is not run at the same time as the original anyway. The clone should not be run after cloning on the same network segment as the original, in order to prevent IP address conflicts.

If the clone is merely intended as a backup, then the clone hardware does not have to match the head node. For a backup, typically the most important requirement is then that a clone drive should not run out of space—that is, its drive should be as large as, or larger than the matching drive of the head node.

If the clone is to be put to work as a head node, then, if the MAC address of one of the head nodes has changed, it is typically necessary to request that the product key is unlocked, so that a new license can be obtained (section 4.3 of the *Installation Manual*).

Also, for a clone that is to be put to work as a head node, the CMDaemon database should first be synchronized from the active head node to the clone. This can be done by running `cmha dbreclone` on the active head node (page 759) before carrying out tasks with cmsh or Base View.

#### Exclude Lists And Cloning

Some files are normally excluded from being copied across from the head node to the clone, because syncing them is not appropriate.

The following exclude files are read from inside the directory `/cm/` on the clone node when the `cm-clone-install` command is run (step 4 in section 15.2.2).

- `excludelistnormal`: used to exclude files to help generate a clone of the other head node. It is read when running the `cm-clone-install` command without the `--failover` option.
- `excludelistfailover`: used to exclude files to help generate a passive head node from an active head node. It is read when running the `cm-clone-install --failover` command.

In a default cluster, there is no need to alter these exclude files. However some custom head node configurations may require appending a path to the list.

The cloning that is carried out is logged in `/var/log/clone-install-log`.

#### Exclude Lists In Perspective

The exclude lists `excludelistfailover` and `excludelistnormal` described in the preceding paragraphs should not be confused with the exclude lists of section 5.6.1. The exclude lists of section 5.6.1:

- `excludelistupdate`
- `excludelistfullinstall`
- `excludelistsyncinstall`
- `excludelistgrabnew`
- `excludelistgrab`
- `excludelistmanipulatescript`

are Base View or cmsh options, and are maintained by CMDaemon. On the other hand, the exclude lists introduced in this section (15.4.8):

- `excludelistfailover`
- `excludelistnormal`

are not Base View or cmsh options, are not modified with `excludelistmanipulatescript`, are not maintained by CMDaemon, but are made use of when running the `cm-clone-install` command.

#### **Btrfs And `cm-clone-install`**

If a partition with Btrfs (section 14.4.1) is being cloned using `cm-clone-install`, then by default only mounted snapshots are cloned.

If all the snapshots are to be cloned, then the `--btrfs-full-clone` flag should be passed to the `cm-clone-install` command. This flag clones all the snapshots, but it is carried out with duplication (bypassing the COW method), which means the filesystem size can increase greatly.

## **15.5 HA For Regular Nodes And Edge Director Nodes**

HA for regular nodes is available from NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 7.0 onward. HA for edge director nodes follows a similar design to HA for regular nodes, and is available from NVIDIA Base Command Manager version 9.2 onward.

### **15.5.1 Why Have HA On Non-Head Nodes?**

#### **Why Have HA On Regular Nodes?**

HA for regular nodes can be used to add services to the cluster and make them HA. Migrating the default existing HA services that run on the head node is not recommended, since these are optimized and integrated to work well as is. Instead, good candidates for this feature are other, extra, services that can run, or are already running, on regular nodes, but which benefit from the extra advantage of HA.

#### **Why Have HA On Edge Director Nodes?**

Edge director nodes manage edge nodes in a similar way to how head nodes manager regular nodes. Edge directors therefore benefit from HA for the same main that head nodes benefit from HA: avoiding a single point of failure (section 15.0.1).

### **15.5.2 Comparing HA For Head Nodes, Regular Nodes And Edge Director Nodes**

Many of the features of HA for regular nodes and edge director nodes are as HA for head nodes. These include:

**HA For Head Nodes, Regular Nodes, And Edge Director Nodes: Some Features In Common**

Power control is needed for all HA nodes, in order to carry out automatic failover (section 15.1.7).

Warn time and dead time parameters can be set (section 15.4.6).

Mount and unmount scripts (page 744).

Pre- and post- failover scripts (section 15.4.6).

Disabling or enabling automatic failover (section 15.1.7).

A virtual shared IP address that is presented as the virtual node that is always up (section 15.1.4).

Some differences between head node HA and the other types of HA are:

**HA For Head Nodes, Regular Nodes, And Edge Director Nodes: Some Features That Differ**

Head Node HA	Regular Node HA	Edge Director Node HA
Installed with <code>cmha-setup</code> (section 15.2).	Installed by administrator using a procedure similar to section 15.5.3.	Installed by administrator using <code>cm-edge-setup</code> (section 2.1.1 of the <i>Edge Manual</i> )
Configurable within failover submode of partition mode (section 15.4.6).	Configurable within failovergroups submode of partition mode (section 15.5.3).	Configurable within failovergroups submode of partition mode (section 15.5.3). However, manual configuration should not be carried out. Instead, the settings should be configured during installation with the <code>cm-edge-setup</code> utility.
Only one passive node.	Multiple passive nodes defined by failover groups.	Multiple passive nodes defined by failover groups.
Can use the optional failover network and failoverping heartbeat.	No failover network. Heartbeat checks done via regular node network.	No failover network. Heartbeat checks done via regular node network.
A quorum procedure (section 15.1.6). If more than half the nodes can only connect to the passive, then the passive powers off the active and becomes the new active.	Active head node does checks. If active regular node is apparently dead, it is powered off (STONITH). Another regular node is then made active.	Active head node does checks. If active edge director node is apparently dead, it is powered off (STONITH). Another edge director node is then made active.

**Failover Groups**

Regular nodes use *failover groups* to identify nodes that are grouped for HA. Two or more nodes are needed for a failover group to function. During normal operation, one member of the failover group is active, while the rest are passive. A group typically provides a particular service.

Edge directors also use failover groups for HA. However configuration of edge directors is generally best done during installation with `cm-edge-setup` (section 2.1.1 of the *Edge Manual*).

**15.5.3 Setting Up A Regular Node HA Service**

In `cmsh` a regular node HA service, CUPS in this example, can be set up as follows:

### Making The Failover Group

A failover group must first be made, if it does not already exist:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->partition[base]->failovergroups]% status
No active failover groups
[basecm11->partition[base]->failovergroups]% add cupsgroup
[basecm11->partition*[base*]->failovergroups*[cupsgroup*]]% list
Name (key)          Nodes
-----
cupsgroup
```

By default, CUPS is provided in the standard image, in a stopped state. In Base View a failover group can be added via the navigation path Cluster > Partition[base] > Settings > Failover groups > Add

### Adding Nodes To The Failover Group

Regular nodes can then be added to a failover group. On adding, BCM ensures that one of the nodes in the failover group becomes designated as the active one in the group (some text elided):

#### Example

```
[basecm11->...[cupsgroup*]]% set nodes node001..node002
[basecm11->...[cupsgroup*]]% commit
[basecm11->...[cupsgroup]]%
...Failover group cupsgroup, make node001 become active
...Failover group cupsgroup, failover complete. node001 became active
[basecm11->partition[base]->failovergroups[cupsgroup]]%
```

### Setting Up A Server For The Failover Group

The CUPS server needs to be configured to run as a service on all the failover group nodes. The usual way to configure the service is to set it to run only if the node is active, and to be in a stopped state if the node is passive:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->partition[base]->failovergroups[cupsgroup]]% device
[basecm11->device]% foreach -n node001..node002 (services; add cups; \
set runif active; set autostart yes; set monitored yes)
[basecm11->device]%
Successfully committed 2 Devices
[basecm11->device]%
Mon Apr  7 08:45:54 2014 [notice] node001: Service cups was started
```

The runif options are described in section 3.14.1.

### Setting And Viewing Parameters And Status In The Failover Group

**Knowing which node is active:** The status command shows a summary of the various failover groups in the failovergroups submode, including which node in each group is currently the active one:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->partition[base]->failovergroups]% status
Name      State      Active      Nodes
-----
cupsgroup    ok        node001    node001,node002 [    UP    ]
```

**Making a node active:** To set a particular node to be active, the `makeactive` command can be used from within the failover group:

### Example

```
[basecm11->partition[base]->failovergroups]# use cupsgroup
[basecm11->...]->failovergroups[cupsgroup]]# makeactive node002
node002 becoming active ...
[basecm11->partition[base]->failovergroups[cupsgroup]]%
... Failover group cupsgroup, make node002 become active
...node001: Service cups was stopped
...node002: Service cups was started
...Failover group cupsgroup, failover complete. node002 became active
```

An alternative is to simply use the `cmha` utility (section 15.4.2):

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmha makeactive node002
```

**Parameters for failover groups:** Some useful regular node HA parameters for the failover group object, `cupsgroup` in this case, can be seen with the `show` command:

### Example

```
[basecm11->partition[base]->failovergroups]# show cupsgroup
Parameter           Value
-----
Automatic failover after graceful shutdown  no
Dead time            10
Disable automatic failover      no
Mount script
Name                 cupsgroup
Nodes                node001,node002
Postfailover script
Prefailover script
Revision
Unmount script
Warn time            5
```

### Setting Up The Virtual Interface To Make The Server An HA Service

The administrator then assigns each node in the failover group the same alias interface name and IP address dotted quad on its physical interface. The alias interface for each node should be assigned to start up if the node becomes active.

### Example

```
[basecm11->device]# foreach -n node001..node002 (interfaces; add alias \
bootif:0 ; set ip 10.141.240.1; set startif active; set network internalnet)
[basecm11->device*]# commit
Successfully committed 2 Devices
[basecm11->device]# foreach -n node001..node002 (interfaces; list)
Type      Network device name  IP          Network
-----
alias    BOOTIF:0          10.141.240.1   internalnet
physical  BOOTIF [prov]     10.141.0.1     internalnet
Type      Network device name  IP          Network
```

```
alias      BOOTIF:0          10.141.240.1    internalnet
physical   BOOTIF [prov]     10.141.0.2      internalnet
```

Optionally, each alias node interface can conveniently be assigned a common arbitrary additional host name, perhaps associated with the server, which is CUPS. This does not result in duplicate names here because only one alias interface is active at a time. Setting different additional hostnames for the alias interface to be associated with a unique virtual IP address is not recommended.

### Example

```
[basecm11->...interfaces*[BOOTIF:0*]]% set additionalhostnames cups
[basecm11->...interfaces*[BOOTIF:0*]]% commit
```

The preceding can also simply be included as part of the `set` commands in the `foreach` statement earlier when the interface was created.

The nodes in the failover group should then be rebooted.

Only the virtual IP address should be used to access the service when using it as a service. Other IP addresses may be used to access the nodes that are in the failover group for other purposes, such as monitoring or direct access.

### Service Configuration Adjustments

A service typically needs to have some modifications in its configuration done to serve the needs of the cluster.

CUPS uses port 631 for its service and by default it is only accessible to the local host. Its default configuration is modified by changing some directives within the `cupsd.conf` file. For example, some of the lines in the default file may be:

```
# Only listen for connections from the local machine.
Listen localhost:631
...
# Show shared printers on the local network.
...
BrowseLocalProtocols
...
<Location />
  # Restrict access to the server...
  Order allow,deny
</Location>
...
```

Corresponding lines in a modified `cupsd.conf` file that accepts printing from hosts on the internal network could be modified and end up looking like:

```
# Allow remote access
Port 631
...
# Enable printer sharing and shared printers.
...
BrowseAddress @LOCAL
BrowseLocalProtocols CUPS dnssd
...
<Location />
```

```
# Allow shared printing...
Order allow,deny
Allow from 10.141.0.0/16
</Location>
...
```

The operating system that ends up on the failover group nodes should have the relevant service modifications running on those nodes after these nodes are up. In general, the required service modifications could be done:

- with an initialize or finalize script, as suggested for minor modifications in section 3.19.4
- by saving and using a new image with the modifications, as suggested for greater modifications in section 3.19.2, page 202.

### Testing Regular Node HA

To test that the regular node HA works, the active node can have a simulated crash carried out on it like in section 15.2.4.

#### Example

```
ssh node001
echo c > /proc/sysrq-trigger
~.
```

A passive node then takes over.

#### 15.5.4 The Sequence Of Events When Making Another HA Regular Node Active

The active head node tries to initiate the actions in the following sequence, after the `makeactive` command is run (page 769):

##### Sequence Of Events In Making Another HA Regular Node Active

All	Run pre-failover script
Active	Stop service Run umount script (stop and show <code>exit&gt;0</code> on error) Stop active IP address Start passive IP address Start services on passive. Active is now passive
Passive	Stop service Run mount script Stop passive IP address. Start active IP address. Start service. Passive is now active.
All	Post-failover script

The actions are logged by CMDaemon.

The following conditions hold for the sequence of actions:

- The remaining actions are skipped if the active umount script fails.
- The sequence of events on the initial active node is aborted if a STONITH instruction powers it off.
- The actions for All nodes is done for that particular failover group, for all nodes in that group.

## 15.6 HA And Workload Manager Jobs

Workload manager jobs continue to run through a failover handover if conditions allow it.

The 3 conditions that must be satisfied are:

1. The workload manager setup must have been carried out
  - (a) during initial installation  
or
  - (b) during a run of `cm-wlm-setup`
2. The HA storage setup must support the possibility of job continuity for that workload manager.  
This support is possible for NAS for Slurm, PBS Professional, and LSF.
3. Jobs must also not fail due to the shared filesystem being inaccessible during the short period that it is unavailable during failover. This usually depends on the code in the job itself, rather than the workload manager, since workload manager clients by default have timeouts longer than the dead time during failover.

Already-submitted jobs that are not yet running continue as they are, and run when the resources become available after the failover handover is complete, unless they fail as part of the BCM prejob health check configuration.

# 16

## The Jupyter Notebook Environment Integration

### 16.1 Introduction

This chapter covers the installation and usage of the Jupyter environment in BCM.

An updated list of the supported Linux distributions and Jupyter functionalities can be found in the feature matrix at <https://support.brightcomputing.com/feature-matrix/>, under the Feature column, in the section for Jupyter features.

An overview of the concepts and terminology follows.

#### What Is Jupyter Notebook?

*Jupyter Notebook* (<https://jupyter-notebook.readthedocs.io/>), or Jupyter, is a client-server open-source application that provides a convenient way for a cluster user to write and execute *notebook documents* in an interactive environment.

In Jupyter, a notebook document, or notebook, is content that can be managed by the application. Notebooks are organized in units called *cells* and can contain both executable code, as well as items that are not meant for execution.

Items not meant for execution can be, for example: explanatory text, figures, formulas, or tables. Notebooks can also store the inputs and outputs of an interactive session.

Notebooks can thus serve as a complete record of a user session, interleaving code with rich representations of resulting objects.

These documents are encoded as JSON files and saved with the `.ipynb` extension. Since JSON is a plain text format, notebooks can be version-controlled, shared with other users and exported to other formats, such as HTML, L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X, PDF, and slide shows.

#### What Is A Notebook Kernel?

A *notebook kernel* (often shortened to *kernel*) is a computational engine that handles the various types of requests in a notebook (e.g. code execution, code completions, inspection) and provides replies to the user (<https://jupyter.readthedocs.io/en/latest/projects/kernels.html>). Usually kernels only allow execution of a single language. There are kernels available for many languages, of varying quality and features.

#### What Is JupyterHub?

Jupyter on its own provides a single user service. *JupyterHub* (<https://jupyterhub.readthedocs.io/>) allows Jupyter to provide a multi-user service, and is therefore commonly installed with it. JupyterHub is an open-source project that supports a number of authentication protocols, and can be configured in order to provide access to a subset of users.

### What Is JupyterLab?

*JupyterLab* (<https://jupyterlab.readthedocs.io/>) is a modern and powerful interface for Jupyter. It enables users to work with notebooks and other applications, such as terminals or file browsers. It is open-source, flexible, integrated, and extensible.

JupyterLab works out of the box with JupyterHub. It can be used to arrange the user interface to support a wide range of workflows in data science, scientific computing, and machine learning.

JupyterLab is extensible with plugins that can customize or enhance any part of the interface. Plugins exist for themes, file editors, keyboard shortcuts, as well as for other components.

### What Is A Jupyter Extension?

Several components of the Jupyter environment can be customized in different ways with extensions. Some types of extensions are:

- IPython extensions (<https://ipython.readthedocs.io/en/stable/config/extensions/#ipython-extensions>)
- Jupyter Notebook server extensions (<https://jupyter-notebook.readthedocs.io/en/stable/extending/index.html>)
- JupyterLab extensions (<https://jupyterlab.readthedocs.io/en/stable/user/extensions.html>)

Extensions are usually developed, bundled, released, installed, and enabled in different ways.

Each extension provides a new functionality for a specific component. For example, JupyterLab extensions can customize or enhance any part of the JupyterLab user interface. Extensions can provide new themes, file viewers, editors and renderers for rich output in notebooks. They can also add settings, add keyboard shortcuts, or add items to the menu or command palette.

### What Is Jupyter Kernel Provisioning?

By default, Jupyter runs kernels locally, which can exhaust server resources. A resource manager, such as a workload manager (Slurm, PBS, LSF) or Kubernetes, can be used to deal with this issue.

*Jupyter Kernel Provisioning* (<https://jupyter-client.readthedocs.io/en/latest/provisioning.html#kernel-provisioning>) provides a pluggable interface to distribute kernels across the compute cluster, and uses local underlying resource managers.

The Jupyter Kernel Provisioning framework provides scalability, an improved multi-user support, and a more granular security for Jupyter, in comparison with Jupyter Enterprise Gateway.

In BCM, all the technologies mentioned in these sections are combined to provide a powerful, customizable and user-friendly JupyterLab web interface running on a lightweight, multi-tenant, multi-language, scalable and secure environment, ready for a wide range of enterprise scenarios.

For convenience, in the following sections, *Jupyter* is generally used to collectively refer to Jupyter Notebook, JupyterHub and JupyterLab

## 16.2 Jupyter Environment Installation

BCM distributes Jupyter via two packages: `cm-jupyter` and `cm-jupyter-local`. They are typically installed via the `cm-jupyter-setup` script (section 16.2.1). Additional packages installed by `cm-jupyter-setup` are `cm-jupyter-eg-kernel-wlm-py312` (used with WLMs), and the optional `cm-jupyter-vnc-local` metapackage (installs distribution-specific VNC packages).

`cm-jupyter` is installed in the `/cm/shared` directory, which is by default exported over NFS. As a result, Jupyter kernels can run on all the compute nodes, without a separate installation to those nodes. `cm-jupyter` provides JupyterHub, JupyterLab, and some extensions.

`cm-jupyter-local` provides the JupyterHub system service (`cm-jupyterhub.service`), and is therefore designed to be installed only on the node exposing users to the web login page for Jupyter. For

convenience, this node is called the *login node*. A login node is typically the head node, but any cluster node can be used.

Since compute nodes are not reachable via a web interface by default, it is the responsibility of the cluster administrator to configure access to these nodes if they are configured to be login nodes while Jupyter runs. That is, login nodes that are compute nodes must have their access configured by assigning IP addresses, configuring the firewall, opening Jupyter ports, and so on. However, if the Jupyter login node is the head node, then BCM takes care of configuring the firewall to open the required ports and of ensuring that the resulting environment is working out of the box.

### BCM Jupyter Extensions

For a default deployment of Jupyter, BCM installs and enables the following extensions to the Jupyter environment:

- Jupyter Addons: A Jupyter Notebook server extension that performs API calls to CMDaemon and manages other server extensions;
- Jupyter Kernel Provisioning modules: A set of modules created to handle Jupyter kernels' life-cycles in different possible BCM configurations. The modules available are: Slurm, PBS, LSF, Kubernetes.
- Jupyter Kernel Creator (section 16.5): A Jupyter Notebook server extension that provides a new interactive and user-friendly way to create kernels;
- Jupyter VNC (section 16.7): A Jupyter Notebook server extension that enables remote desktops with VNC from notebooks;
- JupyterLab Tools: A JupyterLab extension that exposes BCM server extensions functionalities to the users and shows the Cluster View section;
- Jupyter WLM Magic (section 16.8): An IPython extension that simplifies scheduling of workload manager jobs from the notebook;
- Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager (section 16.9): An extension that integrates with Kubernetes clusters, and for which it provides basic overview and management features.

#### 16.2.1 Jupyter Setup

The `cm-jupyter-setup` script can be run on the head node of the cluster to deploy a working Jupyter environment with minimal effort. The script comes with BCM's `cm-setup` package. It has no prerequisites, and can be run before or after configuring any resource manager, such as Kubernetes or Slurm.

By default, the Jupyter environment initially contains only Jupyter's default Python 3 kernel, which runs on the login node.

During setup, an administrator can deploy the Jupyter login interface on multiple nodes to evenly distribute the load across them. In this case the administrator must configure a load balancer to route users' requests across those nodes.

These login nodes become members of the same configuration overlay, and therefore share the same Jupyter configuration, such as port numbers, authenticator, and so on.

By default, the Jupyter configuration file points to local SSL certificates. This means that if there are multiple Jupyter login interfaces, then each node uses its own SSL certificate.

#### 16.2.2 Jupyter Architecture

The default Jupyter architecture deployed by `cm-jupyter-setup` is shown in figure 16.1.

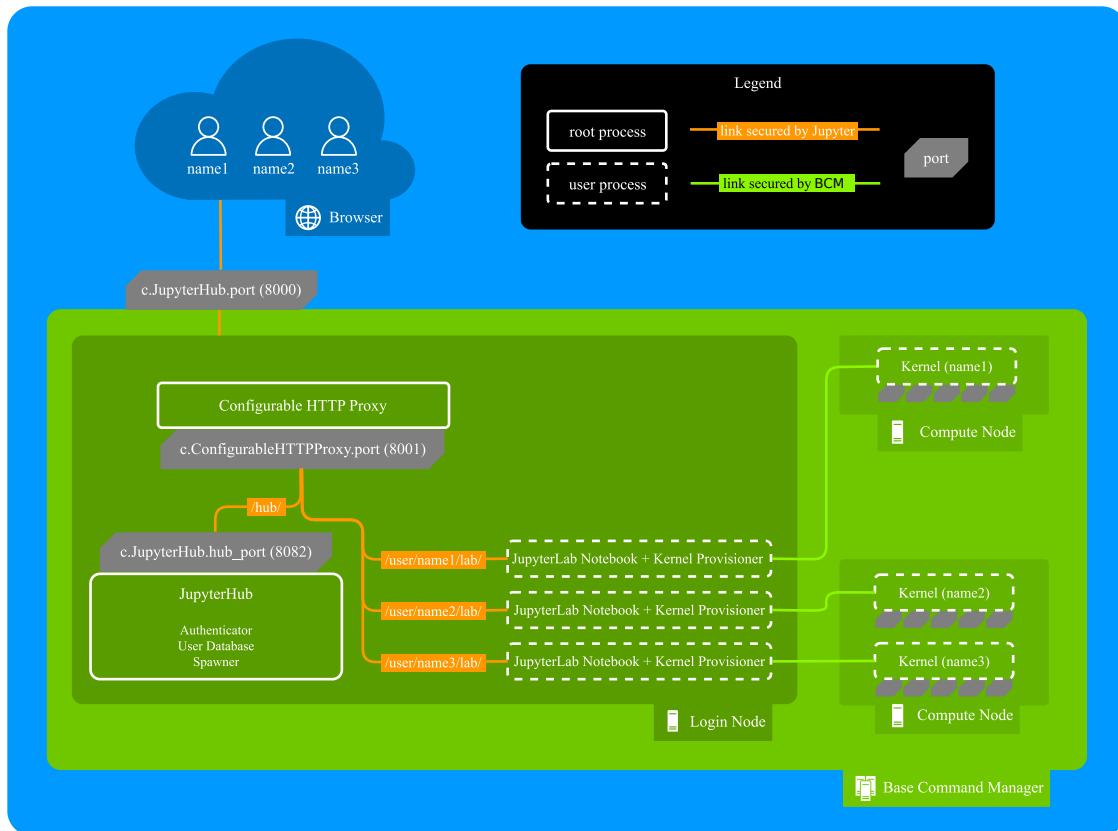


Figure 16.1: Jupyter architecture

In this architecture, the `cm-jupyterhub.service` provided by `cm-jupyter-local` starts JupyterHub on the port specified by `c.JupyterHub.hub_port` (default: 8901) on a login node (typically the head node).

JupyterHub then automatically spawns a dynamic proxy to route HTTP requests via BCM's `cm-npm-configurable-http-proxy` package.

The proxy is the only process that listens for clients' requests on Jupyter's public interface, as specified by `c.JupyterHub.port` (default: 8000).

JupyterHub instructs the proxy on how requests should be dispatched by using its REST API. This is exposed at the port specified by `c.ConfigurableHTTPProxy.port` (default: 8902), typically defined within `c.ConfigurableHTTPProxy.api_url`.

At this stage, users accessing Jupyter with their browsers are either redirected to the shared Hub (e.g. for authentication), or to their dedicated single-user servers to run notebooks.

By default, single-user servers are accessed at `/user/<username>`, while JupyterHub is accessed at `/hub` (<https://jupyterhub.readthedocs.io/en/stable/reference/technical-overview.html>).

The `cm-jupyter-setup` script automatically installs JupyterLab and sets `/lab` as the default URL (`c.Spawner.default_url`) to redirect users to the new interface.

Finally, JupyterHub is integrated to spawn the JupyterLab interface on a login node by configuring `jupyterhub.spawner.LocalProcessSpawner` as the default spawning mechanism (`c.JupyterHub.spawner_class`), and `jupyterhub-singleuser-gw` as the default spawning command (`c.Spawner.cmd`).

When a new notebook is started, a Jupyter kernel provisioner scans for an available port, and spawns a kernel chosen by the user on an appropriate cluster node. This process is then connected to JupyterLab.

JupyterHub and its HTTP proxy are run as two root processes, while JupyterLab and the in-built kernel provisioning run as user processes.

The privileges of the kernels spawned by Jupyter Kernel Provisioning can be configured by cluster administrators, and depend on the underlying computational engine (for example, Kubernetes). By default, all the kernels configurable by BCM are run as user processes, and no privilege escalation is possible.

Communication between users' browsers, JupyterHub, its HTTP proxy, and JupyterLab, is secured by default by JupyterHub. On the other hand, communication between JupyterLab and the kernels on the nodes, is secured by BCM.

Administrators can customize their Jupyter integration by setting some of the aforementioned options when the `cm-jupyter-setup` script runs. New values are automatically handled by BCM and written to Jupyter configuration files.

Other configuration options can be found in `/cm/local/apps/jupyter/current/conf/jupyterhub_config.py`.

### 16.2.3 Verifying Jupyter Installation

The `cm-jupyter-setup` script automatically starts the `cm-jupyterhub` service.

Any user (not necessarily root) can then verify the installation is working as expected. Here an ordinary user, `jupyterhubuser` runs the checks.

It can take some time until the service is fully up and running, even if a status check with `systemctl` shows that the service is active:

#### Example

```
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ systemctl status cm-jupyterhub -l
cm-jupyterhub.service - JupyterHub
   Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/cm-jupyterhub.service; static)
   Active: active (running) since Mon 2025-01-06 14:47:28 CET; 4h 25min ago
     Main PID: 4367 (run.sh)
        Tasks: 11 (limit: 19051)
      Memory: 190.2M
        CPU: 1min 46.193s
      CGroup: /system.slice/cm-jupyterhub.service
              |-4367 /bin/bash /cm/shared/apps/jupyter/16.0.0/bin/run.sh
              |-4428 /cm/local/apps/python312/bin/python3 /cm/shared/apps/jupyter/16.0.0/bin/jupyterhub ...
              |-4429 tee -a /var/log/jupyterhub.log
              '-5431 node /cm/shared/apps/jupyter/16.0.0/bin/configurable-http-proxy --ip "" --port 8000 ...
```

A check can then be done to see that the Jupyter extensions provided by BCM are installed and enabled:

#### Example

```
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ module load jupyter
Loading jupyter/16.0.0
  Loading requirement: python312
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ jupyter labextension list
JupyterLab v4.3.3
/cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/share/jupyter/labextensions
  jupyterlab_pygments v0.3.0 enabled OK (python, jupyterlab_pygments)
  @brightcomputing/jupyterlab-tools v0.2.7 enabled OK (python, brightcomputing_jupyterlab_tools)
  @jupyter-widgets/jupyterlab-manager v5.0.13 enabled OK (python, jupyterlab_widgets)
  @jupyterhub/jupyter-server-proxy v4.4.0 enabled OK
```

### 16.2.4 Login Configuration

#### User Access To JupyterHub With The Default Configuration

Once JupyterHub is functioning, its web login interface is accessible with a browser using the HTTPS protocol on the specified port (figure 16.2):

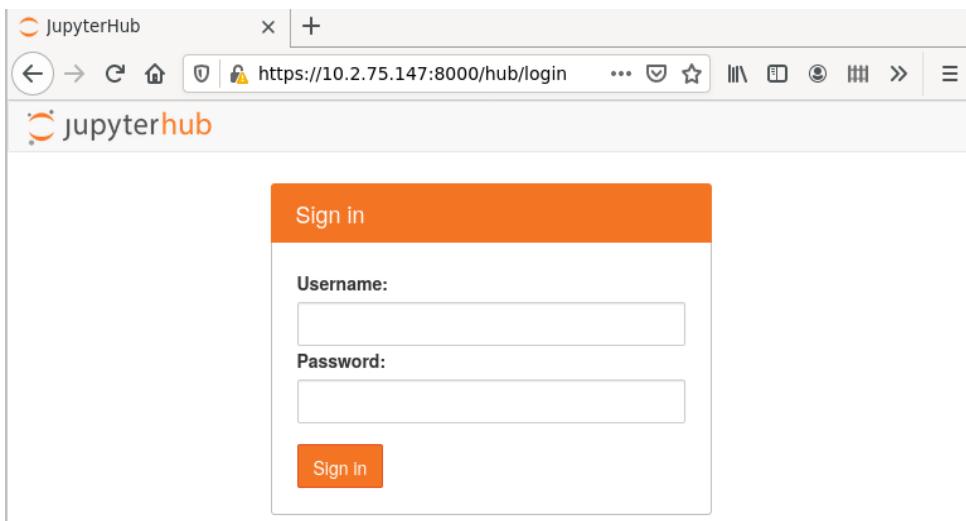


Figure 16.2: JupyterHub login screen

Running as root under JupyterHub is not recommended, so logging in to JupyterHub as root is not allowed by default.

Any other PAM user can log in to JupyterHub.

If needed, a test user `jupyterhubuser` with password `jupyterhubuser` can be created with, for example:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "user; add jupyterhubuser; set password jupyterhubuser; commit"
```

### Restricting User Access To JupyterHub

JupyterHub logins can be limited to members of particular groups.

For example, `alice` could be made a member of the group `jupyterusers`:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% group
[basecm11->group]% add jupyterusers
[basecm11->group]*[jupyterusers*]%- append members alice
[basecm11->group]*[jupyterusers*]%- commit
```

The group `jupyterusers` could then be set to be allowed to authenticate to JupyterHub with an authentication policy:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% configurationoverlay
[basecm11->configurationoverlay]% use jupyterhub
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[jupyterhub]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[jupyterhub]->roles]% use jupyterhub
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[jupyterhub]->roles[jupyterhub]]% configs
[basecm11->...roles[jupyterhub]->configs]% add c.BrightAuthenticator.groups_allow
[basecm11->...roles*[jupyterhub*]->configs*[c.BrightAuthenticator.groups_allow*]]% set value [\"jupyterusers\"]
[basecm11->...roles*[jupyterhub*]->configs*[c.BrightAuthenticator.groups_allow*]]% commit
```

Similarly, restricting authentication to JupyterHub to a specific group of users can be done by configuring `c.BrightAuthenticator.groups_allow`.

Another way to restrict user access is based on the CMDaemon profile set for the user. In that case the JupyterHub configuration settings are `c.BrightAuthenticator.cmd_profiles_allow` and `c.BrightAuthenticator.cmd_profiles_deny`.

In the following example, users with a `readonly` profile are not allowed to authenticate for JupyterHub.

### Example

```
[basecm11->...roles[jupyterhub]->configs[c.BrightAuthenticator.groups_allow]]% ...
[basecm11->...roles[jupyterhub]->configs]% add c.BrightAuthenticator.cmd_profiles_deny]]%
[basecm11->...roles*[jupyterhub*]->configs*[c.BrightAuthenticator.cmd_profiles_deny*]]% set value [\"readonly\"]
[basecm11->...roles*[jupyterhub*]->configs*[c.BrightAuthenticator.cmd_profiles_deny*]]% commit
```

A table summarizing the authentication policies is:

Key	Value
<code>c.BrightAuthenticator.groups_allow</code>	users in the specified groups can authenticate
<code>c.BrightAuthenticator.groups_deny</code>	users in the specified groups cannot authenticate
<code>c.BrightAuthenticator.cmd_profiles_allow</code>	users with the specified profiles can authenticate
<code>c.BrightAuthenticator.cmd_profiles_deny</code>	users with the specified profiles cannot authenticate

### 16.2.5 JupyterHub Screen After Login

After the first login, a new single-user server is spawned (figure 16.3):

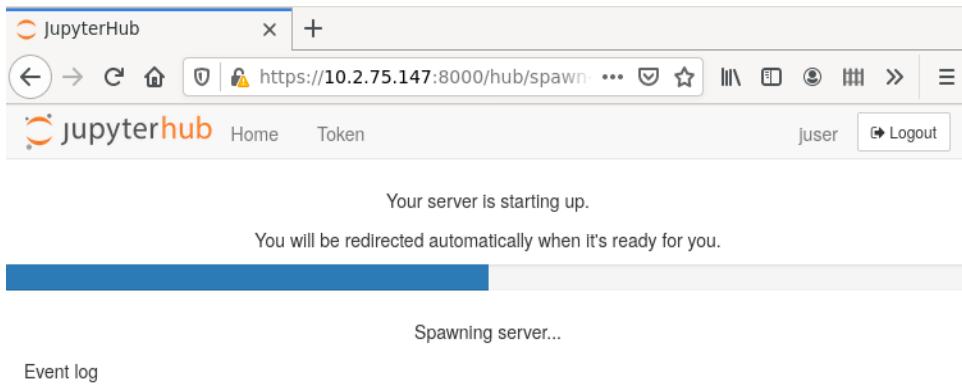


Figure 16.3: JupyterHub starting single-user server

Users are redirected to the JupyterLab interface and have access to Jupyter's default Python 3 kernel (figure 16.4):

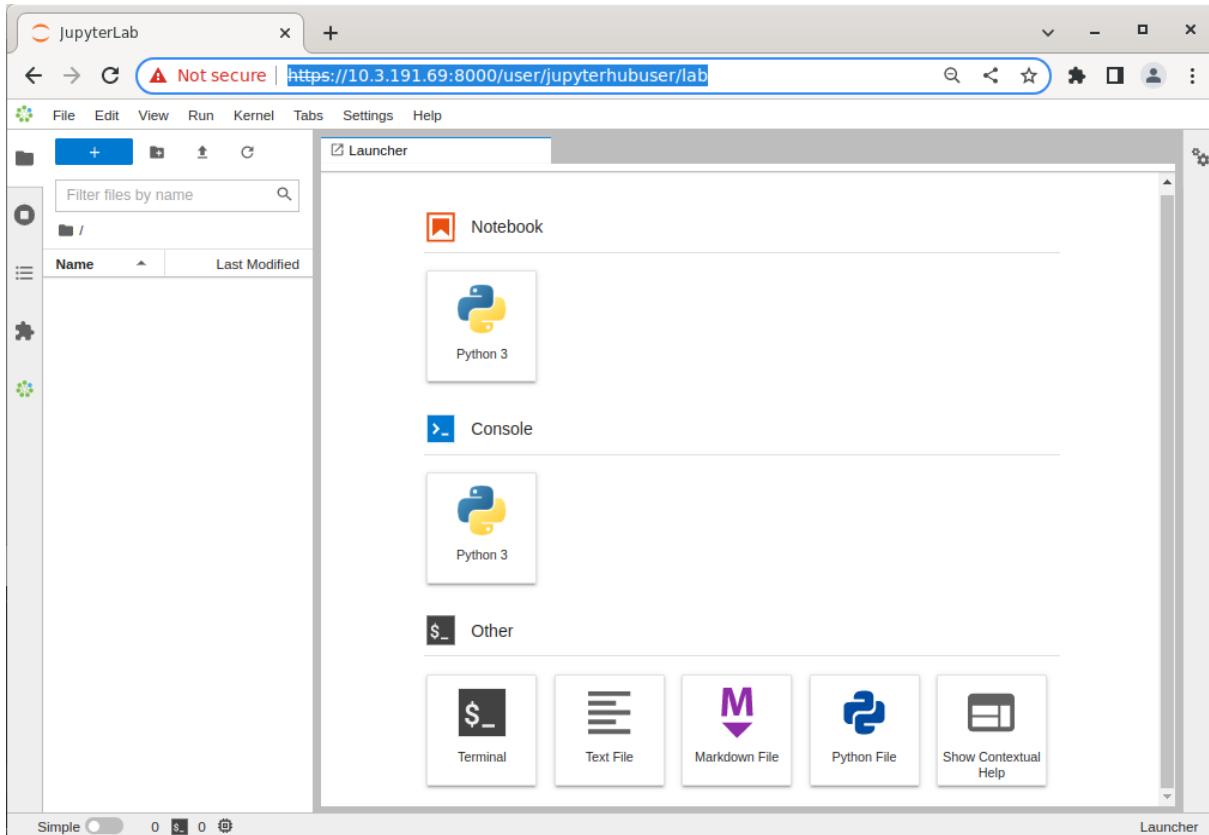


Figure 16.4: JupyterLab Launcher

If using Kubernetes under Jupyter, then a user registered under the Linux-PAM system must be added separately via Kubernetes with `cm-kubernetes-setup`. (section 4.11 of the *Containerization Manual*).

### 16.3 Jupyter Notebook Examples

The `cm-jupyter` package (section 16.2.1) provides a number of machine learning notebook examples that can be executed with Jupyter.

The notebooks include some applications developed with TensorFlow, PyTorch, MXNet, and other frameworks. The applications can be found in the `/cm/shared/examples/jupyter/notebooks/` directory:

```
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ ls /cm/shared/examples/jupyter/notebooks/
Keras+TensorFlow2-addition.ipynb  psql-example.ipynb      Spark+XGBoost-mortgage.ipynb
llm-bcm-manuals-rag               Pytorch-cartpole.ipynb   TensorFlow-minigo.ipynb
llm-codellama-local              R-iris.ipynb
MXNet-superresolution.ipynb       Spark-pipeline.ipynb
```

The datasets needed to execute these notebooks can be found in the `/cm/shared/examples/jupyter/datasets/` directory:

```
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ ls /cm/shared/examples/jupyter/datasets/
880f8b8a6fd-mortgage-small.tar.gz  kaggle-iris.csv
```

Users can copy these examples to their home directories, create or choose appropriate kernels to execute them, and interactively run them from Jupyter. In order to edit notebooks, the write permissions must be kept during the copy.

The distributed examples typically only require the packages provided by BCM with the Data Science Add-on, such as TensorFlow, PyTorch, and MXNet.

It is the responsibility of users to make sure that the required modules are loaded by their Jupyter kernels. The list of frameworks and libraries required to run an example is usually available at the beginning of each notebook.

## 16.4 Jupyter Kernels

In Jupyter, kernels are defined as JSON files.

Any user that the cluster administrator has registered in the Linux-PAM system can list the available Jupyter kernels via the command line. The following example is run in the initial Jupyter environment:

### Example

```
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ module load jupyter  
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ jupyter kernelspec list  
Available kernels:  
python3    /cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/share/jupyter/kernels/python3
```

Each kernel directory contains a `kernel.json` file describing how Jupyter spawns that kernel:

### Example

```
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ ls /cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/share/jupyter/kernels/*/kernel.json  
/cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/share/jupyter/kernels/python3/kernel.json
```

In addition to specifications for shared kernels, each user can define new personal ones in the home directory. By default, the Jupyter data directory for a user is located at `$HOME/.local/share/jupyter`.

This path can be verified with Jupyter by using the `--paths` option:

### Example

```
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ jupyter --paths  
config:  
  /home/jupyterhubuser/.jupyter  
  /home/jupyterhubuser/.local/etc/jupyter  
  /cm/local/apps/jupyter/conf  
  /cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/etc/jupyter  
data:  
  /home/jupyterhubuser/.local/share/jupyter  
  /cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/share/jupyter  
runtime:  
  /home/jupyterhubuser/.local/share/jupyter/runtime
```

The simplest definition for a Python3 kernel designed to run on the login node is:

```
{  
  "argv": ["python",  
           "-m",  
           "ipykernel_launcher",  
           "-f",  
           "{connection_file}"],  
  "display_name": "Python 3",  
  "language": "python"}  
}
```

In the preceding kernel definition:

- `argv`: is the command to be executed to locally spawn the kernel
- `"display_name"`: is the name to be displayed in the JupyterLab interface
- `"language"`: is the supported programming language (`"language"`)
- `"{connection_file}"` (<https://jupyter-client.readthedocs.io/en/stable/kernels.html#connection-files>) is a placeholder, and is replaced by Jupyter with the actual path to the connection file before starting the kernel.

The following kernel is Jupyter's default Python 3 kernel distributed by BCM in the initial environment:

### Example

```
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ cat /cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/share/jupyter/kernels/python3/kernel.json
{
  "argv": [
    "/cm/local/apps/python312/bin/python3.12",
    "-m",
    "ipykernel_launcher",
    "--InteractiveShellApp.extra_extensions=cm_jupyter_wlm_magic",
    "--TerminalIPythonApp.extra_extensions=cm_jupyter_wlm_magic",
    "-f",
    "{connection_file}"
  ],
  "display_name": "Python 3",
  "language": "python",
  "env": {
    "PYTHONPATH": "/cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/lib64/python3.12/site-packages:/cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/lib/python3.12/site-packages"
  }
}
```

The two kernels are not very different. They differ from each other in the Python 3 binary path, the IPython extension (Jupyter WLM Magic), and the exported PYTHONPATH environment variable ("env").

#### 16.4.1 Jupyter Kernel Provisioning Kernels

Jupyter is designed to run both the kernel processes, as well as the user interface (JupyterLab or Jupyter Notebook) on the same host. The kernel `{connection_file}` is therefore stored in the `~/.local/share/jupyter/runtime` directory, or in the `/run` directory.

JupyterLab can delegate the task of spawning kernels to another component, Jupyter Kernel Provisioning, as defined in the kernel's JSON file for `kernel_provisioner`. Jupyter Kernel Provisioning allows the complete life-cycle of several Jupyter kernels to be managed at the same time—their start, status monitoring, and termination, but the particular Jupyter kernels that run are otherwise independent of Jupyter Kernel Provisioning, and can be managed by third parties.

Jupyter Kernel Provisioning requires an extended `kernel.json` definition to describe a particular process-proxy module to handle the kernel.

A simple definition for a Python3 kernel designed to be scheduled via JEG is:

```
{
  "display_name": "Python 3.12 via SLURM 250102185019",
  "language": "python",
  "metadata": {
    "kernel_provisioner": {
      "provisioner_name": "slurm-provisioner",
      "config": {
        "timeout": 60,
        "response_manager": {
          "version": 2
        },
        "submit_cmd": {
          "path": "templates/submit_cmd.sh.j2",
          "vars": {
            "modules": "shared slurm jupyter-eg-kernel-wlm-py312"
          }
        },
        "query_cmd": {
          "path": "templates/query_cmd.sh.j2",
          "vars": {
            "modules": "shared slurm jupyter-eg-kernel-wlm-py312"
          }
        },
        "info_cmd": {
          "path": "templates/info_cmd.sh.j2",
          "vars": {
            "modules": "shared slurm jupyter-eg-kernel-wlm-py312"
          }
        },
        "cancel_cmd": {
          "path": "templates/cancel_cmd.sh.j2",
          "vars": {
            "modules": "shared slurm jupyter-eg-kernel-wlm-py312"
          }
        },
        "submit_script": {
          "path": "templates/submit_script.sh.j2",
          "vars": {
            "job_prefix": "jupyter-kernel-slurm-py312",
            "partition": "",
            "ntasks": "1",
            "gres": "",
            "work_dir": "/home/alice",
            "modules": "shared slurm jupyter-eg-kernel-wlm-py312",
            "oversubscribe": false,
            "pythonuserbase_loc": "temp"
          }
        }
      }
    },
    "argv": []
  }
}
```

In this example, the "metadata" entry has been added. It includes "kernel\_provisioner" and "provisioner\_name", which define the exact provisioner being used to manage the life-cycle of the

kernel. The provisioner is defined via Python's entry points specification.

It also contains paths to several script templates used to spawn the job within the context that the kernel process runs, and sets the corresponding environment variables and other variables for the templates. The "argv": [] is empty because it is replaced by a script defined in `templates/submit_script.sh.j2`

BCM is equipped with several types of provisioners to interact with a wide range of resource managers, such as Kubernetes or Slurm. This allows kernels to be scheduled across compute nodes.

BCM recommends that kernels using the Jupyter Kernel Provisioning mechanism are created and used with the Jupyter Kernel Creator (section 16.5) extension.

### 16.4.2 Tunables For Kernel Provisioners

BCM provides defaults for all the templates. The aim is to have the kernels that are created just work on a typical cluster. However a better fit to the running environment may be possible with some further fine-tuning.

Configuration parameters for modifying the kernel templates can be added with `cmsh`. These parameters are put into the Jupyter configuration file at `/cm/local/apps/jupyter/conf/jupyterhub_config.py`, and become accessible when JupyterLab starts. Templates or already-created kernels can be edited—which might be a preferred approach to test a parameter before simply adding it via `cmsh`. Parameters that are set in the kernel specification (the `kernel.json` file) have precedence over the ones set in `jupyterhub_config.py`.

The following example shows a session that adds the `cKernelResponseManager.public_ip` configuration parameters within `cmsh`:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% configurationoverlay
[basecm11->configurationoverlay]% use jupyterhub
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[jupyterhub]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[jupyterhub]->roles]% use jupyterhub
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[jupyterhub]->roles[jupyterhub]]% configs
[basecm11->...]->roles[jupyterhub]->configs)% add cKernelResponseManager.public_ip
[basecm11->...]->roles*[jupyterhub*]->configs*[cKernelResponseManager.public_ip*]]% set value "'10.10.1.1'"
[basecm11->...]->roles*[jupyterhub*]->configs*[cKernelResponseManager.public_ip*]]% commit
```

On commit, the `cm-jupyter` service is restarted, which means that all user sessions are dropped. To avoid this, editing the templates directly in the `/cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/share/jupyter/kerneltemplates` directory can be considered.

Table 16.4.2: Jupyter Kernel Tunables

Configuration parameter	Path in <code>kernel.json</code>	Default	Description
<code>cCMKernelProvisionerBase.timeout</code>	<code>(metadata.kernel_provisioner.config).timeout</code>	5	Timeout starting kernel

...continues

*...continued*

Configuration parameter	Path in kernel.json	Default	Description
c.CMKernelProvisionerBase. include_regex_env	(metadata.kernel_ provisioner.config). .include_regex_env	^(+_API_(KEY TOKEN)  HOST TYPE ORG_ID  ENDPOINT) HF_.+)\$	Regex for environment variable names to be inherited from JupyterLab process running on login node
c.CMKernelProvisionerBase. exclude_regex_env	.exclude_regex_env	^(JPY_API_TOKEN  JUPYTERHUB_.+ PYTHON.+  JUPYTERLAB_.+ PATH  LD_LIBRARY_PATH.*)\$	Regex for environment variable names not to be passed to running kernels
c.CMJKProvisioner. poll_interval	.poll_interval	5	Polling interval and interval between retries for k8s operations
c.CMJKProvisioner. operation_timeout	.operation_timeout	5	Timeout for running commands interacting with k8s
c.KernelResponseManager. public_ip	.response_manager. public_ip	Detected automatically	The IP address on the login node that jupyter-kernel- starter will use for call- backs when the kernel is started on the compute node
c.KernelResponseManager. public_network	.response_manager. public_network	Detected automatically	The network on the login node that jupyter-kernel- starter will use for call- backs when the kernel is started on the compute node
c.KernelResponseManager. public_hostname	.response_manager. public_hostname	Detected automatically	External hostname of the login node can be specified, and the public IP address will be detected by resolving
c.KernelResponseManager. bind_ip	.response_manager. bind_ip	Detected automatically	The IP address used by the the response manager to bind the socket that lis- tens for callbacks from jupyter-kernel-starter
c.KernelResponseManager. bind_network	.response_manager. bind_network	Detected automatically	The IP address used by the response manager to bind the socket that lis- tens for callbacks from jupyter-kernel-starter

*...continues*

*...continued*

Configuration parameter	Path in kernel.json	Default	Description
c.KernelResponseManager.bind_port_range_start	(metadata.kernel_provisioner.config).response_manager.bind_port_range_start	1025	The start of the port range within which the response manager tries to obtain a port, for listening to callbacks from the kernel
c.KernelResponseManager.bind_port_range_end	.response_manager.bind_port_range_end	65535	The end of the port range within which the response manager tries to obtain a port, for listening to callbacks from the kernel
c.KernelResponseManager.bind_port_retries	.response_manager.bind_port_retries	16	How many times the response manager tries to find a free port
c.KernelResponseManager.max_in_requests	.response_manager.max_in_requests	5	How many incoming messages to the kernel starter can be buffered
c.KernelResponseManager.max_out_requests	.response_manager.max_out_requests	5	How many outgoing messages to the kernel starter can be buffered

The *response manager* in the preceding table is a part of WLM kernel provisioners. It is dedicated to getting callbacks and managing signal communications with the running kernel. It acts as a proxy for system signals and informs the kernel provisioner about the kernel being started and which ports it is listening to. The response manager works in tandem with `jupyter-kernel-starter`.

## 16.5 Jupyter Kernel Creator Extension

Creating or editing kernels can be cumbersome and error-prone for users, depending on the features of the execution context desired for their notebooks.

To provide a more user-friendly experience, BCM includes the *Jupyter Kernel Creator* extension in JupyterLab. This extension is accessed from the navigation pane in the JupyterLab interface, by clicking on the BCM icon.

Jupyter Kernel Creator allows users to create kernels using the JupyterLab interface, without the need to directly edit JSON files. With this interface users can create kernels by customizing an available *template* according to their needs.

A template can be considered to be the skeleton of a kernel, with several preconfigured options, and others options that are yet to be specified. Common customizations for templates include environment modules to be loaded, workload manager queues to be used, number and type of GPUs to acquire, and so on.

Templates are usually defined by administrators according to cluster capabilities, programming lan-

guages and user requirements. Each template can provide different options for customizations.

Administrators often create different templates to take advantage of different workload managers, programming languages and hardware resources. For example, an administrator may define a template for scheduling Python kernels via Kubernetes, another one for R kernels via Slurm, and yet another one for Bash kernels via Platform LSF.

### 16.5.1 BCM Predefined Kernel Templates

To simplify Jupyter configuration for administrators, BCM distributes a number of pre-defined templates with Jupyter Kernel Creator. These templates can be used for default configurations of BCM workload managers, and can be customized and extended for more advanced use. Kernel templates defined by BCM can be found in the Jupyter installation directory, under the `kerneltemplates` directory:

```
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ ls /cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/share/jupyter/kerneltemplates/
filter.yaml      k8s-cmjkop-py      lsf-py312      pbspro-bash    slurm-py312    slurm-pyxix-r
k8s-cmjkop-julia  k8s-cmjkop-py-spark  openpbs-bash   pbspro-py312  slurm-py-conda
k8s-cmjkop-ngc-py  lsf-bash        openpbs-py312  slurm-bash    slurm-pyxix-py
```

#### BCM Predefined Kernel Templates Seen By Users

Users can view the available predefined kernel templates in the Jupyter web browser interface, within the KERNEL TEMPLATES section of the dedicated BCM extensions panel (figure 16.5):

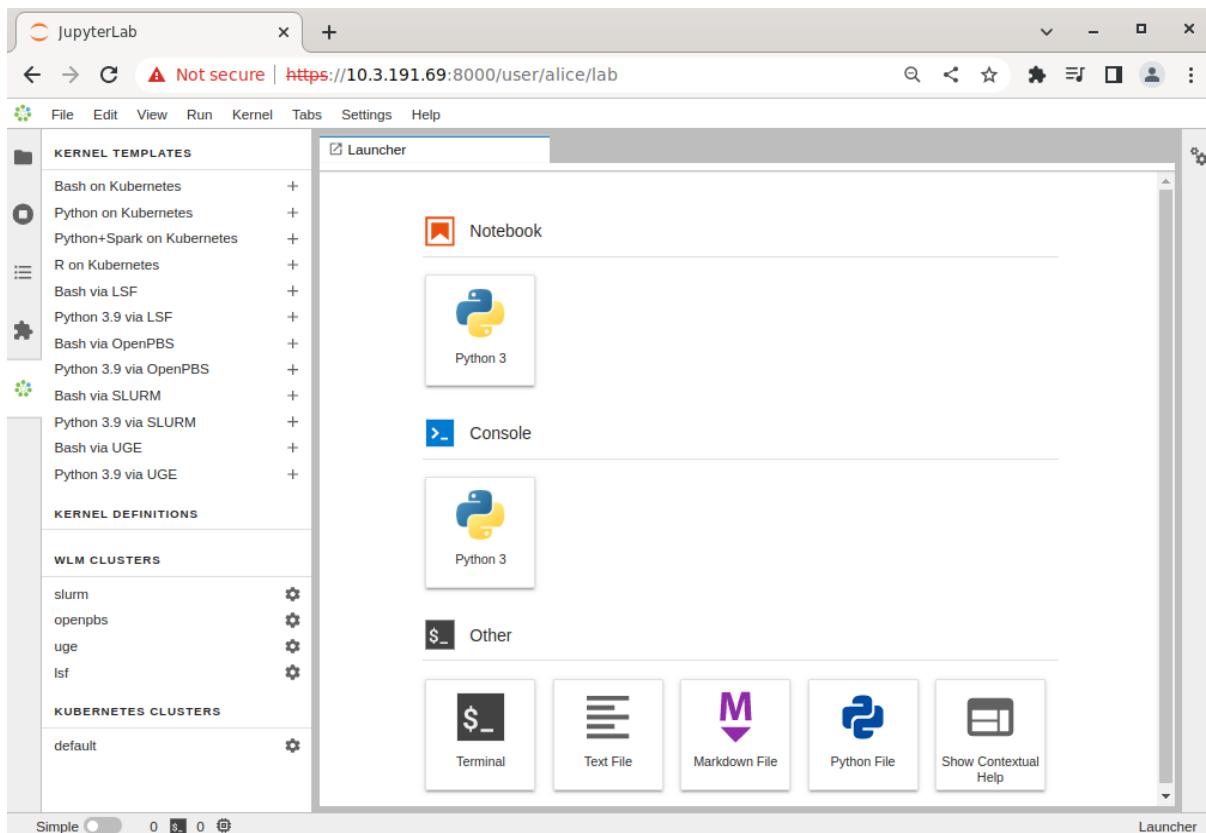


Figure 16.5: JupyterLab BCM extensions section with kernel templates

However, the templates provided by BCM are listed in the panel only if they can be used on the cluster. This means that the templates are listed only after the associated workload manager instance, or associated Kubernetes configuration (such as a Kubernetes operator), have been deployed by cluster manager utilities. For example:

- After running the `cm-wlm-setup` cluster manager utility to deploy an OpenPBS workload manager, the `openpbs-bash` and `openpbs-py312` templates become available. The templates are listed as:

- Bash via OpenPBS
- Python 3.12 via OpenPBS

and accessed via the navigation path: *menu > dedicated BCM extension panel > kernel templates section*.

- After running the `cm-kubernetes-setup` cluster manager utility to deploy a Kubernetes cluster, the Kubernetes cluster instance is displayed (navigation path: *menu > dedicated BCM extension panel > Kubernetes clusters section*)

Then, after running the `cm-jupyter-kernel-operator` cluster manager utility to deploy a Jupyter kernel operator package, and configuring a user (section 6.3 of the *Containerization Manual*), the templates `k8s-cmjkop-julia`, `k8s-cmjkop-py`, and `k8s-cmjkop-py-spark` become available.

The templates are listed as:

- Julia on Kubernetes Operator
- Python on Kuberneate Operator
- Python+Spark on Kuberneates Operator

and accessed via the navigation path: *menu > dedicated BCM extension panel > kernel templates section*.

Users can instantiate a kernel template to create an actual kernel from the dedicated BCM extensions section using the + button of the template. A dialog is dynamically generated for the template being instantiated, and users are asked to fill a number of customization options defined by administrators (figure 16.6):

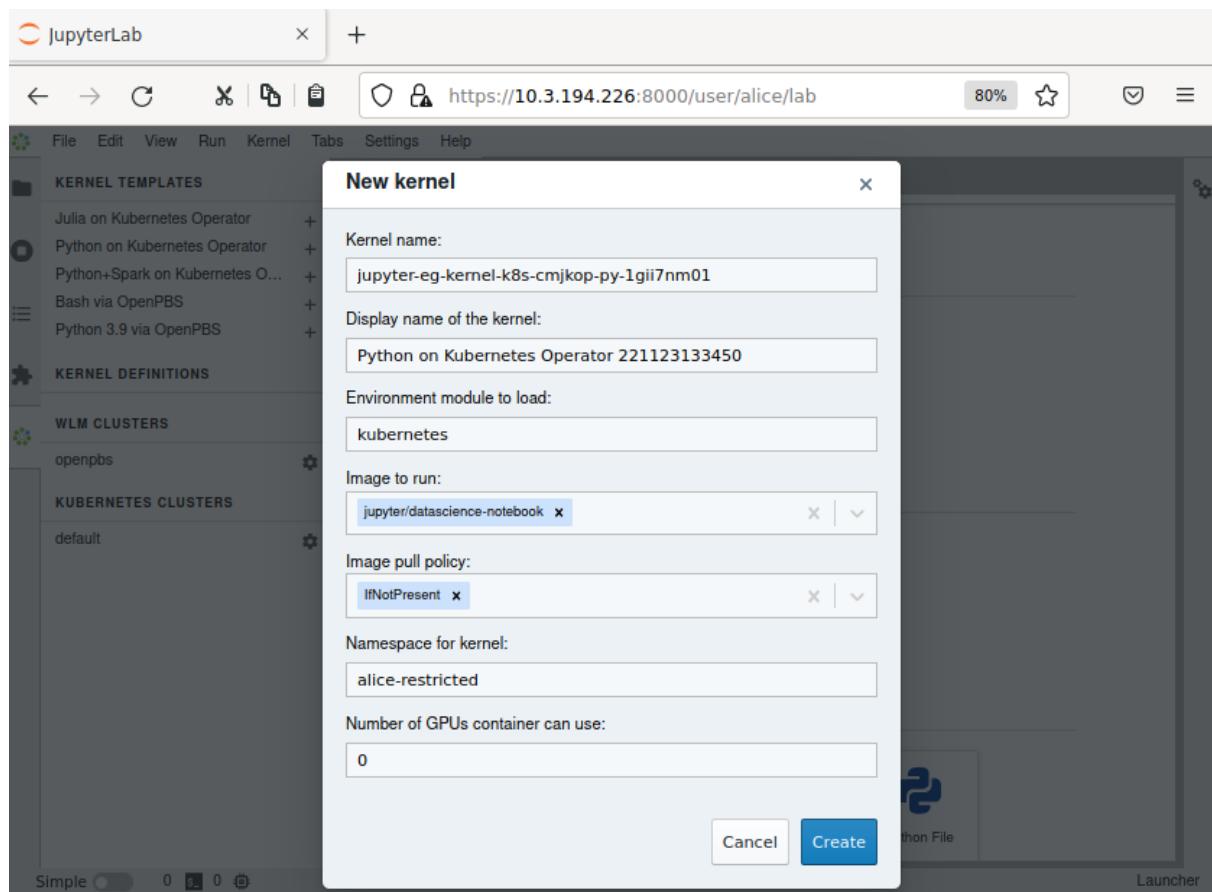


Figure 16.6: Jupyter kernel template customization screen

Once the template is completely customized, the kernel can be created. It automatically appears in the JupyterLab Launcher screen (figure 16.7) and can be used to run notebooks or a console session (figure 16.7):

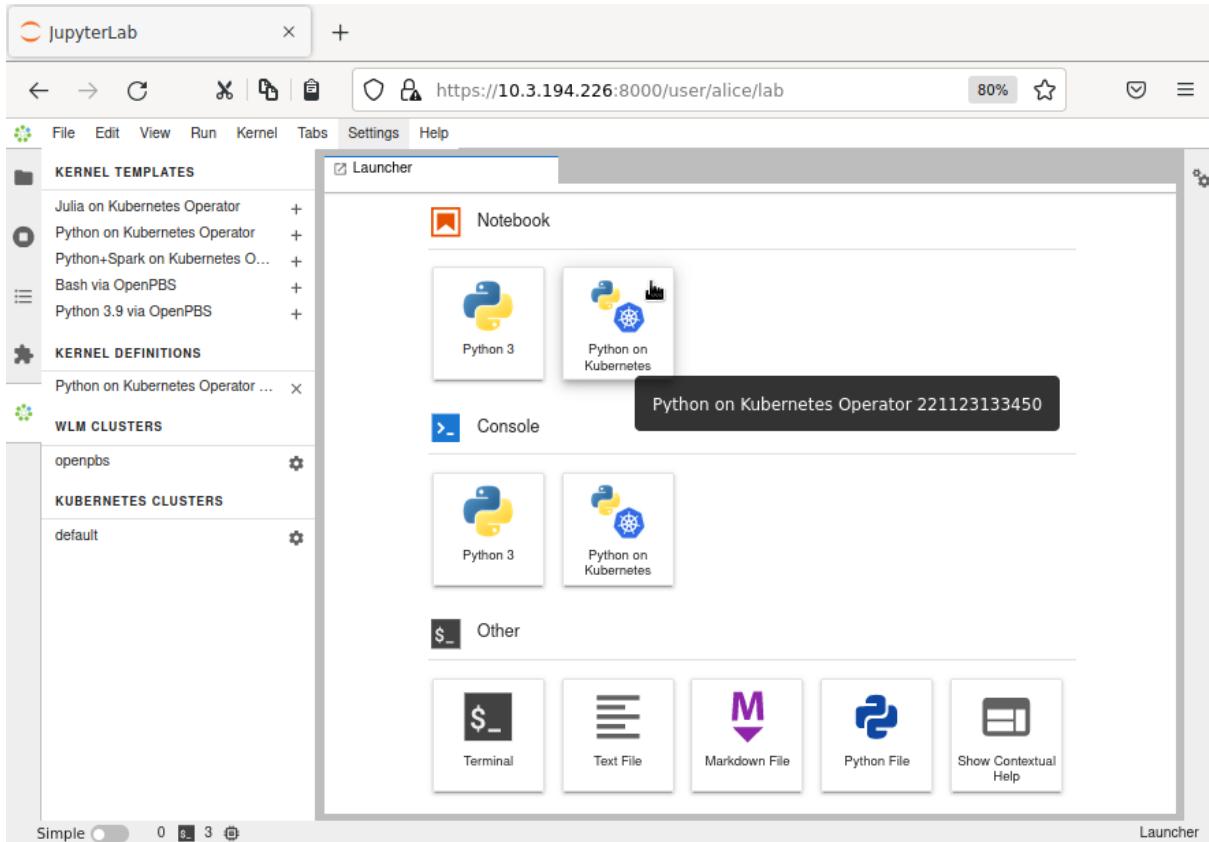


Figure 16.7: JupyterLab Launcher screen with new custom kernel

A user who lists available Jupyter kernels via the command line now sees the newly-created kernel:

```
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ module load jupyter
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ jupyter kernelspec list
Available kernels:
  k8s-cmjkop-py-1gi7nm01      /home/alice/.local/share/jupyter/kernels/k8s-cmjkop-py-1gi7nm01
  python3                      /cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/share/jupyter/kernels/python3
```

The new kernel directory will contain the JSON definition generated by the Jupyter Kernel Creator:

```
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ cat .local/share/jupyter/kernels/k8s-cmjkop-py-1gi7nm01/kernel.json
{
  "language": "python",
  "display_name": "Datasience Notebook Kernel",
  "metadata": {
    "kernel_provisioner": {
      "provisioner_name": "cmjk-provisioner",
      "config": {
        "timeout": 280,
        "template": {
          "path": "templates/cmjk.yaml.j2",
          "env_module": "kubernetes",
          "vars": {
            "image": "quay.io/jupyter/datasience-notebook",
            "namespace": "alice-restricted",
            "image_pull_policy": "IfNotPresent",
            "gpu_limit": 0,
            "cpu_limit": 1
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```

        "pythonuserbase_loc": "temp"
    }
}
}
},
"argv": []
}

```

Jupyter kernel names need not be unique. Users should therefore choose meaningful and distinguishable display names for their kernels. Doing so makes the JupyterLab Launcher screen easier to use.

For convenience, a summary of the available kernel templates and their requirements is shown in table 16.1:

*Table 16.1: Available Jupyter kernel templates for BCM and their requirements*

Template name	Requirement	Description
k8s-cmjkop-julia	Kubernetes	Jupyter official image via Jupyter Kernel Operator (using Julia)
k8s-cmjkop-ngc-py	Kubernetes	NGC images via Jupyter Kernel Operator
k8s-cmjkop-py	Kubernetes	Jupyter official image via Jupyter Kernel Operator (Python)
k8s-cmjkop-py-spark	Kubernetes <sup>1</sup>	Python + Spark via Jupyter Kernel Operator (using Python and Spark)
lsf-bash	Platform LSF	Bash via Platform LSF
lsf-py312	Platform LSF	Python 3.12 via Platform LSF
openpbs-bash	Open PBS	Bash via Open PBS
openpbs-py312	Open PBS	Python 3.12 via Open PBS
pbspro-bash	PBS Professional	Bash via PBS Professional
pbspro-py312	PBS Professional	Python 3.12 via PBS Professional
slurm-bash	Slurm	Bash via Slurm
slurm-py312	Slurm	Python 3.12 via Slurm
slurm-py-conda	Slurm + Conda <sup>2</sup>	Python 3.12 and Conda via Slurm
slurm-pyxixs-py	Slurm + Enroot	Python running inside imported Pyxis+Enroot image in Slurm

*...continues*

Table 16.1: Available Jupyter kernel templates...continued

Template name	Requirement	Description
slurm-pyxis-r	Slurm + Enroot	R running inside imported Pyxis+Enroot image in Slurm

<sup>1</sup> Docker image: [docker.io/brightcomputing/jupyter-kernel-sample:k8s-spark-3.5.3-py38-cuda12.6-rapids24.08-2](https://docker.io/brightcomputing/jupyter-kernel-sample:k8s-spark-3.5.3-py38-cuda12.6-rapids24.08-2)

<sup>2</sup> Conda needs to be installed for the user, and the Conda environment needs to be configured in the user's Bash shell as described in section 11.4.2 of the *User Manual*.

DockerHub kernels page: <https://hub.docker.com/r/brightcomputing/jupyter-kernel-sample/tags>

### 16.5.2 Jupyter Kernel Starter

Jupyter Kernel Starter, implemented as the software `jupyter-kernel-starter`, runs alongside the Jupyter kernel. It acts as a starter and sidecar to manage the life-cycle of the kernel on the node within the WLM job context. It informs the kernel provisioner, via the response manager, about the kernel status, and which ports are being used by Jupyter Kernel Manager (the kernel provisioner layer manager). It also performs basic heartbeat and watchdog operations to make sure that the running kernel does not drain cluster resources if the connection to the kernel provisioner is lost.

```
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ module load jupyter-eg-kernel-wlm-py312
[jupyterhubuser@basecm11 ~]$ jupyter-kernel-starter --help
usage: jupyter-kernel-starter [-h] [--log-level <log_level>] [--kernel-id <kernel_id>]
                               [--response-address <ip>:<port>] [--bind-ip <x.x.x.x>]
                               [--bind-network <x.x.x.x/y>] [--port-range <begin>..<end>]
                               [--port-bind-attempts <n>] [--wait-ports-timeout <sec>]
                               [--shutdown-timeout <sec>] [--response-server-socket-timeout <sec>]
                               [--watchdog-interval <sec>] [--kernel-script <cmd>]
                               [--kernel-script-base64 <cmd_base64>] [--connection-file-dir <path>]
                               [--encryption-key <pem_key>]

options:
-h, --help            show this help message and exit
--log-level <log_level>
                      Set the logging level (DEBUG, INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL). Can be specified as the
                      JKS_LOG_LEVEL environment variable.
--kernel-id <kernel_id>
                      ID of the Jupyter kernel
--response-address <ip>:<port>
                      Address of the server to return kernel connection info. Can be specified as the
                      JKS_RESPONSE_ADDRESS environment variable.
--bind-ip <x.x.x.x>   IP address to bind. Can be specified as the JKS_BIND_IP environment variable.
--bind-network <x.x.x.x/y>
                      Alternatively IP network to bind. Can be specified as the JKS_BIND_NETWORK environment
                      variable.
--port-range <begin>..<end>
                      Range of the ports to use for kernel. Can be specified as the JKS_PORT_RANGE environment
                      variable.
--port-bind-attempts <n>
                      How many times to try to find unoccupied ports to use. Can be specified as the
                      JKS_PORT_BIND_ATTEMPTS environment variable.
--wait-ports-timeout <sec>
                      How many seconds the kernel waits for ports to open before sending connection information
                      to the server. Can be specified as the JKS_WAIT_PORTS_TIMEOUT environment variable.
--shutdown-timeout <sec>
                      Timeout to shutdown kernel if connection to server is lost. Can be specified as the
```

```

JKS_SHUTDOWN_TIMEOUT environment variable.
--response-server-socket-timeout <sec>
    Socket timeout value for connecting to response server. Can be specified as the
    JKS_RESPONSE_SERVER_SOCKET_TIMEOUT environment variable.

--watchdog-interval <sec>
    How often watchdog with check liveness of kernel and connection to server. Can be
    specified as the JKS_WATCHDOG_INTERVAL environment variable.

--kernel-script <cmd>
    Script to run; '__connection_file__' placeholder will be substituted. Can be
    specified as the JKS_KERNEL_SCRIPT environment variable.

--kernel-script-base64 <cmd_base64>
    Alternatively cmd can be in base64 format to avoid issues with templating. Can be
    specified as the JKS_KERNEL_SCRIPT_BASE64 environment variable.

--connection-file-dir <path>
    Directory to store connection file json

--encryption-key <pem_key>
    Public key to encrypt data; must be in string in PEM format or path to .pem file.
    Can be specified as the JKS_ENCRYPTION_KEY environment variable

```

To establish communication with the response manager, the cryptographic key stored in JKS\_ENCRYPTION\_KEY is required. This is a public key generated by response manager, used to secure communication between the response manager and jupyter-kernel-starter.

A typical starting command is:

```
jupyter-kernel-starter \
--kernel-id 2a8bf66d-1577-4876-b908-a219fd4f8944 \
--response-address 10.141.255.254:23949 \
--shutdown-timeout 15 \
--kernel-script 'python -m ipykernel_launcher -f __connection_file__'
```

In the preceding command \_\_connection\_file\_\_ is a placeholder for jupyter-kernel-starter. It becomes a real path to the file for ipykernel\_launcher to start. Data from the connection file is created by jupyter-kernel-starter, and is then transferred to the response manager, so that Jupyter Kernel Manager knows how to connect to the running kernel. This way --kernel-script can start the kernel for any language supported by Jupyter.

Useful arguments that are often needed for more sophisticated cluster configuration are:

- --bind-network: used to make sure that jupyter-kernel-starter selects the right interface on the compute node that is connected to the login node
- --port-range: limits the ports that are probed to establish a connection to the response manager—this can be useful for strict network and firewall rules.

Various timeouts (jupyter-kernel-starter -help | grep timeout) can also be tuned.

The command options can be set in kernel templates (templates/submit\_script.sh.j2) or directly in the created kernel.

### 16.5.3 Running Jupyter Kernels With Two Factor Authentication

If PAM and CMDaemon are configured with two-factor authentication (2FA), then JupyterHub needs to be instructed to support it. This can be done using cmsh as follows:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% configurationoverlay
[basecm11->configurationoverlay]% use jupyterhub
```

```
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[jupyterhub]]% roles
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[jupyterhub]->roles]% use jupyterhub
[basecm11->configurationoverlay[jupyterhub]->roles[jupyterhub]]% configs
[basecm11->...]->roles[jupyterhub]->configs% add c.BrightAuthenticator.twofa
[basecm11->...]->roles*[jupyterhub*]->configs*[c.BrightAuthenticator.twofa*]]% set value True
[basecm11->...]->roles*[jupyterhub*]->configs*[c.BrightAuthenticator.twofa*]]% commit
```

#### 16.5.4 Running Jupyter Kernels With Kubernetes

The Jupyter Kernel Operator (section 6.3 of the *Containerization Manual*) is the recommended way to run kernels in Kubernetes in BCM. It allows users to run unmodified images; it takes care of communication with Jupyter Kernel Provisioning as it manages the Jupyter kernel life-cycle, including cleaning up dead or orphaned kernels.

After installation and configuration by `cm-kubernetes-setup`, Jupyter Kernel Operator kernels (`k8s-cmjkop-*`) appear in the JupyterLab interface in the template section.

The following BCM templates allow users to create and run Jupyter kernels on compute nodes via Kubernetes:

*Table 16.2: BCM templates for creating and running Jupyter kernel provisioner kernels on cluster nodes via Kubernetes*

Template	Description
<code>k8s-cmjkop-ngc-py</code>	NGC images via Jupyter Kernel Operator
<code>k8s-cmjkop-py</code>	Jupyter official image via Jupyter Kernel Operator (Python)
<code>k8s-cmjkop-julia</code>	Jupyter official image via Jupyter Kernel Operator (Julia)
<code>k8s-cmjkop-py-spark</code>	Python + Spark via Jupyter Kernel Operator

The administrator has to make sure that Kubernetes is correctly configured on the cluster Kyverno is enabled and Kubernetes Permissions Manager is installed (section 4.10.2 of the *Containerization Manual*).

Details on Kubernetes installation are provided in Chapter 4 of the *Containerization Manual*.

The default configuration proposed by `cm-kubernetes-setup` is usually sufficient to run Kubernetes kernels created from BCM's templates. However, it is the responsibility of the administrator to add users registered in the Linux-PAM system to Kubernetes.

For example, a test user `jupyterhubuser` can be added to Kubernetes with:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-kubernetes-setup --add-user jupyterhubuser --operators cm-jupyter-kernel-operator
```

For every new user added, `cm-kubernetes-setup` automatically generates a dedicated namespace with a name in the form `<user>-restricted`. For instance, the command in the example above, creates the namespace: `jupyterhubuser-restricted`.

Cluster administrators are strongly recommended to review the security policies for Kyverno, RBAC, and the dedicated namespaces.

In order to speed up kernel creation for the first user logging into JupyterLab when using BCM, it is recommended that all the relevant Kubernetes images are pre-loaded on the compute nodes that Jupyter Kernel Provisioning can contact.

#### 16.5.5 Running Jupyter Kernels Based On NGC Containers

Jupyter NGC templates are available in the list of templates if:

- Kubernetes is set up

- NVIDIA GPUs are available on the Kubernetes cluster
- Jupyter Kernel Operator (section 6.3 of the *Containerization Manual*) is installed

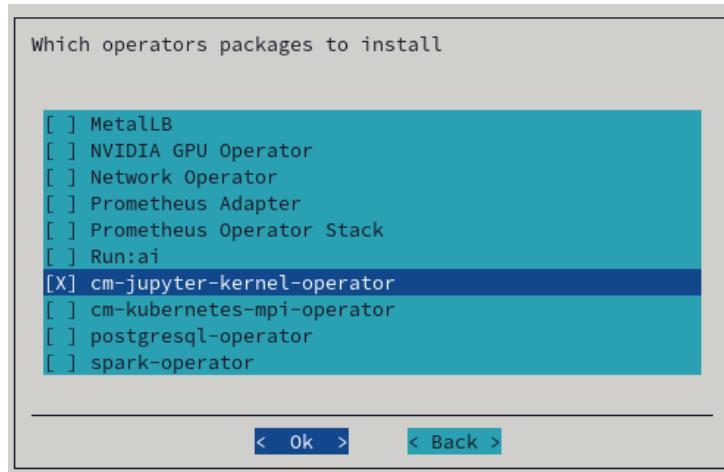


Figure 16.8: Jupyter Kernel Operator selection with `cm-kubernetes-setup`

It is also strongly advised to enable Kyverno on the Kubernetes cluster.

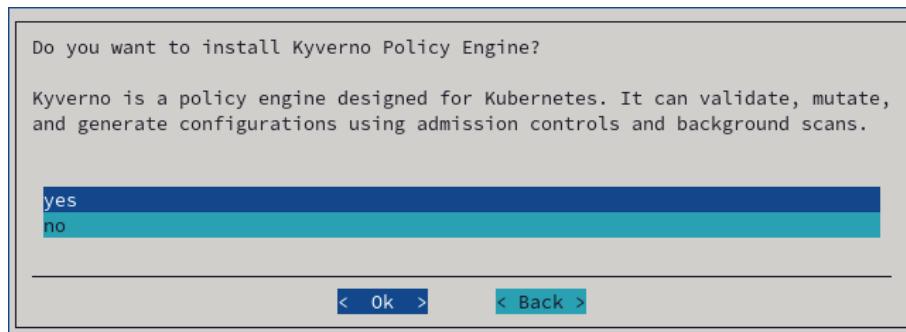


Figure 16.9: Kyverno policy engine selection in `cm-kubernetes-setup`

The user needs to be given permission to access to the Jupyter Kernel Operator. This can be done via the `cm-kubernetes-setup` TUI, by adding a user, and then setting the permissions in the permissions screen that shows up (figure 16.10):



Figure 16.10: User permissions in `cm-kubernetes-setup`

The permissions can also be configured using the CLI:

```
# cm-kubernetes-setup --add-user=alice --operators=cm-jupyter-kernel-operator
```

Once Jupyter kernel Operator is available, then kernel templates appear in the list:



Figure 16.11: Jupyter Kernel Operator templates

A kernel can be created from the template:

New kernel X

Kernel name:

Display name of the kernel:

Environment module to load:

Image to run:  
 X | ▾

Image pull policy:  
 X | ▾

Namespace for kernel:

PVC to mount:

Mountpoint to PVC:

Name of the secrets to pull images:

Number of GPUs container can use:

Cancel Create

Figure 16.12: Creating kernel from template

If authentication is required to access container images from the private registry, then the template can be modified as described in section 6.3.8 of the *Containerization Manual*.

### 16.5.6 Running Jupyter Kernels With Workload Managers

BCM's Jupyter Kernel Provisioning kernels can be created and run by users on compute nodes via workload managers (WLMs). For convenience, Slurm is used as an example in this section. However, the same instructions are valid for the other WLMs listed in table 16.1.

The templates used to create Slurm kernels are BCM's

- `slurm-bash` and
- `slurm-py312`,

which offer a Bash and a Python 3.12 environment respectively.

The administrator has to make sure that Slurm is correctly configured on the cluster. Slurm installation is described in section 7.3.

The default configuration that `cm-wlm-setup` suggests in Express mode is usually sufficient to run Slurm kernels created from BCM's templates. If Slurm is configured to automatically detect GPUs, they will be listed as available resources while instantiating Slurm templates.

The Jupyter login node must be authorized to submit Slurm jobs. This is typically the case, since the JupyterHub login node is by default the head node, and `cm-wlm-setup` by default assigns the `slurmsubmit` role to the head node.

Finally, the administrator must make sure that relevant dependency packages are installed on the software image used by Slurm clients. The image used is typically for the compute nodes. Missing packages may cause kernels to fail at startup or at run time.

In particular, administrators need to install `cm-python312` to use kernels based on the `slurm-py312` template.

## 16.6 Jupyter Kernel Creator Extension Customization

The Jupyter kernel templates described in section 16.5 are stored under the directory `/cm/shared/apps/jupyter/current/share/jupyter/kerneltemplates/`.

The template of a particular Jupyter kernel in BCM's Jupyter Kernel Creator extension is a directory containing at least two files: `meta.yaml` and `kernel.json.j2`. The kernel template can also contain other files placed in the same directory, such as icons. These files are copied to the target user kernels directory upon kernel creation, after the template is instantiated.

The `meta.yaml` file includes all the parameters that can be substituted into `kernel.json.j2` and is defined with the YAML format (<https://yaml.org/>).

The `kernel.json.j2` file is a skeleton of the `kernel.json` file to be generated. It can contain some placeholders, and is defined with the Jinja2 format (<https://jinja.palletsprojects.com/>).

### 16.6.1 Kernel Template Parameters Definition

The kernel template `meta.yaml` file defines all the parameters that can be used in `kernel.json.j2`.

It should contain three entries:

- `display_name`: the name that will be displayed for the kernel in the JupyterLab Launcher;
- `features`: a list of features that must be available on the cluster to show this kernel template to JupyterLab users in the BCM extensions panel;
- `parameters`: the variables for `kernel.json.j2`.

The `display_name` entry is an arbitrary string:

```
[...]
display_name: "A simple kernel"
[...]
```

The `features` entry is a string that defines the condition under which the template becomes available in the user interface. The `features` definitions are found within `filter.yaml`, which is in the same directory as the kernel templates (section 16.5.1)

For example, a kernel template that only requires Kubernetes to work contains this line in its `meta.yaml` file:

```
[...]
features: features: "k8s-jupyter-operator-enabled and k8s-nvidia-gpu-available"
[...]

and filter.yaml must have definitions of both conditions:

features:
[...]
  k8s-jupyter-operator-enabled:
    getter: shell
    timeout: 5
    exec:
      - "source /etc/profile.d/modules.sh"
      - "module load kubernetes"
      - "kubectl get cmjupyterkernels"
[...]
  k8s-nvidia-gpu-available:
    getter: shell
    timeout: 5
    exec:
      - "source /etc/profile.d/modules.sh"
      - "module load kubernetes"
      - "kubectl get nodes -o \\"
      - "jsonpath=\\"{.items[*].status.capacity['nvidia\\.com/gpu']}\\\" \\""
      - "| egrep -q '.'"
[...]
```

The preceding means that a user can list `cmjupyterkernels` objects in Kubernetes, and that nodes must have `nvidia.com/gpu` records available in their manifest

The scripts (the `exec` entries) in the preceding filters use typical values. For example, default values for the Kubernetes environment module. These lines can be edited to be consistent with the actual situation on the cluster.

The same principle and customizations should be considered for the other workload managers.

Finally, the `parameters` entry contains a dictionary of kernel parameters. The keys of the dictionary are parameter names that are used in `kernel.json.j2`. The values of the dictionary are options that help users choose a correct value for the parameter. Parameter options are also dictionaries.

A kernel template `meta.yaml` is thus structured as:

```
[...]
parameters:
<parameter_name1>:
  <option_key>: <option_value>
  ...
  <option_key>: <option_value>
<parameter_name2>:
  <option_key>: <option_value>
  ...
  <option_key>: <option_value>
...
<parameter_nameN>:
  <option_key>: <option_value>
  ...
  <option_key>: <option_value>
[...]
```

Parameter names are arbitrary strings.

Option keys are strings. The only possible values for these strings are:

- type
- definition
- limits

The option keys `type` and `definition` are mandatory. The option key `limits` is optional.

For example, a kernel template with two parameters `foo` and `bar` looks as follows:

### Example

```
[...]
parameters:
  foo:
    type: <option_value>
    definition: <option_value>
    limits: <option_value>
  bar:
    type: <option_value>
    definition: <option_value>
    limits: <option_value>
[...]
```

### The type Option

The type option key defines the type of the kernel parameter.

The type option key only accepts one of the following string values:

- `num`: for numeric values (both float and integer are supported);
- `str`: for arbitrary strings;
- `bool`: for boolean values (a checkbox is presented in the user interface);
- `oneof`: for picker to choose one value out of several provided;
- `list`: for lists of pre-defined or dynamically-generated settings;
- `uri`: for interactive RESTful endpoints (only `/kernelcreator/envmodules` is currently supported).

### The definition Option

The definition option key defines how the parameter value is retrieved and displayed.

The definition option key accepts dictionary-like values. Allowed string keys for the dictionary are:

- `display_name`: the name that is displayed for the parameter in the kernel customization dialog. It accepts an arbitrary string as a value;
- `getter`: how parameter values are retrieved. It only accepts as value one of the following strings:
  - `static`: the values for the parameter are pre-defined;
  - `shell`: the values for the parameter are the output of the shell script;
  - `python`: the values for the parameter are the output of a Python script;
- `values`: possible values for the parameter that are displayed in the kernel customization dialog. It accepts a list of arbitrary values;
- `default`: default value for the parameter. It accepts a value from `values`;
- `exec`: the script to be executed to fill `values` when `getter` is `shell` or `python`. It accepts a shell/Python script.

If `type` option value is `list`, then every line of `getter` with a setting of `shell` or `python` is treated as an element of the list.

### The `limits` Option

The `limits` option key offers a way to apply bounds on values provided by users. This usually reduces the chances of making mistakes and helps users defining correct kernels before actually running them.

The `limits` option key accepts dictionary-like values according to the value chosen for the `type` option key.

If `num` is the type, then `limits` can contain:

- `min`: the minimum numeric value;
- `max`: the maximum numeric value.

If `str` or `list` is the type, then `limits` can contain:

- `min_len`: the minimum length of the string or the list;
- `max_len`: the maximum length of the string or the list.

For example, if every node in the cluster has no more than 4 GPUs, then the upper limit on the requested GPU number can be set to 4:

```
[...]  
parameters:  
  gpus:  
    type: num  
    definition: <option_value>  
    limits:  
      min: 1  
      max: 4  
[...]
```

These limits are not a security measure. They should be considered as convenient sanity checks for values entered while instantiating a kernel template. This is because users are always able to later directly edit the generated `kernel.json`, thereby ignoring such limits.

### 16.6.2 Kernel Template Parameters Usage

During the creation of the kernel definition from the template, the `kernel.json` file is created from `kernel.json.j2`, so all the Jinja2 variables are substituted based on the `meta.yaml` file and choices provided by the user. When a kernel startup is initiated, Jupyter Kernel Provisioning uses `kernel.json` and some internal variables to create WLM jobs or Kubernetes manifests from templates defined in the `kernel.json` file.

Variables are available from a `vars` dictionary on kernel startup. These variables are defined within a subsection of `metadata.kernel_provisioner`. The subsection is `config.<subsection>.vars`, where `<subsection>` depends on the chosen kernel provisioner.

Other dictionaries are `internal` and `env`.

The `internal` dictionary contains several variables defined at runtime:

- `uuid`: Unique ID for every running kernel process. Does not persist across kernel restarts.
- `kernel_id`: ID of the kernel. Persists across restarts.
- `kernel_spec_resource_dir`: Full path to the kernel spec definition, normally: `~/.local/share/jupyter/kernel-name`.
- `username`: PAM username of the user starting the kernel.
- `uid`: PAM user's UID.
- `gid`: PAM user's GID.

- `homedir`: User's home directory from the PAM database.
- `shell`: User's shell from the PAM database.
- `kernel_cmd`: Command to run. For most kernels it is set to an empty string, as the actual command is defined separately in WLM job or Kubernetes manifest templates.

The `env` variables pass some environment variables matching a regex in order to pass some variables to be used in accessing API endpoints. Users thus do not need to hardcode API keys for notebooks.

### 16.6.3 Filtering Out Irrelevant Templates From The Interface For Users

The list of kernel templates that are available for users of the Jupyter Kernel Creator can be modified as follows:

In the parent directory of the templates, the file `filter.yaml` describes items called `features`. These can be statically defined or they can represent scripts to be executed. The result of an executed script can be `true` or `false`. If the script code exits with zero, then the result is `true`.

Every kernel template can have the `feature` field, which is a boolean expression that is calculated when the JupyterLab extension is started.

#### Example

```
# cat filter.yaml
...
slurm:
  getter: shell
  timeout: 5
  exec:
    - "source /etc/profile.d/modules.sh"
    - "module load slurm"
    - "sinfo"
...
# cat slurm-py312/meta.yaml
...
features: "slurm"
...
```

In the preceding example, the `slurm-py312` template is shown in the JupyterLab interface if the script in the `exec:` section is able to finish successfully.

It is also possible to define more complicated rules:

#### Example

```
# cat filter.yaml
features:
  kubernetes:
    getter: shell
    timeout: 5
    exec:
      - "source /etc/profile.d/modules.sh"
      - "module load kubernetes"
      - "kubectl get pods"
  k8s-jupyter-operator-installed:
    getter: shell
    timeout: 5
    exec:
```

```

- "source /etc/profile.d/modules.sh"
- "module load kubernetes"
- "(kubectl get cmjupyterkernels 2>&1 || true) \\\"
- "| egrep -q '^Error from server \\\(Forbidden\\)'"
k8s-jupyter-operator-enabled:
  getter: shell
  timeout: 5
  exec:
    - "source /etc/profile.d/modules.sh"
    - "module load kubernetes"
    - "kubectl get cmjupyterkernels"
...
# cat jupyter-eg-kernel-k8s-py/meta.yaml
---
display_name: "Python on Kubernetes"
features: "kubernetes and not k8s-jupyter-operator-installed and not k8s-jupyter-operator-enabled"
...

```

In the preceding example, `jupyter-eg-kernel-k8s-py` is shown when Kubernetes is installed, and is hidden if Jupyter Kubernetes Operator is available for the user.

The `filter.yaml` file also supports statically defined features:

### Example

```

features:
  always-enabled:
    getter: static
    default: True
  always-disabled:
    getter: static
    default: False
...

```

and supports Python code:

### Example

```

python3-available:
  getter: python
  timeout: 5
  exec:
    - "import sys"
    - "sys.exit(0) if sys.version_info.major == 3 else sys.exit(1)"
...

```

The Kubernetes Jupyter Kernel Operator is discussed in section 6.3 of the *Containerization Manual*.

## 16.7 Jupyter VNC Extension

### 16.7.1 What Is Jupyter VNC Extension About?

VNC (Virtual Network Computing) is a screen sharing service that can work in a browser.

If VNC is allowed by the cluster administrator, then the Jupyter environment configured by BCM can be used to start and control remote desktops via VNC with the *Jupyter VNC extension*.

Several kernels created from BCM's templates are capable of running VNC sessions so that users can run GUI applications. In order to do so, the cluster nodes where kernels are executed must support VNC.

During the `cm-jupyter-setup` run, the TUI prompts for installation of VNC servers on the nodes. The cluster administrator can select the nodes on which it installs. On these nodes Jupyter kernels can work with several types of VNC clients.

### 16.7.2 Enabling User Lingering

User lingering is a systemd setting that sets a user manager for a user at boot and keeps it around after logout. This allows that user to run long-running sessions despite not being logged in. Enabling user lingering may be required for Jupyter VNC extension to run for a relatively complicated desktop such as KDE or GNOME.

For each user on each machine where these environments are installed, the following command must be run:

```
logindctl enable-linger <username>
```

The command may also be carried out using prolog/epilog scripts in the chosen WLM.

### 16.7.3 Starting A VNC Session With The Jupyter VNC Extension

Users can start a VNC session with the button added by Jupyter VNC (figure 16.13). Additional VNC parameters can be optionally specified.

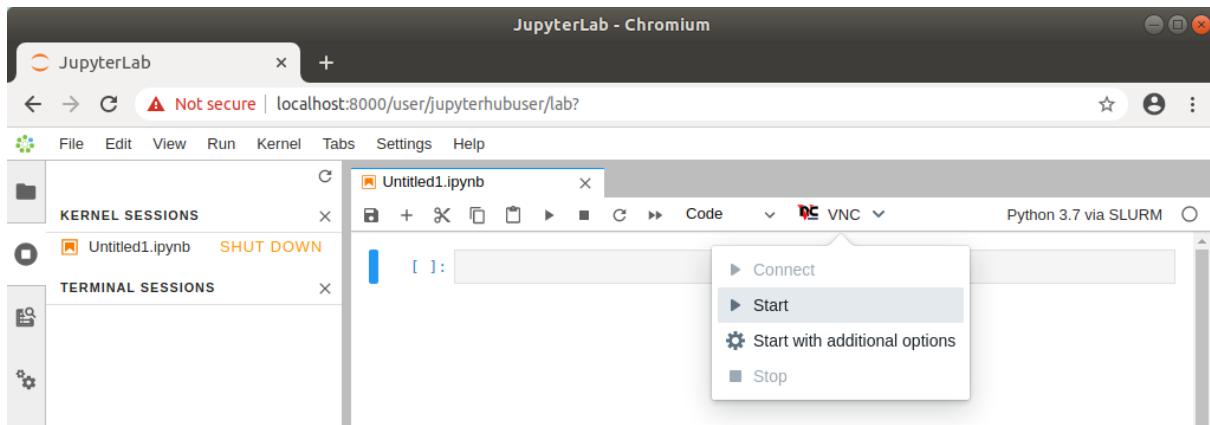


Figure 16.13: Starting Jupyter VNC session from kernel

If VNC is available and correctly configured on the node where the kernel is running, then a new tab is automatically created by Jupyter VNC containing the new session (figure 16.14). A user can now freely interact in JupyterLab both with the notebook and with the desktop environment.

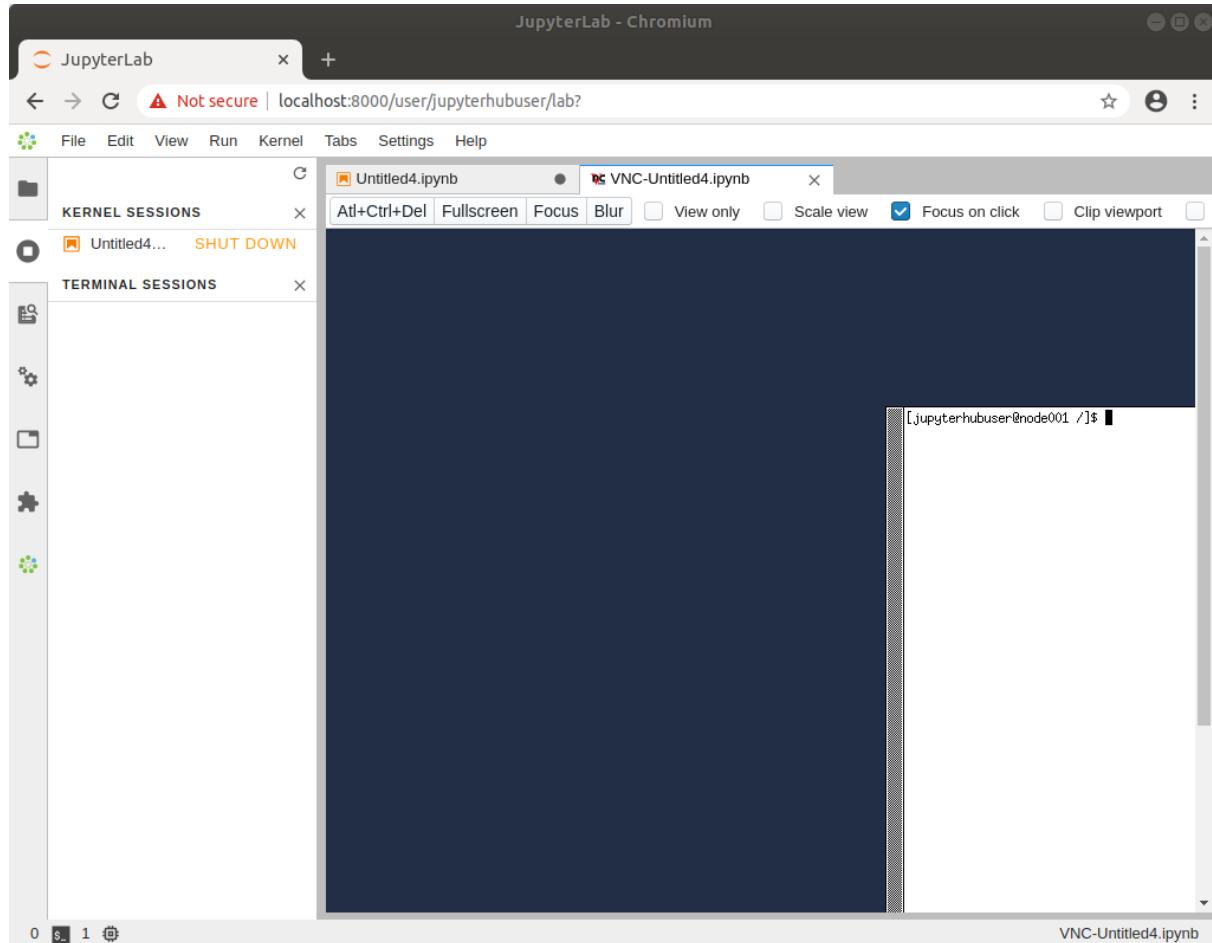


Figure 16.14: Running Jupyter VNC session from kernel

To provide a user-friendly experience, Jupyter VNC also allows the graphical viewport to be resized, so that the desktop application can run full-screen (figure 16.15).

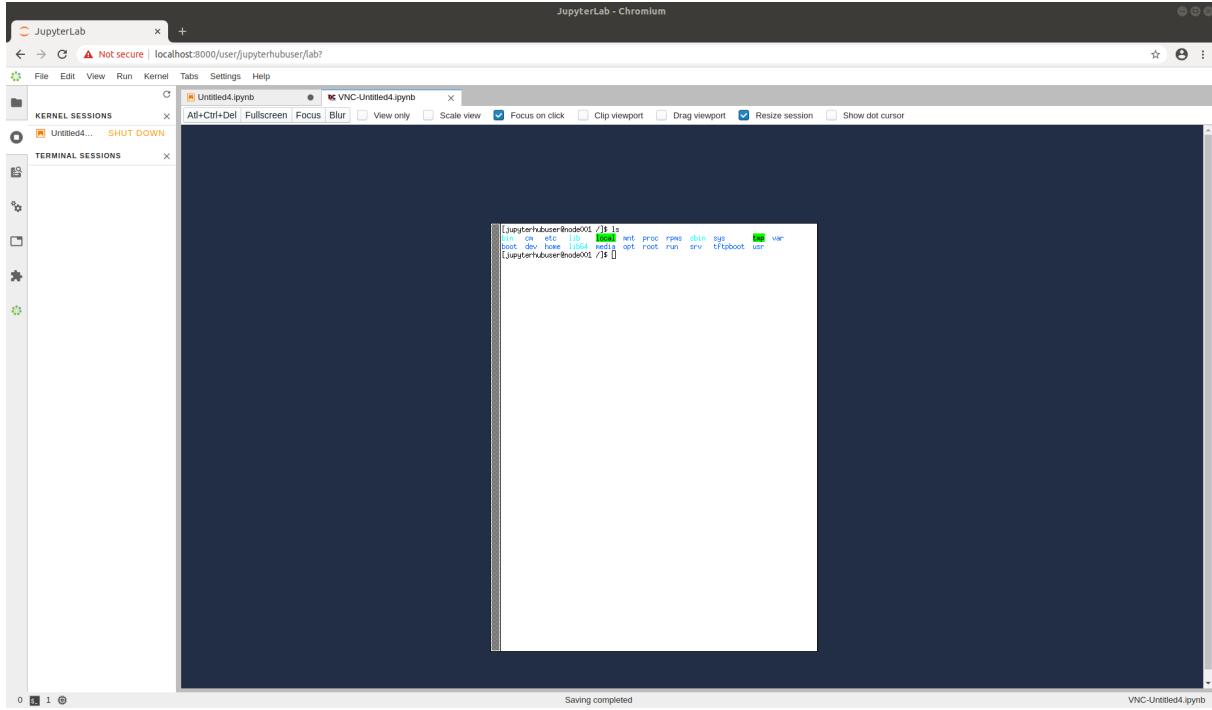


Figure 16.15: Running Jupyter VNC session from kernel (full-screen)

#### 16.7.4 Running Examples And Applications In The VNC Session With The Jupyter VNC Extension

Once the VNC session is correctly started and the new JupyterLab tab has been created, Jupyter VNC automatically exports the DISPLAY environment variable to the running notebook (figure 16.16). Doing so means that any application or library running in the notebook can make use of the freshly created desktop environment. An example of such a library is OpenAI Gym, a toolkit for developing and comparing reinforcement learning algorithms, that is distributed by BCM.

Among the examples distributed by BCM (section 16.3), a notebook running PyTorch in the OpenAI Gym CartPole environment can be found. If executed after a VNC session has been started, a user can then observe the model being trained in real time in the graphical environment.

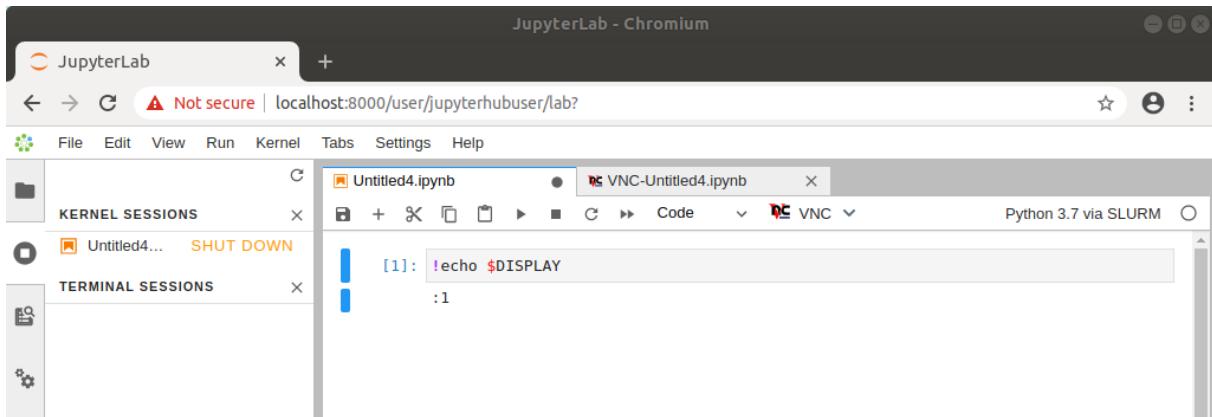


Figure 16.16: Automatic configuration of DISPLAY environment variable

## 16.8 Jupyter WLM Magic Extension

In the Jupyter environment configured by BCM, the *Jupyter WLM Magic* extension can be used to schedule workload manager jobs from notebooks.

The Jupyter WLM Magic extension is an IPython extension. It is designed to improve the capabilities of Jupyter's default Python 3 kernel, which runs on the login node.

The Jupyter WLM Magic extension should therefore not be used from kernels running on compute nodes, such as those typically created with BCM's Jupyter Kernel Creator extension (section 16.5), and submitted via Jupyter Kernel Provisioning. Indeed, compute nodes running these kernels are often incapable of starting workload manager jobs in many default WLM configurations.

Jupyter WLM Magic extension makes it possible for users to programmatically submit WLM jobs, and then interact with their results. This can be done while using the Python programming language and its libraries, which are available in the notebook.

Users submit jobs and check their progress from the login node. The actual computation is distributed by the underlying workload manager across compute nodes, which means that server resources are spared.

Jupyter WLM Magic commands are available in the IPython kernel as *magic functions* (<https://ipython.readthedocs.io/en/stable/interactive/tutorial.html#magic-functions>). A new line magic (%) and a new cell magic (%%) are now added in the kernel, according to the workload manager:

- Platform LSF: %lsf\_job and %%lsf\_job
- PBS Professional: %pbspro\_job and %%pbspro\_job
- Slurm: %slurm\_job and %%slurm\_job

A user can list the magic functions in the kernel to see if they are available, with Jupyter's builtin command %lsmagic (<https://ipython.readthedocs.io/en/stable/interactive/magics.html#magic-lsmagic>):

### Example

```
In []: %lsmagic
Out []: root:
        line:
            automagic:"AutoMagics"
            autocall:"AutoMagics"
            [...]
            slurm_job:"SLURMMagic"
            pbspro_job:"PBSPromagic"
            lsf_job:"LSFMagic"
        cell:
            js:"DisplayMagics"
            javascript:"DisplayMagics"
            [...]
            slurm_job:"SLURMMagic"
            pbspro_job:"PBSPromagic"
            lsf_job:"LSFMagic"
```

The magic functions introduced by this BCM extension share a similar syntax. For convenience, Slurm is used as an example in this section. However, the same instructions are valid for the other WLMs.

Users can check which options are available for a WLM function with the line magic helper:

### Example

```
In []: %slurm_job --help
Out []: usage: %slurm_job [-h] [--module MODULE] [--module-load-cmd MODULE_LOAD_CMD]
          [--shell SHELL] [--submit-command SUBMIT_COMMAND]
          [--cancel-command CANCEL_COMMAND]
          [--control-command CONTROL_COMMAND]
          [--stdout-file STDOUT_FILE] [--stderr-file STDERR_FILE]
          [--preamble PREAMBLE] [--timeout TIMEOUT]
          [--check-condition-var CHECK_CONDITION_VAR]
          [--job-id-var JOB_ID_VAR]
          [--stdout-file-var STDOUT_FILE_VAR]
          [--stderr-file-var STDERR_FILE_VAR] [--dont-wait]
          [--write-updates WRITE_UPDATES]
          [--check-status-every CHECK_STATUS_EVERY]

optional arguments:
  -h, --help            show this help message and exit
  [...]
```

Line magic functions are typically used to set options with a global scope in the notebook. By doing so, a user will not need to specify the same option every time a job will be submitted via cell magic. For example, if two Slurm instances are deployed on the cluster and their associated environment modules are `slurm-primary` and `slurm-secondary`, a user could run the following line magic once to configure the Jupyter WLM Magic extension to always use the second deployment:

### Example

```
In []: %slurm_job --module slurm-secondary
Out []:
```

Now, jobs will always be submitted to `slurm-secondary`. This is more convenient than repeatedly defining the same module option for every cell magic upon scheduling a job:

### Example

```
In []: %%slurm_job --module slurm-secondary
        <WLM JOB DEFINITION>
Out []: <WLM JOB OUTPUT>
In []: %%slurm_job --module slurm-secondary
        <WLM JOB DEFINITION>
Out []: <WLM JOB OUTPUT>
```

It should be noted that line magic functions cannot be used to submit WLM jobs. Cell magic functions have to be used instead.

A well-defined cell contains the WLM cell magic function provided by the extension, followed by the traditional job definition. For example, a simple MPI job running on two nodes can be submitted to Slurm by defining and running this cell:

### Example

```
In []: %%slurm_job
        #SBATCH -J mpi-job-example
        #SBATCH -N 2
        module load openmpi
        mpirun hostname
Out []: COMPLETED
        STDOUT file content: /home/demo/.jupyter/wlm_magic/slurm-1.out
```

```
node001
node001
node002
node002
```

Users can take advantage of the Jupyter WLM Magic extension to store some information into Python variables about the job being submitted. The information could be the ID or the output file name, for example. Users can then later programmatically interact with them in Python. This feature is convenient when a user wants to, for example, programmatically carry out new actions depending on the job output:

### Example

```
In []: %%slurm_job --job-id-var my_job_id --stdout-file-var my_job_out
        #SBATCH -J mpi-job-example
        #SBATCH -N 2
        module load openmpi
        mpirun hostname
Out []: COMPLETED
        STDOUT file content: /home/demo/.jupyter/wlm_magic/slurm-2.out
        node001
        node001
        node002
        node002

In []: print(f"Job id {my_job_id} was written to {my_job_out}")
        print(f"Output lines: {open(my_job_out).readlines()}")
Out []: Job id 2 was written to /home/demo/.jupyter/wlm_magic/slurm-2.out
        Output lines: ['node001\n', 'node001\n', 'node002\n', 'node002\n']
```

Users can also exploit Python variables to define the behavior of the Jupyter WLM Magic extension. For example, they can define a Python boolean variable to submit a WLM job only if a condition is true:

### Example

```
In []: run_job = 1 == 2
Out []:

In []: %%slurm_job --check-condition-var run_job
        #SBATCH -J mpi-job-example
        #SBATCH -N 2
        module load openmpi
        mpirun hostname
Out []: Variable run_job is 'False'. Skipping submit.
```

## 16.9 Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager

The Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager tool is designed to make it easier to handle everyday tasks involving Kubernetes.

Some of the items that the tool can manage are:

- Pods
- PostgreSQL databases
- Spark tasks (jobs that process a lot of data)

- Persistent Volume Claims (requests for specific storage space). Particularly handy is the ability to move data between user folders and Persistent Volumes (special types of storage space in Kubernetes).

Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager can be accessed as follows in the Jupyter Notebooks web interface (figure 16.17):

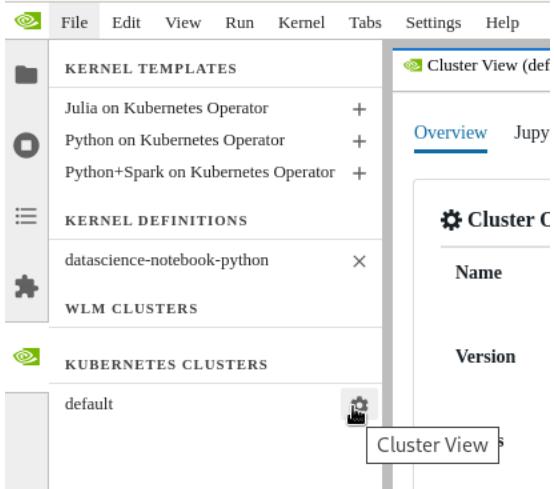


Figure 16.17: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: Kubernetes cluster list and selection

1. The NVIDIA Base Command Manager logo (on the left side of the screen, ) is clicked. A list of Kubernetes clusters is then displayed.
2. The Cluster View button is used to select the cluster that is to be worked with.

Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager displays resources and objects via a tabbed view. This view is for the restricted namespace to which the user has access. With Kubernetes as set up by BCM, this is the namespace of the form `<user>-restricted`.

### 16.9.1 Overview Tab

The Overview tab (figure 16.18) provides a high-level overview of the current state of the selected Kubernetes cluster.

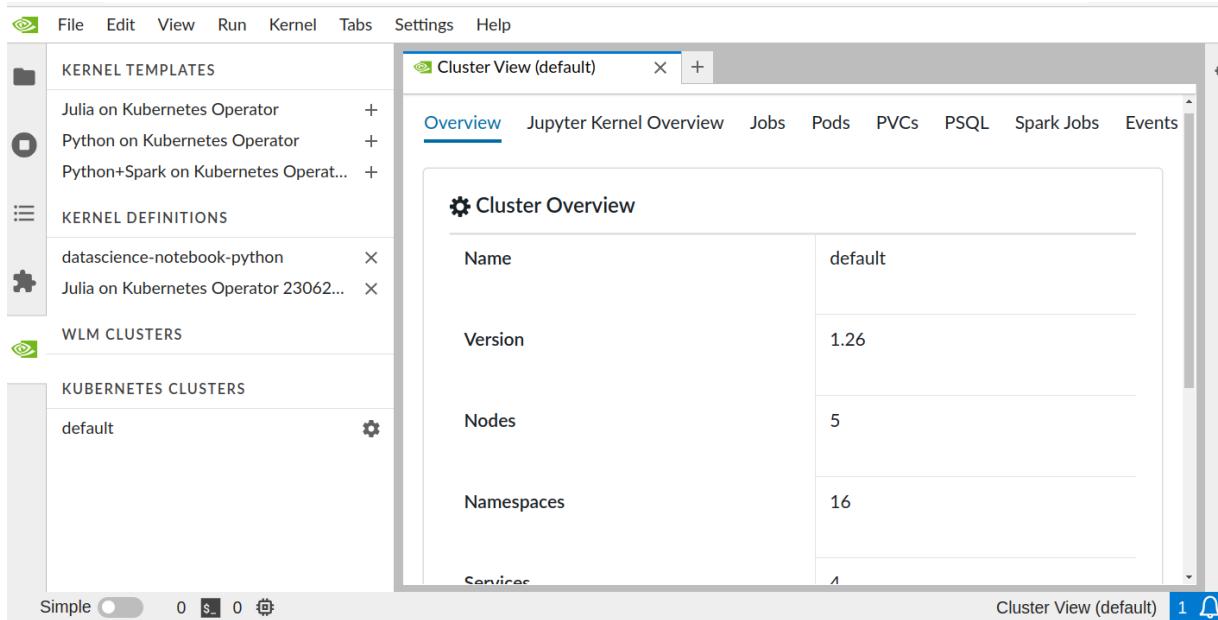


Figure 16.18: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: overview

Among other useful details, it displays:

- the cluster name
- the Kubernetes version that is running
- the number of namespaces and pods

### 16.9.2 Jupyter Kernel Overview Tab

The Jupyter Kernel Overview tab (figure 16.19) lists active Jupyter kernel instances along with their associated events.

S/N	Kernel
1	cmjk-a198a3d3-0be7-4e5d-bfc8-f094866...
2	cmjk-e8ec7c67-2c96-4bf2-ac9a-56700b...

creation_timestamp	message	reason	source_component
There are no events			

Figure 16.19: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: Jupyter kernel overview tab

After a kernel is stopped or removed, these events can be found under the Events tab. Events are discussed later on.

### 16.9.3 Jobs Tab

The Jobs tab (figure 16.20) allows a data migration job to be run. A data migration job manages the transfer of data between the user-accessible directories of the filesystem and the Persistent Volumes. The transfer can be managed in either direction.

The data transfer is needed to enable access to the data for Spark instances, and for situations where pods need to be run under a different user ID/group ID (UID/GID) from the original user.

name	age	running	completion	succeeded	failed
job1	30m	0		1	0

Instance Events				<span style="font-size: small;">Hide</span>
creation_timestamp	message	reason	source_component	
2023-07-04T13:12:18+00:00	Created pod: job1-nccbv	SuccessfulCreate	job-controller	
2023-07-04T13:12:52+00:00	Job completed	Completed	job-controller	

Figure 16.20: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: Jupyter data migration jobs tab

To initiate a data migration job, several fields must be set. This can be done via a pop-up dialog, that comes up on clicking either of these buttons:

- `New job from Config`: allows a YAML file configuration to be submitted
- `New Job`: allows direct configuration (figure 16.21)

The dialog box is titled "Create new job instance". It contains the following fields:

- Job name (required)**: An input field.
- Direction**: A dropdown menu set to "from-k8s".
- Path (data source) (required)**: An input field.
- PVC**: A dropdown menu showing an option.
- Force Delete**: A checkbox.

At the bottom are two buttons: "Cancel" and "Create".

Figure 16.21: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: data migration jobs creation

Fields that may be set include:

- **Job name**: specifies the name of the migration job.
- **Direction**: sets the direction of the data migration.
  - **to-k8s**: copies data to the Persistent Volume Claim (PVC) from the file system
  - **from-k8s**: copies data from the PVC back to the file system
- **Path**: provides the path on the filesystem to/from where the data is migrated
- **PVC**: sets the name of the Persistent Volume Claim that is involved in the data migration.

Optionally, the Force Delete checkbox can be ticked. If ticked, then the migration job deletes data from the target location if the corresponding file or directory does not exist in the source location.

In particular, if the source location is completely empty, then setting Force Delete results in the removal of all target data. Setting Force Delete should therefore be done with caution due to the significant data loss that it can cause.

The execution status of a job can be monitored in the status and events area. This section displays the number of worker pods and their respective statuses, which include:

- **Running**: the number of pods currently in operation.
- **Completion**: the desired number of pods that should successfully complete the job. Not applicable for migration jobs, but it can be used if a custom manifest is specified, as described later.
- **Succeeded**: The number of pods that have successfully completed their tasks.
- **Failed**: The number of pods that have failed to complete their tasks.

Additionally, a custom job manifest can be uploaded from the user's workstation if required.

#### 16.9.4 Pods Tab

The Pods tab (figure 16.22) displays user pods, reads stdout, and shows associated events from pods.

The screenshot shows the Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager interface. The top navigation bar includes links for Overview, Jupyter Kernel Overview, Jobs, Pods (which is the active tab), PVCs, PSQL, Spark Jobs, and Events. On the left, a sidebar lists several pod names. The 'ngc-pytorch-mnist' pod is highlighted with a blue background. The main content area displays detailed information for the selected pod, including its name ('ngc-pytorch-mnist'), status ('Completed'), and creation time ('7d5h'). Below this is a 'container' log window showing training epochs from 14 to 14, with loss values decreasing from 0.01515 to 0.000389. At the bottom, there is a section for 'Instance Events'.

Figure 16.22: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: pods overview tab

The tab also allows pod creation from a custom definition manifest uploaded from the user's workstation, or by filling out a simplified form with commonly used fields:

1. **Name:** name of the Pod.
2. **Command:** program and its arguments that are to run inside the Pod.
3. **Image:** container image.
4. **Host Path (Optional):** path to mount from the filesystem. If used, the UID/GID of the running process matches the UID/GID of the user.
5. **Environment Variables (Optional):** These variables are set for the process inside the running Pod.
6. **PVCs (Optional):** A list of Persistent Volume Claims and the path to mount them inside the Pod.

In figure 16.23 `main.py` has been downloaded earlier from the official PyTorch repository and placed in the user's home directory using `wget`:

```
wget https://raw.githubusercontent.com/pytorch/examples/main/mnist/main.py
```

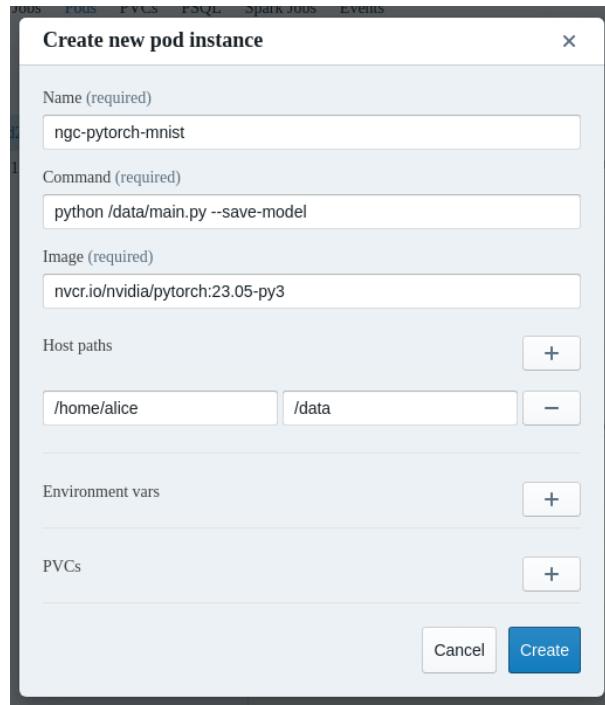


Figure 16.23: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: pod creation

### 16.9.5 PVCs Tab

A Persistent Volume Claim (PVC) is a user's request for a specific amount of storage space within a Kubernetes cluster with defined characteristics.

The PVCs tab (figure 16.24) displays an overview of the PVCs.

The screenshot shows the PVCs tab in the Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager interface. At the top, there are tabs for Overview, Jupyter Kernel Overview, Jobs, Pods, PVCs (which is selected), PSQL, Spark Jobs, and Events. Below the tabs, there are two buttons: "New PVC from Config" and "+ New PVC".

PVCs								
		Instance name: pgdata-iexc-accounting-0						
		storage_class	volume_mode	name	size_gb	access_mode	age	status
pgdata-iexc-accounting-0		local-path	Filesystem	pgdata-iexc-accounting-0		ReadWriteOnce	3m10s	Bound

Below the table, there is a section titled "Instance Events" with a "Hide" button. It lists three events:

creation_timestamp	message	reason	source_component
2023-06-27T10:27:24+00:00	External provisioner is provisioning volume for claim "alice-restricted/pgdata-iexc-accounting-0"	Provisioning	rancher.io/local-path_local-path-provisions-7f8667b75c-5qvvx_c9ae02eb-5702-41f7-8278-6944128410d1
2023-06-27T10:27:24+00:00	waiting for a volume to be created, either by external provisioner "rancher.io/local-path" or manually created by system administrator	ExternalProvisioning	persistentvolume-controller
2023-06-27T10:27:34+00:00	Successfully provisioned volume pvc-a2b76c95-a915-4625-a6e9-5e2de5d46c65	ProvisioningSucceeded	rancher.io/local-path_local-path-provisions-7f8667b75c-5qvvx_c9ae02eb-5702-41f7-8278-6944128410d1

At the bottom right, there is a "Cluster View (default)" button.

Figure 16.24: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: PVCs overview tab

The tab allows users to manage existing PVCs or create new ones via a dialog.

To create a new PVC, several fields must be set. This can be done via a pop-up dialog, that comes up on clicking either of these buttons:

- the `New PVC from Config` button: This allows a YAML file configuration to be submitted to set the fields.
- the `New PVC` button: This allows the configuration to be set directly (figure 16.25).

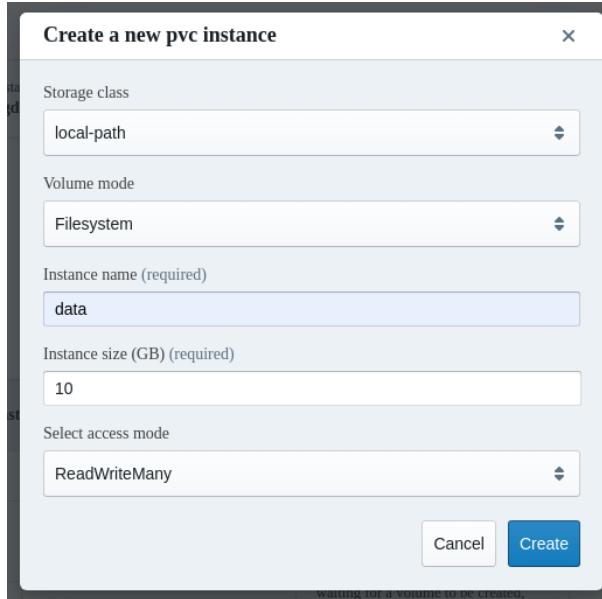


Figure 16.25: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: PVC creation

To create a new PVC directly, the following fields need to be set in the form:

1. **Storage class:** The storage class is `local-path` for now in BCM version 11.
2. **Volume mode:** can be either
  - `Filesystem`, where the requested space is accessible as a formatted filesystem, or
  - `Block`, where the space is accessible as a raw block device.
 For the `local-path` storage class, only `Filesystem` is available.
3. **Instance name:** arbitrary name of the PVC.
4. **Instance size (GB):** requested size. It can be ignored for `local-path`, as quotas are not supported for shared filesystems. The resulting volumes for a cluster `<cluster_name>` are located under `/cm/shared/apps/kubernetes/<cluster_name>/var/volumes` and are configurable during cluster setup.
5. **Select access mode:**
  - **ReadWriteOnce:** The volume can be mounted as read-write by a single node. Multiple pods can still access the volume if they are running on the same node.
  - **ReadOnlyMany:** The volume can be mounted as read-only by many nodes.
  - **ReadWriteMany:** The volume can be mounted as read-write by many nodes.

### 16.9.6 PSQL Tab

The PSQL tab (figure 16.26) provides a simplified interface for interacting with the Zalando PostgreSQL Operator. It offers an overview of instances running on the cluster, it displays associated events, and provides credentials and access points for running PSQL databases. This information can be used later in Jupyter Notebooks or other PSQL clients.

The screenshot shows the Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager interface with the PSQL tab selected. The top navigation bar includes links for Overview, Jupyter Kernel Overview, Jobs, Pods, PVCs, PSQL (selected), Spark Jobs, and Events. Below the navigation is a header with 'Psql instances' and two buttons: 'New PSQL instance from Config' and '+ New instance'. A sidebar on the left lists namespaces: iexc-accounting and nbnf-sales-db (selected). The main content area displays the 'nbnf-sales-db' instance details. It includes sections for 'Access point' and 'Credentials'. The 'Access point' table shows four entries: name (ip), nbnf-sales-db (10.150.178.158), nbnf-sales-db-config (None), and nbnf-sales-db-repl (10.150.124.253). The 'Credentials' table shows four entries: username (postgres), password (WZQxVeMQuXPnG7yryqtKkj...), sales (vkJmCH6ElZXy7KsBCPqRuyKUheESlYoWEcsCU2Gvt13CcGNuoSMtATzBAOO4hd4L), and standby (GrSN888EA0Ziqse2MzXukstMAb12kzKugoROPIMVIDntmw7KtV90OtDCW9bnQCHY). A 'Show Details' button is located next to the credentials table. At the bottom, there is a section for 'Instance Events' with a 'Show' button. The bottom right corner shows 'Cluster View (default)' and a refresh icon.

Figure 16.26: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: PSQL overview

The tab allows users to manage existing PostgreSQL databases or to create new ones via a dialog.

An example notebook is located at `/cm/shared/examples/jupyter/notebooks/sql-example.ipynb` (figure 16.27).

```

[1]: !pip3 install psycopg2-binary
WARNING: The directory '/home/jovyan/.cache/pip' or its parent directory is not owned or is not writable by the current user. The cache has been disabled. Check the permissions and owner of that directory. If executing pip with sudo, you should use sudo's -H flag.
Defaulting to user installation because normal site-packages is not writeable
Requirement already satisfied: psycopg2-binary in ./local/lib/python3.11/site-packages (2.9.6)

[2]: import psycopg2
db_name = "sales"
db_host = "10.150.178.158"
db_user = "sales"
db_password = "vkJmCH6ElZxy7KsBCPqRuyKUheE51YowEcscU2Gvt13CcGNuoSMtATzBA004hd4L"
conn = psycopg2.connect(database=db_name, host=db_host, user=db_user, password=db_password)

[3]: #Creating a cursor object using the cursor() method
cursor = conn.cursor()

#Dropping EMPLOYEE table if already exists.
cursor.execute("DROP TABLE IF EXISTS EMPLOYEE")

#Creating table as per requirement
sql ='''CREATE TABLE EMPLOYEE(
    FIRST_NAME CHAR(20) NOT NULL,
    LAST_NAME CHAR(20),
    AGE INT,
    SEX CHAR(1),
    INCOME FLOAT
)'''
cursor.execute(sql)
print("Table created successfully.....")
conn.commit()

Table created successfully.....

```

Figure 16.27: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: PSQL notebook

There are two buttons in figure 16.26:

- New PSQL instance from Config: allows a YAML file configuration that sets the fields to be submitted
- New instance: allows the fields to be set directly (figure 16.28)

Clicking either button displays a pop-up dialog for creating a new PostgreSQL instance. For example, the New instance button displays the creation form in figure 16.28.

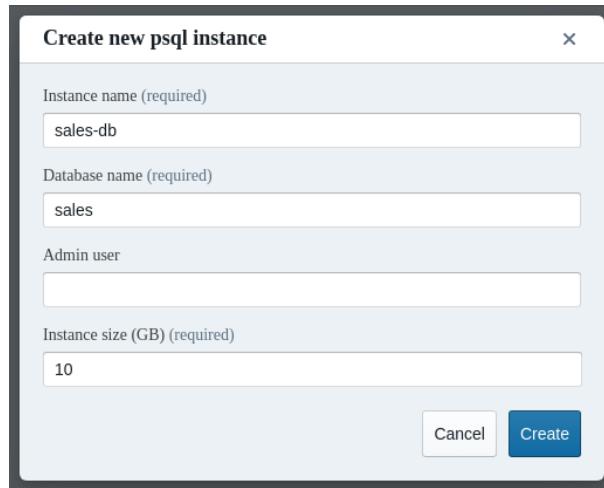


Figure 16.28: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: PSQL instance creation

The creation form accepts the following values:

1. **Instance name:** PSQL instance name. An auto-generated team name is prefixed to this name
2. **Database name:** arbitrary database name

3. **Admin user** (Optional): if not set, the name of the admin user is set to the database name
4. **Instance size (GB)**: data storage size requirement for the volumes

### 16.9.7 Spark Tab

The Spark Jobs tab (figure 16.29) simplifies dealing with Spark clusters managed by the Google Spark Operator. The tab lets users list, remove, and create Spark instances using a simplified interface. If a particular option is not available in the simplified form, then a custom manifest can be uploaded.

The screenshot shows the 'Spark Jobs' tab in the Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager. At the top, there are navigation links: Overview, Jupyter Kernel Overview, Jobs, Pods, PVCs, PSQL, Spark Jobs (which is underlined), and Events. Below the navigation is a header bar with two buttons: 'New Spark Job from Config' and '+ New Spark Job'. The main area contains a table for 'mnist' and 'spark-pi' instances. The 'mnist' instance has one row with columns: state (COMPLETED), name (mnist), driver\_pod\_name (mnist-driver), and driver\_pod\_state (Completed). A 'Delete instance' button is also present. Below the table is a section titled 'Instance Events' with a 'Hide' button. It lists several log entries with columns: creation\_timestamp, message, reason, and source\_component. The log entries are:

creation_timestamp	message	reason	source_component
2023-06-28T20:52:25+00:00	SparkApplication mnist was added, enqueueing it for submission	SparkApplicationAdded	spark-operator
2023-06-28T20:52:30+00:00	SparkApplication mnist was submitted successfully	SparkApplicationSubmitted	spark-operator
2023-06-28T20:52:32+00:00	Driver mnist-driver is running	SparkDriverRunning	spark-operator
2023-06-28T20:52:52+00:00	Executor [mnist-a5744c8903c7c18f-exec-1] is pending	SparkExecutorPending	spark-operator
2023-06-28T20:52:53+00:00	Executor [mnist-a5744c8903c7c18f-exec-2] is pending	SparkExecutorPending	spark-operator

At the bottom right, there is a 'Cluster View (default)' button with a value '1' and a refresh icon.

Figure 16.29: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: Spark overview

There are two buttons in figure 16.29:

- **New Spark Job from Config**: allows a YAML file configuration that sets the fields to be submitted
- **New Spark Job**: allows the fields to be set directly (figure 16.30)

Clicking either button displays a pop-up dialog for creating a new Spark instance. For example, the New Spark Job button displays the creation form in figure 16.30. The creation form requires the following values:

1. **Name**: Arbitrary name of the Spark instance.
2. **Image**: Container image for the driver and executor.
3. **Spark Version**: Version of Spark used by the application.
4. **Command**: Application's command with arguments.
5. **Executor Instances**: Number of executors.
6. **PVCs (Optional)**: List of Persistent Volume Claims with mountpoints where these volumes are mounted. Used to store the application and datasets, as well as packed virtual environment archives.
7. **Virtual Environment (Optional)**: Configuration for the 'spark.archives' configuration variable for the Python virtual environment.

- **PVC:** Name of the Persistent Volume Claim with empty Volume which are used to store the unpacked archive.
- **Archive:** Full path to the archive.
- **Python Path (Optional):** Python path (default /bin/python).

8. **Driver Resources (Optional):**

- **Memory:** Amount of memory to request for the pod.
- **GPU:** List of key-value pairs such as nvidia.com/gpu, 3.
- **Cores:** Number of cores to use for the driver process.
- **Environment:** List of key-value pairs for environment variables.

9. **Executor Resources (Optional):** Same as Driver Resources.

10. **Spark Config (Optional):** Custom configuration parameters if necessary. They are key-value pairs, documented in the Spark documentation at <https://spark.apache.org/docs/latest/configuration.html>.

### Example: Calculating Pi

The simplest way to run Spark involves specifying just three values: the name, the script to execute, and the Spark version. For example, the container registry image gcr.io/spark-operator/spark-py:v3.1.1 provided by Google can be used, and an application to calculate the value for  $\pi$  is located at /opt/spark/examples/src/main/python/pi.py inside the image.

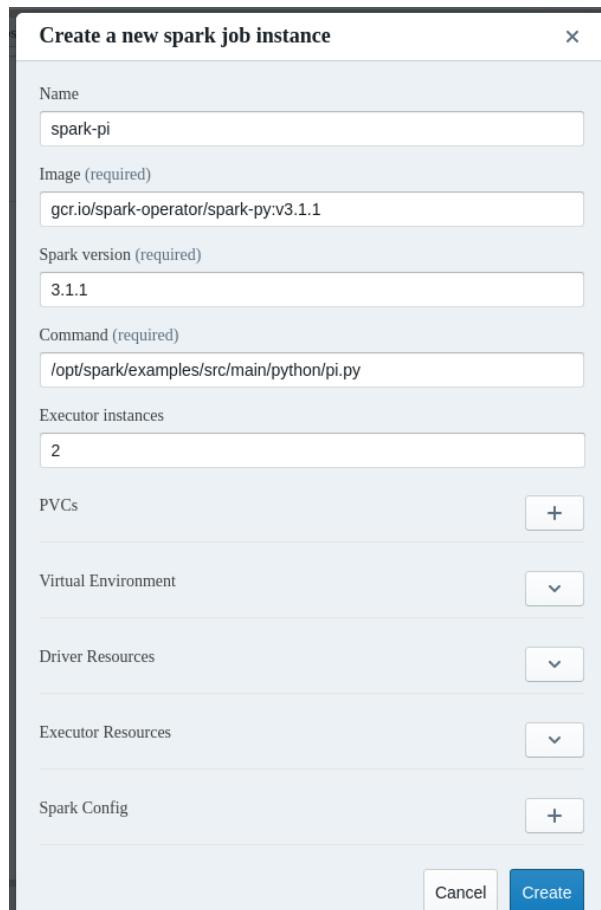


Figure 16.30: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: Spark creation

The progress of execution can be monitored in the Pods tab (figure 16.31):

The screenshot shows the 'Pods' tab in the Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager. The left sidebar lists several namespaces: cmjk-a198a3d3-0be7-4e5d-bfc8-f0948664a032-80f6r-pod-6nhs, cmjk-e8ec7c67-2c96-4bf2-ac9a-56700b6f0bb3-rsfccg-pod-vz7f5, iexc-accounting-0, nbnf-sales-db-0, ngc-pytorch-mnist, and spark-pi-driver. The 'spark-pi-driver' namespace is selected and highlighted in blue. The main area displays the 'spark-pi-driver' instance details. It includes a table with columns: name, age, ready, and status. One row shows 'spark-pi-driver' with age '107s', 'ready' status '0/1', and 'status' 'Completed'. Below this is a log panel titled 'spark-kubernetes-driver' showing logs from 2023-06-28 13:32:18. The logs indicate the driver has finished its tasks and is shutting down. At the bottom, there's an 'Instance Events' section with a 'Show' button.

Figure 16.31: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: pods tab Spark example execution status

When the job is completed, the overview page is updated (figure 16.32):

The screenshot shows the 'Spark Jobs' tab in the Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager. The left sidebar shows the 'spark-pi' namespace. The main area displays the 'spark-pi' instance details. A table shows one job entry: 'COMPLETED' state, 'spark-pi' name, 'spark-pi-driver' driver pod, and 'Completed' driver state. Below this is an 'Instance Events' section with a 'Hide' button. A table lists five events with columns: creation\_timestamp, message, reason, and source\_component. The events show the application being added, submitted, and the driver and executors starting and pending. The last event is from 2023-06-28T13:31:48+00:00. At the bottom, there's a 'Cluster View (default)' button.

Figure 16.32: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: pods tab Spark example completed status

### Example: Running MNIST

The source files for the MNIST example are located in the `/cm/shared/examples/jupyter/spark-operator-mnist` directory

## Example

```
$ id
uid=1001(alice) gid=1001(alice) groups=1001(alice)
$ ls -l /home/alice/mnist/
total 12
-rwxr-xr-x 1 alice alice 241 Jun 28 16:02 create-venv.sh
drwxr-xr-x 2 alice alice 76 Jun 28 17:10 data
-rw-r--r-- 1 alice alice 2719 Jun 28 16:02 mnist.py
-rw-r--r-- 1 alice alice 46 Jun 28 16:02 requirements.txt
$ ls -l /home/alice/mnist/data
total 124952
-rw-rw-r-- 1 alice alice 18303650 Oct 1 2019 mnist_test.csv
-rw-rw-r-- 1 alice alice 109640201 Oct 1 2019 mnist_train.csv
-rw-r--r-- 1 alice alice 91 Jun 28 16:02 README.md
```

In the example the user is unable to train the model defined in `mnist.py` right away, as the image `gcr.io/spark-operator/spark-py:v3.1.1` does not have the required NumPy library. So, before running the Spark job, the virtual environment archive needs to be created.

The safest way to create the Python environment is to use the same context as where the archive is to be used later on. That way there are no missing or conflicting libraries and paths, and the Python version matches. The `gcr.io/spark-operator/spark-py:v3.1.1` image itself can therefore be used to create the archive. The script `create-venv.sh` creates the archive from `requirements.txt` file and packs it.

In this example, a newly persistent volume (PV) is used as an intermediate storage for all the data and scripts, because using a file system where all the files are located would be a security concern. The reason for this is that once the hostPath is used for the pod, the running process UID/GID is dropped, and becomes the same as the original user (section 4.10.1 of the *Containerization Manual*). Spark images are usually not designed with this assumption in mind, and use UID 185 to run the application (<https://spark.apache.org/docs/3.1.1/running-on-kubernetes.html#user-identity>).

With these criteria in mind, the steps to run the MNIST example are:

1. Create a PVC for storing scripts and datasets (figure 16.33). Since the resulting persistent volume is expected to be mounted to all pods (driver and executors), its mode is set to `ReadWriteMany`.

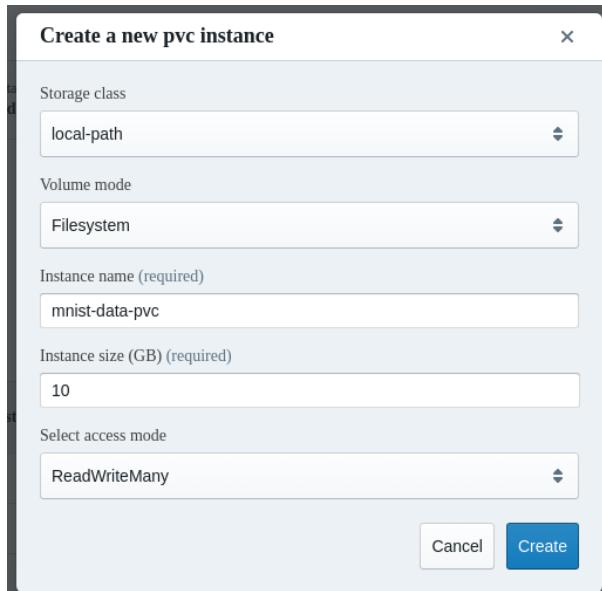


Figure 16.33: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: PVC creation for Spark example

2. Migrate data from the home folder to the volume. To do this, a migration job is created (figure 16.34), and allowed to finish (figure 16.35).

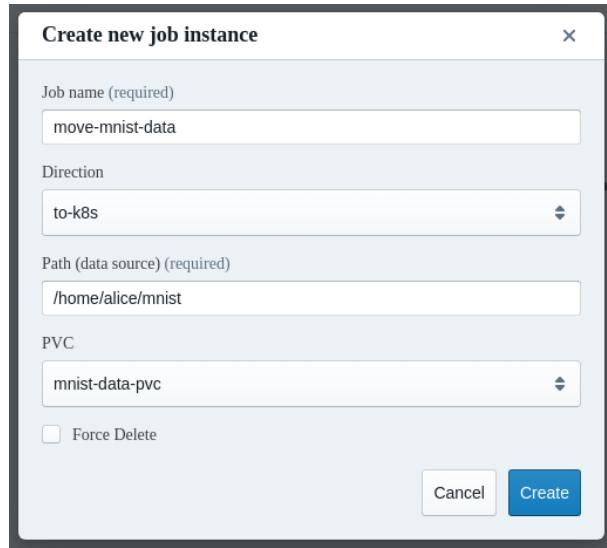


Figure 16.34: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: Data migration job creation for Spark example

	name	age	running	completion	succeeded	failed
	move-mnist-data	47s	0		1	0

creation_timestamp	message	reason	source_component
2023-06-28T16:59:17+00:00	Created pod: move-mnist-data-bbrnd	SuccessfulCreate	job-controller
2023-06-28T16:59:33+00:00	Job completed	Completed	job-controller

Figure 16.35: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: Data migration job for Spark example successfully finished

3. Create a pod to build a packed virtual environment (figure 16.36). For this, `mnist-data-pvc` is mounted by the user as the `/mnist` directory inside the pod. The command `/mnist/create-venv.sh /mnist/requirements.txt /mnist/venv.tar.gz` is then executed. This places the `venv.tar.gz` archive next to the other files in the volume.

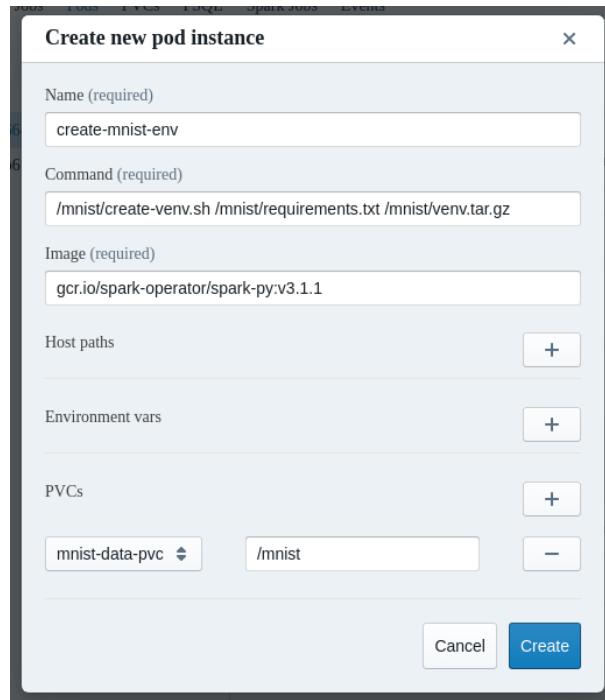


Figure 16.36: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: pod creation for virtual environment

4. (Optional) If necessary, data can be downloaded from the volume back to the user's home directory, to save the venv.tar.gz for future use (figure 16.37):

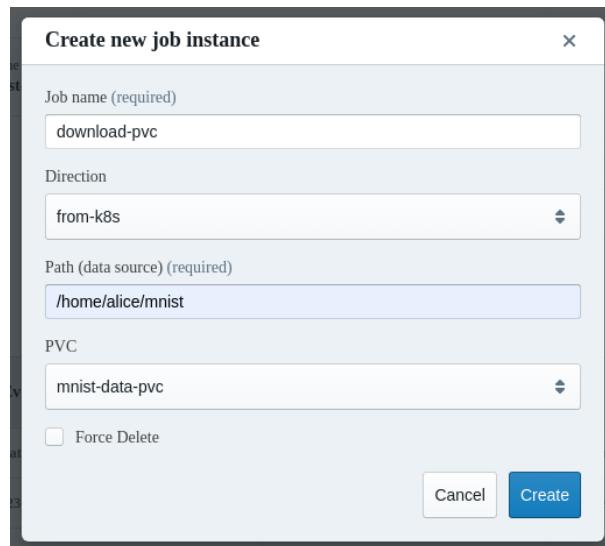


Figure 16.37: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: migrate venv to PVC

The venv.tar.gz file is placed in the /home/alice/mnist directory.

```
$ ls -l /home/alice/mnist/
total 261516
-rwxr-xr-x 1 alice alice      241 Jun 28 19:17 create-venv.sh
drwxr-xr-x 2 alice alice      99 Jun 28 19:17 data
-rw-r--r-- 1 alice alice    2719 Jun 28 19:17 mnist.py
-rw-r--r-- 1 alice alice      46 Jun 28 19:17 requirements.txt
```

```
-rw-r--r-- 1 alice alice 237896720 Jun 28 19:17 venv.tar.gz
```

5. Another volume is created to store the unpacked virtual environment files (figure 16.38). This is mounted to all pods (driver and executor). The driver unpacks the archive, and the content is used by the executors.

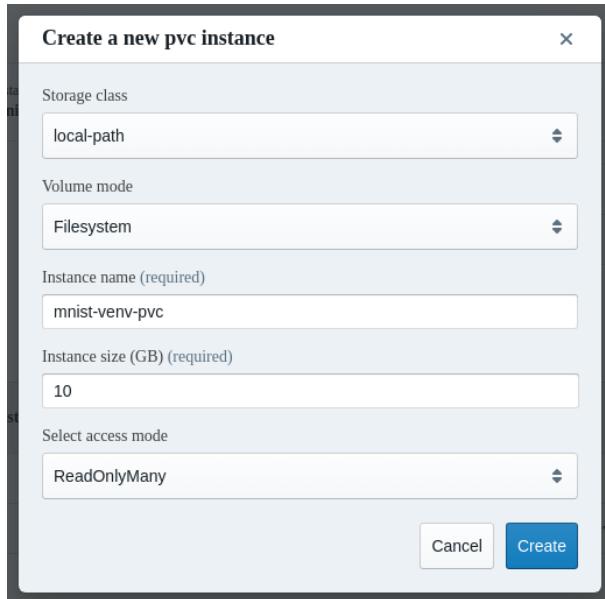


Figure 16.38: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: volume creation for unpacked virtual environment files

6. The Spark job can now be created (figure 16.39):

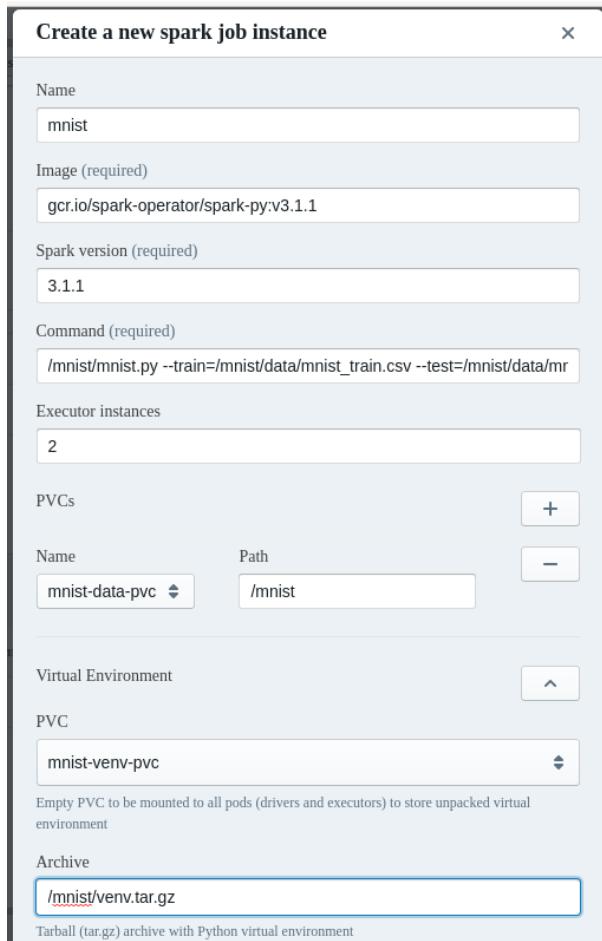


Figure 16.39: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: create Spark job

The execution progress can be monitored in the Pods tab (figure 16.40):

The screenshot shows the Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager interface. At the top, there's a header with the title "16.9 Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager" and the page number "827". Below the header, there's a table for the "mnist-driver" instance, showing one pod named "mnist-driver" which is 3m52s old, has 0/1 ready status, and is in a "Completed" state. To the right of the table is a red "Delete instance" button. Below the table is a log output for the "spark-kubernetes-driver" job. The log shows the job finishing with a precision of 0.8717. It also shows the Spark web UI stopping at port 4040 and the Kubernetes ClusterSchedulerBackend shutting down all executors. A warning message indicates that the Kubernetes client has been closed. At the bottom of the interface, there's a "Cluster View (default)" button with a count of 1 and a refresh icon.

Figure 16.40: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: monitoring the Spark instance in the Pods tab

### 16.9.8 Events Tab

The Events tab lists all events from the user's namespace (figure 16.41):

The screenshot shows the Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager interface with the "Events" tab selected. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for Overview, Jupyter Kernel Overview, Jobs, Pods, PVCs, PSQL, Spark Jobs, and Events. Below the navigation bar is a table listing events. The columns are "Created At", "Message", "Reason", and "Source Component". The table contains 29 rows of event logs. At the bottom of the interface, there's a "Cluster View (default)" button with a count of 1 and a refresh icon.

Created At	Message	Reason	Source Component
2023-06-28T20:55:41+00:00	SparkApplication mnist completed	SparkApplicationCompleted	spark-operator
2023-06-28T20:55:40+00:00	Stopping container spark-kubernetes-executor	Killing	kubelet
2023-06-28T20:55:40+00:00	Executor [mnist-a5744c8903c7c18f-exec-2] completed	SparkExecutorCompleted	spark-operator
2023-06-28T20:55:40+00:00	Executor [mnist-a5744c8903c7c18f-exec-1] completed	SparkExecutorCompleted	spark-operator
2023-06-28T20:55:40+00:00	Driver mnist-driver completed	SparkDriverCompleted	spark-operator
2023-06-28T20:55:39+00:00	Stopping container spark-kubernetes-executor	Killing	kubelet
2023-06-28T20:52:55+00:00	Executor [mnist-a5744c8903c7c18f-exec-2] is running	SparkExecutorRunning	spark-operator
2023-06-28T20:52:54+00:00	Container image "gcr.io/spark-operator/spark-py:v3.1.1" already present on machine	Pulled	kubelet
2023-06-28T20:52:54+00:00	Created container spark-kubernetes-executor	Created	kubelet
2023-06-28T20:52:54+00:00	Started container spark-kubernetes-executor	Started	kubelet
2023-06-28T20:52:54+00:00	Executor [mnist-a5744c8903c7c18f-exec-1] is running	SparkExecutorRunning	spark-operator
2023-06-28T20:52:53+00:00	Container image "gcr.io/spark-operator/spark-py:v3.1.1" already present on machine	Pulled	kubelet
2023-06-28T20:52:53+00:00	Created container spark-kubernetes-executor	Created	kubelet
2023-06-28T20:52:53+00:00	Started container spark-kubernetes-executor	Started	kubelet

Figure 16.41: Jupyter Kubernetes Operators Manager: events overview

## 16.10 Jupyter Environment Removal

Before removing Jupyter, the administrator should ensure that all kernels have been halted, and that no user is still logged onto the web interface. Stopping the `cm-jupyterhub` service with users that are still logged in, or with running kernels, has undefined behavior.

To remove Jupyter, the script `cm-jupyter-setup` must be run, either in interactive mode, or with the option `--remove`.

Removing Jupyter does not remove or affect Kubernetes or WLM deployments.

For a more complete cleanup, the following packages must be manually removed from the nodes involved in the Jupyter deployment: `cm-jupyter`, `cm-jupyter-local`, and `cm-npm-configurable-http-proxy`.

# A

## Generated Files

This appendix contains lists of system configuration files that are managed by CMDaemon, and system configuration files that are managed by node-installer. These are files created or modified on the head nodes (section A.1), and on the regular nodes (sections A.2.3 and A.2.3). These files should not be confused with configuration files that are merely installed (section A.3).

Section 2.6.5 describes how system configuration files on all nodes are written out using the Cluster Management Daemon (CMDaemon). CMdaemon is introduced in section 2.6.5 and its configuration directives are listed in Appendix C.

All of these configuration files may be listed as *Frozen Files* in the CMdaemon configuration file to prevent them from being modified further by CMdaemon. The files can be frozen for the head node by setting the directive at /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf. They can also be frozen on the regular nodes by setting the directive in the software image, by default at /cm/images/default-image/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf.

A list of CMDeamon- and node-installer-managed files for nodes can be seen by running the command `filewriteinfo` in device mode. The command has options to run it for node groupings, as well useful path and sort options.

### A.1 System Configuration Files Created Or Modified By CMDeamon On Head Nodes

If the `filewriteinfo` command is run for the head node, then it displays the files that have been written by CMdaemon on the head node. Running the `filewriteinfo` command for the head node might display the following on a fresh installation:

Hostname	Path	Timestamp	Actor	Frozen
basecm11	/cm/images/default-image/etc/mkinitrd_cm.conf	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/cm/images/default-image/etc/modprobe.d/bright-cmdaemon.conf	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/cm/images/default-image/etc/security	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/etc/chrony.conf	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/etc/dhcp/dhclient.conf	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/etc/dhcpd.conf	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/etc/exports	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/etc/genders	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/etc/named.conf	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/etc/postfix/canonical	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/etc/postfix/generic	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/etc/postfix/main.cf	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/etc/resolv.conf	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11	/etc/security/pam_bright.d/cm-check-alloc.conf	Mon Oct...	cmd	no

basecm11 /etc/shorewall.staging/interfaces		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /etc/shorewall.staging/netmap		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /etc/shorewall.staging/policy		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /etc/shorewall.staging/snat		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /etc/shorewall.staging/zones		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth1		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /tftpboot/images/default-image//boot		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /tftpboot/images/default-image/initrd		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /tftpboot/images/default-image/vmlinuz		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /tftpboot/mtu.conf		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /tftpboot/pxelinux.cfg/category.default		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/run/cmd.url		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/my.cmd.url		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/my.master.cmd.url		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-chrony.conf		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-dhcp-dhclient.conf		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-dhcpd.conf		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-exports		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-named.conf		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-postfix-canonical		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-postfix-generic		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-postfix-main.cf		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-resolv.conf		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-shorewall.staging-interfaces		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-shorewall.staging-netmap		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-shorewall.staging-policy		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-shorewall.staging-snat		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-shorewall.staging-zones		Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-sysconfig-network-scripts-ifcfg-eth1	ifcfg-eth1	Mon Oct...	cmd	no
basecm11 /var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/tftpboot-mtu.conf		Mon Oct...	cmd	no

The `filewriteinfo` command is covered in more detail in section A.2.

The more important head node files that are managed by CMDDaemon are listed here for a plain installation on the various distributions.

**Some of the more important files managed automatically on the head node by CMDDaemon In RHEL and derivatives, Ubuntu 22.04, 24.04, SLES15**

File	Part	Comment
/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/slapd.conf	Section	CMDDaemon modifies this when edge, cloud or HA are activated
/cm/local/apps/<PBS>/var/cm/cm-pbs.conf	Section	<PBS> can be one of openpbs pbspro

...continues

*...continued*

File	Part	Comment
/cm/local/modulefiles/<module>	Entire directory	<module> is a file or directory for a modules environment module (section 2.2.4). For example, <code>slurm</code> , which is automatically created and made available for use after the Slurm workload manager is set up with <code>cm-wlm-setup</code> (section 7.3).
/cm/node-installer/etc/sysconfig/clock	Section	
/etc/aliases	Section	
/etc/bind/named.conf	Entire file	Ubuntu only. For zone additions use <code>/etc/bind/named.conf.include</code> <sup>1</sup> . For options additions, use <code>/etc/bind/named.conf.global.options.include</code> .
/etc/chrony.conf	Section	RHEL8,9 and derivatives only
/etc/dhcpd.conf	Entire file	
/etc/dhcp/dhclient.conf	Section	Not for SLES
/etc/dhcpd.internalnet.conf	Entire file	For internal networks other than <code>internalnet</code> , corresponding files are generated if node booting (table 3.1) is enabled
/etc/exports	Section	
/etc/fstab	Section	
/etc/genders	Section	
/etc/hosts	Section	
/etc/localtime	Symlink	
/etc/logrotate.d/slurm	Entire file	
/etc/logrotate.d/slurmdbd	Entire file	
/etc/named.conf	Entire file	Non-Ubuntu distributions only (Ubuntu uses <code>/etc/bind/named.conf</code> ). For zone additions use <code>/etc/named.conf.include</code> <sup>1</sup> . For options additions, use <code>/etc/named.conf.global.options.include</code> .
/etc/ntp.conf	Section	Ubuntu and SUSE only
/etc/postfix/canonical	Section	
/etc/postfix/generic	Section	
/etc/postfix/main.cf	Section	

*... continues*

*...continued*

File	Part	Comment
/etc/resolv.conf	Section	The stub resolver can alternatively be provided by <code>systemd-resolved</code> ( <code>man systemd-resolved.8</code> , page 86)
/etc/shorewall6.staging/interfaces	Section	
/etc/shorewall6.staging/policy	Section	
/etc/shorewall6.staging/rules	Section	
/etc/shorewall6.staging/snat	Section	
/etc/shorewall6.staging/zones	Section	
/etc/shorewall/interfaces	Section	
/etc/shorewall/netmap	Section	
/etc/shorewall/policy	Section	
/etc/shorewall/rules	Section	
/etc/shorewall/snat	Section	
/etc/shorewall/zones	Section	
/etc/snmp/snmptrapd.conf	Section	
/etc/sysconfig/bmccfg	Entire file	BMC configuration and BCM configuration
/etc/sysconfig/clock	Section	
/etc/sysconfig/dhcpd	Entire file	
/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-*	Section	
/tftpboot/mtu.conf	Entire file	BCM configuration
/tftpboot/pxelinux.cfg/category.default	Entire file	BCM configuration
/var/lib/named/*.zone <sup>1,2</sup>	Entire file	For SLES distributions only. For custom additions use <code>/var/lib/named/*.zone.include</code>
/var/named/*.zone <sup>1,2</sup>	Entire file	For RHEL8, RHEL9 distributions only. For custom additions use <code>/var/named/*.zone.include</code>

<sup>1</sup> User-added zone files ending in `*.zone` that are placed for a corresponding zone statement in the include file `/etc/[bind/]named.conf.include` are wiped by CMDeamon activity. Another pattern, eg: `*.myzone`, must therefore be used instead

<sup>2</sup> For Ubuntu, the zone files are under `/etc/bind/`

## A.2 System Configuration Files Created Or Modified Directly On The Node

Files that are created or modified by CMDeamon or the node-installer directly on the node by CMDeamon can be seen with the `filewriteinfo` command.

For example, for a particular node, in this case `node002` (some output elided):

### Example

```
[basecm11->device] % filewriteinfo node002
Hostname      Path          Timestamp          Actor          Frozen
-----
```

```

node002      /certificates/fa-16-3e-54-bb-a1/cert    Thu Jul 14 12:16:00 2022  node-installer  no
...
node002      /etc/chrony.conf                      Thu Jul 14 12:17:08 2022  node-installer  no
...
node002      /etc/exports                          Thu Jul 14 12:17:58 2022  cmd              no
...

```

In the preceding, `/etc/exports` is seen to have been changed by `cmd`, which is listed under the `Actor` column.

### A.2.1 Options To `filewriteinfo`

Options to `filewriteinfo` can be viewed with the `help filewriteinfo` command.

Some of the options are:

- `-n | --node`: This can be used to specify a node list (page 67).
- `--field`: The `--field` option can be used with, for example, the `mac` field, as follows (some output elided):

#### Example

```

[basecm11->device]% get node002 mac
FA:16:3E:54:BB:A1
[basecm11->device]% filewriteinfo --field mac=FA:16:3E:54:BB:A1
Hostname      Path                           Timestamp          Actor        Frozen
-----
node002      /certificates/fa-16-3e-54-bb-a1/cert    Thu Jul 14 12:16:00 2022  node-installer  no
...
node002      /etc/chrony.conf                      Thu Jul 14 12:17:08 2022  node-installer  no
...
node002      /etc/exports                         Thu Jul 14 12:17:58 2022  cmd              no
...

```

The preceding example has the same output as for the session with `filewriteinfo node002` on page 832.

- A pitfall to avoid is the following: The columns headers of the output of the `filewriteinfo` command, such as `Actor`, are not keys for the `--field` option.

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device]% filewriteinfo node002 --field Actor=cmd      #this is incorrect
```

Instead, as is the norm for a device mode command, it is the fields of the mode that are the key=value pairs (for keys that are valid for the device concerned). The fields of the device mode are displayed when the `format` command (page 55) is run.

- `--sort`: This sorts the `filewriteinfo` output according to column headers (`Actor`, `Timestamp` and so on).
- `--path`: This can be used to specify a file.

#### Example

```

[basecm11->device]% filewriteinfo --path /etc/chrony.conf --sort actor
Hostname      Path                           Timestamp          Actor        Frozen
-----
basecm11      /etc/chrony.conf                Thu Jul 14 12:14:25 2022  cmd              no
node001       /etc/chrony.conf                Thu Jul 14 12:17:08 2022  node-installer  no
node002       /etc/chrony.conf                Thu Jul 14 12:17:08 2022  node-installer  no

```

### A.2.2 Files Created On Regular Nodes By CMdaemon

Files on a regular node that are modified by CMdaemon can be seen in the output of `filewriteinfo`. The `filewriteinfo` command displays a list of the last files written by the cluster manager.

For a default installation, the list is as shown in the following table:

System configuration files created or modified on a default regular nodes image by CMDaemon

File	Part	Comment
/etc/aliases	Section	
/etc/fstab	Section	SLES only
/etc/hosts	Section	
/etc/nslcd.conf	Section	RHEL8 and derivatives, and Ubuntu only
/etc/pam.d/sshd	Section	
/etc/postfix/main.cf	Section	
/etc/rsyslog.conf	Section	RHEL9 and derivatives, and SLES only
/etc/security/pam_bright.d/cm-check-alloc.conf	Entire file	
/var/run/cmd.url	Entire file	
/var/spool/cmd/my.cmd.url	Entire file	
/var/spool/cmd/my.master.cmd.url	Entire file	
/var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-aliases	Entire file	
	Section	
/var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-fstab	Entire file	SLES Only
/var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-hosts	Entire file	
/var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-nslcd.conf	Entire file	RHEL8 and derivatives, and Ubuntu only
/var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-pam.d-sshd	Entire file	
/var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-postfix-main.cf	Entire file	
/var/spool/cmd/saved-config-files/etc-rsyslog.conf	Entire file	RHEL9 and derivatives, and SUSE only

### A.2.3 Files Created On Regular Nodes By The Node-Installer

The list of files on a regular node that are modified by the node-installer during the last installation session can be viewed in the logs at `/var/log/modified-by-node-installer.log` on the node, and in the output of `filewriteinfo`. For a default installation, these are as shown in the following table:

**System configuration files created or modified on regular nodes by the node-installer in RHEL8, RHEL9 and derivatives**

File	Part	Comment
/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-*	Entire	Interfaces for RHEL8, RHEL9 and derivatives only
/etc/network/interfaces.d/ifcfg-*	Entire file	Ubuntu only
/etc/sysconfig/network/ifcfg-*	Entire file	SUSE only,
/etc/sysconfig/network	Section	Only for RHEL8, RHEL9 and derivatives
/etc/sysconfig/network/config	Section	Only for SLES
/etc/sysconfig/network/routes	Section	Only for SLES
/etc/resolv.conf	Entire file	Only for RHEL8, RHEL9 and derivatives
/etc/hosts	Section	
/etc/fstab	Section	Not for SLES. In SLES it is managed by CMdaemon
/etc/postfix/main.cf	Section	
/etc/chrony.conf	Entire file	RHEL8,RHEL9 and derivatives only
/etc/ntp.conf	Entire file	SUSE and Ubuntu only
/etc/systemd/resolved.conf	Entire file	Ubuntu only
/etc/hostname	Section	
/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cert.key	Section	
/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cert.pem	Section	
/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cluster.pem	Section	
/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/certs/ldap.key	Section	
/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/certs/ldap.pem	Section	
/var/log/modified-by-node-installer.log	Section	
/var/log/node-installer	Section	
/var/log/rsyncd.log	Section	
/var/spool/cmd/disks.xml	Section	

### A.3 Files Not Generated, But Installed In RHEL And Derivatives

This appendix (Appendix A) is mainly about generated configuration files. This section (A.3) of the appendix discusses a class of files that is not generated, but may still be confused with generated files. The discussion in this section clarifies the issue, and explains how to check if non-generated installed files differ from the standard distribution installation.

A design goal of BCM is that of minimal interference. That is, to stay out of the way of the distributions that it works with as much as is reasonable. Still, there are inevitably cluster manager configuration files that are not generated, but installed from a cluster manager package. A cluster manager configuration file of this kind overwrites the distribution configuration file with its own special settings to get the cluster running, and the file is then not maintained by the node-installer or CMdaemon. Such files are therefore not listed on any of the tables in this chapter.

Sometimes the cluster file version may differ unexpectedly from the distribution version. To look into this, the following steps may be followed:

**Is the configuration file a BCM version or a distribution version?** A convenient way to check if a particular file is a cluster file version is to grep for it in the packages list for the cluster packages. For example, for nsswitch.conf:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# repoquery -l $(repoquery -a | grep -F _cmHEAD) | grep nsswitch.conf$
```

The inner repoquery displays a list of all the packages. By grepping for the cluster manager version string, for example \_cmHEAD for NVIDIA Base Command Manager 11, the list of cluster manager packages is found. The outer repoquery displays the list of files within each package in the list of cluster manager packages. By grepping for nsswitch.conf\$, any file paths ending in nsswitch.conf in the cluster manager packages are displayed. The output is:

```
/cm/conf/etc/nsswitch.conf
```

Files under /cm/conf are placed by BCM packages when updating the head node. From there they are copied over during the post-install section of the RPM to where the distribution version configuration files are located by the cluster manager, but only during the initial installation of the cluster. The distribution version file is overwritten in this way to prevent RPM dependency conflicts of the BCM version with the distribution version. The configuration files are not copied over from /cm/conf during subsequent reboots after the initial installation. The cm/conf files are however updated when BCM packages are updated. During such a BCM update, a notification is displayed that new configuration files are available.

Inverting the cluster manager version string match displays the files not provided by BCM. These are normally the files provided by the distribution:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# repoquery -l $(repoquery -a | grep -F -v _cmHEAD) | grep nsswitch.conf$  
...  
/usr/share/factory/etc/nsswitch.conf  
/usr/share/factory/etc/nsswitch.conf  
/etc/authselect/nsswitch.conf  
/etc/authselect/user-nsswitch.conf  
/usr/share/authselect/default/minimal/nsswitch.conf  
/usr/share/authselect/default/sssd/nsswitch.conf  
/usr/share/authselect/default/winbind/nsswitch.conf  
/var/lib/authselect/nsswitch.conf  
/etc/authselect/nsswitch.conf  
/etc/authselect/user-nsswitch.conf  
/usr/share/authselect/default/minimal/nsswitch.conf  
/usr/share/authselect/default/sssd/nsswitch.conf  
/usr/share/authselect/default/winbind/nsswitch.conf  
/var/lib/authselect/nsswitch.conf  
/etc/nsswitch.conf  
/etc/nsswitch.conf  
/usr/share/authselect/vendor/libnss-mysql/nsswitch.conf  
/usr/share/rear/skel/default/etc/nsswitch.conf
```

**Which package provides the file in BCM and in the distribution?** The packages that provide these files can be found by running the “yum whatprovides \*” command on the paths given by the preceding output, for example:

```
~# yum whatprovides */cm/conf/etc/nsswitch.conf  
...  
cm-config-ldap-client<various types and versions are seen>
```

This reveals that some BCM LDAP packages can provide an nsswitch.conf file. The file is a plain file provided by the unpacking and placement that takes place when the package is installed. The file is not generated or maintained periodically after placement, which is the reason why this file is not seen in the tables of sections A.1 and A.2.3 of this appendix.

Similarly, looking through the output for the less specific case:

```
~# yum whatprovides */etc/nsswitch.conf
...
cm-config-ldap-client*
glibc*
rear*
systemd*
```

shows that `glibc` provides a distribution version of the `nsswitch.conf` file, that the `rear` package from the distribution provides a version of it, and that there is also a `systemd` version of this file available from the distribution packages. The glob `*` in the output in this manual represents a variety of types and versions. The actual display that is seen on the screen is an expansion of the glob.

**Similar Ubuntu queries:** For Ubuntu, a query of the form `dpkg -S <filename>` shows the packages that provide a file with the pattern `<filename>`.

### Example

```
root@head:~# dpkg -S "nsswitch.conf"
cm-config-ldap-client-master: /cm/conf/etc/nsswitch.conf
manpages: /usr/share/man/man5/nsswitch.conf.5.gz
libc-bin: /usr/share/libc-bin/nsswitch.conf
```

To work out which Ubuntu package is a distribution package and which is a BCM package, queries similar to the following can be run:

### Example

```
root@head:~# dpkg-query -W -f='${binary:Package} ${Version}\n' $(dpkg -S "nsswitch.conf" | cut -f1 -d:) | \
grep cm10.0
cm-config-ldap-client-master 10.0-155-cm10.0
root@head:~# dpkg-query -W -f='${binary:Package} ${Version}\n' $(dpkg -S "nsswitch.conf" | cut -f1 -d:) | \
grep -v cm10.0
libc-bin 2.35-0ubuntu3.8
manpages 5.10-1ubuntu1
```

**What are the differences between the BCM version and the distribution versions of the file?** Sometimes it is helpful to compare a distribution version and cluster version of `nsswitch.conf` to show the differences in configuration. The versions of the RPM packages containing the `nsswitch.conf` can be downloaded, their contents extracted, and their differences compared as follows:

```
~# mkdir yumextracted ; cd yumextracted
~# yumdownloader glibc-2.34
~# rpm2cpio glibc-2.34-100.el9_4.4.x86_64.rpm | cpio -idmv
~# yumdownloader cm-config-ldap-client-master
~# rpm2cpio cm-config-ldap-client-master-HEAD-155_cmHEAD.noarch.rpm | cpio -idmv
~# diff etc/nsswitch.conf cm/conf/etc/nsswitch.conf
...
```

**What are the configuration files in an RPM package?** An RPM package allows files within it to be marked as configuration files. Files marked as configuration files can be listed with `rpm -qc <package>`. Optionally, piping the list through “`sort -u`” filters out duplicates.

### Example

```
~# rpm -qc glibc | sort -u
/etc/gai.conf
/etc/ld.so.cache
/etc/ld.so.conf
/etc/nsswitch.conf
/etc/rpc
/usr/lib64/gconv/gconv-modules
/usr/lib/gconv/gconv-modules
/var/cache/ldconfig/aux-cache
```

**How does an RPM installation deal with local configuration changes? Are there configuration files or critical files that BCM misses?** Whenever an RPM installation detects a file with local changes, it can treat the local system file as if:

1. the local system file is frozen<sup>1</sup>. The installation does not interfere with the local file, but places the updated file as an .rpmnew file in the same directory.
2. the local system file is not frozen. The installation changes the local file. It copies the local file to an .rpmsave file in the same directory, and installs a new file from the RPM package.

When building BCM packages, the package builders can specify which of these two methods apply. When dealing with the built package, the system administrator can use an `rpm` query method to determine which of the two methods applies for a particular file in the package. For example, for `glibc`, the following query can be used and grepped:

```
rpm -q --queryformat '[%{FILENAMES}\t%{FILEFLAGS:fflags}\n]' glibc | egrep '[[[:space:]].*(c|n).*$' | sort -u
/etc/gai.conf      cmng
/etc/ld.so.cache    cmng
/etc/ld.so.conf      cn
/etc/nsswitch.conf    cn
/etc/rpc            cn
/usr/lib64/gconv/gconv-modules  cn
/usr/lib/gconv/gconv-modules  cn
/var/cache/ldconfig/aux-cache  cmng
```

Here, the second column of the output displayed shows which of the files in the package have a configuration (c) flag or a noreplace (n) flag. The c flag without the n flag indicates that an .rpmsave file will be created, while a c flag together with an n flag indicates that an .rpmnew file will be created.

In any case, files that are not marked as configuration files are overwritten during installation.

So:

- If a file is not marked as a configuration file, and it has been customized by the system administrator, and this file is provided by an RPM package, and the RPM package is updated on the system, then the file is overwritten silently.
- If a file is marked as a configuration file, and it has been customized by the system administrator, and this file is provided by an RPM package, and the RPM package is updated on the system, then it is good practice to look for .rpmsave and .rpmnew versions of that file, and run a comparison on detection.

BCM should however mark all critical files as configuration files in BCM packages.

Sometimes, RPM updates can overwrite a particular file that the administrator has changed locally and then would like to keep frozen.

To confirm that this is the problem, the following should be checked:

---

<sup>1</sup>This freezing should not be confused with the `FrozenFile` directive (Appendix C), where the file or section of a file is being maintained by CMDaemon, and where freezing the file prevents CMDaemon from maintaining it.

- The `--queryformat` option should be used to check that file can indeed be overwritten by updates. If the file has an `n` flag (regardless of whether it is a configuration file or not) then overwriting due to RPM updates does not happen, and the local file remains frozen. If the file has no `n` flag, then replacement occurs during RPM updates.

For files with no `n` flag, but where the administrator would still like to freeze the file during updates, the following can be considered:

- The file text content should be checked to see if it is a CMDaemon-maintained file (section 2.6.5), or checked against the list of generated files (Appendix A). This is just to make sure to avoid confusion about how changes are occurring in such a file.
  - If it is a CMDaemon-maintained file, then configuration changes put in by the administrator will also not persist in the maintained section of the file unless the `FrozenFile` directive (section C) is used to freeze the change.
  - If it is only a section that CMDaemon maintains, then configuration changes can be placed outside of the maintained section.

Wherever the changes are placed in such a file, these changes are in any case by default overwritten on RPM updates if the file has no `n` flag.

- Some regular node updates can effectively be maintained in a desired state with the help of a finalize script (Appendix E).
- Updates can be excluded from YUM/zypper (section 9.3.2), thereby avoiding the overwriting of that file by the excluded package.

A request to change the package build flag may be sent to the BCM support team if the preceding suggested options are unworkable.

B

# Bright Computing Public Key

-----BEGIN PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----

Version: GnuPG v1.4.0 (GNU/Linux)

```
mQGiBEqtYegRBADStdQjn1XxbYorXbFGncF2IcMFiNA7hamARt4w7hjt...  
zSLsQTmgZ0+FZs+tXcZa50LjGwhpxT6qhCe8Y7zIh2vvKrKlaAVKj2PUU28vKj1p  
2W/0IiG/HKLtahlCiCk0L3ahP0evJhh8B7e1ClrZ0TKTBB6qIUbC5vHtjiwCgydm3  
THLJsKnkw4qZetluTupld0EEANCzJ1nZxZzN6ZAMkIBrc8GivWC1T1nBG4Uw...  
EDcG1REJxpg/OhpEP8TY1e0YUKRwvMqSVChPzkLUTIsd/04RGTwOPGC...  
RVoonYPR1tRymPNZyW8VJeTUEnOkdlCaqZykp1sRb3jFAiJIRCmBRc854i/jRXmo  
foTPBACJQyoEH9Qfe3VcqpR6+vR2tX91PvkxS7A5AnJIRs3Sv6yM4oV+7k/HrfYKt  
fyl6widtEbQ1870s4x3NYXmmme7l1nGxBfAxzPG9rtjRSXyVxc+KGVd6gKeCV6d  
o7kS/LJHRi0Lb5G4NZRFy5CGqg641iJwp/f2J4uyRbC8b+/LQbQ7QnJpZ2h0IENv  
bXB1dGluZyBEZXZ1bG9wbWVudCBUZWFTIDxkZXZAYnJpZ2h0Y29t...  
bT6IXgQTEQIAHgUCS1h6AIbAwYL...  
+k3m0J0OAKCOGLTZiqoCQ6TRWW2ijjITEQ8CXACgg3o4oVbrG67VFzHU...  
DXW5AgOESq1h6xAIAMJiaZI/OEqnrhSfiMsMT3sxz3mZkrQQL82Fob7s+S7nnM18  
A8btPzL1K8NzYtCg...  
zepSMRqIzW5FpIrUgDZOL9J+tWSSUtPW0YQ5jBBJrgJ8LQy9dK2RhAO...  
JLiwNKxafkhMRwDoUNS4BiZKWyPFu47vd8fM67IPT1nM1o...  
61344pd/Ij0u3gM6YBqmRRU6yBeViOTxxbYYnWcts6tEGAlTjHU0Q7gxVp4RDia2  
jLVtbee8H464wxkkC3SSkng216RaBBAoaAykhzcAAwUH/iG4WsJHFw3+CRhUqy51  
jnmb1FTF08KQXI8JLPXMOh6vvOp...  
bRUjQq+9SNjt12ESU67YyLstSN68ach9Af03PoSZIKkiNwfAO+VBILv2Mhn7xd74  
5LOM/eJ71HSpeJA2Rzs6szc2340b/VxGfGWjogaK3NE1SY0zQo+/k0VMdMWsQm/8  
Ras19IA9P5j1SbcZQ1H1PjndS4x4XQ8P41ATczsIDyW...  
xsRz1pFmi iN7I4JLjwOnAlXexn4EaeVa7Eb+uTjvxJZNdShs7Td740mlF7RK...  
wLuISQQYEQIACQUCS1h6wIbDAAKCRDvaS9m+k3m0C/oAJsHMmKrLPhjCdZyHbB1  
e19+5JABUwCfUOPoawBNOHzDnfr3MLaTgCwj...  
=WJX7
```

-----END PGP PUBLIC KEY BLOCK-----



# C

## CMDaemon Configuration File Directives

This appendix lists all configuration file directives that may be used in the cluster management daemon configuration file. If a change is needed, then the directives are normally changed on the head node, or on both head nodes in the high availability configuration, in:

```
/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf
```

The directives can also be set in some cases for the regular nodes, via the software image in /cm/images/default-image/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf on the head node. Changing the defaults already there is however not usually needed, and is not recommended.

Only one directive is valid per cmd.conf file.

To activate changes in a cmd.conf configuration file, the cmd service associated with it must be restarted.

- For the head node this is normally done with the command:

```
systemctl restart cmd
```

- For regular nodes, cmd running on the nodes is restarted. Often, the image should be updated before cmd is restarted. How to carry out these procedures for a directive is described with an example where the FrozenFile directive is activated on a regular node on page 857.

### Master directive

**Syntax:** Master = *hostname*

**Default:** Master = master

The cluster management daemon treats the host specified in the Master directive as the head node. A cluster management daemon running on a node specified as the head node starts in *head* mode. On a regular node, it starts in *node* mode.

### Port directive

**Syntax:** Port = *number*

**Default:** Port = 8080

The *number* used in the syntax above is a number between 0 and 65535. The default value is 8080.

The Port directive sets the value of the port of the cluster management daemon to listen for non-SSL HTTP calls. By default, this happens only during init. All other communication with the cluster

management daemon is carried out over the SSL port. Pre-init port adjustment can be carried out in the node-installer.conf configuration. Shorewall may need to be modified to allow traffic through for a changed port.

## SSLPot directive

**Syntax:** SSLPort = *number*

**Default:** SSLPort = 8081

The *number* used in the syntax above is a number between 0 and 65535. The default value is 8081.

The SSLPort directive sets the value of the SSL port of the cluster management daemon to listen for SSL HTTP calls. By default, it is used for all communication of CMDaemon with Base View and cmsh, except for when CMDaemon is started up from init.

This directive does not change the firewall port settings to match the value of the SSL port for CM-Daemon communication. The firewall port settings value does however change if using the cm-cmd-ports utility (page 73 of the *Installation Manual*) instead.

## SSLPotOnly directive

**Syntax:** SSLPortOnly = yes|no

**Default:** SSLPortOnly = no

The SSLPortOnly directive allows the non-SSL port to be disabled. By default, during normal running, both SSL and non-SSL ports are listening, but only the SSL port is used. Also by default, the non-SSL port is only used during CMDaemon start up.

If bootloaderprotocol (section 5.1.6) is set to HTTP, then SSLPortOnly must be set to no. The HTTPS protocol is unsupported by most bootloaders.

## CertificateFile directive

**Syntax:** CertificateFile = *filename*

**Default:** CertificateFile = "/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cert.pem"

The CertificateFile directive specifies the PEM-format certificate which is to be used for authentication purposes. On the head node, the certificate used also serves as a software license.

## PrivateKeyFile directive

**Syntax:** PrivateKeyFile = *filename*

**Default:** PrivateKeyFile = "/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cert.key"

The PrivateKeyFile directive specifies the PEM-format private key which corresponds to the certificate that is being used.

## CACertificateFile directive

**Syntax:** CACertificateFile = *filename*

**Default:** CACertificateFile = "/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cacert.pem"

The CACertificateFile directive specifies the path to the BCM PEM-format root certificate. It is normally not necessary to change the root certificate.

## ClusterCertificateFile directive

**Syntax:** ClusterCertificateFile = *filename*

**Default:** ClusterCertificateFile = "/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cluster.pem"

The ClusterCertificateFile directive specifies the path to the BCM PEM-format cluster certificate file used as a software license, and to sign all client certificates

## ClusterPrivateKeyFile directive

**Syntax:** ClusterPrivateKeyFile = *filename*

**Default:** ClusterPrivateKeyFile = "/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cluster.key"

The ClusterPrivateKeyFile directive specifies the path to the BCM PEM-format private key which corresponds to the cluster certificate file.

## RandomSeedFile directive

**Syntax:** RandomSeedFile = *filename*

**Default:** RandomSeedFile = "/dev/urandom"

The RandomSeedFile directive specifies the path to a source of randomness for a random seed.

## RandomSeedFileSize directive

**Syntax:** RandomSeedFileSize = *number*

**Default:** RandomSeedFileSize = 8192

The RandomSeedFileSize directive specifies the size of the random seed.

## DHParamFile directive

**Syntax:** DHParamFile = *filename*

**Default:** DHParamFile = "/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/dh1024.pem"

The DHParamFile directive specifies the path to the Diffie-Hellman parameters.

## SSLHandshakeTimeout directive

**Syntax:** SSLHandshakeTimeout = *number*

**Default:** SSLHandshakeTimeout = 10

The SSLHandShakeTimeout directive controls the time-out period (in seconds) for SSL handshakes.

## SSLSessionCacheExpirationTime directive

**Syntax:** SSLSessionCacheExpirationTime = *number*

**Default:** SSLSessionCacheExpirationTime = 300

The SSLSessionCacheExpirationTime directive controls the period (in seconds) for which SSL sessions are cached. Specifying the value 0 can be used to disable SSL session caching.

## DBHost directive

**Syntax:** DBHost = *hostname*  
**Default:** DBHost = "localhost"

The DBHost directive specifies the hostname of the MySQL database server.

## DBPort directive

**Syntax:** DBPort = *number*  
**Default:** DBPort = 3306

The DBPort directive specifies the TCP port of the MySQL database server.

## DBUser directive

**Syntax:** DBUser = *username*  
**Default:** DBUser = cmdaemon

The DBUser directive specifies the username used to connect to the MySQL database server.

## DBPass directive

**Syntax:** DBPass = *password*  
**Default:** DBPass = "<random string set during installation>"

The DBPass directive specifies the password used to connect to the MySQL database server.

## DBName directive

**Syntax:** DBName = *database*  
**Default:** DBName = "cmdaemon"

The DBName directive specifies the database used on the MySQL database server to store CMDaemon related configuration and status information.

## DBUnixSocket directive

**Syntax:** DBUnixSocket = *filename*  
**Default:** DBUnixSocket = "/var/lib/mysql/mysql.sock"

The DBUnixSocket directive specifies the named pipe used to connect to the MySQL database server if it is running on the same machine.

## DBUpdateFile directive

**Syntax:** DBUpdateFile = *filename*  
**Default:** DBUpdateFile = "/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmdaemon\_upgrade.sql"

The DBUpdateFile directive specifies the path to the file that contains information on how to upgrade the database from one revision to another.

## EventBucket directive

**Syntax:** EventBucket = *filename*

**Default:** EventBucket = "/var/spool/cmd/eventbucket"

The EventBucket directive (section 10.10.3) specifies the path to the named pipe that is created to listen for incoming events from a user.

## EventBucketFilter directive

**Syntax:** EventBucketFilter = *filename*

**Default:** EventBucketFilter = "/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/eventbucket.filter"

The EventBucketFilter directive (section 10.10.3) specifies the path to the file that contains regular expressions used to filter out incoming messages on the event-bucket.

## LDAPHost directive

**Syntax:** LDAPHost = *hostname*

**Default:** LDAPHost = "localhost"

The LDAPHost directive specifies the hostname of the LDAP server to connect to for user management.

## LDAPUser directive

**Syntax:** LDAPUser = *username*  
**Default:** LDAPUser = "root"

The LDAPUser directive specifies the username used when connecting to the LDAP server.

## LDAPPass directive

**Syntax:** LDAPPass = *password*  
**Default:** LDAPPass = "<random string set during installation>"

The LDAPPass directive specifies the password used when connecting to the LDAP server. It can be changed following the procedure described in Appendix I.

## LDAPReadOnlyUser directive

**Syntax:** LDAPReadOnlyUser = *username*  
**Default:** LDAPReadOnlyUser = "readonlyroot"

The LDAPReadOnlyUser directive specifies the username that will be used when connecting to the LDAP server during LDAP replication. The user is a member of the "rogroup" group, whose members have a read-only access to the whole LDAP directory.

## LDAPReadOnlyPass directive

**Syntax:** LDAPReadOnlyPass = *password*  
**Default:** LDAPReadOnlyPass = "<random string set during installation>"

The LDAPReadOnlyPass directive specifies the password that will be used when connecting to the LDAP server during LDAP replication.

## LDAPSearchDN directive

**Syntax:** LDAPSearchDN = *dn*

**Default:** LDAPSearchDN = "dc=cm,dc=cluster"

The LDAPSearchDN directive specifies the Distinguished Name (DN) used when querying the LDAP server.

## LDAPProtocol directive

**Syntax:** LDAPProtocol = ldap|ldaps

**Default:** LDAPProtocol = "ldaps"

The LDAPProtocol directive specifies the LDAP protocol to be used when querying the LDAP server.

## LDAPPort directive

**Syntax:** LDAPPort = *number*

**Default:** LDAPPort = 636

The LDAPPort directive specifies the port to be used when querying the LDAP server.

## LDAPCACertificate directive

**Syntax:** LDAPCACertificate = *filename*

**Default:** LDAPCACertificate = "/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/certs/ca.pem"

The LDAPCACertificate directive specifies the CA certificate to be used when querying the LDAP server.

## LDAPCertificate directive

**Syntax:** LDAPCertificate = *filename*

**Default:** LDAPCertificate = "/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/certs/ldap.pem"

The LDAPCertificate directive specifies the LDAP certificate to be used when querying the LDAP server.

## LDAPPrivateKey directive

**Syntax:** LDAPPrivateKey= *filename*

**Default:** LDAPPrivateKey= "/cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/certs/ldap.key"

The LDAPPrivateKey directive specifies the LDAP key to be used when querying the LDAP server.

## HomeRoot directive

**Syntax:** HomeRoot = *path*

**Default:** HomeRoot = "/home"

The HomeRoot directive specifies the default user home directory used by CMdaemon. It is used for automatic mounts, exports, and when creating new users.

## DocumentRoot directive

**Syntax:** DocumentRoot = *path*

**Default:** DocumentRoot = "/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs"

The DocumentRoot directive specifies the directory mapped to the web-root of the CMDaemon. The CMDaemon acts as a HTTP-server, and can therefore in principle also be accessed by web-browsers.

## SpoolDir directive

**Syntax:** SpoolDir = *path*

**Default:** SpoolDir = "/var/spool/cmd"

The SpoolDir directive specifies the directory which is used by the CMDaemon to store temporary and semi-temporary files.

## EnableShellService directive

**Syntax:** EnableShellService = true|false

**Default:** EnableShellService = true

The EnableShellService directive allows shells to be started from Base View.

The connection runs over CMDaemon, which is running over SSL, which means that between Base View and the device, the connection is encrypted.

The directive does not affect cmsh's rshell, rconsole telnet, and ssh commands.

## DisableRemoteShell directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"DisableRemoteShell=0|1", ...}

**Default:** DisableRemoteShell=0

DisableRemoteShell is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive.

By default CMDaemon provides access to devices via rshell, rconsole (SOL), telnet, and ssh. Setting the directive to 1 disables all RPC shell access.

A more fine-grained disabling is possible with the following AdvancedConfig directives, which follow the same syntax:

- **DisableRemoteRShell directive:** disables a remote shell to the head node.
- **DisableRemoteRShellImage directive:** disables a remote shell to the chrooted software image.
- **DisableRemoteRShellNode directive:** disables a remote shell to the regular nodes.
- **DisableRemoteRShellTelnet directive:** disables a telnet shell to a device.
- **DisableRemoteRShellSSH directive:** disables SSH to a device.
- **DisableRemoteSOL directive:** disables a console via SOL to a device.

## EnableWebSocketService directive

**Syntax:** EnableWebSocketService = true|false

**Default:** EnableWebSocketService = true

The EnableWebSocketService directive allows the use of CMDaemon Lite (section 2.6.7).

## EnablePrometheusMetricService directive

**Syntax:** EnablePrometheusMetricService = true|false

**Default:** EnablePrometheusMetricService = true

If true, the EnablePrometheusMetricService directive creates an HTTP endpoint for Prometheus-style exporters that do not have their own HTTP endpoint.

## PrometheusMetricServicePath directive

**Syntax:** PrometheusMetricServicePath = *path*

**Default:** PrometheusMetricServicePath = SCRIPTS\_DIR"metrics/prometheus"

The PrometheusMetricServicePath directive is the path from which CMDaemon can serve Prometheus metrics. SCRIPTS\_DIR is the stem path /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts by default.

## EnablePrometheusExporterService directive

**Syntax:** EnablePrometheusExporterService = true|false

**Default:** EnablePrometheusExporterService = false

If true, the EnablePrometheusExporterService directive allows a Prometheus server to pull data from CMDaemon.

To collect all data, the external Prometheus YAML configuration (<https://prometheus.io/docs/prometheus/latest/configuration/configuration/>) should have all nodes with a monitoring role added to it:

### Example

```
#  
# - job_name: cmdaemon-head01  
#   metrics_path: /exporter  
#   static_configs:  
#     - targets: ['https://head01:8081']  
#
```

Configuring CMDaemon to sample metrics from a Prometheus exporter instead is covered in section 3.17.

## PrometheusExporterRequireCertificate directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"PrometheusExporterRequireCertificate=0|1", ...}

**Default:** PrometheusExporterRequireCertificate = 1

PrometheusExporterRequireCertificate is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive.

- If set to 0, then all users can use the Prometheus service to pull data using CMDaemon.
- If set to 1, then only users using certificate-based access can use the Prometheus service to pull data using CMDaemon.

Certificate-based access can be configured as follows:

A custom profile with the name `prometheus` can be created for BCM users with `profile` mode (section 6.4) as follows:

---

```
[basecm11->profile]%
```

```
[basecm11->profile*[prometheus*]]%
```

```
[basecm11->profile*[prometheus*]]%
```

```
[basecm11->profile*[prometheus*]]%
```

```
[basecm11->profile*[prometheus*]]%
```

A 2048-bit SSL certificate called mypromcert can be created for a non-privileged user `prometheus` with 3650 days validity using the `createcertificate` command (section 6.4.2) as follows:

```
[basecm11->profile[prometheus]]%
```

```
[basecm11->cert]%
```

```
createcertificate 2048 mypromcert " " " " " " prometheus " " 3650 /tmp/prometheus.key \
```

```
/tmp/prometheus.pem
```

```
Certificate key written to file: /tmp/prometheus.key
```

```
Certificate pem written to file: /tmp/prometheus.pem
```

The PEM certificate is the public part of the key pair. The private key must be owned and be readable by the Prometheus instance that is scraping from the node exporter.

To configure SSL authentication between Prometheus server and the Prometheus exporter node:

- On the Prometheus server:

- A directive value of:
  - \* 0 means that the session key is a temporary key that is auto-generated for any user
  - \* 1 means that the user (the Prometheus server) must provide a certificate
- CMDaemon in a default cluster manager installation uses a self-signed certificate. A copy of certificate can be picked up on the head node with:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ca_cert="/etc/prometheus/cmdaemon-$(hostname)-ca.pem"
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/{cacert,cluster}.pem > ${ca_cert}
[root@basecm11 ~]# chmod 600 ${ca_cert}
```

The Prometheus server should be configured to specify this CA certificate.

If the certificate used by CMDaemon is not a self-signed certificate—that is to say, it is signed by a recognized CA—then the certificate issued by CMDaemon is legitimate, and the Prometheus server does not need to have that CA certificate explicitly specified.

- The Prometheus exporter always uses TLS, which is automatically managed by CMDaemon.

## EnablePrometheusPushService directive

**Syntax:** `EnablePrometheusPushService = true|false`

**Default:** `EnablePrometheusPushService = false`

If true, the `EnablePrometheusPushService` directive allows a Prometheus server to push data to CMDaemon:

#### Example

```
myhead # cat <<EOF > "$file"
myhead # test_prometheus_push{hello="world"} 42
myhead # EOF
myhead # curl -k -X POST --data-binary "@$file" https://localhost:8081/prometheuspush/job/test
```

## CMDaemonAudit directive

**Syntax:** CMDaemonAudit = yes | no

**Default:** CMDaemonAudit = no

When the CMDaemonAudit directive is set to yes, and a value is set for the CMDaemon auditor file with the CMDaemonAuditorFile directive, then CMDaemon actions are time-stamped and logged in the CMDaemon auditor file.

## CMDaemonAuditorFile directive

**Syntax:** CMDaemonAuditorFile = *path to audit.log file*

or

**Syntax:** CMDaemonAuditorFile = *path to audit.json file*

or

**Syntax:** CMDaemonAuditorFile = *http(s) path to JSON server*

**Default:** CMDaemonAuditorFile = "/var/spool/cmd/audit.log"

The CMDaemonAuditorFile directive sets where the audit logs for CMDaemon actions are logged. The log format for a .log file in a standard directory path is:

(*time stamp*) *profile [IP-address]* *action (unique key)*

### Example

```
(Mon Jan 31 12:41:37 2011) Administrator [127.0.0.1] added Profile: arbitprof(4294967301)
```

The directive can be set in the following kinds of formats:

- CMDaemonAuditorFile = "/var/spool/cmd/audit.log"
- CMDaemonAuditorFile = "/var/spool/cmd/audit.json"
- CMDaemonAuditorFile = "http://<IP address>:<port>/some/path"
- CMDaemonAuditorFile = "https://<IP address>:<port>/some/path"

A simple POST web service can be faked using netcat:

### Example

```
nc -l 1234 -k
```

The JSON file always contains a valid array. An RPC call looks like this:

### Example

...

```
"entity": "node001",
"rpc":
  "address": "127.0.0.1",
  "call": "updateDevice",
  "service": "cmdevice",
  "timestamp": 1579185696,
  "user": "Administrator.root"

,
"task_id": 0,
"updated": true
,
```

## DisableAuditorForProfiles directive

**Syntax:** DisableAuditorForProfiles = {*profile* [, *profile*] ...}

**Default:** DisableAuditorForProfiles = {NODE}

The DisableAuditorForProfiles directive sets the profile for which an audit log for CMDDaemon actions is disabled. A profile (section 2.3.4) defines the services that CMDDaemon provides for that profile user. More than one profile can be set as a comma-separated list. Out of the profiles that are available on a newly-installed system: node, admin, cmhealth, and readonly; only the profile node is enabled by default. New profiles can also be created via the profile mode of cmsh or via the navigation path Identity Management > Profiles > of Base View, thus making it possible to disable auditing for arbitrary groups of CMDDaemon services.

## EventLogger directive

**Syntax:** EventLogger = true|false

**Default:** EventLogger = true

The EventLogger directive sets whether to log events. If active, then by default it logs events to /var/spool/cmd/events.log on the active head. If a failover takes place, then the event logs on both heads should be checked and merged for a complete list of events.

The location of the event log on the filesystem can be changed using the EventLoggerFile directive (page 853).

Whether events are logged in files or not, events are cached and accessible using cmsh or Base View. The number of events cached by CMDDaemon is determined by the parameter MaxEventHistory (page 853).

## EventLoggerFile directive

**Syntax:** EventLoggerFile = *filename*

**Default:** EventLogger = "/var/spool/cmd/events.log"

The EventLogger directive sets where the events seen in the event viewer (section 10.10) are logged.

## MaxEventHistory directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"MaxEventHistory=*number*", ...}

**Default:** MaxEventHistory=8192

MaxEventHistory is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive.

By default, when not explicitly set, the maximum number of events that is retained by CMDDaemon is 8192. Older events are discarded.

The parameter can take a value from 0 to 1000000. However, CMDDaemon is less responsive with larger values, so in that case, setting the EventLogger directive (page 853) to true, to activate logging to a file, is advised instead.

## TimingOverview directive

**Syntax:** TimingOverview = *filename*

**Default:** TimingOverview = true|false

If set to true, the TimingOverview directive records timing information for CMDDaemon.

## TimingOverviewFile directive

**Syntax:** `TimingOverviewFile = filename`

**Default:** `TimingOverviewFile = "/var/spool/cmd/timing.overview.log"`

The `TimingOverviewFile` directive sets the file where the timing data values for CMDaemon go.

## PublicDNS directive

**Syntax:** `PublicDNS = true|false`

**Default:** `PublicDNS = false`

By default, internal hosts are resolved only if requests are from the internal network. Setting `PublicDNS` to true allows the head node name server to resolve internal network hosts for any network, including networks that are on other interfaces on the head node. Separate from this directive, port 53/UDP must also be opened up in Shorewall (section 7.2 of the *Installation Manual*) if DNS is to be provided for queries from an external network.

## MaximalSearchDomains directive

**Syntax:** `GlobalConfig = {"MaximalSearchDomains = number", ...}`

**Default:** `none`

The `MaximalSearchDomains` directive is a parameter of the `GlobalConfig` (page 863) directive.

By default, the number of names that can be set as search domains used by the cluster has a maximum limit of 6. This is a hardcoded limit imposed by the Linux operating system in older versions.

More recent versions of glibc (glibc > 2.17-222.el7 in RHEL7) no longer set a limit. However using more than 6 search domains currently requires the use of the `GlobalConfig` directive, `MaximalSearchDomains`. For example, to set 30 domains, the directive setting would be: `GlobalConfig = { "MaximalSearchDomains=30" }`

## LockDownDhcpd directive

**Syntax:** `LockDownDhcpd = true|false`

**Default:** `LockDownDhcpd = false`

`LockDownDhcpd` is a deprecated legacy directive. If set to true, a global DHCP “deny unknown-clients” option is set. This means no new DHCP leases are granted to unknown clients for all networks. Unknown clients are nodes for which BCM has no MAC addresses associated with the node. The directive `LockDownDhcpd` is deprecated because its globality affects clients on all networks managed by BCM, which is contrary to the general principle of segregating the network activity of networks.

The recommended way now to deny letting new nodes boot up is to set the option for specific networks by using `cmsh` or Base View (section 3.2.1: figure 3.5 and table 3.1). Setting the `cmd.conf` `LockDownDhcpd` directive overrides `lockdowndhcpd` values set by `cmsh` or Base View.

## MaxNumberOfProvisioningThreads directive

**Syntax:** `MaxNumberOfProvisioningThreads = number`

**Default:** `MaxNumberOfProvisioningThreads = 10000`

The `MaxNumberOfProvisioningThreads` directive specifies the cluster-wide total number of nodes that can be provisioned simultaneously. Individual provisioning servers typically define a much lower bound on the number of nodes that may be provisioned simultaneously.

## SetupBMC directive

**Syntax:** SetupBMC = true|false

**Default:** SetupBMC = true

Automatically configure the username and password for the BMC interface of the head node. This may also be valid for regular nodes. The SetupBMC directive should not be confused with the setupBmc field of the node-installer configuration file, described in section 5.8.7.

The node-installer normally takes care of BMC interface configuration on regular nodes by acting on the node-installer configuration file field setupBmc. The CMDDaemon directive SetupBMC can only work on regular nodes if the node-installer is not configuring the regular nodes. If the boolean parameters installbootrecord and allownetworkingrestart for a regular node are set to yes, then the SetupBMC directive is able to work for that regular node. Setting the boolean parameters at category level also makes the directive work for the associated nodes.

## BMCSessionTimeout directive

**Syntax:** BMCSessionTimeout = *number*

**Default:** BMCSessionTimeout = 2000

The BMCSessionTimeout specifies the time-out for BMC calls in milliseconds.

## BMCIIdentifyScript directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"BMCIIdentify=*filename*", ...}

**Default:** unset

BMCIIdentifyScript is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive.

The parameter takes a full file path to a script that can be used for identification with a BMC (section 3.7.4).

## BMCIIdentifyScriptTimeout directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"BMCIIdentifyScriptTimeout=*number from 1 to 360*", ...}

**Default:** 60

BMCIIdentifyScriptTimeout is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive.

CMDDaemon waits at the most BMCIIdentifyScriptTimeout seconds for the script used by the BMCIIdentify directive to complete.

## BMCIIdentifyCache directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"BMCIIdentifyCache=0|1", ...}

**Default:** 1

BMCIIdentifyCache is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive.

If set to 1, then CMDDaemon remembers the last value of the output of the script used by the BMCIIdentify directive.

## SnmpSessionTimeout directive

**Syntax:** SnmpSessionTimeout = *number*

**Default:** SnmpSessionTimeout = 500000

The SnmpSessionTimeout specifies the time-out for SNMP calls in microseconds.

## PowerOffPDUOutlet directive

**Syntax:** PowerOffPDUOutlet = true|false  
**Default:** PowerOffPDUOutlet = false

Enabling the PowerOffPDUOutlet directive allows PDU ports to be powered off for clusters that have both PDU and IPMI power control. Section 4.1.3 has more on this.

## PowerThreadPoolSize directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"PowerThreadPoolSize=<integer>" , ...}  
**Default:** PowerThreadPoolSize=32

PowerThreadPoolSize is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive.

The parameter can take positive integer values. Increasing its value increases the number of threads that are used to power up the nodes in a cluster (section 4.2.3), so that the cluster is fully operational quicker. The administrator should however take into account the power surge due to increasing the number of threads (number of subprocesses ) before increasing the value beyond its default.

## DisableBootLogo directive

**Syntax:** DisableBootLogo = true|false  
**Default:** DisableBootLogo = false

When DisableBootLogo is set to true, the BCM logo is not displayed on the first boot menu when nodes PXE boot.

## StoreBIOSTimeInUTC directive

**Syntax:** StoreBIOSTimeInUTC = true|false  
**Default:** StoreBIOSTimeInUTC = false

When StoreBIOSTimeInUTC is set to true, the system relies on the time being stored in BIOS as being UTC rather than local time.

## FreezeChangesTo<wlm>Config directives:

**FreezeChangesToPBSPro directive**  
**FreezeChangesToSlurmConfig directive**  
**FreezeChangesToLSFConfig directive**

**Syntax:** FreezeChangesTo<wlm>Config= true|false  
**Default:** FreezeChangesTo<wlm>Config = false

When FreezeChangesTo<wlm>Config is set to true, the CMDaemon running on that node does not make any modifications to the workload manager configuration for that node. Workload managers for which this value can be set are:

- PBSPro
- Slurm
- LSF

Monitoring of jobs, and workload accounting and reporting continues for frozen workload managers.

Upgrades to newer workload manager versions may still require some manual adjustments of the configuration file, typically if a newer version of the workload manager configuration changes the syntax of one of the options in the file.

## FrozenFile directive

**Syntax:** `FrozenFile = { filename[, filename]... }`

**Example:** `FrozenFile = { "/etc/dhcpd.conf", "/etc/postfix/main.cf" }`

The `FrozenFile` directive is used to prevent the CMDaemon-maintained sections of configuration files from being automatically generated. This is useful when site-specific modifications to configuration files have to be made.

To avoid problems, the file that is frozen should not be a symlink, but should be the ultimate destination file. The `readlink -f <symlinkname>` command returns the ultimate destination file of a symlink called `<symlinkname>`. This is also the case for an ultimate destination file that is reached via several chained symlinks.

### FrozenFile directive for regular nodes

#### FrozenFile directive for regular nodes for CMDaemon

The `FrozenFile` directive can be used within the `cmd.conf` file of the regular node.

#### Example

To freeze the file `/etc/named.conf` on the regular nodes running with the image `default-image`, the file:

```
/cm/images/default-image/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf
```

can have the following directive set in it:

```
FrozenFile = { "/etc/named.conf" }
```

The path of the file that is to be frozen on the regular node must be specified relative to the root of the regular node.

The running node should then have its image updated. This can be done with the `imageupdate` command in `cmsh` (section 5.6.2), or the `Update node` button in Base View (section 5.6.3). After the update, CMDaemon should be restarted within that category of nodes:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# pdsh -v -g category=default systemctl restart cmd
node002: Waiting for CMDaemon (25129) to terminate...
node001: Waiting for CMDaemon (19645) to terminate...
node002: [ OK ]
node001: [ OK ]
node002: Waiting for CMDaemon to start...[ OK ]
node001: Waiting for CMDaemon to start...[ OK ]
```

### FrozenFile regex specification

The `FrozenFile` directive allows regexes to be used for a path, if the path begins with the `|` character:

#### Example

```
[root@head current]# egrep -e '^FrozenFile' /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf
FrozenFile = { "/etc/postfix/main.cf", "|/cm/images/.*/?/etc/postfix/main.cf" }
```

In the preceding entry, all image directories under `/cm/images/` are matched for the path `etc/postfix/main.cf`.

### **FrozenFile directive for regular nodes for the node-installer**

CMDaemon directives only affect files on a regular node after CMDaemon starts up on the node during the init stage. So files frozen by the CMDaemon directive stay unchanged by CMDaemon after this stage, but they may still be changed before this stage.

Freezing files so that they also stay unchanged during the pre-init stage—that is during the node-installer stage—is possible with node-installer directives.

Node-installer freezing is independent of CMDaemon freezing, which means that if a file freeze is needed for the entire startup process as well as beyond, then both a node-installer as well as a CMDaemon freeze are sometimes needed.

Node-installer freezes can be done with the node-installer directives in `/cm/node-installer/scripts/node-installer.conf`, introduced in section 5.4:

- `frozenFilesPerNode`
- `frozenFilesPerCategory`

For the `node-installer.conf` file in multidistro and multiarch (section 9.7) configurations, the directory path `/cm/node-installer` takes the form:

`/cm/node-installer-<distribution>-<architecture>`

The values for `<distribution>` and `<architecture>` can take the values outlined on page 528.

#### **Example**

Per node:

```
frozenFilesPerNode = "*:/localdisk/etc/ntp.conf", "node003:/localdisk/etc/hosts"
```

Here, the \* wildcard means that no restriction is set. Setting node003 means that only node003 is frozen.

#### **Example**

Per category:

```
frozenFilesPerCategory = "mycategory:/localdisk/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth1"
```

Here, the nodes in the category mycategory are prevented from being changed by the node-installer.

#### **The Necessity Of A FrozenFile Directive**

In a configuration file after a node is fully up, the effect of a statement earlier on can often be overridden by a statement later in the file. So, the following useful behavior is independent of whether `FrozenFile` is being used for a configuration file or not: A configuration file, for example `/etc/postfix/main.cf`, with a configuration statement in an earlier CMDaemon-maintained part of the file, for example:

```
mydomain = eth.cluster
```

can often be overridden by a statement later on outside the CMDaemon-maintained part of the file:

```
mydomain = eth.gig.cluster
```

Using `FrozenFile` in CMDaemon or the node-installer can thus sometimes be avoided by the use of such overriding statements later on.

Whether overriding later on is possible depends on the software being configured. It is true for Postfix configuration files, for example, but it may not be so for the configuration files of other applications.

## EaseNetworkValidation directive

**Syntax:** EaseNetworkValidation = 0|1|2  
**Default:** EaseNetworkValidation = 0

CMDaemon enforces certain requirements on network interfaces and management/node-booting networks by default. In heavily customized setups, such as is common in Type 3 networks (section 3.3.9 of the *Installation Manual*), the user may wish to disable these requirements.

- 0 enforces all requirements.
- 1 allows violation of the requirements, with validation warnings. This value should never be set except under instructions from BCM support.
- 2 allows violation of the requirements, without validation warnings. This value should never be set except under instructions from BCM support.

## CustomUpdateConfigFileScript directive

**Syntax:** CustomUpdateConfigFileScript = *filename*  
**Default:** commented out in the default cmd.conf file

Whenever one or more entities have changed, the custom script at *filename*, specified by a full path, is called 30s later. Python bindings can be used to get information on the current setup.

## ConfigDumpPath directive

**Syntax:** ConfigDumpPath = *filename*  
**Default:** ConfigDumpPath = /var/spool/cmd/cmdaemon.config.dump

The ConfigDumpPath directive sets a dump file for dumping the configuration used by the power control script /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/pctl/pctl. The pctl script is a fallback script to allow power operations if CMDaemon is not running.

- If no directive is set (ConfigDumpPath = ""), then no dump is done.
- If a directive is set, then the administrator must match the variable cmdconfigfile in the powercontrol configuration file /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/pctl/config.py to the value of ConfigDumpPath. By default, the value of cmdconfigfile is set to /var/spool/cmd/cmdaemon.config.dump.

## SyslogHost directive

**Syntax:** SyslogHost = *hostname*  
**Default:** SyslogHost = "localhost"

The SyslogHost directive specifies the hostname of the syslog host.

## SyslogFacility directive

**Syntax:** SyslogFacility = *facility*  
**Default:** SyslogFacility = "LOG\_LOCAL6"

The default value of LOG\_LOCAL6 is set in:

- /etc/rsyslog.conf in RHEL, Ubuntu.

- `/etc/syslog-ng/syslog-ng.conf` in SLES versions

These are the configuration files for the default syslog daemons `syslog`, `rsyslog`, and `syslog-ng`, respectively, that come with the distribution. BCM redirects messages from CMdaemon to `/var/log/cmdaemon` only for the default syslog daemon that the distribution provides. So, if another syslog daemon other than the default is used, then the administrator has to configure the non-default syslog daemon facilities manually.

The value of `facility` must be one of: `LOG_KERN`, `LOG_USER`, `LOG_MAIL`, `LOG_DAEMON`, `LOG_AUTH`, `LOG_SYSLOG` or `LOG_LOCAL0..7`

## NameServerLocalhostLocation directive

**Syntax:** `AdvancedConfig = {"NameServerLocalhostLocation=0|1", ...}`

**Default:** `NameServerLocalhostLocation=0`

`NameServerLocalhostLocation` is a parameter of the `AdvancedConfig` (page 862) directive.

When set to 1, the location of the localhost as specified by the nameserver directive in `/etc/resolv.conf` is moved to the bottom of the list of nameserver entries. The default value of 0 places it at the top of those entries.

## ResolveToExternalName directive

**Syntax:** `ResolveToExternalName = true|false`

**Default:** `ResolveToExternalName = false`

The value of the `ResolveToExternalName` directive determines under which domain name the primary and secondary head node hostnames are visible from within the head nodes, and to which IP addresses their hostnames are resolved. Enabling this directive resolves the head nodes' hostnames to the IP addresses of their external interfaces.

Thus, on head nodes and regular nodes in both single-head and failover clusters

- with `ResolveToExternalName` disabled, the master hostname and the actual hostname of the head node (e.g. `head1`, `head2`) by default always resolve to the internal IP address of the head node.
- with `ResolveToExternalName` enabled, the master hostname and the actual hostname of the head node (e.g. `head1`, `head2`) by default always resolve to the external IP address of the head node.

The resolution behavior can be summarized by the following table:

*ResolveToExternalName Directive Effects*

on simple head, resolving: master head		on failover head, resolving: master head1 head2			on regular node, resolving: master head(s)		Using the DNS?
<b>ResolveToExternalName = False</b>							
I	I	I	I	I	I	I	No
I	I	I	I	I	I	I	Yes
<b>ResolveToExternalName = True</b>							
E	E	E	E	E	E	E	No
E	E	E	E	E	E	E	Yes

Key: I: resolves to internal IP address of head

E: resolves to external IP address of head

The system configuration files on the head nodes that get affected by this directive include `/etc/hosts` and, on SLES systems, also the `/etc/HOSTNAME`. Also, the DNS zone configuration files get affected.

Additionally, in both the single-head and failover clusters, using the “`hostname -f`” command on a head node while `ResolveToExternalName` is enabled results in the host’s Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) being returned with the host’s external domain name. That is, the domain name of the network that is specified as the “External network” in the base partition in `cmsh` (the output of “`cmsh -c "partition use base; get externalnetwork"`”).

Modifying the value of the `ResolveToExternalName` directive and restarting the CMDaemon while important system services (e.g. Slurm) are running should not be done. Doing so is likely to cause problems with accessing such services due to them then running with a different domain name than the one with which they originally started.

On a tangential note that is closely, but not directly related to the `ResolveToExternalName` directive: the cluster can be configured so that the “`hostname -f`” command executed on a regular node returns the FQDN of that node, and so that the FQDN in turn resolves to an external IP for that regular node. The details on how to do this are in the BCM Knowledge Base at <http://kb.brightcomputing.com/>. A search query for FQDN leads to the relevant entry.

## ResolveMasterToExternalName directive

**Syntax:** `AdvancedConfig = {"ResolveMasterToExternalName=0|1", ...}`

**Default:** `ResolveMasterToExternalName = 1`

`ResolveMasterToExternalName` is a parameter of the `AdvancedConfig` (page 862) directive.

`ResolveMasterToExternalName` can only be used if `ResolveToExternalName` (page 860) is active.

If set to 1 (the default), then the master head node, as specified by the name `master`, resolves to the IP address as set by `ResolveToExternalName`.

If set to 0 then the master head node resolves to the internal shared IP address.

## ResolveMasterToExternalDomainName directive

**Syntax:** `AdvancedConfig = {"ResolveMasterToExternalDomainName=0|1", ...}`

**Default:** `ResolveMasterToExternalDomainName = 1`

`ResolveMasterToExternalDomainName` is a parameter of the `AdvancedConfig` (page 862) directive.

`ResolveMasterToExternalDomainName` can only be used if `ResolveToExternalName` (page 860) is active.

The external domain name as defined for the external network, in the form `master.<external domain>`, can be used in `/etc/hosts` during name resolution.

If set to 1 (the default), then the external domain name is used in `/etc/hosts`.

If set to 0, then the external domain name is not used in `/etc/hosts`.

Resolution occurs as shown in the following table:

ResolveMasterToExternalDomainName Directive Effects							
on simple head, resolving: master head	on failover head, resolving: master head1 head2	on regular node, resolving: master head(s)	Using the DNS?				
<b>ResolveToExternalName = False</b>							
I	I	I	I	I	I	I	No
I	I	I	I	I	I	I	Yes
<b>ResolveToExternalName = True</b>							
E	E	I	E	E	I	I	No
E	E	I	E	E	I	E	Yes

Key: I: resolves to internal IP address of head

E: resolves to external IP address of head

## DisableLua directive

**Syntax:** DisableLua = true|false

**Default:** DisableLua = false

The value of the DisableLua directive determines if Lua code (section L.6) used in monitoring expressions can be executed.

## AdvancedConfig directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = { "<key1>=<value1>", "<key2>=<value2>", ... }

**Default:** Commented out in the default cmd.conf file

The AdvancedConfig directive is not part of the standard directives. It takes a set of key/value pairs as parameters, with each key/value pair allowing a particular functionality, and is quite normal in that respect. However, the functionality of a parameter to this directive is often applicable only under restricted conditions, or for non-standard configurations. The AdvancedConfig parameters are therefore generally not recommended for use by the administrator, nor are they generally documented.

Like for the other directives, only one AdvancedConfig directive line is used. This means that whatever functionality is to be enabled by this directive, its corresponding parameters must be added to that one line. These key/value pairs are therefore added by appending them to any existing AdvancedConfig key/value pairs, which means that the directive line can be a long list of key/value pairs to do with a variety of configurations.

### Managing Key/Value Pairs With The cm-manipulate-advanced-config.py Utility

The cm-manipulate-advanced-config.py utility can be used to make it easier to manage AdvancedConfig key/value pairs.

For example, to add a key/value pair key8=value8:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-manipulate-advanced-config.py key8=value8
Updated: /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf
```

To show the current state of the AdvancedConfig, the -s|--show option can be used:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-manipulate-advanced-config.py -s
== /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf ==
VirtualCluster=1
key8=value8
```

A key/value pair can be removed by specifying its key with the -r|--remove option:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-manipulate-advanced-config.py -r key8
Updated: /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-manipulate-advanced-config.py -s
== /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf ==
VirtualCluster=1
```

The utility can be used on cmd.conf in node images too, using the -i|--image option.

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-manipulate-advanced-config.py -i /cm/images/default-image
Updated: /cm/images/default-image/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf
```

The -q option causes the utility to exit with code 1 if cmd.conf has changed.

Further options can be seen with the -h|--help option.

## GlobalConfig directive

**Syntax:** GlobalConfig = { "<key1>=<value1>", "<key2>=<value2>", ... }

**Default:** *not in the default cmd.conf file*

The GlobalConfig directive is not part of the standard directives. It takes a set of key/value pairs as parameters, with each key/value pair allowing a particular functionality, and is quite normal in that respect. However, the parameter to this directive only needs to be specified on the head node. The non-head node CMDaemons take this value upon connection, which means that the cmd.conf file on the non-head nodes do not need to have this specified.

This allows nodes to set up, for example, their search domains using the MaximalSearchDomains GlobalConfig directive (page 854).

Like for the other directives, only one GlobalConfig directive line is used. This means that whatever functionality is to be enabled by this directive, its corresponding parameters must be added to that one line. These key/value pairs are therefore added by appending them to any existing GlobalConfig key/value pairs, which means that the directive line can be a long list of key/value pairs to do with a variety of configurations.

## ScriptEnvironment directive

**Syntax:** ScriptEnvironment = { "CMD\_ENV1=<value1>", "CMD\_ENV2=<value2>", ... }

**Default:** *Commented out in the default cmd.conf file*

The ScriptEnvironment directive sets extra environment variables for CMMDaemon and child processes.

For example, if CMMDaemon is running behind a web proxy, then the environment variable http\_proxy may need to be set for it. If, for example, the proxy is the host brawndo, and it is accessed via port 8080 using a username/password pair of joe/electrolytes, then the directive becomes:

```
ScriptEnvironment = { "http_proxy=joe:electrolytes@brawndo:8080" }
```

## BurnSpoolDir directive

**Syntax:** BurnSpoolDir = *path*

**Default:** BurnSpoolDir = "/var/spool/burn/"

The BurnSpoolDir directive specifies the directory under which node burn log files are placed (Chapter 11 of the *Installation Manual*). The log files are logged under a directory named after the booting MAC address of the NIC of the node. For example, for a MAC address of 00:0c:29:92:55:5e the directory is /var/spool/burn/00-0c-29-92-55-5e.

## IdleThreshold directive

**Syntax:** `IdleThreshold = number`

**Default:** `IdleThreshold = 1.0`

The `IdleThreshold` directive sets a threshold value for `loadone`. If `loadone` exceeds this value, then data producers that have `Only when idle` (page 558) set to true (enabled), will not run. If the data producer is sampled on a regular node rather than on the head node, then `cmd.conf` on the regular node should be modified and its CMDaemon restarted.

## MonitoringPath directive

**Syntax:** `AdvancedConfig = {"MonitoringPath=path", ...}`

**Default:** Implicit value: `"MonitoringPath=/var/spool/cmd/monitoring/"`

`MonitoringPath` is a parameter of the `AdvancedConfig` (page 862) directive.

Its value determines the path of the directory in which monitoring data is saved (section 14.8).

## MaxServiceFailureCount directive

**Syntax:** `AdvancedConfig = {"MaxServiceFailureCount=number", ...}`

**Default:** Implicit value: `"MaxServiceFailureCount=10"`

`MaxServiceFailureCount` is a parameter of the `AdvancedConfig` (page 862) directive.

Its value determines the number of times a service failure event is logged (page 170). Restart attempts on the service still continue when this number is exceeded.

## InitdScriptTimeout directive

**Syntax:** `AdvancedConfig = {"InitdScriptTimeout[.service]=timeout", ...}`

**Default:** Implicit value: `"InitdScriptTimeout=30"`

`InitdScriptTimeout` is a parameter of the `AdvancedConfig` (page 862) directive. It can be set globally or locally:

- **Global (all services)**

`InitdScriptTimeout` can be set as a global value for init scripts, by assigning `timeout` as a period in seconds. If an init script fails to start up its service within this period, then CMDaemon kills the service and attempts to restart it.

- If `InitdScriptTimeout` has a value for `timeout` set, then all init scripts have a default timeout of `timeout` seconds.
- If `InitdScriptTimeout` has no `timeout` value set, then all init scripts have a default timeout of 30 seconds.

- **Local (for a specific service)**

If `InitdScriptTimeout.service` is assigned a `timeout` value, then the init script for that `service` times out in `timeout` seconds. This timeout overrides, for that service only, any existing global default timeout.

When a timeout happens for an init script attempting to start a service, the event is logged. If the number of restart attempts exceeds the value determined by the `MaxServiceFailureCount` directive (page 864), then the event is no longer logged, but the restart attempts continue.

## Example

An fhgfs startup takes a bit longer than 30 seconds, and therefore times out with the default timeout value of 30s. This results in the following logs in /var/log/cmdaemon:

```
cmd: [SERVICE] Debug: ProgramRunner: /etc/init.d/fhgfs-client restart
[DONE] 0 9
cmd: [SERVICE] Debug: /etc/init.d/fhgfs-client restart, exitcode = 0,
signal = 9
```

Here, *service* is *fhgfs-client*, so setting the parameter can be done with:

```
AdvancedConfig = { ... , "initdScriptTimeout.fhgfs-client=60", ... }
```

This allows a more generous timeout of 60 seconds instead.

Restarting CMDDaemon then should allow the fhgs startup to complete

```
# systemctl restart cmd
```

A more refined approach that avoids a complete CMDDaemon restart would be to execute a *reset* (page 170) on the *fhgfs-client* from within CMDDaemon, as follows:

```
[basecm11->category[default]->services[fhgfs-client]]% reset fhgfs-client
Successfully reset service fhgfs-client on: node001,node002
[basecm11->category[default]->services[fhgfs-client]]%
```

## CMDaemonListenOnInterfaces directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"CMDaemonListenOnInterfaces=<interfaces>", ...}

**Default:** all interfaces listening to port 8081

*CMDaemonListenOnInterfaces* is a parameter of the *AdvancedConfig* (page 862) directive.

When set explicitly, CMDDaemon listens only to the interfaces listed in *<interfaces>*. The form of *<interfaces>* is a comma-separated list of interface device names:

### Example

```
CMDaemonListenOnInterfaces=eth0,eth1,eth0:0,eth0:1
```

If the interface list item *lo* is omitted from the list of names, it will still be listened to. This is because CMDDaemon must always be able to talk to itself on the loopback interface.

## DisableInotifyInterface directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"DisableInotifyInterface =0|1"}

**Default:** 0

*DisableInotifyInterface* is a parameter of the *AdvancedConfig* (page 862) directive.

When set to 1 CMDDaemon ignores inotify events from all interfaces.

When set to 0 CMDDaemon does not ignore inotify events from all interfaces.

## IgnoreInotifyInterface directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"IgnoreInotifyInterface =<interfaces>", ...}

**Syntax:** GlobalConfig = {"IgnoreInotifyInterface =<interfaces>", ...}

**Default:** veth\*,lxc\*,fg-\*,qg-\*,qr-\*,sg-\*,tbr-\*,qbr\*,qvbr\*,qvo\*,cali\*,flannel\*,ecu\_\*,chassis\_\*,enx\*,az\*,tap\*,rdma\*,cni0,/[a-f0-9]12\_[hc]/

In the preceding lines showing the value for Default, the line ending with chassis\_\*, must be concatenated to the line starting with enx\*,

IgnoreInotifyInterface is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive, as well as the GlobalConfig (page 863) directive.

IgnoreInotifyInterface is active if DisableInotifyInterface is 0.

By default, the directive has CMdaemon ignore the normally harmless messages that are typically generated by Kubernetes as Calico creates and removes interfaces.

CMdaemon ignores events from the interfaces listed in <interfaces>. The form of <interfaces> is a comma-separated list of interface device names, with some globbing allowed.

## CookieCooldownTime directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"CookieCooldownTime=*number* from 60 to 86400", ...}

**Default:** 900

CookieCooldownTime is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive.

It defines the number of seconds until the Base View connection to CMdaemon times out, if there is no user activity at the Base View client side.

## DHCPMaxleaseTime directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"DHCPMaxleaseTime=*number*", ...}

**Default:** *client default*

DHCPMaxleaseTime is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive.

DHCPMaxleaseTime sets max-lease-time in DHCPOffer. This is the maximum lease time, in seconds, that the DHCP server on the head node allows to the DHCP client on the node.

## SlurmDisableAccountingParsing directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"SlurmDisableAccountingParsing=0|1", ...}

**Default:** 0

SlurmDisableAccountingParsing is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. If set to 1, it disables collection of accounting information for the Slurm workload manager.

## SlurmStraightExtraTopology directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"SlurmStraightExtraTopology=0|1", ...}

**Default:** 1

SlurmStraightExtraTopology is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. If set to 0, then the order of switches is reversed when setting extra values for SlurmTopology (page 380).

## SlurmConcatTopologySwitchName directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"SlurmConcatTopologySwitchName=0|1", ...}

**Default:** 0

SlurmConcatTopologySwitchName is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. If set to 1, then it allows concatenation of the switch names in the topology defined via the SlurmTopology extra values (page 381).

## JobsSamplingMetricsInterval directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"JobsSamplingMetricsInterval=<number>", ...}

**Default:** 60

JobsSamplingMetricsInterval is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. Its value is a time period, in seconds, and it applies only to metrics associated with job queues. Such metric sampling is carried out with this time period if job queues are added, or if job queues are re-created after disappearing.

## MembershipQueryInterval directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"MembershipQueryInterval=<number>", ...}

**Default:** 4

MembershipQueryInterval is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. Its value is a time period, in seconds. This time period value elapses between the checks that CMDaemon makes to determine the node states (section 5.5) in a cluster. If the network is very congested, then a larger value can be used to reduce the network load caused by these checks.

## AddUserScript directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"AddUserScript=<path>", ...}

**Default:** none

AddUserScript is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. If this parameter is set to a path leading to a script, and if a new user is added using cmsh or Base View, then the script is automatically run by CMDaemon, with the username of the new user automatically passed as the first argument to the script. The script has a default timeout of 5 seconds.

## AddUserScriptPasswordInEnvironment directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"AddUserScriptPasswordInEnvironment=0|1", ...}

**Default:** 0

AddUserScriptPasswordInEnvironment is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. If this parameter is set to 1, then CMDaemon passes the `CMD_USER_PASSWORD` environment variable to the script defined by the AddUserScript directive.

## RemoveUserScript directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"RemoveUserScript=<path>", ...}

**Default:** none

RemoveUserScript is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. If this parameter is set to a path leading to a script, and if an existing user is removed using cmsh or Base View, then the script is automatically run by CMDaemon. The script has a default timeout of 5 seconds.

## AddUserScriptTimeout directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"AddUserScriptTimeout=<number>", ...}

**Default:** 5

AddUserScriptTimeout is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. It sets the timeout

value in seconds, for the script set by AddUserScript.

## RemoveUserScriptTimeout directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"RemoveUserScriptTimeout=<number>", ...}

**Default:** 5

RemoveUserScriptTimeout is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. It sets the timeout value in seconds, for the script set by RemoveUserScript.

## AutomaticMountAll directive

**Syntax:** AutomaticMountAll=0|1

**Default:** 1

If the AutomaticMountAll directive is set to the default of 1, then a `mount -a` operation is carried out when a mount change is carried out by CMDaemon.

The `mount -a` operation has to do with attempting to mount devices listed in `/etc/fstab`. It should not be confused with auto-mounting of filesystems, which has to do with mounting an arbitrary device to a filesystem automatically.

If the AutomaticMountAll directive is set to 0, then `/etc/fstab` is written, but the `mount -a` command is not run by CMDaemon. However, the administrator should be aware that since `mount -a` is run by the distribution during booting, a node reboot implements the mount change.

## AllowImageUpdateWithAutoMount directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"AllowImageUpdateWithAutoMount=0|1|2|3", ...}

**Default:** 0

The AllowImageUpdateWithAutoMount directive is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. The values it takes decide how an auto-mounted filesystem should be dealt with during image updates (section 5.6.2) or grab to image (syncing node-to-image, section 9.5.2). It must be set in `cmd.conf` per software image or per node where the automount is running, and the changes activated as usual, as described on page 843.

Value	Description
0	If auto-mount is running, abort provisioning (default)
1	If auto-mount is running, warn but continue
2	Do not check auto-mount status. This saves a little time, but it risks data loss, unless the automounted filesystem has been added to <code>excludelistupdate</code> . If the automounted filesystem is not added to <code>excludelistupdate</code> , then if the automounted filesystem happens to be unavailable at the time that an image update is carried out, then the <code>rsync</code> process can end up deleting the automounted filesystem contents during the <code>rsync</code> , because it assumes that content should not be there.
3	Pretend auto-mount is running. This prevents an image update

How an auto-mounted filesystem can be configured using the `autofs` service in BCM is discussed in section 3.13. The need for adding the automounted filesystem to `excludelistupdate` is discussed on page 280.

## DNS::options\_allow-query directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"DNS::options\_allow-query=<subnet1>, <subnet2>, ...", ...}  
**Default:** unset

The DNS::options\_allow-query directive is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. If a subnet value is specified, in CIDR notation, then that subnet can query the DNS running on the head node. Setting a subnet places an entry within the allow-query section of /etc/named.conf.

The standard directive PublicDNS (page 854) simply adds the entry 0.0.0.0/0 to the allow-query section and can be used if no specific subnet needs to be added.

## CipherList directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"CipherList=<ciphers>", ...}  
**Default:** CipherList=ALL:!aNULL:!eNULL

The CipherList directive is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. It sets the cipher list of the OpenSSL suite that CMDaemon negotiates with clients. Ciphers in the cipher list can be viewed with:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# openssl ciphers -v
ECDHE-RSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384 TLSv1.2 Kx=ECDH     Au=RSA  Enc=AESGCM(256) Mac=AEAD
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384 TLSv1.2 Kx=ECDH     Au=ECDSA Enc=AESGCM(256) Mac=AEAD
ECDHE-RSA-AES256-SHA384 TLSv1.2 Kx=ECDH     Au=RSA  Enc=AES(256)  Mac=SHA384
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-SHA384 TLSv1.2 Kx=ECDH     Au=ECDSA Enc=AES(256)  Mac=SHA384
ECDHE-RSA-AES256-SHA    SSLv3 Kx=ECDH     Au=RSA  Enc=AES(256)  Mac=SHA1
...
...
```

The columns are: the cipher name, SSL protocol, key exchange used, authentication mechanism, encryption used, and MAC digest algorithm.

Ciphers can be specified for the CipherList directive according to the specification described in **man ciphers.1**. For example, as:

### Example

```
AdvancedConfig = {"CipherList=ALL:!aNULL:!ADH:!eNULL:!LOW:!EXP:RC4+RSA:+HIGH:+MEDIUM"}
```

An analogous non-CMDaemon directive is found in LDAP client-server negotiation, where TLSCipherSuite can be set in the slapd.conf file, described in **man slapd.conf.5**.

## SSLServerMethod directive (with TLS masking)

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"SSLServerMethod=TLS <versionnumber>", ...}  
**Syntax:** GlobalConfig = {"SSLServerMethod=TLS <versionnumber>", ...}  
**Masking syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"TLS <versionnumber>=<boolean>", ...}  
**Masking syntax:** GlobalConfig = {"TLS <versionnumber>=<boolean>", ...}  
**Default:** GlobalConfig = { "TLS 1.2=1", "TLS 1.3=1", ... }

The SSLServerMethod directive is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive, as well as the GlobalConfig (page 863) directive. It sets the SSL server method for the OpenSSL suite that CMDaemon negotiates with clients. Possible values for <versionnumber> are:

- 1

- 1.1
- 1.2
- 1.3

By default, with no SSLServerMethod directive, TLS versions 1.2 and 1.3 are enabled.

This is because there are still some SSL clients that require a TLS 1.2 cipher and have no TLS 1.3 cipher negotiation ability.

If the SSLServerMethod directive is specified, then only that TLS version is negotiated. For example, to allow only TLS 1.2 negotiation:

### Example

```
GlobalConfig = { "SSLServerMethod=TLS 1.2", ... }
```

The SSLServerMethod directive is implied by the TLS masking syntax. The TLS masking syntax allows TLS negotiation methods to be set concurrently. For example, TLS 1 and TLS1.1 could be disabled, and TLS 1.2 and TLS 1.3 could be enabled, with:

### Example

```
GlobalConfig = { "TLS 1=0", "TLS 1.1=0", "TLS 1.2=1", "TLS 1.3=1", ... }
```

The GlobalConfig value is the directive that the cluster administrator should set in most cases. It only needs to be set on cmd.conf on the head node (or head nodes in a high availability configuration), in order to configure the same TLS negotiation settings for the regular nodes.

The GlobalConfig value is overridden by the AdvancedConfig value. The AdvancedConfig value needs to be set on cmd.conf on the head node(s), but also needs to be set on the non-head nodes that are to be disabled. Setting the AdvancedConfig directive allows custom configuration of the TLS negotiations to be carried out per node, and if the negotiations do not match with the other end, then other settings are tried. This does mean that sometimes nodes with the extra settings end up running extra processes for no reason. Running the directive as an AdvancedConfig is therefore suboptimal for most reasonable use cases.

Reverting to the TLS 1.1 fallback cipher availability of earlier versions of CMdaemon is possible by setting:

```
AdvancedConfig = { "TLS 1.1=1", "TLS 1.2=1", "TLS 1.3=1" }
```

Setting this brings with it the risk of allowing cryptographic downgrade attacks. It is therefore not recommended, and is also why it is disabled by default.

## JobInformationDisabled directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"JobInformationDisabled=0|1", ...}

**Syntax:** GlobalConfig = {"JobInformationDisabled=0|1", ...}

**Default:** JobInformationDisabled=0

The JobInformationDisabled directive is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive, as well as the GlobalConfig (page 863) directive. If set to 1 it disables job-based monitoring (Chapter 11). The details of how this is done are discussed shortly.

For a cluster that is running millions of jobs at a time, job-based monitoring can typically consume significant resources. The monitoring of data for so many small jobs is typically not useful and not of interest. For such a case, setting this directive improves cluster performance by not having to deal with the information on the current jobs running on the cluster.

The GlobalConfig value is the directive that the cluster administrator should set in most cases. It only needs to be set on cmd.conf on the head node (or head nodes in a high availability configuration).

Setting it disables the collection of job information by the nodes running the jobs, and no collection of the job information from those nodes is done by the head (monitoring) node.

The `GlobalConfig` value is overridden by the `AdvancedConfig` value. The `AdvancedConfig` value needs to be set on `cmd.conf` on the head node(s), but also needs to be set on the non-head nodes that are to be disabled. Setting the `AdvancedConfig` directive still allows job information to be collected by the nodes running the jobs, but the information is not collected from the nodes by the head (monitoring) node. This means that nodes are running extra processes for probably no reason. Running the directive as an `AdvancedConfig` is therefore suboptimal for most use cases.

## JobInformationKeepDuration directive

**Syntax:** `AdvancedConfig = {"JobInformationKeepDuration=<number>", ...}`

**Default:** `JobInformationKeepDuration=2419200`

The `JobInformationKeepDuration` directive is a parameter of the `AdvancedConfig` (page 862) directive. It takes on a value in seconds. If a job has finished more than that many seconds ago, then it will be removed along with all its monitoring data from the database. By default it is set to 28 days ( $24 \times 3600 \times 28$  seconds).

If `persistent` is set to `yes` (`cmsh:wlm>jobs`), then job information is not removed even after `JobInformationKeepDuration` has been exceeded.

## JobInformationChargeBackKeepDuration directive

**Syntax:** `AdvancedConfig = {"JobInformationChargeBackKeepDuration=<number>", ...}`

**Default:** `JobInformationChargeBackKeepDuration=158112000`

The `JobInformationChargeBackKeepDuration` directive is a parameter of the `AdvancedConfig` (page 862) directive. It takes on a value in seconds. If a job has finished more than that many seconds ago, then it will be removed along with all its monitoring data from the database. By default it is set to a little more than 5 years ( $24 \times 3600 \times 366 \times 5$  seconds).

## JobInformationKeepCount directive

**Syntax:** `AdvancedConfig = {"JobInformationKeepCount=<number>", ...}`

**Default:** `JobInformationKeepCount=8192`

The `JobInformationKeepCount` directive is a parameter of the `AdvancedConfig` (page 862) directive. If the total number of jobs is greater than (`JobInformationKeepCount + 10%`), then the job record and its data content are discarded, starting from the oldest job first, until the total number of jobs remaining becomes `JobInformationKeepCount`. If it is set to 0, then none of the job records and content are removed.

The maximum value for this directive is 1 million.

## JobInformationChargeBackKeepCount directive

**Syntax:** `AdvancedConfig = {"JobInformationChargeBackKeepCount=<number>", ...}`

**Default:** `JobInformationChargeBackKeepCount=1048576`

The `JobInformationChargeBackKeepCount` directive is a parameter of the `AdvancedConfig` (page 862) directive. If the total number of jobs is greater than (`JobInformationChargeBackKeepCount + 10%`), then the job record and its data content are discarded, starting from the oldest job first, until the total number of jobs remaining becomes `JobInformationChargeBackKeepCount`. If it is set to 0, then none of

the job records and content are removed.

The default value of about 1 million corresponds to about 0.5 GB of storage.

The maximum value for this directive is about 1 billion (1,073,741,824), which corresponds to about 500 GB of storage.

### JobInformationMinimalJobDuration directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"JobInformationMinimalJobDuration=<number>" , ...}

**Default:** JobInformationMinimalJobDuration=0

The JobInformationMinimalJobDuration directive is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. If set, then jobs that run for less than this number of seconds are not stored in the cache. Its default value of 0 seconds means that all jobs are handled.

### JobInformationFlushInterval directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"JobInformationFlushInterval=<number>" , ...}

**Default:** JobInformationFlushInterval=600

The JobInformationFlushInterval directive is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. If this interval, in seconds, is set, then the cache is flushed to the database with that interval. Its default value is 10 minutes ( $10 \times 60$  seconds). Values of around 30 seconds or less will conflict with the default CMDaemon maintenance timeout value of 30 seconds, and will mostly simply add load.

### JobInformationChargeBackRemoveInterval directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"JobInformationChargeBackRemoveInterval=<number>" , ...}

**Default:** JobInformationChargeBackRemoveInterval=600

The JobInformationChargeBackRemoveInterval directive is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. If this interval, in seconds, is set, then the cache is flushed to the database with that interval. Its default value is 10 minutes ( $10 \times 60$  seconds). Values of around 30 seconds or less will conflict with the default CMDaemon maintenance timeout value of 30 seconds, and will mostly simply add load.

The maximum remove interval is 1 day (86400 seconds).

### ActionLoggerFile directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"ActionLoggerFile=filename" , ...}

**Default:** /var/spool/cmd/actions.log

The directive is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive. Its value overrides the default path.

The directive needs to be implemented per node or image.

### ActionLoggerOnSuccess directive

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"ActionLoggerOnSuccess=0|1" , ...}

**Default:** ActionLoggerOnSuccess=0

The directive is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive.

By default, only failed actions are logged. Successful actions are also logged if setting ActionLoggerOnSuccess=1

The directive needs to be implemented per node or image.

The log file shows timestamped output with one line per run for an action script, with the script response.

### Example

```
(time) /path/to/action/script [ timeout ]
(time) /path/to/action/script [ failed ] (exit code: 1)
(time) /path/to/action/script [ success ]
```

The success line only appears if ActionLoggerOnSuccess=1.

## **FailoverPowerRetries directive**

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = {"FailoverPowerRetries=<number>" , ...}

**Default:** FailoverPowerRetries=5

The FailoverPowerRetries directive is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive.

After a decision to carry out the failover has been made, CMDaemon sends a power off command to the BMC of the head node that is meant to be powered off. If the power off command fails, then on getting the fail response, CMDaemon waits for 1 second. After that second, it sends out a power off command again. The value of FailoverPowerRetries is the number of times that CMDaemon retries sending the power off command to the BMC of the head node that is intended to be powered off during the failover, if the response from the power off command remains a fail response.

The power down attempts cease, either when the BMC reports that the head node is OFF, or when the number of attempts reaches the FailoverPowerRetries value.

FailoverPowerRetries takes a maximum value of 120.

A value of 0 means that 1 attempt to power off is carried out during failover, but no retry is attempted after the first attempt.

Because CMDaemon waits for a period of 1s before checking for an OFF response, it means that the number of retries is about the same as the number of seconds before CMDaemon decides that powering off has failed, unless the OFF response also takes some time to get to CMDaemon.

Increasing the value for this directive can be useful for some BMC cards that take longer than about 5s to report their power status, because the power off attempt may otherwise time out.

## **AddUserDefaultGroupID directive**

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = { "AddUserDefaultGroupID = <number>" , ...}

**Default:** none

The AddUserDefaultGroupID directive is a parameter of the AdvancedConfig (page 862) directive.

If the AddUserDefaultGroupID is unset, then the default group ID of a new user is the same as the User ID.

If the AddUserDefaultGroupID is set, then the set value becomes the default GUID of new users, when new users are created via the cmsh or Base View front ends to CMDaemon.

The directive is not intended to set a non-default group occasionally during user creation. In that case, a non-default group ID can be set from the cmsh or Base View front ends, by setting the groupid value for the user.

To set a default group for a directory, while retaining the default group for the user, it may be possible to use the setgid bit for a directory.

## **MaxMeasurablesPerProducer directive**

**Syntax:** AdvancedConfig = { "MaxMeasurablesPerProducer = <number>" , ...}

**Default:** 500

The `MaxMeasurablesPerProducer` directive is a parameter of the `AdvancedConfig` (page 862) directive.

By default there is a software limit of 500 measurables per data producer. If this limit is exceeded, then the CMDaemon monitoring info logs show complaints about “too many measurables”.

In that case, if the cluster hardware is not too slow, and if the measurables produced are not some kind of hardware garbage data values, then increasing the value of this directive should allow more measurables to be dealt with.

## HeadNodeCertificateNameAlternatives directive

**Syntax:** `AdvancedConfig = {"HeadNodeCertificateNameAlternatives=<name,...>"}`, ...}

**Default:** `none`

The `HeadNodeCertificateNameAlternatives` directive is a key of the `AdvancedConfig` (page 862) directive. It takes on a comma-separated list of alternative DNS names as values to add to the SSL certificate that it generates for CMDaemon.

The old certificates must be removed before the new ones are used.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cm-manipulate-advanced-config.py HeadNodeCertificateNameAlternatives=myname1,myname2
[root@basecm11 ~]# openssl x509 -in /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cert.pem -noout -text | grep -o DNS:myname1.*$ 
[root@basecm11 ~]# rm /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cert.pem,key
[root@basecm11 ~]# systemctl restart cmd      #new certificates auto-generated
[root@basecm11 ~]# openssl x509 -in /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cert.pem -noout -text | grep -o DNS:myname1.*$ 
DNS:myname1, DNS:myname1:8081, DNS:myname2, DNS:myname2:8081
```

# D

# Disk Partitioning And RAID Configuration

Disk partitioning is initially configured on the head node and regular nodes during installation (section 3.3.16 of the *Installation Manual*).

For the head node it cannot be changed from within BCM after implementation, and the head node is therefore not considered further in this section.

For regular nodes, partitioning can be changed after the initial configuration, by specifying a particular set of values according to the XML partitioning schema described in section D.1.

For example, for regular nodes, changing the value set for the XML tag of:

```
<xss:element name='filesystem'>
```

decides which filesystem type out of ext2, ext3, ext4, xfs, and so on, is used. The changes are implemented during the node partitioning stage of the node-installer (section 5.4.6).

Diskless operation can also be implemented by using an appropriate XML file. This is introduced in section 3.12.1.

Software or hardware RAID configuration can also be set for the regular nodes. The layouts must be specified following the XML schema files stored on the head node in the directory /cm/node-installer/scripts/:

- Software RAID configuration is set in the global partitioning XML schema file `disks.xsd` (section D.1).
- Hardware RAID configuration is set in the separate hardware RAID XML schema file `raid.xsd` (section D.2).

## D.1 Structure Of Partitioning Definition—The Global Partitioning XML Schema Definition File

In BCM, regular node partitioning setups have their global structure specified using an XML schema definition file, which is installed on the head node in /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/xsd/disks.xsd.

The schema can also be viewed with:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ]# cmsh -c "main xsdschema disks" | less
```

This schema does not include a hardware RAID definition. The hardware RAID schema is defined separately in the file `raid.xsd` (section D.2).

Examples of schemas in use, with and without hardware RAID, are given in sections D.3 and beyond.

An XML file can be validated against an XML schema definition file using the `xmllint` tool:

## Example

```
[root@basecm11 ]# cd /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/xsd
[root@basecm11 xsd]# xmllint --noout --schema disks.xsd ../disk-setup/x86_64-slave-diskless.xml
../disk-setup/x86_64-slave-diskless.xml validates
[root@basecm11 xsd]#
```

## XML schema for partitioning

```
<?xml version='1.0'?>

<!--
#
# SPDX-FileCopyrightText: Copyright (c) 2023 NVIDIA CORPORATION & AFFILIATES. All rights reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: LicenseRef-NvidiaProprietary
#
# NVIDIA CORPORATION, its affiliates and licensors retain all intellectual
# property and proprietary rights in and to this material, related
# documentation and any modifications thereto. Any use, reproduction,
# disclosure or distribution of this material and related documentation
# without an express license agreement from NVIDIA CORPORATION or
# its affiliates is strictly prohibited.
#
This is the XML schema description of the partition layout XML file.
It can be used by software to validate partitioning XML files.
There are however a few things the schema does not check:
- There should be exactly one root mountpoint (/), unless diskless.
- There can only be one partition with a 'max' size on a particular device.
- Something similar applies to logical volumes.
- The 'auto' size can only be used for a swap partition.
- Partitions of type 'linux swap' should not have a filesystem.
- Partitions of type 'linux raid' should not have a filesystem.
- Partitions of type 'linux lvm' should not have a filesystem.
- Partitions of type 'unspecified' should not have a filesystem.
- If a raid is a member of another raid then it can not have a filesystem.
- Partitions, which are listed as raid members, should be of type 'linux raid'.
- If diskless is not set, there should be at least one device.
- The priority tag is only valid for partitions which have type set to
  "linux swap".
-->

<xs:schema xmlns:xs='http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema' elementFormDefault='qualified'>

<xs:element name='diskSetup'>

  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:sequence>
      <xs:element name='diskless' type='diskless' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1'/>
      <xs:element name='device' type='device' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='unbounded'/>
      <xs:element name='raid' type='raid' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='unbounded'/>
      <xs:element name='volumeGroup' type='volumeGroup' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='unbounded'/>
      <xs:element name='subVolumes' type='subVolumes' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='unbounded'/>
    </xs:sequence>
  </xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
```

```

<xs:key name='partitionAndRaidIds'>
  <xs:selector xpath='./raid|./partition'/>
  <xs:field xpath='@id' />
</xs:key>

<xs:keyref name='raidMemberIds' refer='partitionAndRaidIds'>
  <xs:selector xpath='./raid/member' />
  <xs:field xpath='.' />
</xs:keyref>

<xs:keyref name='volumeGroupPhysicalVolumes' refer='partitionAndRaidIds'>
  <xs:selector xpath='./volumeGroup/physicalVolumes/member' />
  <xs:field xpath='.' />
</xs:keyref>

<xs:keyref name='subVolumeIds' refer='partitionAndRaidIds'>
  <xs:selector xpath='./subVolumes' />
  <xs:field xpath='@parent' />
</xs:keyref>

<xs:unique name='raidAndVolumeMembersUnique'>
  <xs:selector xpath='./member' />
  <xs:field xpath='.' />
</xs:unique>

<xs:unique name='deviceNodesUnique'>
  <xs:selector xpath='./device/blockdev' />
  <xs:field xpath='.' />
  <xs:field xpath='@mode' />
</xs:unique>

<xs:unique name='mountPointsUnique'>
  <xs:selector xpath='./mountPoint' />
  <xs:field xpath='.' />
</xs:unique>

<xs:unique name='assertNamesUnique'>
  <xs:selector xpath='./assert' />
  <xs:field xpath='@name' />
</xs:unique>

</xs:element>

<xs:complexType name='diskless'>
  <xs:attribute name='maxMemSize' type='memSize' use='required' />
  <xs:attribute name='mountOptions' type='xs:string' />
</xs:complexType>

<xs:simpleType name='memSize'>
  <xs:restriction base='xs:string'>
    <xs:pattern value='([0-9]+[MG])|100%|[0-9][0-9]%' />
  </xs:restriction>
</xs:simpleType>

```

```

<xs:simpleType name='stripeSize'>
  <xs:restriction base='xs:string'>
    <xs:pattern value='4|8|16|32|64|128|256|512|1024|1K|2048|2K|4096|4K' />
    <xs:pattern value='8192|8K|16384|16K|32768|32K|65536|64K|131072|128K' />
    <xs:pattern value='262144|256K|524288|512K|1048576|1024K|1M' />
    <xs:pattern value='2097152|2048K|2M|4194304|4096K|4M' />
  </xs:restriction>
</xs:simpleType>

<xs:simpleType name='size'>
  <xs:restriction base='xs:string'>
    <xs:pattern value='max|auto|[0-9]+[MGT]' />
  </xs:restriction>
</xs:simpleType>

<xs:simpleType name='relativeOrAbsoluteSize'>
  <xs:restriction base='xs:string'>
    <xs:pattern value='max|auto|[0-9]+[MGT]| [0-9]+([.][0-9]+)?%|[0-9]+/[0-9]++' />
  </xs:restriction>
</xs:simpleType>

<xs:simpleType name='extentSize'>
  <xs:restriction base='xs:string'>
    <xs:pattern value='([0-9])+M' />
  </xs:restriction>
</xs:simpleType>

<xs:simpleType name='blockdevName'>
  <xs:restriction base='xs:string'>
    <xs:pattern value='/dev/.+' />
  </xs:restriction>
</xs:simpleType>

<xs:complexType name='blockdev'>
  <xs:simpleContent>
    <xs:extension base="blockdevName">
      <xs:attribute name="mode" default='normal'>
        <xs:simpleType>
          <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
            <xs:pattern value="normal|cloud|both" />
          </xs:restriction>
        </xs:simpleType>
      </xs:attribute>
    </xs:extension>
  </xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name='device'>
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:element name='blockdev' type='blockdev' minOccurs='1' maxOccurs='unbounded' />
    <xs:element name='vendor' type='xs:string' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' />
    <xs:element name='requiredSize' type='size' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' />
    <xs:element name='assert' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='unbounded'>
      <xs:complexType>
        <xs:simpleContent>

```

```

<xs:extension base='xs:string'>
  <xs:attribute name='name' use='required'>
    <xs:simpleType>
      <xs:restriction base='xs:string'>
        <xs:pattern value='[a-zA-Z0-9-_]+'/>
      </xs:restriction>
    </xs:simpleType>
  </xs:attribute>
  <xs:attribute name='args' type='xs:string' />
</xs:extension>
</xs:simpleContent>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element>
<xs:element name='alignMiB' type='xs:boolean' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' />
<xs:element name="partitionTable" minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1'>
  <xs:simpleType>
    <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
      <xs:pattern value="gpt|msdos"/>
    </xs:restriction>
  </xs:simpleType>
</xs:element>
<xs:element name='partition' type='partition' minOccurs='1' maxOccurs='unbounded' />
</xs:sequence>
<xs:attribute name='origin' type='xs:string' />
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name='partition'>
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:element name='size' type='relativeOrAbsoluteSize' />
    <xs:element name='type'>
      <xs:simpleType>
        <xs:restriction base='xs:string'>
          <xs:enumeration value='linux' />
          <xs:enumeration value='linux swap' />
          <xs:enumeration value='linux raid' />
          <xs:enumeration value='linux lvm' />
          <xs:enumeration value='unspecified' />
        </xs:restriction>
      </xs:simpleType>
    </xs:element>
    <xs:element name='encryption' type='encryption' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' />
    <xs:group ref='filesystem' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' />
    <xs:element name='priority' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1'>
      <xs:simpleType>
        <xs:restriction base="xs:integer">
          <xs:minInclusive value="0" />
          <xs:maxInclusive value="32767" />
        </xs:restriction>
      </xs:simpleType>
    </xs:element>
  </xs:sequence>
  <xs:attribute name='id' type='xs:string' use='required' />
  <xs:attribute name='partitiontype' type='xs:string' />
</xs:complexType>

```

```

<xs:complexType name='encryption' mixed="true">
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:element name='type' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1'>
      <xs:simpleType>
        <xs:restriction base='xs:string'>
          <xs:enumeration value='luks2' />
          <xs:enumeration value='luks1' />
          <!-- rest of this enum is intentionally left blank -->
        </xs:restriction>
      </xs:simpleType>
    </xs:element>
    <xs:element name='cipher' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' type='xs:string' />
    <xs:element name='hash' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' type='xs:string' />
    <xs:element name='keySize' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' type='xs:integer' />
    <xs:element name='name' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' type='xs:string' />
    <xs:element name='allowDiscards' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' type='xs:boolean' default='true' />
    <xs:element name='custom' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' type='xs:string' />
  </xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:group name='filesystem'>
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:element name='filesystem'>
      <xs:simpleType>
        <xs:restriction base='xs:string'>
          <xs:enumeration value='ext2' />
          <xs:enumeration value='ext3' />
          <xs:enumeration value='ext4' />
          <xs:enumeration value='xfs' />
          <xs:enumeration value='btrfs' />
          <xs:enumeration value='zfs' />
          <xs:enumeration value='fat32' />
          <xs:enumeration value='fat' />
        </xs:restriction>
      </xs:simpleType>
    </xs:element>
    <xs:element name='mkfsFlags' type='xs:string' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' />
    <xs:element name='mountPoint' type='xs:string' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' />
    <xs:element name='mountOptions' type='xs:string' default='defaults' minOccurs='0' />
  </xs:sequence>
</xs:group>

<xs:complexType name='raid'>
  <xs:sequence>
    <xs:element name='member' type='xs:string' minOccurs='2' maxOccurs='unbounded' />
    <xs:element name='level' type='xs:int' />
    <xs:element name='metaData' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1'>
      <xs:simpleType>
        <xs:restriction base='xs:string'>
          <xs:enumeration value='0' />
          <xs:enumeration value='0.9' />
          <xs:enumeration value='0.90' />
          <xs:enumeration value='1' />
          <xs:enumeration value='1.0' />
          <xs:enumeration value='1.1' />
        </xs:restriction>
      </xs:simpleType>
    </xs:element>
  </xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>

```

```

<xs:enumeration value='1.2' />
<xs:enumeration value='default' />
</xs:restriction>
</xs:simpleType>
</xs:element>
<xs:element name='encryption' type='encryption' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' />
<xs:choice minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' >
    <xs:group ref='filesystem' />
    <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name='swap'><xs:complexType /></xs:element>
        <xs:element name='priority' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' >
            <xs:simpleType>
                <xs:restriction base="xs:integer">
                    <xs:minInclusive value="0"/>
                    <xs:maxInclusive value="32767"/>
                </xs:restriction>
            </xs:simpleType>
        </xs:element>
    </xs:sequence>
    </xs:choice>
</xs:sequence>
<xs:attribute name='id' type='xs:string' use='required' />
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name='volumeGroup'>
    <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name='name' type='xs:string' />
        <xs:element name='extentSize' type='extentSize' />
        <xs:element name='physicalVolumes'>
            <xs:complexType>
                <xs:sequence>
                    <xs:element name='member' type='xs:string' minOccurs='1' maxOccurs='unbounded' />
                </xs:sequence>
            </xs:complexType>
        </xs:element>
        <xs:element name='logicalVolumes'>
            <xs:complexType>
                <xs:sequence>
                    <xs:element name='volume' type='logicalVolume' minOccurs='1' maxOccurs='unbounded' />
                </xs:sequence>
            </xs:complexType>
        </xs:element>
    </xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name='logicalVolume'>
    <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name='name' type='xs:string' />
        <xs:element name='size' type='size' />
        <xs:element name='pool' type='xs:string' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' />
        <xs:element name='stripes' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1' >
            <xs:simpleType>
                <xs:restriction base="xs:integer">
                    <xs:minInclusive value="1"/>
                    <xs:maxInclusive value="32768"/>
                </xs:restriction>
            </xs:simpleType>
        </xs:element>
    </xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>

```

```

        </xs:restriction>
    </xs:simpleType>
</xs:element>
<xs:element name='stripeSize' type='stripeSize' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1'/>
<xs:element name='encryption' type='encryption' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1'/>
<xs:element name='swap' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1'/>
<xs:element name='priority' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1'>
    <xs:simpleType>
        <xs:restriction base="xs:integer">
            <xs:minInclusive value="0"/>
            <xs:maxInclusive value="32767"/>
        </xs:restriction>
    </xs:simpleType>
</xs:element>
<xs:group ref='filesystem' minOccurs='0' maxOccurs='1'>
</xs:sequence>
<xs:attribute name="thinpool">
    <xs:simpleType>
        <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
            <xs:pattern value="1"/>
        </xs:restriction>
    </xs:simpleType>
</xs:attribute>
<xs:attribute name="metadatasize">
    <xs:simpleType>
        <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
            <xs:pattern value="([1-9] [MGT]) | ([1-9] [0-9]+[MGT])"/>
        </xs:restriction>
    </xs:simpleType>
</xs:attribute>
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name='subVolumes'>
    <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name='subVolume' type='subVolume' minOccurs='1' maxOccurs='unbounded' />
    </xs:sequence>
    <xs:attribute name='parent' type='xs:string' use='required' />
</xs:complexType>

<xs:complexType name='subVolume'>
    <xs:sequence>
        <xs:element name='mountPoint' type='xs:string' />
        <xs:element name='mountOptions' type='xs:string' />
    </xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>

</xs:schema>

```

---

#### Examples Of Element Types In XML Schema

Name Of Type	Example Values
size	10G, 128M, 1T, 2.5T, 1/3, 33.333%, auto, max
device	/dev/sda, /dev/hda, /dev/cciss/c0d0
partition	linux, linux raid, linux swap, unspecified
filesystem	ext2, ext3, ext4, xfs

## D.2 Structure Of Hardware RAID Definition—The Hardware RAID XML Schema Definition File

If a hardware RAID has already been created outside of BCM, then no XML definition is needed. This assumes that required kernel modules for the device load, so that the operating system ends up treating the RAID as a standard block device, which can therefore have its layout configured as described in section 3.12.

If, instead, hardware RAID is to be created and managed by BCM, then it can be specified using an XML schema definition file, stored on the head node in /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/xsd/raid.xsd.

The schema can also be viewed with cmsh:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ]# cmsh -c "main xsdschema raid" | less
```

The full schema definition is listed next, while schema examples are listed in section D.4.1.

Configuration using BCM is currently limited to MegaRAID hardware. It may not work for newer controllers that do not support MegaCLI, or its successor StorCLI. It may also not work for controllers by vendors that do not use MegaCLI or StorCLI.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1" ?>

<!--
#
# SPDX-FileCopyrightText: Copyright (c) 2023 NVIDIA CORPORATION & AFFILIATES. All rights reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: LicenseRef-NvidiaProprietary
#
# NVIDIA CORPORATION, its affiliates and licensors retain all intellectual
# property and proprietary rights in and to this material, related
# documentation and any modifications thereto. Any use, reproduction,
# disclosure or distribution of this material and related documentation
# without an express license agreement from NVIDIA CORPORATION or
# its affiliates is strictly prohibited.
#
```

This is the XML schema description of the hardware RAID layout XML file.  
It can be used by software to validate partitioning XML files.

There are however a few things the schema does not check:

- All of the spans (drive groups) in an raidArray must have the same number of drives.
- There can only be one volume with a 'max' size on a particular array, and this must be the last volume in the array.
- If there is only one enclosure defined for a particular RAID controller the actual enclosureID can be omitted, by using "auto" instead. Otherwise, the actual enclosureID must be specified.

-->

```

<xs:schema xmlns:xs="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">

  <xs:simpleType name="raidLevel">
    <xs:restriction base="xs:nonNegativeInteger">
      <xs:pattern value="0|1|5|10|50"/>
    </xs:restriction>
  </xs:simpleType>

  <xs:simpleType name="volumeSize">
    <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
      <xs:pattern value="[0-9]{1,5}[MGT]|max"/>
    </xs:restriction>
  </xs:simpleType>

  <xs:simpleType name="stripeSize">
    <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
      <xs:pattern value="8K|16K|32K|64K|128K|256K|512K|1024K"/>
    </xs:restriction>
  </xs:simpleType>

  <xs:simpleType name="cachePolicy">
    <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
      <xs:pattern value="Cached|Direct"/>
    </xs:restriction>
  </xs:simpleType>

  <!--
    NORA : No Read Ahead
    RA   : Read Ahead
    ADRA : Adaptive Read
  -->
  <xs:simpleType name="readPolicy">
    <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
      <xs:pattern value="NORA|RA|ADRA"/>
    </xs:restriction>
  </xs:simpleType>

  <!--
    WT  : Write Through
    WB  : Write Back
  -->
  <xs:simpleType name="writePolicy">
    <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
      <xs:pattern value="WT|WB"/>
    </xs:restriction>
  </xs:simpleType>

  <xs:simpleType name="enclosureID">
    <xs:restriction base="xs:string">
      <xs:pattern value="auto|[0-9]{1,4}"/>
    </xs:restriction>
  </xs:simpleType>

  <xs:simpleType name="slotNumber">
    <xs:restriction base="xs:nonNegativeInteger">

```

```
<xs:pattern value="[0-9]{1,2}" />
</xs:restriction>
</xs:simpleType>

<xs:element name="raidSetup">
  <xs:complexType>
    <xs:sequence>

      <xs:element name="raidArray" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <xs:complexType>
          <xs:sequence>

            <xs:element name="level" type="raidLevel" />

            <xs:element name="raidVolume" maxOccurs="unbounded">
              <xs:complexType>
                <xs:sequence>

                  <xs:element name="stripeSize" type="stripeSize" />

                  <xs:element name="cachePolicy" type="cachePolicy" />

                  <xs:element name="readPolicy" type="readPolicy" />

                  <xs:element name="writePolicy" type="writePolicy" />

                  <xs:element name="size" type="volumeSize" />

                </xs:sequence>
              </xs:complexType>
            </xs:element>

            <xs:choice>

              <xs:element name="device" maxOccurs="unbounded">
                <xs:complexType>
                  <xs:sequence>

                    <xs:element name="enclosureID" type="enclosureID" />

                    <xs:element name="slotNumber" type="slotNumber" />

                  </xs:sequence>
                </xs:complexType>
              </xs:element>

              <xs:element name="span" minOccurs="2" maxOccurs="8">
                <xs:complexType>
                  <xs:sequence>

                    <xs:element name="device" maxOccurs="unbounded">
                      <xs:complexType>
                        <xs:sequence>
```

```

<xs:element name="enclosureID" type="enclosureID"/>

<xs:element name="slotNumber" type="slotNumber"/>

</xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

</xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

</xs:sequence>
</xs:complexType>
</xs:element>

</xs:schema>

```

### D.3 Example: Default Node Partitioning

The following example follows the schema definition of section D.1, and shows the default layout used for regular nodes:

#### Example

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>

<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
  <device>
    <blockdev>/dev/sda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/hda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/vda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/xvda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/cciss/c0d0</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/nvme0n1</blockdev>
    <blockdev mode="cloud">/dev/sdb</blockdev>
    <blockdev mode="cloud">/dev/hdb</blockdev>
    <blockdev mode="cloud">/dev/vdb</blockdev>
    <blockdev mode="cloud">/dev/xvdb</blockdev>
    <!-- the following for paravirtual rhel6: -->
    <blockdev mode="cloud">/dev/xvdf</blockdev>
    <!-- the following for nvme volumes -->
    <blockdev mode="cloud">/dev/nvme1n1</blockdev>

    <partition id="a0" partitiontype="esp">
      <size>100M</size>
      <type>linux</type>
      <filesystem>fat</filesystem>
      <mountPoint>/boot/efi</mountPoint>
      <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
    
```

```

</partition>

<partition id="a1">
  <size>20G</size>
  <type>linux</type>
  <filesystem>xfs</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</partition>

<partition id="a2">
  <size>6G</size>
  <type>linux</type>
  <filesystem>xfs</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/var</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</partition>

<partition id="a3">
  <size>2G</size>
  <type>linux</type>
  <filesystem>xfs</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/tmp</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime,nosuid,nodev</mountOptions>
</partition>

<partition id="a4">
  <size>12G</size>
  <type>linux swap</type>
</partition>

<partition id="a5">
  <size>max</size>
  <type>linux</type>
  <filesystem>xfs</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/local</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</partition>

</device>
</diskSetup>
```

The example assumes a single disk. Another disk can be added by adding another pair of `<device><device>` tags and filling in the partitioning specifications for the next disk. Because multiple `blockdev` tags are used, the node-installer first tries to use `/dev/sda`, then `/dev/hda`, then `/dev/vda` (virtio disks), then `/dev/xvda` (xen disks), and so on. Cloud devices can also be accessed using the `mode="cloud"` option. Removing block devices from the layout if they are not going to be used does no harm.

For each partition, a `size` tag is specified. Sizes can be specified using megabytes (e.g. `500M`), gigabytes (e.g. `50G`) or terabytes (e.g. `2T` or `4.5T`). Relative sizes, without units, can be used in the form of fractions (e.g. `2/3`) or percentages (e.g. `70%`), which can be useful for disk sizes that are not known in advance.

Small differences in size do not trigger a full install for existing relative partitions.

For swap partitions, a size of `auto` sets a swap partition to twice the node memory size. If there is more than one swap partition, then the `priority` tag can be set so that the partition with the higher

priority is used first.

For a device, the attribute `max` for a `size` tag forces the last device in the partition to use all remaining space, and if needed, adjusts the implementation of the sequence of `size` tags in the remaining partitions accordingly. The use of `max` for a partition is convenient.

In the example, all non-boot filesystems are specified as `xfs`. One of the valid alternatives is `ext4`.

The `mount` man page has more details on mount options. If the `mountOptions` tag is left empty, its value defaults to `defaults`.

## D.4 Example: Hardware RAID Configuration

A prerequisite with hardware RAID is that it must be enabled and configured properly in the BIOS.

If it is enabled and configured correctly, then the hardware RAID configuration can be defined or modified by setting the `hardwareraidconfiguration` parameter in device or category mode:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% category use default
[basecm11->category[default]]% set hardwareraidconfiguration
```

This opens up an editor in which the XML file can be specified according to the schema in section D.2. XML validation is carried out.

### D.4.1 RAID level 0 And RAID 10 Example

In the following configuration the node has two RAID arrays, one in a RAID 0 and the other in a RAID 10 configuration:

- The RAID 0 array contains three volumes and is made up of two hard disks, placed in slots 0 and 1. The volumes have different values for the options and policies.
- The RAID 10 array consists of just one volume and has two spans, in slots 2 and 3. Each span has two hard disks.

### Example

```
<raidSetup>
  <raidArray>
    <level>0</level>

    <raidVolume>
      <stripeSize>64K</stripeSize>
      <cachePolicy>Direct</cachePolicy>
      <readPolicy>NORA</readPolicy>
      <writePolicy>WT</writePolicy>
      <size>40G</size>
    </raidVolume>

    <raidVolume>
      <stripeSize>128K</stripeSize>
      <cachePolicy>Direct</cachePolicy>
      <readPolicy>RA</readPolicy>
      <writePolicy>WB</writePolicy>
      <size>80G</size>
    </raidVolume>

  </raidArray>
```

```
<stripeSize>256K</stripeSize>
<cachePolicy>Cached</cachePolicy>
<readPolicy>ADRA</readPolicy>
<writePolicy>WT</writePolicy>
<size>100G</size>
</raidVolume>

<device>
<enclosureID>auto</enclosureID>
<slotNumber>0</slotNumber>
</device>

<device>
<enclosureID>32</enclosureID>
<slotNumber>1</slotNumber>
</device>
</raidArray>

<raidArray>
<level>10</level>

<raidVolume>
<stripeSize>64K</stripeSize>
<cachePolicy>Direct</cachePolicy>
<readPolicy>NORA</readPolicy>
<writePolicy>WT</writePolicy>
<size>40G</size>
</raidVolume>

<span>
<device>
<enclosureID>auto</enclosureID>
<slotNumber>2</slotNumber>
</device>

<device>
<enclosureID>auto</enclosureID>
<slotNumber>3</slotNumber>
</device>
</span>

<span>
<device>
<enclosureID>auto</enclosureID>
<slotNumber>4</slotNumber>
</device>

<device>
<enclosureID>auto</enclosureID>
<slotNumber>5</slotNumber>
</device>
</span>
</raidArray>
</raidSetup>
```

## D.5 Example: Software RAID

The following example shows a simple software RAID setup:

### Example

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>

<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
           xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="schema.xsd">

    <device>
        <blockdev>/dev/sda</blockdev>
        <partition id="a1">
            <size>25G</size>
            <type>linux raid</type>
        </partition>
    </device>

    <device>
        <blockdev>/dev/sdb</blockdev>
        <partition id="b1">
            <size>25G</size>
            <type>linux raid</type>
        </partition>
    </device>

    <raid id="r1">
        <member>a1</member>
        <member>b1</member>
        <level>1</level>
        <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
        <mountPoint>/</mountPoint>
        <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
    </raid>
</diskSetup>
```

The `level` tag specifies the RAID level used. The following are supported:

- 0 (striping without parity)
- 1 (mirroring)
- 4 (striping with dedicated parity drive)
- 5 (striping with distributed parity)
- 6 (striping with distributed double parity)
- 10 (mirroring and striping)

The `member` tags must refer to an `id` attribute of a `partition` tag, or an `id` attribute of another `raid` tag. The latter can be used to create, for example, a nested RAID 10 (1+0) configuration, instead of a complex RAID 10 configuration as specified by a `<level>10</level>` entry. A good explanation of the difference between complex and nested RAID 10 can be found at <https://documentation.suse.com/sles/15-SP5/html/SLES-all/cha-raid10.html#sec-raid10-complex>.

The administrator must ensure that the correct RAID kernel module is loaded (section 5.3.2). Including the appropriate module from the following is usually sufficient: `raid0`, `raid1`, `raid4`, `raid5`, `raid6`, `raid10`.

## D.6 Example: Software RAID With Swap

The <swap></swap> tag is used to indicate a swap partition in a RAID device specified in the XML schema of section D.1. For example, the following marks a 1GB RAID 1 partition as being used for swap, and the second partition for an ext3 filesystem:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>

<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
  <device>
    <blockdev>/dev/sda</blockdev>
    <partition id="a1">
      <size>1G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="a2">
      <size>max</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
  </device>
  <device>
    <blockdev>/dev/sdb</blockdev>
    <partition id="b1">
      <size>1G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="b2">
      <size>max</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
  </device>
  <raid id="r1">
    <member>a1</member>
    <member>b1</member>
    <level>1</level>
    <swap></swap>
  </raid>
  <raid id="r2">
    <member>a2</member>
    <member>b2</member>
    <level>1</level>
    <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
    <mountPoint>/</mountPoint>
    <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
  </raid>
</diskSetup>
```

As in section D.5, the appropriate RAID modules must be loaded beforehand.

## D.7 Example: Logical Volume Manager

This example shows a simple LVM setup:

### Example

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
```

```

<device>
  <blockdev>/dev/sda</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/hda</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/vda</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/xvda</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/cciss/c0d0</blockdev>
  <blockdev mode="cloud">/dev/sdb</blockdev>
  <blockdev mode="cloud">/dev/hdb</blockdev>
  <blockdev mode="cloud">/dev/vdb</blockdev>
  <blockdev mode="cloud">/dev/xvdb</blockdev>
  <blockdev mode="cloud">/dev/xvdf</blockdev>
  <partition id="a1">
    <size>1G</size>
    <type>linux</type>
    <filesystem>ext2</filesystem>
    <mountPoint>/boot</mountPoint>
    <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
  </partition>
  <partition id="a2">
    <size>16G</size>
    <type>linux swap</type>
  </partition>
  <partition id="a3">
    <size>max</size>
    <type>linux lvm</type>
  </partition>
</device>
<volumeGroup>
  <name>vg01</name>
  <extentSize>8M</extentSize>
  <physicalVolumes>
    <member>a3</member>
  </physicalVolumes>
  <logicalVolumes>
    <volume>
      <name>lv00</name>
      <size>max</size>
      <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
      <mountPoint>/</mountPoint>
      <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
    </volume>
    <volume>
      <name>lv01</name>
      <size>8G</size>
      <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
      <mountPoint>/tmp</mountPoint>
      <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
    </volume>
  </logicalVolumes>
</volumeGroup>
</diskSetup>

```

The `member` tags must refer to an `id` attribute of a `partition` tag, or an `id` attribute of a `raid` tag.

The administrator must ensure that the `dm-mod` kernel module is loaded when LVM is used.

## D.8 Example: Logical Volume Manager With RAID 1

This example shows an LVM setup, but with the LVM partitions mirrored using RAID 1:

### Example

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>
<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xsi:no\
NamespaceSchemaLocation="schema.xsd">

<device>
  <blockdev>/dev/sda</blockdev>
    <partition id="a1">
      <size>1G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="a2">
      <size>max</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
  </device>

<device>
  <blockdev>/dev/sdb</blockdev>
    <partition id="b1">
      <size>1G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="b2">
      <size>max</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
  </device>

<raid id="r1">
  <member>a1</member>
  <member>b1</member>
  <level>1</level>
  <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/boot</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</raid>

<raid id="r2">
  <member>a2</member>
  <member>b2</member>
  <level>1</level>
</raid>

<volumeGroup>
  <name>vg01</name>
  <extentSize>8M</extentSize>
  <physicalVolumes>
    <member>r2</member>
  </physicalVolumes>

  <logicalVolumes>
```

```

<volume>
  <name>lv00</name>
  <size>50G</size>
  <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</volume>
<volume>
  <name>lv01</name>
  <size>25G</size>
  <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/tmp</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</volume>
<volume>
  <name>lv02</name>
  <size>25G</size>
  <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/var</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</volume>
</logicalVolumes>
</volumeGroup>

</diskSetup>

```

## D.9 Example: Diskless

This example shows a node configured for diskless operation:

### Example

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>

<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
  <diskless maxMemSize="90%"></diskless>
</diskSetup>

```

An example of the implementation of a diskless configuration is given in section 3.12.3.

In diskless mode the software image is transferred by the node-installer to a RAM-based filesystem on the node called `tmpfs`.

The obvious advantage of running from RAM is the elimination of the physical disk, cutting power consumption and reducing the chance of hardware failure. On the other hand, some of the RAM on the node is then no longer available for user applications.

### Special considerations with diskless mode:

- **Recommended minimum RAM size:** The available RAM per node should be sufficient to run the OS and the required tasks. At least 4GB is recommended for diskless nodes.
- **The `tmpfs` size limit:** The maximum amount of RAM that can be used for a filesystem is set with the `maxMemSize` attribute. A value of 100% allows all of the RAM to be used. The default value is 90%. A value of 0, without the % sign, removes all restrictions.

A limit does not however necessarily prevent the node from crashing, as some processes might not deal properly with a situation when there is no more space left on the filesystem.

- **Persistence issues:** While running as a diskless node, the node is unable to retain any non-shared data each time it reboots. For example the files in `/var/log/*`, which are normally preserved by the exclude list settings for disked nodes, are lost from RAM during diskless mode reboots. The `installmode NOSYNC` setting cannot be used with diskless nodes during a node reboot.
- **Leftover disk issues:** Administrators in charge of sensitive environments should be aware that the disk of a node that is now running in diskless mode still contains files from the last time the disk was used, unless the files are explicitly wiped.
- **Reducing the software image size in tmpfs on a diskless node:** To make more RAM available for tasks, the software image size held in RAM can be reduced:
  - by removing unnecessary software from the image.
  - by mounting parts of the filesystem in the image over NFS during normal use. This is especially worthwhile for less frequently accessed parts of the image (section 3.13.3).

## D.10 Example: Semi-diskless

Diskless operation (section D.9) can also be mixed with certain parts of the filesystem on the local physical disk. This frees up RAM which the node can then put to other use. In this example all data in `/local` is on the physical disk, the rest in RAM.

### Example

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>

<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
           xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="schema.xsd">
  <diskless maxMemSize="0"></diskless>
  <device>
    <blockdev>/dev/sda</blockdev>
    <partition id="a1">
      <size>max</size>
      <type>linux</type>
      <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
      <mountPoint>/local</mountPoint>
      <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
    </partition>
  </device>
</diskSetup>
```

When nodes operate in semi-diskless mode the node-installer always uses `excludelistfullinstall` (section 5.4.7) when synchronizing the software image to memory and disk.

An alternative to using a local disk for freeing up RAM is to use NFS storage, as is described in section 3.13.3.

## D.11 Example: Preventing Accidental Data Loss

Optional tags, `vendor` and `requiredSize`, can be used to prevent accidentally repartitioning the wrong drive. Such a tag use is shown in the following example.

### Example

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>

<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
```

```

  xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="schema.xsd">
<device>
  <blockdev>/dev/sda</blockdev>
  <vendor>Hitachi</vendor>
  <requiredSize>200G</requiredSize>

  <partition id="a1">
    <size>max</size>
    <type>linux</type>
    <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
    <mountPoint>/</mountPoint>
    <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
  </partition>

</device>
<device>
  <blockdev>/dev/sdb</blockdev>
  <vendor>BigRaid</vendor>
  <requiredSize>2T</requiredSize>

  <partition id="b1">
    <size>max</size>
    <type>linux</type>
    <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
    <mountPoint>/data</mountPoint>
    <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
  </partition>

</device>
</diskSetup>
```

If a vendor or a requiredSize element is specified, it is treated as an assertion which is checked by the node-installer. The node-installer reads the drive vendor string from `/sys/block/<drive name>/device/vendor`. For the assertion to succeed, the ratio of actual disk size to the value specified by requiredSize, should be at least 0.85:1, and at most 1:0.85.

That is: to be able to get past the requiredSize assertion, the actual drive size as seen from `fdisk -l` should be 85% to about 118% of the asserted size.

If any assertion fails, no partitioning changes will be made to any of the specified devices.

For assertions with drives that are similar or identical in size, and are from the same vendor, the requiredSize and vendor elements are not enough to differentiate between the drives. In such cases, custom assertions (section D.12) can be set for particular drives.

Specifying device assertions is recommended for nodes that contain important data because it protects against a situation where a drive is assigned to an incorrect block device. This can happen, for example, when the first drive, for example `/dev/sda`, in a multi-drive system is not detected (e.g. due to a hardware failure, or a BIOS update) which could cause the second drive to become known as `/dev/sda`, potentially causing much woe.

As an aside, CMDaemon does offer another way, outside of assertions, to avoid wiping out drive data automatically. This is done in `cmsh` by setting the boolean value of `datanode` to `yes` (section 5.4.4).

## D.12 Example: Using Custom Assertions

The following example shows the use of the `assert` tag, which can be added to a device definition:

### Example

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>

<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
            xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation="schema.xsd">

    <device>
        <blockdev>/dev/sda</blockdev>
        <assert name="modelCheck" args="WD800AAJS">
            <![CDATA[
                #!/bin/bash
                if grep -q $1 /sys/block/$ASSERT_DEV/device/model; then
                    exit 0
                else
                    exit 1
                fi
            ]]>
        </assert>

        <partition id="a1">
            <size>max</size>
            <type>linux</type>
            <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
            <mountPoint>/</mountPoint>
            <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
        </partition>

    </device>
    <device>
        <blockdev>/dev/sdb</blockdev>
        <vendor>BigRaid</vendor>
        <requiredSize>2T</requiredSize>

        <partition id="b1">
            <size>max</size>
            <type>linux</type>
            <filesystem>ext3</filesystem>
            <mountPoint>/data</mountPoint>
            <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
        </partition>

    </device>
</diskSetup>
```

The assert tag is similar to the vendor and size tags described in section D.11.

It can be used to define custom assertions. The assertions can be implemented using any script language.

The script can access the environment variables ASSERT\_DEV (eg: sda) and ASSERT\_NODE (eg: /dev/sda) during the node-installer stage.

Each assert needs to be assigned an arbitrary name and can be passed custom parameters. A non-zero exit code in the assertion causes the node-installer to halt.

## D.13 Example: Software RAID1 With One Big Partition

The following example shows a head node hard drive that uses one big partition with software RAID 1.

### Example

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>

<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
  <device>
    <blockdev>/dev/sda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/hda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/vda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/xvda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/cciss/c0d0</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/nvme0n1</blockdev>
    <partition id="a0" partitiontype="esp">
      <size>100M</size>
      <type>linux</type>
      <filesystem>fat</filesystem>
      <mountPoint>/boot/efi</mountPoint>
      <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
    </partition>
    <partition id="a1">
      <size>1G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="a2">
      <size>16G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="a3">
      <size>max</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
  </device>

  <device>
    <blockdev>/dev/sdb</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/hdb</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/vdb</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/xvdb</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/cciss/c0d1</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/nvme1n1</blockdev>
    <partition id="b0" partitiontype="esp">
      <size>100M</size>
      <type>linux</type>
      <filesystem>fat</filesystem>
    </partition>
    <partition id="b1">
      <size>1G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="b2">
      <size>16G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="b3">
      <size>max</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
  </device>

```

```

</device>

<raid id="r1">
  <member>a1</member>
  <member>b1</member>
  <level>1</level>
  <filesystem>ext2</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/boot</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</raid>

<raid id="r2">
  <member>a2</member>
  <member>b2</member>
  <level>1</level>
  <swap/>
</raid>

<raid id="r3">
  <member>a3</member>
  <member>b3</member>
  <level>1</level>
  <filesystem>__FSTYPE__</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</raid>
</diskSetup>

```

## D.14 Example: Software RAID5 With One Big Partition

The following example shows a head node hard drive that uses one big partition with software RAID 5.

### Example

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>

<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
  <device>
    <blockdev>/dev/sda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/hda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/vda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/xvda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/cciss/c0d0</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/nvme0n1</blockdev>
    <partition id="a0" partitionType="esp">
      <size>100M</size>
      <type>linux</type>
      <filesystem>fat</filesystem>
      <mountPoint>/boot/efi</mountPoint>
      <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
    </partition>
    <partition id="a1">
      <size>1G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="a2">

```

```
<size>16G</size>
<type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
<partition id="a3">
<size>max</size>
<type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
</device>

<device>
<blockdev>/dev/sdb</blockdev>
<blockdev>/dev/hdb</blockdev>
<blockdev>/dev/vdb</blockdev>
<blockdev>/dev/xvdb</blockdev>
<blockdev>/dev/cciss/c0d1</blockdev>
<blockdev>/dev/nvme1n1</blockdev>
<partition id="b0" partitiontype="esp">
<size>100M</size>
<type>linux</type>
<filesystem>fat</filesystem>
</partition>
<partition id="b1">
<size>1G</size>
<type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
<partition id="b2">
<size>16G</size>
<type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
<partition id="b3">
<size>max</size>
<type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
</device>

<device>
<blockdev>/dev/sdc</blockdev>
<blockdev>/dev/hdc</blockdev>
<blockdev>/dev/vdc</blockdev>
<blockdev>/dev/xvdc</blockdev>
<blockdev>/dev/cciss/c0d2</blockdev>
<blockdev>/dev/nvme2n1</blockdev>
<partition id="c0" partitiontype="esp">
<size>100M</size>
<type>linux</type>
<filesystem>fat</filesystem>
</partition>
<partition id="c1">
<size>1G</size>
<type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
<partition id="c2">
<size>16G</size>
<type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
```

```

<partition id="c3">
  <size>max</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
</device>

<raid id="r1">
  <member>a1</member>
  <member>b1</member>
  <member>c1</member>
  <level>1</level>
  <filesystem>ext2</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/boot</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</raid>

<raid id="r2">
  <member>a2</member>
  <member>b2</member>
  <member>c2</member>
  <level>5</level>
  <swap/>
</raid>

<raid id="r3">
  <member>a3</member>
  <member>b3</member>
  <member>c3</member>
  <level>5</level>
  <filesystem>__FSTYPE__</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</raid>
</diskSetup>

```

## D.15 Example: Software RAID1 With Standard Partitioning

The following example shows a head node hard drive that uses the standard partitioning with software RAID 1.

### Example

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>

<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
  <device>
    <blockdev>/dev/sda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/hda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/vda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/xvda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/cciss/c0d0</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/nvme0n1</blockdev>

    <partition id="a0" partitiontype="esp">
      <size>100M</size>
      <type>linux</type>
    
```

```
<filesystem>fat</filesystem>
<mountPoint>/boot/efi</mountPoint>
<mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</partition>

<partition id="a1">
  <size>1G</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>

<partition id="a2">
  <size>16G</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>

<partition id="a3">
  <size>8G</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>

<partition id="a4">
  <size>30G</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>

<partition id="a5">
  <size>max</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
</device>

<device>
  <blockdev>/dev/sdb</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/hdb</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/vdb</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/xvdb</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/cciss/c0d1</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/nvme1n1</blockdev>

  <partition id="b0" partitiontype="esp">
    <size>100M</size>
    <type>linux</type>
    <filesystem>fat</filesystem>
  </partition>

  <partition id="b1">
    <size>1G</size>
    <type>linux raid</type>
  </partition>

  <partition id="b2">
    <size>16G</size>
    <type>linux raid</type>
  </partition>
```

```
<partition id="b3">
  <size>8G</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>

<partition id="b4">
  <size>30G</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>

<partition id="b5">
  <size>max</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
</device>

<raid id="r1">
  <member>a1</member>
  <member>b1</member>
  <level>1</level>
  <filesystem>ext2</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/boot</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</raid>

<raid id="r2">
  <member>a2</member>
  <member>b2</member>
  <level>1</level>
  <swap/>
</raid>

<raid id="r3">
  <member>a3</member>
  <member>b3</member>
  <level>1</level>
  <filesystem>__FSTYPE__</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/tmp</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime,nosuid,nodev</mountOptions>
</raid>

<raid id="r4">
  <member>a4</member>
  <member>b4</member>
  <level>1</level>
  <filesystem>__FSTYPE__</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/var</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</raid>

<raid id="r5">
  <member>a5</member>
  <member>b5</member>
  <level>1</level>
  <filesystem>__FSTYPE__</filesystem>
```

```

<mountPoint>/</mountPoint>
<mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</raid>

</diskSetup>

```

## D.16 Example: Software RAID5 With Standard Partitioning

The following example shows a head node hard drive that uses the standard partitioning with software RAID 5.

### Example

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>
<diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">
  <device>
    <blockdev>/dev/sda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/hda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/vda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/xvda</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/cciss/c0d0</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/nvme0n1</blockdev>
    <partition id="a0" partitionType="esp">
      <size>100M</size>
      <type>linux</type>
      <filesystem>fat</filesystem>
      <mountPoint>/boot/efi</mountPoint>
      <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
    </partition>

    <partition id="a1">
      <size>1G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="a2">
      <size>6G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="a3">
      <size>8G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="a4">
      <size>30G</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
    <partition id="a5">
      <size>max</size>
      <type>linux raid</type>
    </partition>
  </device>
  <device>
    <blockdev>/dev/sdb</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/hdb</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/vdb</blockdev>
    <blockdev>/dev/xvdb</blockdev>
  </device>

```

```
<blockdev>/dev/cciss/c0d1</blockdev>
<blockdev>/dev/nvme1n1</blockdev>
<partition id="b0" partitiontype="esp">
  <size>100M</size>
  <type>linux</type>
  <filesystem>fat</filesystem>
</partition>
<partition id="b1">
  <size>1G</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
<partition id="b2">
  <size>6G</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
<partition id="b3">
  <size>8G</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
<partition id="b4">
  <size>30G</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
<partition id="b5">
  <size>max</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
</device>
<device>
  <blockdev>/dev/sdc</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/hdc</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/vdc</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/xvdc</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/cciss/c0d2</blockdev>
  <blockdev>/dev/nvme2n1</blockdev>
  <partition id="c0" partitiontype="esp">
    <size>100M</size>
    <type>linux</type>
    <filesystem>fat</filesystem>
  </partition>
  <partition id="c1">
    <size>1G</size>
    <type>linux raid</type>
  </partition>
  <partition id="c2">
    <size>6G</size>
    <type>linux raid</type>
  </partition>
  <partition id="c3">
    <size>8G</size>
    <type>linux raid</type>
  </partition>
  <partition id="c4">
    <size>30G</size>
    <type>linux raid</type>
```

```

</partition>
<partition id="c5">
  <size>max</size>
  <type>linux raid</type>
</partition>
</device>
<raid id="r1">
  <member>a1</member>
  <member>b1</member>
  <member>c1</member>
  <level>1</level>
  <filesystem>ext2</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/boot</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</raid>
<raid id="r2">
  <member>a2</member>
  <member>b2</member>
  <member>c2</member>
  <level>5</level>
  <swap/>
</raid>
<raid id="r3">
  <member>a3</member>
  <member>b3</member>
  <member>c3</member>
  <level>5</level>
  <filesystem>__FSTYPE__</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/tmp</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime,nosuid,nodev</mountOptions>
</raid>
<raid id="r4">
  <member>a4</member>
  <member>b4</member>
  <member>c4</member>
  <level>5</level>
  <filesystem>__FSTYPE__</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/var</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</raid>
<raid id="r5">
  <member>a5</member>
  <member>b5</member>
  <member>c5</member>
  <level>5</level>
  <filesystem>__FSTYPE__</filesystem>
  <mountPoint>/</mountPoint>
  <mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</raid>
</diskSetup>

```

## D.17 Example: LUKS Disk Encryption With Standard Partitioning

### D.17.1 Introduction

This section considers XML configuration that uses LUKS to set encrypted partitions on a block device. Only the non-boot partitions can be encrypted.

Encryption can be configured for head and regular nodes during head node installation (section 3.3.16 of the *Installation Manual*). For regular nodes it can also be configured later on by modifying the XML file used to define disk layouts (section D.17.2).

LUKS disk encryption on nodes by default uses a passphrase to decrypt a partition. The passphrase processing can be handled automatically, or it can be handled by typing it in manually. These options are explained in greater detail next:

- Automatic passphrase processing: For a node that is configured for encryption, and that is provisioned over the network, the passphrase needs to be used to make the encrypted partition accessible. The acceptance of the passphrase for the node needs to be confirmed by the cluster administrator during boot. For security, similar to the familiar case of SSH confirmation for a new first-time connection, the cluster administrator should only confirm acceptance if sure that there is no man-in-the-middle attack.

The cluster administrator needs only to confirm the passphrase to make the encrypted partition accessible. Other than confirmation, the cluster administrator does not need to directly manage or even know the passphrase, because the passphrase is stored and managed automatically via CMDaemon.

- Manual passphrase processing: A node that is not provisioned over the network—that is a node that is configured to boot from its own disk—is called a standalone node. Standalone nodes are generally discouraged in a BCM cluster because they are harder to manage, but there are use cases for them. For example, an edge director (section 2.1.7 of the *Edge Manual*) is configured as a standalone node by default, because it needs to have a degree of autonomy from the head node.

If a standalone node—such as a head node or an edge director that is functioning autonomously—boots from its own drive, it may be that it is configured with an encrypted partition, due to security considerations. With such a configuration, the cluster administrator needs to be able to directly manage the passphrase to allow access to the encrypted partitions. So, after a node is configured to be a standalone node, access to an encrypted partition requires a passphrase to be entered from the console of that node when the node is booting from its drive.

### D.17.2 Node Provisioned Over The Network: Encrypted Partition XML Example

#### XML Specification For An Encrypted Partition

The XML example that follows shows encrypted partitions set for a regular node that uses one big partition and one swap partition. The layout is based on a slightly modified version of the example XML file at:

```
/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/disk-setup/x86-64-slave-one-big-encrypted-partition-ext4.xml
```

with minimal <encryption /> tags added for the root and swap partitions that are to run encrypted:

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% get disksetup
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="ISO-8859-1"?>

<!-- One swap partition and the rest of the filesystem on 1 partition --&gt;

&lt;diskSetup xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"&gt;
  &lt;device&gt;
    &lt;blockdev&gt;/dev/vdb&lt;/blockdev&gt;

    &lt;partition id="a0" partitiontype="esp"&gt;</pre>
```

```

<size>100M</size>
<type>linux</type>
<filesystem>fat</filesystem>
<mountPoint>/boot/efi</mountPoint>
<mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</partition>

<partition id="a1">
<size>2G</size>
<type>linux swap</type>
<encryption />
</partition>

<partition id="a2">
<size>max</size>
<type>linux</type>
<encryption />
<filesystem>ext4</filesystem>
<mountPoint>/</mountPoint>
<mountOptions>defaults,noatime,nodiratime</mountOptions>
</partition>
</device>
</diskSetup>

```

Other XML file examples for encryption can found under `/cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/htdocs/disk-setup/`, with file names that start with the text `slave-one-big-encrypted-`.

### **Stages During The Provisioning Of An Encrypted Partition**

After the configuration has been committed, and the node is rebooted, the node pauses during the boot process, and waits for approval of the passphrase for that node (figure D.1):

```

[ status ]
No need to update node.
Trying network setup.
Detecting network interfaces.
Bringing up network interfaces.
Device ens3 already uses 10.141.0.1 mask 255.255.0.0.
Finished setting up the network.
Done computing masterIP, using: 10.141.255.254
Done computing masterIP, using: 10.141.255.254
Installmode is: AUTO
Setting up environment for initialize scripts.
Running category initialize script.
Fetching RAID setup.
Fetching disks setup.
Waiting for disk encryption passphrase

```

Figure D.1: Node Console Waiting For Disk Encryption Passphrase During Node-installer Run

The passphrase is automatically generated and automatically provided by CMDaemon, and CM-Daemon at this stage passes on the message that the node is waiting for the disk encryption passphrase.

To confirm approval of the passphrase, the `installerinteractions` command (section 5.4.4) can be run. This does not run at a disk level, but at a grouping level (node, category, group, chassis, rack ...). Thus, for example, for a node with multiple encrypted disks, it only needs to be confirmed once.

If the `installerinteractions` command is run at node level for a particular node, then it displays information about the installer status and interactions.

The following shows the output at various stages when a node `node001` with the preceding XML configuration is booting up:

### **Example**

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% installerinteractions
No remote interactions pending.
[basecm11->device[node001]]%
Wed Jun  9 12:32:00 2021 [notice] basecm11: node001 [ INSTALLING ] (node installer started)
[basecm11->device[node001]]%
Wed Jun  9 12:32:11 2021 [notice] basecm11: node001 [ INSTALLING ] (waiting for disk encryption passphrase)
[basecm11->device[node001]]% installerinteractions
Hostname  Category   Type           Timestamp          Action      Status
-----  -----  -----
node001    default   disk encryption passphrase  Wed Jun  9 12:32:09 2021  Waiting for approval  pending
```

To confirm the approval, the `installerinteractions` command can be run with the `--confirm` option and the `-w|--write` option:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% installerinteractions -w --confirm
[basecm11->device[node001]]% installerinteractions
Hostname  Category   Type           Timestamp          Action      Status
-----  -----  -----
node001    default   disk encryption passphrase  Wed Jun  9 12:35:22 2021  Waiting for approval  confirmed
[... after some time...]

[basecm11->device[node001]]% installerinteractions
No remote interactions pending.
```

If the `-w|--write` option is not used, then the command is a dry-run, which means it only pretends to write changes.

More options for `installerinteractions` can be seen by running `help installerinteractions`.

#### Allowing Passphrase Confirmation (To Make An Encrypted Partition Accessible) Until A Future Time

The `installerinteractions` confirmation can be done for a specified time in advance with:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% installerinteractions -w --confirm --for 5m
[basecm11->device[node001]]% installerinteractions
Hostname  Category   Type           Timestamp          Action      Status
-----  -----  -----
node001    default   disk encryption passphrase  Thu Jun 10 16:53:46 2021  Future action  confirmed
[basecm11->device[node001]]% reboot
```

Possible units that can be used to specify the time period are:

Unit	Meaning
s	seconds
m	minutes
h	hours
d	days
w	weeks

### Passphrase Change And Provisioning Mode Considerations

If the passphrase is changed, then the node-installer carries out a FULL install (section 5.4.4).

If the confirmation timestamp is set for the future, and

1. if the node passphrase is changed before the time of the timestamp, then the node-installer carries out a FULL install too.
2. if the node reboots and reaches the passphrase confirmation state after the time of the timestamp, then the node-installer cannot carry out a FULL install too, until a fresh `installerinteractions` confirmation is done.

When the FULL install is carried out, the node-installer arranges that the encrypted partitions are provisioned as specified by the XML file, and the node eventually gets to a fully running stage. This happens just as with a regular node, but with the XML encryption tags ensuring that the specified partitions are encrypted.

### Viewing Disk Partitions And Cipher String Used With The `diskpartitions` Command

Once the node is fully running, information about the partition state can be viewed with the `diskpartitions` command:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% diskpartitions
Node      Name      Major      Minor      Blocks      Cipher string      Devices      Device mapper
-----
...
node001   vdb       253        16          52,428,800
node001   vdb1      253        17          102,400
node001   vdb2      253        18          2,097,152    aes-xts-plain64
node001   vdb3      253        19          50,225,152    aes-xts-plain64
```

### LUKS Encryption Defaults

The `<encryption />` tag is quite minimal and implies defaults. Its schema is outlined in section D.1. An expanded example of how LUKS options can be set in the encryption section of the XML file is:

#### Example

```
<encryption>
  <type>luks2</type>
  <cipher>aes-xts-plain64</cipher>
  <hash>sha256</hash>
  <keySize>256</keySize>
  <name>root</name>
  <allowDiscards />
  <custom>--key-slot=2</custom>
</encryption>
```

### D.17.3 Standalone Node: Encrypted Partition XML Example

Nodes are not managed by CMDaemon while in a standalone state. The automated passing of a passphrase by CMDaemon to decrypt the LUKS disk encryption can therefore not take place for standalone nodes. The passphrase must thus be executed directly by the cluster administrator, either at the console, or after re-establishing CMDaemon connectivity.

A new passphrase can be set for the node while it is still managed by CMDaemon, and automatically overwrites the CMDaemon-managed passphrase. The new passphrase can be defined with the `--passphrase` or with the `-p|--payload <payload>` option of `installerinteractions`, and needs the `--force` option:

## Example

```
Fri Jun 11 23:08:38 2021 [notice] basecm11: node001 [ INSTALLING ] (waiting for disk encryption passphrase)
[basecm11->device[node001]]% installerinteractions -w -p mysecret --confirm --force
Hostname Category Type           Timestamp          Action      Status
-----
node001  default   disk encryption passphrase Fri Jun 11 23:08:36 2021 Waiting for approval pending
[... time passes...]
[basecm11->device[node001]]% installerinteractions
No remote interactions pending.
[basecm11->device[node001]]%
Fri Jun 11 23:09:48 2021 [notice] basecm11: node001 [ INSTALLER_CALLINGINIT ] (switching to local root)
[basecm11->device[node001]]%
Fri Jun 11 23:10:31 2021 [notice] basecm11: node001 [    UP    ]
[basecm11->device[node001]]%
```

The reason for the `--force` option is that changing the passphrase results in the entire disk being reformatted.

Setting a new passphrase means that the node undergoes a FULL installation (section 5.4.4) during node provisioning. However for a standalone mode, the provisioning system is bypassed in favor of booting from the local drive, and the passphrase must be entered manually at the node console.

### D.17.4 Changing A Passphrase On An Encrypted Node

Passphrases can be of two types:

- `autorandom`: An automatically-generated random passphrase, 256 characters in length
- `custom`: A manually-generated passphrase that is typed in by the cluster administrator. This passphrase is set up when using the

```
installerinteractions --confirm -w
```

command with either the option

```
-p|--payload <payload>
```

or the option

```
--passphrase
```

If a node with an `autorandom` passphrase type is confirmed with `-p|--payload` or `--passphrase`, then the passphrase type automatically switches to a `custom` passphrase type. The passphrase during this confirmation is set either as the payload (the `<payload>` part) of the `-p|--payload` option, or it is set as a string entered via the prompts that come up when the `--passphrase` option is used.

If echoing of the passphrase to processes viewing utilities is a risk, then it is recommended to use the prompting option, `--passphrase`, instead of the `-p|--payload` option.

Any passphrase change results in a FULL installation during node-installer provisioning.

#### Resetting A Passphrase Type To autorandom

To reset a node that is being managed with a `custom` type passphrase back to the `autorandom` type of passphrase, so that the passphrase is managed by CMDaemon management, the `--reset` option of `installerinteractions` can be used:

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% installerinteractions -w --reset --confirm
```



# E

## Example initialize And finalize Scripts

The node-installer executes any `initialize` and `finalize` scripts at particular stages of its 13-step run during node-provisioning (section 5.4). They are sometimes useful for troubleshooting or workarounds during those stages. The scripts are stored in the CMDaemon database, rather than in the filesystem as plain text files, because they run before the node's init process takes over and establishes the final filesystem.

Default `initialize` and `finalize` scripts are provided with the `default` category:

```
[basecm11->category[default]]% show | grep ize
Initialize script          <1.46KiB>
Finalize script           <3.4KiB>
```

### E.1 When Are They Used?

The `initialize` and `finalize` scripts are sometimes used as an alternative configuration option out of a choice of other possible options (section 3.19.1). As a solution it can be a bit of a hack, but sometimes there is no reasonable alternative other than using an `initialize` or `finalize` script.

**An `initialize` script:** is used well before the `init` process starts, to execute custom commands before partitions and mounting devices are checked. Typically, `initialize` script commands are related to partitioning, mounting, or initializing special storage hardware. Often an `initialize` script is needed because the commands in it cannot be stored persistently anywhere else.

**A `finalize` script:** (also run before `init`, but shortly before `init` starts) is used to set a file configuration or to initialize special hardware, sometimes after a hardware check. It is run in order to make software or hardware work before, or during the later `init` stage of boot. Thus, often a `finalize` script is needed because its commands must be executed before `init`, and the commands cannot be stored persistently anywhere else, or it is needed because a choice between (otherwise non-persistent) configuration files must be made based on the hardware before `init` starts.

### E.2 Accessing From Base View And cmsh

The `initialize` and `finalize` scripts are accessible for viewing and editing:

- In Base View, via the Node Categories or Nodes window, under the Settings window. The navigation paths for these are:
  - Grouping > Node categories[default] > Edit > Settings

– Devices > Nodes [node001] > Edit > Settings

- In cmsh, using the category or device modes. The get command is used for viewing the script, and the set command to start up the default text editor to edit the script. Output is truncated in the two following examples at the point where the editor starts up:

#### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% category use default
[basecm11->category[default]]% show | grep script
Parameter          Value
-----
Finalize script    <1367 bytes>
Initialize script  <0 bytes>
[basecm11->category[default]]% set initializescript
```

#### Example

```
[basecm11]% device use node001
[basecm11->device[node001]]%
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set finalizescript
```

### E.3 Environment Variables Available To initialize And finalize Scripts

When CMDaemon is fully up, the environment variables available to CMDaemon scripts are fully available and can be listed by the CMDaemon front-ends (page 72).

That full range of environment variables is not available for initialize and finalize scripts, since only a subset of the full environment is defined during the stages associated with the scripts.

For the initialize and finalize scripts, node-specific customizations can still be made from a script using the environment variables that are available. For initialize scripts, this is discussed briefly in section E.5.1.

For finalize scripts, the available environment variables can be listed using the following script as a finalizescript:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% get finalizescript
#!/bin/bash
#
# All cluster manager environment variables are prefixed with CMD_
# The root / of the running node is always mounted on /localdisk
#
set | grep CMD_ > /localdisk/var/log/node-installer-finalize.env
```

After the node comes up, the contents of the saved file on that node are the available variables:

#### Example

```
[root@node001 ~]# cat /var/log/node-installer-finalize.env
CMD_ACTIVE_MASTER_IP=10.141.255.254
CMD_CATEGORY=default
CMD_CHASSIS=
CMD_CHASSIS_IP=0.0.0.0
```

```
CMD_CHASSIS_PASSWORD=
CMD_CHASSIS_SLOT=
CMD_CHASSIS_USERNAME=
...

```

The following table shows the available variables with some example values:

*Table E: Environment Variables For The initialize And Finalize Scripts*

Variable	Example Value
CMD_ACTIVE_MASTER_IP	10.141.255.254
CMD_CATEGORY	default
CMD_CHASSIS	chassis01
CMD_CHASSIS_IP	10.141.1.1
CMD_CHASSIS_PASSWORD	ADMIN
CMD_CHASSIS_SLOT	1
CMD_CHASSIS_USERNAME	ADMIN
CMD_CLUSTERNAME	BCM HEAD Cluster
CMD_DEVICE_HEIGHT	1
CMD_DEVICE_POSITION	10
CMD_DEVICE_TYPE	SlaveNode
CMD_ETHERNETSWITCH	switch01:1
CMD_FSEXPORT__SLASH_cm_SLASH_node-installer_ALLOWWRITE	no
CMD_FSEXPORT__SLASH_cm_SLASH_node-installer_HOSTS	10.141.0.0/16
CMD_FSEXPORT__SLASH_cm_SLASH_node-installer_PATH	/cm/node-installer
CMD_FSEXPOR	_SLASH_cm_SLASH_node-installer
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_cm_SLASH_shared_DEVICE	master:/cm/shared
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_cm_SLASH_shared_FILESYSTEM	nfs
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_cm_SLASH_shared_MOUNTPOINT	/cm/shared
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_cm_SLASH_shared_OPTIONS	rsize=32768,wsize=32768,\hard,intr,async
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_dev_SLASH_pts_DEVICE	none
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_dev_SLASH_pts_FILESYSTEM	devpts
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_dev_SLASH_pts_MOUNTPOINT	/dev/pts
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_dev_SLASH_pts_OPTIONS	gid=5,mode=620
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_dev_SLASH_shm_DEVICE	none
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_dev_SLASH_shm_FILESYSTEM	tmpfs
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_dev_SLASH_shm_MOUNTPOINT	/dev/shm
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_dev_SLASH_shm_OPTIONS	defaults
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_home_DEVICE	master:/home
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_home_FILESYSTEM	nfs

*...continues*

Table E: Environment Variables For The initialize And Finalize Scripts...continued

Variable	Example Value
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_home_MOUNTPOINT	home
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_home_OPTIONS	rsize=32768,wsize=32768,\br/>hard,intr,async
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_proc_DEVICE	none
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_proc_FILESYSTEM	proc
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_proc_MOUNTPOINT	/proc
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_proc_OPTIONS	defaults,nosuid
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_sys_DEVICE	none
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_sys_FILESYSTEM	sysfs
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_sys_MOUNTPOINT	/sys
CMD_FSMOUNT__SLASH_sys_OPTIONS	defaults
CMD_FSMOUNTS *	_SLASH_dev_SLASH_pts _SLASH_proc _SLASH_sys _SLASH_dev_SLASH_shm _SLASH_cm_SLASH_shared _SLASH_home
CMD_GATEWAY	10.141.255.254
CMD_HOSTNAME	node001
CMD_INSTALLMODE	AUTO
CMD_INTERFACE_eth0_IP **	10.141.0.1
CMD_INTERFACE_eth0_MTU **	1500
CMD_INTERFACE_eth0_NETMASK **	255.255.0.0
CMD_INTERFACE_eth0_TYPE **	physical
CMD_INTERFACES *	eth0 eth1 eth2 ipmi0
CMD_IP	10.141.0.1
CMD_MAC	00:00:00:00:00:01
CMD_PARTITION	base
CMD_PASSIVE_MASTER_IP	10.141.255.253
CMD_PDUS	
CMD_POWER_CONTROL	custom
CMD_RACK	rack01
CMD_RACK_HEIGHT	42
CMD_RACK_ROOM	serverroom
CMD_ROLES	sgeclient storage
CMD_SHARED_MASTER_IP	10.141.255.252
CMD_SOFTWAREIMAGE_PATH	/cm/images/default-image
CMD_SOFTWAREIMAGE	default-image
CMD_TAG	00000000a000
CMD_USERDEFINED1	var1
CMD_USERDEFINED2	var2

...continues

Table E: Environment Variables For The initialize And Finalize Scripts...continued

Variable	Example Value
*	The value for this variable is a string with spaces, not an array. Eg:
CMD_FSMOUNTS	_SLASH_dev_SLASH_pts _SLASH_proc _SLASH_sys _SLASH_dev_SLASH_shm ..."
**	The name of this variable varies according to the interfaces available. So, eth0 can be replaced by eth1, eth2, ipmi0, and so on.

## E.4 Using Environment Variables Stored In Multiple Variables

Some data values, such as those related to interfaces (CMD\_INTERFACES\_\*), mount points (CMD\_FSMOUNT\_\*\_SLASH\_\*) and exports (CMD\_FSEXPORT\_\*\_SLASH\_cm\_\*\_SLASH\_node-installer\_\*) are stored in multiple variables. The following finalize script set for node001 shows how they can be used:

### Example

```
[head->device*[node001*]]% get finalizescript
#!/bin/bash
echo "These are the interfaces:" >> /localdisk/env
CMD_ENV=`env`
function parser {
    for s in TYPE IP NETMASK; do
        echo $((grep CMD_INTERFACE_${1:/:-$s} | grep -Po "[\w.]+\$") <<< "${CMD_ENV[@]}"))
        done
    }
for interface in $CMD_INTERFACES
do
    read -r type ip mask <<< $(parser $interface)

    echo $interface type=$type >> /localdisk/env
    echo $interface ip=$ip >> /localdisk/env
    echo $interface netmask=$mask >> /localdisk/env
done
```

The technique of storage of values in a file under the path within the node of /localdisk/ is described later on in section E.5.2. When the node boots up and runs the finalize script, then files stored under /localdisk/, end up under the path of / after the node is fully up.

The detailed workings of the parser function in the preceding bash script are not easy, but the result is that the parser function returns output so that the interface type, IP address, and netmask are listed for each interface. The parser works for physical interfaces, VLAN interfaces, and alias interfaces. For example, if there are two interfaces, eth0 and eth0:1, then the file env might be seen to have the following data:

### Example

```
[root@head ~]# ssh node001 cat /env
These are the interfaces:
eth0 type=physical
eth0 ip=10.141.0.1
eth0 netmask=255.255.0.0
eth0:1 type=alias
eth0:1 ip=10.141.0.2
eth0:1 netmask=255.255.0.0
```

For remotely mounted devices, the name of the environment variables for mount entries have the following naming convention:

Description	Naming Convention
volume	CMD_FSMOUNT_<x>_DEVICE
mount point	CMD_FSMOUNT_<x>_MOUNTPOINT
filesystem type	CMD_FSMOUNT_<x>_FILESYSTEM
mount point options	CMD_FSMOUNT_<x>_OPTIONS

For the names, the entries *<x>* are substituted with the local mount point path, such as “/cm/shared”, but with the “/” character replaced with the text “\_SLASH\_”. So, for a local mount point path “/cm/shared”, the name of the associated volume environment variable becomes CMD\_FSMOUNT\_\_SLASH\_cm\_SLASH\_shared\_DEVICE.

A similar naming convention is applicable to the names of the environment variables for the export entries:

Description	Naming Convention
exported system writable?	CMD_FSEXPORT_<y>_ALLOWWRITE
allowed hosts or networks	CMD_FSEXPORT_<y>_HOSTS
path on exporter	CMD_FSMOUNT_<y>_PATH

Here, the entry *<y>* is replaced by the file path to the exported filesystem on the exporting node. This is actually the same as the value of “CMD\_FSMOUNT\_<y>\_PATH”, but with the “/” character replaced with the text “\_SLASH\_”.

The entries for the local mount values and the export values in the table in section E.3 are the default values for a newly installed cluster. If the administrator wishes to add more devices and mount entries, this is done by configuring fsexports on the head node, and fsmounts on the regular nodes, using Base View or cmsh (section 3.13).

## E.5 Storing A Configuration To A Filesystem

### E.5.1 Storing With Initialize Scripts

The initialize script (section 5.4.5) runs after the install-mode type and execution have been determined (section 5.4.4), but before unloading specific drivers and before partitions are checked and filesystems mounted (section 5.4.6). Data output cannot therefore be written to a local drive. It can however be written by the script to the tmpfs, but data placed there is lost quite soon, namely during the pivot\_root process that runs when the node-installer hands over control to the init process running from the local drive. However, if needed, the data can be placed on the local drive later by using the finalize script to copy it over from the tmpfs.

Due to this, and other reasons, a finalize script is easier to use for an administrator than an initialize script, and the use of the finalize script is therefore preferred.

### E.5.2 Ways Of Writing A Finalize Script To Configure The Destination Nodes

#### Basic Example—Copying A File To The Image

For a finalize script (section 5.4.11), which runs just before switching from using the ramdrive to using the local hard drive, the local hard drive is mounted under /localdisk. Data can therefore be written to the local hard drive if needed, but is only persistent until a reboot, when it gets rewritten. For example, predetermined configuration files can be written from the NFS drive for a particular node, or they can be written from an image prepared earlier and now running on the node at this stage, overwriting a

node-installer configuration:

### Example

```
#!/bin/bash
cp /etc/myapp.conf.overwrite /localdisk/etc/myapp.conf
```

This technique is used in a `finalize` script example in section 3.19.4, except that an append operation is used instead of a copy operation, to overcome a network issue by modifying a network configuration file slightly.

There are three important considerations for most finalize scripts:

#### 1. Running A Finalize Script Without `exit 0` Considered Harmful

**Failed Finalize Script Logic Flow:** For a default configuration without a finalize script, if PXE boot fails from the network during node provisioning, the node then goes on to attempt booting from the local drive via iPXE (section 5.1.2).

However, if the configuration has a finalize script, such as in the preceding example, and if the finalize script fails, then the failure is passed to the node-installer.

**Avoiding Remote Node Hang During A Finalize Script: `exit 0` Recommended:** If the node-installer fails, then no attempt is made to continue booting, and the node remains hung at that stage. This is usually undesirable, and can also make remote debugging of a finalize script annoying.

Adding an `exit 0` to the end of the finalize script is therefore recommended, and means that an error in the script will still allow the node-installer to continue with an attempt to boot from the local drive.

**Debugging Tips When A Node Hangs During A Finalize Script:** If there is a need to understand the failure, then if the node-installer hangs, the administrator can ssh into the node into the node-installer environment, and run the finalize script manually to debug it. Once the bug has been understood, the script can be copied over to the appropriate location in the head node, for nodes or categories.

Additional aid in understanding a failure may be available by looking through the node-installer logs. The debug mode for the node-installer can be enabled by setting `debug=true` instead of `debug=false` in the file `/cm/node-installer/scripts/node-installer.conf` (for multiarch/multidistro configurations the path takes the form: `/cm/node-installer-<distribution>-<architecture>/scripts/node-installer.conf`).

Another way to help debug a failure could be by setting custom event messages in the script, as explained on page 627.

#### 2. Protecting A Configuration File Change From Provisioning Erasure With `excludelistupdate`

In the preceding example, the finalize script saves a file `/etc/myapp.conf` to the destination nodes.

To protect such a configuration file from erasure, its file path must be covered in the second sublist in the `excludelistupdate` list (section 5.6.1).

#### 3. Finalize scripts cannot modify `/proc`, `/sys`, and `/dev` filesystems of end result on node directly.

The `/proc`, `/sys`, and `/dev` filesystems are unmounted after the finalize script is run before pivoting into the root filesystem under the `/localdisk` directory, which means any changes made to them

are simply discarded. To change values under these filesystems on the node, an `rc.local` file inside the software image can be used.

For example, if swappiness is to be set to 20 via the `/proc` filesystem, one way to do it is to set it in the `rc.local` file:

### Example

```
# cat /cm/images/<image-name>/etc/rc.local | grep -v ^# | grep .
echo 20 > /proc/sys/vm/swappiness
exit 0
# chmod 755 /cm/images/<image-name>/etc/rc.d/rc.local      # must be made executable
```

The preceding way of using `rc.local` set to run a command to modify the image just for illustration. A better way to get the same result in this case would be to not involve `rc.local`, but to add a line within the `/cm/images/<image-name>/etc/sysctl.conf` file:

```
vm.swappiness = 20
```

### Copying A File To The Image—Decision Based On Detection

Detection within a basic `finalize` script is useful extra technique. The `finalize` script example of section 3.19.4 does detection too, to decide if a configuration change is to be done on the node or not.

A further variation on a `finalize` script with detection is a script selecting from a choice of possible configurations. A symlink is set to one of the possible configurations based on hardware detection or detection of an environment variable. The environment variable can be a node parameter or similar, from the table in section E.3. If it is necessary to overwrite different nodes with different configurations, then the previous `finalize` script example might become something like:

### Example

```
#!/bin/bash
if [[ $CMD_HOSTNAME = node00[1-7] ]]
then ln -s /etc/myapp.conf.first /localdisk/etc/myapp.conf
fi
if [[ $CMD_HOSTNAME = node01[5-8] ]]
then ln -s /etc/myapp.conf.second /localdisk/etc/myapp.conf
fi
if [[ $CMD_HOSTNAME = node02[3-6] ]]
then ln -s /etc/myapp.conf.third /localdisk/etc/myapp.conf
fi
```

In the preceding example, the configuration file in the image has several versions: `/etc/myapp.conf.<first|second|third>`. Nodes node001 to node007 are configured with the first version, nodes node015 to node018 with the second version, and nodes node023 to node026 with the third version. It is convenient to add more versions to the structure of this decision mechanism.

### Copying A File To The Image—With Environment Variables Evaluated In The File

Sometimes there can be a need to use the CMDDaemon environment variables within a `finalize` script to specify a configuration change that depends on the environment.

For example a special service may need a configuration file, `test`, that requires the hostname `myhost`, as a parameter=value pair:

### Example

```
SPECIALSERVICEPARAMETER=myhost
```

Ideally the placeholder value `myhost` would be the hostname of the node rather than the fixed value `myhost`. Conveniently, the CMDaemon environment variable `CMD_HOSTNAME` has the name of the host as its value.

So, inside the configuration file, after the administrator changes the host name from its placeholder name to the environment variable:

```
SPECIALSERVICE=${CMD_HOSTNAME}
```

then when the node-installer runs the finalize script, the file could be modified in-place by the finalize script, and  `${CMD_HOSTNAME}` be substituted by the actual hostname.

A suitable finalize Bash script, which runs an in-line Perl substitution, is the following:

```
#!/bin/bash
perl -p -i -e 's/\$\{\{[^}\]+}\}/defined $ENV{$1} ? $ENV{$1} : $&/eg' /localdisk/some/directory/file
```

Here, `/some/directory/file` means that, if for example the final configuration file path for the node is to be `/var/spool/test` then the file name should be set to `/localdisk/var/spool/test` inside the finalize script.

The finalize script replaces all lines within the file that have environment variable names of the form:

```
PARAMETER=${<environment variable name>}
```

with the value of that environment variable. Thus, if `<environment variable name>` is `CMD_HOSTNAME`, then that variable is replaced by the name of the host.

### E.5.3 Restricting The Script To Nodes Or Node Categories

As mentioned in section 2.1.3, node settings can be adjusted within a category. So the configuration changes to `ifcfg-eth0` is best implemented per node by accessing and adjusting the finalize script per node if only a few nodes in the category are to be set up like this. If all the nodes in a category are to be set up like this, then the changes are best implemented in a finalize script accessed and adjusted at the category level. Accessing the scripts at the node and category levels is covered in section E.2.

People used to normal object inheritance behavior should be aware of the following when considering category level and node level finalize scripts:

With objects, a node item value overrules a category level value. On the other hand, finalize scripts, while treated in an analogous way to objects, cannot always inherit properties from each other in the precise way that true objects can. Thus, it is possible that a finalize script run at the node level may not have anything to do with what is changed by running it at the category level. However, to allow it to resemble the inheritance behavior of object properties a bit, the node-level finalize script, if it exists, is always run after the category-level script. This gives it the ability to “overrule” the category level.



# F

# Workload Managers Quick Reference

## F.1 Slurm

Slurm is a GPL-licensed workload management system and developed largely at Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory. The name was originally an acronym for Simple Linux Utility for Resource Management, but the acronym is deprecated because it no longer does justice to the advanced capabilities of Slurm.

The Slurm service and outputs are normally handled using the Base View or cmsh front end tools for CMDaemon (section 7.4).

From the command line, direct Slurm commands that may sometimes come in useful include the following:

- **sacct**: used to report job or job step accounting information about active or completed jobs.

### Example

```
# sacct -j 43 -o jobid,AllocCPUs,NCPUS,NNodes,NTasks,ReqCPUs
      JobID   AllocCPUs     NCPUS    NNodes   NTasks  ReqCPUs
-----  -----
43          1           1         1        1       1
```

- **salloc**: used to allocate resources for a job in real time. Typically this is used to allocate resources and spawn a shell. The shell is then used to execute srun commands to launch parallel tasks.
- **sattach** used to attach standard input, output, and error plus signal capabilities to a currently running job or job step. One can attach to and detach from jobs multiple times.
- **sbatch**: used to submit a job script for later execution. The script typically contains one or more srun commands to launch parallel tasks.
- **sbcast**: used to transfer a file from local disk to local disk on the nodes allocated to a job. This can be used to effectively use diskless compute nodes or provide improved performance relative to a shared filesystem.
- **scancel**: used to cancel a pending or running job or job step. It can also be used to send an arbitrary signal to all processes associated with a running job or job step.
- **scontrol**: the administrative tool used to view and/or modify Slurm state. Note that many scontrol commands can only be executed as user root.

### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ scontrol show nodes
NodeName=basecm11 Arch=x86_64 CoresPerSocket=1
    CPUAlloc=0 CPUErr=0 CPUTot=1 CPULoad=0.05 Features=(null)
...
```

If a node, for example node001, is stuck in a CG state (“completing”), and rebooting it is not feasible, then the following may clear it in some cases:

### Example

```
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ scontrol update nodename=node001 state=down reason=hung
[fred@basecm11 ~]$ scontrol update nodename=node001 state=resume
```

- **sinfo**: reports the state of partitions and nodes managed by Slurm. It has a wide variety of filtering, sorting, and formatting options.

### Example

```
basecm11:~ # sinfo -o "%9P %.5a %.10l %.6D %.6t %C %N"
PARTITION AVAIL  TIMELIMIT  NODES  STATE CPUS(A/I/O/T) NODELIST
defq*       up     infinite      1  alloc 1/0/0/1 basecm11
```

- **smap**: reports state information for jobs, partitions, and nodes managed by Slurm, but graphically displays the information to reflect network topology.
- **squeue**: reports the state of jobs or job steps. It has a wide variety of filtering, sorting, and formatting options. By default, it reports the running jobs in priority order and then the pending jobs in priority order.

### Example

```
basecm11:~ # squeue -o "%.18i %.9P %.8j %.8u %.2t %.10M %.6D %C %R"
JOBID PARTITION  NAME  USER ST   TIME  NODES CPUS NODELIST(REASON)
 43      defq  bash  fred  R  16:22      1 1 basecm11
...
```

- **srun**: used to submit a job for execution or initiate job steps in real time. **srun** has a wide variety of options to specify resource requirements, including: minimum and maximum node count, processor count, specific nodes to use or not use, and specific node characteristics (so much memory, disk space, certain required features, etc.). A job can contain multiple job steps executing sequentially or in parallel on independent or shared nodes within the job’s node allocation.

**Auto Scaler dynamic node issues with srun**: A concern about **srun** ([https://bugs.schedmd.com/show\\_bug.cgi?id=1333](https://bugs.schedmd.com/show_bug.cgi?id=1333)) at the time of writing (January 2023) is the following: After an **srun** job has been queued, and a new node is added, the **slurm.conf** file is not read again. This means that the new node resource is not seen by jobs using **srun**. Thus, with **srun** jobs, nodes launched dynamically by Auto Scaler remain unused, and can fail. Workarounds are to use **salloc** or **sbatch** instead of **srun**.

- **smap**: reports state information for jobs, partitions, and nodes managed by Slurm, but graphically displays the information to reflect network topology.
- **strigger**: used to set, get or view event triggers. Event triggers include things such as nodes going down or jobs approaching their time limit.

- sview: a graphical user interface to get and update state information for jobs, partitions, and nodes managed by Slurm.

There are man pages for these commands. Full documentation on Slurm is available online at: <http://slurm.schedmd.com/documentation.html>.

## F.2 PBS Professional

The following commands can be used in PBS Professional to view queues, jobs, and server status:

```
qstat           query queue status
qstat -a        show only queued or running jobs for a destination, or all states for a job ID
qstat -r        show only running or suspended jobs for a destination, or all states for a job ID
qstat -q        show queue status for destinations
qstat -rn       only running or suspended jobs, with list of allocated nodes (exec_host string)
qstat -i        information on queued, held, waiting jobs is given for specified destination. Information about the job is given if a job ID is specified, regardless of the job status
qstat -B        display server status for the specified servers
qstat -u <username> show jobs for a user for the specified destination. Status information for the job is displayed for a specified job ID.
```

Other useful commands are:

```
tracejob <job id>      show what happened today to <job id>
tracejob -n <number> <job id>    search last <number> days for <job id>

qmgr            administrator interface to batch system ( man qmgr.8B for more details)

qterm           terminates PBS server (but BCM starts pbs_server again)

pbsnodes <node>     query status of compute node
pbsnodes -a        query status of all compute nodes
```

The commands of PBS Professional are documented in the man pages, and also in the extensive documentation available via [https://community.altair.com/community?id=altair\\_product\\_documentation](https://community.altair.com/community?id=altair_product_documentation).



# G

## Metrics, Health Checks, Enummetrics, And Actions

This appendix describes the metrics (section G.1), health checks (section G.2), enummetrics (section 10.2.2), and actions (section G.4), along with their parameters, in a newly-installed cluster. Metrics, health checks, enummetrics, and actions can each be standalone scripts, or they can be built-ins. Standalone scripts can be those supplied with the system, or they can be custom scripts built by the administrator. Scripts often require environment variables (as described in section 3.3.1 of the *Developer Manual*). On success scripts must exit with a status of 0, as is the normal practice.

### G.1 Metrics And Their Parameters

A list of metric names can be viewed, for example, for the head node, using cmsh as follows (section 10.5.3):

```
[basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "monitoring measurable; list metric"
```

The metrics listed in this section are classed into 10 kinds:

1. regular metrics (section G.1.1)
2. NFS metrics (section G.1.2)
3. InfiniBand metrics (section G.1.3)
4. monitoring system metrics (section G.1.4)
5. GPU metrics (section G.1.6)
6. Job metrics (section G.1.8)
7. IPMI metrics (section G.1.9)
8. Redfish metrics (section G.1.10)
9. SMART metrics (section G.1.11)
10. Prometheus metrics (section G.1.12)

### G.1.1 Regular Metrics

Table G.1.1: List Of Metrics

Metric	Description
AlertLevel	Indicates the healthiness of a device based on severity of events (section 10.2.8). The lower it is, the better. There are 3 parameters it can take: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• count: the number of active triggers</li> <li>• maximum: the maximum alert level of all active triggers</li> <li>• sum: the summed alert level of all active triggers</li> </ul>
BlockedProcesses	Blocked processes waiting for I/O
BufferMemory	System memory used for buffering
BytesRecv*‡	Bytes/s received
BytesSent*‡	Bytes/s sent
CPUGuest*	CPU time spent in guest mode (Jiffies/s)
CPUIdle *	CPU time spent in idle mode (Jiffies/s)
CPUIrq *	CPU time spent in servicing IRQ (Jiffies/s)
CPUNice *	CPU time spent in nice mode (Jiffies/s)
CPUSoftIrq *	CPU time spent in servicing soft IRQ (Jiffies/s)
CPUSTeal *	CPU time spent in steal mode (Jiffies/s)
CPUSystem *	CPU time spent in system mode (Jiffies/s)
CPUUser *	CPU time spent in user mode (Jiffies/s)
CPUUsage *	Percent of time not spent in idle mode (sum of non-idling percentages) (%/s)
CPUWait *	CPU time spent in I/O wait mode (Jiffies/s).
CacheMemory	System memory used for caching.
Cores	Number of cores for a node
CoresDown	Number of cores for all nodes marked as DOWN
CoresTotal	Total number of known cores for all nodes
CoresUp	Number of cores for all nodes marked as UP
CtxtSwitches*	Context switches/s
DPUNodesClosed	Number of DPUs not marked as UP or DOWN
DPUNodesDown	Number of DPUs marked as DOWN
DPUNodesTotal	Total number of DPUs
DPUNodesUp	Number of DPUs not marked as UP or DOWN
DevicesClosed	Number of devices not marked as UP or DOWN
DevicesDown	Number of devices marked as DOWN
DevicesTotal	Total number of devices

...continues

Table G.1.1: List Of Metrics...continued

Metric	Description
DevicesUp	Number of devices in status UP. A node (head, regular, virtual, cloud) or GPU Unit is not classed as a device. A device can be an item such as a switch, PDU, chassis, or rack, if the item is enabled and configured for management.
DropRecv*‡	Packets/s received and dropped
DropSent*‡	Packets/s sent and dropped
EC2SpotPrice	Amazon EC2 price for spot instances
EccDBitGPU**	Total number of double bit ECC errors/s (file: sample_gpu)
EccSBitGPU**	Total number of single bit ECC errors/s (file: sample_gpu)
ErrorsRecv*‡	Packets/s received with error
ErrorsSent*‡	Packets/s sent with error
FPGAsDown	Number of FPGAs for all nodes marked as DOWN
FPGAsTotal	Total number of known FPGAs for all nodes
FPGAsUp	Number of FPGAs for all nodes marked as UP
FabricTopologies	Number of fabric topologies
FabricTopologyHostUsage	Average usage of all topology hosts
FabricTopologyResourceBoxUsage	Average usage of all topology resource boxes
Forks*	Forked processes/s
FrameErrors*‡	Packet framing errors/s
FreeFiles\$	Free file inodes on the specified mount point
FreeSpace\$	Free space for non-root user. Takes mount point as a parameter
GPUUnitsClosed	Number of GPU units not marked as UP or DOWN
GPUUnitsDown	Number of GPU units marked as DOWN
GPUUnitsTotal	Total number of GPU Units
GPUUnitsUp	Number of GPU units marked as UP
GPUsTotal	Total number of known GPUs for all nodes
GPUsUp	Number of GPUs for all nodes marked as UP
GPUsDown	Number of GPUs for all nodes marked as DOWN
HardwareCorruptedMemory	Hardware corrupted memory detected by ECC
IOPInProgress†	I/O operations in progress
IOTime*,†	I/O operations time in milliseconds/s
InterfaceState	Interface operation state
IpForwDatagrams*	Input IP datagrams/s to be forwarded/s
IpFragCreates*	IP datagram fragments/s generated/s
IpFragFails*	IP datagrams/s which needed to be fragmented but could not
IpFragOKs*	IP datagrams/s successfully fragmented
IpInAddrErrors*	Input datagrams/s discarded because the IP address in their header was not a valid address
IpInDelivers*	Input IP datagrams/s successfully delivered
IpInDiscards*	Input IP datagrams/s discarded

...continues

Table G.1.1: List Of Metrics...continued

Metric	Description
IpInHdrErrors*	Input IP datagrams/s discarded due to errors in their IP headers
IpInReceives*	Input IP datagrams/s, including ones with errors, received from all interfaces
IpInUnknownProtos*	Input IP datagrams/s received but discarded due to an unknown or unsupported protocol
IpOutDiscards*	Output IP datagrams/s discarded
IpOutNoRoutes*	Output IP datagrams/s discarded because no route could be found
IpOutRequests*	Output IP datagrams/s supplied to IP in requests for transmission
IpReasmOKs*	IP datagrams/s successfully re-assembled
IpReasmReqds*	IP fragments/s received needing re-assembly
JobsRunning	Jobs running on the node
LiteNodesClosed	Number of lite nodes not marked as UP or DOWN
LiteNodesDown	Number of lite nodes marked as DOWN
LiteNodesTotal	Total number of lite nodes
LiteNodesUp	Number of lite nodes marked as UP
LoadFifteen	Load average on 15 minutes
LoadFive	Load average on 5 minutes
LoadOne	Load average on 1 minute
MajorPageFaults*	Page faults/s that require I/O
ManagedServicesOk	This metric uses the ManagedServicesOk health check (page 971) for a grouping of nodes, such as the nodes in a category, or the nodes in a cluster. A parameter is specified for the metric, and a value is returned, as follows:

- fail: Total number of health checks in a FAIL state
- good: Percentage that are in the PASS state
- pass: Total number that are in the PASS state
- total: Total number of the ManagedServicesOk metrics being sampled, regardless of state
- unknown: Total number that are in the UNKNOWN state

---

...continues

Table G.1.1: List Of Metrics...continued

Metric	Description
ManagedSwitchesClosed	Number of managed switches not marked as UP or DOWN
ManagedSwitchesDown	Number of managed switches marked as DOWN
ManagedSwitchesTotal	Number of managed switches not marked as UP or DOWN
ManagedSwitchesUp	Total number of managed switches
MemoryAvailable	Available system memory
MemoryFree	Free system memory
MemoryTotal	Total system memory
MemoryUsed <sup>¶</sup>	Used system memory for a process specified as a parameter. Processes can be anything that is always running:
<b>Example</b>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• cm-lite-daemon</li> <li>• cm-mqtt</li> <li>• cmd</li> <li>• mysqld</li> <li>• promtail</li> <li>• slurmctld</li> <li>• slurmd</li> </ul>
MemoryUtilization	Memory utilization
MergedReads <sup>*,†</sup>	Merged reads/s
MergedWrites <sup>*,†</sup>	Merged writes/s
NodesClosed	Number of nodes not marked as UP or DOWN
NodesDown	Number of nodes marked as DOWN
NodesTotal	Total number of nodes
NodesUp	Number of nodes in status UP
OccupationRate	Cluster occupation rate—a normalized cluster load percentage. 100% means all cores on all nodes are fully loaded.  The calculation is done as follows: LoadOne on each node is mapped to a value, calibrated so that LoadOne=1 corresponds to 100% per node. The maximum allowed for a node in the mapping is 100%. The average of these mappings taken over all nodes is the OccupationRate.  A high value can indicate the cluster is being used optimally. However, a value that is 100% most of the time suggests the cluster may need to be expanded.
OOM kill	Number of processes killed by OOM killer since boot
PacketsRecv <sup>*,‡</sup>	Packets/s received
PacketsSent <sup>*,‡</sup>	Packets/s sent
PageFaults <sup>*</sup>	Page faults/s

...continues

Table G.1.1: List Of Metrics...continued

Metric	Description
PageIn *	Number of bytes the system has paged in from disk/s
PageOut *	Number of bytes the system has paged out to disk/s
PageSwapIn *	Number of bytes the system has swapped in from disk/s
PageSwapOut *	Number of bytes the system has swapped out to disk/s
PDUBankLoad	Total PDU bank load, in amps
PDULoad	Total PDU phase load, in amps
PDUUptime*	PDU uptime per second. I.e. ideally=1, but in practice has jitter effects.
PhaseLoad	Sum of PDULoad over all power distribution units
ProcessCount	Total number of all processes in the OS. These are running processes (RunningProcesses) and blocked processes(BlockedProcesses).
ReadOnly\$	Indicates if the specified mount point was mounted as read-only
ReadTime*,†	Read time in milliseconds/s
Reads*,†	Reads/s completed successfully
RunningProcesses	Running processes
ReportedSpeed	Speed reported by the port of the switch. The parameter name used is the hardware port name, as specified by the output of the <code>switchoverview</code> command. For example, for the Cumulus switch these can be <code>swp0</code> , <code>swp1</code> ...
SectorsRead*,†	Sectors/s read successfully/s
SectorsWritten*,†	Sectors/s written successfully
SwapCached	Cached swap memory
SwapFree	Free swap memory
SwapTotal	Total swap memory
SwapUsed	Used swap memory
SwapUtilization	Swap memory utilization
SystemTime¶	System time used by process specified by a parameter, for example: <code>cmd</code>
SwitchBroadcastPackets*	Total number of good packets received and directed to the broadcast address/s
SwitchCollisions*	Collisions/s on this network segment
SwitchCPUUsage	Switch CPU utilization estimation (%)
SwitchDelayDiscardFrames*	Frames discarded/s due to excessive transit delay through the bridge
SwitchFilterDiscardFrames*	Valid frames received/s but discarded by the forwarding process
SwitchMTUDiscardFrames*	Number of frames discarded/s due to an excessive size
SwitchMulticastPackets*	Total number of good packets/s received and directed to a multicast address
SwitchOverSizedPackets*	Well-received packets/s longer than 1518 octets
SwitchUnderSizedPackets*	Packets/s received which are less than 64 octets long

...continues

Table G.1.1: List Of Metrics...continued

Metric	Description
SwitchUptime*	Switch uptime per second. Ie, ideally=1, but in practice has jitter effects
TcpCurrEstab	TCP connections that are either ESTABLISHED or CLOSE-WAIT
TcpInErrs*	Input IP segments/s received in error
TcpRetransSegs*	Total number of IP segments/s re-transmitted
ThreadsUsed¶	Threads used by process. For example: cmd
TotalBytesRecv	Total bytes received on swp interfaces over all managed switches
TotalBytesSent	Total bytes sent on swp interfaces over all managed switches
TotalCPUIdle	Cluster-wide core usage in idle tasks (sum of all CPUIde metric percentages)
TotalCPUPowerUsage	Total CPU power usage over all nodes
TotalCPUSystem	Cluster-wide core usage in system mode (sum of all CPUSystem metric percentages)
TotalCPUTemperature	Average CPU temperature over all nodes
TotalCPUUser	Cluster-wide core usage in user mode (sum of all CPUUser metric percentages)
TotalCPUUtilization	Sum of CPUUsage over all nodes
TotalGPUMemoryUtilization	Average of GPU memory utilization percentage gpu_mem_utilization:average (table G.1.6) over all nodes
TotalGPUNvlinkBandwidth	Total GPU Nvlink bandwidth using gpu_nvlink_total_bandwidth:total (table G.1.6) over all nodes
TotalGPUPowerUsage	Total GPU power usage, using gpu_power_usage:total (table G.1.6) over all nodes
TotalGPUTemperature	Average of average GPU temperature using gpu_temperature:average (table G.1.6) over all nodes
TotalGPUUtilization	Average of GPU utilization using gpu_utilization:average (table G.1.6) over all nodes
TotalMemory	Sum of MemoryTotal over all nodes
TotalMemoryFree	Cluster-wide total of memory free
TotalMemoryUsed	Cluster-wide total of memory used
TotalMemoryUtilization	Sum of MemoryUtilization over all nodes
TotalNodePowerUsage	Total power usage over all nodes
TotalSwap	Sum of SwapTotal over all nodes
TotalSwapFree	Cluster-wide total swap free
TotalSwapUsed	Cluster-wide total swap used
TotalUser	Total number of known users
TotalUserLogin	Total number of logged in users
UdpInDatagrams*	Input UDP datagrams/s delivered to UDP users
UdpInErrors*	Input UDP datagrams/s received that could not be delivered/s for other reasons (no port excl.)

...continues

Table G.1.1: List Of Metrics...continued

Metric	Description
UdpNoPorts*	Received UDP datagrams/s for which there was no application at the destination port
UniqueUserLogin	Number of unique users logged in
UnmanagedNodesClosed	Number of unmanaged nodes not marked as UP or DOWN
UnmanagedNodesDown	Number of unmanaged nodes marked as DOWN
UnmanagedNodesTotal	Total number of unmanaged nodes
UnmanagedNodesUp	Number of unmanaged nodes marked as UP
Uptime*	System uptime per second. Ie, ideally=1, but in practice has jitter effects
UsedFiles\$	Used file inodes on the specified parameter as mount point
UsedSpace\$	Used space on the specified parameter as mount point
UserTime¶	User time used by specified process. For example: cmd
Utilization¶	Utilization by specified process. For example; cmd
VirtualMemoryUsed¶	Virtual memory used by specified process. For example cmd
WlmSlotsFree	The number of WLM slots free
WlmSlotsTotal	The total number of WLM slots
WlmSlotsUsed	The number of WLM slots in use
WlmSlotsUtilization	The percentage of WLM slots in use
wlm_slurm_state_count	Number of nodes in the state for a parameter. The possible parameters are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• allocated</li> <li>• completing</li> <li>• down</li> <li>• drain</li> <li>• draining</li> <li>• fail</li> <li>• failing</li> <li>• idle</li> <li>• maint</li> <li>• mixed</li> </ul>

*...continues*

Table G.1.1: List Of Metrics...continued

Metric	Description
WriteTime*,†	Write time in milliseconds/s (this is a per mille), for the parameter as device
Writes*,†	Writes/s completed successfully for the parameter as device
isilon_node_disk_access_latency	Isilon access latency for node disk
isilon_node_disk_iosched_queue	Isilon iosched queue for node disk
isilon_node_disk_xfer_size_in	Transfer size in for node disk
isilon_node_disk_xfer_size_out	Transfer size out for node disk
isilon_node_ip	IP address of isilon node
isilon_in_rate	Bytes written to NFS client from Isilon
isilon_out_rate	Bytes read from Isilon to NFS client
isilon_op_rate	I/O rate for NFS client to/from Isilon
node_network_carrier_changes_total	Samples total network carrier changes
nvidia_licensed_compute_resources	Total licensed compute resources
nvidia_used_compute_resources	Used compute resources, (maximum of nodes used and GPUs used, but value can only be up to the total licensed compute resources)
nvidia_used_gpu_resources	Used GPU resources
nvidia_used_node_resources	Used node resources
nvidia_used_node_resources	Used node resources

\* Cumulative metric. I.e. the metric is derived from cumulative raw measurements taken at two different times, according to:

$$\text{metric}_{\text{time}_2} = \frac{\text{measurement}_2 - \text{measurement}_1}{\text{time}_2 - \text{time}_1}$$

The metric is a “per second” measurement.

\*\* Standalone scripts, not built-ins.

If sampling from a head node, the script is in directory: /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/metrics/

For regular nodes, the script is in directory: /cm/images/default-image/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/metrics/

† Takes block device name (sda, sdc, nvme0n1 and so on) as parameter

‡ Takes interface device name (eth0, eth1, en01, docker0, ib0 and so on) as parameter

§ Takes mount point (for example: /, or /var) as parameter

¶ Takes a process, eg: cmd as a parameter

## G.1.2 NFS Metrics

The NFS metrics are all cumulative. They correspond to nfsstat output, and are shown in table G.1.2.

Table G.1.2: NFS Metrics

NFS Metric	Description
nfs_client_packet_packets	NFS client packets statistics: packets
nfs_client_packet_tcp	NFS client package statistics: TCP/IP packets
nfs_client_packet_tcpconn	NFS client package statistics: TCP/IP connections

...continues

Table G.1.2: NFS Metrics

NFS Metric	Description
nfs_client_packet_udp	NFS client package statistics: UDP packets
nfs_client_rpc_authrefrsh	NFS Client RPC statistics: authenticated refreshes to RPC server
nfs_client_rpc_calls	NFS Client RPC statistics: calls
nfs_client_rpc_retrans	NFS Client RPC statistics: re-transmissions
nfs_server_file_anon	NFS Server file statistics: anonymous access
nfs_server_file_lookup	NFS Server file statistics: look-ups
nfs_server_file_ncachedir	NFS Server file statistics: ncachedir
nfs_server_file_stale	NFS Server file statistics: stale files
nfs_server_packet_packets	NFS Server packet statistics: packets
nfs_server_packet_tcp	NFS Server packet statistics: TCP/IP packets
nfs_server_packet_tcpconn	NFS Server packet statistics: TCP/IP connections
nfs_server_packet_udp	NFS Server packet statistics: UDP packets
nfs_server_reply_hits	NFS Server reply statistics: hits
nfs_server_reply_misses	NFS Server reply statistics: misses
nfs_server_reply_nocache	NFS Server reply statistics: no cache
nfs_server_rpc_badauth	NFS Server RPC statistics: bad authentication
nfs_server_rpc_badcalls	NFS Server RPC statistics:bad RPC requests
nfs_server_rpc_badclnt	NFS Server RPC statistics: badclnt
nfs_server_rpc_calls	NFS Server RPC statistics: all calls to NFS and NLM
nfs_v3_client_access	NFSv3 client statistics: access
nfs_v3_client_create	NFSv3 client statistics: create
nfs_v3_client_fsinfo	NFSv3 client statistics: static file system information
nfs_v3_client_fsstat	NFSv3 client statistics: dynamic file system status
nfs_v3_client_getattr	NFSv3 client statistics: file system attributes
nfs_v3_client_lookup	NFSv3 client statistics: lookup
nfs_v3_client_pathconf	NFSv3 client statistics: configuration path
nfs_v3_client_read	NFSv3 client statistics: reads
nfs_v3_client_read_readdirplus	NFSv3 client statistics: readdirplus
nfs_v3_client_remove	NFSv3 client statistics: removes
nfs_v3_client_setattr	NFSv3 client statistics: setattr
nfs_v3_client_total	NFSv3 client statistics: total
nfs_v3_client_write	NFSv3 client statistics: writes
nfs_v3_server_access	NFSv3 server statistics: access
nfs_v3_server_create	NFSv3 server statistics: create
nfs_v3_server_fsinfo	NFSv3 server statistics: static file system information
nfs_v3_server_fsstat	NFSv3 server statistics: dynamic file system information
nfs_v3_server_getattr	NFSv3 server statistics: file system attributes gets
nfs_v3_server_lookup	NFSv3 server statistics: file name look-ups

...continues

Table G.1.2: NFS Metrics

NFS Metric	Description
nfs_v3_server_mkdir	NFSv3 server statistics: directory creation
nfs_v3_server_null	NFSv3 server statistics: null operations
nfs_v3_server_pathconf	NFSv3 server statistics: retrieve POSIX information
nfs_v3_server_read	NFSv3 server statistics: reads
nfs_v3_server_readdirplus	NFSv3 server statistics: REaddirPLUS procedures
nfs_v3_server_readlink	NFSv3 server statistics: Symbolic link reads
nfs_v3_server_setattr	NFSv3 server statistics: file system attribute sets
nfs_v3_server_total	NFSv3 server statistics: total
nfs_v3_server_write	NFSv3 server statistics: writes
nfs_v4_server_compound	NFSv4 server statistics: compound operations
nfs_v4_server_null	NFSv4 server statistics: null operations
nfs_v4_server_total	NFSv4 server statistics: total
nfs_v4_servop_access	NFSv4 server statistics: access
nfs_v4_servop_close	NFSv4 server statistics: close
nfs_v4_servop_create	NFSv4 server statistics: create
nfs_v4_servop_getattr	NFSv4 server statistics: file system attributes gets
nfs_v4_servop_getfh	NFSv4 server statistics: filehandle gets
nfs_v4_servop_lookup	NFSv4 server statistics: file name look-ups
nfs_v4_servop_open	NFSv4 server statistics: opens
nfs_v4_servop_putfh	NFSv4 server statistics: filehandle puts
nfs_v4_servop_putrootfh	NFSv4 server statistics: filehandle puts to root
nfs_v4_servop_read	NFSv4 server statistics: reads
nfs_v4_servop_readdirplus	NFSv4 server statistics: REaddirPLUS procedures
nfs_v4_servop_readlink	NFSv4 server statistics: Symbolic link reads
nfs_v4_servop_rename	NFSv4 server statistics: renames
nfs_v4_servop_savefh	NFSv4 server statistics: filehandle saves
nfs_v4_servop_setattr	NFSv4 server statistics: file system attribute sets
nfs_v4_servop_total	NFSv4 server statistics: total
nfs_v4_servop_write	NFSv4 server statistics: writes

### G.1.3 InfiniBand Metrics

The available InfiniBand metrics are displayed in table G.1.3.

Table G.1.3: InfiniBand Metrics

InfiniBand Metric	Description
...continues	

Table G.1.3: InfiniBand Metrics...continued

IB Metric	Description
SymbolErrorCount	Total number of minor link errors detected on one or more physical lanes.
LinkErrorRecoveryCount	Total number of times the Port Training state machine has successfully completed the link error recovery process.
LinkDownedCounter	Total number of times the Port Training state machine has failed the link error recovery process and downed the link.
PortRcvErrors	Total number of packets containing an error that were received on the port.
PortRcvRemotePhysicalErrors	Total number of packets marked with the EBP delimiter received on the port.
PortRcvSwitchRelayErrors	Total number of packets received on the port that were discarded because they could not be forwarded by the switch relay.
PortXmitDiscards	Total number of outbound packets discarded by the port because the port is down or congested.
PortXmitConstrainErrors	Total number of packets not transmitted from the switch physical port.
PortRcvConstraintErrors	Total number of packets received on the switch physical port that are discarded.
LocalLinkIntegrityErrors	The number of times that the count of local physical errors exceeded the threshold specified by LocalPhyErrors.
ExcessiveBufferOverrunError	The number of times that OverrunErrors consecutive flow control update periods occurred, each having at least one overrun error
QP1Dropped	Drops on the lower priority QP1 interconnect
VL15Dropped	Drops in the highest priority virtual lane 15
PortXmitData	Total number of data octets, divided by 4 (lanes), transmitted on all VLs. This is a 64-bit counter.
PortRcvData	Total number of data octets, divided by 4 (lanes), received on all VLs. This is a 64-bit counter.
PortXmitPkts	Total number of packets transmitted on all VLs from this port, including packets with errors, and excluding link packets.
PortRcvPkts	Total number of packets, including packets containing errors, and excluding link packets, received from all VLs on this port. This is a 64-bit counter.
PortXmitWait	The number of ticks during which the port had data to transmit but no data was sent during the entire tick (either because of insufficient credits or because of lack of arbitration).

#### G.1.4 Monitoring System Metrics

Internal metrics for the monitoring system itself are produced by the `MonitoringSystem` data producer.

The data producer does not run by default on any node, as is seen by running the `nodes` command (page 585) for it:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[MonitoringSystem]]% nodes
Not used
```

However, for convenience, some monitoring system metrics values are displayed on demand in an organized way, by running the `monitoringinfo` command for a device:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% monitoringinfo
Service           Queued   Handled   Cache miss Stopped  Suspended Last operation
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
Mon::CacheGather      4       910       4      no      no    Fri Oct 4 ...
Mon::DataConverter     0        0        0      no      no      -
Mon::DataProcessorEngine 0    155,470       0      no      no    Fri Oct 4 ...
Mon::DataProcessorKeepLatest 0    155,470       0      no      no    Fri Oct 4 ...
Mon::DataProcessorKeepRecent 0        0        0      no      no      -
...
...
```

The internal monitoring system metrics can be activated so that their data values are saved. This is not recommended, except temporarily for debugging purposes. To save the values, the `Introspect` flag for the monitoring system data producer should be set to yes:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[MonitoringSystem]]% set --extra Introspect yes
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[MonitoringSystem*]]% commit
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[MonitoringSystem]]% nodes
basecm11
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[MonitoringSystem]]% get interval
900
```

After a time defined by `interval`, the metrics can be viewed:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% latestmetricdata | grep Mon::Storage
Mon::Storage::Engine::elements      Internal/Monitoring/Storage  999,549      44.3s
Mon::Storage::Engine::size          Internal/Monitoring/Storage  1.00 GiB      44.3s
Mon::Storage::Engine::usage         Internal/Monitoring/Storage  9.63%       44.3s
Mon::Storage::Message::elements    Internal/Monitoring/Storage  28          44.3s
...
...
```

The monitoring system metrics that are saved are shown in table G.1.4.

Table G.1.4: Monitoring System Metrics

Monitoring System Metric	Description
Mon::CacheGather::handled	Cache gathers handled/s
Mon::CacheGather::miss	Cache gathers missed/s
Mon::DataProcessor::handled	Data processors handled/s
Mon::DataProcessor::miss	Data processors missed /s
Mon::DataTranslator::handled	Data translators handled/s
Mon::DataTranslator::miss	Data translators missed/s
Mon::EntityMeasurableCache::handled	Measurable cache handled/s
Mon::EntityMeasurableCache::miss	Measurable cache missed/s
Mon::MeasurableBroker::handled	Measurable broker handled/s
Mon::MeasurableBroker::miss	Measurable broker missed/s
Mon::OOB::TaskService::handled	Out-of-band task service handled/s
Mon::OOB::TaskService::miss	Out-of-band task service missed/s
Mon::Replicate::Collector::handled	Replication collection handled/s
Mon::Replicate::Collector::miss	Replication collection missed/s
Mon::Replicate::Combiner::handled	Replication combiner handled/s
Mon::Replicate::Combiner::miss	Replication combiner missed/s
Mon::RepositoryAllocator::handled	Repository allocator handled/s
Mon::RepositoryAllocator::miss	Repository allocator missed/s
Mon::RepositoryTrim::handled	Repository trim handled/s
Mon::RepositoryTrim::miss	Repository trim missed/s
Mon::Storage::Engine::elements	Storage engine data elements, in total
Mon::Storage::Engine::size	Storage engine size, in bytes
Mon::Storage::Engine::usage	Storage engine usage
Mon::Storage::Message::elements	Storage message data elements, in total
Mon::Storage::Message::size	Storage message size in bytes
Mon::Storage::Message::usage	Storage message usage
Mon::Storage::RepositoryId::elements	Storage repository ID data elements, in total
Mon::Storage::RepositoryId::size	Storage repository ID, size, in bytes
Mon::Storage::RepositoryId::usage	Repository ID usage
Mon::TaskInitializer::handled	Task initializer handled/s
Mon::TaskInitializer::miss	Task initializer missed/s
Mon::TaskSampler::handled	Task sampler handled/s
Mon::TaskSampler::miss	Task sampler missed/s
Mon::Trigger::Actuator::handled	Trigger actuators handled/s
Mon::Trigger::Actuator::miss	Trigger actuators missed/s
Mon::Trigger::Dispatcher::handled	Trigger dispatchers handled/s

...continues

Table G.1.4: Monitoring System Metrics...continued

Monitoring System Metric	Description
Mon::Trigger::Dispatcher::miss	Trigger dispatchers missed/s
Prometheus::DataTranslator::handled	DataTranslator queries handled. The DataTranslator is a translation layer between PromQL format and BCM format sampling.
Prometheus::DataTranslator::miss	DataTranslator misses

### G.1.5 CPU Metrics Sampled By The CPUSampler And GPUSampler

Some CPU metrics are sampled by the data producers CPUSampler and GPUSampler (table G.1.5):

Table G.1.5: CPU Metrics Sampled By The CPUSampler And GPUSampler

CPU Metric	Parameter	Description
cpu_core_clock_speed*	cpu_core0	CPU0 core clock speed
cpu_power_cap_enabled*	cpu0	CPU0 power capping enabled
cpu_power_cap_long_term_max_limit*	cpu0	Long term CPU0 power constraint
cpu_power_cap_long_term_time_window*	cpu0	Long term CPU0 power constraint time window
cpu_power_cap_short_term_max_limit*	cpu0	Short term CPU0 power constraint
cpu_power_cap_short_term_time_window*	cpu0	Short term CPU0 power constraint time window
cpu_power_limit*	cpu0	CPU0 power limit
cpu_power_usage*	cpu0	CPU0 power usage
cpu_power_usage	total	Total CPU power usage
cpu_temperature	average	Average CPU temperature
cpu_temperature*	cpu0	CPU0 temperature
cpu_utilization	average	Average CPU utilization

\* The number 0 in the parameter column can be replaced by the number associated with the core used. Thus:

cpu\_core0 can be replaced by cpu\_core1, cpu\_core2...

and

cpu0 can be replaced by cpu1, cpu2...

### G.1.6 GPU Metrics

The data producer (section 10.2.10) for the GPU metrics of this section is GPUSampler.

There were GPU metrics described earlier on in table G.1.1. These were cluster overview metrics about GPUs, and were provided by the ClusterTotal data producer.

However, the NVIDIA GPU metrics of this section, as the GPUSampler data producer name suggests, is about gathering the sampled GPU data from the devices themselves.

There is also a separate section about job GPU metrics (section G.1.8, page 950), which uses the JobSampler data producer, and is about gathering the sampled job data from the GPU devices themselves.

The device parameter for the GPU metrics in this section, unless otherwise noted, specifies the device slot number that the GPU uses. The parameter takes the form gpu0, gpu1, and so on. It is appended to the metric with a colon character. For example, the gpu\_ecc\_dbe\_agg metric, if used with gpu1, is specified as:

## Example

```
gpu_ecc_dbe_agg:gpu1
```

Available GPU metrics for V100 and A100 GPUs are listed in table G.1.6. The available GPU health checks for V100 and A100 GPUs are listed in table G.2.2.

If the cluster has been configured with AMD GPUs (section 7.4 of the *Installation Manual*) then AMD GPU metrics become available. Metrics in the table that are also valid AMD GPU metrics are noted. Some metrics have been added and noted that are only valid for AMD GPUs.

Extra GPU measurables for the GB200 GPUs are listed in section 6.6 of the *NVIDIA Mission Control Manual*.

*Table G.1.6: GPU Metrics*

GPU Metric	Description
gpu_dec_utilization*	GPU decoding usage
gpu_ecc_dbe_agg	Total double bit aggregate ECC errors
gpu_ecc_dbe_vol	Total double bit volatile ECC errors
gpu_ecc_sbe_agg	Total single bit aggregate ECC errors
gpu_ecc_sbe_vol	Total single bit volatile ECC errors
gpu_enc_utilization*	GPU encoding usage
gpu_enforced_power_limit	GPU-enforced power limit
gpu_mem_clock	GPU memory clock (also for AMD GPU)
gpu_mem_copy_utilization*	Percentage of GPU memory copy used
gpu_mem_free	Amount of GPU free memory
gpu_mem_total**	GPU framebuffer size (also for AMD GPU)
gpu_mem_used**	Amount of GPU memory used (also for AMD GPU)
gpu_mem_utilization*	GPU memory used percentage
gpu_memory_temp*	GPU memory temperature (Celsius)
gpu_nvlink_total_bandwidth**	Total NVLink bandwidth used
gpu_power_management_limit	GPU power management limit
gpu_power_usage**	GPU power usage (also for AMD GPU)
gpu_powerViolation**	Throttling duration due to power constraints
gpu_shutdown_temp	GPU shutdown temperature (Celsius)
gpu_slowdown_temp	GPU slowdown temperature (Celsius)
gpu_sm_clock	GPU shader multiprocessor clock (also for AMD GPU)

*...continues*

Table G.1.6: GPU Metrics...continued

GPU Metric	Description
gpu_temperature*	GPU temperature (Celsius)
gpu_thermalViolation**	Throttling duration due to thermal constraints
gpu_utilization*	Average GPU utilization percentage
gpu_xid_error	The value is the specific XID error

\* Specified as average, or specified for a GPU.

For example, for the `gpu_dec_utilization` metric:

`gpu_dec_utilization:average` or `gpu_dec_utilization:GPU0`

\*\* Specified as a total, or specified for a GPU.

For example, for the `gpu_mem_total` metric:

`gpu_mem_total:total` or `gpu_mem_total:GPU0`

## G.1.7 GPU Profiling Metrics

The data producer (section 10.2.10) for the GPU profiling metrics of this section is `GPUSampler`.

The device parameter for the GPU profiling metrics in this section, unless otherwise noted, specifies the device slot number that the GPU uses. The parameter takes the form `gpu0`, `gpu1`, and so on. It is appended to the metric with a colon character. For example, the `gpu_profiling_fp64_active` metric, if used with `gpu1`, is specified as:

### Example

`gpu_profiling_fp64_active:gpu1`

Available GPU profiling metrics for V100 and A100 GPUs are listed in table G.1.7.

Table G.1.6: GPU Profiling Metrics

GPU Profiling Metric	Description
<code>gpu_profiling_dram_active</code>	The ratio of cycles the device memory interface is active sending or receiving data
<code>gpu_profiling_fp16_active</code>	Ratio of cycles the fp16 pipe is active
<code>gpu_profiling_fp32_active</code>	Ratio of cycles the fp32 pipe is active
<code>gpu_profiling_fp64_active</code>	Ratio of cycles the fp64 pipe is active
<code>gpu_profiling_graphics_engine_active</code>	Ratio of time the graphics engine is active. The graphics engine is active if a graphics/compute context is bound and the graphics pipe or compute pipe is busy
<code>gpu_profiling_nvlink_read</code>	The number of bytes of active NvLink rx (read) data including both header and payload

...continues

Table G.1.7: GPU Profiling Metrics...continued

GPU Profiling Metric	Description
gpu_profiling_nvlink_transmit	The number of bytes of active NvLink tx (transmit) data including both header and payload
gpu_profiling_pcie_read	The number of bytes of active PCIe rx (read) data including both header and payload
gpu_profiling_pcie_transmit	The number of bytes of active PCIe tx (transmit) data including both header and payload
gpu_profiling_pipe_tensor_active	The ratio of cycles the tensor (HMMA) pipe is active
gpu_profiling_sm_active	The ratio of cycles an SM has at least 1 warp assigned
gpu_profiling_sm_occupancy	The ratio of cycles the tensor (HMMA) pipe is active

## G.1.8 Job Metrics

Job metrics are introduced in section 11.1.

### Basic Job Metrics

The following table lists some of the most useful job metrics that BCM can monitor and visualize. In the table, the text <device> denotes a block device name, such as sda.

On virtual machines, block device metrics may be unavailable because of virtualization.

Table G.1.8.1: Basic Job Metrics

Job Metric	Description	Cgroup Source File
blkio.time:<device>	Time job had I/O access to device	blkio.time_recursive
blkio.sectors:<device>	Sectors transferred to or from specific devices by a cgroup	blkio.sectors_recursive
blkio.io_service_read:<device>	Bytes read	blkio.io_service_bytes_recursive
blkio.io_service_write:<device>	Bytes written	blkio.io_service_bytes_recursive
blkio.io_service_sync:<device>	Bytes transferred synchronously	blkio.io_service_bytes_recursive
blkio.io_service_async:<device>	Bytes transferred asynchronously	blkio.io_service_bytes_recursive
blkio.io_wait_time_read:<device>	Total time spent waiting for service in the scheduler queues for I/O read operations	blkio.io_wait_time_recursive
blkio.io_wait_time_write:<device>	Total time spent waiting for service in the scheduler queues for I/O write operations	blkio.io_wait_time_recursive
blkio.io_wait_time_sync:<device>	Total time spent waiting for service in the scheduler queues for I/O synchronous operations	blkio.io_wait_time_recursive
blkio.io_wait_time_async:<device>	Total time spent waiting for service in the scheduler queues for I/O asynchronous operations	blkio.io_wait_time_recursive
cpuacct.usage	Total CPU time consumed by all job processes	cpuacct.usage
cpuacct.stat.user	User CPU time consumed by all job processes	cpuacct.stat

...continues

*...continued*

Job Metric	Description	Cgroup Source File
cpuacct.stat.system	System CPU time consumed by all job processes	cpuacct.stat
memory.usage	Total current memory usage	memory.usage_in_bytes
memory.memsw.usage	Sum of current memory plus swap space usage	memory.memsw.usage_in_bytes
memory.memsw.max_usage	Maximum amount of memory and swap space used	memory.memsw.max_usage_in_bytes
memory.failcnt	How often the memory limit has reached the value set in memory.limit_in_bytes	memory.failcnt
memory.memsw.failcnt	How often the memory plus swap space limit has reached the value set in memory.memsw.limit_in_bytes	memory.memsw.failcnt
memory.swap	Total swap usage	memory
memory.cache	Total page cache, including tmpfs (shmem)	memory
memory.mapped_file	Size of memory-mapped mapped files, including tmpfs (shmem)	memory
memory.unevictable	Memory that cannot be reclaimed	memory

The third column in the table shows the precise source file name that is used when the value is retrieved. These files are all virtual files, and are created as the cgroup controllers are mounted to the cgroup directory. In this case several controllers are mounted to the same directory, which means that all the virtual files will show up in that directory, and in its associated subdirectories—job cgroup directories—when the job runs.

### Advanced Job Metrics

The metrics in the preceding table are enabled by default. There are also over 40 other advanced metrics that can be enabled via the `Enable Advanced Metrics` property of the `jobmetricsettings` object:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[JobSampler]->jobmetricsettings]%
Parameter          Value
-----
Enable Advanced Metrics      no
Exclude Devices           loop,sr
Exclude Metrics
Include Devices
Include Metrics
Revision
Sampling Type            Both
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[JobSampler]->jobmetricsettings]%
set enableadvancedmetrics yes
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[JobSampler*]->jobmetricsettings*]%
commit
```

The advanced job metrics are:

Table G.1.8.2: Advanced Job Metrics

Advanced Job Metric	Description	Cgroup Source File
blkio.io_service_time_read:<device>	Total time between request dispatch and request completion according to CFQ scheduler for I/O read operations	blkio.io_service_time_recursive
blkio.io_service_time_write:<device>	Total time between request dispatch and request completion according to CFQ scheduler for I/O write operations	blkio.io_service_time_recursive
blkio.io_service_time_sync:<device>	Total time between request dispatch and request completion according to CFQ scheduler for I/O synchronous operations	blkio.io_service_time_recursive
blkio.io_service_time_async:<device>	Total time between request dispatch and request completion according to CFQ scheduler for I/O asynchronous operations	blkio.io_service_time_recursive
blkio.io_serviced_read:<device>	Read I/O operations	blkio.io_serviced_recursive
blkio.io_serviced_write:<device>	Write I/O operations	blkio.io_serviced_recursive
blkio.io_serviced_sync:<device>	Synchronous I/O operations	blkio.io_serviced_recursive
blkio.io_serviced_async:<device>	Asynchronous I/O operations	blkio.io_serviced_recursive
blkio.io_merged_read:<device>	Number of block I/Os (requests) merged into requests for I/O read operations	blkio.io_merged_recursive
blkio.io_merged_write:<device>	Number of block I/Os (requests) merged into requests for I/O write operations	blkio.io_merged_recursive
blkio.io_merged_sync:<device>	Number of block I/Os (requests) merged into requests for I/O synchronous operations	blkio.io_merged_recursive
blkio.io_merged_async:<device>	Number of block I/Os (requests) merged into requests for I/O asynchronous operations	blkio.io_merged_recursive

...continues

...continued

Advanced Job Metric	Description	Cgroup Source File
blkio.io_queued_read:<device>	Number of requests queued for I/O read operations	blkio.io_queued_recursive
blkio.io_queued_write:<device>	Number of requests queued for I/O write operations	blkio.io_queued_recursive
blkio.io_queued_sync:<device>	Number of requests queued for I/O synchronous operations	blkio.io_queued_recursive
blkio.io_queued_async:<device>	Number of requests queued for I/O asynchronous operations	blkio.io_queued_recursive
memory.rss	Anonymous and swap cache, not including tmpfs (shmem)	memory
memory.pgpgin	Number of pages paged into memory	memory
memory.pgpgout	Number of pages paged out of memory	memory
memory.active_anon	Anonymous and swap cache on active least-recently-used (LRU) list, including tmpfs (shmem)	memory
memory.inactive_anon	Anonymous and swap cache on inactive LRU list, including tmpfs (shmem)	memory
memory.active_file	File-backed memory on active LRU list	memory
memory.inactive_file	File-backed memory on inactive LRU list	memory
memory.hierarchical\_memory_limit	Memory limit for the Hierarchy that contains the memory cgroup of job	memory
memory.hierarchical\_memsw_limit	Memory plus swap limit for Hierarchy that contains the memory cgroup of job	memory

### Job Queue Metrics

Job queue metrics become available after workload manager jobs are run. They are produced by the JobQueueSampler data producer.

Table G.1.1: List Of Job Queue Metrics

Metric	Description
AvgJobDuration	Average job duration of current jobs
AvgJobStartDelay	Average job start delay of current jobs
CompletedJobs	Successfully completed jobs
CoresInQueue	Cores in queue
CoresUPInQueue	Active cores in queue
EstimatedDelay	Estimated delay time to execute jobs
FailedJobs	Failed completed jobs
GPUsInQueue	GPUs in queue
GPUsUPInQueue	Active GPUs in queue
JobThroughput	Average number of Jobs finished
NodesInQueue	Number of nodes in the queue
NodesUPInQueue	Active nodes in queue
QueuedJobs	Queued jobs
RunningJobs	Running jobs
RunningJobsMax	Maximal running jobs
RunningJobsUtilization	Running jobs utilization

### Job GPU Metrics

The GPU metrics of section G.1.6 have a GPUampler data producer (section 10.2.10). As the name suggests, those metrics are about gathering the sampled GPU data from the devices themselves.

The job GPU metrics of this section have a JobSampler data producer. As the name suggests, these metrics are about gathering the sampled job data from the GPU devices themselves.

In other words, the job GPU metrics are essentially the same metrics as in the GPU metrics section, but are valid only for the job. This is reflected in their names, which are identical, except for the `job_` prefix. Other differences of job GPU metrics in comparison with GPU metrics are that

- they are sampled only on the node that hosts the GPUs on which the job ran, and do not take specific GPUs as a parameter.
- the metrics are listed in the `monitoring measurable` mode of `cmsh` only after jobs have run on the GPUs.

Available job GPU metrics for V100 and A100 GPUs are listed in table G.1.8.

If the cluster has been configured with AMD GPUs (section 7.4 of the *Installation Manual*) then AMD job GPU metrics become available. Metrics in the table that are also valid AMD job GPU metrics are noted. Some metrics have been added and noted that are only valid for AMD GPUs.

Table G.1.8: Job GPU Metrics For Node

Job GPU Metric	Description For Job On Node
<code>job_gpu_dec_utilization</code>	GPU decoding usage

*...continues*

Table G.1.8: Job GPU Metrics For Node...continued

Job GPU Metric	Description For Job On Node
job_gpu_ecc_dbe_agg	Total double bit aggregate ECC errors
job_gpu_ecc_dbe_vol	Total double bit volatile ECC errors
job_gpu_ecc_sbe_agg	Total single bit aggregate ECC errors
job_gpu_ecc_sbe_vol	Total single bit volatile ECC errors
job_gpu_enc_utilization	GPU encoding usage
job_gpu_enforced_power_limit	GPU-enforced power limit
job_gpu_mem_clock	GPU memory clock (also for AMD GPU)
job_gpu_mem_copy_utilization	Percentage of GPU memory copy used
job_gpu_mem_free	Amount of GPU free memory
job_gpu_mem_total	GPU framebuffer size (also for AMD GPU)
job_gpu_mem_used	Amount of GPU memory used (also for AMD GPU)
job_gpu_mem_utilization	GPU memory used percentage
job_gpu_memory_temp	GPU memory temperature
job_gpu_nvlink_total_bandwidth	Total NVLink bandwidth used
job_gpu_power_management_limit	GPU power management limit
job_gpu_power_usage	GPU power usage (also for AMD GPU)
job_gpu_powerViolation	Throttling duration due to power constraints
job_gpu_shutdown_temp	GPU shutdown temperature
job_gpu_slowdown_temp	GPU slowdown temperature
job_gpu_sm_clock	GPU shader multiprocessor clock (also for AMD GPU)
job_gpu_temperature	GPU temperature
job_gpu_thermalViolation	Throttling duration due to thermal constraints
job_gpu_utilization	GPU utilization (section 12.4.1)
job_gpu_wasted	GPU wasted (section 12.4.1)
job_gpu_xid_error	The value is the specific XID error

### G.1.9 IPMI Metrics

The IPMI metrics correspond to metrics provided by the BMC devices. The metrics available depend on the manufacturer, and are detected by BCM. The metrics listed in the following table are a limited list of what may be detected on a system.

The data producer (section 10.2.10) for the IPMI metrics is the ipmi data producer.

Table G.1.9: IPMI Metrics

IPMI Metric	Description
Current_<number>**	Current seen by BMC sensor <number>, in amps (file: sample_ipmi)

...continues

Table G.1.9: IPMI Metrics...continued

IPMI Metric	Description
Exhaust_Temp	Exhaust temperature, in Celsius
FETDRV_PG	PowerEdge voltage sensor on IPMI board
Fan<number>_RPM	RPM of Fan<number> as seen by BMC (file: sample_ipmi)
Fan_Redundancy	fan redundancy status
Inlet_Temp**	Inlet Temperature, in Celsius (file: sample_ipmi)
M01_VDDQ_PG	PowerEdge CPU voltage sensor M01_VDDQ_PG
M01_VTT_PG	PowerEdge CPU voltage sensor
M23_VDDQ_PG	PowerEdge CPU voltage sensor
M23_VTT_PG	PowerEdge CPU voltage sensor
NDC_PG	PowerEdge system board voltage sensor
PFault_Fail_Safe	PowerEdge sensor
PLL_PG	PowerEdge sensor
PS1_PG_Fail	PowerEdge sensor
PS2_PG_Fail	PowerEdge sensor
Pwr_Consumption	Power consumed by BMC, in watts (file: sample_ipmi)
Temp	Temperature, in Celsius
VSA_PG	PowerEdge voltage sensor
VTT_PG	PowerEdge voltage sensor
Voltage_<number>**	Voltage seen by BMC sensor number, in Volts (file: sample_ipmi)

\*\* Standalone scripts, not built-ins.

If sampling from a head node, the script is in directory: /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/metrics/

For regular nodes, the script is in directory: /cm/images/default-image/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/metrics/

## G.1.10 Redfish Metrics

By default Redfish metrics are sampled only when the BMC interface (section 3.7) starts with rf (e.g. rf0, rf1 etc). The Redfish metric sampler is enabled by setting userdefinedresources as follows:

### Example

```
[basecm11->device[node001]]% set userdefinedresources redfish
[basecm11->device[node001]]% commit
```

### Redfish Standalone Script Metrics

An example script that samples Redfish metrics is the standalone script /cm/images/default-image/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/metrics/sample\_redfish:

Table G.1.10: Redfish Standalone Script Metrics

Redfish Standalone Script Metrics	Description
fan_speed	Speed of fan (RPM)
psu_power	The average power supply unit power (W)
sensor_reading	Temperature sensor reading (C)

### Redfish Metrics From CMDDaemon Built-in Sampling

CMDDaemon built-in sampling also samples Redfish metrics from the hardware:

#### Example

[basecm11->device[node001]]% latestmetricdata   head -2; latestmetricdata   grep ^RF	Parameter Type	Value	...
Measurable			
-----	-----	-----	-----
RF_Baseboard_0_PCB_0_Temp_0	reading	Environmental/Redfish/Sensor reading	34 C
RF_Baseboard_0_PCB_1_Temp_0	reading	Environmental/Redfish/Sensor reading	33.5 C
RF_Baseboard_0_PCB_2_Temp_0	reading	Environmental/Redfish/Sensor reading	33 C
RF_Baseboard_0_StandbyHSC_0_Power_0	reading	Environmental/Redfish/Sensor reading	34.746 W
RF_Baseboard_0_StandbyHSC_0_Temp_0	reading	Environmental/Redfish/Sensor reading	33.4375 C
RF_C2C_0_Resource_MaxSpeed		Environmental/Redfish/Port	0 B/s
RF_DIMM_Slot_AllowedSpeeds		Environmental/Redfish/Memory	no data
RF_DIMM_Slot_Capacity		Environmental/Redfish/Memory	0 B
RF_DIMM_Slot_CapacityMiB		Environmental/Redfish/Memory	0 B
RF_DIMM_Slot_Nvidia_RowRemappingFailed		Environmental/Redfish/Memory	0
RF_GPU_0_DRAM_0_Memory_Metrics_Bandwidth		Environmental/Redfish/Memorymetrics	0.0%
RF_GPU_0_DRAM_0_Memory_Metrics_CapacityUtilizat+		Environmental/Redfish/Memorymetrics	0.0%
RF_GPU_0_Processor_Metrics_Bandwidth		Environmental/Redfish/Processormetrics	0.0%
RF_GPU_0_Processor_Metrics_LifeTime_Correctable+		Environmental/Redfish/Processormetrics	0
RF_GPU_0_Processor_Metrics_LifeTime_Uncorrectab+		Environmental/Redfish/Processormetrics	0
RF_GPU_0_Processor_Metrics_Nvidia_AccumulatedGP+		Environmental/Redfish/Processormetrics	no data
RF_GPU_0_Processor_Metrics_Nvidia_AccumulatedSM+		Environmental/Redfish/Processormetrics	no data
RF_GPU_0_Processor_Metrics_Nvidia_DMMAUtilizatio		Environmental/Redfish/Processormetrics	0.0%
RF_GPU_0_Processor_Metrics_Nvidia_FP16Activity		Environmental/Redfish/Processormetrics	0.0%

The preceding list is a truncated excerpt from an NVIDIA DGX system. The Redfish metrics that are available depend on the vendor and hardware.

### G.1.11 SMART Metrics

The SMART metrics correspond to metrics provided by SMART hard drive implementation. The metrics available depend on the manufacturer, and are detected by BCM. The metrics listed in the following table are a limited list of what may be detected on a system.

A SMART metric takes a block device name (sda, sdc, nvme0n1 and so on) as a parameter. Some reported values, such as “spin up time” and “start/stop count” are not relevant on non-rotational (solid-state) drives.

The data producer (section 10.2.10) for SMART metrics is the smart data producer.

*Table G.1.11: SMART Metrics*

<b>SMART Metric</b>	<b>Description</b>
Command_Timeout	Command timeout
Current_Pending_Sector	Current pending sectors
Hardware_ECC_Recovered	Hardware ECC recovered
Offline_Uncorrectable	Uncorrectable sectors
Raw_Read_Error_Rate	Raw read error rate
Reallocated_Sector_Ct	Reallocated sectors count
Reported_Uncorrect	Reported uncorrectable errors
UDMA_CRC_Error_Count	UDMA CRC errors

### G.1.12 Prometheus Metrics

Prometheus metrics are introduced in section 12.2.

The data producers for Prometheus metrics are JobSampler, JobMetadataSampler, and some others.

*Table G.1.12: Prometheus Metrics*

<b>Prometheus Metric</b>	<b>Description (for a job, unless asterisked)</b>
job_blkio_io_merged	Number of block I/Os (requests) merged into requests for I/O operations by a cgroup
job_blkio_io_queued	Number of requests queued for I/O operations by a cgroup
job_blkio_io_service_bytes	Reports the number of bytes transferred to or from specific devices by a cgroup as seen by the CFQ scheduler
job_blkio_io_service_bytes_total	Reports the number of bytes transferred to or from specific devices by a cgroup as seen by the CFQ scheduler (for all jobs)*
job_blkio_io_service_time_seconds	Reports the total time in seconds between request dispatch and request completion for I/O operations on specific devices by a cgroup as seen by the CFQ scheduler
job_blkio_io_serviced	Reports the number of I/O operations performed on specific devices by a cgroup as seen by the CFQ scheduler
job_blkio_io_wait_time_seconds	Reports the total time I/O operations on specific devices by a cgroup spent waiting for service in the scheduler queues

*...continues*

Table G.1.12: Prometheus Metrics...continued

Prometheus Metric	Description (for a job, unless asterisked)
job_blkio_sectors	Reports the number of sectors transferred to or from specific devices by a cgroup
job_blkio_time_seconds	Reports the time that a cgroup had I/O access to specific devices
job_cpuacct_stat_system	System CPU time consumed by processes
job_cpuacct_stat_user	User CPU time consumed by processes
job_cpuacct_usage_seconds	CPU usage time consumed
job_memory_active_anon_bytes	Anonymous and swap cache on active least-recently-used (LRU) list, including tmpfs (shmem), in bytes
job_memory_active_file_bytes	File-backed memory on active LRU list, in bytes
job_memory_cache_bytes	Page cache, including tmpfs (shmem), in bytes
job_memory_failcnt	Reports the number of times that the memory limit has reached the value set in memory.limit_in_bytes
job_memory_hierarchical_memory_limit_bytes	Memory limit for the hierarchy that contains the memory cgroup, in bytes
job_memory_hierarchical_memsw_limit_bytes	Memory plus swap limit for the hierarchy that contains the memory cgroup, in bytes
job_memory_inactive_anon_bytes	Anonymous and swap cache on inactive LRU list, including tmpfs (shmem), in bytes
job_memory_inactive_file_bytes	File-backed memory on inactive LRU list, in bytes
job_memory_mapped_file_bytes	Size of memory-mapped mapped files, including tmpfs (shmem), in bytes
job_memory_memsw_failcnt	Reports the number of times that the memory plus swap space limit has reached the value set in memory.memsw.limit_in_bytes
job_memory_memsw_max_usage_bytes	Reports the maximum amount of memory and swap space used by processes in the cgroup, in bytes
job_memory_memsw_usage_bytes	Reports the sum of current memory usage plus swap space used by processes in the cgroup, in bytes
job_memory_pgpgin_bytes	Number of pages paged into memory
job_memory_pgpgout_bytes	Number of pages paged out of memory

...continues

Table G.1.12: Prometheus Metrics...continued

Prometheus Metric	Description (for a job, unless asterisked)
job_memory_rss_bytes	Anonymous and swap cache, not including tmpfs (shmem), in bytes
job_memory_swap_bytes	Swap usage, in bytes
job_memory_unevictable_bytes	Memory that cannot be reclaimed, in bytes,
job_memory_usage_bytes	Reports the total current memory usage by processes in the cgroup, in bytes
job_memory_usage_bytes_total	Reports the total current memory usage by processes in the cgroup, in bytes (for all jobs)*
job_metadata_allocated_cpu_cores	CPU cores used by a job by the user
job_metadata_allocated_gpus	GPUs used by a job by the user
job_metadata_is_running	Returns 1 if the job metadata sampler is running a job
job_metadata_is_waiting	Returns 1 if the job metadata sampler is waiting
job_metadata_num_cpus	Number of CPUs that the job runs on
job_metadata_num_nodes	Number of nodes that the job runs on
job_metadata_pending_jobs	Number of pending jobs for the user
job_metadata_running_jobs	Number of running jobs for the user
job_metadata_running_seconds	Time the job has run
job_metadata_waiting_seconds	Time the job has been waiting to run
users_job_effective_cpu_seconds:1w	CPU seconds used by users over the past week*
users_job_running_count:1w	Number of jobs run by users over the past week*
users_job_waiting_seconds:1w	Time users have been waiting for jobs to run over the past week*
users_job_wall_clock_seconds:1w	Time the jobs runs for users according to wall time over the past week*
users_job_wasted_cpu_seconds:1w	CPU time wasted during users jobs over the past week*

\* total in the past 7x24x60x60 seconds, as measured at the time of sampling

### G.1.13 NetQ Metrics

NetQ metrics (table G.1.13) are metrics sourced from NetQ. Configuring NetQ with BCM is described in section 3.11.

The data producer (section 10.2.10) for NetQ metrics is the netq data producer.

Table G.1.13: NetQ Metrics

NetQ Metric	Description
NetQ_node_fan_speed	Fan speed (RPM)

...continues

Table G.1.13: NetQ Metrics...continued

NetQ Metric	Description
NetQ_node_nvlink_rx_all_flits	NVLink packets received, control and data (FLITs/s)
NetQ_node_nvlink_rx_data_flits	NVLink packets received, data (FLITs/s)
NetQ_node_nvlink_tx_all_flits	NVLink packets sent, control and data (FLITs/s)
NetQ_node_nvlink_tx_data_flits	NVLink packets sent, data (FLITs/s)
NetQ_node_PSU_power_input	Power supply power input (W)
NetQ_node_PSU_power_output	Power supply power output (W)
NetQ_node_PSU_voltage_input	Power supply voltage input (V)
NetQ_node_PSU_voltage_output	Power supply voltage output (V)
NetQ_node_Temp_sensor	Temperature sensor value (C)

NetQ health checks are covered in section G.2.4.

#### G.1.14 Kubernetes Metrics

Configuring Kubernetes with BCM is described in Chapter 4 of the *Containerization Manual*.

There were cluster Kubernetes metrics described earlier on in table G.1.1. Those were overview metrics about Kubernetes.

The Kubernetes metrics in the following table G.1.14 are state metrics sourced from Kubernetes itself. The data producer (section 10.2.10) for the Kubernetes metrics of this section is `kubestatemetrics`.

The metrics that are not tagged as [STABLE] are experimental, and may change in behavior during Kubernetes updates.

Table G.1.6: Kubernetes Metrics

Kubernetes Metric	Description
<code>kube_configmap_annotations</code>	Kubernetes annotations converted to Prometheus labels.
<code>kube_configmap_created</code>	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
<code>kube_configmap_info</code>	[STABLE] Information about configmap.
<code>kube_configmap_labels</code>	[STABLE] Kubernetes labels converted to Prometheus labels.
<code>kube_configmap_metadata_resource_version</code>	Resource version representing a specific version of the configmap.
<code>kube_cronjob_annotations</code>	Kubernetes annotations converted to Prometheus labels.
<code>kube_cronjob_created</code>	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
<code>kube_cronjob_info</code>	[STABLE] Info about cronjob.

...continues

Table G.1.6: Kubernetes Metrics...continued

Kubernetes Metric	Description
kube_cronjob_labels	[STABLE] Kubernetes labels converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_cronjob_metadata_resource_version	[STABLE] Resource version representing a specific version of the cronjob.
kube_cronjob_next_schedule_time	[STABLE] Next time the cronjob should be scheduled. The time after lastScheduleTime, or after the cron job's creation time if it's never been scheduled. Use this to determine if the job is delayed.
kube_cronjob_spec_failed_job_history_limit	Failed job history limit tells the controller how many failed jobs should be preserved.
kube_cronjob_spec_successful_job_history_limit	Successful job history limit tells the controller how many completed jobs should be preserved.
kube_cronjob_spec_suspend	[STABLE] Suspend flag tells the controller to suspend subsequent executions.
kube_cronjob_status_active	[STABLE] Active holds pointers to currently running jobs.
kube_cronjob_status_last_schedule_time	[STABLE] LastScheduleTime keeps information of when was the last time the job was successfully scheduled.
kube_cronjob_status_last_successful_time	LastSuccessfulTime keeps information of when was the last time the job was completed successfully.
kube_daemonset_annotations	Kubernetes annotations converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_daemonset_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_daemonset_labels	[STABLE] Kubernetes labels converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_daemonset_metadata_generation	[STABLE] Sequence number representing a specific generation of the desired state.
kube_daemonset_status_current_number_scheduled	[STABLE] The number of nodes running at least one daemon pod and are supposed to.
kube_daemonset_status_desired_number_scheduled	[STABLE] The number of nodes that should be running the daemon pod.
kube_daemonset_status_number_available	[STABLE] The number of nodes that should be running the daemon pod and have one or more of the daemon pod running and available

...continues

Table G.1.6: Kubernetes Metrics...continued

Kubernetes Metric	Description
kube_daemonset_status_number_misscheduled	[STABLE] The number of nodes running a daemon pod but are not supposed to.
kube_daemonset_status_number_ready	[STABLE] The number of nodes that should be running the daemon pod and have one or more of the daemon pod running and ready.
kube_daemonset_status_number_unavailable	[STABLE] The number of nodes that should be running the daemon pod and have none of the daemon pod running and available
kube_daemonset_status_observed_generation	[STABLE] The most recent generation observed by the daemon set controller.
kube_daemonset_status_updated_number_scheduled	[STABLE] The total number of nodes that are running updated daemon pod
kube_deployment_annotations	Kubernetes annotations converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_deployment_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_deployment_labels	[STABLE] Kubernetes labels converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_deployment_metadata_generation	[STABLE] Sequence number representing a specific generation of the desired state.
kube_deployment_spec_paused	[STABLE] Whether the deployment is paused and will not be processed by the deployment controller.
kube_deployment_spec_replicas	[STABLE] Number of desired pods for a deployment.
kube_deployment_spec_strategy_rollingupdate_max_surge	[STABLE] Maximum number of replicas that can be scheduled above the desired number of replicas during a rolling update of a deployment.
kube_deployment_spec_strategy_rollingupdate_max_unavailable	[STABLE] Maximum number of unavailable replicas during a rolling update of a deployment.
kube_deployment_status_condition	[STABLE] The current status conditions of a deployment.
kube_deployment_status_observed_generation	[STABLE] The generation observed by the deployment controller.
kube_deployment_status_replicas	[STABLE] The number of replicas per deployment.
kube_deployment_status_replicas_available	[STABLE] The number of available replicas per deployment.

...continues

Table G.1.6: Kubernetes Metrics...continued

Kubernetes Metric	Description
kube_deployment_status_replicas_ready	[STABLE] The number of ready replicas per deployment.
kube_deployment_status_replicas_unavailable	[STABLE] The number of unavailable replicas per deployment.
kube_deployment_status_replicas_updated	[STABLE] The number of updated replicas per deployment.
kube_endpoint_address	[STABLE] Information about Endpoint available and non available addresses.
kube_endpoint_address_available	(Deprecated since v2.6.0) Number of addresses available in endpoint.
kube_endpoint_address_not_ready	(Deprecated since v2.6.0) Number of addresses not ready in endpoint.
kube_endpoint_annotations	Kubernetes annotations converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_endpoint_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_endpoint_info	[STABLE] Information about endpoint.
kube_endpoint_labels	[STABLE] Kubernetes labels converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_endpoint_ports	[STABLE] Information about the Endpoint ports.
kube_ingress_annotations	Kubernetes annotations converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_ingress_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_ingress_info	[STABLE] Information about ingress.
kube_ingress_labels	[STABLE] Kubernetes labels converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_ingress_metadata_resource_version	Resource version representing a specific version of ingress.
kube_ingress_path	[STABLE] Ingress host, paths and backend service information.
kube_job_annotations	Kubernetes annotations converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_job_complete	[STABLE] The job has completed its execution.
kube_job_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_job_info	[STABLE] Information about job.
kube_job_labels	[STABLE] Kubernetes labels converted to Prometheus labels.

...continues

Table G.1.6: Kubernetes Metrics...continued

Kubernetes Metric	Description
kube_job_owner	[STABLE] Information about the Job's owner.
kube_job_spec_completions	[STABLE] The desired number of successfully finished pods the job should be run with.
kube_job_spec_parallelism	[STABLE] The maximum desired number of pods the job should run at any given time.
kube_job_status_active	[STABLE] The number of actively running pods.
kube_job_status_completion_time	[STABLE] CompletionTime represents time when the job was completed.
kube_job_status_failed	[STABLE] The number of pods which reached Phase Failed and the reason for failure.
kube_job_status_start_time	[STABLE] StartTime represents time when the job was acknowledged by the Job Manager.
kube_job_status_succeeded	[STABLE] The number of pods which reached Phase Succeeded.
kube_lease_owner	Information about the Lease's owner.
kube_lease_renew_time	Kube lease renew time.
kube_mutatingwebhookconfiguration_created	Unix creation timestamp.
kube_mutatingwebhookconfiguration_info	Information about the MutatingWebhookConfiguration.
kube_mutatingwebhookconfiguration_metadata_resource_version	Resource version representing a specific version of the MutatingWebhookConfiguration.
kube_mutatingwebhookconfiguration_webhook_clientconfig_service	Service used by the apiserver to connect to a mutating webhook.
kube_namespace_annotations	Kubernetes annotations converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_namespace_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_namespace_labels	[STABLE] Kubernetes labels converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_namespace_status_condition	The condition of a namespace.
kube_namespace_status_phase	[STABLE] kubernetes namespace status phase.
kube_node_annotations	Kubernetes annotations converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_node_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_node_info	[STABLE] Information about a cluster node.
kube_node_labels	[STABLE] Kubernetes labels converted to Prometheus labels.

...continues

Table G.1.6: Kubernetes Metrics...continued

Kubernetes Metric	Description
<code>kube_node_role</code>	The role of a cluster node.
<code>kube_node_spec_taint</code>	[STABLE] The taint of a cluster node.
<code>kube_node_spec_unschedulable</code>	[STABLE] Whether a node can schedule new pods.
<code>kube_node_status_allocatable</code>	[STABLE] The allocatable for different resources of a node that are available for scheduling.
<code>kube_node_status_capacity</code>	[STABLE] The capacity for different resources of a node.
<code>kube_node_status_condition</code>	[STABLE] The condition of a cluster node.
<code>kube_pod_completion_time</code>	[STABLE] Completion time in unix timestamp for a pod.
<code>kube_pod_container_info</code>	[STABLE] Information about a container in a pod.
<code>kube_pod_container_resource_limits</code>	The number of requested limit resource by a container. It is recommended to use the <code>kube_pod_resource_limits</code> metric exposed by kube-scheduler instead, as it is more precise.
<code>kube_pod_container_resource_requests</code>	The number of requested request resource by a container. It is recommended to use the <code>kube_pod_resource_requests</code> metric exposed by kube-scheduler instead, as it is more precise.
<code>kube_pod_container_state_started</code>	[STABLE] Start time in unix timestamp for a pod container.
<code>kube_pod_container_status_last_terminated_exitcode</code>	Describes the exit code for the last container in terminated state.
<code>kube_pod_container_status_last_terminated_reason</code>	Describes the last reason the container was in terminated state.
<code>kube_pod_container_status_ready</code>	[STABLE] Describes whether the containers readiness check succeeded.
<code>kube_pod_container_status_restarts_total</code>	[STABLE] The number of container restarts per container.
<code>kube_pod_container_status_running</code>	[STABLE] Describes whether the container is currently in running state.
<code>kube_pod_container_status_terminated</code>	[STABLE] Describes whether the container is currently in terminated state.
<code>kube_pod_container_status_terminated_reason</code>	Describes the reason the container is currently in terminated state.

*...continues*

Table G.1.6: Kubernetes Metrics...continued

Kubernetes Metric	Description
kube_pod_container_status_waiting	[STABLE] Describes whether the container is currently in waiting state.
kube_pod_container_status_waiting_reason	[STABLE] Describes the reason the container is currently in waiting state.
kube_pod_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_pod_deletion_timestamp	Unix deletion timestamp
kube_pod_info	[STABLE] Information about pod.
kube_pod_init_container_info	[STABLE] Information about an init container in a pod.
kube_pod_init_container_resource_limits	The number of requested limit resource by an init container.
kube_pod_init_container_resource_requests	The number of requested request resource by an init container.
kube_pod_init_container_status_last_terminated_reason	Describes the last reason the init container was in terminated state.
kube_pod_init_container_status_ready	[STABLE] Describes whether the init containers readiness check succeeded.
kube_pod_init_container_status_restarts_total	[STABLE] The number of restarts for the init container.
kube_pod_init_container_status_running	[STABLE] Describes whether the init container is currently in running state.
kube_pod_init_container_status_terminated	[STABLE] Describes whether the init container is currently in terminated state.
kube_pod_init_container_status_terminated_reason	Describes the reason the init container is currently in terminated state.
kube_pod_init_container_status_waiting	[STABLE] Describes whether the init container is currently in waiting state.
kube_pod_init_container_status_waiting_reason	Describes the reason the init container is currently in waiting state.
kube_pod_ips	Pod IP addresses
kube_pod_owner	[STABLE] Information about the Pod's owner.
kube_pod_restart_policy	[STABLE] Describes the restart policy in use by this pod.
kube_pod_service_account	The service account for a pod.
kube_pod_start_time	[STABLE] Start time in unix timestamp for a pod.
kube_pod_status_container_ready_time	Readiness achieved time in unix timestamp for a pod containers.

...continues

Table G.1.6: Kubernetes Metrics...continued

Kubernetes Metric	Description
kube_pod_status_initialized_time	Initialized time in unix timestamp for a pod.
kube_pod_status_phase	[STABLE] The pods current phase.
kube_pod_status_qos_class	The pods current qosClass.
kube_pod_status_ready	[STABLE] Describes whether the pod is ready to serve requests.
kube_pod_status_ready_time	Readiness achieved time in unix timestamp for a pod.
kube_pod_status_reason	The pod status reasons
kube_pod_status_scheduled	[STABLE] Describes the status of the scheduling process for the pod.
kube_pod_status_scheduled_time	[STABLE] Unix timestamp when pod moved into scheduled status
kube_pod_tolerations	Information about the pod tolerations
kube_poddisruptionbudget_annotations	Kubernetes annotations converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_poddisruptionbudget_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_poddisruptionbudget_labels	Kubernetes labels converted to Prometheus labels.
kube_poddisruptionbudget_status_current_healthy	[STABLE] Current number of healthy pods
kube_poddisruptionbudget_status_desired_healthy	[STABLE] Minimum desired number of healthy pods
kube_poddisruptionbudget_status_expected_pods	[STABLE] Total number of pods counted by this disruption budget
kube_poddisruptionbudget_status_observed_generation	[STABLE] Most recent generation observed when updating this PDB status
kube_poddisruptionbudget_status_pod_disruptions_allowed	[STABLE] Number of pod disruptions that are currently allowed
kube_replicaset_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_replicaset_metadata_generation	[STABLE] Sequence number representing a specific generation of the desired state.
kube_replicaset_owner	[STABLE] Information about the ReplicaSet's owner.
kube_replicaset_spec_replicas	[STABLE] Number of desired pods for a ReplicaSet.

...continues

Table G.1.6: Kubernetes Metrics...continued

Kubernetes Metric	Description
kube_replicaset_status_fully_labeled_replicas	[STABLE] The number of fully labeled replicas per ReplicaSet.
kube_replicaset_status_observed_generation	[STABLE] The generation observed by the ReplicaSet controller.
kube_replicaset_status_ready_replicas	[STABLE] The number of ready replicas per ReplicaSet.
kube_replicaset_status_replicas	[STABLE] The number of replicas per ReplicaSet.
kube_replicationcontroller_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_replicationcontroller_metadata_generation	[STABLE] Sequence number representing a specific generation of the desired state.
kube_replicationcontroller_owner	Information about the ReplicationController's owner.
kube_replicationcontroller_spec_replicas	[STABLE] Number of desired pods for a ReplicationController.
kube_replicationcontroller_status_available_replicas	[STABLE] The number of available replicas per ReplicationController.
kube_replicationcontroller_status_fully_labeled_replicas	[STABLE] The number of fully labeled replicas per ReplicationController.
kube_replicationcontroller_status_observed_generation	[STABLE] The generation observed by the ReplicationController controller.
kube_replicationcontroller_status_ready_replicas	[STABLE] The number of ready replicas per ReplicationController.
kube_replicationcontroller_status_replicas	[STABLE] The number of replicas per ReplicationController.
kube_resourcequota	[STABLE] Information about resource quota.
kube_resourcequota_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_secret_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_secret_info	[STABLE] Information about secret.
kube_secret_metadata_resource_version	Resource version representing a specific version of secret.
kube_secret_type	[STABLE] Type about secret.
kube_service_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_service_info	[STABLE] Information about service.
kube_service_spec_type	[STABLE] Type about service.
kube_statefulset_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp

...continues

Table G.1.6: Kubernetes Metrics...continued

Kubernetes Metric	Description
kube_statefulset_metadata_generation	[STABLE] Sequence number representing a specific generation of the desired state for the StatefulSet.
kube_statefulset_persistentvolumeclaim_retention_policy	Count of retention policy for StatefulSet template PVCs
kube_statefulset_replicas	[STABLE] Number of desired pods for a StatefulSet.
kube_statefulset_status_current_revision	[STABLE] Indicates the version of the StatefulSet used to generate Pods in the sequence [0,currentReplicas).
kube_statefulset_status_observed_generation	[STABLE] The generation observed by the StatefulSet controller.
kube_statefulset_status_replicas	[STABLE] The number of replicas per StatefulSet.
kube_statefulset_status_replicas_available	The number of available replicas per StatefulSet.
kube_statefulset_status_replicas_current	[STABLE] The number of current replicas per StatefulSet.
kube_statefulset_status_replicas_ready	[STABLE] The number of ready replicas per StatefulSet.
kube_statefulset_status_replicas_updated	[STABLE] The number of updated replicas per StatefulSet.
kube_statefulset_status_update_revision	[STABLE] Indicates the version of the StatefulSet used to generate Pods in the sequence [replicas-updatedReplicas,replicas)
kube_storageclass_created	[STABLE] Unix creation timestamp
kube_storageclass_info	[STABLE] Information about storageclass.
kube_validatingwebhookconfiguration_created	Unix creation timestamp.
kube_validatingwebhookconfiguration_info	Information about the ValidatingWebhookConfiguration.
kube_validatingwebhookconfiguration_metadata_resource_version	Resource version representing a specific version of the ValidatingWebhookConfiguration.
kube_validatingwebhookconfiguration_webhook_clientconfig_service	Service used by the apiserver to connect to a validating webhook.

### G.1.15 Parameters For Metrics

Metrics have the parameters indicated by the left column in the following example:

#### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->measurable[CPUUser]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Class              CPU
Consolidator       default (ProcStat)
Cumulative        yes
Description        CPU time spent in user mode
Disabled           no (ProcStat)
Gap                0 (ProcStat)
Maximal age        0s (ProcStat)
Maximal samples    4,096 (ProcStat)
Maximum            0
Minimum             0
Name               CPUUser
Parameter
Producer           ProcStat
Revision
Type               Metric
Unit               Jiffies/s
```

If the value is inherited from the producer, then it is shown in parentheses next to the value. An inherited value can be overwritten by setting it directly for the parameter of a measurable.

The meanings of the parameters are:

**Class:** A choice assigned to a metric. It can be an internal type, or it can be a standalone class type. A slash (/) is used to separate class levels. A partial list of the class values is:

- CPU: CPU-related
- Disk: Disk-related
- Disk/Smart: SMART Disk-related
- Fabric: Fabric-related
- GPU: GPU-related
- Internal: An internal metric
- Job: Job metric
- License: License-related
- Memory: Memory-related
- Network: Network-related
- OS: Operating-system-related
- Process: Process-related
- Prometheus: Prometheus-related
- Total: Total cluster-wide-related
- Workload: Workload-related
- Environmental: Environmental-related

**Consolidator:** This is described in detail in sections 10.4.3 and 10.5.2

**Cumulative:** If set to no, then the raw value is treated as not cumulative (for example, CoresUp), and the raw value is presented as the metric value.

If set to yes, then the metric is treated as being cumulative, which means that a rate (per second) value is presented.

More explicitly: When set to yes, it means that the raw sample used to calculate the metric is expected to be cumulative, like, for example, the bytes-received counter for an Ethernet interface. This in turn means that the metric is calculated from the raw value by taking the difference in raw sample measurement values, and dividing it by the time period over which the raw values are sampled. Thus, for example:

- The bytes-received raw measurements, which accumulate as the packets are received, and are in bytes, and have Cumulative set to yes, and then have a corresponding metric, BytesRecv, with a value in bytes/second.
- The system uptime raw measurements, which accumulate at the rate of 1 second per second, and are in seconds, have Cumulative set to yes, and have a corresponding metric, Uptime, with a value that uses no units. Ideally, the metric has a value of 1, but in practice the measured value varies a little due to jitter.

**Description:** Description of the raw measurement used by the metric. Empty by default.

**Disabled:** If set to no (default) then the metric runs.

**Gap:** The number of samples that are allowed to be missed before a value of NaN is set for the value of the metric.

**Maximal age:** the maximum age of RLE samples that are kept. If Maximal age is set to 0 then the sample age is not considered. Units can be w, d, h, m, s (weeks, days, hours, minutes, seconds), with s as the default.

**Maximal samples:** the maximum number of RLE samples that are kept. If Maximal samples is set to 0 then the number of sample age is not considered.

**Maximum:** the value that the y-axis maximum takes in graphs plotted in Base View by default. If the maximum of the y-values is more than the default y-axis maximum value, then the maximum of the y-values becomes the y-axis maximum.<sup>1</sup>

**Minimum:** the value that the y-axis minimum takes in graphs plotted in Base View by default. If the minimum of the y-values is less than the default y-axis minimum value, then the minimum of the y-values becomes the y-axis minimum.<sup>1</sup>

**Name:** The name given to the metric.

**Parameter:** Parameter used for this metric. For example, eth0 with the metric BytesRecv

**Producer:** The data producer that produces the metric

**Revision:** User-definable revision number for the object

**Type:** This can be one of metric, healthcheck, or enummetric

---

<sup>1</sup>To clarify the concept, a case can be considered where minimum=0, maximum=3 are set. If a data point with a y-value of 2 is plotted on a graph, then the y-axis spans the range from 0 to 3 by default.

However

- if the data point has a y-value of 4 instead, then it means the y-axis maximum of 3 is re-sized from its default of 3 to the value of 4, so that the y-axis now spans from 0 to 4.
- if the data point has a y-value of -1 instead, then it means the y-axis minimum of 0 is re-sized from its default of 0 to the value of -1, so that the y-axis now spans from -1 to 3.

**Unit:** A unit for the metric. For example: B/s (bytes/second) for BytesRecv metric, or unit-less for the Uptime metric. A percent is indicated with %

## G.2 Health Checks And Their Parameters

A list of health checks can be viewed, for example, for the head node, using cmsh as follows (section 10.5.3):

```
[basecm11 ~]# cmsh -c "monitoring measurable; list healthcheck"
```

The health checks listed in this section are classed into 4 kinds:

1. Regular health checks (section 10.2.4) are listed and described in section G.2.1.
2. GPU health checks (section G.2.2)
3. Redfish health checks (section G.2.3)
4. NetQ health checks (section G.2.4)

### G.2.1 Regular Health Checks

Table G.2.1: List Of Health Checks

Name	Query (script response is PASS / FAIL)
ManagedServices0k*	Are CMDaemon-monitored services all OK? If the response is FAIL, then at least one of the services being monitored is failing. The <code>latesthealdata -v</code> command (section 10.6.3) should show which one(s). After correcting the problem with the service, a reset of the service is normally carried out (section 3.14, page 170). There is also a related <code>ManagedServices0k</code> metric on page 930.
Mon::Storage	Is space available for the monitoring system metrics (section G.1.4)?
chrootprocess	Are there daemon processes running using chroot in software images? Here: yes = FAIL. On failure, kill cron daemon processes running in the software images.
cm-chroot-sw-img	Are there dangling mounts left behind of images created by <code>cm-chroot-sw-img</code> ? Here: yes = FAIL. The cluster administrator is expected to inspect and unmount the dangling mounts.
cmha-status	Are both head nodes up and running?
cmsh *	Is <code>cmsh</code> available?
cuda-dcgm	Is <code>cuda-dcgm</code> available?
defaultgateway	Is there a default gateway available?
dellnss	If running, is the Dell NFS Storage Solution healthy?
diskspace	Is there less local disk space available to non-root users than any of the space parameters specified? <i>The space parameters can be specified as MB, GB, TB, or as percentages with %. The default severity of notices from this check is 10, when one space parameter is used. For more than one space parameter, the severity decreases by 10 for each space parameter, sequentially, down to 10 for the last space parameter. By default a space parameter of 10% is assumed. Another, also optional, non-space parameter, the filesystem mount point parameter, can be specified after the last space parameter to track filesystem space, instead of disk space. A metric-based alternative to tracking filesystem space changes is to use the built-in metric <code>freespace</code> (page 929) instead.</i>

...continued

*Table G.2.1: List Of Health Checks...continued*

Name	Query (response is PASS/FAIL)								
Examples:									
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>diskspace 10%</code> less than 10% space = FAIL, severity 10</li> </ul>									
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>diskspace 10% 20% 30%</code> less than 30% space = FAIL, with severity levels as indicated:</li> </ul>									
<table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th>space left</th><th>severity</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>10%</td><td>30</td></tr> <tr> <td>20%</td><td>20</td></tr> <tr> <td>30%</td><td>10</td></tr> </tbody> </table>		space left	severity	10%	30	20%	20	30%	10
space left	severity								
10%	30								
20%	20								
30%	10								
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>diskspace 10GB 20GB</code> less than 20GB space = FAIL, severity 10 less than 10GB space = FAIL, severity 20</li> </ul>									
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>diskspace 10% 20% /var</code> For the filesystem <code>/var</code>: less than 20% space = FAIL, severity 10 less than 10% space = FAIL, severity 20</li> </ul>									

*...continued*

Table G.2.1: List Of Health Checks...continued

Name	Query (response is PASS/FAIL)
dmesg	Is dmesg output OK? Regexes to parse the output can be constructed in the configuration file at /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/configfiles/dmesg.py
docker	Is Docker running OK? Checks for Docker server availability and corruption, dead containers, proper endpoints
dockerregistry	Is the Docker registry running OK? Checks registry endpoint and registry availability
exports	Are all filesystems as defined by the cluster management system exported?
etcd	Are the core etcd processes of Kubernetes running OK? Checks endpoints and interfaces
failedprejob	Are there failed prejob health checks (section 7.8.2)? Here: yes = FAIL. By default, the job ID is saved under /cm/local/apps/<scheduler>/var/: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• On FAIL, in failedprejobs.</li><li>• On PASS, in allprejobs</li></ul> The maximum number of IDs stored is 1000 by default. The maximum period for which the IDs are stored is 30 days by default. Both these maxima can be set with the failedprejob health check script.
failover	Is the failover status OK?
hp raid	Are the HP Smart Array controllers OK?
ib	Is the InfiniBand Host Channel Adapter working properly? A configuration file for this health check is at /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/configfiles/ib.py

...continued

Table G.2.1: List Of Health Checks...continued

Name	Query (response is PASS/FAIL)
interfaces	Are the interfaces up and running at full speed?
ipmihealth	Is the BMC (IPMI or iLO) health OK? Uses the script sample_ipmi.
kubernetescertsexpiration	Are Kubernetes certificates valid for at least the next 30 days?
kuberneteschildnode	Are all Kubernetes child nodes up?
kubernetescomponentsstatus	Are all expected agents and services up and running for active nodes?
kubernetesnodesstatus	Is the status for all Kubernetes nodes OK?
kubernetespodsstatus	Is the status for all pods OK?
ldap	Can the ID of the user be looked up with LDAP?
lustre	Is the Lustre filesystem running OK?
megaraid	Are the MegaRAID controllers OK? <i>Either the proprietary MegaCLI software, or its successor, the proprietary StorCLI software is needed for this health check. The MegaCLI software was originally provided by LSI Logic, but LSI is now part of Broadcom.</i> <i>Both the MegaCLI software and the StorCLI software are now available from the Broadcom website (<a href="http://www.broadcom.com">http://www.broadcom.com</a>).</i> <i>For BCM 10 and onwards, the healthcheck first checks for StorCLI, and then for MegaCLI, and uses the first binary that is detected. For BCM versions prior to version 10, the healthcheck first checks for MegaCLI, and then StorCLI, and uses the first binary that is detected.</i>

...continued

Table G.2.1: List Of Health Checks...continued

Name	Query (response is PASS/FAIL)
mounts	Are all mounts defined in the fstab OK?
mysql	Is the status and configuration of MySQL correct?
node-hardware-profile	Is the specified node's hardware configuration during health check use unchanged? <i>The options to this script are described using the “-h” help option. Before this script is used for health checks, the specified hardware profile is usually first saved with the -s option. Eg: “node-hardware-profile -n node001 -s hardwarenode001”</i>
ntp*	Is NTP synchronization happening?
oomkiller	Has the oomkiller process run? Yes=FAIL. The oomkiller health check checks if the oomkiller process has run. The configuration file /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/configfiles/oomkiller.conf for the oomkiller health check can be configured to reset the response to PASS after one FAIL is logged, until the next oomkiller process runs. The processes killed by the oomkiller process are logged in /var/spool/cmd/save-oomkilleraction. <i>A consideration of the causes and consequences of the killed processes is strongly recommended. A reset of the node is generally recommended.</i>
opalinkhealth	Are the quality and the integrity of the Intel OPA HFI link OK?
Overall_Health:<sda>	Overall disk health status (SMART response) for specified device, in this case <sda>.
SMART_Health:<sda>	Overall SMART health as reported by the exit code, for a specified device, in this case <sda>.
rogueprocess	Are the processes that are running legitimate (ie, not ‘rogue’)? Besides the FAIL/PASS/UNKNOWN response to CMDaemon, also returns a list of rogue process IDs to file descriptor 3 (InfoMessages), which the killprocess action (page 982) can then go ahead and kill. Illegitimate processes are processes that should not be running on the node. An illegitimate process is at least one of the following, by default: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• not part of the workload manager service or its jobs</li> <li>• not a root- or system-owned process</li> <li>• in the state Z, T, W, or X. States are described in the ps man pages in the section on “PROCESS STATE CODES”</li> </ul>

*...continued*

*Table G.2.1: List Of Health Checks...continued*

Name	Query (response is PASS/FAIL)
	Rogue process criteria can be configured in the file /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/configfiles/rogueprocess.py within the software image. To implement a changed criteria configuration, the software image used by systems on which the health check is run should be updated (section 5.6). For example, using: cmsh -c "device; imageupdate -c default -w" for the default category of nodes.
schedulers	Are the queue instances of all schedulers on a node healthy?
smart	Is the SMART response healthy? The severities can be configured in the file /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/configfiles/smart.conf. By default, if a drive does not support the SMART commands and results in a "Smart command failed" info message for that drive, then the healthcheck is configured to give a PASS response. This is because the mere fact that the drive is a non-SMART drive should not be a reason to conclude that the drive is unhealthy. The info messages can be suppressed by setting an allowed list of the disks to be checked within /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/smart.
ssh2node	Is passwordless ssh root login, from head to a node that is up, working? Some details of its behavior are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The health check fails on the head node if root ssh login to the head node has been disabled.</li> <li>• The health check fails if ssh certificate-based access, to a non-head node that is in the UP state, fails, even if login (key-based) access is still available. The UP state is determined by whether CMDaemon is running on that node.</li> <li>• If the regular node is in a DOWN state—which could be due to CMDaemon being down, or the node having been powered off gracefully, or the node suffering a sudden power failure—then the health check responds with a PASS. The idea here is to check key or certificate access, and decouple it from the node state.</li> </ul>

*...continued*

Table G.2.1: List Of Health Checks...continued

Name	Query (response is PASS/FAIL)
swraid	Are the software RAID arrays healthy?
testhealthcheck	A health check script example for creating scripts, or setting a mix of PASS/FAIL/UNKNOWN responses. The source includes examples of environment variables that can be used, as well as configuration suggestions.

\* built-ins, not standalone scripts.

If sampling from a head node, a standalone script is in directory:

/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/

If sampling from a regular node, a standalone script is in directory:

/cm/images/default-image/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/healthchecks/

## G.2.2 GPU Health Checks

The data producer (section 10.2.10) for the GPU health checks of this section is GPUSampler.

The NVIDIA GPU health checks of this section, as the GPUSampler data producer name suggests, is about gathering the sampled GPU data from the devices themselves.

The device parameter for the GPU health checks in this section, unless otherwise noted, requires as a parameter the device slot number that the GPU uses. The parameter takes the form gpu0, gpu1, and so on. It is appended to the metric with a colon character. For example, the gpu\_health\_inforom health check, if used with gpu1, is specified as:

### Example

```
gpu_health_inforom:gpu1
```

Available GPU health checks for V100 and A100 GPUs are listed in table G.2.2. The available GPU metrics are displayed in table G.1.6.

Table G.2.2: List Of GPU Health Checks

Name	Query (script response is PASS/FAIL)
gpu_health_driver	Is the driver-related subsystem OK?
gpu_health_hostengine*	Is the host engine status, for all GPU devices on that node, OK?
gpu_health_inforom	Is the Inforom OK?
gpu_health_mcu	Is the microcontroller unit OK?
gpu_health_mem	Is the memory subsystem OK?
gpu_health_nvlink	Is the NVLINK system OK?
gpu_health_nvswitch_fatal	Is the NVSwitch showing no fatal errors?

...continued

Table G.2.2: List Of GPU Health Checks...continued

Name	Query (response is PASS/FAIL)
gpu_health_nvswitch_non_fatal	Is the NVSwitch showing no non-fatal errors?
gpu_health_overall**	Is the overall GPU health OK?
gpu_health_PCIE	Is the PCIe system OK?
gpu_health_pmu	Is the power management unit OK?
gpu_health_power	Is the power OK?
gpu_health_sm	Is the streaming multiprocessor OK?
gpu_health_thermal	Is the temperature OK?

\* Specified without a GPU because the check is a check for all GPUs.

\*\* If specified without a GPU, then the check is a check for all GPUs.

For example, for the gpu\_health\_overall health check:

gpu\_health\_overall is for all the GPUs

gpu\_health\_overall:gpu0 is just for GPU0

### G.2.3 Redfish Health Checks

The available Redfish health checks are displayed in table G.2.3.

Table G.2.3: Redfish health checks

Redfish Health Check	Description
chassis_health	Health status of chassis
cpu_health	Health status of processor
memory_health	Health status of memory
storage_health	Health status of storage
device_health	Health status of storage device
drive_health	Health status of storage drive
volume_health	Health status of storage volume
psu_health	Health status of power supply
fan_health	Health status of a fan
sensor_health	Health status of a sensor
pcie_health	Health status of PCIe device
manager_health	Health status of manager (e.g.: HPE iLO)

### G.2.4 NetQ Health Checks

NetQ health checks (table G.1.13) are healthcheck measurables sourced from NetQ. Configuring NetQ with BCM is described in section 3.11.

The data producer (section 10.2.10) for NetQ measurables is the netq data producer.

Table G.1.13: NetQ Health Checks

NetQ Health Check	Query (Response is PASS/FAIL)
NetQ_node_fan_status	Is the fan working?
NetQ_node_NVLink_status	Is NVLink up?
NetQ_node_PSU_status	Is the power supply unit working?
NetQ_node_Temp_status	Is the temperature sensor working?

### G.2.5 Parameters For Health Checks

Health checks have the parameters indicated by the left column in the example below:

#### Example

```
[myheadnode->monitoring->measurable] % show cmsh
Parameter          Value
-----
Class              Internal
Consolidator      - (cmsh)
Description        Checks whether cmsh is available, i.e. can we
                   use cmsh for the default cluster?
Disabled          no (cmsh)
Gap                0 (cmsh)
Maximal age        0s (cmsh)
Maximal samples    4,096 (cmsh)
Name               cmsh
Parameter
Producer          cmsh
Revision
Type               HealthCheck
```

If the value is inherited from the producer, then it is shown in parentheses next to the value. An inherited value can be overwritten by setting it directly for the parameter of a measurable.

The parameters are a subset of the parameters for metrics described in section G.1.15.

### G.3 Enummetrics

Table G.3: List Of Enummetrics

Name	Query
------	-------

DeviceStatus

What is the status of the device? Possible values are:

- up
- down
- closed
- installing
- installer\_failed
- installer\_rebooting,
- installer\_callinginit
- installer\_unreachable
- installer\_burning
- burning
- unknown
- opening
- going\_down
- pending
- no data

---

...continued

*Table G.3: List Of Enummetrics...continued*

Name	Query
wlm_slurm_state	What is the status of the device allocated to Slurm? Possible values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• allocated</li><li>• completing</li><li>• down</li><li>• drain</li><li>• draining</li><li>• fail</li><li>• failing</li><li>• idle</li><li>• maint</li><li>• mixed</li></ul>

---

## G.4 Actions And Their Parameters

### G.4.1 Actions

Table G.4.1: List Of Actions

Name	Description
Drain	Allows no new processes on a compute node from the workload manager. This means that already running jobs are permitted to complete. Usage Tip: Plan for undrain from another node becoming active
Send e-mail to administrators	Sends mail using the mailserver that was set up during server configuration. Default destination is root@localhost. The e-mail address that it is otherwise sent to is specified by the recipient parameter for this action.
Event	Send an event to users with a connected client
ImageUpdate	Update the image on the node
PowerOff	Powers off, hard
PowerOn	Powers on, hard
PowerReset	Power reset, hard
Reboot	Reboot via the system, trying to shut everything down cleanly, and then start up again
killprocess*	Kills processes seen by CMDaemon with the KILL (-9) signal. The PIDs are passed via the <code>CMD_INFO_MESSAGE</code> environmental variable. Syntax: <code>killprocess &lt;PID1[,&lt;PID2&gt;,...]&gt;</code> This action is designed to work with <code>rogueprocess</code> (page 975)
remount*	remounts all defined mounts
testaction*	An action script example for users who would like to create their own scripts. The source has helpful remarks about the environment variables that can be used as well as tips on configuring it generally
Shutdown	Power off via system, trying to shut everything down cleanly
Undrain node	Allow processes to run on the node from the workload manager

\* standalone scripts, not built-ins.

If running from a head node, the script is in directory: /cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions/

If running from a regular node, the script is in directory: /cm/images/default-image/cm/local/apps/cmd/scripts/actions/

### G.4.2 Parameters For A Monitoring Action

The default monitoring actions are listed in section 10.4.4.

All actions have in common the parameters shown by the left column, illustrated by the example below for the drain action:

#### Example

```
[myheadnode->monitoring->action]% show drain
Parameter      Value
-----
Action          Drain node from all WLM
Allowed time
Disable         no
Name            Drain
Revision
Run on          Active
Type            DrainAction
```

Out of the full list of default actions, the actions with only the common parameter settings are:

- `Poweron`: Powers off the node
- `PowerOff`: Powers off the node
- `PowerReset`: Hard resets the node
- `Drain`: Drains the node (does not allow new jobs on that node)
- `Undrain`: Undrains the node (allows new jobs on that node)
- `Reboot`: Reboots node via the operating system.
- `Shutdown`: Shuts the node down via the operating system.
- `ImageUpdate`: Updates the node from the software image
- `Event`: Sends an event to users connected with cmsh or Base View

### Extra Parameters For Some Actions

The following actions have extra parameters:

#### Action of the type `ScriptAction`:

- `killprocess`: A script that kills a specified process
- `testaction`: A test script
- `remount`: A script to remount all devices

The extra parameters for an action of type `ScriptAction` are:

- `Arguments`: List of arguments that are taken by the script
- `Node environment`: Does the script run in the node environment?
- `Script`: The script path
- `timeout`: Time within which the script must run before giving up

#### Action of the type `EmailAction`:

- `Send e-mail to administrators`: Sends an e-mail out, by default to the administrators

The extra parameters for an action of type `EmailAction` are:

- `All administrators`: sends the e-mail to the list of users in the Administrator e-mail setting in partition[base] mode
- `Info`: the body of the e-mail message
- `Recipients`: a list of recipients



# H

## Workload Manager Configuration Files Updated By CMDaemon

This appendix lists workload manager configuration files changed by CMDaemon, events causing such change, and the file or property changed.

### H.1 Slurm

File/Property	Updates What?	Updated During
/cm/shared/apps/slurm/var/etc/ <Slurm instance name>/slurm.conf	head node	Add/Remove/Update nodes, hostname change
/cm/shared/apps/slurm/var/etc/ <Slurm instance name>/slurmdbd.conf	head node	Add/Remove/Update nodes, hostname change
/cm/shared/apps/slurm/var/etc/ <Slurm instance name>/gres.conf	all nodes	Add/Remove/Update nodes
/cm/shared/apps/slurm/var/etc/ <Slurm instance name>/topology.conf	head node	Add/Remove/Update nodes

### H.2 PBS Professional/OpenPBS

File/Property	Updates What?	Updated During
\$PBS_CONF_FILE	head node, software image	hostname/domain change, failover
/cm/local/apps/<openpbs or pbspro>/ var/spool/mom_priv/config	head node	hostname change, failover

The default value of \$PBS\_CONF\_FILE in BCM  
is /cm/local/apps/<openpbs or pbspro>/var/etc/pbs.conf

### H.3 LSF

File/Property	Updates What?	Updated During
\$LSF_ENVDIR/lsf.conf	head node	hostname/domain change, failover
\$LSF_ENVDIR/lsf.cluster.<clusternode>	head node	add/remove/update nodes
\$LSF_ENVDIR/lsf.sudoers	head node	hostname/domain change, failover
\$LSF_ENVDIR/hosts	cloud-director	add/remove/update cloud nodes
\$LSF_ENVDIR/lsbatch/<clusternode>/configdir/lsb.queues	head node	add/remove/update queues
\$LSF_ENVDIR/lsbatch/<clusternode>/configdir/lsb.hosts	head node	add/remove/update nodes

The default value of \$LSF\_ENVDIR in BCM  
is /cm/shared/apps/lsf/var/conf/<clusternode>

On each node where the lsfd service runs, CMDaemon creates a symlink /etc/lsf.conf that points to \$LSF\_ENVDIR/lsf.conf. This is required by LSF daemons.

# I

# Changing The LDAP Password

The administrator may wish to change the LDAP root password. This procedure has two steps:

- setting a new password for the LDAP server (section I.1), and
- setting the new password in cmd.conf (section I.2).

It is also a good idea to do some checking afterwards (section I.3).

## I.1 Setting A New Password For The LDAP Server

An encrypted password string can be generated as follows:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# module load openldap
[root@basecm11 ~]# slappasswd
New password:
Re-enter new password:
SSHAJ/3wy0+IqyAwhh8Q4obL8489CWJ1HpLg
```

The input is the plain text password, and the output is the encrypted password. The encrypted password is set as a value for the rootpw tag in the slapd.conf file on the head node:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# grep ^rootpw /cm/local/apps/openldap/etc/slapd.conf
rootpw SSHAJ/3wy0+IqyAwhh8Q4obL8489CWJ1HpLg
```

The password can also be saved in plain text instead of as an SHA hash generated with slappasswd, but this is considered insecure.

After setting the value for rootpw, the LDAP server is restarted:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# systemctl restart slapd
```

## I.2 Setting The New Password In cmd.conf

The new LDAP password (the plain text password that generated the encrypted password after entering the slappasswd command in section I.1) is set in cmd.conf. It is kept as clear text for the entry for the LDAPPass directive (Appendix C):

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# grep LDAPPass /cm/local/apps/cmd/etc/cmd.conf
LDAPPass = "Mysecret1dapppassw0rd"
```

CMDaemon is then restarted:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# systemctl restart cmd
```

### I.3 Checking LDAP Access

For a default configuration with user `cmsupport` and domain `cm.cluster`, the following checks can be run from the head node (some output truncated):

- anonymous access:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ldapsearch -x  
# extended LDIF  
#  
# LDAPv3  
# base <dc=cm,dc=cluster> (default) with scope subtree  
...
```

- root cn without a password (this should fail):

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ldapsearch -x -D 'cn=root,dc=cm,dc=cluster'  
ldap_bind: Server is unwilling to perform (53)  
additional info: unauthenticated bind (DN with no password) disallowed  
[root@basecm11 ~]#
```

- root cn with a password (this should work):

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# ldapsearch -x -D 'cn=root,dc=cm,dc=cluster' -w Mysecret1dappassw0rd  
# extended LDIF  
#  
# LDAPv3  
# base <dc=cm,dc=cluster> (default) with scope subtree  
...
```

# J

## Tokens

This appendix describes authorization tokens available for profiles. Profiles are introduced in Section 6.4:

Useful for listing services and tokens are the following `cmsh` commands, available within the `profile` mode:

- `allservices`
- `alltokens`
- `showservices`

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% profile
[basecm11->profile]% allservices
auth
cert
cloud
device
etcd
gui
job
kube
main
mon
net
part
proc
prov
serv
session
status
test
user
```

Similarly, the output from `showservices` displays the tokens for the services as indicated in the following table:

Table J: List Of Tokens

Service and token name	User can...
<b>Service: CMAuth</b>	
ADD_PROFILE_TOKEN	Add a new profile
GET_CMSERVICES_TOKEN	Get a list of available CMDaemon services
GET_PROFILE_TOKEN	Retrieve list of profiles and profile properties
UPDATE_PROFILE_TOKEN	Update profile
<b>Service: CMCert</b>	
GET_CERTIFICATE_INFORMATION_TOKEN	Get certificate information
GET_CERTIFICATE_INFO_TOKEN	Get certificate information
GET_CERTIFICATE_REQUEST_TOKEN	List pending certificate requests
GET_CERTIFICATE_TOKEN	Get certificate
INVALIDATE_COMPONENT_CA_TOKEN	Invalidate component CA
TOKEN	
ISSUE_CERTIFICATE_TOKEN	Accept certificate request and issue signed certificate
RECREATE_COMPONENT_CERTIFICATE_TOKEN	Recreate component certificate
REMOVE_CERTIFICATE_REQUEST_TOKEN	Cancel certificate request
REMOVE_CERTIFICATE_TOKEN	Remove a certificate
REVOKE_CERTIFICATE_TOKEN	Revoke a certificate
UNREVOKE_CERTIFICATE_TOKEN	Unrevoke a revoked certificate
<b>Service: CMCloud</b>	
ADD_CLOUD_JOB_DESCRIPTION_TOKEN	Add cloud job description
ADD_CLOUD_PROVIDER_TOKEN	Add a new cloud provider
ADD_OCI_INSTANCE_POOL_TOKEN	Add OCI instance pool
AZURE_ACCESS_STRING_TOKEN	Get/set Azure access string
CANCEL_ANY_CLOUD_JOB_TOKEN	Cancel any cloud job
CLOUD_DIRECTOR_NEW_IP_TOKEN	Set the new External IP of the cloud director
DELETE_ANY_ANF_VOLUME_TOKEN	Delete any ANF volume
DELETE_ANY_FSX_INSTANCE_TOKEN	Delete any FSX instance
EC2_ACCESS_STRING_TOKEN	Get/set Amazon EC2 access string
FORGE_ACCESS_STRING_TOKEN	Forge an access string
GET_ALL_CLOUD_JOB_DESCRIPTION_TOKEN	Get all cloud job description
GET_CLOUD_AMI_TOKEN	Access Amazon EC2 AMI

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
GET_CLOUD_JOB_DESCRIPTION_TOKEN	Get cloud job description
GET_CLOUD_PROVIDER_TOKEN	Get cloud provider information
GET_CLOUD_REGION_TOKEN	Access Amazon EC2 region
GET_CLOUD_TYPE_TOKEN	Access Amazon instance type
GET_CONSOLE_OUTPUT_TOKEN	Retrieve the console output of the cloud director for debugging purposes
GET_KERNEL_INITRD_MD5SUM_TOKEN	Retrieve MD5 sum of initial ramdisk
GET_OCI_INSTANCE_POOL_TOKEN	Get OCI instance pool
LIST_ALL_ANF_VOLUMES_TOKEN	List all ANF volumes
LIST_ALL_FSX_INSTANCES_TOKEN	List all FSX instances
OCI_ACCESS_STRING_TOKEN	OCI access string
ON_DEMAND_ANF_TOKEN	On demand ANF
ON_DEMAND_FSX_TOKEN	On demand FSX
OSCLOUD_ACCESS_STRING_TOKEN	Get/set OpenStack access string
PUT_USERDATA_TOKEN	Set AWS user data in AWS
SEND_CLOUD_STORAGE_ACTION_TOKEN	Send cloud storage action
SET_CLOUDERRORS_TOKEN	Set cloud errors
SHARE_ANF_VOLUME_TOKEN	Share own ANF volumes
SHARE_FSX_INSTANCE_TOKEN	Share own FSX instances
SUBMIT_CLOUD_JOB_DESCRIPTION_TOKEN	Submit cloud job description
TERMINATE_NODE_TOKEN	Terminate cloud nodes
UPDATE_CLOUD_JOB_DESCRIPTION_TOKEN	Update cloud job description
UPDATE_CLOUD_PROVIDER_TOKEN	Update cloud provider settings
UPDATE_OCI_INSTANCE_POOL_TOKEN	Update OCI instance pool
USER_MANAGED_ANF_TOKEN	Manage ANF volume
USER_MANAGED_FSX_TOKEN	Manage FSX volume
<b>Service: CMDevice</b>	
ACCESS_SETTINGS_TOKEN	Access settings
ADD_CATEGORY_TOKEN	Create new category
ADD_CONFIGURATIONOVERLAY_TOKEN	Create new configuration overlay
ADD_DEVICE_TOKEN	Add a new device
ADD_FILE_WRITE_INFO_TOKEN	Add filewriteinfo
ADD_LITENODE_TOKEN	Add lite node
ADD_NODEGROUP_TOKEN	Add a new nodegroup
ADD_NODE_HIERARCHY_RULE_TOKEN	Add node hierarchy rule
ADD_REMOTE_NODE_INSTALLER_INTERACTION_TOKEN	Add a node-installer interaction (Used by CMDaemon)
ADD_REPORT_QUERY_TOKEN	Add report query
ADD_GPU_WORKLOAD_QUERY	Add GPU workload query performance

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
PERFORMANCE_PROFILE_TOKEN	profile
APPLY_DEVICE_COMMANDS_TOKEN	Apply device commands token
APPLY_PTM_TOPOLOGY_TOKEN	Apply PTM Topology
BIOS_APPLY_TOKEN	BIOS apply token
BIOS_FETCH_TOKEN	BIOS fetch token
BMC_USERNAME_PASSWORD_TOKEN	View/set BMC (e.g. HP ilo4, IPMI) username and password
BURN_STATUS_TOKEN	Get burn status
CANCEL_BURN_TOKEN	Cancel burn token
CHANGED_NVDOMAIN_INFO_TOKEN	Changed NVIDIA domain info
CHASSIS_USER_PASSWORD_TOKEN	Get/set chassis username and password
CHECK_REMOTE_MOUNT_TOKEN	Check remount mount
CLEAR_DISK_ENCRYPTION_PASSPHRASE_TOKEN	Clear disk encryption passphrase
COMPLETE_BURN_TOKEN	Complete burn
CREATE_PORT_FORWARD_BURN_TOKEN	Complete port forwarding
DIFF_DEVICE_COMMANDS_TOKEN	Diff device commands
DIRTY_GPU_WORKLOAD_PERFORMANCE_PROFILE_CACHE_TOKEN	Dirty GPU workload performance profile cache
FETCH_NVDOMAIN_INFO_TOKEN	Fetch NVIDIA domain info
FIRMWARE_FLASH_TOKEN	Flash firmware
FIRMWARE_INFO_TOKEN	Get firmware information
FIRMWARE_UPLOAD_TOKEN	Upload firmware
FORCE_RECONNECT_TOKEN	Force reconnect
GET_BACKUP_DEVICE_COMMANDS_TOKEN	Get backup device commands
GET_BACKUP_INFO_TOKEN	Get backup information
GET_BURN_LOG_TOKEN	Retrieve burn log
GET_BURN_TOKEN	Get burn token
GET_CATEGORY_TOKEN	Get list of categories
GET_CONFIGURATIONOVERLAY_TOKEN	Get list of configuration overlays
GET_DEVICE_BY_PORT_TOKEN	View list of devices according to the ethernet switch port that they are connected to
GET_DEVICE_COMMANDS_TOKEN	Get device commands
GET_DEVICE_LEAK_INFO_TOKEN	Get device leak info
GET_DEVICE_TOKEN	View all device properties
GET_DEVICE_UUID_TOKEN	View device UUID
GET_DHCPPDLEASES_TOKEN	View device DHCPPD leases
GET_DISKSETUP_TOKEN	Get disksetup
GET_DPU_TOKEN	Get DPU
GET_EXCLUDE_LIST_TOKEN	Retrieve the various exclude lists
GET_FILE_WRITE_INFO_TOKEN	Get filewriteinfo

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
GET_FINALIZE_SCRIPTS_TOKEN	Get finalize scripts
GET_FREE_PORTS_TOKEN	Get free ports info
GET_GPU_MIG_TOKEN	Get GPU MIG
GET_GPU_PROFILING_METRIC_INFO_TOKEN	Get GPU profiling metric info
GET_GPU_PROFILING_STATE_TOKEN	Get GPU profiling state
GET_GPU_WORKLOAD_PERFORMANCE_PROFILE_TOKEN	View GPU workload performance profile
GET_IBSWITCH_TOKEN	View IB switch properties
GET_IMEX_CTL_TOKEN	View IMEX_CTL properties
GET_INITIALIZE_SCRIPTS_TOKEN	Get initialize scripts
GET_MINIMAL_CONFIG_TOKEN	View minimum configuration
GET_NETWORK_TOPOLOGY_TOKEN	Get network topology
GET_NODEGROUP_TOKEN	Get list of nodegroups
GET_NODE_ACCELERATOR_TOKEN	Get node accelerator count
GET_NODE_ARCH_OS_TOKEN	Get architecture and OS
GET_NODE_HIERARCHY_RULE_TOKEN	Get node hierarchy rule
GET_NVDOMAIN_INFO_TOKEN	Get NVIDIA domain info
GET_NVLINK_INFO_TOKEN	Get NVIDIA link info
GET_PORT_BY_MAC_TOKEN	Determine to which switch port a given MAC is connected to.
GET_PTM_TOPOLOGY_TOKEN	Get PTM Topology
GET_REMOTE_NODE_INSTALLER_INTERACTIONS_TOKEN	Get list of pending installer interactions
GET_REPORT_QUERY_TOKEN	Get report query
GET_SCRIPT_ENVIRONMENT_TOKEN	Get script environment
GET_SWITCH_COMMAND_TEMPLATES_TOKEN	Get switch command templates
GET_SWITCH_FIRMWARES_TOKEN	Get switch firmwares
GET_SWITCH_IMAGES_TOKEN	Get switch images
GET_SWITCH_ZTP_TEMPLATES_TOKEN	Get switch ZTP templates
GET_SYNC_INFO_TOKEN	Get rsync information
GET_SYNC_LOG_TOKEN	Get rsync provisioning log
GET_SYSINFO_COLLECTOR_TOKEN	Get information about a node (executes dmidecode)
GET_TFTPBOOT_FILE_INFORMATION_TOKEN	Get tftpboot firmware information
GET_USED_PORTS_TOKEN	Get used ports info
GET_WIREGUARD_INFO_TOKEN	Get wireguard info
LIST_DEVICE_COMMANDS_TOKEN	List device commands
LIST_DPU_BFB_TOKEN	List DPU BFB
LIST_IBSWITCH_TOKEN	List IB switches
LIST_PORT_FORWARD_TOKEN	List port forwarding

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
MALLOC_TRIM_TOKEN	malloc trim
NEW_NODE_TOKEN	New node
NODE_GET_MOUNTPOINTS_TOKEN	Get list of mountpoints defined for a node
NODE_IDENTIFY_TOKEN	Identify a node (RPC API, used by node installer)
NVSM_ALERTS_TOKEN	View NVSM alerts
NVSM_HEALTH_TOKEN	View NVSM health
NVSM_INFO_TOKEN	View NVSM info
NVSM_VERSIONS_TOKEN	View NVSM versions
NV_FABRIC_INFO_TOKEN	View NVIDIA fabric info
NV_FABRIC_START_STOP_TOKEN	Carry out NVIDIA fabric start and stop
NV_FABRIC_START_TOKEN	Carry out NVIDIA fabric start
NV_FABRIC_STATUS_TOKEN	View NVIDIA fabric status
NV_FABRIC_STOP_TOKEN	Carry out NVIDIA fabric stop
PMC_USERNAME_PASSWORD_TOKEN	View/set Power management controller username and password
POWER_CANCEL_TOKEN	Power cancel operation
POWER_CYCLE_TOKEN	Power reset a device
POWER_OFF_TOKEN	Power off a device
POWER_ON_TOKEN	Power on a device using BMC or PDU power control
POWER_STATUS_TOKEN	Get power status e.g on or off
PPING_TOKEN	Run parallel ping
PREPARE_POWER_OFF_TOKEN	Prepare to power off a device
PROXY_SETTINGS_TOKEN	Proxy settings
PUSH_DPU_BFB_TOKEN	Push DPU BPB
PUT_SYSINFO_COLLECTOR_TOKEN	Put information about a node
REBOOT_NODE_TOKEN	Reboot a remote a node
REDFISH_EVENT_TOKEN	Redfish event
REFRESH_NVDOMAIN_INFO_TOKEN	Refresh NVIDIA domain info
REMOVE_BACKUP_TOKEN	Remove backup information
REMOVE_REMOTE_NODE_INSTALLER_INTERACTION_TOKEN	Remove a node installer interaction
REMOVE_SYSINFO_COLLECTOR_TOKEN	Remove information about a node
REPORT_POWER_STATUS_TOKEN	Report power operation history
REPORT_QUERY_TOKEN	Show report query
REQUEST_BURN_TOKEN	Request burn
RESET_GPU_TOKEN	Reset GPU
RUN_POST_CHANGE_ACTIONS_TOKEN	Run POST change actions
SET_BACKUP_INFO_TOKEN	Set backup information
SET_DEVICE_LEAK_INFO_TOKEN	Set device leak info
SET_POWER_CONFIG_TOKEN	Set device power configuration

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
SET_DEVICE_STATUS_TOKEN	Set device status (only via RPC API calls)
SET_DPU_TOKEN	Set DPU
SET_GPU_MIG_TOKEN	Set GPU MIG
SET_GPU_WORKLOAD_PERFORMANCE_PROFILE_TOKEN	Set GPU workload performance profile
SET_NODE_ACCELERATOR_TOKEN	Set node accelerator
SET_NODE_ARCH_OS_TOKEN	Set architecture and OS
SET_NVDOMAIN_INFO_TOKEN	Set NVIDIA domain info
SHOW_DEVICE_COMMANDS_TOKEN	Show device commands
SHUTDOWN_NODE_TOKEN	Shutdown a remote node managed by CMDaemon
SNMP_SETTINGS_TOKEN	Manage SNMP settings
START_BURN_TOKEN	Start burn
STOP_BURN_TOKEN	Stop burn
SYSINFO_COLLECTOR_TOKEN	Manage information about a node
TAKE_BACKUP_DEVICE_COMMANDS_TOKEN	Take backup device commands
UPDATE_CATEGORY_TOKEN	Update a category property
UPDATE_CONFIGURATIONOVERLAY_TOKEN	Update a configuration overlay property
UPDATE_DEVICE_TOKEN	Update device properties
UPDATE_GPU_PROFILING_METRIC_INFO_TOKEN	Update GPU profiling metric info
UPDATE_GPU_PROFILING_STATE_TOKEN	Update GPU profiling state
UPDATE_LITENODE_TOKEN	Update lite node
UPDATE_NODEGROUP_TOKEN	Update nodegroup properties (e.g. add a new member node)
UPDATE_NODE_HIERARCHY_RULE_TOKEN	Update node hierarchy rule
UPDATE_REMOTE_NODE_INSTALLER_INTERACTIONS_TOKEN	Update installer interactions (e.g. confirm full provisioning)
UPDATE_REPORT_QUERY_TOKEN	Update report query
UPDATE_STATUS_TOKEN	Update status
UPDATE_SWITCH_TOKEN	Update switch
UPDATE_SYSINFO_COLLECTOR_TOKEN	Update information about a node
UPGRADE_IBSWITCH_TOKEN	Carry out IB switch upgrade
<b>Service: CMetcd</b>	
ADD_ETCD_TOKEN	Add etcd
GET_ETCD_TOKEN	Get etcd
UPDATE_ETCD_TOKEN	Update etcd
<b>Service: CMGui</b>	
EXPAND_COLLAPSE_TOKEN	Get cluster overview

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
GET_CDU_OVERVIEW_TOKEN	Get CDU overview
GET_CLUSTER_OVERVIEW_TOKEN	Get cluster overview
GET_KUBE_OVERVIEW_TOKEN	Get kube cluster overview
GET_NODE_OVERVIEW_TOKEN	Get node overview
GET_NODE_STATUS_TOKEN	Get node status
GET_PDU_OVERVIEW_TOKEN	Get PDU overview
GET_POWER_CIRCUIT_OVERVIEW_TOKEN	Get power circuit overview
GET_POWER_SHELF_OVERVIEW_TOKEN	Get power shelf overview
GET_RACK_OVERVIEW_TOKEN	Get rack overview
GET_SWITCH_OVERVIEW_TOKEN	Get switch overview
<b>Service: CMJob</b>	
ADD_CHARGE_BACK_REQUEST_TOKEN	Add chargeback request
ADD_JOBQUEUE_TOKEN	Add a new job queue
ADD_WLM_CLUSTER_TOKEN	Add WLM cluster
CHARGE_BACK_BY_KEY_TOKEN	Show chargeback by key
CHARGE_BACK_TOKEN	Show chargeback
CHECK_NODE_ALLOCATION_TOKEN	Check node allocation
DRAIN_OVERVIEW_TOKEN	Obtain list of drained nodes
DRAIN_TOKEN	Drain a node
FLUSH_JOB_INFO_TOKEN	Flush job info
GET_CHARGE_BACK_REQUEST_TOKEN	Get chargeback request
GET_JOBINFO_TOKEN	Get job information
GET_JOBQUEUE_TOKEN	Retrieve list of job queues and properties
GET_JOB_PID_GPUS_INFO_TOKEN	Get job PID GPUs info
GET_JOB_TOKEN	Get list of jobs that are currently running
GET_OWN_JOBINFO_TOKEN	Get own job information
GET_OWN_JOB_TOKEN	Get list of own jobs that are currently running
GET_PE_TOKEN	Get list of SGE parallel environments
GET_TOPOLOGY_TOKEN	Get topology
GET_TRACKED_JOBS_TOKEN	Get tracked jobs
GET_WLM_CLUSTER_TOKEN	Get WLM cluster
GET_WLM_POWER_SAVING_TOKEN	Get WLM power saving status
HOLD_JOB_TOKEN	Place a job on hold
HOLD_OWN_JOB_TOKEN	Place own job on hold
JOB_NODE_GRID_TOKEN	Show job node grid
JOB_STARTED_ENDED_TOKEN	Show job started/ended
NOTIFY_JOB_END_TOKEN	Notify job end
RELEASE_JOB_TOKEN	Release a held job

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
RELEASE_OWN_JOB_TOKEN	Release own job
REMOVE_JOBINFO_TOKEN	Remove job information
REQUEUE_JOB_TOKEN	Requeue a job
REQUEUE_OWN_JOB_TOKEN	Requeue own job
RESUME_JOB_TOKEN	Resume suspended job
RESUME_OWN_JOB_TOKEN	Resume own job
SET_PERSISTENT_JOBINFO_TOKEN	Set persistent job information
SUBMIT_JOB_TOKEN	Submit a job using JSON
SUSPEND_JOB_TOKEN	Suspend a job
SUSPEND_OWN_JOB_TOKEN	Suspend own job
UPDATE_CHARGE_BACK_REQUEST_TOKEN	Update chargeback request
UPDATE_JOBQUEUE_TOKEN	Modify job queues
UPDATE_JOB_TOKEN	Update job run-timer parameters
UPDATE_OWN_JOB_TOKEN	Update own job
UPDATE_TOPOLOGY_TOKEN	Update topology
UPDATE_WLM_CLUSTER_SERVER_TOKEN	Update WLM cluster server
UPDATE_WLM_CLUSTER_TOKEN	Update WLM cluster
<b>Service: CMKube</b>	
ADD_KUBE_TOKEN	Add Kube
DRAIN_KUBE_OVERVIEW_TOKEN	Drain Kube overview
DRAIN_KUBE_TOKEN	Drain Kube
GET_CAPI_IMAGE_VERSIONS_TOKEN	Get CAPI image versions
GET_CAPI_TOKEN	Get CAPI
GET_KUBE_JOIN_TOKEN	Get Kube join
GET_KUBE_TOKEN	Get Kube
KUBE_MANAGED_LABELS_TOKEN	Get Kube managed labels response
UPDATE_CAPI_IMAGE_VERSIONS_TOKEN	Update CAPI image versions
UPDATE_CAPI_TOKEN	Update CAPI
UPDATE_KUBE_TOKEN	Update Kube
<b>Service: CMMain</b>	
CANCEL_BACKGROUND_TASKS_TOKEN	Cancel background tasks
CMDAEMON_FAILOVER_TOKEN	Set CMDaemon failover condition achieved
CM_SETUP_EXECUTE_TOKEN	Execute
CM_SETUP_GET_EXECUTION_TOKEN	Get execution
CM_SETUP_REMOVE_EXECUTION_TOKEN	Remove execution
GENERIC_CALL_TOKEN	Make a generic call
GET_ALL_ACTIVE_PASSIVE_UP_KEYS_TOKEN	Get keys for all active and passive nodes that are up

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
GET_BACKGROUND_TASKS_TOKEN	Get background tasks
GET_CLUSTER_SETUP_TOKEN	Get cluster configuration
GET_CONFIG_TOKEN	Get configuration
GET_FROZEN_FILES_TOKEN	Get frozen files
GET_HARDWARE_OVERVIEW_TOKEN	Get frozen files
GET_LICENSE_INFO_TOKEN	Retrieve information about BCM license
GET_SERVER_STATUS_TOKEN	Head node status (e.g. ACTIVE, BECOMEACTIVE etc.)
GET_SERVICESTATE_TOKEN	Get the state of a service
GET_VERSION_TOKEN	Get CMDaemon version and revision
GET_XSD_SCHEMA_TOKEN	Get XSD schema
IMPORT_ENTITY_TOKEN	Import an entity
PING_TOKEN	TCP SYN ping managed devices
REPORT_CRITICAL_ERROR_TOKEN	View critical error report
SAVE_FILE_TOKEN	Save a file on a remote node
SET_SERVICESTATE_TOKEN	Set the state of a service
START_REQUEST_REMOTE_ASSISTANCE_TOKEN	Start request-remote-assistance
STATUS_REQUEST_REMOTE_ASSISTANCE_TOKEN	See status of request-remote-assistance
STOP_REQUEST_REMOTE_ASSISTANCE_TOKEN	Stop request-remote-assistance
STORE_CONFIG_FILE_VERSION_TOKEN	Store config file version
STORE_LDAP_CERTIFICATES_TOKEN	Store LDAP certificates
STORE_PRS_CERTIFICATES_TOKEN	Store PRS certificates

**Service: CMMon**

ADD_ENTITY_MEASURABLE_TOKEN	Add entity measurable
ADD_LABELED_ENTITY_TOKEN	Add labeled entity
ADD_MONITORING_ACTION_TOKEN	Add monitoring action
ADD_MONITORING_DATA_PRODUCER_TOKEN	Add monitoring data producer
ADD_MONITORING_MEASURABLE_TOKEN	Add monitoring measurable
ADD_MONITORING_STANDALONE_TOKEN	Add monitoring standalone
ADD_MONITORING_TRIGGER_TOKEN	Add monitoring trigger
ADD_PROMETHEUS_QUERY_TOKEN	Add Prometheus query
BACKUP_INFORMATION_TOKEN	Show backup information
CREATE_MONITORING_MEASURABLE_TOKEN	Create monitoring measurable
DROP_MONITORING_DATA_TOKEN	Drop monitoring data
EXECUTE_QUERY_BY_KEY_TOKEN	Execute Prometheus query by key
EXECUTE_QUERY_TOKEN	Execute Prometheus query
FETCH_CACHE_TOKEN	Fetch the cache
GET_DYNAMIC_RESOURCES_TOKEN	Get a dynamic resource
GET_ENTITY_MEASURABLE_TOKEN	Get entity measurable

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
GET_INFO_MESSAGE_TOKEN	Get info message
GET_LABELED_ENTITY_TOKEN	Get labeled entity
GET_MONITORING_ACTION_TOKEN	Get monitoring action
GET_MONITORING_CONSOLIDATOR_TOKEN	Get monitoring consolidator
GET_MONITORING_DATA_PRODUCER_TOKEN	Get monitoring data producer
GET_MONITORING_MEASURABLE_TOKEN	Get monitoring measurable
GET_MONITORING_STANDALONE_TOKEN	Get monitoring standalone
GET_MONITORING_TRIGGER_TOKEN	Get monitoring trigger
GET_PICKUP_INTERVAL_TOKEN	Get pickup interval
GET_PROMETHEUS_JOB_EXTRA_LABEL_CACHE_TOKEN	Get Prometheus extra label cache
GET_PROMETHEUS_QUERY_TOKEN	Get Prometheus query
GET_TRIGGER_DATA_TOKEN	Get monitoring trigger evaluation data
HEALTH_CHECK_WLM_JOB_TOKEN	Manage health checks for WLM job
INTERNAL_DROP_MONITORING_DATA_TOKEN	Internal dropmonitoringdata
INTERNAL_RUN_ACTION_TOKEN	Internal run action
INTERNAL_SAMPLE_NOW_TOKEN	Internal samplenow
MONITORING_CLEANUP_TOKEN	Monitoring cleanup
MONITORING_INFO_TOKEN	Monitoring info
MONITORING_LITE_TOKEN	Monitoring lite node
MONITORING_MANAGE_TOKEN	Manage monitoring configuration settings
MONITORING_PREPARE_CONTINUE_BACKUP_TOKEN	Monitor prepare continue backup
MONITORING_PUSH_TOKEN	Monitoring push
MONITORING_TREE_DEFAULT_SHOW_TOKEN	Monitoring tree default show
NEW_LABELED_ENTITY_TOKEN	Use new labeled entity
NEW_MEASURABLE_TOKEN	New measurable token
OFFLOAD_INFORMATION_TOKEN	Get offload information
PLOT_TOKEN	Request plot
PRIVATE_MONITORING_TOKEN	Private monitoring
PROMETHEUS_EXPORTER_TOKEN	Show Prometheus exporter
PROMETHEUS_METRIC_TOKEN	Show Prometheus metric
PUT_OFFLOAD_INFORMATION_TOKEN	Put offload information
REINITIALIZE_TOKEN	Reinitialize data producers
REQUEST_PICKUP_INTERVAL_TOKEN	Request monitoring pickup interval
SAMPLE_NOW_TOKEN	Sample now
STATE_TRANSITION_TOKEN	State transition
UPDATE_DYNAMIC_RESOURCES_TOKEN	Update a dynamic resource
UPDATE_LABELED_ENTITY_TOKEN	Update labeled entity
UPDATE_MONITORING_ACTION_TOKEN	Update monitoring action

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
UPDATE_MONITORING_CONSOLIDATOR_TOKEN	Update monitoring consolidator
UPDATE_MONITORING_DATA_PRODUCER_TOKEN	Update monitoring data producer
UPDATE_MONITORING_MEASURABLE_TOKEN	Update monitoring measurable
UPDATE_MONITORING_STANDALONE_TOKEN	Update monitoring standalone
UPDATE_MONITORING_TRIGGER_TOKEN	Update monitoring trigger
UPDATE_PROMETHEUS_JOB_EXTRA_LABEL_CACHE_TOKEN	Update Prometheus job extra label cache
UPDATE_PROMETHEUS_QUERY_TOKEN	Update Prometheus query
<b>Service: CMNet</b>	
ADD_NETWORK_TOKEN	Add network settings
GET_NETWORK_TOKEN	Get network settings
UPDATE_NETWORK_TOKEN	Update network settings
<b>Service: CMPart</b>	
ADD_EDGE_SITE_TOKEN	Add edge site
ADD_PARTITION_TOKEN	Add partition settings
ADD_POWER_CIRCUIT_TOKEN	Add power circuit
ADD_RACK_TOKEN	Add rack settings
ADD_SOFTWAREIMAGE_FILE_SELECTION_TOKEN	Add softwareimage file selection
ADD_SOFTWAREIMAGE_TOKEN	Add softwareimage settings
CMDAEMON_CLEAN_STOP_TOKEN	Obtain cleanliness status of stop
CMDAEMON_FAILOVER_SLAVE_RESULT_TOKEN	Obtain status of slave result
CMDAEMON_FAILOVER_SLAVE_TOKEN	Obtain status of slave
CMDAEMON_FAILOVER_STATUS_TOKEN	Obtain status of failover
CMDAEMON_FAILOVER_TOKEN	Set CMDaemon failover condition achieved
CMDAEMON_QUORUM_TOKEN	Set CMDaemon quorum achieved
CMDAEMON_RESOURCE_MIGRATE_TOKEN	Obtain status of resource migration
CMDAEMON_RESOURCE_STATUS_TOKEN	Obtain status of resource
CREATE_RAMDISK_TOKEN	Create ramdisk
EDGE_SITE_SECRET_TOKEN	Show edge site secret
FORGET_RACK_ISOLATION_REQUEST_INFO_TOKEN	Forget rack isolation request info
GET_EDGE_SITE_TOKEN	Get edge site
GET_GNSS_LOCATION_TOKEN	Get GNSS location
GET_NODE_ARCH_OS_TOKEN	Get architecture and OS
GET_PARTITION_TOKEN	Get partition settings
GET_POWER_CIRCUIT_TOKEN	Get power circuit
GET_PRS_STATUS_TOKEN	Get PRS status

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
GET_RACK_ISOLATION_REQUEST_INFO_TOKEN	Get rack isolation request info
GET_RACK_TOKEN	Get rack settings
GET_RAW_NMX_TOKEN	Get raw NMX settings
GET_SOFTWAREIMAGE_FILE_SELECTION_TOKEN	Get softwareimage file selection
GET_SOFTWAREIMAGE_TOKEN	Get softwareimage settings
HANDLE_RACK_ISOLATION_REQUEST_INFO_TOKEN	Handle rack isolation request info
KERNEL_CONFIG_HASH_TOKEN	Kernel config hash
NETQ_SETTINGS_TOKEN	Show NETQ settings
NMXM_SETTINGS_TOKEN	Show NMX Management settings
REQUEST_RACK_ELECTRICAL_ISOLATION_TOKEN	Request rack electrical isolation
REQUEST_RACK_LIQUID_ISOLATION_TOKEN	Request rack liquid isolation
SET_GNSS_LOCATION_TOKEN	Set GNSS location
START_PRS_DOMAIN_TOKEN	Set PRS domain
STOP_PRS_DOMAIN_TOKEN	Stop PRS domain
UFM_SETTINGS_TOKEN	Show UFM settings
UPDATE_EDGE_SITE_TOKEN	Update edge site
UPDATE_GNSS_LOCATION_TOKEN	Update GNSS location
UPDATE_PARTITION_TOKEN	Update partition settings
UPDATE_POWER_CIRCUIT_TOKEN	Update power circuit settings
UPDATE_RACK_TOKEN	Update rack settings
UPDATE_RAW_NMX_TOKEN	Update raw NMX settings
UPDATE_SOFTWAREIMAGE_FILE_SELECTION_TOKEN	Update softwareimage file selection
UPDATE_SOFTWAREIMAGE_TOKEN	Update softwareimage settings
<b>Service: CMProc</b>	
CLEAN_IPC_TOKEN	Clear IPC state
EXEC_COMMAND_TOKEN	Execute a command on a head node
EXEC_INTERNAL_COMMAND_TOKEN	Execute internal command (defined in the source code, RPC API, internal)
GET_ALL_PROCESSES_TOKEN	Retrieve list of all processes that are currently running on a device managed by CMDaemon
GET_MSGQUEUE_TOKEN	Get message queue status
GET_PROCESS_TOKEN	Retrieve list of processes that are currently running on a device managed by CMDaemon
GET_SEMAPHORE_TOKEN	Get semaphore
GET_SHARED_MEM_TOKEN	Get shared memory
SEND_SIGNAL_TOKEN	Send signal to a process
START_SHELL_TOKEN	Start SSH session

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
<b>Service: CMProv</b>	
ADD_FSPART_TOKEN	Set FSPart (internal)
CANCEL_PROVISIONING_REQUEST_TOKEN	Cancel provisioning request
FSPART_BACKUP_TOKEN	Show FSPart backup
GET_FSPART_ASSOCIATION_TOKEN	Get FSPart association
GET_FSPART_TOKEN	Get FSPart (internal)
GET_LAST_PROVISIONING_NODE_TOKEN	Get last provisioning node
GRAB_IMAGEUPDATE_TOKEN	Grab changes from node to software image and vice versa
IMAGEUPDATE_TOKEN	Send image changes to nodes
LOCK_FSPART_TOKEN	Lock FSPart
MANAGE_RSYNC_DAEMON_TOKEN	Manage the rsync process (CMDaemon)
PROVISIONERS_STATUS_TOKEN	Check status of provisioners e.g. images are in sync
REQUEST_PROVISIONING_TOKEN	Request provisioning (nodes with a provisioning role)
RUN_FSPART_SYNC_SCRIPT_TOKEN	RUN FSPart sync script
RUN_PROVISIONINGPROCESSORJOB_TOKEN	Start and run a provisioning job (nodes with a provisioning role)
UPDATEPROVISIONERS_TOKEN	Synchronize software images across provisioning systems (requires at least two provisioners)
UPDATE_CONFIG_FILES_AFTER_IMAGE_UPDATE_TOKEN	Update config files after image update
UPDATE_FSPART_ASSOCIATION_TOKEN	Update FSPart association
UPDATE_FSPART_TOKEN	Update FSPart (internal)
UPDATE_PROVISIONINGPROCESSORJOB_TOKEN	Update status of running provisioning jobs (CMDaemon)
<b>Service: CMServ</b>	
CALLINIT_OSSERVICE_TOKEN	Call init (useful for the node-installer itself)
GET_OSSERVICE_TOKEN	Get system service information
RELOAD_OSSERVICE_TOKEN	Reload system services
RESET_OSSERVICE_TOKEN	Reset system services
RESTART_OSSERVICE_TOKEN	Restart system services
RESTART_WLM_OSSERVICE_TOKEN	Restart WLM systemservices
START_OSSERVICE_TOKEN	Start system services (service foo start)
STOP_OSSERVICE_TOKEN	Stop system services
UPDATE_OSSERVICE_TOKEN	Update system services
<b>Service: CMSession</b>	
CLIENT_USER_DATA_TOKEN	Show client user data
END_SESSION_TOKEN	Terminate sessions

...continues

Table J: List Of Tokens...continued

Service and token name	User can...
GET_BROADCAST_EVENTS_TOKEN	Receive broadcast events
GET_SESSION_TOKEN	Retrieve session information
HANDLE_EVENT_TOKEN	Handle events
LIST_CLIENT_USER_DATA_TOKEN	List client user data
REGISTER_LITENODE_SESSION_TOKEN	Register lite node
REGISTER_NODE_SESSION_TOKEN	Register new nodes in a special CMdaemon session (node-installer)
<b>Service: CMStatus</b>	
GET_DEVICE_STATUS_TOKEN	Get device status
INTERNAL_STATUS_TOKEN	Show internal status information
SET_DEVICE_STATUS_TOKEN	Set device status
STATUS_INFO_TOKEN	Show status information
STATUS_MANAGE_TOKEN	Show managed status
<b>Service: CMTesT</b>	
GET_MANAGERS_STATE_TOKEN	Get managers state
<b>Service: CMUser</b>	
ADD_GROUP_TOKEN	Add a new LDAP group
ADD_USER_TOKEN	Add a new LDAP user
CHECK_ACCESS_TOKEN	Check project manager access
CREATE_MISSING_HOME_DIRECTORIES_TOKEN	Create missing home directories
GET_DISABLED_PASSWORD_SSH_TOKEN	Get disabled ssh password
GET_GROUP_TOKEN	Retrieve group information
GET_USER_TOKEN	Retrieve user information
REGENERATE_USER_CERTIFICATES_TOKEN	Regenerate user certificates
SET_DISABLED_PASSWORD_SSH_TOKEN	Disable password for SSH
SET_USER_CLOUD_JOB_TOKEN	Set user cloud job
SET_USER_PROFILE__TOKEN	Set user profile
UPDATE_GROUP_TOKEN	Modify an existing LDAP group
UPDATE_USER_TOKEN	Modify an existing LDAP user



# K

# Understanding Consolidation

## K.1 Introduction

Consolidation is discussed in the sections on using consolidation in the Monitoring chapter (sections 10.4.3 and 10.5.2).

However, it may be confusing to have the concept of consolidation discussed in the same place as the use of consolidation. Also, the algebra that appears in that discussion (page 564) may not appeal to people. There are many who would like an explanation that may be more intuitive, even if it is less rigorous.

Therefore, in this section a more informal and visual approach is taken to explain consolidation.

## K.2 What Is Consolidation?

Consolidation is the compression of data, for data values that have been measured over a fixed interval.

The compression is nothing particularly sophisticated. It is carried out by using some simple mathematical functions to the data points: the average, the maximum, or the minimum.

## K.3 Raw Data And Consolidation

Suppose raw data is sampled every 2 minutes.

And the raw data values are consolidated every 10 minutes.

A visual representation of the data values available to the system is:

```
--- time --->
raw:      | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
consolidated: |       |       |       |
```

Here, every “|” indicates a data point, so that the visual shows 5 times as many raw data points as consolidated data values.

In the preceding visual it makes no sense to use consolidated data since the data values for raw data and consolidated data overlap. I.e., the more accurate raw data values exist for the entire period.

As time passes, the intention is to start dropping old raw data, to save space on the disk.

For example, for the first 20 minutes in the following visual, there are no longer raw data values available:

### Example

```
--- time --->
raw:          | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
consolidated: |       |       |       |
```

But the consolidated data points for this period are still available to the system.

When the data values are plotted in Base View graphs, periods without raw data values automatically have consolidated data values used.

So a combination of both data sources is used, which can be visually represented with:

## Example

That behavior holds true for cmsh too.

The behavior illustrated in the last visual assumes that the cluster has been UP for long enough that raw data is being dropped.

In this case, "long enough" means at least 7 days.

However, because RLE (Run Length Encoding) is used to compress the sampled monitoring data values on disk, this minimal “long enough” time can be (much) longer than 7 days. It depends on how much the measurable that is being sampled is changing as each sample is taken. if it is not changing, then RLE can compress over a longer time period.

For example, if a node has been up and reachable without issues for 1000 days, then the ssh2node health check raw data values would be PASS over that 1000 days. For the period from now to 7 days ago, the raw data values of PASS are kept as they are for now. However, for the period from 7 days ago to 1000 days ago, consolidation on the unchanging raw values means that only two values, namely the PASS value of 1000 days and the PASS value of 7 days ago, need to be retained, in order to have a totally accurate record of what the values were in that period.

On the other hand, the `forks` metric changes very quickly, and thus can do little RLE compression. That makes it a good choice for demonstrating the kind of output that the preceding visuals imply.

## K.4 A Demonstration Of The Output

So, as a demonstration, the last 7 days for forks are now shown, with the data values in the middle elided:

## Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% dumpmonitoringdata -7d now forks
Timestamp          Value           Info
-----
2018/10/17 10:30:00 2.76243 processes/s
2018/10/17 11:30:00 2.52528 processes/s
2018/10/17 12:30:00 2.53972 processes/s
...
2018/10/24 10:42:00 2.66669 processes/s
2018/10/24 10:44:00 2.63333 processes/s
2018/10/24 10:46:00 2.64167 processes/s
```

The first part of the output shows samples listed every hour. These are the consolidated data values.

The last part of the output shows samples listed every 2 minutes. These are the raw data value values.

I.e.: consolidated data values are used beyond a certain time in the past.

If the administrator would like to explore this further, then displaying only consolidation values is possible in cmsh by using the `--consolidationinterval` option of the `dumpmonitoringdata` command:

## Example

```
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% dumpmonitoringdata --consolidationinterval 1h -7d now forks
Timestamp          Value          Info
-----
2019/01/07 11:39:06    2.65704 processes/s
2019/01/07 12:30:00    2.60111 processes/s
2019/01/07 13:30:00    2.58328 processes/s
...
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% dumpmonitoringdata --consolidationinterval 1d -7d now forks
Timestamp          Value          Info
-----
2019/01/07 18:09:06    2.59586 processes/s
2019/01/08 13:00:00    2.58953 processes/s
2019/01/09 06:06:06    2.58854 processes/s
[basecm11->device[basecm11]]% dumpmonitoringdata --consolidationinterval 1w -7d now forks
Timestamp          Value          Info
-----
2019/01/08 11:15:12.194    2.59113 processes/s
```



# L

## Node Execution Filters And Execution Multiplexers

Node execution filters and execution multiplexers define where data producers are executed on the nodes of a cluster, and what nodes are targeted to obtain the data.

This appendix explains how node execution filters and execution multiplexers work with the help of some explicit basic examples. The aim is to have the cluster administrator understand how they work and how to use them.

The reference cluster in this section is a 5-node cluster, made up of a head node (basecm11) and 4 regular nodes (node001..node004). The commands run in this appendix are carried out during a cmsh session that continues on from the point that it left off earlier.

The terms “node execution filters” and “execution multiplexers” are commonly abbreviated to filters and multiplexers in this appendix.

A simple custom data producer script is created and used to explain some of the more-involved concepts of filters and multiplexers more clearly. The custom script is:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat /cm/shared/fm.sh
#!/bin/bash

echo $((RANDOM%100))
echo "Sampled on $(hostname) for \$CMD_HOSTNAME" >&3
```

It should be made executable, for example, with `chmod a+x`. When run, the script outputs a random number, it outputs the host it is being run on (`$(hostname)`), and also the host the metric is targeting (`\$CMD_HOSTNAME`). The hosts that it is run on can be defined by filters, while the hosts that are targeted by the metric can be defined by multiplexers.

**The Term Multiplex:** The word “multiplex” can be confusing to system administrators. In electronics, the term multiplex implies that signals are being gathered from various inputs, and going into a main input.

Here the idea is applicable to the signals (samples) from the execution multiplexers (nodes where the samples are). The samples are multiplexed (gathered) from those nodes, to the node (or nodes) where the data producer is executing.

- The execution of the data producer is on the node (or nodes) defined by `nodeexecutionfilter`. The data producer execution nodes are the ones listed using the `nodes` command of cmsh.
- The nodes where the samples are obtained from are defined by the `executionmultiplexer` setting. Those multiplexer nodes can have their samples displayed as output using the `samplenow` command (section 10.6.2, page 593) of cmsh.

## L.1 Data Producers: Default Configuration For Running And Sampling

If there is no configuration defined for the data producer in the filters or multiplexers for that data producer, then each node runs a data producer on itself, and that data producer targets the node that it is running on.

For example, the existing dmesg data producer comprises the dmesg health check (section G.2.1) and by default has no filter or multiplexer defined for it. If an attempt is made to list any filter or multiplexer for dmesg, then by default there is no content under the table headings:

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cmsh
[basecm11]% monitoring setup
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% nodeexecutionfilters dmesg; list; ...;...
Type          Name (key)          Filter          Filter operation
-----
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% executionmultiplexers dmesg; list; ...;...
Name (key)
-----
```

Another way of seeing that no such filters or multiplexers have been defined for dmesg could be by seeing that none are defined in its submodes:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% show dmesg | grep submode
Execution multiplexer      <0 in submode>
Node execution filters     <0 in submode>
```

Most existing data producers have filters and multiplexers defined. The number of filters and multiplexers set per data producer can conveniently be viewed via list formatting:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% list -f name,nodeexecutionfilters,executionmultiplexer | more
name (key)          nodeexecutionfilters executionmultiplexer
-----
AggregateNode       <1 in submode>      <1 in submode>
AggregatePDU        <1 in submode>      <1 in submode>
AlertLevel          <1 in submode>      <1 in submode>
CMDaemonState       <0 in submode>      <0 in submode>
Cassandra           <1 in submode>      <0 in submode>
ClusterTotal         <1 in submode>      <0 in submode>
DeviceState          <1 in submode>      <0 in submode>
...
...
```

### L.1.1 Nodes That Data Producers Are Running On By Default—The `nodes` Command

The nodes command shows which nodes the data producer runs on. By default, the data producer runs on all nodes, when nothing has been set explicitly, because each node runs the data producer for itself:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% nodes dmesg
node001..node004,basecm11
```

### L.1.2 Nodes That Data Producers Target By Default—The `samplenow` Command

Nodes where samples are being obtained at can be seen using the samplenow command for the specified nodes.

Again, by default, each node is a target, because the target is same node that the dmesg data producer runs on:

Entity	Measurable	Type	Value	Age	Info
node001	dmesg	OS	PASS	0.093s	
node002	dmesg	OS	PASS	0.087s	
node003	dmesg	OS	PASS	0.088s	
node004	dmesg	OS	PASS	0.09s	
basecm11	dmesg	OS	PASS	0.179s	

In the outputs to `samplenow` displayed in this appendix, some columns are omitted for the sake of clarity.

The `-t node` option to `samplenow` expands to `-n node001..node004,basecm11` for this reference cluster.

## L.2 Data Producers: Configuration For Running And Targeting

Filters and multiplexers define which nodes run the data producers, and which nodes are the targets for measurables.

The `fm.sh` script introduced on page 1009 can be used to define several custom metrics according to what nodes run the script and what nodes are targeted by the script.

### L.2.1 Custom Metrics From The `fm.sh` Custom Script

Custom data producers of type `metric` are created in this section. These data producers comprise custom metrics, which are now set up with varying filtering and multiplexing definitions, to illustrate how the definitions work.

#### The Metric `all_for_self`

The metric from the data producer `all_for_self` can be set up with no filtering or multiplexing defined, as follows:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% add metric all_for_self
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[all_for_self*]]% set consolidator none
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[all_for_self*]]% set script /cm/shared/fm.sh
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[all_for_self*]]% set class Test
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[all_for_self*]]% commit
```

The value for `class` is mandatory but arbitrary. It is an arbitrary grouping mechanism, which can be useful in Base View for grouping folders in trees.

**Sampling results for the metric `all_for_self`:** With no filtering or multiplexing, the metric just runs everywhere by default, with the target of the running metric being itself too. The `Info` field output from `samplenow` shows this behavior in the script output:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[all_for_self*]]% exit
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]* device samplenow -t node all_for_self
Entity      Measurable     Type  Value  Age   Info
-----      -----      ----  ----  --  -----
node001    all_for_self  Test   2     0.08s  Sampled on node001 for node001
node002    all_for_self  Test  13     0.084s  Sampled on node002 for node002
node003    all_for_self  Test  97     0.08s  Sampled on node003 for node003
node004    all_for_self  Test  18     0.084s  Sampled on node004 for node004
basecm11  all_for_self  Test  63     0.144s  Sampled on basecm11 for basecm11
```

**The Metric** some\_for\_self

The metric `some_for_self` can be set up with filtering set up for some nodes, and no multiplexing set up, as follows:

```
# on node001,node002 for itself
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]%
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[some_for_self*]]% set consolidator none
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[some_for_self*]]% set class Test
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[some_for_self*]]% set script /cm/shared/fm.sh
[basecm11->...*[some_for_self*]]% nodeexecutionfilters
[basecm11->...*[some_for_self*]->nodeexecutionfilters]%
[basecm11->...->nodeexecutionfilters*[some_nodes*]]% add node some_nodes
[basecm11->...->nodeexecutionfilters*[some_nodes*]]% set nodes node001 node002
[basecm11->...->nodeexecutionfilters*[some_nodes*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Filter operation    Include
Name               some_nodes
Nodes              node001,node002
Revision
Type               Node
[basecm11->...->nodeexecutionfilters*[some_nodes*]]% commit
```

**Sampling results for the metric `some_for_self`:** Only some filtering defined, and no multiplexing defined at all, means that the metric just runs on the filtered nodes, and targets only the nodes defined in filter too:

```
[basecm11->...->nodeexecutionfilters[some_nodes]]% ...; ...; ...
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]%
Entity      Measurable     Type   Value   Age   Info
-----
node001    some_for_self  Test    88     0.094s Sampled on node001 for node001
node002    some_for_self  Test    98     0.075s Sampled on node002 for node002
```

**The Metric** from\_head\_for\_some\_others

The metric `from_head_for_some_others` can be set up with filtering defined for the head node, and multiplexing defined for some other regular nodes (other than node001 and node002 here), as follows:

```
# on active head for node003,node004
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]%
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[from_head_for_some_others*]]% set consolidator none
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[from_head_for_some_others*]]% set script /cm/shared/fm.sh
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[from_head_for_some_others*]]% set class Test
[basecm11->...*[from_head_for_some_others*]]% nodeexecutionfilters
[basecm11->...*[from_head_for_some_others*]->nodeexecutionfilters]%
Added active resource filter
[basecm11->...*[from_head_for_some_others*]->nodeexecutionfilters]%
[basecm11->...->nodeexecutionfilters]% show active head node
Parameter          Value
-----
Filter operation    Include
Name               Active head node
Operator           OR
Resources          Active
Revision
Type               Resource
[basecm11->monitoring->setup*[from_head_for_some_others*]->nodeexecutionfilters]%
[basecm11->...*[from_head_for_some_others*]]% executionmultiplexers
```

```
[basecm11->...*[from_head_for_some_others*]->executionmultiplexers] % add node other_nodes
[basecm11->..._for_some_others*]->executionmultiplexers*[other_nodes*]]% set nodes node003 node004
[basecm11->...*[from_head_for_some_others*]->executionmultiplexers*[other_nodes*]]% show
Parameter          Value
-----
Filter operation   Include
Name              other_nodes
Nodes             node003,node004
Revision
Type              Node
[basecm11->..._for_some_others*]->executionmultiplexers*[other_nodes*]]% commit; ..; ..;..
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]%
```

The filter is given a resource, `Active`, which is a way to set the filter for the active node only. Available resources for a node can be seen by running the command `monitoringresources` for a device:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% device monitoringresources basecm11
Active
Ethernet
RDO
backup
boot
...
```

**Sampling results for the metric from head\_for\_some\_others:** With filtering defined for the active head node, and multiplexing defined for those other nodes, it means that the metric targets those other nodes, and the metric runs on the head node. That is, the other nodes are targeted by the head node that is running the metric:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% device samplenow -t node from_head_for_some_others
Entity      Measurable           Type  Value  Age    Info
-----
node003    from_head_for_some_others  Test  20    0.084s Sampled on basecm11 for node003
node004    from_head_for_some_others  Test  44    0.067s Sampled on basecm11 for node004
```

The `nodes` command confirms that the head node, `basecm11` is the filtered node, that is, the only node(s) running the metric:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% nodes from_head_for_some_others
basecm11
```

## L.3 Replacing A Resource With An Explicit Node Specification

Within the filter `Active` head node, associated with the metric `from_head_for_some_others`, the resource object `Active` can be replaced with a node object instead, if the node is defined as being `basecm11`. Doing this on a high-availability cluster where there is one active and one passive head node, would be unwise. However, doing this on the reference cluster for teaching purposes is of course absolutely fine because it helps make things a bit more concrete for the reader. The replacement can be carried out for the session as follows:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]% nodeexecutionfilters from_head_for_some_others
[basecm11->...[from_head_for_some_others]->nodeexecutionfilters]% list
Type      Name (key)           Filter          Filter operation
-----
```

```

Resource      Active head node      Active           Include
[basecm11->... [from_head_for_some_others]->nodeexecutionfilters] % remove active head node
[basecm11->...* [from_head_for_some_others*]->nodeexecutionfilters*] % add node head
[basecm11->...* [from_head_for_some_others*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[head*]] % set nodes basecm11
[basecm11->...* [from_head_for_some_others*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[head*]] % show
Parameter          Value
-----
Filter operation      Include
Name                  head
Nodes                 basecm11
Revision
Type                  Node
[basecm11->...* [from_head_for_some_others*]->nodeexecutionfilters*[head*]] % commit
[basecm11->... [from_head_for_some_others]->nodeexecutionfilters*[head]] % ..;..;..

```

The sample results are the same kind of output, and the filter node used is the same. The target sample outputs are the same kind of output as before the replacement. The filter node on which the metric runs is also seen to be the same:

```

[basecm11->monitoring->setup] % device samplenow -t node from_head_for_some_others
Entity      Measurable          Type  Value Age   Info
-----
node003     from_head_for_some_others Test   11    0.081s Sampled on basecm11 for node003
node004     from_head_for_some_others Test   12    0.07s  Sampled on basecm11 for node004
[basecm11->monitoring->setup] % nodes
basecm11

```

## L.4 Excessive Sampling

If another node is appended to the node in the filter, then a warning comes up.

```

[basecm11->monitoring->setup] % nodeexecutionfilters from_head_for_some_others
[basecm11->... [from_head_for_some_others]->nodeexecutionfilters] % append head nodes node003
[basecm11->...* [from_head_for_some_others*]->nodeexecutionfilters*] % commit
===== from_head_for_some_others =====
Field          Message
-----
executionMultiplexers  Warning: Execution filters/multiplexers are set to run
                           on multiple nodes for the same target. This likely
                           means they are badly configured

```

```
[basecm11->... [from_head_for_some_others]->nodeexecutionfilters] % show head
```

Parameter	Value
Filter operation	Include
Name	head
Nodes	node003,basecm11
Revision	
Type	Node

The warning is there because the node execution filters are doing the same thing from different nodes for an execution multiplexer target, and duplicating monitoring execution is typically a waste of resources, and thus typically a mistake.

However, the warnings are merely warnings, and not errors. So BCM just goes ahead with setting up the filter/multiplex system according to what the administrator has specified. The nodes and samplingnow commands now show:

```
[basecm11->...[from_head_for_some_others]->nodeexecutionfilters]%
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]%
device samplenow -t node from_head_for_some_others
Entity      Measurable          Type  Value Age   Info
-----
node003     from_head_for_some_others Test   3    0.151s Sampled on basecm11 for node003
node003     from_head_for_some_others Test   76   0.08s Sampled on node003 for node003
node004     from_head_for_some_others Test   25   0.08s Sampled on node003 for node004
node004     from_head_for_some_others Test   88   0.151s Sampled on basecm11 for node004
[basecm11->monitoring->setup]%
nodes from_head_for_some_others
node003,basecm11
```

The node node003 is now doing what the head node is, sampling the same targets, which is typically a bad idea. However the behavior is indeed as expected for this particular configuration.

Whether running a particular configuration is actually wise, is up to the administrator—but in any case the filter/multiplex system allows plenty of abuse of this kind.

## L.5 Not Just For Nodes

Nodes are what node execution filters and execution multiplexers run on. However, sometimes it is more convenient to execute based on other types.

The possible types can be listed with tab-completion suggestions when adding a node execution filter or an execution multiplier:

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[dmesg]->nodeexecutionfilters]%
add<TAB><TAB>
category  lua      node      overlay  resource  type
```

## L.6 Lua Node Execution Filters

Lua (<https://www.lua.org/>) is a lightweight scripting language embedded into CMDaemon. It allows more advanced node execution filters to be written using a Lua filter file.

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[<data producer>]->nodeexecutionfilters]%
add lua lua-filter
[basecm11->...nodeexecutionfilters*[lua-filter*]]%
set code <Lua filter file name>
```

In the preceding example session, the name `lua-filter` is an arbitrary name, that is added to the object that is associated with the Lua filter file `<Lua filter file name>`.

The `self` Lua table is passed by CMDaemon, and contains the entity for which the filter is evaluated. Only devices have a `self` table that is not `nil`. All other entities have a `self` table that is `nil`.

For example, a filter can be created based on a regex match of the hostname:

### Example

```
if self == nil then
  return false
else
  return self.hostname:match("^node[0-9]+") ~= nil)
end
```

The Lua filter is evaluated for all nodes:

### Example

```
[basecm11->monitoring->setup[dmesg]]% nodes
node001..node004
```

Development of Lua filters is best done outside of CMDaemon. Doing so requires the cluster administrator to create node environments to be evaluated by hand:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat node001.lua
self = {}
self.hostname = "node001"
self.category = "default"
```

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat basecm11.lua
self = {}
self.hostname = "basecm11"
```

This is in addition to the original filter script:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat filter.lua
if self == nil then
    return false
else
    return self.hostname:match("^node[0-9]+") ~= nil
end
```

Both nodes can then be run through the filter using the lua interpreter:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# lua
Lua 5.1.4 Copyright (C) 1994-2015 Lua.org, PUC-Rio
> dofile('basecm11.lua')
> print(dofile('filter.lua'))
false
> dofile('node001.lua')
> print(dofile('filter.lua'))
true
```

The Lua `self` exported by CMDaemon contains the following:

- `self`: The main table object, `nil` for non-devices.
- `self.hostname`: The hostname of the device.
- `self.partition`: The name of the partition to which the device belongs.
- `self.category`: The name of the category to which the compute node belongs.
- `self.nodegrps`: An array with the name of node groups the node belongs to.
- `self.mac`: The MAC address of the device.
- `self.ip`: The IP of the device, only available for non-node devices.
- `self.network`: The IP address of the device, only available for non-node devices.
- `self.interfaces`: The array of interface of a node.

- `self.interfaces[1].name`: The name of the first interface.
- `self.interfaces[1].ip`: The IP address of the first interface.
- `self.interfaces[1].network`: The name of the network of the first interface.
- `self.roles`: The array of roles of a node.
- `self.roles[1].name`: The name of the first role.
- `self.roles[1].type`: The type of the first role.
- `self.status.status`: The status of the device.
- `self.status.user_message`: The user message set for the device.
- `self.status.info_message`: The information message set for the device.
- `self.status.closed`: A boolean marking the node as closed.
- `self.status.restart_required`: A boolean marking the node needs to be rebooted.
- `self.status.healthcheck_failed`: A boolean marking at least one health check has returned FAIL.
- `self.status.healthcheck_unknown`: A boolean marking at least one health check has returned UNKNOWN.
- `self.status.state_flapping`: A boolean marking the node status transitioning often in a short time span
- `self.system.name`: The name of the system.
- `self.system.manufacturer`: The manufacturer of the system.
- `self.system.motherboard.name`: The name of the motherboard.
- `self.system.motherboard.manufacturer`: The manufacturer of the motherboard.
- `self.system.bios.version`: The BIOS version.
- `self.system.bios.vendor`: The BIOS vendor name.
- `self.system.bios.date`: The BIOS date.
- `self.system.os.name`: The OS name.
- `self.system.os.version`: The OS version.
- `self.system.os.flavor`: The OS flavor.

Using the `self` environment, complex filters can easily be created. For example, the following filter can be built to include only the nodes on the IB network, which also have a Slurm client role:

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat ib-slurm-filter.lua
if self == nil then
    return false
end

on_ib_network = false
```

```
for index, interface in ipairs(self.interface) do
    on_ib_network = on_ib_network or (interface.network == "ibnet")
done

slurm_client = false
for index, role in ipairs(self.roles) do
    slurm_client = slurm_client or (role.name == "SlurmClient")
done

return on_ib_network and slurm_client
```

It is also possible to use external sources, like the file system, to determine the filter for a node.

### Example

```
[root@basecm11 ~]# cat file-check-filter.lua
if self == nil then
    return false
end

function file_exists(name)
    local f = io.open(name, "r")
    if f ~= nil then
        io.close(f)
        return true
    else
        return false
    end
end

return file_exists(string.format('/opt/filter/%s', self.hostname))
```

It is important to understand that this Lua script is evaluated for all nodes, on the active head node. The Lua script should therefore be fast, and return within a few milliseconds.

# M

## A Tree View Of cmsh

### M.1 Modes

A 3-level tree of the modes in cmsh is:

```
|-- category
|   |-- biossettings
|   |-- bmcsettings
|   |-- dpusettings
|   |   '-- keyvaluesettings
|   |-- fsexports
|   |-- fsmounts
|   |-- gpusettings
|   |-- kernelmodules
|   |-- roles
|   |   |-- advancedsettings
|   |   |-- commsettings
|   |   |-- configs
|   |   |-- configurations
|   |   |-- connectionsettings
|   |   |-- domains
|   |   |-- engines
|   |   |-- environments
|   |   |-- excludelistsnippets
|   |   |-- genericresources
|   |   |-- interfaces
|   |   |-- logsettings
|   |   |-- momsettings
|   |   |-- nginxreverseproxy
|   |   |-- nodecustomizations
|   |   |-- openports
|   |   |-- policies
|   |   |-- powerprofiles
|   |   |-- resourceproviders
|   |   |-- routes
|   |   |-- servers
|   |   |-- spawner
|   |   |-- storagedrivers
|   |   |-- storagebackends
|   |   '-- zones
|   '-- selinuxsettings
|       '-- keyvaluesettings
|-- services
```

```
|   |-- staticroutes
|   `-- ztpsettings
|-- cert
|-- cloud
|   |-- extensions
|   |-- instancepools
|   |-- ocigpumemoryclusters
|   |-- regions
|   |-- types
|   `-- vpcs
|-- configurationoverlay
|   |-- customizations
|   `-- roles
|       |-- advancedsettings
|       |-- commsettings
|       |-- configs
|       |-- configurations
|       |-- connectionsettings
|       |-- domains
|       |-- engines
|       |-- environments
|       |-- excludelistsnippets
|       |-- genericresources
|       |-- interfaces
|       |-- logsettings
|       |-- momsettings
|       |-- nginxreverseproxy
|       |-- nodecustomizations
|       |-- openports
|       |-- policies
|       |-- powerprofiles
|       |-- resourceproviders
|       |-- routes
|       |-- servers
|       |-- spawnner
|       |-- storagedrivers
|       |-- storagebackends
|       `-- zones
|-- device
|   |-- accesssettings
|   |-- biosettings
|   |-- bmcsettings
|   |-- chassisposition
|   |-- cloudsettings
|   |   |-- disks
|   |   |-- platformconfig
|   |   `-- storage
|   |-- dpusettings
|   |   `-- keyvaluesettings
|   |-- fsexports
|   |-- fsmounts
|   |-- gpusettings
|   |-- interfaces
|   |-- kernelmodules
|   |-- nvconfiguration
```

```
|   |-- prometheusmetricforwarders
|   |-- rackposition
|   |-- roles
|   |   |-- advancedsettings
|   |   |-- commsettings
|   |   |-- configs
|   |   |-- configurations
|   |   |-- connectionsettings
|   |   |-- domains
|   |   |-- engines
|   |   |-- environments
|   |   |-- excludelistsnippets
|   |   |-- genericresources
|   |   |-- interfaces
|   |   |-- logsettings
|   |   |-- momsettings
|   |   |-- nginxreverseproxy
|   |   |-- nodecustomizations
|   |   |-- openports
|   |   |-- policies
|   |   |-- powerprofiles
|   |   |-- resourceproviders
|   |   |-- routes
|   |   |-- servers
|   |   |-- spawner
|   |   |-- storagedrivers
|   |   |-- storagebackends
|   |   `-- zones
|   |-- selinuxsettings
|   |   `-- keyvaluesettings
|   |-- services
|   |-- snmpsettings
|   |-- staticroutes
|   `-- ztpsettings
|       `-- keyvaluesettings
|-- edgesite
|-- etcd
|-- fspart
|   `-- excludelistsnippets
|-- group
|-- hierarchy
|   |-- sources
|   `-- targets
|-- kubernetes
|   |-- appgroups
|   |   `-- applications
|   |-- labelsets
|   `-- users
|-- main
|-- monitoring
|   |-- action
|   |-- consolidator
|   |   `-- consolidators
|   |-- labeledentity
|   |-- measurable
```

```
|   |-- query
|   |   `-- drilldown
|   |-- report
|   |-- setup
|   |   |-- dpusettings
|   |   |   |-- executionmultiplexers
|   |   |   |-- jobmetricsettings
|   |   `-- nodeexecutionfilters
|   |-- standalone
|   `-- trigger
|       `-- expression
|-- network
|-- nodegroup
|-- partition
|   |-- accesssettings
|   |-- archos
|   |-- bmcsettings
|   |-- burnconfigs
|   |-- dpusettings
|   |   `-- keyvaluesettings
|   |-- failover
|   |-- failovergroups
|   |-- leakactionpolicies
|   |   `-- rules
|   |-- netqsettings
|   |   `-- prometheusmetricforwarders
|   |-- nmxmsettings
|   |   `-- prometheusmetricforwarders
|   |-- prometheusmetricforwarders
|   |-- provisioningsettings
|   |-- resourcepools
|   |-- selinuxsettings
|   |   `-- keyvaluesettings
|   |-- snmpsettings
|   |-- ufmsettings
|   |-- wlmjobpowerusagesettings
|   |-- ztpnewsswitchsettings
|   |   `-- keyvaluesettings
|   `-- ztpsettings
|       `-- keyvaluesettings
|-- powercircuit
|-- process
|-- profile
|-- rack
|-- session
|-- softwareimage
|   |-- kernelmodules
|   `-- selection
|-- task
|-- user
|   `-- projectmanager
`-- wlm
    |-- accounting
    |-- cgroups
    `-- chargeback
```

```
|-- jobqueue
|-- jobs
|-- licenses
|-- ocisettings
|-- pelogs
|-- placeholders
|-- prssettings
`-- topologysettings
    |-- blocksettings
    |-- parameters
    |-- topographsettings
    `-- treesettings
```



# N

## BCM And NVIDIA AI Enterprise

Some features of BCM are certified for NVIDIA AI Enterprise (<https://docs.nvidia.com/ai-enterprise/index.html>).

### N.0.1 Certified Features Of BCM For NVIDIA AI Enterprise

The BCM Feature Matrix at:

<https://support.brightcomputing.com/feature-matrix/>

has a complete list of the features of BCM that are certified for NVIDIA AI Enterprise.

### N.0.2 NVIDIA AI Enterprise Compatible Servers

BCM must be deployed on NVIDIA AI Enterprise compatible servers.

The NVIDIA Qualified System Catalog at:

<https://www.nvidia.com/en-us/data-center/data-center-gpus/qualified-system-catalog/>

displays a complete list of NVIDIA AI Enterprise compatible servers if the NVAIE Compatible option is selected.

### N.0.3 NVIDIA Software Versions Supported

NVIDIA AI Enterprise supports specific versions of NVIDIA software, including

- NVIDIA drivers
- NVIDIA containers
- the NVIDIA Container Toolkit
- the NVIDIA GPU Operator
- the NVIDIA Network Operator

The NVIDIA AI Enterprise Catalog On NGC at:

<https://catalog.ngc.nvidia.com/enterprise>

lists the specific versions of software included in a release.

### N.0.4 NVIDIA AI Enterprise Product Support Matrix

The NVIDIA AI Enterprise Product Support Matrix at:

<https://docs.nvidia.com/ai-enterprise/latest/product-support-matrix/index.html>

lists the platforms that are supported.